

Run-Time Library (RTL) :  
Reference guide.

---

Free Pascal version 2.4:  
Reference guide for RTL units.  
Document version 2.1  
May 2010

Michaël Van Canneyt

---

# Contents

0.1	Overview	75
<b>1</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'</b>	<b>76</b>
1.1	Used units	76
1.2	Overview	76
1.3	Constants, types and variables	76
1.3.1	Constants	76
1.3.2	Types	98
1.4	Procedures and functions	115
1.4.1	CreateShellArgV	115
1.4.2	FpAccess	116
1.4.3	FpAlarm	116
1.4.4	FpChdir	117
1.4.5	FpChmod	117
1.4.6	FpChown	119
1.4.7	FpClose	120
1.4.8	FpClosedir	120
1.4.9	FpDup	120
1.4.10	FpDup2	121
1.4.11	FpExecv	122
1.4.12	FpExecve	123
1.4.13	FpExit	124
1.4.14	FpFcntl	124
1.4.15	fpdfillset	125
1.4.16	fpFD_CLR	125
1.4.17	fpFD_ISSET	126
1.4.18	fpFD_SET	126
1.4.19	fpFD_ZERO	126
1.4.20	FpFork	126
1.4.21	FPFStat	127
1.4.22	FpFtruncate	128

1.4.23	FpGetcwd	128
1.4.24	FpGetegid	128
1.4.25	FpGetEnv	129
1.4.26	fpgeterrno	129
1.4.27	FpGeteuid	130
1.4.28	FpGetgid	130
1.4.29	FpGetgroups	131
1.4.30	FpGetpggrp	131
1.4.31	FpGetpid	131
1.4.32	FpGetppid	132
1.4.33	fpGetPriority	132
1.4.34	FpGetuid	132
1.4.35	FpIOCtl	133
1.4.36	FpKill	133
1.4.37	FpLink	134
1.4.38	FpLseek	135
1.4.39	fpLstat	136
1.4.40	FpMkdir	137
1.4.41	FpMkfifo	137
1.4.42	Fpmmmap	138
1.4.43	Fpmunmap	139
1.4.44	FpNanoSleep	140
1.4.45	fpNice	140
1.4.46	FpOpen	141
1.4.47	FpOpendir	142
1.4.48	FpPause	143
1.4.49	FpPipe	144
1.4.50	FpPoll	145
1.4.51	FppRead	145
1.4.52	FppWrite	145
1.4.53	FpRead	146
1.4.54	FpReaddir	147
1.4.55	fpReadLink	147
1.4.56	FpReadV	148
1.4.57	FpRename	148
1.4.58	FpRmdir	149
1.4.59	fpSelect	149
1.4.60	fpseterrno	151
1.4.61	FpSetgid	151
1.4.62	fpSetPriority	151

---

1.4.63	FpSetsid	152
1.4.64	fpsettimeofday	152
1.4.65	FpSetuid	153
1.4.66	FPSigaction	153
1.4.67	FpSigAddSet	154
1.4.68	FpSigDelSet	154
1.4.69	FpsigEmptySet	155
1.4.70	FpSigFillSet	155
1.4.71	FpSigIsMember	155
1.4.72	FpSignal	156
1.4.73	FpSigPending	156
1.4.74	FpSigProcMask	157
1.4.75	FpSigSuspend	157
1.4.76	FpSleep	157
1.4.77	FpStat	158
1.4.78	fpSymlink	159
1.4.79	fpS_ISBLK	160
1.4.80	fpS_ISCHR	160
1.4.81	fpS_ISDIR	161
1.4.82	fpS_ISFIFO	161
1.4.83	fpS_ISLNK	161
1.4.84	fpS_ISREG	162
1.4.85	fpS_ISSOCK	162
1.4.86	fptime	162
1.4.87	FpTimes	163
1.4.88	FpUmask	163
1.4.89	FpUname	164
1.4.90	FpUnlink	164
1.4.91	FpUtime	164
1.4.92	FpWait	165
1.4.93	FpWaitPid	166
1.4.94	FpWrite	166
1.4.95	FpWriteV	167
1.4.96	FreeShellArgV	167
1.4.97	wexitStatus	167
1.4.98	wifexited	167
1.4.99	wifsignaled	168
1.4.100	wstopsig	168
1.4.101	wtermSIG	168

<b>2</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Classes'</b>	<b>169</b>
2.1	Used units . . . . .	169
2.2	Overview . . . . .	169
<b>3</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'clocale'</b>	<b>170</b>
3.1	Overview . . . . .	170
<b>4</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'cmem'</b>	<b>171</b>
4.1	Overview . . . . .	171
4.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	171
4.2.1	Constants . . . . .	171
4.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	171
4.3.1	CAlloc . . . . .	171
4.3.2	Free . . . . .	171
4.3.3	Malloc . . . . .	172
4.3.4	ReAlloc . . . . .	172
<b>5</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Crt'</b>	<b>173</b>
5.1	Overview . . . . .	173
5.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	173
5.2.1	Constants . . . . .	173
5.2.2	Types . . . . .	176
5.2.3	Variables . . . . .	176
5.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	177
5.3.1	AssignCrt . . . . .	177
5.3.2	ClrEol . . . . .	178
5.3.3	ClrScr . . . . .	178
5.3.4	cursorbig . . . . .	179
5.3.5	cursoroff . . . . .	179
5.3.6	cursoron . . . . .	179
5.3.7	Delay . . . . .	180
5.3.8	DelLine . . . . .	180
5.3.9	GotoXY . . . . .	181
5.3.10	HighVideo . . . . .	181
5.3.11	InsLine . . . . .	182
5.3.12	KeyPressed . . . . .	182
5.3.13	LowVideo . . . . .	183
5.3.14	NormVideo . . . . .	183
5.3.15	NoSound . . . . .	184
5.3.16	ReadKey . . . . .	184
5.3.17	Sound . . . . .	185

5.3.18	TextBackground	185
5.3.19	TextColor	186
5.3.20	TextMode	186
5.3.21	WhereX	187
5.3.22	WhereY	187
5.3.23	Window	188
<b>6</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'cthreads'</b>	<b>189</b>
6.1	Overview	189
6.2	Procedures and functions	189
6.2.1	SetCThreadManager	189
<b>7</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ctypes'</b>	<b>190</b>
7.1	Used units	190
7.2	Overview	190
7.3	Constants, types and variables	190
7.3.1	Types	190
7.4	Procedures and functions	195
7.4.1	operator :=(clongdouble): double	195
7.4.2	operator :=(double): clongdouble	195
<b>8</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'cwstring'</b>	<b>196</b>
8.1	Overview	196
8.2	Procedures and functions	196
8.2.1	SetCWidestringManager	196
<b>9</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dateutils'</b>	<b>197</b>
9.1	Used units	197
9.2	Overview	197
9.3	Constants, types and variables	197
9.3.1	Constants	197
9.4	Procedures and functions	199
9.4.1	CompareDate	199
9.4.2	CompareDateTime	200
9.4.3	CompareTime	201
9.4.4	DateOf	202
9.4.5	DateTimeToDosDateTime	203
9.4.6	DateTimeToJulianDate	203
9.4.7	DateTimeToMac	203
9.4.8	DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate	204
9.4.9	DateTimeToUnix	204

9.4.10	DayOf	204
9.4.11	DayOfTheMonth	204
9.4.12	DayOfTheWeek	205
9.4.13	DayOfTheYear	205
9.4.14	DaysBetween	206
9.4.15	DaysInAMonth	206
9.4.16	DaysInAYear	207
9.4.17	DaysInMonth	208
9.4.18	DaysInYear	208
9.4.19	DaySpan	209
9.4.20	DecodeDateDay	209
9.4.21	DecodeDateMonthWeek	210
9.4.22	DecodeDateTime	211
9.4.23	DecodeDateWeek	211
9.4.24	DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth	212
9.4.25	DosDateTimeToDateTime	212
9.4.26	EncodeDateDay	213
9.4.27	EncodeDateMonthWeek	213
9.4.28	EncodeDateTime	213
9.4.29	EncodeDateWeek	214
9.4.30	EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth	214
9.4.31	EndOfADay	214
9.4.32	EndOfAMonth	215
9.4.33	EndOfAWeek	216
9.4.34	EndOfAYear	216
9.4.35	EndOfTheDay	217
9.4.36	EndOfTheMonth	217
9.4.37	EndOfTheWeek	218
9.4.38	EndOfTheYear	219
9.4.39	HourOf	219
9.4.40	HourOfTheDay	219
9.4.41	HourOfTheMonth	220
9.4.42	HourOfTheWeek	220
9.4.43	HourOfTheYear	221
9.4.44	HoursBetween	221
9.4.45	HourSpan	222
9.4.46	IncDay	223
9.4.47	IncHour	223
9.4.48	IncMilliSecond	224
9.4.49	IncMinute	224

9.4.50	IncSecond	225
9.4.51	IncWeek	225
9.4.52	IncYear	226
9.4.53	InvalidDateDayError	226
9.4.54	InvalidDateMonthWeekError	226
9.4.55	InvalidDateTimeError	227
9.4.56	InvalidDateWeekError	227
9.4.57	InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError	228
9.4.58	IsInLeapYear	228
9.4.59	IsPM	228
9.4.60	IsSameDay	229
9.4.61	IsToday	229
9.4.62	IsValidDate	230
9.4.63	IsValidDateDay	230
9.4.64	IsValidDateMonthWeek	231
9.4.65	IsValidDateTime	232
9.4.66	IsValidDateWeek	233
9.4.67	IsValidTime	234
9.4.68	JulianDateToDateTime	234
9.4.69	MacTimeStampToUnix	234
9.4.70	MacToDateTime	234
9.4.71	MilliSecondOf	235
9.4.72	MilliSecondOfTheDay	235
9.4.73	MilliSecondOfTheHour	235
9.4.74	MilliSecondOfTheMinute	235
9.4.75	MilliSecondOfTheMonth	236
9.4.76	MilliSecondOfTheSecond	236
9.4.77	MilliSecondOfTheWeek	237
9.4.78	MilliSecondOfTheYear	237
9.4.79	MilliSecondsBetween	237
9.4.80	MilliSecondSpan	238
9.4.81	MinuteOf	239
9.4.82	MinuteOfTheDay	239
9.4.83	MinuteOfTheHour	239
9.4.84	MinuteOfTheMonth	240
9.4.85	MinuteOfTheWeek	240
9.4.86	MinuteOfTheYear	241
9.4.87	MinutesBetween	241
9.4.88	MinuteSpan	242
9.4.89	ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime	243

9.4.90 MonthOf . . . . .	243
9.4.91 MonthOfTheYear . . . . .	243
9.4.92 MonthsBetween . . . . .	243
9.4.93 MonthSpan . . . . .	244
9.4.94 NthDayOfWeek . . . . .	245
9.4.95 PreviousDayOfWeek . . . . .	246
9.4.96 RecodeDate . . . . .	246
9.4.97 RecodeDateTime . . . . .	247
9.4.98 RecodeDay . . . . .	248
9.4.99 RecodeHour . . . . .	248
9.4.100 RecodeMilliSecond . . . . .	249
9.4.101 RecodeMinute . . . . .	250
9.4.102 RecodeMonth . . . . .	250
9.4.103 RecodeSecond . . . . .	251
9.4.104 RecodeTime . . . . .	252
9.4.105 RecodeYear . . . . .	252
9.4.106 SameDate . . . . .	253
9.4.107 SameDateTime . . . . .	254
9.4.108 SameTime . . . . .	255
9.4.109 ScanDateTime . . . . .	255
9.4.110 SecondOf . . . . .	256
9.4.111 SecondOfTheDay . . . . .	256
9.4.112 SecondOfTheHour . . . . .	256
9.4.113 SecondOfTheMinute . . . . .	257
9.4.114 SecondOfTheMonth . . . . .	257
9.4.115 SecondOfTheWeek . . . . .	257
9.4.116 SecondOfTheYear . . . . .	258
9.4.117 SecondsBetween . . . . .	258
9.4.118 SecondSpan . . . . .	259
9.4.119 StartOfADay . . . . .	260
9.4.120 StartOfAMonth . . . . .	261
9.4.121 StartOfAWeek . . . . .	261
9.4.122 StartOfAYear . . . . .	262
9.4.123 StartOfTheDay . . . . .	262
9.4.124 StartOfTheMonth . . . . .	263
9.4.125 StartOfTheWeek . . . . .	263
9.4.126 StartOfTheYear . . . . .	264
9.4.127 TimeOf . . . . .	264
9.4.128 Today . . . . .	265
9.4.129 Tomorrow . . . . .	265

9.4.130 TryEncodeDateDay . . . . .	266
9.4.131 TryEncodeDateMonthWeek . . . . .	266
9.4.132 TryEncodeDateTime . . . . .	267
9.4.133 TryEncodeDateWeek . . . . .	268
9.4.134 TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth . . . . .	268
9.4.135 TryJulianDateToDateTime . . . . .	269
9.4.136 TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime . . . . .	269
9.4.137 TryRecodeDateTime . . . . .	270
9.4.138 UnixTimeStampToMac . . . . .	271
9.4.139 UnixToDateTime . . . . .	271
9.4.140 WeekOf . . . . .	271
9.4.141 WeekOfTheMonth . . . . .	271
9.4.142 WeekOfTheYear . . . . .	272
9.4.143 WeeksBetween . . . . .	273
9.4.144 WeeksInAYear . . . . .	274
9.4.145 WeeksInYear . . . . .	274
9.4.146 WeekSpan . . . . .	275
9.4.147 WithinPastDays . . . . .	276
9.4.148 WithinPastHours . . . . .	277
9.4.149 WithinPastMilliSeconds . . . . .	278
9.4.150 WithinPastMinutes . . . . .	279
9.4.151 WithinPastMonths . . . . .	279
9.4.152 WithinPastSeconds . . . . .	280
9.4.153 WithinPastWeeks . . . . .	281
9.4.154 WithinPastYears . . . . .	282
9.4.155 YearOf . . . . .	283
9.4.156 YearsBetween . . . . .	284
9.4.157 YearSpan . . . . .	285
9.4.158 Yesterday . . . . .	286
<b>10 Reference for unit 'Dos' . . . . .</b>	<b>287</b>
10.1 System information . . . . .	287
10.2 Process handling . . . . .	287
10.3 Directory and disk handling . . . . .	287
10.4 File handling . . . . .	288
10.5 File open mode constants. . . . .	288
10.6 File attributes . . . . .	288
10.7 Used units . . . . .	289
10.8 Overview . . . . .	289
10.9 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	290

10.9.1 Constants . . . . .	290
10.9.2 Types . . . . .	291
10.9.3 Variables . . . . .	293
10.10 Procedures and functions . . . . .	294
10.10.1 AddDisk . . . . .	294
10.10.2 DiskFree . . . . .	294
10.10.3 DiskSize . . . . .	295
10.10.4 DosExitCode . . . . .	296
10.10.5 DosVersion . . . . .	296
10.10.6 DTToUnixDate . . . . .	297
10.10.7 EnvCount . . . . .	297
10.10.8 EnvStr . . . . .	298
10.10.9 Exec . . . . .	298
10.10.10 Expand . . . . .	298
10.10.11 FindClose . . . . .	299
10.10.12 FindFirst . . . . .	299
10.10.13 FindNext . . . . .	300
10.10.14 FindSearch . . . . .	300
10.10.15 FindSplit . . . . .	301
10.10.16 GetCBreak . . . . .	302
10.10.17 GetDate . . . . .	302
10.10.18 GetEnv . . . . .	303
10.10.19 GetFAttr . . . . .	303
10.10.20 GetFTime . . . . .	304
10.10.21 GetIntVec . . . . .	305
10.10.22 GetLongName . . . . .	305
10.10.23 GetMsCount . . . . .	305
10.10.24 GetShortName . . . . .	306
10.10.25 GetTime . . . . .	306
10.10.26 GetVerify . . . . .	307
10.10.27 InTr . . . . .	307
10.10.28 Keep . . . . .	307
10.10.29 MSDos . . . . .	308
10.10.30 PackTime . . . . .	308
10.10.31 SetCBreak . . . . .	309
10.10.32 SetDate . . . . .	309
10.10.33 SetFAttr . . . . .	309
10.10.34 SetFTime . . . . .	310
10.10.35 SetIntVec . . . . .	310
10.10.36 SetTime . . . . .	311

10.10.3	SetVerify	311
10.10.3	SwapVectors	311
10.10.3	UnixDateToDt	312
10.10.4	UnpackTime	312
10.10.4	weekday	312
<b>11</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dxeload'</b>	<b>313</b>
11.1	Overview	313
11.2	Procedures and functions	313
11.2.1	dxeload	313
<b>12</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dynlibs'</b>	<b>314</b>
12.1	Overview	314
12.2	Constants, types and variables	314
12.2.1	Constants	314
12.2.2	Types	314
12.3	Procedures and functions	315
12.3.1	FreeLibrary	315
12.3.2	GetProcAddress	315
12.3.3	GetProcedureAddress	315
12.3.4	LoadLibrary	315
12.3.5	SafeLoadLibrary	316
12.3.6	UnloadLibrary	316
<b>13</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'emu387'</b>	<b>317</b>
13.1	Overview	317
13.2	Procedures and functions	317
13.2.1	npsetup	317
<b>14</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'exeinfo'</b>	<b>318</b>
14.1	Overview	318
14.2	Constants, types and variables	318
14.2.1	Types	318
14.3	Procedures and functions	319
14.3.1	CloseExeFile	319
14.3.2	FindExeSection	319
14.3.3	GetModuleByAddr	319
14.3.4	OpenExeFile	319
14.3.5	ReadDebugLink	320
<b>15</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'getopts'</b>	<b>321</b>
15.1	Overview	321

15.2	Constants, types and variables	321
15.2.1	Constants	321
15.2.2	Types	322
15.2.3	Variables	322
15.3	Procedures and functions	323
15.3.1	GetLongOpts	323
15.3.2	GetOpt	323
<b>16</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'go32'</b>	<b>326</b>
16.1	Real mode callbacks	326
16.2	Executing software interrupts	327
16.3	Software interrupts	327
16.4	Hardware interrupts	327
16.5	Disabling interrupts	327
16.6	Creating your own interrupt handlers	327
16.7	Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts	328
16.8	Handling interrupts with DPMI	328
16.9	Interrupt redirection	328
16.10	Processor access	328
16.11	I/O port access	328
16.12	dos memory access	328
16.13	FPC specialities	329
16.14	Selectors and descriptors	329
16.15	What is DPMI	329
16.16	Overview	329
16.17	Constants, types and variables	330
16.17.1	Constants	330
16.17.2	Types	332
16.17.3	Variables	333
16.18	Procedures and functions	333
16.18.1	allocate_ldt_descriptors	333
16.18.2	allocate_memory_block	336
16.18.3	copyfromdos	336
16.18.4	copytodos	336
16.18.5	create_code_segment_alias_descriptor	337
16.18.6	disable	337
16.18.7	dpmi_dosmemfillchar	337
16.18.8	dpmi_dosmemfillword	338
16.18.9	dpmi_dosmemget	338
16.18.10	dpmi_dosmemmove	338

16.18.1	<code>lpmi_dosmempur</code>	338
16.18.2	<code>enable</code>	339
16.18.3	<code>free_ldt_descriptor</code>	339
16.18.4	<code>free_memory_block</code>	339
16.18.5	<code>free_rm_callback</code>	340
16.18.6	<code>get_cs</code>	340
16.18.7	<code>get_descriptor_access_right</code>	340
16.18.8	<code>get_ds</code>	341
16.18.9	<code>get_exception_handler</code>	341
16.18.20	<code>get_linear_addr</code>	341
16.18.2	<code>get_meminfo</code>	342
16.18.22	<code>get_next_selector_increment_value</code>	343
16.18.23	<code>get_page_size</code>	343
16.18.24	<code>get_pm_exception_handler</code>	344
16.18.25	<code>get_pm_interrupt</code>	344
16.18.26	<code>get_rm_callback</code>	344
16.18.27	<code>get_rm_interrupt</code>	347
16.18.28	<code>get_run_mode</code>	348
16.18.29	<code>get_segment_base_address</code>	348
16.18.30	<code>get_segment_limit</code>	349
16.18.3	<code>get_ss</code>	349
16.18.32	<code>global_dos_alloc</code>	349
16.18.33	<code>global_dos_free</code>	351
16.18.34	<code>inportb</code>	351
16.18.35	<code>inportl</code>	352
16.18.36	<code>inportw</code>	352
16.18.37	<code>lock_code</code>	352
16.18.38	<code>lock_data</code>	353
16.18.39	<code>lock_linear_region</code>	353
16.18.40	<code>map_device_in_memory_block</code>	353
16.18.4	<code>outportb</code>	354
16.18.42	<code>outportl</code>	354
16.18.43	<code>outportw</code>	355
16.18.44	<code>realintr</code>	355
16.18.45	<code>request_linear_region</code>	356
16.18.46	<code>segment_to_descriptor</code>	356
16.18.47	<code>seg_fillchar</code>	356
16.18.48	<code>seg_fillword</code>	357
16.18.49	<code>seg_move</code>	358
16.18.50	<code>set_descriptor_access_right</code>	358

16.18.5	set_exception_handler	358
16.18.53	set_pm_exception_handler	359
16.18.53	set_pm_interrupt	359
16.18.54	set_rm_interrupt	360
16.18.55	set_segment_base_address	360
16.18.56	set_segment_limit	361
16.18.57	b_offset	361
16.18.58	b_segment	361
16.18.59	b_size	362
16.18.60	transfer_buffer	362
16.18.61	unlock_code	362
16.18.62	unlock_data	363
16.18.63	unlock_linear_region	363
<b>17</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'gpm'</b>	<b>364</b>
17.1	Used units	364
17.2	Overview	364
17.3	Constants, types and variables	364
17.3.1	Constants	364
17.3.2	Types	366
17.3.3	Variables	368
17.4	Procedures and functions	369
17.4.1	Gpm_AnyDouble	369
17.4.2	Gpm_AnySingle	369
17.4.3	Gpm_AnyTriple	369
17.4.4	gpm_close	370
17.4.5	gpm_fitvalues	370
17.4.6	gpm_fitvaluesM	370
17.4.7	gpm_getevent	370
17.4.8	gpm_getsnapshot	372
17.4.9	gpm_lowerroi	372
17.4.10	gpm_open	372
17.4.11	gpm_poproi	373
17.4.12	gpm_pushroi	373
17.4.13	gpm_raiseroi	373
17.4.14	gpm_repeat	373
17.4.15	Gpm_StrictDouble	374
17.4.16	Gpm_StrictSingle	374
17.4.17	Gpm_StrictTriple	374
<b>18</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Graph'</b>	<b>375</b>

18.1 Categorized functions: Text and font handling . . . . .	375
18.2 Categorized functions: Filled drawings . . . . .	375
18.3 Categorized functions: Drawing primitives . . . . .	375
18.4 Categorized functions: Color management . . . . .	375
18.5 Categorized functions: Screen management . . . . .	376
18.6 Categorized functions: Initialization . . . . .	376
18.7 Target specific issues: Linux . . . . .	376
18.8 Target specific issues: DOS . . . . .	378
18.9 A word about mode selection . . . . .	378
18.10 Requirements . . . . .	380
18.11 Overview . . . . .	380
18.12 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	380
18.12.1 Constants . . . . .	380
18.12.2 Types . . . . .	395
18.12.3 Variables . . . . .	400
18.13 Procedures and functions . . . . .	402
18.13.1 Arc . . . . .	402
18.13.2 Bar . . . . .	403
18.13.3 Bar3D . . . . .	403
18.13.4 ClearDevice . . . . .	403
18.13.5 Closegraph . . . . .	403
18.13.6 DetectGraph . . . . .	404
18.13.7 DrawPoly . . . . .	404
18.13.8 Ellipse . . . . .	404
18.13.9 FillEllipse . . . . .	404
18.13.10 FillPoly . . . . .	405
18.13.11 FloodFill . . . . .	405
18.13.12 GetArcCoords . . . . .	405
18.13.13 GetAspectRatio . . . . .	406
18.13.14 GetBkColor . . . . .	406
18.13.15 GetColor . . . . .	406
18.13.16 GetDefaultPalette . . . . .	406
18.13.17 GetDirectVideo . . . . .	407
18.13.18 GetDriverName . . . . .	407
18.13.19 GetFillPattern . . . . .	407
18.13.20 GetFillSettings . . . . .	407
18.13.21 GetGraphMode . . . . .	408
18.13.22 GetLineSettings . . . . .	408
18.13.23 GetMaxColor . . . . .	408
18.13.24 GetMaxMode . . . . .	408

18.13.2	GetMaxX	409
18.13.2	GetMaxY	409
18.13.2	GetModeName	409
18.13.2	GetModeRange	409
18.13.2	GetPalette	410
18.13.3	GetPaletteSize	410
18.13.3	GetTextSettings	410
18.13.3	GetViewSettings	410
18.13.3	GetX	411
18.13.3	GetY	411
18.13.3	GraphDefaults	411
18.13.3	GraphErrorMsg	411
18.13.3	GraphResult	412
18.13.3	initGraph	412
18.13.3	installUserDriver	413
18.13.4	installUserFont	413
18.13.4	LineRel	413
18.13.4	LineTo	414
18.13.4	MoveRel	414
18.13.4	MoveTo	414
18.13.4	OutText	414
18.13.4	PieSlice	415
18.13.4	queryadapterinfo	415
18.13.4	Rectangle	415
18.13.4	RegisterBGIDriver	415
18.13.5	RegisterBGIfont	416
18.13.5	RestoreCrtMode	416
18.13.5	Sector	416
18.13.5	SetAspectRatio	416
18.13.5	SetBkColor	417
18.13.5	SetColor	417
18.13.5	SetDirectVideo	417
18.13.5	SetFillPattern	417
18.13.5	SetFillStyle	418
18.13.5	SetGraphMode	418
18.13.6	SetLineStyle	418
18.13.6	SetPalette	419
18.13.6	SetTextJustify	419
18.13.6	SetTextStyle	420
18.13.6	SetUserCharSize	420

18.13.6	SetViewPort	421
18.13.6	SetWriteMode	421
18.13.6	TextHeight	421
18.13.6	TextWidth	421
<b>19</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'heaptrc'</b>	<b>423</b>
19.1	Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables	423
19.2	HeapTrc Usage	423
19.3	Overview	424
19.4	Constants, types and variables	424
19.4.1	Constants	424
19.4.2	Types	425
19.5	Procedures and functions	426
19.5.1	DumpHeap	426
19.5.2	SetHeapExtraInfo	426
19.5.3	SetHeapTraceOutput	427
<b>20</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ipc'</b>	<b>429</b>
20.1	Used units	429
20.2	Overview	429
20.3	Constants, types and variables	429
20.3.1	Constants	429
20.3.2	Types	432
20.4	Procedures and functions	436
20.4.1	ftok	436
20.4.2	msgctl	436
20.4.3	msgget	439
20.4.4	msgrcv	439
20.4.5	msgsnd	440
20.4.6	semctl	440
20.4.7	semget	445
20.4.8	semop	445
20.4.9	shmat	446
20.4.10	shmctl	447
20.4.11	shmdt	449
20.4.12	shmget	449
<b>21</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'keyboard'</b>	<b>450</b>
21.1	Unix specific notes	450
21.2	Writing a keyboard driver	451
21.3	Keyboard scan codes	452

21.4 Overview . . . . .	452
21.5 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	452
21.5.1 Constants . . . . .	452
21.5.2 Types . . . . .	457
21.6 Procedures and functions . . . . .	458
21.6.1 AddSequence . . . . .	458
21.6.2 AddSpecialSequence . . . . .	458
21.6.3 DoneKeyboard . . . . .	459
21.6.4 FindSequence . . . . .	459
21.6.5 FunctionKeyName . . . . .	459
21.6.6 GetKeyboardDriver . . . . .	460
21.6.7 GetKeyEvent . . . . .	460
21.6.8 GetKeyEventChar . . . . .	461
21.6.9 GetKeyEventCode . . . . .	461
21.6.10 GetKeyEventFlags . . . . .	462
21.6.11 GetKeyEventShiftState . . . . .	463
21.6.12 GetKeyEventUniCode . . . . .	463
21.6.13 InitKeyboard . . . . .	464
21.6.14 IsFunctionKey . . . . .	464
21.6.15 KeyEventToString . . . . .	465
21.6.16 KeyPressed . . . . .	465
21.6.17 PollKeyEvent . . . . .	465
21.6.18 PollShiftStateEvent . . . . .	466
21.6.19 PutKeyEvent . . . . .	467
21.6.20 RawReadKey . . . . .	468
21.6.21 RawReadString . . . . .	468
21.6.22 RestoreStartMode . . . . .	468
21.6.23 SetKeyboardDriver . . . . .	468
21.6.24 ShiftStateToString . . . . .	469
21.6.25 TranslateKeyEvent . . . . .	469
21.6.26 TranslateKeyEventUniCode . . . . .	469
<b>22 Reference for unit 'lineinfo' . . . . .</b>	<b>472</b>
22.1 Overview . . . . .	472
22.2 Procedures and functions . . . . .	472
22.2.1 GetLineInfo . . . . .	472
<b>23 Reference for unit 'Linux' . . . . .</b>	<b>473</b>
23.1 Used units . . . . .	473
23.2 Overview . . . . .	473
23.3 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	473

23.3.1	Constants	473
23.3.2	Types	485
23.4	Procedures and functions	487
23.4.1	capget	487
23.4.2	capset	487
23.4.3	epoll_create	488
23.4.4	epoll_ctl	488
23.4.5	epoll_wait	489
23.4.6	fdatsync	489
23.4.7	futex_op	489
23.4.8	sync_file_range	489
23.4.9	Sysinfo	490
<b>24</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Infodwrf'</b>	<b>492</b>
24.1	Overview	492
24.2	Procedures and functions	492
24.2.1	GetLineInfo	492
<b>25</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'math'</b>	<b>493</b>
25.1	Geometrical functions	493
25.2	Statistical functions	493
25.3	Number converting	494
25.4	Exponential and logarithmic functions	494
25.5	Hyperbolic functions	494
25.6	Trigonometric functions	494
25.7	Angle unit conversion	494
25.8	Min/max determination	495
25.9	Used units	495
25.10	Overview	495
25.11	Constants, types and variables	496
25.11.1	Constants	496
25.11.2	Types	497
25.12	Procedures and functions	499
25.12.1	arccos	499
25.12.2	arccosh	499
25.12.3	arcosh	500
25.12.4	arcsin	500
25.12.5	arsinh	501
25.12.6	arctan2	501
25.12.7	arctanh	502
25.12.8	arsinh	502

25.12.9 artanh	502
25.12.10 ceil	503
25.12.11 ClearExceptions	503
25.12.12 CompareValue	503
25.12.13 cosecant	504
25.12.14 cosh	504
25.12.15 cot	505
25.12.16 cotan	505
25.12.17 csc	505
25.12.18 cycletorad	506
25.12.19 degtograd	506
25.12.20 degtorad	507
25.12.21 DivMod	507
25.12.22 EnsureRange	507
25.12.23 floor	508
25.12.24 frexp	508
25.12.25 GetExceptionMask	509
25.12.26 GetPrecisionMode	509
25.12.27 GetRoundMode	509
25.12.28 gradtodeg	509
25.12.29 gradtorad	510
25.12.30 hypot	511
25.12.31 Ifthen	511
25.12.32 InRange	511
25.12.33 ntpower	512
25.12.34 IsInfinite	512
25.12.35 IsNan	512
25.12.36 IsZero	513
25.12.37 ldexp	513
25.12.38 lnxp1	514
25.12.39 log10	514
25.12.40 log2	515
25.12.41 logn	515
25.12.42 Max	516
25.12.43 MaxIntValue	516
25.12.44 maxvalue	517
25.12.45 mean	518
25.12.46 meanandstddev	519
25.12.47 Min	519
25.12.48 MinIntValue	520

25.12.49	minvalue	521
25.12.50	momentskewkurtosis	522
25.12.51	norm	522
25.12.52	operator ** (float, float): float	523
25.12.53	operator ** (Int64, Int64): Int64	523
25.12.54	popnstddev	523
25.12.55	popnvariance	524
25.12.56	power	525
25.12.57	radto cycle	525
25.12.58	radto deg	526
25.12.59	radto grad	526
25.12.60	randg	527
25.12.61	RandomFrom	527
25.12.62	RandomRange	528
25.12.63	RoundTo	528
25.12.64	SameValue	528
25.12.65	sec	529
25.12.66	secant	529
25.12.67	SetExceptionMask	529
25.12.68	SetPrecisionMode	529
25.12.69	SetRoundMode	529
25.12.70	Sign	530
25.12.71	SimpleRoundTo	530
25.12.72	sincos	530
25.12.73	sinh	531
25.12.74	stddev	531
25.12.75	sum	532
25.12.76	sumInt	533
25.12.77	sumofsquares	533
25.12.78	sumsandsquares	534
25.12.79	tan	534
25.12.80	tanh	535
25.12.81	totalvariance	535
25.12.82	variance	536
25.13	invalidargument	537
25.13.1	Description	537
<b>26</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'matrix'</b>	<b>538</b>
26.1	Overview	538
26.2	Constants, types and variables	539

26.2.1	Types	539
26.3	Procedures and functions	541
26.3.1	operator *(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double	541
26.3.2	operator *(Tmatrix2_double, Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double	541
26.3.3	operator *(Tmatrix2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double	542
26.3.4	operator *(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended	542
26.3.5	operator *(Tmatrix2_extended, Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_extended	542
26.3.6	operator *(Tmatrix2_extended, Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_extended	542
26.3.7	operator *(Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single	543
26.3.8	operator *(Tmatrix2_single, Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single	543
26.3.9	operator *(Tmatrix2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single	543
26.3.10	operator *(Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double	543
26.3.11	operator *(Tmatrix3_double, Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double	544
26.3.12	operator *(Tmatrix3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double	544
26.3.13	operator *(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended	544
26.3.14	operator *(Tmatrix3_extended, Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_extended	544
26.3.15	operator *(Tmatrix3_extended, Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended	545
26.3.16	operator *(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single	545
26.3.17	operator *(Tmatrix3_single, Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single	545
26.3.18	operator *(Tmatrix3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single	546
26.3.19	operator *(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double	546
26.3.20	operator *(Tmatrix4_double, Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double	546
26.3.21	operator *(Tmatrix4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double	546
26.3.22	operator *(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended	547
26.3.23	operator *(Tmatrix4_extended, Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_extended	547
26.3.24	operator *(Tmatrix4_extended, Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_extended	547
26.3.25	operator *(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single	547
26.3.26	operator *(Tmatrix4_single, Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single	548
26.3.27	operator *(Tmatrix4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single	548
26.3.28	operator *(Tvector2_double, double): Tvector2_double	548
26.3.29	operator *(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double	548
26.3.30	operator *(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended	549
26.3.31	operator *(Tvector2_extended, Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_extended	549
26.3.32	operator *(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single	549
26.3.33	operator *(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single	549
26.3.34	operator *(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double	550
26.3.35	operator *(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double	550
26.3.36	operator *(Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended	550
26.3.37	operator *(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended	550
26.3.38	operator *(Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single	551

26.3.39 operator *(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	551
26.3.40 operator *(Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	551
26.3.41 operator *(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	551
26.3.42 operator *(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	552
26.3.43 operator *(Tvector4_extended, Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	552
26.3.44 operator *(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	552
26.3.45 operator *(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	552
26.3.46 operator **(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): double . . . . .	553
26.3.47 operator **(Tvector2_extended, Tvector2_extended): extended . . . . .	553
26.3.48 operator **(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): single . . . . .	553
26.3.49 operator **(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): double . . . . .	553
26.3.50 operator **(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): extended . . . . .	554
26.3.51 operator **(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): single . . . . .	554
26.3.52 operator **(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): double . . . . .	554
26.3.53 operator **(Tvector4_extended, Tvector4_extended): extended . . . . .	554
26.3.54 operator **(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): single . . . . .	555
26.3.55 operator +(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	555
26.3.56 operator +(Tmatrix2_double, Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	555
26.3.57 operator +(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	555
26.3.58 operator +(Tmatrix2_extended, Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	556
26.3.59 operator +(Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	556
26.3.60 operator +(Tmatrix2_single, Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	556
26.3.61 operator +(Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	556
26.3.62 operator +(Tmatrix3_double, Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	557
26.3.63 operator +(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	557
26.3.64 operator +(Tmatrix3_extended, Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	557
26.3.65 operator +(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	557
26.3.66 operator +(Tmatrix3_single, Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	558
26.3.67 operator +(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	558
26.3.68 operator +(Tmatrix4_double, Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	558
26.3.69 operator +(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	558
26.3.70 operator +(Tmatrix4_extended, Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	559
26.3.71 operator +(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	559
26.3.72 operator +(Tmatrix4_single, Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	559
26.3.73 operator +(Tvector2_double, double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	559
26.3.74 operator +(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	560
26.3.75 operator +(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	560
26.3.76 operator +(Tvector2_extended, Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	560
26.3.77 operator +(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	560
26.3.78 operator +(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	561

26.3.79 operator +(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	561
26.3.80 operator +(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	561
26.3.81 operator +(Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	561
26.3.82 operator +(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended . . .	562
26.3.83 operator +(Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	562
26.3.84 operator +(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	562
26.3.85 operator +(Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	562
26.3.86 operator +(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	563
26.3.87 operator +(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	563
26.3.88 operator +(Tvector4_extended, Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_extended . . .	563
26.3.89 operator +(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	563
26.3.90 operator +(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	564
26.3.91 operator -(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	564
26.3.92 operator -(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	564
26.3.93 operator -(Tmatrix2_double, Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	564
26.3.94 operator -(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	565
26.3.95 operator -(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	565
26.3.96 operator -(Tmatrix2_extended, Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_extended . .	565
26.3.97 operator -(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	565
26.3.98 operator -(Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	566
26.3.99 operator -(Tmatrix2_single, Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	566
26.3.100 operator -(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	566
26.3.101 operator -(Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	566
26.3.102 operator -(Tmatrix3_double, Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	567
26.3.103 operator -(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	567
26.3.104 operator -(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	567
26.3.105 operator -(Tmatrix3_extended, Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_extended . .	567
26.3.106 operator -(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	568
26.3.107 operator -(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	568
26.3.108 operator -(Tmatrix3_single, Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	568
26.3.109 operator -(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	568
26.3.110 operator -(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	569
26.3.111 operator -(Tmatrix4_double, Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	569
26.3.112 operator -(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	569
26.3.113 operator -(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	569
26.3.114 operator -(Tmatrix4_extended, Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_extended . .	570
26.3.115 operator -(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	570
26.3.116 operator -(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	570
26.3.117 operator -(Tmatrix4_single, Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	570
26.3.118 operator -(Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	571

26.3.119	operator -(Tvector2_double, double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	571
26.3.120	operator -(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	571
26.3.121	operator -(Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	571
26.3.122	operator -(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	572
26.3.123	operator -(Tvector2_extended, Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	572
26.3.124	operator -(Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	572
26.3.125	operator -(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	572
26.3.126	operator -(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	573
26.3.127	operator -(Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	573
26.3.128	operator -(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	573
26.3.129	operator -(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	573
26.3.130	operator -(Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	574
26.3.131	operator -(Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	574
26.3.132	operator -(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	574
26.3.133	operator -(Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	574
26.3.134	operator -(Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	575
26.3.135	operator -(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	575
26.3.136	operator -(Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	575
26.3.137	operator -(Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	575
26.3.138	operator -(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	576
26.3.139	operator -(Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	576
26.3.140	operator -(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	576
26.3.141	operator -(Tvector4_extended, Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	576
26.3.142	operator -(Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	577
26.3.143	operator -(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	577
26.3.144	operator -(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	577
26.3.145	operator /(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	577
26.3.146	operator /(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	578
26.3.147	operator /(Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	578
26.3.148	operator /(Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	578
26.3.149	operator /(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	578
26.3.150	operator /(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	579
26.3.151	operator /(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	579
26.3.152	operator /(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	579
26.3.153	operator /(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	579
26.3.154	operator /(Tvector2_double, double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	580
26.3.155	operator /(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	580
26.3.156	operator /(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	580
26.3.157	operator /(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	580
26.3.158	operator /(Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	581

26.3.159	operator /(Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	581
26.3.160	operator /(Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	581
26.3.161	operator /(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	581
26.3.162	operator /(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	582
26.3.163	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	582
26.3.164	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	582
26.3.165	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	582
26.3.166	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	583
26.3.167	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	583
26.3.168	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	583
26.3.169	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	583
26.3.170	operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	584
26.3.171	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	584
26.3.172	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	584
26.3.173	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	584
26.3.174	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	585
26.3.175	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	585
26.3.176	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	585
26.3.177	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	585
26.3.178	operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	586
26.3.179	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	586
26.3.180	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	586
26.3.181	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	586
26.3.182	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	587
26.3.183	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	587
26.3.184	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	587
26.3.185	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	587
26.3.186	operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	588
26.3.187	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	588
26.3.188	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	588
26.3.189	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	588
26.3.190	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	589
26.3.191	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	589
26.3.192	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	589
26.3.193	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	589
26.3.194	operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	590
26.3.195	operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	590
26.3.196	operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	590
26.3.197	operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	591
26.3.198	operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	591

26.3.199operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	591
26.3.200operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	591
26.3.201operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	592
26.3.202operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	592
26.3.203operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	592
26.3.204operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	592
26.3.205operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	593
26.3.206operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	593
26.3.207operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	593
26.3.208operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	593
26.3.209operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	594
26.3.210operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	594
26.3.211operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	594
26.3.212operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	594
26.3.213operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	595
26.3.214operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	595
26.3.215operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	595
26.3.216operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	595
26.3.217operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	596
26.3.218operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	596
26.3.219operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	596
26.3.220operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	596
26.3.221operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	597
26.3.222operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	597
26.3.223operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	597
26.3.224operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	597
26.3.225operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	598
26.3.226operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	598
26.3.227operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	598
26.3.228operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	598
26.3.229operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	599
26.3.230operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	599
26.3.231operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	599
26.3.232operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	599
26.3.233operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	600
26.3.234operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	600
26.3.235operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	600
26.3.236operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector2_single . . . . .	600
26.3.237operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	601
26.3.238operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	601

26.3.239	operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector3_single . . . . .	601
26.3.240	operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	601
26.3.241	operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	602
26.3.242	operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector4_single . . . . .	602
26.3.243	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_double . . . . .	602
26.3.244	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_single . . . . .	602
26.3.245	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector3_double . . . . .	603
26.3.246	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	603
26.3.247	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector3_single . . . . .	603
26.3.248	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector4_double . . . . .	603
26.3.249	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	604
26.3.250	operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector4_single . . . . .	604
26.3.251	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector2_double . . . . .	604
26.3.252	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	604
26.3.253	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector3_double . . . . .	605
26.3.254	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	605
26.3.255	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	605
26.3.256	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector4_double . . . . .	605
26.3.257	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	606
26.3.258	operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	606
26.3.259	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	606
26.3.260	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	606
26.3.261	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector2_single . . . . .	607
26.3.262	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	607
26.3.263	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector3_single . . . . .	607
26.3.264	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector4_double . . . . .	607
26.3.265	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	608
26.3.266	operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector4_single . . . . .	608
26.3.267	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector2_double . . . . .	608
26.3.268	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	608
26.3.269	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector2_single . . . . .	609
26.3.270	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_double . . . . .	609
26.3.271	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_single . . . . .	609
26.3.272	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector4_double . . . . .	609
26.3.273	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	610
26.3.274	operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector4_single . . . . .	610
26.3.275	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector2_double . . . . .	610
26.3.276	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	610
26.3.277	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	611
26.3.278	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector3_double . . . . .	611

26.3.279	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	611
26.3.280	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector4_double . . . . .	611
26.3.281	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	612
26.3.282	operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector4_single . . . . .	612
26.3.283	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector2_double . . . . .	612
26.3.284	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	612
26.3.285	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector2_single . . . . .	613
26.3.286	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	613
26.3.287	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	613
26.3.288	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector3_single . . . . .	613
26.3.289	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	614
26.3.290	operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector4_single . . . . .	614
26.3.291	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector2_double . . . . .	614
26.3.292	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	615
26.3.293	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector2_single . . . . .	615
26.3.294	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector3_double . . . . .	615
26.3.295	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	615
26.3.296	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector3_single . . . . .	616
26.3.297	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_double . . . . .	616
26.3.298	operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_single . . . . .	616
26.3.299	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector2_double . . . . .	616
26.3.300	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector2_extended . . . . .	617
26.3.301	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector2_single . . . . .	617
26.3.302	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector3_double . . . . .	617
26.3.303	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	618
26.3.304	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	618
26.3.305	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector4_double . . . . .	618
26.3.306	operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector4_extended . . . . .	618
26.3.307	operator ><(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double . . . . .	619
26.3.308	operator ><(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended . . . . .	619
26.3.309	operator ><(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single . . . . .	619
26.4	Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	620
26.4.1	Description . . . . .	620
26.4.2	Method overview . . . . .	620
26.4.3	Tmatrix2_double.init_zero . . . . .	620
26.4.4	Tmatrix2_double.init_identity . . . . .	620
26.4.5	Tmatrix2_double.init . . . . .	620
26.4.6	Tmatrix2_double.get_column . . . . .	621
26.4.7	Tmatrix2_double.get_row . . . . .	621
26.4.8	Tmatrix2_double.set_column . . . . .	621

26.4.9	Tmatrix2_double.set_row	621
26.4.10	Tmatrix2_double.determinant	621
26.4.11	Tmatrix2_double.inverse	621
26.4.12	Tmatrix2_double.transpose	622
26.5	Tmatrix2_extended	622
26.5.1	Description	622
26.5.2	Method overview	622
26.5.3	Tmatrix2_extended.init_zero	622
26.5.4	Tmatrix2_extended.init_identity	622
26.5.5	Tmatrix2_extended.init	623
26.5.6	Tmatrix2_extended.get_column	623
26.5.7	Tmatrix2_extended.get_row	623
26.5.8	Tmatrix2_extended.set_column	623
26.5.9	Tmatrix2_extended.set_row	623
26.5.10	Tmatrix2_extended.determinant	623
26.5.11	Tmatrix2_extended.inverse	624
26.5.12	Tmatrix2_extended.transpose	624
26.6	Tmatrix2_single	624
26.6.1	Description	624
26.6.2	Method overview	624
26.6.3	Tmatrix2_single.init_zero	624
26.6.4	Tmatrix2_single.init_identity	625
26.6.5	Tmatrix2_single.init	625
26.6.6	Tmatrix2_single.get_column	625
26.6.7	Tmatrix2_single.get_row	625
26.6.8	Tmatrix2_single.set_column	625
26.6.9	Tmatrix2_single.set_row	626
26.6.10	Tmatrix2_single.determinant	626
26.6.11	Tmatrix2_single.inverse	626
26.6.12	Tmatrix2_single.transpose	626
26.7	Tmatrix3_double	626
26.7.1	Description	626
26.7.2	Method overview	627
26.7.3	Tmatrix3_double.init_zero	627
26.7.4	Tmatrix3_double.init_identity	627
26.7.5	Tmatrix3_double.init	627
26.7.6	Tmatrix3_double.get_column	627
26.7.7	Tmatrix3_double.get_row	628
26.7.8	Tmatrix3_double.set_column	628
26.7.9	Tmatrix3_double.set_row	628

26.7.10	Tmatrix3_double.determinant	628
26.7.11	Tmatrix3_double.inverse	628
26.7.12	Tmatrix3_double.transpose	628
26.8	Tmatrix3_extended	629
26.8.1	Description	629
26.8.2	Method overview	629
26.8.3	Tmatrix3_extended.init_zero	629
26.8.4	Tmatrix3_extended.init_identity	629
26.8.5	Tmatrix3_extended.init	629
26.8.6	Tmatrix3_extended.get_column	630
26.8.7	Tmatrix3_extended.get_row	630
26.8.8	Tmatrix3_extended.set_column	630
26.8.9	Tmatrix3_extended.set_row	630
26.8.10	Tmatrix3_extended.determinant	630
26.8.11	Tmatrix3_extended.inverse	630
26.8.12	Tmatrix3_extended.transpose	631
26.9	Tmatrix3_single	631
26.9.1	Description	631
26.9.2	Method overview	631
26.9.3	Tmatrix3_single.init_zero	631
26.9.4	Tmatrix3_single.init_identity	631
26.9.5	Tmatrix3_single.init	632
26.9.6	Tmatrix3_single.get_column	632
26.9.7	Tmatrix3_single.get_row	632
26.9.8	Tmatrix3_single.set_column	632
26.9.9	Tmatrix3_single.set_row	632
26.9.10	Tmatrix3_single.determinant	633
26.9.11	Tmatrix3_single.inverse	633
26.9.12	Tmatrix3_single.transpose	633
26.10	Tmatrix4_double	633
26.10.1	Description	633
26.10.2	Method overview	633
26.10.3	Tmatrix4_double.init_zero	634
26.10.4	Tmatrix4_double.init_identity	634
26.10.5	Tmatrix4_double.init	634
26.10.6	Tmatrix4_double.get_column	634
26.10.7	Tmatrix4_double.get_row	634
26.10.8	Tmatrix4_double.set_column	635
26.10.9	Tmatrix4_double.set_row	635
26.10.10	Tmatrix4_double.determinant	635

26.10.1	<a href="#">Imatrix4_double.inverse</a>	635
26.10.12	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.transpose</a>	635
26.11	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended</a>	636
26.11.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	636
26.11.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	636
26.11.3	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.init_zero</a>	636
26.11.4	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.init_identity</a>	636
26.11.5	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.init</a>	636
26.11.6	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.get_column</a>	637
26.11.7	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.get_row</a>	637
26.11.8	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.set_column</a>	637
26.11.9	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.set_row</a>	637
26.11.10	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.determinant</a>	637
26.11.11	<a href="#">Imatrix4_extended.inverse</a>	638
26.11.12	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.transpose</a>	638
26.12	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single</a>	638
26.12.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	638
26.12.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	638
26.12.3	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.init_zero</a>	638
26.12.4	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.init_identity</a>	639
26.12.5	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.init</a>	639
26.12.6	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.get_column</a>	639
26.12.7	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.get_row</a>	639
26.12.8	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.set_column</a>	639
26.12.9	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.set_row</a>	640
26.12.10	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.determinant</a>	640
26.12.11	<a href="#">Imatrix4_single.inverse</a>	640
26.12.12	<a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.transpose</a>	640
26.13	<a href="#">Tvector2_double</a>	640
26.13.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	640
26.13.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	641
26.13.3	<a href="#">Tvector2_double.init_zero</a>	641
26.13.4	<a href="#">Tvector2_double.init_one</a>	641
26.13.5	<a href="#">Tvector2_double.init</a>	641
26.13.6	<a href="#">Tvector2_double.length</a>	641
26.13.7	<a href="#">Tvector2_double.squared_length</a>	641
26.14	<a href="#">Tvector2_extended</a>	642
26.14.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	642
26.14.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	642
26.14.3	<a href="#">Tvector2_extended.init_zero</a>	642

---

26.14.4 Tvector2_extended.init_one . . . . .	642
26.14.5 Tvector2_extended.init . . . . .	642
26.14.6 Tvector2_extended.length . . . . .	642
26.14.7 Tvector2_extended.squared_length . . . . .	643
26.15 Tvector2_single . . . . .	643
26.15.1 Description . . . . .	643
26.15.2 Method overview . . . . .	643
26.15.3 Tvector2_single.init_zero . . . . .	643
26.15.4 Tvector2_single.init_one . . . . .	643
26.15.5 Tvector2_single.init . . . . .	643
26.15.6 Tvector2_single.length . . . . .	644
26.15.7 Tvector2_single.squared_length . . . . .	644
26.16 Tvector3_double . . . . .	644
26.16.1 Description . . . . .	644
26.16.2 Method overview . . . . .	644
26.16.3 Tvector3_double.init_zero . . . . .	644
26.16.4 Tvector3_double.init_one . . . . .	644
26.16.5 Tvector3_double.init . . . . .	645
26.16.6 Tvector3_double.length . . . . .	645
26.16.7 Tvector3_double.squared_length . . . . .	645
26.17 Tvector3_extended . . . . .	645
26.17.1 Description . . . . .	645
26.17.2 Method overview . . . . .	645
26.17.3 Tvector3_extended.init_zero . . . . .	645
26.17.4 Tvector3_extended.init_one . . . . .	646
26.17.5 Tvector3_extended.init . . . . .	646
26.17.6 Tvector3_extended.length . . . . .	646
26.17.7 Tvector3_extended.squared_length . . . . .	646
26.18 Tvector3_single . . . . .	646
26.18.1 Description . . . . .	646
26.18.2 Method overview . . . . .	646
26.18.3 Tvector3_single.init_zero . . . . .	647
26.18.4 Tvector3_single.init_one . . . . .	647
26.18.5 Tvector3_single.init . . . . .	647
26.18.6 Tvector3_single.length . . . . .	647
26.18.7 Tvector3_single.squared_length . . . . .	647
26.19 Tvector4_double . . . . .	647
26.19.1 Description . . . . .	647
26.19.2 Method overview . . . . .	648
26.19.3 Tvector4_double.init_zero . . . . .	648

26.19.4 Tvector4_double.init_one . . . . .	648
26.19.5 Tvector4_double.init . . . . .	648
26.19.6 Tvector4_double.length . . . . .	648
26.19.7 Tvector4_double.squared_length . . . . .	648
26.20 Tvector4_extended . . . . .	649
26.20.1 Description . . . . .	649
26.20.2 Method overview . . . . .	649
26.20.3 Tvector4_extended.init_zero . . . . .	649
26.20.4 Tvector4_extended.init_one . . . . .	649
26.20.5 Tvector4_extended.init . . . . .	649
26.20.6 Tvector4_extended.length . . . . .	649
26.20.7 Tvector4_extended.squared_length . . . . .	650
26.21 Tvector4_single . . . . .	650
26.21.1 Description . . . . .	650
26.21.2 Method overview . . . . .	650
26.21.3 Tvector4_single.init_zero . . . . .	650
26.21.4 Tvector4_single.init_one . . . . .	650
26.21.5 Tvector4_single.init . . . . .	650
26.21.6 Tvector4_single.length . . . . .	651
26.21.7 Tvector4_single.squared_length . . . . .	651
<b>27 Reference for unit 'mmx'</b>	<b>652</b>
27.1 Overview . . . . .	652
27.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	652
27.2.1 Constants . . . . .	652
27.2.2 Types . . . . .	653
27.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	654
27.3.1 emms . . . . .	654
27.3.2 femms . . . . .	654
<b>28 Reference for unit 'Mouse'</b>	<b>655</b>
28.1 Writing a custom mouse driver . . . . .	655
28.2 Overview . . . . .	655
28.3 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	655
28.3.1 Constants . . . . .	655
28.3.2 Types . . . . .	656
28.3.3 Variables . . . . .	657
28.4 Procedures and functions . . . . .	657
28.4.1 DetectMouse . . . . .	657
28.4.2 DoneMouse . . . . .	658
28.4.3 GetMouseButtons . . . . .	658

28.4.4	GetMouseDriver	659
28.4.5	GetMouseEvent	659
28.4.6	GetMouseX	659
28.4.7	GetMouseY	660
28.4.8	HideMouse	660
28.4.9	InitMouse	661
28.4.10	PollMouseEvent	662
28.4.11	PutMouseEvent	662
28.4.12	SetMouseDriver	662
28.4.13	SetMouseXY	663
28.4.14	ShowMouse	663
<b>29</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Objects'</b>	<b>664</b>
29.1	Overview	664
29.2	Constants, types and variables	664
29.2.1	Constants	664
29.2.2	Types	666
29.2.3	Variables	670
29.3	Procedures and functions	670
29.3.1	Abstract	670
29.3.2	CallPointerConstructor	670
29.3.3	CallPointerLocal	671
29.3.4	CallPointerMethod	671
29.3.5	CallPointerMethodLocal	671
29.3.6	CallVoidConstructor	672
29.3.7	CallVoidLocal	672
29.3.8	CallVoidMethod	672
29.3.9	CallVoidMethodLocal	673
29.3.10	DisposeStr	673
29.3.11	LongDiv	673
29.3.12	LongMul	673
29.3.13	NewStr	674
29.3.14	RegisterObjects	674
29.3.15	RegisterType	675
29.3.16	SetStr	676
29.4	TBufStream	677
29.4.1	Description	677
29.4.2	Method overview	677
29.4.3	TBufStream.Init	677
29.4.4	TBufStream.Done	678

---

29.4.5	TBufStream.Close	678
29.4.6	TBufStream.Flush	678
29.4.7	TBufStream.Truncate	679
29.4.8	TBufStream.Seek	679
29.4.9	TBufStream.Open	680
29.4.10	TBufStream.Read	680
29.4.11	TBufStream.Write	680
29.5	TCollection	681
29.5.1	Description	681
29.5.2	Method overview	681
29.5.3	TCollection.Init	681
29.5.4	TCollection.Load	682
29.5.5	TCollection.Done	682
29.5.6	TCollection.At	683
29.5.7	TCollection.IndexOf	683
29.5.8	TCollection.GetItem	684
29.5.9	TCollection.LastThat	685
29.5.10	TCollection.FirstThat	685
29.5.11	TCollection.Pack	686
29.5.12	TCollection.FreeAll	687
29.5.13	TCollection.DeleteAll	688
29.5.14	TCollection.Free	689
29.5.15	TCollection.Insert	689
29.5.16	TCollection.Delete	690
29.5.17	TCollection.AtFree	690
29.5.18	TCollection.FreeItem	691
29.5.19	TCollection.AtDelete	691
29.5.20	TCollection.ForEach	692
29.5.21	TCollection.SetLimit	693
29.5.22	TCollection.Error	693
29.5.23	TCollection.AtPut	694
29.5.24	TCollection.AtInsert	694
29.5.25	TCollection.Store	695
29.5.26	TCollection.PutItem	695
29.6	TDosStream	695
29.6.1	Description	695
29.6.2	Method overview	696
29.6.3	TDosStream.Init	696
29.6.4	TDosStream.Done	696
29.6.5	TDosStream.Close	697

---

29.6.6	TDosStream.Truncate	697
29.6.7	TDosStream.Seek	698
29.6.8	TDosStream.Open	699
29.6.9	TDosStream.Read	699
29.6.10	TDosStream.Write	700
29.7	TMemoryStream	700
29.7.1	Description	700
29.7.2	Method overview	700
29.7.3	TMemoryStream.Init	700
29.7.4	TMemoryStream.Done	701
29.7.5	TMemoryStream.Truncate	701
29.7.6	TMemoryStream.Read	702
29.7.7	TMemoryStream.Write	702
29.8	TObject	702
29.8.1	Description	702
29.8.2	Method overview	702
29.8.3	TObject.Init	702
29.8.4	TObject.Free	703
29.8.5	TObject.Is_Object	703
29.8.6	TObject.Done	704
29.9	TPoint	704
29.9.1	Description	704
29.10	TRect	704
29.10.1	Description	704
29.10.2	Method overview	704
29.10.3	TRect.Empty	705
29.10.4	TRect.Equals	706
29.10.5	TRect.Contains	706
29.10.6	TRect.Copy	706
29.10.7	TRect.Union	707
29.10.8	TRect.Intersect	707
29.10.9	TRect.Move	708
29.10.10	TRect.Grow	709
29.10.11	TRect.Assign	709
29.11	TResourceCollection	710
29.11.1	Description	710
29.11.2	Method overview	710
29.11.3	TResourceCollection.KeyOf	710
29.11.4	TResourceCollection.GetItem	711
29.11.5	TResourceCollection.FreeItem	711

29.11.6 TResourceCollection.PutItem . . . . .	711
29.12 TResourceFile . . . . .	711
29.12.1 Description . . . . .	711
29.12.2 Method overview . . . . .	712
29.12.3 TResourceFile.Init . . . . .	712
29.12.4 TResourceFile.Done . . . . .	712
29.12.5 TResourceFile.Count . . . . .	712
29.12.6 TResourceFile.KeyAt . . . . .	713
29.12.7 TResourceFile.Get . . . . .	713
29.12.8 TResourceFile.SwitchTo . . . . .	713
29.12.9 TResourceFile.Flush . . . . .	713
29.12.10 TResourceFile.Delete . . . . .	714
29.12.11 TResourceFile.Put . . . . .	714
29.13 TSortedCollection . . . . .	714
29.13.1 Description . . . . .	714
29.13.2 Method overview . . . . .	715
29.13.3 TSortedCollection.Init . . . . .	715
29.13.4 TSortedCollection.Load . . . . .	715
29.13.5 TSortedCollection.KeyOf . . . . .	715
29.13.6 TSortedCollection.IndexOf . . . . .	716
29.13.7 TSortedCollection.Compare . . . . .	716
29.13.8 TSortedCollection.Search . . . . .	717
29.13.9 TSortedCollection.Insert . . . . .	718
29.13.10 TSortedCollection.Store . . . . .	719
29.14 TStrCollection . . . . .	720
29.14.1 Description . . . . .	720
29.14.2 Method overview . . . . .	720
29.14.3 TStrCollection.Compare . . . . .	720
29.14.4 TStrCollection.GetItem . . . . .	721
29.14.5 TStrCollection.FreeItem . . . . .	721
29.14.6 TStrCollection.PutItem . . . . .	721
29.15 TStream . . . . .	722
29.15.1 Description . . . . .	722
29.15.2 Method overview . . . . .	722
29.15.3 TStream.Init . . . . .	722
29.15.4 TStream.Get . . . . .	722
29.15.5 TStream.StrRead . . . . .	723
29.15.6 TStream.GetPos . . . . .	724
29.15.7 TStream.GetSize . . . . .	724
29.15.8 TStream.ReadStr . . . . .	725

29.15.9 TStream.Open . . . . .	726
29.15.10 TStream.Close . . . . .	726
29.15.11 TStream.Reset . . . . .	726
29.15.12 TStream.Flush . . . . .	727
29.15.13 TStream.Truncate . . . . .	727
29.15.14 TStream.Put . . . . .	727
29.15.15 TStream.StrWrite . . . . .	728
29.15.16 TStream.WriteStr . . . . .	728
29.15.17 TStream.Seek . . . . .	728
29.15.18 TStream.Error . . . . .	728
29.15.19 TStream.Read . . . . .	729
29.15.20 TStream.Write . . . . .	729
29.15.21 TStream.CopyFrom . . . . .	730
29.16 TStringCollection . . . . .	730
29.16.1 Description . . . . .	730
29.16.2 Method overview . . . . .	731
29.16.3 TStringCollection.GetItem . . . . .	731
29.16.4 TStringCollection.Compare . . . . .	731
29.16.5 TStringCollection.FreeItem . . . . .	732
29.16.6 TStringCollection.PutItem . . . . .	732
29.17 TStringList . . . . .	732
29.17.1 Description . . . . .	732
29.17.2 Method overview . . . . .	733
29.17.3 TStringList.Load . . . . .	733
29.17.4 TStringList.Done . . . . .	733
29.17.5 TStringList.Get . . . . .	733
29.18 TStrListMaker . . . . .	734
29.18.1 Description . . . . .	734
29.18.2 Method overview . . . . .	734
29.18.3 TStrListMaker.Init . . . . .	734
29.18.4 TStrListMaker.Done . . . . .	734
29.18.5 TStrListMaker.Put . . . . .	734
29.18.6 TStrListMaker.Store . . . . .	735
29.19 TUnSortedStrCollection . . . . .	735
29.19.1 Description . . . . .	735
29.19.2 Method overview . . . . .	735
29.19.3 TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert . . . . .	735
<b>30 Reference for unit 'objpas'</b> . . . . .	<b>737</b>
30.1 Overview . . . . .	737

30.2	Constants, types and variables	737
30.2.1	Constants	737
30.2.2	Types	737
30.2.3	Variables	738
30.3	Procedures and functions	739
30.3.1	AssignFile	739
30.3.2	CloseFile	739
30.3.3	FinalizeResourceTables	740
30.3.4	GetStringCurrentValue	740
30.3.5	GetStringDefaultValue	741
30.3.6	GetStringHash	741
30.3.7	GetStringName	742
30.3.8	Hash	743
30.3.9	LoadResString	743
30.3.10	ParamStr	743
30.3.11	ResetResourceTables	744
30.3.12	StringCount	744
30.3.13	StringTableCount	745
30.3.14	SetResourceStrings	745
30.3.15	SetResourceStringValue	746
30.3.16	SetUnitResourceStrings	747
<b>31</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'oldlinux'</b>	<b>748</b>
31.1	Utility routines	748
31.2	Terminal functions	748
31.3	System information	748
31.4	Signals	749
31.5	Process handling	749
31.6	Directory handling routines	749
31.7	Pipes, FIFOs and streams	750
31.8	General File handling routines	750
31.9	File Input/Output routines	750
31.10	Overview	750
31.11	Constants, types and variables	750
31.11.1	Constants	750
31.11.2	Types	790
31.11.3	Variables	799
31.12	Procedures and functions	799
31.12.1	Access	799
31.12.2	Alarm	800

31.12.3 AssignPipe . . . . .	801
31.12.4 AssignStream . . . . .	802
31.12.5 Basename . . . . .	803
31.12.6 CFMakeRaw . . . . .	804
31.12.7 CFSetISpeed . . . . .	804
31.12.8 CFSetOSpeed . . . . .	804
31.12.9 Chmod . . . . .	805
31.12.10 Chown . . . . .	806
31.12.11 Clone . . . . .	807
31.12.12 CloseDir . . . . .	809
31.12.13 CreateShellArgV . . . . .	809
31.12.14 Dirname . . . . .	810
31.12.15 Dup . . . . .	811
31.12.16 Dup2 . . . . .	811
31.12.17 EpochToLocal . . . . .	812
31.12.18 Execl . . . . .	813
31.12.19 Execle . . . . .	814
31.12.20 Execlp . . . . .	814
31.12.21 Execv . . . . .	815
31.12.22 Execve . . . . .	816
31.12.23 Execvp . . . . .	817
31.12.24 ExitProcess . . . . .	818
31.12.25 Fcntl . . . . .	818
31.12.26 fdClose . . . . .	819
31.12.27 fdFlush . . . . .	819
31.12.28 fdOpen . . . . .	820
31.12.29 fdRead . . . . .	821
31.12.30 fdSeek . . . . .	822
31.12.31 fdTruncate . . . . .	822
31.12.32 fdWrite . . . . .	823
31.12.33 FD_Clr . . . . .	823
31.12.34 FD_IsSet . . . . .	823
31.12.35 FD_Set . . . . .	823
31.12.36 FD_Zero . . . . .	824
31.12.37 FExpand . . . . .	824
31.12.38 Flock . . . . .	824
31.12.39 FNMatch . . . . .	825
31.12.40 Fork . . . . .	826
31.12.41 FReName . . . . .	826
31.12.42 FSearch . . . . .	827

31.12.4FSplit	827
31.12.4FSStat	828
31.12.4FStat	829
31.12.4GetDate	830
31.12.4GetDateTime	830
31.12.4GetDomainName	831
31.12.4GetEGid	831
31.12.5GetEnv	832
31.12.5GetEpochTime	832
31.12.5GetEUid	833
31.12.5GetFS	833
31.12.5GetGid	834
31.12.5GetHostName	834
31.12.5GetLocalTimezone	835
31.12.5GetPid	835
31.12.5GetPPid	836
31.12.5GetPriority	836
31.12.6GetTime	837
31.12.6GetTimeOfDay	837
31.12.6GetTimezoneFile	838
31.12.6GetUid	838
31.12.6Glob	838
31.12.6Globfree	839
31.12.6IOctl	839
31.12.6IOPerm	840
31.12.6toPL	840
31.12.6isATTY	841
31.12.7Kill	841
31.12.7Link	841
31.12.7LocalToEpoch	842
31.12.7Lstat	843
31.12.7mkFifo	845
31.12.7MMap	845
31.12.7MUnMap	846
31.12.7NanoSleep	847
31.12.7Nice	848
31.12.7Octal	848
31.12.8OpenDir	849
31.12.8Pause	850
31.12.8PClose	850

31.12.8POpen . . . . .	850
31.12.8ReadDir . . . . .	851
31.12.8ReadLink . . . . .	852
31.12.8ReadTimezoneFile . . . . .	853
31.12.8SeekDir . . . . .	853
31.12.8Select . . . . .	853
31.12.8SelectText . . . . .	855
31.12.9SetDate . . . . .	855
31.12.9SetDateTime . . . . .	855
31.12.9SetPriority . . . . .	856
31.12.9SetTime . . . . .	856
31.12.9Shell . . . . .	856
31.12.9SigAction . . . . .	857
31.12.9Signal . . . . .	858
31.12.9SigPending . . . . .	859
31.12.9SigProcMask . . . . .	859
31.12.9SigRaise . . . . .	860
31.12.10SigSuspend . . . . .	861
31.12.10StringToPPChar . . . . .	861
31.12.10SymLink . . . . .	862
31.12.10SysCall . . . . .	863
31.12.10Sysinfo . . . . .	863
31.12.105_ISBLK . . . . .	864
31.12.106_ISCHR . . . . .	865
31.12.107_ISDIR . . . . .	865
31.12.108_ISFIFO . . . . .	865
31.12.109_ISLNK . . . . .	865
31.12.110_ISREG . . . . .	866
31.12.111_ISSOCK . . . . .	866
31.12.112CDrain . . . . .	867
31.12.113CFlow . . . . .	867
31.12.114CFlush . . . . .	867
31.12.115CGetAttr . . . . .	868
31.12.116CGetPGrp . . . . .	868
31.12.117CSendBreak . . . . .	869
31.12.118CSetAttr . . . . .	869
31.12.119CSetPGrp . . . . .	870
31.12.120ellDir . . . . .	870
31.12.121TTYname . . . . .	870
31.12.122mask . . . . .	871

31.12.13	name	871
31.12.14	Link	871
31.12.15	time	872
31.12.16	WaitPid	873
31.12.17	WaitProcess	873
31.12.18	EXITSTATUS	874
31.12.19	WIFEXITED	874
31.12.20	WIFSIGNALED	874
31.12.21	WIFSTOPPED	874
31.12.22	WSTOPSIG	875
31.12.23	WTERMSIG	875
31.12.24	W_EXITCODE	875
31.12.25	W_STOPCODE	875
<b>32</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ports'</b>	<b>876</b>
32.1	Overview	876
32.2	Constants, types and variables	876
32.2.1	Variables	876
32.3	tport	877
32.3.1	Description	877
32.3.2	Property overview	877
32.3.3	tport.pp	877
32.4	tportl	877
32.4.1	Description	877
32.4.2	Property overview	878
32.4.3	tportl.pp	878
32.5	tportw	878
32.5.1	Description	878
32.5.2	Property overview	878
32.5.3	tportw.pp	878
<b>33</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'printer'</b>	<b>879</b>
33.1	Overview	879
33.2	Constants, types and variables	879
33.2.1	Variables	879
33.3	Procedures and functions	879
33.3.1	AssignLst	879
33.3.2	InitPrinter	880
33.3.3	IsLstAvailable	880
<b>34</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Sockets'</b>	<b>881</b>

---

34.1	Used units	881
34.2	Overview	881
34.3	Constants, types and variables	881
34.3.1	Constants	881
34.3.2	Types	902
34.4	Procedures and functions	905
34.4.1	Accept	905
34.4.2	Bind	907
34.4.3	CloseSocket	907
34.4.4	Connect	907
34.4.5	fpaccept	909
34.4.6	fpbind	911
34.4.7	fpconnect	911
34.4.8	fpgetpeername	913
34.4.9	fpgetsockname	913
34.4.10	fpgetsockopt	914
34.4.11	fplisten	914
34.4.12	fprecv	914
34.4.13	fprecvfrom	915
34.4.14	fpseend	915
34.4.15	fpseendto	916
34.4.16	fpsetsockopt	916
34.4.17	fpshutdown	917
34.4.18	fpsocket	917
34.4.19	fpsocketpair	918
34.4.20	HostAddrToStr	918
34.4.21	HostAddrToStr6	918
34.4.22	HostToNet	918
34.4.23	htonl	919
34.4.24	htons	919
34.4.25	NetAddrToStr	919
34.4.26	NetAddrToStr6	919
34.4.27	NetToHost	920
34.4.28	NToHl	920
34.4.29	NToHs	920
34.4.30	ShortHostToNet	920
34.4.31	ShortNetToHost	921
34.4.32	Sock2File	921
34.4.33	Sock2Text	921
34.4.34	socketerror	921

34.4.35 Str2UnixSockAddr . . . . .	922
34.4.36 StrToHostAddr . . . . .	922
34.4.37 StrToHostAddr6 . . . . .	922
34.4.38 StrToNetAddr . . . . .	922
34.4.39 StrToNetAddr6 . . . . .	923
<b>35 Reference for unit 'strings'</b>	<b>924</b>
35.1 Overview . . . . .	924
35.2 Procedures and functions . . . . .	924
35.2.1 stralloc . . . . .	924
35.2.2 strcat . . . . .	924
35.2.3 strcmp . . . . .	925
35.2.4 strcpy . . . . .	925
35.2.5 strdispose . . . . .	926
35.2.6 strecopy . . . . .	926
35.2.7 strend . . . . .	927
35.2.8 stricmp . . . . .	928
35.2.9 stripos . . . . .	928
35.2.10 striscan . . . . .	929
35.2.11 strlcat . . . . .	929
35.2.12 strlcomp . . . . .	930
35.2.13 strlcopy . . . . .	930
35.2.14 strlen . . . . .	931
35.2.15 strlicomp . . . . .	931
35.2.16 strlower . . . . .	932
35.2.17 strmove . . . . .	932
35.2.18 strnew . . . . .	933
35.2.19 strpas . . . . .	934
35.2.20 strpcopy . . . . .	934
35.2.21 strpos . . . . .	935
35.2.22 strriscan . . . . .	935
35.2.23 strrscan . . . . .	936
35.2.24 strscan . . . . .	936
35.2.25 strupper . . . . .	936
<b>36 Reference for unit 'strutils'</b>	<b>937</b>
36.1 Used units . . . . .	937
36.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	937
36.2.1 Resource strings . . . . .	937
36.2.2 Constants . . . . .	937
36.2.3 Types . . . . .	938

---

36.3	Procedures and functions	939
36.3.1	AddChar	939
36.3.2	AddCharR	939
36.3.3	AnsiContainsStr	939
36.3.4	AnsiContainsText	939
36.3.5	AnsiEndsStr	940
36.3.6	AnsiEndsText	940
36.3.7	AnsiIndexStr	940
36.3.8	AnsiIndexText	941
36.3.9	AnsiLeftStr	941
36.3.10	AnsiMatchStr	941
36.3.11	AnsiMatchText	942
36.3.12	AnsiMidStr	942
36.3.13	AnsiProperCase	942
36.3.14	AnsiReplaceStr	943
36.3.15	AnsiReplaceText	943
36.3.16	AnsiResemblesText	943
36.3.17	AnsiReverseString	943
36.3.18	AnsiRightStr	944
36.3.19	AnsiStartsStr	944
36.3.20	AnsiStartsText	944
36.3.21	BinToHex	945
36.3.22	Copy2Space	945
36.3.23	Copy2SpaceDel	945
36.3.24	Copy2Symb	946
36.3.25	Copy2SymbDel	946
36.3.26	Dec2Numb	946
36.3.27	DecodeSoundexInt	946
36.3.28	DecodeSoundexWord	947
36.3.29	DelChars	947
36.3.30	DelSpace	947
36.3.31	DelSpace1	947
36.3.32	DupeString	948
36.3.33	ExtractDelimited	948
36.3.34	ExtractSubstr	948
36.3.35	ExtractWord	949
36.3.36	ExtractWordPos	949
36.3.37	FindPart	949
36.3.38	GetCmdLineArg	950
36.3.39	Hex2Dec	950

36.3.40 HexToBin . . . . .	951
36.3.41 IfThen . . . . .	951
36.3.42 IntToBin . . . . .	951
36.3.43 IntToRoman . . . . .	952
36.3.44 IsEmptyStr . . . . .	952
36.3.45 IsWild . . . . .	952
36.3.46 IsWordPresent . . . . .	953
36.3.47 LeftBStr . . . . .	953
36.3.48 LeftStr . . . . .	953
36.3.49 MidBStr . . . . .	954
36.3.50 MidStr . . . . .	954
36.3.51 NPos . . . . .	954
36.3.52 Numb2Dec . . . . .	955
36.3.53 Numb2USA . . . . .	955
36.3.54 PadCenter . . . . .	955
36.3.55 PadLeft . . . . .	955
36.3.56 PadRight . . . . .	956
36.3.57 PosEx . . . . .	956
36.3.58 PosSet . . . . .	956
36.3.59 PosSetEx . . . . .	956
36.3.60 RandomFrom . . . . .	957
36.3.61 Removeleadingchars . . . . .	957
36.3.62 RemovePadChars . . . . .	957
36.3.63 RemoveTrailingChars . . . . .	958
36.3.64 ReverseString . . . . .	958
36.3.65 RightBStr . . . . .	958
36.3.66 RightStr . . . . .	958
36.3.67 RomanToInt . . . . .	959
36.3.68 RPos . . . . .	959
36.3.69 RPosex . . . . .	959
36.3.70 SearchBuf . . . . .	960
36.3.71 Soundex . . . . .	960
36.3.72 SoundexCompare . . . . .	960
36.3.73 SoundexInt . . . . .	961
36.3.74 SoundexProc . . . . .	961
36.3.75 SoundexSimilar . . . . .	961
36.3.76 SoundexWord . . . . .	962
36.3.77 StringsReplace . . . . .	962
36.3.78 StuffString . . . . .	962
36.3.79 Tab2Space . . . . .	963

36.3.80 TrimLeftSet . . . . .	963
36.3.81 TrimRightSet . . . . .	963
36.3.82 TrimSet . . . . .	964
36.3.83 WordCount . . . . .	964
36.3.84 WordPosition . . . . .	964
36.3.85 XorDecode . . . . .	964
36.3.86 XorEncode . . . . .	965
36.3.87 XorString . . . . .	965
<b>37 Reference for unit 'System'</b>	<b>966</b>
37.1 Miscellaneous functions . . . . .	966
37.2 Operating System functions . . . . .	966
37.3 String handling . . . . .	966
37.4 Mathematical routines . . . . .	966
37.5 Memory management functions . . . . .	967
37.6 File handling functions . . . . .	967
37.7 Overview . . . . .	967
37.8 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	968
37.8.1 Constants . . . . .	968
37.8.2 Types . . . . .	989
37.8.3 Variables . . . . .	1011
37.9 Procedures and functions . . . . .	1013
37.9.1 abs . . . . .	1013
37.9.2 AbstractError . . . . .	1014
37.9.3 AcquireExceptionObject . . . . .	1014
37.9.4 AddExitProc . . . . .	1014
37.9.5 Addr . . . . .	1014
37.9.6 Align . . . . .	1015
37.9.7 AllocMem . . . . .	1015
37.9.8 AnsiToUtf8 . . . . .	1015
37.9.9 Append . . . . .	1016
37.9.10 arctan . . . . .	1016
37.9.11 ArrayStringToPPchar . . . . .	1017
37.9.12 Assert . . . . .	1017
37.9.13 Assign . . . . .	1018
37.9.14 Assigned . . . . .	1018
37.9.15 BasicEventCreate . . . . .	1019
37.9.16 basiceventdestroy . . . . .	1019
37.9.17 basiceventResetEvent . . . . .	1019
37.9.18 basiceventSetEvent . . . . .	1020

37.9.19 basicEventWaitFor . . . . .	1020
37.9.20 BeginThread . . . . .	1020
37.9.21 BEtoN . . . . .	1021
37.9.22 binStr . . . . .	1021
37.9.23 BlockRead . . . . .	1021
37.9.24 BlockWrite . . . . .	1022
37.9.25 Break . . . . .	1023
37.9.26 chdir . . . . .	1024
37.9.27 chr . . . . .	1024
37.9.28 Close . . . . .	1025
37.9.29 CompareByte . . . . .	1025
37.9.30 CompareChar . . . . .	1026
37.9.31 CompareChar0 . . . . .	1028
37.9.32 CompareDWord . . . . .	1028
37.9.33 CompareWord . . . . .	1029
37.9.34 Concat . . . . .	1030
37.9.35 Continue . . . . .	1031
37.9.36 Copy . . . . .	1032
37.9.37 cos . . . . .	1032
37.9.38 Cseg . . . . .	1033
37.9.39 Dec . . . . .	1033
37.9.40 DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove . . . . .	1034
37.9.41 DefaultAnsi2WideMove . . . . .	1034
37.9.42 DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove . . . . .	1035
37.9.43 DefaultWide2AnsiMove . . . . .	1035
37.9.44 Delete . . . . .	1035
37.9.45 Dispose . . . . .	1036
37.9.46 DoneCriticalSection . . . . .	1037
37.9.47 DoneThread . . . . .	1037
37.9.48 Dseg . . . . .	1037
37.9.49 DumpExceptionBackTrace . . . . .	1038
37.9.50 Dump_Stack . . . . .	1038
37.9.51 DynArraySetLength . . . . .	1038
37.9.52 EndThread . . . . .	1039
37.9.53 EnterCriticalSection . . . . .	1039
37.9.54 EnumResourceLanguages . . . . .	1040
37.9.55 EnumResourceNames . . . . .	1040
37.9.56 EnumResourceTypes . . . . .	1040
37.9.57 EOF . . . . .	1041
37.9.58 EOLn . . . . .	1041

37.9.59 Erase . . . . .	1042
37.9.60 Error . . . . .	1043
37.9.61 Exclude . . . . .	1043
37.9.62 Exit . . . . .	1044
37.9.63 exp . . . . .	1045
37.9.64 FilePos . . . . .	1046
37.9.65 FileSize . . . . .	1046
37.9.66 FillByte . . . . .	1047
37.9.67 FillChar . . . . .	1048
37.9.68 FillDWord . . . . .	1048
37.9.69 FillQWord . . . . .	1049
37.9.70 FillWord . . . . .	1049
37.9.71 FindResource . . . . .	1050
37.9.72 FindResourceEx . . . . .	1050
37.9.73 float_raise . . . . .	1051
37.9.74 Flush . . . . .	1051
37.9.75 FlushThread . . . . .	1051
37.9.76 frac . . . . .	1052
37.9.77 Freemem . . . . .	1052
37.9.78 Freememory . . . . .	1053
37.9.79 FreeResource . . . . .	1053
37.9.80 GetCurrentThreadId . . . . .	1053
37.9.81 getdir . . . . .	1054
37.9.82 GetFPCHeapStatus . . . . .	1054
37.9.83 GetHeapStatus . . . . .	1054
37.9.84 GetMem . . . . .	1054
37.9.85 GetMemory . . . . .	1055
37.9.86 GetMemoryManager . . . . .	1055
37.9.87 GetProcessID . . . . .	1055
37.9.88 GetResourceManager . . . . .	1056
37.9.89 GetThreadID . . . . .	1056
37.9.90 GetThreadManager . . . . .	1056
37.9.91 GetUnicodeStringManager . . . . .	1056
37.9.92 GetVariantManager . . . . .	1057
37.9.93 GetWideStringManager . . . . .	1057
37.9.94 get_caller_addr . . . . .	1057
37.9.95 get_caller_frame . . . . .	1057
37.9.96 get_frame . . . . .	1058
37.9.97 halt . . . . .	1058
37.9.98 hexStr . . . . .	1058

37.9.99 hi	1059
37.9.100 High	1060
37.9.101 HINSTANCE	1061
37.9.102 Inc	1061
37.9.103 Include	1062
37.9.104 IndexByte	1062
37.9.105 IndexChar	1063
37.9.106 IndexChar0	1064
37.9.107 IndexDWord	1064
37.9.108 IndexQWord	1065
37.9.109 Indexword	1065
37.9.110 InitCriticalSection	1066
37.9.111 InitThread	1066
37.9.112 InitThreadVars	1066
37.9.113 Insert	1067
37.9.114 Int	1067
37.9.115 InterlockedCompareExchange	1068
37.9.116 InterLockedDecrement	1068
37.9.117 InterLockedExchange	1068
37.9.118 InterLockedExchangeAdd	1069
37.9.119 InterLockedIncrement	1069
37.9.120 IOResult	1070
37.9.121 IsMemoryManagerSet	1071
37.9.122 Is_IntResource	1071
37.9.123 KillThread	1071
37.9.124 LeaveCriticalsection	1072
37.9.125 Length	1072
37.9.126 LEtoN	1073
37.9.127 In	1073
37.9.128 o	1073
37.9.129 LoadResource	1074
37.9.130 LockResource	1074
37.9.131 longjmp	1075
37.9.132 Low	1075
37.9.133 lowerCase	1076
37.9.134 MakeLangID	1076
37.9.135 MemSize	1076
37.9.136 nkdir	1077
37.9.137 Move	1077
37.9.138 MoveChar0	1077

37.9.13	New	1078
37.9.14	NtoBE	1078
37.9.14	NtoLE	1079
37.9.14	Null	1079
37.9.14	OctStr	1079
37.9.14	Odd	1080
37.9.14	Ofs	1080
37.9.14	Operator *(variant, variant): variant	1081
37.9.14	Operator *(variant, variant): variant	1081
37.9.14	Operator +(variant, variant): variant	1081
37.9.14	Operator -(variant): variant	1082
37.9.15	Operator -(variant, variant): variant	1082
37.9.15	Operator /(variant, variant): variant	1082
37.9.15	Operator :=(ansistring): olevariant	1082
37.9.15	Operator :=(ansistring): variant	1083
37.9.15	Operator :=(Boolean): olevariant	1083
37.9.15	Operator :=(Boolean): variant	1083
37.9.15	Operator :=(Byte): olevariant	1083
37.9.15	Operator :=(Byte): variant	1083
37.9.15	Operator :=(Char): olevariant	1084
37.9.15	Operator :=(Char): variant	1084
37.9.16	Operator :=(currency): olevariant	1084
37.9.16	Operator :=(currency): variant	1084
37.9.16	Operator :=(double): olevariant	1084
37.9.16	Operator :=(double): variant	1085
37.9.16	Operator :=(DWord): olevariant	1085
37.9.16	Operator :=(DWord): variant	1085
37.9.16	Operator :=(Int64): olevariant	1085
37.9.16	Operator :=(Int64): variant	1085
37.9.16	Operator :=(longbool): olevariant	1086
37.9.16	Operator :=(longbool): variant	1086
37.9.17	Operator :=(LongInt): olevariant	1086
37.9.17	Operator :=(LongInt): variant	1086
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): ansistring	1087
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): Boolean	1087
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): Byte	1087
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): Char	1087
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): currency	1087
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): double	1088
37.9.17	Operator :=(olevariant): DWord	1088

37.9.179operator :=(olevariant): Int64 . . . . .	1088
37.9.180operator :=(olevariant): longbool . . . . .	1088
37.9.181operator :=(olevariant): LongInt . . . . .	1089
37.9.182operator :=(olevariant): qword . . . . .	1089
37.9.183operator :=(olevariant): Real . . . . .	1089
37.9.184operator :=(olevariant): ShortInt . . . . .	1089
37.9.185operator :=(olevariant): shortstring . . . . .	1089
37.9.186operator :=(olevariant): SmallInt . . . . .	1090
37.9.187operator :=(olevariant): TDateTime . . . . .	1090
37.9.188operator :=(olevariant): TError . . . . .	1090
37.9.189operator :=(olevariant): UnicodeString . . . . .	1090
37.9.190operator :=(olevariant): variant . . . . .	1090
37.9.191operator :=(olevariant): widechar . . . . .	1091
37.9.192operator :=(olevariant): widestring . . . . .	1091
37.9.193operator :=(olevariant): Word . . . . .	1091
37.9.194operator :=(olevariant): wordbool . . . . .	1091
37.9.195operator :=(qword): olevariant . . . . .	1092
37.9.196operator :=(qword): variant . . . . .	1092
37.9.197operator :=(Real): olevariant . . . . .	1092
37.9.198operator :=(Real): variant . . . . .	1092
37.9.199operator :=(real48): double . . . . .	1092
37.9.200operator :=(ShortInt): olevariant . . . . .	1092
37.9.201operator :=(ShortInt): variant . . . . .	1093
37.9.202operator :=(shortstring): olevariant . . . . .	1093
37.9.203operator :=(shortstring): variant . . . . .	1093
37.9.204operator :=(SmallInt): olevariant . . . . .	1093
37.9.205operator :=(SmallInt): variant . . . . .	1094
37.9.206operator :=(TDateTime): olevariant . . . . .	1094
37.9.207operator :=(TDateTime): variant . . . . .	1094
37.9.208operator :=(TError): olevariant . . . . .	1094
37.9.209operator :=(TError): variant . . . . .	1095
37.9.210operator :=(UCS4String): variant . . . . .	1095
37.9.211operator :=(UnicodeString): olevariant . . . . .	1095
37.9.212operator :=(UnicodeString): variant . . . . .	1095
37.9.213operator :=(UTF8String): variant . . . . .	1095
37.9.214operator :=(variant): ansistring . . . . .	1095
37.9.215operator :=(variant): Boolean . . . . .	1096
37.9.216operator :=(variant): Byte . . . . .	1096
37.9.217operator :=(variant): Char . . . . .	1096
37.9.218operator :=(variant): currency . . . . .	1096

37.9.219	operator :=(variant): double . . . . .	1096
37.9.220	operator :=(variant): DWord . . . . .	1097
37.9.221	operator :=(variant): Int64 . . . . .	1097
37.9.222	operator :=(variant): longbool . . . . .	1097
37.9.223	operator :=(variant): LongInt . . . . .	1097
37.9.224	operator :=(variant): olevariant . . . . .	1097
37.9.225	operator :=(variant): qword . . . . .	1098
37.9.226	operator :=(variant): Real . . . . .	1098
37.9.227	operator :=(variant): ShortInt . . . . .	1098
37.9.228	operator :=(variant): shortstring . . . . .	1098
37.9.229	operator :=(variant): SmallInt . . . . .	1098
37.9.230	operator :=(variant): TDateTime . . . . .	1099
37.9.231	operator :=(variant): TError . . . . .	1099
37.9.232	operator :=(variant): unicodestring . . . . .	1099
37.9.233	operator :=(variant): UTF8String . . . . .	1099
37.9.234	operator :=(variant): widechar . . . . .	1099
37.9.235	operator :=(variant): widestring . . . . .	1100
37.9.236	operator :=(variant): Word . . . . .	1100
37.9.237	operator :=(variant): wordbool . . . . .	1100
37.9.238	operator :=(widechar): olevariant . . . . .	1100
37.9.239	operator :=(widechar): variant . . . . .	1101
37.9.240	operator :=(widestring): olevariant . . . . .	1101
37.9.241	operator :=(widestring): variant . . . . .	1101
37.9.242	operator :=(Word): olevariant . . . . .	1101
37.9.243	operator :=(Word): variant . . . . .	1101
37.9.244	operator :=(wordbool): olevariant . . . . .	1102
37.9.245	operator :=(wordbool): variant . . . . .	1102
37.9.246	operator <(variant, variant): Boolean . . . . .	1102
37.9.247	operator <=(variant, variant): Boolean . . . . .	1102
37.9.248	operator =(variant, variant): Boolean . . . . .	1103
37.9.249	operator >(variant, variant): Boolean . . . . .	1103
37.9.250	operator >=(variant, variant): Boolean . . . . .	1103
37.9.251	operator and(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1103
37.9.252	operator div(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1104
37.9.253	operator mod(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1104
37.9.254	operator not(variant): variant . . . . .	1104
37.9.255	operator or(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1104
37.9.256	operator shl(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1105
37.9.257	operator shr(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1105
37.9.258	operator xor(variant, variant): variant . . . . .	1105

37.9.25	<del>Ord</del>	1105
37.9.26	<del>Pack</del>	1106
37.9.26	<del>Paramcount</del>	1106
37.9.26	<del>ParamStr</del>	1107
37.9.26	<del>pi</del>	1107
37.9.26	<del>Pos</del>	1108
37.9.26	<del>Pred</del>	1109
37.9.26	<del>prefetch</del>	1109
37.9.26	<del>ptr</del>	1110
37.9.26	<del>RaiseList</del>	1110
37.9.26	<del>Random</del>	1110
37.9.27	<del>Randomize</del>	1111
37.9.27	<del>Read</del>	1111
37.9.27	<del>ReadBarrier</del>	1112
37.9.27	<del>ReadDependencyBarrier</del>	1113
37.9.27	<del>ReadLn</del>	1113
37.9.27	<del>ReadStr</del>	1113
37.9.27	<del>ReadWriteBarrier</del>	1114
37.9.27	<del>Real2Double</del>	1114
37.9.27	<del>ReAllocMem</del>	1115
37.9.27	<del>ReAllocMemory</del>	1115
37.9.28	<del>ReleaseExceptionObject</del>	1115
37.9.28	<del>Rename</del>	1116
37.9.28	<del>Reset</del>	1116
37.9.28	<del>ResumeThread</del>	1117
37.9.28	<del>Rewrite</del>	1117
37.9.28	<del>mdir</del>	1118
37.9.28	<del>RolByte</del>	1119
37.9.28	<del>RolDWord</del>	1119
37.9.28	<del>RolQWord</del>	1119
37.9.28	<del>RolWord</del>	1120
37.9.29	<del>RorByte</del>	1120
37.9.29	<del>RorDWord</del>	1120
37.9.29	<del>RorQWord</del>	1120
37.9.29	<del>RorWord</del>	1121
37.9.29	<del>ound</del>	1121
37.9.29	<del>RTLEventCreate</del>	1122
37.9.29	<del>RTLeventdestroy</del>	1122
37.9.29	<del>RTLeventResetEvent</del>	1122
37.9.29	<del>RTLeventSetEvent</del>	1122

37.9.29	RTLeventsync	1123
37.9.30	RTLeventWaitFor	1123
37.9.30	RunError	1123
37.9.30	Seek	1124
37.9.30	SeekEOF	1124
37.9.30	SeekEOLn	1125
37.9.30	Seg	1126
37.9.30	Setjmp	1126
37.9.30	SetLength	1127
37.9.30	SetMemoryManager	1128
37.9.30	SetResourceManager	1128
37.9.31	SetString	1128
37.9.31	SetTextBuf	1129
37.9.31	SetTextLineEnding	1130
37.9.31	SetThreadManager	1130
37.9.31	SetUnicodeStringManager	1130
37.9.31	SetVariantManager	1131
37.9.31	SetWideStringManager	1131
37.9.31	ShortCompareText	1131
37.9.31	sin	1132
37.9.31	SizeOf	1132
37.9.32	SizeofResource	1133
37.9.32	Space	1133
37.9.32	Sptr	1133
37.9.32	3qr	1134
37.9.32	4qrt	1134
37.9.32	Seg	1135
37.9.32	Str	1135
37.9.32	StringOfChar	1136
37.9.32	StringToPPChar	1136
37.9.32	StringToUnicodeChar	1137
37.9.33	StringToWideChar	1137
37.9.33	strlen	1137
37.9.33	3trpas	1138
37.9.33	Succ	1138
37.9.33	SuspendThread	1138
37.9.33	Swap	1138
37.9.33	SwapEndian	1139
37.9.33	SysAllocMem	1139
37.9.33	SysAssert	1140

37.9.33	<del>S</del> ysBackTraceStr	1140
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysFreemem	1140
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysFreememSize	1140
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysGetFPCHeapStatus	1141
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysGetHeapStatus	1141
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysGetmem	1141
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysInitExceptions	1141
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysInitFPU	1142
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysInitStdIO	1142
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysMemSize	1142
37.9.34	<del>S</del> ysReAllocMem	1142
37.9.35	<del>S</del> ysResetFPU	1142
37.9.35	<del>S</del> ysSetCtrlBreakHandler	1143
37.9.35	<del>S</del> ysTryResizeMem	1143
37.9.35	<del>T</del> hreadGetPriority	1143
37.9.35	<del>T</del> hreadSetPriority	1143
37.9.35	<del>T</del> hreadSwitch	1144
37.9.35	<del>T</del> runc	1144
37.9.35	<del>T</del> runcate	1144
37.9.35	<del>U</del> CS4StringToUnicodeString	1145
37.9.35	<del>U</del> CS4StringToWideString	1145
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nassigned	1145
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nicodeCharLenToString	1146
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nicodeCharLenToStrVar	1146
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nicodeCharToString	1146
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nicodeCharToStrVar	1147
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nicodeStringToUCS4String	1147
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nicodeToUtf8	1147
37.9.36	<del>U</del> niqueString	1148
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nlockResource	1148
37.9.36	<del>U</del> nPack	1148
37.9.37	<del>U</del> pCase	1148
37.9.37	<del>U</del> TF8Decode	1149
37.9.37	<del>U</del> TF8Encode	1149
37.9.37	<del>U</del> tf8ToAnsi	1150
37.9.37	<del>U</del> tf8ToUnicode	1150
37.9.37	<del>V</del> al	1150
37.9.37	<del>V</del> arArrayGet	1151
37.9.37	<del>V</del> arArrayPut	1151
37.9.37	<del>V</del> arArrayRedim	1152

37.9.37	VarCast	1152
37.9.38	WaitForThreadTerminate	1152
37.9.38	WideCharLenToString	1152
37.9.38	WideCharLenToStrVar	1153
37.9.38	WideCharToString	1153
37.9.38	WideCharToStrVar	1153
37.9.38	WideStringToUCS4String	1153
37.9.38	Write	1154
37.9.38	WriteBarrier	1154
37.9.38	WriteLn	1154
37.9.38	WriteStr	1155
37.10	IDispatch	1156
37.10.1	Description	1156
37.10.2	Method overview	1156
37.10.3	IDispatch.GetTypeInfoCount	1156
37.10.4	IDispatch.GetTypeInfo	1156
37.10.5	IDispatch.GetIDsOfNames	1156
37.10.6	IDispatch.Invoke	1156
37.11	IInvokable	1157
37.11.1	Description	1157
37.12	IUnknown	1157
37.12.1	Description	1157
37.12.2	Method overview	1157
37.12.3	IUnknown.QueryInterface	1157
37.12.4	IUnknown._AddRef	1157
37.12.5	IUnknown._Release	1157
37.13	TAggregatedObject	1158
37.13.1	Description	1158
37.13.2	Method overview	1158
37.13.3	Property overview	1158
37.13.4	TAggregatedObject.Create	1158
37.13.5	TAggregatedObject.Controller	1158
37.14	TContainedObject	1159
37.14.1	Description	1159
37.15	TInterfacedObject	1159
37.15.1	Description	1159
37.15.2	Method overview	1159
37.15.3	Property overview	1159
37.15.4	TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction	1159
37.15.5	TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction	1159

37.15.6 TInterfacedObject.NewInstance . . . . .	1160
37.15.7 TInterfacedObject.RefCount . . . . .	1160
37.16TObject . . . . .	1160
37.16.1 Description . . . . .	1160
37.16.2 Method overview . . . . .	1161
37.16.3 TObject.Create . . . . .	1161
37.16.4 TObject.Destroy . . . . .	1161
37.16.5 TObject.newinstance . . . . .	1162
37.16.6 TObject.FreeInstance . . . . .	1162
37.16.7 TObject.SafeCallException . . . . .	1162
37.16.8 TObject.DefaultHandler . . . . .	1163
37.16.9 TObject.Free . . . . .	1163
37.16.10TObject.InitInstance . . . . .	1163
37.16.11TObject.CleanupInstance . . . . .	1163
37.16.12TObject.ClassType . . . . .	1164
37.16.13TObject.ClassInfo . . . . .	1164
37.16.14TObject.ClassName . . . . .	1164
37.16.15TObject.ClassNameIs . . . . .	1164
37.16.16TObject.ClassParent . . . . .	1165
37.16.17TObject.InstanceSize . . . . .	1165
37.16.18TObject.InheritsFrom . . . . .	1165
37.16.19TObject.StringMessageTable . . . . .	1165
37.16.20TObject.Dispatch . . . . .	1166
37.16.21TObject.DispatchStr . . . . .	1166
37.16.22TObject.MethodAddress . . . . .	1166
37.16.23TObject.MethodName . . . . .	1166
37.16.24TObject.FieldAddress . . . . .	1167
37.16.25TObject.AfterConstruction . . . . .	1167
37.16.26TObject.BeforeDestruction . . . . .	1167
37.16.27TObject.DefaultHandlerStr . . . . .	1167
37.16.28TObject.GetInterface . . . . .	1168
37.16.29TObject.GetInterfaceByStr . . . . .	1168
37.16.30TObject.GetInterfaceEntry . . . . .	1168
37.16.31TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr . . . . .	1169
37.16.32TObject.GetInterfaceTable . . . . .	1169
<b>38 Reference for unit 'sysutils' . . . . .</b>	<b>1174</b>
38.1 Localization support . . . . .	1174
38.2 Miscellaneous conversion routines . . . . .	1174
38.3 Date/time routines . . . . .	1175

38.4	FileName handling routines . . . . .	1175
38.5	File input/output routines . . . . .	1175
38.6	PChar related functions . . . . .	1175
38.7	Date and time formatting characters . . . . .	1177
38.8	Formatting strings . . . . .	1178
38.9	String functions . . . . .	1178
38.10	Used units . . . . .	1179
38.11	Overview . . . . .	1179
38.12	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1180
38.12.1	Constants . . . . .	1180
38.12.2	Types . . . . .	1186
38.12.3	Variables . . . . .	1193
38.13	Procedures and functions . . . . .	1196
38.13.1	AbandonSignalHandler . . . . .	1196
38.13.2	Abort . . . . .	1196
38.13.3	AddDisk . . . . .	1197
38.13.4	AddTerminateProc . . . . .	1197
38.13.5	AdjustLineBreaks . . . . .	1197
38.13.6	AnsiCompareFileName . . . . .	1198
38.13.7	AnsiCompareStr . . . . .	1198
38.13.8	AnsiCompareText . . . . .	1199
38.13.9	AnsiDequotedStr . . . . .	1200
38.13.10	AnsiExtractQuotedStr . . . . .	1200
38.13.11	AnsiLastChar . . . . .	1201
38.13.12	AnsiLowerCase . . . . .	1202
38.13.13	AnsiLowerCaseFileName . . . . .	1202
38.13.14	AnsiPos . . . . .	1203
38.13.15	AnsiQuotedStr . . . . .	1203
38.13.16	AnsiSameStr . . . . .	1203
38.13.17	AnsiSameText . . . . .	1203
38.13.18	AnsiStrComp . . . . .	1204
38.13.19	AnsiStrIComp . . . . .	1204
38.13.20	AnsiStrLastChar . . . . .	1205
38.13.21	AnsiStrLComp . . . . .	1206
38.13.22	AnsiStrLIComp . . . . .	1207
38.13.23	AnsiStrLower . . . . .	1208
38.13.24	AnsiStrPos . . . . .	1208
38.13.25	AnsiStrRScan . . . . .	1209
38.13.26	AnsiStrScan . . . . .	1209
38.13.27	AnsiStrUpper . . . . .	1209

38.13.28AnsiUpperCase . . . . .	1210
38.13.29AnsiUpperCaseFileName . . . . .	1210
38.13.30AppendStr . . . . .	1211
38.13.31ApplicationName . . . . .	1211
38.13.32AssignStr . . . . .	1212
38.13.3BCDToInt . . . . .	1212
38.13.3Beep . . . . .	1213
38.13.3BoolToStr . . . . .	1213
38.13.3ByteToCharIndex . . . . .	1213
38.13.3ByteToCharLen . . . . .	1214
38.13.3ByteType . . . . .	1214
38.13.3CallTerminateProcs . . . . .	1214
38.13.4ChangeFileExt . . . . .	1214
38.13.4CharToByteLen . . . . .	1215
38.13.4CompareMem . . . . .	1215
38.13.4CompareMemRange . . . . .	1215
38.13.4CompareStr . . . . .	1216
38.13.4CompareText . . . . .	1217
38.13.4ComposeDateTime . . . . .	1217
38.13.4CreateDir . . . . .	1218
38.13.4CreateGUID . . . . .	1218
38.13.4CurrentYear . . . . .	1219
38.13.5CurrToStr . . . . .	1219
38.13.5CurrToStrF . . . . .	1219
38.13.5Date . . . . .	1220
38.13.5DateTimeToFileDate . . . . .	1220
38.13.5DateTimeToStr . . . . .	1221
38.13.5DateTimeToString . . . . .	1221
38.13.5DateTimeToSystemTime . . . . .	1222
38.13.5DateTimeToTimeStamp . . . . .	1223
38.13.5DateToStr . . . . .	1223
38.13.5DayOfWeek . . . . .	1224
38.13.6DecodeDate . . . . .	1224
38.13.6DecodeDateFully . . . . .	1225
38.13.6DecodeTime . . . . .	1225
38.13.6DeleteFile . . . . .	1225
38.13.6DirectoryExists . . . . .	1226
38.13.6DiskFree . . . . .	1226
38.13.6DiskSize . . . . .	1227
38.13.6DisposeStr . . . . .	1228

38.13.68DoDirSeparators . . . . .	1228
38.13.69EncodeDate . . . . .	1229
38.13.70EncodeTime . . . . .	1229
38.13.71ExceptAddr . . . . .	1230
38.13.72ExceptFrameCount . . . . .	1230
38.13.73ExceptFrames . . . . .	1230
38.13.74ExceptionErrorMessage . . . . .	1231
38.13.75ExceptObject . . . . .	1231
38.13.76ExcludeTrailingBackslash . . . . .	1231
38.13.77ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter . . . . .	1231
38.13.78ExecuteProcess . . . . .	1232
38.13.79ExeSearch . . . . .	1232
38.13.80ExpandFileName . . . . .	1232
38.13.81ExpandUNCFileName . . . . .	1233
38.13.82ExtractFileDir . . . . .	1233
38.13.83ExtractFileDrive . . . . .	1234
38.13.84ExtractFileExt . . . . .	1234
38.13.85ExtractFileName . . . . .	1235
38.13.86ExtractFilePath . . . . .	1235
38.13.87ExtractRelativepath . . . . .	1235
38.13.88ExtractShortPathName . . . . .	1236
38.13.89FileAge . . . . .	1236
38.13.90FileClose . . . . .	1237
38.13.91FileCreate . . . . .	1237
38.13.92FileDateToDateTime . . . . .	1238
38.13.93FileExists . . . . .	1239
38.13.94FileGetAttr . . . . .	1239
38.13.95FileGetDate . . . . .	1240
38.13.96FileIsReadOnly . . . . .	1241
38.13.97FileOpen . . . . .	1241
38.13.98FileRead . . . . .	1242
38.13.99FileSearch . . . . .	1243
38.13.100FileSeek . . . . .	1243
38.13.101FileSetAttr . . . . .	1244
38.13.102FileSetDate . . . . .	1244
38.13.103FileTruncate . . . . .	1245
38.13.104FileWrite . . . . .	1245
38.13.105FindClose . . . . .	1245
38.13.106FindCmdLineSwitch . . . . .	1246
38.13.107FindFirst . . . . .	1246

38.13.108	EndNext	1247
38.13.109	FloattoCurr	1247
38.13.110	FloatToDateTime	1248
38.13.111	FloatToDecimal	1248
38.13.112	FloatToStr	1248
38.13.113	FloatToStrF	1249
38.13.114	FloatToText	1251
38.13.115	FloatToTextFmt	1252
38.13.116	FmtStr	1253
38.13.117	ForceDirectories	1254
38.13.118	Format	1254
38.13.119	FormatBuf	1259
38.13.120	FormatCurr	1260
38.13.121	FormatDateTime	1260
38.13.122	FormatFloat	1261
38.13.123	FreeAndNil	1262
38.13.124	GetAppConfigDir	1262
38.13.125	GetAppConfigFile	1263
38.13.126	GetCurrentDir	1263
38.13.127	GetDirs	1264
38.13.128	GetEnvironmentString	1264
38.13.129	GetEnvironmentVariable	1265
38.13.130	GetEnvironmentVariableCount	1265
38.13.131	GetFileHandle	1266
38.13.132	GetLastError	1266
38.13.133	GetLocalTime	1266
38.13.134	GetModuleName	1266
38.13.135	GetTempDir	1267
38.13.136	GetTempFileName	1267
38.13.137	GetUserDir	1267
38.13.138	GuidCase	1268
38.13.139	GUIDToString	1268
38.13.140	HookSignal	1268
38.13.141	IncAMonth	1269
38.13.142	IncludeTrailingBackslash	1269
38.13.143	IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter	1269
38.13.144	IncMonth	1269
38.13.145	UnhookSignal	1270
38.13.146	IntToHex	1270
38.13.147	IntToStr	1271

38.13.148	Delimiter	1272
38.13.149	EqualGUID	1272
38.13.150	LeapYear	1272
38.13.151	PathDelimiter	1273
38.13.152	ValidIdent	1273
38.13.153	LastDelimiter	1274
38.13.154	LeftStr	1274
38.13.155	LoadStr	1275
38.13.156	LowerCase	1275
38.13.157	MsecsToTimeStamp	1275
38.13.158	NewStr	1276
38.13.159	Now	1276
38.13.160	OutOfMemoryError	1277
38.13.161	QuotedStr	1277
38.13.162	RaiseLastError	1278
38.13.163	RemoveDir	1278
38.13.164	RenameFile	1278
38.13.165	ReplaceDate	1279
38.13.166	ReplaceTime	1279
38.13.167	RightStr	1279
38.13.168	SafeLoadLibrary	1280
38.13.169	SameFileName	1280
38.13.170	SameText	1280
38.13.171	SetCurrentDir	1281
38.13.172	SetDirSeparators	1281
38.13.173	ShowException	1281
38.13.174	Sleep	1282
38.13.175	Scanf	1282
38.13.176	StrAlloc	1282
38.13.177	StrBufSize	1283
38.13.178	StrByteType	1283
38.13.179	Strcat	1284
38.13.180	StrCharLength	1284
38.13.181	Strcomp	1284
38.13.182	Strcopy	1285
38.13.183	StrDispose	1285
38.13.184	Strncpy	1286
38.13.185	Strnd	1286
38.13.186	StrFmt	1287
38.13.187	Stricomp	1287

38.13.18	StringReplace	1288
38.13.18	StringToGUID	1288
38.13.19	Strcat	1289
38.13.19	Strlcomp	1289
38.13.19	Strlcopy	1290
38.13.19	Strlen	1291
38.13.19	StrLFmt	1291
38.13.19	Strlcomp	1292
38.13.19	Strlower	1292
38.13.19	Strmove	1293
38.13.19	Strnew	1293
38.13.19	StrNextChar	1294
38.13.20	StrPas	1294
38.13.20	StrPCopy	1294
38.13.20	StrPLCopy	1295
38.13.20	Strpos	1295
38.13.20	Strrscan	1295
38.13.20	Strscan	1296
38.13.20	StrToBool	1296
38.13.20	StrToBoolDef	1296
38.13.20	StrToCurr	1297
38.13.20	StrToCurrDef	1297
38.13.20	StrToDate	1297
38.13.20	StrToDateDef	1298
38.13.20	StrToDateTime	1298
38.13.20	StrToDateTimeDef	1299
38.13.20	StrToFloat	1299
38.13.20	StrToFloatDef	1300
38.13.20	StrToInt	1301
38.13.20	StrToInt64	1301
38.13.20	StrToInt64Def	1302
38.13.20	StrToIntDef	1302
38.13.20	StrToQWord	1303
38.13.20	StrToQWordDef	1303
38.13.20	StrToTime	1303
38.13.20	StrToTimeDef	1304
38.13.20	Strupper	1304
38.13.20	Strsupports	1304
38.13.20	StrSysErrorMessage	1305
38.13.20	StrSystemTimeToDateTime	1305

38.13.22	TextToFloat	1306
38.13.22	Time	1307
38.13.23	TimeStampToDateTime	1307
38.13.23	TimeStampToMsecs	1308
38.13.23	TimeToStr	1308
38.13.23	Trim	1309
38.13.23	TrimLeft	1309
38.13.23	TrimRight	1310
38.13.23	TryEncodeDate	1311
38.13.23	TryEncodeTime	1311
38.13.23	TryFloatToCurr	1311
38.13.23	TryStringToGUID	1312
38.13.24	TryStrToBool	1312
38.13.24	TryStrToCurr	1312
38.13.24	TryStrToDate	1312
38.13.24	TryStrToDateTime	1313
38.13.24	TryStrToFloat	1313
38.13.24	TryStrToInt	1314
38.13.24	TryStrToInt64	1314
38.13.24	TryStrToQWord	1314
38.13.24	TryStrToTime	1314
38.13.24	UnhookSignal	1315
38.13.25	UpperCase	1315
38.13.25	VendorName	1315
38.13.25	WideCompareStr	1316
38.13.25	WideCompareText	1316
38.13.25	WideFmtStr	1316
38.13.25	WideFormat	1317
38.13.25	WideFormatBuf	1317
38.13.25	WideLowerCase	1317
38.13.25	WideSameStr	1318
38.13.25	WideSameText	1318
38.13.26	WideUpperCase	1318
38.13.26	WrapText	1318
38.14	EAbort	1319
38.14.1	Description	1319
38.15	EAbstractError	1319
38.15.1	Description	1319
38.16	EAccessViolation	1319
38.16.1	Description	1319

38.17EAssertionFailed . . . . .	1319
38.17.1 Description . . . . .	1319
38.18EBusError . . . . .	1319
38.18.1 Description . . . . .	1319
38.19EControlC . . . . .	1319
38.19.1 Description . . . . .	1319
38.20EConvertError . . . . .	1319
38.20.1 Description . . . . .	1319
38.21EDivByZero . . . . .	1320
38.21.1 Description . . . . .	1320
38.22EExternal . . . . .	1320
38.22.1 Description . . . . .	1320
38.23EExternalException . . . . .	1320
38.23.1 Description . . . . .	1320
38.24EFormatError . . . . .	1320
38.24.1 Description . . . . .	1320
38.25EHeapMemoryError . . . . .	1320
38.25.1 Description . . . . .	1320
38.25.2 Method overview . . . . .	1320
38.25.3 EHeapMemoryError.FreeInstance . . . . .	1320
38.26EInOutError . . . . .	1321
38.26.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.27EInterror . . . . .	1321
38.27.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.28EIntfCastError . . . . .	1321
38.28.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.29EIntOverflow . . . . .	1321
38.29.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.30EInvalidCast . . . . .	1321
38.30.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.31EInvalidContainer . . . . .	1321
38.31.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.32EInvalidInsert . . . . .	1321
38.32.1 Description . . . . .	1321
38.33EInvalidOp . . . . .	1322
38.33.1 Description . . . . .	1322
38.34EInvalidPointer . . . . .	1322
38.34.1 Description . . . . .	1322
38.35EMathError . . . . .	1322
38.35.1 Description . . . . .	1322

38.36ENoThreadSupport	1322
38.36.1 Description	1322
38.37ENoWideStringSupport	1322
38.37.1 Description	1322
38.38EOSError	1322
38.38.1 Description	1322
38.39EOOutOfMemory	1322
38.39.1 Description	1322
38.40EOOverflow	1323
38.40.1 Description	1323
38.41EPackageError	1323
38.41.1 Description	1323
38.42EPrivilege	1323
38.42.1 Description	1323
38.43EPropReadOnly	1323
38.43.1 Description	1323
38.44EPropWriteOnly	1323
38.44.1 Description	1323
38.45ERangeError	1323
38.45.1 Description	1323
38.46ESafecallException	1323
38.46.1 Description	1323
38.47EStackOverflow	1324
38.47.1 Description	1324
38.48EUnderflow	1324
38.48.1 Description	1324
38.49EVariantError	1324
38.49.1 Description	1324
38.49.2 Method overview	1324
38.49.3 EVariantError.CreateCode	1324
38.50Exception	1324
38.50.1 Description	1324
38.50.2 Method overview	1325
38.50.3 Property overview	1325
38.50.4 Exception.Create	1325
38.50.5 Exception.CreateFmt	1325
38.50.6 Exception.CreateRes	1325
38.50.7 Exception.CreateResFmt	1326
38.50.8 Exception.CreateHelp	1326
38.50.9 Exception.CreateFmtHelp	1326

38.50.1	<a href="#">Exception.CreateResHelp</a>	1326
38.50.1	<a href="#">Exception.CreateResFmtHelp</a>	1327
38.50.1	<a href="#">Exception.HelpContext</a>	1327
38.50.1	<a href="#">Exception.Message</a>	1327
38.51	<a href="#">EZeroDivide</a>	1327
38.51.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1327
38.52	<a href="#">IReadWriteSync</a>	1328
38.52.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1328
38.52.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1328
38.52.3	<a href="#">IReadWriteSync.BeginRead</a>	1328
38.52.4	<a href="#">IReadWriteSync.EndRead</a>	1328
38.52.5	<a href="#">IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite</a>	1328
38.52.6	<a href="#">IReadWriteSync.EndWrite</a>	1329
38.53	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</a>	1329
38.53.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1329
38.53.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1329
38.53.3	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Create</a>	1329
38.53.4	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Destroy</a>	1330
38.53.5	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginwrite</a>	1330
38.53.6	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endwrite</a>	1330
38.53.7	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginread</a>	1330
38.53.8	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endread</a>	1331
<b>39</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'typinfo'</b>	<b>1332</b>
39.1	<a href="#">Auxiliary functions</a>	1332
39.2	<a href="#">Getting or setting property values</a>	1332
39.3	<a href="#">Examining published property information</a>	1332
39.4	<a href="#">Used units</a>	1332
39.5	<a href="#">Overview</a>	1332
39.6	<a href="#">Constants, types and variables</a>	1333
39.6.1	<a href="#">Constants</a>	1333
39.6.2	<a href="#">Types</a>	1335
39.7	<a href="#">Procedures and functions</a>	1339
39.7.1	<a href="#">FindPropInfo</a>	1339
39.7.2	<a href="#">GetEnumName</a>	1341
39.7.3	<a href="#">GetEnumNameCount</a>	1341
39.7.4	<a href="#">GetEnumProp</a>	1342
39.7.5	<a href="#">GetEnumValue</a>	1342
39.7.6	<a href="#">GetFloatProp</a>	1343
39.7.7	<a href="#">GetInt64Prop</a>	1344

39.7.8	GetInterfaceProp	1345
39.7.9	GetMethodProp	1345
39.7.10	GetObjectProp	1347
39.7.11	GetObjectPropClass	1348
39.7.12	GetOrdProp	1349
39.7.13	GetPropInfo	1350
39.7.14	GetPropInfos	1350
39.7.15	GetPropList	1351
39.7.16	GetPropValue	1352
39.7.17	GetSetProp	1352
39.7.18	GetStrProp	1354
39.7.19	GetTypeData	1355
39.7.20	GetUnicodeStrProp	1355
39.7.21	GetVariantProp	1355
39.7.22	GetWideStrProp	1356
39.7.23	IsPublishedProp	1356
39.7.24	IsStoredProp	1357
39.7.25	PropIsType	1358
39.7.26	PropType	1359
39.7.27	SetEnumProp	1359
39.7.28	SetFloatProp	1360
39.7.29	SetInt64Prop	1360
39.7.30	SetInterfaceProp	1361
39.7.31	SetMethodProp	1361
39.7.32	SetObjectProp	1361
39.7.33	SetOrdProp	1362
39.7.34	SetPropValue	1362
39.7.35	SetSetProp	1363
39.7.36	SetStrProp	1363
39.7.37	SetToString	1364
39.7.38	SetUnicodeStrProp	1365
39.7.39	SetVariantProp	1365
39.7.40	SetWideStrProp	1365
39.7.41	StringToSet	1366
39.8	EPropertyConvertError	1366
39.8.1	Description	1366
39.9	EPropertyError	1366
39.9.1	Description	1366

**40 Reference for unit 'Unix'****1367**

---

40.1	Used units	1367
40.2	Constants, types and variables	1367
40.2.1	Constants	1367
40.2.2	Types	1374
40.2.3	Variables	1383
40.3	Procedures and functions	1383
40.3.1	AssignPipe	1383
40.3.2	AssignStream	1384
40.3.3	FpExecL	1385
40.3.4	FpExecLE	1386
40.3.5	FpExecLP	1387
40.3.6	FpExecLPE	1388
40.3.7	FpExecV	1388
40.3.8	FpExecVP	1389
40.3.9	FpExecVPE	1390
40.3.10	fpFlock	1391
40.3.11	fpfStatFS	1391
40.3.12	fpfsync	1392
40.3.13	fpgettimeofday	1392
40.3.14	fpStatFS	1392
40.3.15	fpSystem	1393
40.3.16	FSearch	1393
40.3.17	fStatFS	1394
40.3.18	fsync	1395
40.3.19	GetDomainName	1395
40.3.20	GetHostName	1396
40.3.21	GetLocalTimezone	1396
40.3.22	GetTimezoneFile	1397
40.3.23	PClose	1397
40.3.24	POpen	1397
40.3.25	ReadTimezoneFile	1398
40.3.26	SeekDir	1399
40.3.27	SelectText	1399
40.3.28	Shell	1399
40.3.29	SigRaise	1400
40.3.30	StatFS	1401
40.3.31	TellDir	1402
40.3.32	WaitProcess	1402
40.3.33	WIFSTOPPED	1403
40.3.34	W_EXITCODE	1403

40.3.35 W_STOPCODE	1403
<b>41 Reference for unit 'unixtype'</b>	<b>1404</b>
41.1 Overview	1404
41.2 Constants, types and variables	1404
41.2.1 Constants	1404
41.2.2 Types	1405
<b>42 Reference for unit 'unixutil'</b>	<b>1418</b>
42.1 Overview	1418
42.2 Constants, types and variables	1418
42.2.1 Types	1418
42.2.2 Variables	1418
42.3 Procedures and functions	1419
42.3.1 ArrayStringToPPchar	1419
42.3.2 Basename	1419
42.3.3 Dirname	1420
42.3.4 EpochToLocal	1420
42.3.5 FNMatch	1421
42.3.6 FSplit	1422
42.3.7 GetFS	1422
42.3.8 GregorianToJulian	1423
42.3.9 JulianToGregorian	1423
42.3.10 LocalToEpoch	1423
42.3.11 StringToPPChar	1424
<b>43 Reference for unit 'video'</b>	<b>1426</b>
43.1 Examples utility unit	1426
43.2 Writing a custom video driver	1426
43.3 Overview	1427
43.4 Constants, types and variables	1428
43.4.1 Constants	1428
43.4.2 Types	1432
43.4.3 Variables	1434
43.5 Procedures and functions	1435
43.5.1 ClearScreen	1435
43.5.2 DefaultErrorHandler	1436
43.5.3 DoneVideo	1436
43.5.4 GetCapabilities	1436
43.5.5 GetCursorType	1437
43.5.6 GetLockScreenCount	1438

43.5.7	GetVideoDriver	1439
43.5.8	GetVideoMode	1439
43.5.9	GetVideoModeCount	1440
43.5.10	GetVideoModeData	1441
43.5.11	InitVideo	1441
43.5.12	LockScreenUpdate	1442
43.5.13	SetCursorPos	1442
43.5.14	SetCursorType	1443
43.5.15	SetVideoDriver	1444
43.5.16	SetVideoMode	1444
43.5.17	UnlockScreenUpdate	1444
43.5.18	UpdateScreen	1445
<b>44</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'winrt'</b>	<b>1446</b>
44.1	Overview	1446
44.2	Constants, types and variables	1446
44.2.1	Variables	1446
44.3	Procedures and functions	1446
44.3.1	delay	1446
44.3.2	keypressed	1446
44.3.3	nosound	1447
44.3.4	readkey	1447
44.3.5	sound	1447
44.3.6	textmode	1447
<b>45</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'x86'</b>	<b>1448</b>
45.1	Used units	1448
45.2	Overview	1448
45.3	Procedures and functions	1448
45.3.1	fpIOperm	1448
45.3.2	fpIoPL	1449
45.3.3	ReadPort	1449
45.3.4	ReadPortB	1449
45.3.5	ReadPortL	1450
45.3.6	ReadPortW	1450
45.3.7	WritePort	1450
45.3.8	WritePortB	1451
45.3.9	WritePortL	1451
45.3.10	WritePortW	1451

## About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the Free Pascal Run-Time library (RTL).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

**Declaration** The exact declaration of the function.

**Description** What does the procedure exactly do ?

**Errors** What errors can occur.

**See Also** Cross references to other related functions/commands.

## 0.1 Overview

The Run-Time Library is the basis of all Free Pascal programs. It contains the basic units that most programs will use, and are made available on all platforms supported by Free pascal (well, more or less).

There are units for compatibility with the Turbo Pascal Run-Time library, and there are units for compatibility with Delphi.

On top of these two sets, there are also a series of units to handle keyboard/mouse and text screens in a cross-platform way.

Other units include platform specific units that implement the specifics of a platform, these are usually needed to support the Turbo Pascal or Delphi units.

Units that fall outside the above outline do not belong in the RTL, but should be included in the packages, or in the FCL.

# Chapter 1

## Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'

### 1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'BaseUnix'

Name	Page
unixtype	<a href="#">1404</a>

### 1.2 Overview

The **BaseUnix** unit was implemented by Marco Van de Voort. It contains basic unix functionality. It supersedes the **Linux** unit of version 1.0.X of the compiler, but does not implement all functionality of the **linux** unit.

People that have code which heavily uses the old **Linux** unit, can simply change **linux** by **oldlinux** in the `uses` clause of their projects, but they should really consider moving to the **Unix** and **BaseUnix** units.

For porting FPC to new unix-like platforms, it should be sufficient to implement the functionality in this unit for the new platform.

### 1.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 1.3.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`BITSINWORD = 8 * sizeof ( cuLong )`

Number of bits in a word.

`ESysE2BIG = 7`

System error: Argument list too long

ESysEACCES = 13

System error: Permission denied

ESysEADDRINUSE = 98

System error: Address already in use

ESysEADDRNOTAVAIL = 99

System error: Cannot assign requested address

ESysEADV = 68

System error: Advertise error

ESysEAFNOSUPPORT = 97

System error: Address family not supported by protocol

ESysEAGAIN = 11

System error: Try again

ESysEALREADY = 114

System error: Operation already in progress

ESysEBADE = 52

System error: Invalid exchange

ESysEBADF = 9

System error: Bad file number

ESysEBADFD = 77

System error: File descriptor in bad state

ESysEBADMSG = 74

System error: Not a data message

ESysEBADR = 53

System error: Invalid request descriptor

ESysEBADRQC = 56

System error: Invalid request code

ESysEBADSLT = 57

System error: Invalid slot

ESysEBFONT = 59

System error: Bad font file format

ESysEBUSY = 16

System error: Device or resource busy

ESysECHILD = 10

System error: No child processes

ESysECHRNG = 44

System error: Channel number out of range

ESysECOMM = 70

System error: Communication error on send

ESysECONNABORTED = 103

System error: Software caused connection abort

ESysECONNREFUSED = 111

System error: Connection refused

ESysECONNRESET = 104

System error: Connection reset by peer

ESysEDEADLK = 35

System error: Resource deadlock would occur

ESysEDEADLOCK = 58

System error: File locking deadlock error

ESysEDESTADDRREQ = 89

System error: Destination address required

ESysEDOM = 33

System error: Math argument out of domain of func

ESysEDOTDOT = 73

System error: RFS specific error

ESysEDQUOT = 122

System error: Quota exceeded

ESysEEXIST = 17

System error: File exists

ESysEFAULT = 14

System error: Bad address

ESysEFBIG = 27

System error: File too large

ESysEHOSTDOWN = 112

System error: Host is down

ESysEHOSTUNREACH = 113

System error: No route to host

ESysEIDRM = 43

System error: Identifier removed

ESysEILSEQ = 84

System error: Illegal byte sequence

ESysEINPROGRESS = 115

System error: Operation now in progress

ESysEINTR = 4

System error: Interrupted system call

ESysEINVAL = 22

System error: Invalid argument

ESysEIO = 5

System error: I/O error

ESysEISCONN = 106

System error: Transport endpoint is already connected

ESysEISDIR = 21

System error: Is a directory

ESysEISNAM = 120

System error: Is a named type file

ESysEL2HLT = 51

System error: Level 2 halted

ESysEL2NSYNC = 45

System error: Level 2 not synchronized

ESysEL3HLT = 46

System error: Level 3 halted

ESysEL3RST = 47

System error: Level 3 reset

ESysELIBACC = 79

System error: Can not access a needed shared library

ESysELIBBAD = 80

System error: Accessing a corrupted shared library

ESysELIBEXEC = 83

System error: Cannot exec a shared library directly

ESysELIBMAX = 82

System error: Attempting to link in too many shared libraries

ESysELIBSCN = 81

System error: .lib section in a.out corrupted

ESysELNRNG = 48

System error: Link number out of range

ESysELOOP = 40

System error: Too many symbolic links encountered

ESysEMFILE = 24

System error: Too many open files

ESysEMLINK = 31

System error: Too many links

ESysEMSGSIZE = 90

System error: Message too long

ESysEMULTIHOP = 72

System error: Multihop attempted

ESysENAMETOOLONG = 36

System error: File name too long

ESysENAVAIL = 119

System error: No XENIX semaphores available

ESysENETDOWN = 100

System error: Network is down

ESysENETRESET = 102

System error: Network dropped connection because of reset

ESysENETUNREACH = 101

System error: Network is unreachable

ESysENFILE = 23

System error: File table overflow

ESysENOANO = 55

System error: No anode

ESysENOBUFFS = 105

System error: No buffer space available

ESysENOC SI = 50

System error: No CSI structure available

ESysENODATA = 61

System error: No data available

ESysENODEV = 19

System error: No such device

ESysENOENT = 2

System error: No such file or directory

ESysENOEXEC = 8

System error: Exec format error

ESysENOLCK = 37

System error: No record locks available

ESysENOLINK = 67

System error: Link has been severed

ESysENOMEM = 12

System error: Out of memory

ESysENOMSG = 42

System error: No message of desired type

ESysENONET = 64

System error: Machine is not on the network

ESysENOPKG = 65

System error: Package not installed

ESysENOPROTOOPT = 92

System error: Protocol not available

ESysENOSPC = 28

System error: No space left on device

ESysENOSR = 63

System error: Out of streams resources

ESysENOSTR = 60

System error: Device not a stream

ESysENOSYS = 38

System error: Function not implemented

ESysENOTBLK = 15

System error: Block device required

ESysENOTCONN = 107

System error: Transport endpoint is not connected

ESysENOTDIR = 20

System error: Not a directory

ESysENOTEMPTY = 39

System error: Directory not empty

ESysENOTNAM = 118

System error: Not a XENIX named type file

ESysENOTSOCK = 88

System error: Socket operation on non-socket

ESysENOTTY = 25

System error: Not a typewriter

ESysENOTUNIQ = 76

System error: Name not unique on network

ESysENXIO = 6

System error: No such device or address

ESysEOPNOTSUPP = 95

System error: Operation not supported on transport endpoint

ESysEOVERFLOW = 75

System error: Value too large for defined data type

ESysEPERM = 1

System error: Operation not permitted.

ESysEPFNOSUPPORT = 96

System error: Protocol family not supported

ESysEPIPE = 32

System error: Broken pipe

ESysEPROTO = 71

System error: Protocol error

ESysEPROTONOSUPPORT = 93

System error: Protocol not supported

ESysEPROTOTYPE = 91

System error: Protocol wrong type for socket

ESysERANGE = 34

System error: Math result not representable

ESysEREMCHG = 78

System error: Remote address changed

ESysEREMOTE = 66

System error: Object is remote

ESysEREMOTEIO = 121

System error: Remote I/O error

ESysERESTART = 85

System error: Interrupted system call should be restarted

ESysEROFS = 30

System error: Read-only file system

ESysESHUTDOWN = 108

System error: Cannot send after transport endpoint shutdown

ESysESOCKTNOSUPPORT = 94

System error: Socket type not supported

ESysESPIPE = 29

System error: Illegal seek

ESysESRCH = 3

System error: No such process

ESysESRMNT = 69

System error: Srmount error

ESysESTALE = 116

System error: Stale NFS file handle

ESysESTRPIPE = 86

System error: Streams pipe error

ESysETIME = 62

System error: Timer expired

ESysETIMEDOUT = 110

System error: Connection timed out

ESysETOOMANYREFS = 109

System error: Too many references: cannot splice

ESysETXTBSY = 26

System error: Text (code segment) file busy

ESysEUCLEAN = 117

System error: Structure needs cleaning

ESysEUNATCH = 49

System error: Protocol driver not attached

ESysEUSERS = 87

System error: Too many users

ESysEWOULDBLOCK = ESysEAGAIN

System error: Operation would block

ESysEXDEV = 18

System error: Cross-device link

ESysEXFULL = 54

System error: Exchange full

FD\_MAXFDSET = 1024

Maximum elements in a TFDSet (110) array.

FPE\_FLTDIV = 3

Value signalling floating point divide by zero in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTINV = 7

Value signalling floating point invalid operation in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTOVF = 4

Value signalling floating point overflow in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTRES = 6

Value signalling floating point inexact result in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTSUB = 8

Value signalling floating point subscript out of range in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTUND = 5

Value signalling floating point underflow in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_INTDIV = 1

Value signalling integer divide in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_INTOVF = 2

Value signalling integer overflow in case of SIGFPE signal

`F_GetFd = 1`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Get close-on-exec flag

`F_GetFl = 3`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Get filedescriptor flags

`F_GetLk = 5`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Get lock

`F_GetOwn = 9`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: get owner of filedescriptor events

`F_OK = 0`

`fpAccess (116)` call test: file exists.

`F_SetFd = 2`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Set close-on-exec flag

`F_SetFl = 4`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Set filedescriptor flags

`F_SetLk = 6`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Set lock

`F_SetLkW = 7`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Test lock

`F_SetOwn = 8`

`fpFCntl (124)` command: Set owner of filedescriptor events

`ln2bitmask = 1 shl ln2bitsinword - 1`

Last bit in word.

`MAP_ANON = MAP_ANONYMOUS`

Anonymous memory mapping (data private to application)

`MAP_ANONYMOUS = $20`

FpMMap (138) map type: Don't use a file

MAP\_FAILED = pointer ( - 1 )

Memory mapping failed error code

MAP\_FIXED = \$10

FpMMap (138) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_PRIVATE = \$2

FpMMap (138) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = \$1

FpMMap (138) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = \$f

FpMMap (138) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

O\_APPEND = \$400

fpOpen (141) file open mode: Append to file

O\_CREAT = \$40

fpOpen (141) file open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

O\_DIRECT = \$4000

fpOpen (141) file open mode: Minimize caching effects

O\_DIRECTORY = \$10000

fpOpen (141) file open mode: File must be directory.

O\_EXCL = \$80

fpOpen (141) file open mode: Open exclusively

O\_NDELAY = O\_NONBLOCK

fpOpen (141) file open mode: Alias for O\_NonBlock (89)

O\_NOCTTY = \$100

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: No TTY control.

`O_NOFOLLOW = $20000`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`O_NONBLOCK = $800`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`O_RDONLY = 0`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Read only

`O_RDWR = 2`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Read/Write

`O_SYNC = $1000`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Write to disc at once

`O_TRUNC = $200`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`O_WRONLY = 1`

`fpOpen (141)` file open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX = UnixType.PATH_MAX`

Maximum pathname length.

`POLLERR = $0008`

Error condition on output file descriptor

`POLLHUP = $0010`

Hang up

`POLLIN = $0001`

Data is available for reading

`POLLNVAL = $0020`

Invalid request, file descriptor not open.

`POLLOUT = $0004`

Writing data will not block the write call

POLLPRI = \$0002

Urgent data is available for reading.

POLLRDBAND = \$0080

Priority data ready for reading.

POLLRDNORM = \$0040

Same as POLLIN.

POLLWRBAND = \$0200

Priority data may be written.

POLLWRNORM = \$0100

Equivalent to POLLOUT.

PRIO\_PGRP = UnixType.PRIO\_PGRP

Easy access alias for unixtype.PRIO\_PGRP ([1404](#))

PRIO\_PROCESS = UnixType.PRIO\_PROCESS

Easy access alias for unixtype.PRIO\_PROCESS ([1404](#))

PRIO\_USER = UnixType.PRIO\_USER

Easy access alias for unixtype.PRIO\_USER ([1404](#))

PROT\_EXEC = \$4

FpMMap ([138](#)) memory access: page can be executed

PROT\_NONE = \$0

FpMMap ([138](#)) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = \$1

FpMMap ([138](#)) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = \$2

FpMMap ([138](#)) memory access: page can be written

RLIMIT\_AS = 9

RLimit request address space limit

RLIMIT\_CORE = 4

RLimit request max core file size

RLIMIT\_CPU = 0

RLimit request CPU time in ms

RLIMIT\_DATA = 2

RLimit request max data size

RLIMIT\_FSIZE = 1

RLimit request maximum filesize

RLIMIT\_LOCKS = 10

RLimit request maximum file locks held

RLIMIT\_MEMLOCK = 8

RLimit request max locked-in-memory address space

RLIMIT\_NOFILE = 7

RLimit request max number of open files

RLIMIT\_NPROC = 6

RLimit request max number of processes

RLIMIT\_RSS = 5

RLimit request max resident set size

RLIMIT\_STACK = 3

RLimit request max stack size

R\_OK = 4

fpAccess ([116](#)) call test: read allowed

SA\_INTERRUPT = \$20000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOCLDSTOP = 1

Sigaction options: Do not receive notification when child processes stop

`SA_NOCLDWAIT = 2`

Sigaction options: ?

`SA_NODEFER = $40000000`

Sigaction options: Do not mask signal in its own signal handler

`SA_NOMASK = SA_NODEFER`

Sigaction options: Do not prevent the signal from being received when it is handled.

`SA_ONESHOT = SA_RESETHAND`

Sigaction options: Restore the signal action to the default state.

`SA_ONSTACK = $08000000`

`SA_ONSTACK` is used in the `sigaction` (153) to indicate the signal handler must be called on an alternate signal stack provided by `sigaltstack` (76). If an alternate stack is not available, the default stack will be used.

`SA_RESETHAND = $80000000`

Sigaction options: Restore signal action to default state when signal handler exits.

`SA_RESTART = $10000000`

Sigaction options: Provide behaviour compatible with BSD signal semantics

`SA_RESTORER = $04000000`

Signal restorer handler

`SA_SIGINFO = 4`

Sigaction options: The signal handler takes 3 arguments, not one.

`SEEK_CUR = 1`

`fpLSeek` (135) option: Set position relative to current position.

`SEEK_END = 2`

`fpLSeek` (135) option: Set position relative to end of file.

`SEEK_SET = 0`

`fpLSeek` (135) option: Set absolute position.

SIGABRT = 6

Signal: ABRT (Abort)

SIGALRM = 14

Signal: ALRM (Alarm clock)

SIGBUS = 7

Signal: BUS (bus error)

SIGCHLD = 17

Signal: CHLD (child status changed)

SIGCONT = 18

Signal: CONT (Continue)

SIGFPE = 8

Signal: FPE (Floating point error)

SIGHUP = 1

Signal: HUP (Hangup)

SIGILL = 4

Signal: ILL (Illegal instruction)

SIGINT = 2

Signal: INT (Interrupt)

SIGIO = 29

Signal: IO (I/O operation possible)

SIGIOT = 6

Signal: IOT (IOT trap)

SIGKILL = 9

Signal: KILL (unblockable)

SIGPIPE = 13

Signal: PIPE (Broken pipe)

SIGPOLL = SIGIO

Signal: POLL (Pollable event)

SIGPROF = 27

Signal: PROF (Profiling alarm)

SIGPWR = 30

Signal: PWR (power failure restart)

SIGQUIT = 3

Signal: QUIT

SIGSEGV = 11

Signal: SEGV (Segmentation violation)

SIGSTKFLT = 16

Signal: STKFLT (Stack Fault)

SIGSTOP = 19

Signal: STOP (Stop, unblockable)

SIGTerm = 15

Signal: TERM (Terminate)

SIGTRAP = 5

Signal: TRAP (Trace trap)

SIGTSTP = 20

Signal: TSTP (keyboard stop)

SIGTTIN = 21

Signal: TTIN (Terminal input, background)

SIGTTOU = 22

Signal: TTOU (Terminal output, background)

SIGUNUSED = 31

Signal: Unused

SIGURG = 23

Signal: URG (Socket urgent condition)

SIGUSR1 = 10

Signal: USR1 (User-defined signal 1)

SIGUSR2 = 12

Signal: USR2 (User-defined signal 2)

SIGVTALRM = 26

Signal: VTALRM (Virtual alarm clock)

SIGWINCH = 28

Signal: WINCH (Window/Terminal size change)

SIGXCPU = 24

Signal: XCPU (CPU limit exceeded)

SIGXFSZ = 25

Signal: XFSZ (File size limit exceeded)

SIG\_BLOCK = 0

Sigprocmask flags: Add signals to the set of blocked signals.

SIG\_DFL = 0

Signal handler: Default signal handler

SIG\_ERR = -1

Signal handler: error

SIG\_IGN = 1

Signal handler: Ignore signal

SIG\_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG\_MAXSIG

Maximum system signal number.

SIG\_SETMASK = 2

Sigprocmask flags: Set of blocked signals is given.

`SIG_UNBLOCK = 1`

Sigprocmask flags: Remove signals from the set set of blocked signals.

`SI_PAD_SIZE = ( ( 128 div sizeof ( longint ) ) - 3 )`

Signal information pad size.

`SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN`

Max system name length.

`S_IFBLK = 24576`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Block device

`S_IFCHR = 8192`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Character device

`S_IFDIR = 16384`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Directory

`S_IFIFO = 4096`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: FIFO

`S_IFLNK = 40960`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Link

`S_IFMT = 61440`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: File type bit mask

`S_IFREG = 32768`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Regular file

`S_IFSOCK = 49152`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Socket

`S_IRGRP = %0000100000`

Mode flag: Read by group.

`S_IROTH = %00000000100`

Mode flag: Read by others.

`S_IRUSR = %0100000000`

Mode flag: Read by owner.

`S_IRWXG = S_IRGRP or S_IWGRP or S_IXGRP`

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by groups.

`S_IRWXO = S_IROTH or S_IWOTH or S_IXOTH`

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by others.

`S_IRWXU = S_IRUSR or S_IWUSR or S_IXUSR`

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by user.

`S_IWGRP = %0000010000`

Mode flag: Write by group.

`S_IWOTH = %0000000010`

Mode flag: Write by others.

`S_IWUSR = %0010000000`

Mode flag: Write by owner.

`S_IXGRP = %0000001000`

Mode flag: Execute by group.

`S_IXOTH = %0000000001`

Mode flag: Execute by others.

`S_IXUSR = %0001000000`

Mode flag: Execute by owner.

`UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH = UTSNAME_LENGTH`

Max length of `utsname` (115) domain name.

`UTSNAME_LENGTH = SYS_NMLN`

Max length of `utsname` (115) system name, release, version, machine.

`UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH = UTSNAME_LENGTH`

Max length of `utsname` (115) node name.

WNOHANG = 1

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid (166) option: Do not wait for processes to terminate.

wordsinfdset = FD\_MAXFDSET div BITSINWORD

Number of words in a TFDSet (110) array

wordsinsigset = SIG\_MAXSIG div BITSINWORD

Number of words in a signal set.

WUNTRACED = 2

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid (166) option: Also report children which were stopped but not yet reported

W\_OK = 2

fpAccess (116) call test: write allowed

X\_OK = 1

fpAccess (116) call test: execute allowed

\_STAT\_VER = \_STAT\_VER\_LINUX

Stat version number

\_STAT\_VER\_KERNEL = 1

Current version of stat record

\_STAT\_VER\_LINUX = 3

Version of linux stat record

\_STAT\_VER\_LINUX\_OLD = 1

Old kernel definition of stat

\_STAT\_VER\_SVR4 = 2

SVR 4 definition of stat

### 1.3.2 Types

Blkcnt64\_t = cuint64

64-bit block count

`Blkcnt_t = cuint`

Block count type.

`Blksize_t = cuint`

Block size type.

`cbool = UnixType.cbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` ([1406](#))

`cdouble = UnixType.cdouble`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = UnixType.cfloat`

Floating-point real format

`cint = UnixType.cint`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = UnixType.cint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = UnixType.cint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = UnixType.cint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = UnixType.cint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = UnixType.clock_t`

Clock ticks type

`clong = UnixType.clong`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`clonglong = UnixType.clonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

`coff_t = UnixType.TOff`

Character offset type

`cschar = UnixType.cschar`

Signed character type

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`csigned = UnixType.csigned`

`csigned` is an alias for `cint` (99).

`csint = UnixType.csint`

Signed integer

`csize_t = UnixType.size_t`

Character size type

`cslong = UnixType.cslong`

The size is CPU dependent.

`cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong`

`cslonglong` is an alias for `clonglong` (100).

`csshort = UnixType.csshort`

Short signed integer type

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cuchar` (1407)

`cuint = UnixType.cuint`

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

`cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`culong = UnixType.culong`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`culonglong = UnixType.culonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` ([1408](#))

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

```
Dir = record
  dd_fd : Integer;
  dd_loc : LongInt;
  dd_size : Integer;
  dd_buf : pDirent;
  dd_nextoff : cardinal;
  dd_max : Integer;
  dd_lock : pointer;
end
```

Record used in `fpOpenDir` ([142](#)) and `fpReadDir` ([147](#)) calls

```
Dirent = packed record
  d_fileno : ino64_t;
  d_off : off_t;
  d_reclen : cushort;
  d_type : cuchar;
  d_name : Array[0..(255+1)-1] of Char;
end
```

Record used in the `fpReadDir` (147) function to return files in a directory.

```
Flock = record
  l_type : cshort;
  l_whence : cshort;
  l_start : kernel_off_t;
  l_len : kernel_off_t;
  l_pid : pid_t;
end
```

Lock description type for `fpFCntl` (124) lock call.

```
Flock64 = record
  l_type : cshort;
  l_whence : cshort;
  l_start : kernel_loff_t;
  l_len : kernel_loff_t;
  l_pid : pid_t;
end
```

`Flock64` is the record used in the `FpFcntl` (124) file locking call. It is the same as the `Flock` (102) type, only contains 64-bit offsets.

```
gid_t = UnixType.gid_t
```

Group ID type.

```
ino_t = UnixType.ino_t
```

Inode type.

```
iovec = record
  iov_base : pointer;
  iov_len : size_t;
end
```

`iovec` is used in `freadv` (148) for IO to multiple buffers to describe a buffer location.

```
kernel_loff_t = clonglong
```

Long kernel offset type

```
kernel_off_t = clong
```

Kernel offset type

```
mode_t = UnixType.mode_t
```

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t`

Number of links type.

`off_t = UnixType.off_t`

Offset type.

`PBlkCnt = ^Blkcnt_t`

pointer to TBlkCnt (110) type.

`PBlkSize = ^Blksize_t`

Pointer to TBlkSize (110) type.

`pcbool = UnixType.pcbbool`

Pointer to boolean type cbbool (99)

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcchar (1409)

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to cdouble (99) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to cfloat (99) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to cint (99) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

`pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32`

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

`pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64`

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

`pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8`

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

`pClock = UnixType.pClock`

Pointer to TClock (110) type.

`pclong = UnixType.pclong`

Pointer to cLong (99) type.

`pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong`

Pointer to longlong type.

`pcschar = UnixType.pcschar`

Pointer to character type cschar (100).

`pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to cShort (100) type.

`pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned`

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (100).

`pcsint = UnixType.pcsint`

Pointer to signed integer type csint (100)

`pcsize_t = UnixType.psize_t`

Pointer to csize\_t

`pcslong = UnixType.pcslong`

Pointer of the signed long cslong (100)

`pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong`

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong (100)

`pcsshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort (100)

`pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar`

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcuchar (1410)

`pcuint = UnixType.pcuint`

Pointer to cUInt (100) type.

`pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16`

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

`pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32`

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

`pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64`

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

`pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8`

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

`pculong = UnixType.pculong`

Pointer to `cuLong` (101) type.

`pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong`

Unsigned longlong type

`pcunsigned = UnixType.pcunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.pcunsigned` (1411)

`pcushort = UnixType.pcushort`

Pointer to `cuShort` (101) type.

`pDev = UnixType.pDev`

Pointer to `TDev` (110) type.

`pDir = ^Dir`

Pointer to `TDir` (110) record

`pDirent = ^Dirent`

Pointer to `TDirent` (110) record.

`pFDSet = ^TFDSet`

Pointer to `TFDSet` (110) type.

`pFilDes = ^TFilDes`

Pointer to `TFilDes` (110) type.

`pfpstate = ^tfpstate`

Pointer to `tfpstate` (111) record.

`pGid = UnixType.pGid`

Pointer to `TGid` (111) type.

`pGrpArr = ^TGrpArr`

Pointer to `TGrpArr` (111) array.

`pid_t = UnixType.pid_t`

Process ID type.

`pIno = UnixType.pIno`

Pointer to `TIno` (111) type.

`piovec = ^tiovec`

pointer to a `iovec` (102) record

`pMode = UnixType.pMode`

Pointer to `TMode` (112) type.

`pnLink = UnixType.pnLink`

Pointer to `TnLink` (112) type.

`pOff = UnixType.pOff`

Pointer to `TOff` (112) type.

```
pollfd = record
  fd : cint;
  events : cshort;
  revents : cshort;
end
```

`pollfd` is used in the `fpPoll` (145) call to describe the various actions.

`pPid = UnixType.pPid`

Pointer to `TPid` (112) type.

`ppollfd = ^pollfd`

Pointer to `tpollfd`.

`PRLimit = ^TRLimit`

Pointer to `TRLimit` (112) record

`psigactionrec = ^sigactionrec`

Pointer to `SigActionRec` (109) record type.

`PSigContext = ^TSigContext`

Pointer to `#rtl.baseunix.TSigContext` (113) record type.

`psiginfo = ^tsiginfo`

Pointer to `#rtl.baseunix.TSigInfo` (113) record type.

`psigset = ^tsigset`

Pointer to `SigSet` (109) type.

`pSize = UnixType.pSize`

Pointer to `TSize` (114) type.

`pSize_t = UnixType.pSize_t`

Pointer to `Size_t`

`pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen`

Pointer to `TSockLen` (114) type.

`psSize = UnixType.psSize`

Pointer to `TsSize` (114) type

`PStat = ^Stat`

Pointer to `TStat` (114) type.

`pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t`

Thread conditional variable type.

`pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t`

Thread mutex type.

`pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t`

Posix thread type.

```
pTime = UnixType.pTime
```

Pointer to TTime (114) type.

```
ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec
```

Pointer to timespec (111) type.

```
ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval
```

Pointer to timeval (111) type.

```
ptimezone = ^timezone
```

Pointer to TimeZone (111) record.

```
ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (111) type.

```
PTms = ^tms
```

Pointer to TTms (114) type.

```
Pucontext = ^Tucontext
```

Pointer to TUContext (115) type.

```
pUId = UnixType.pUId
```

Pointer to TUid (115) type.

```
pUtimBuf = ^UTimBuf
```

Pointer to TUTimBuf (115) type.

```
PUtsName = ^TUTsName
```

Pointer to TUtName (115) type.

```
rlim_t = culong
```

`rlim_t` is used as the type for the various fields in the TRLimit (112) record.

```
sigactionhandler = sigactionhandler_t
```

When installing a signal handler, the actual signal handler must be of type `SigActionHandler`.

```
sigactionhandler_t = procedure(signal: LongInt; info: psiginfo;  
                               context: PSigContext)
```

Standard signal action handler prototype

```
sigactionrec = record  
  sa_handler : sigactionhandler_t;  
  sa_flags : culong;  
  sa_restorer : sigrestorerhandler_t;  
  sa_mask : sigset_t;  
end
```

Record used in `fpSigAction` ([153](#)) call.

```
signalhandler = signalhandler_t
```

Simple signal handler prototype

```
signalhandler_t = procedure(signal: LongInt)
```

Standard signal handler prototype

```
sigrestorerhandler = sigrestorerhandler_t
```

Alias for `sigrestorerhandler_t` ([109](#)) type.

```
sigrestorerhandler_t = procedure
```

Standard signal action restorer prototype

```
sigset = sigset_t
```

Signal set type

```
sigset_t = Array[0..wordsinsigset-1] of culong
```

Signal set type

```
size_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t
```

Small size type.

```
Stat = packed record
end
```

Record describing an inode (file) in the FPFstat (127) call.

```
TBlkCnt = Blkcnt_t
```

Alias for Blkcnt\_t (99) type.

```
TBlkSize = Blksize_t
```

Alias for blksize\_t (99) type.

```
TClock = UnixType.TClock
```

Alias for clock\_t (99) type.

```
TDev = UnixType.TDev
```

Alias for dev\_t (101) type.

```
TDir = Dir
```

Alias for Dir (101) type.

```
TDirent = Dirent
```

Alias for Dirent (102) type.

```
TFDSet = Array[0..(FD_MAXFDSETdivBITSINWORD)-1] of culong
```

File descriptor set for fpSelect (149) call.

```
TFilDes = Array[0..1] of cint
```

Array of file descriptors as used in fpPipe (144) call.

```
tfpreg = record
  significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
  exponent : Word;
end
```

Record describing floating point register in signal handler.

```
tfpstate = record
  cw : cardinal;
  sw : cardinal;
  tag : cardinal;
  ipoff : cardinal;
```

```

    cssel : cardinal;
    dataoff : cardinal;
    dataset : cardinal;
    st : Array[0..7] of tfpreg;
    status : cardinal;
end

```

Record describing floating point unit in signal handler.

```
TGid = UnixType.TGid
```

Alias for `gid_t` (102) type.

```
TGrpArr = Array[0..0] of TGid
```

Array of `gid_t` (102) IDs

```
timespec = UnixType.timespec
```

Short time specification type.

```
timeval = UnixType.timeval
```

Time specification type.

```

timezone = packed record
    tz_minuteswest : cint;
    tz_dsttime : cint;
end

```

Record describing a timezone

```
time_t = UnixType.time_t
```

Time span type

```
TIno = UnixType.TIno
```

Alias for `ino_t` (102) type.

```
TIOCtlRequest = UnixType.TIOCtlRequest
```

Easy access alias for `unixtype.TIOCtlRequest` (1416)

```
tiovec = iovec
```

Alias for the `iovec` (102) record type.

```
TMode = UnixType.TMode
```

Alias for mode\_t (102) type.

```
tms = packed record
  tms_utime : clock_t;
  tms_stime : clock_t;
  tms_cutime : clock_t;
  tms_cstime : clock_t;
end
```

Record containing timings for fpTimes (163) call.

```
TnLink = UnixType.TnLink
```

Alias for nlink\_t (103) type.

```
TOff = UnixType.TOff
```

Alias for off\_t (103) type.

```
TPid = UnixType.TPid
```

Alias for pid\_t (106) type.

```
tpollfd = pollfd
```

Alias for pollfd type

```
TRLimit = record
  rlim_cur : rlim_t;
  rlim_max : rlim_t;
end
```

TRLimit is the structure used by the kernel to return resource limit information in.

```
tsigactionhandler = sigactionhandler_t
```

Alias for sigactionhandler\_t (109) type.

```
tsigaltstack = record
  ss_sp : pointer;
  ss_flags : LongInt;
  ss_size : LongInt;
end
```

Provide the location of an alternate signal handler stack.

```

TSigContext = record
  gs : Word;
  __gsh : Word;
  fs : Word;
  __fsh : Word;
  es : Word;
  __esh : Word;
  ds : Word;
  __dsh : Word;
  edi : cardinal;
  esi : cardinal;
  ebp : cardinal;
  esp : cardinal;
  ebx : cardinal;
  edx : cardinal;
  ecx : cardinal;
  eax : cardinal;
  trapno : cardinal;
  err : cardinal;
  eip : cardinal;
  cs : Word;
  __csh : Word;
  eflags : cardinal;
  esp_at_signal : cardinal;
  ss : Word;
  __ssh : Word;
  fpstate : pfpstate;
  oldmask : cardinal;
  cr2 : cardinal;
end

```

This type is CPU dependent. Cross-platform code should not use the contents of this record.

```

tsiginfo = record
  si_signo : LongInt;
  si_errno : LongInt;
  si_code : LongInt;
  _sifields : record
  end;
end

```

This type describes the signal that occurred.

```
tsignalhandler = signalhandler_t
```

Alias for `signalhandler_t` (109) type.

```
tsigrestorerhandler = sigrestorerhandler_t
```

Alias for `sigrestorerhandler_t` (109) type.

`tsigset = sigset_t`

Alias for `SigSet (109)` type.

`TSize = UnixType.TSize`

Alias for `size_t (109)` type

`TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen`

Alias for `socklen_t (109)` type.

`TsSize = UnixType.TsSize`

Alias for `ssize_t (109)` type

`TStat = Stat`

Alias for `Stat (110)` type.

`tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs`

Record describing a file system in the `baseunix.fpstatfs (76)` call.

`TTime = UnixType.TTime`

Alias for `TTime (114)` type.

`Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec`

Alias for `TimeSpec (111)` type.

`TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal`

Alias for `timeval (111)` type.

`TTimeZone = timezone`

Alias for `TimeZone (111)` record.

`TTms = tms`

Alias for `Tms (112)` record type.

```
TUcontext = record
  uc_flags : cardinal;
  uc_link : Pucontext;
  uc_stack : tsigaltstack;
  uc_mcontext : TSigContext;
  uc_sigmask : tsigset;
end
```

This structure is used to describe the user context in a program or thread. It is not used in this unit, but is provided for completeness.

`TUId = UnixType.TUId`

Alias for `uid_t` (115) type.

`TUtimBuf = UtimBuf`

Alias for `UtimBuf` (115) type.

`TUtsName = UtsName`

Alias for `UtsName` (115) type.

`uid_t = UnixType.uid_t`

User ID type

```
UtimBuf = record
  actime : time_t;
  modtime : time_t;
end
```

Record used in `fpUtime` (164) to set file access and modification times.

```
UtsName = record
  Sysname : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Nodename : Array[0..UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Release : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Version : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Machine : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Domain : Array[0..UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH-1] of Char;
end
```

The elements of this record are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly. Note that the `Domain` field is a GNU extension, and may not be available on all platforms.

## 1.4 Procedures and functions

### 1.4.1 CreateShellArgV

**Synopsis:** Create a null-terminated array of strings from a command-line string

**Declaration:** `function CreateShellArgV(const prog: String) : ppchar`  
`function CreateShellArgV(const prog: Ansistring) : ppchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CreateShellArgV` creates a command-line string for executing a shell command using `'sh -c'`. The result is a null-terminated array of null-terminated strings suitable for use in `fpExecv` (122) and friends.

**Errors:** If no more memory is available, a heap error may occur.

**See also:** `fpExecv` (122), `FreeShellArgV` (167)

### 1.4.2 FpAccess

Synopsis: Check file access

Declaration: `function FpAccess(pathname: pChar;aMode: cint) : cint`  
`function FpAccess(pathname: AnsiString;aMode: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpAccess` tests user's access rights on the specified file. Mode is a mask existing of one or more of the following:

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**File exists.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If the user has the requested rights, zero is returned. If access is denied, or an error occurred, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

**sys\_eaccess**The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval**Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `FpChown` ([119](#)), `FpChmod` ([117](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** Example26;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Access function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**begin**

**if** `fpAccess ( '/etc/passwd',W_OK)=0` **then**  
    **begin**  
      **Writeln** ( 'Better check your system.');

**Writeln** ( 'I can write to the /etc/passwd file !');

**end**;

**end.**

---

### 1.4.3 FpAlarm

Synopsis: Schedule an alarm signal to be delivered

Declaration: `function FpAlarm(seconds: cuint) : cuint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpAlarm` schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in `Seconds` seconds. When `Seconds` seconds have elapsed, the system will send a `SIGALRM` signal to the current process. If `Seconds` is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of `Seconds`, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none. A negative value indicates an error.

See also: `fpSigAction` ([153](#)), `fpPause` ([143](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** `Example59`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Procedure** `AlarmHandler(Sig : cint); cdecl`;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Got to alarm handler' );

**end**;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Setting alarm handler' );

`fpSignal`(`SIGALRM`, `SignalHandler(@AlarmHandler)`);

**Writeln** ( 'Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds' );

`fpAlarm`(10);

**Writeln** ( 'Pausing' );

`fpPause`;

**Writeln** ( 'Pause returned' );

**end**.

---

#### 1.4.4 FpChdir

**Synopsis:** Change current working directory.

**Declaration:** `function FpChdir(path: pChar) : cint`  
                   `function FpChdir(path: AnsiString) : cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpChDir` sets the current working directory to `Path`.

It returns zero if the call was succesful, -1 on error.

**Note:** There exist a portable alternative to `fpChDir`: `system.chdir`. Please use `fpChDir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.chdir` will work on all operating systems.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `fpGetCwd` ([128](#))

#### 1.4.5 FpChmod

**Synopsis:** Change file permission bits

**Declaration:** `function FpChmod(path: pChar;Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpChmod(path: AnsiString;Mode: TMode) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpChmod` sets the Mode bits of the file in `Path` to Mode. Mode can be specified by 'or'-ing the following values:

**S\_ISUID**Set user ID on execution.  
**S\_ISGID**Set Group ID on execution.  
**S\_ISVTX**Set sticky bit.  
**S\_IRUSR**Read by owner.  
**S\_IWUSR**Write by owner.  
**S\_IXUSR**Execute by owner.  
**S\_IRGRP**Read by group.  
**S\_IWGRP**Write by group.  
**S\_IXGRP**Execute by group.  
**S\_IROTH**Read by others.  
**S\_IWOTH**Write by others.  
**S\_IXOTH**Execute by others.  
**S\_IRWXO**Read, write, execute by others.  
**S\_IRWXG**Read, write, execute by groups.  
**S\_IRWXU**Read, write, execute by user.

If the function is successful, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.  
**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.  
**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.  
**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.  
**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.  
**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChown` ([119](#)), `fpAccess` ([116](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** F : Text;

**begin**

---

```

    { Create a file }
    Assign (f, 'testex21');
    Rewrite (F);
    Writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
    Writeln (f, 'echo Some text for this file');
    Close (F);
    fpChmod ('testex21', &777);
    { File is now executable }
    fpexecl ('./testex21', []);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.6 FpChown

**Synopsis:** Change owner of file

**Declaration:** `function FpChown(path: pChar; owner: TUid; group: TGid) : cint`  
`function FpChown(path: AnsiString; owner: TUid; group: TGid) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpChown` sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in `Path` to `Owner, Group`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm** The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess** One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop** `Path` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChmod` ([117](#)), `fpAccess` ([116](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** UID : TUid;  
 GID : TGid;  
 F : Text;

**begin**

```

    Writeln ('This will only work if you are root. ');
    Write ('Enter a UID : '); readln(UID);
    Write ('Enter a GID : '); readln(GID);
    Assign (f, 'test.txt');

```

---

```

Rewrite (f);
Writeln (f, 'The owner of this file should become : ');
Writeln (f, 'UID : ', UID);
Writeln (f, 'GID : ', GID);
Close (F);
if fpChown ('test.txt', UID, GID) <> 0 then
  if fpgeterrno = ESysEPERM then
    Writeln ('You are not root !')
  else
    Writeln ('Chmod failed with exit code : ', fpgeterrno)
else
  Writeln ('Changed owner successfully !');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.7 FpClose

Synopsis: Close file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpClose(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpClose` closes a file with file descriptor `Fd`. The function returns zero if the file was closed successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

For an example, see `FpOpen` ([141](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `FpOpen` ([141](#)), `FpRead` ([146](#)), `FpWrite` ([166](#)), `FpFTruncate` ([128](#)), `FpLSeek` ([135](#))

### 1.4.8 FpClosedir

Synopsis: Close directory file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpClosedir(var dirp: Dir) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpCloseDir` closes the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

For an example, see `fpOpenDir` ([142](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `FpOpenDir` ([142](#)), `FpReadDir` ([147](#))

### 1.4.9 FpDup

Synopsis: Duplicate a file handle

Declaration: `function FpDup(fildes: cint) : cint`

```

function FpDup(var oldfile: text; var newfile: text) : cint
function FpDup(var oldfile: File; var newfile: File) : cint

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpDup` returns a file descriptor that is a duplicate of the file descriptor `fildes`.

The second and third forms make `NewFile` an exact copy of `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in case it is a Text file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, these calls do not have the same functionality as the `dup` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns a negative value in case of an error, a positive value is a file handle, and indicates succes.

**Errors:** A negative value can be one of the following error codes:

**sys\_ebadf**`OldFile` hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile**Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup2` ([121](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex31.pp`

---

```

program Example31 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function . }

uses baseunix ;

var f : text ;

begin
  if fpdup ( output , f ) < > 0 then
    writeln ( 'Dup Failed !' );
    writeln ( 'This is written to stdout.' );
    writeln ( f , 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed' ); flush ( f );
    writeln
  end .

```

---

### 1.4.10 FpDup2

**Synopsis:** Duplicate one filehandle to another

**Declaration:** `function FpDup2(fildes: cint;fildes2: cint) : cint`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : cint`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: File;var newfile: File) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Makes `fildes2` or `NewFile` an exact copy of `fildes` or `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in the case of text or untyped files.

After a call to `fdup2`, the 2 file descriptors point to the same physical device (a file, socket, or a terminal).

`NewFile` can be an assigned file. If `newfile` or `fildes` was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the `dup2` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns zero if succesful, a nonzero return value means the call failed.

Errors: In case of error, the following error codes can be reported:

**sys\_ebadf**OldFile (or fildes) hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile**Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup` ([120](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex32.pp`

---

**program** Example31;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpDup2 function. }*

**uses** BaseUnix;

**var** f : text;  
i : longint;

**begin**

Assign (f, 'text.txt');

**Rewrite** (F);

**For** i:=1 **to** 10 **do** **writeln** (F, 'Line : ', i);

**if** fpdup2 (output, f)=-1 **then**

**Writeln** ('Dup2 Failed !');

**writeln** ('This is written to stdout.');

**writeln** (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');

**flush**(f);

**writeln**;

*{ Remove file . Comment this if you want to check flushing. }*

fpUnlink ('text.txt');

**end**.

---

### 1.4.11 FpExecv

Synopsis: Execute process

**Declaration:** `function FpExecv(path: pChar;argv: ppChar) : cint`  
`function FpExecv(path: AnsiString;argv: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execv` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `fpErrno` ([76](#)):

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted \textit{noexec}.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecve` ([123](#)), `fpFork` ([126](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** `Unix`, `strings`;

**Const** `Arg0` : `PChar` = `'/bin/lS'`;  
           `Arg1` : `Pchar` = `'-l'`;

**Var** `PP` : `PPchar`;

**begin**

`GetMem` (`PP`, `3*SizeOf(Pchar)`);

`PP[0]` := `Arg0`;

`PP[1]` := `Arg1`;

`PP[3]` := `Nil`;

*{ Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }*

`fpExecv` (`'/bin/lS'`, `pp`);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.12 FpExecve

**Synopsis:** Execute process using environment

**Declaration:** `function FpExecve(path: pChar;argv: ppChar;envp: ppChar) : cint`  
                   `function FpExecve(path: AnsiString;argv: ppchar;envp: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`, and the environment in `envp`. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. On success, `execve` does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)), and includes the following:

**sys\_eaccess** File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm** The file system is mounted `\textit{noexec}`.

**sys\_e2big** Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec** The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem** Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [fpExecv \(122\)](#), [fpFork \(126\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS';  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

GetMem (PP,3\*SizeOf(Pchar));  
PP[0]:=Arg0;  
PP[1]:=Arg1;  
PP[3]:=Nil;  
*{ Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }*  
*{ Env is defined in system.inc }*  
fpExecVe ('/bin/lS',pp,envp);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.13 FpExit

**Synopsis:** Exit the current process

**Declaration:** procedure FpExit(Status: cint)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExit exits the currently running process, and report Status as the exit status.

**Remark:** If this call is executed, the normal unit finalization code will not be executed. This may lead to unexpected errors and stray files on your system. It is therefore recommended to use the Halt call instead.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [FpFork \(126\)](#), [FpExecve \(123\)](#)

### 1.4.14 FpFcntl

**Synopsis:** File control operations.

**Declaration:** function FpFcntl(fildes: cint;cmd: cint) : cint  
function FpFcntl(fildes: cint;cmd: cint;arg: cint) : cint  
function FpFcntl(fildes: cint;cmd: cint;var arg: FLock) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Read/set a file's attributes. Fildes a valid file descriptor. Cmd specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFd**Read the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFl**Read the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwn**Get the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

**F\_SetFd**Set the `close_on_exec` flag of `filides`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLk**Return the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock of there is no obstruction. `Arg` is the flock record.

**F\_SetLk**Set the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.

**F\_GetLkw**Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn**Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

The function returns 0 if successful, -1 otherwise.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Use `fpGetErrno` (129) for extended error information.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain** or **sys\_eaccess**For `\textbf{F_SetLk}`, if the lock is held by another process.

### 1.4.15 fpfdfillset

Synopsis: Set all filedescriptors in the set.

Declaration: `function fpfdfillset(var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpfdfillset` sets all filedescriptors in `nset`.

See also: `FpSelect` (149), `FpFD_ZERO` (126), `FpFD_IsSet` (126), `FpFD_Clr` (125), `FpFD_Set` (126)

### 1.4.16 fpFD\_CLR

Synopsis: Clears a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_CLR(fdno: cint;var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fdno` in filedescriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (149).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (149), `FpFD_ZERO` (126), `FpFD_Set` (126), `FpFD_IsSet` (126)

### 1.4.17 fpFD\_ISSET

Synopsis: Check whether a filedescriptor is set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ISSET(fdno: cint; const nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fdNo` in filedescriptor set `fds` is set. It returns zero if the descriptor is not set, 1 if it is set. If the number of the filedescriptor is wrong, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (149).

Errors: If an invalid file descriptor number is passed, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSelect` (149), `FpFD_ZERO` (126), `FpFD_Clr` (125), `FpFD_Set` (126)

### 1.4.18 fpFD\_SET

Synopsis: Set a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_SET(fdno: cint; var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` sets file descriptor `fdno` in filedescriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (149).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (149), `FpFD_ZERO` (126), `FpFD_Clr` (125), `FpFD_IsSet` (126)

### 1.4.19 fpFD\_ZERO

Synopsis: Clear all file descriptors in set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ZERO(var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_ZERO` clears all the filedescriptors in the file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (149).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (149), `FpFD_Clr` (125), `FpFD_Set` (126), `FpFD_IsSet` (126)

### 1.4.20 FpFork

Synopsis: Create child process

Declaration: `function FpFork : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `FpFork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `fpGetPPid` (132)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: [fpExecve \(123\)](#), [#rtl.linux.Clone \(473\)](#)

### 1.4.21 FPFStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpFStat(fd: cint;var sb: Stat) : cint`  
`function FPFStat(var F: Text;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FPFStat(var F: File;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Fd**a valid file descriptor.

**F**an opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` ([110](#)). The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

**sys\_enoent**`Path` does not exist.

See also: [FpStat \(158\)](#), [FpLStat \(136\)](#)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
    { Make a file }
    assign (f, 'test.fil');
    rewrite (f);
    for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ',i);
    close (f);
    { Do the call on made file. }
    if fpstat ('test.fil',info)<>0 then
        begin
            writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt (1);
        end;
    writeln;
    writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
    writeln ('Inode      : ',info.st_ino);
    writeln ('Mode       : ',info.st_mode);

```

---

```

writeln ( 'nlink    : ', info.st_nlink );
writeln ( 'uid      : ', info.st_uid );
writeln ( 'gid      : ', info.st_gid );
writeln ( 'rdev     : ', info.st_rdev );
writeln ( 'Size     : ', info.st_size );
writeln ( 'Blksize  : ', info.st_blksize );
writeln ( 'Blocks   : ', info.st_blocks );
writeln ( 'atime    : ', info.st_atime );
writeln ( 'mtime    : ', info.st_mtime );
writeln ( 'ctime    : ', info.st_ctime );
  { Remove file }
  erase ( f );
end .

```

---

### 1.4.22 FpFtruncate

Synopsis: Truncate file on certain size.

Declaration: `function FpFtruncate(fd: cint; flength: TOff) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFtruncate` sets the length of a file in `fd` on `flength` bytes, where `flength` must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in `fd`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates that an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `FpOpen` ([141](#)), `FpClose` ([120](#)), `FpRead` ([146](#)), `FpWrite` ([166](#)), `FpLSeek` ([135](#))

### 1.4.23 FpGetcwd

Synopsis: Retrieve the current working directory.

Declaration: `function FpGetcwd(path: pChar; siz: TSize) : pChar`  
`function FpGetcwd : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgetCWD` returns the current working directory of the running process. It is returned in `Path`, which points to a memory location of at least `siz` bytes.

If the function is succesful, a pointer to `Path` is returned, or a string with the result. On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

Errors: On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

See also: `FpGetPID` ([131](#)), `FpGetUID` ([132](#))

### 1.4.24 FpGetegid

Synopsis: Return effective group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetegid : TGid`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpGetegid` returns the effective group ID of the currently running process.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FpGetGid` ([130](#)), `FpGetUid` ([132](#)), `FpGetEUid` ([130](#)), `FpGetPid` ([131](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([132](#)), `fpSetUID` ([153](#)), `FpSetGid` ([151](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

```
begin
  writeLn ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid, ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid);
end.
```

---

### 1.4.25 FpGetEnv

**Synopsis:** Return value of environment variable.

**Declaration:** `function FpGetEnv(name: pChar) : pChar`  
`function FpGetEnv(name: String) : pChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FPGetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable in `Name`. If the variable is not defined, `nil` is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A `PChar` is returned to accomodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, `TERMCAP` and `LS_COLORS`, for instance.

**Errors:** None.

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

```
begin
  WriteLn ( 'Path is : ',fpGetenv( 'PATH' ));
end.
```

---

### 1.4.26 fpgeterrno

**Synopsis:** Retrieve extended error information.

**Declaration:** `function fpgeterrno : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpgeterrno` returns extended information on the latest error. It is set by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `fpseterrno` ([151](#))

### 1.4.27 FpGeteuid

Synopsis: Return effective user ID

Declaration: `function FpGeteuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGeteuid` returns the effective user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetUid` ([132](#)), `FpGetGid` ([130](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([128](#)), `FpGetPid` ([131](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([132](#)), `fpSetUID` ([153](#)), `FpSetGid` ([151](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEuid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'User Id = ',fpgetuid , ' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid );`

`end.`

---

### 1.4.28 FpGetgid

Synopsis: Return real group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetgid : TGid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetgid` returns the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetEGid` ([128](#)), `FpGetUid` ([132](#)), `FpGetEuid` ([130](#)), `FpGetPid` ([131](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([132](#)), `fpSetUID` ([153](#)), `FpSetGid` ([151](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid , ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid );`

`end.`

---

### 1.4.29 FpGetgroups

Synopsis: Get the list of supplementary groups.

Declaration: `function FpGetgroups(gidsetsize: cint; var grouplist: TGrpArr) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetgroups returns up to gidsetsize groups in GroupList

If the function is successful, then number of groups that were stored is returned. On error, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with fpGetErrNo ([129](#))

See also: FpGetpgrp ([131](#)), FpGetGID ([130](#)), FpGetEGID ([128](#))

### 1.4.30 FpGetpgrp

Synopsis: Get process group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpgrp : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetpgrp returns the process group ID of the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: fpGetPID ([131](#)), fpGetPPID ([132](#)), FpGetGID ([130](#)), FpGetUID ([132](#))

### 1.4.31 FpGetpid

Synopsis: Return current process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetpid returns the process ID of the currently running process.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to fpGetpid: `system.GetProcessID`. Please use fpGetpid only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.GetProcessID` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: FpGetPPid ([132](#))

---

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex16.pp

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ', fpgetpid, ' Parent process Id = ', fpgetppid );  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.32 FpGetppid

Synopsis: Return parent process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetppid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetppid` returns the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetPid` ([131](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Process Id = ',fpgetpid, ' Parent process Id = ',fpgetppid);`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.33 fpGetPriority

Synopsis: Return process priority

Declaration: `function fpGetPriority(Which: cint;Who: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPriority` returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. `Which` can be one of the pre-defined `Prio_Process`, `Prio_PGrp`, `Prio_User`, in which case `Who` is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

For an example, see `FpNice` ([140](#)).

Errors: Error information is returned solely by the `FpGetErrno` ([129](#)) function: a priority can be a positive or negative value.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using `which` and `who`.

**sys\_einval**`Which` was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

See also: `FpSetPriority` ([151](#)), `FpNice` ([140](#))

### 1.4.34 FpGetuid

Synopsis: Return current user ID

Declaration: `function FpGetuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetuid` returns the real user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: [FpGetGid \(130\)](#), [FpGetEUid \(130\)](#), [FpGetEGid \(128\)](#), [FpGetPid \(131\)](#), [FpGetPPid \(132\)](#), [fpSetUID \(153\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex17.pp

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

```
begin
  writeln ( 'User Id = ',fpgetuid, ' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid);
end.
```

---

### 1.4.35 FpIOctl

Synopsis: General kernel IOCTL call.

**Declaration:** function FpIOctl(Handle: cint;Ndx: TIOctlRequest;Data: Pointer) : cint

Visibility: default

**Description:** This is a general interface to the Unix/ linux ioctl call. It performs various operations on the filedescriptor Handle. Ndx describes the operation to perform. Data points to data needed for the Ndx function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under linux.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using [fpGetErrno \(129\)](#).

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex54.pp

---

**Program** Example54;

**uses** BaseUnix,Termio;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOctl function. }*

```
var
  tios : Termios;

begin
  {$ifdef FreeBSD}
    fpIOctl(1,TIOCGETA,@tios); // these constants are very OS dependant.
                                // see the tcgetattr example for a better way
  {$endif}
  WriteLn( 'Input Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8));
  WriteLn( 'Output Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8));
  WriteLn( 'Line Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8));
  WriteLn( 'Control Flags: $',hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8));
end.
```

---

### 1.4.36 FpKill

Synopsis: Send a signal to a process

**Declaration:** `function FpKill(pid: TPid;sig: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpKill` sends a signal `Sig` to a process or process group. If `Pid>0` then the signal is sent to `Pid`, if it equals `-1`, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If `Pid<-1` then the signal is sent to process group `-Pid`.

The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129):

**sys\_einval**An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch**The `Pid` or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm**The effective userid of the current process doesn't math the one of process `Pid`.

See also: `FpSigAction` (153), `FpSignal` (156)

### 1.4.37 FpLink

**Synopsis:** Create a hard link to a file

**Declaration:** `function FpLink(existing: pChar;newone: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpLink(existing: AnsiString;newone: AnsiString) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpLink` makes `NewOne` point to the same file als `Existing`. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, and returns a non-zero value if the call failed.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_exdev**`Existing` and `NewOne` are not on the same filesystem.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing `Existing` and `NewOne` doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing `NewOne` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `Existing` or `NewOne` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Existing` or `NewOne` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in `Existing` or `NewOne` is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist**`NewOne` already exists.

**sys\_mlink**`Existing` has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop**`existing` or `NewOne` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc**The device containing `NewOne` has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm**`Existing` points to `.` or `..` of a directory.

See also: `fpSymLink` (159), `fpUnLink` (164)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex21.pp`

---

```

Program Example21;

{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }

Uses BaseUnix;

Var F : Text;
    S : String;
begin
    Assign (F, 'test.txt');
    Rewrite (F);
    Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');
    Close(f);
    { new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
    if fpLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then
        writeln ('Error when linking !');
    { Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }
    If fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 then
        Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
    Assign (f, 'new.txt');
    Reset (F);
    While not EOF(f) do
        begin
            Readln(F,S);
            Writeln ('> ',s);
        end;
    Close (f);
    { Remove new.txt also }
    If not FPUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 then
        Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.38 FpLseek

**Synopsis:** Set file pointer position.

**Declaration:** function FpLseek(fd: cint; offset: TOff; whence: cint) : TOff

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpLseek sets the current fileposition of file fd to Offset, starting from Whence, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_SetOffset** is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_CurOffset** is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_endOffset** is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new fileposition, or -1 if an error occurred.

For an example, see FpOpen ([141](#)).

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno ([129](#)).

**See also:** FpOpen ([141](#)), FpWrite ([166](#)), FpClose ([120](#)), FpRead ([146](#)), FpFTruncate ([128](#))

### 1.4.39 fpLstat

**Synopsis:** Return information about symbolic link. Do not follow the link

**Declaration:**

```
function fpLstat(path: pchar;Info: PStat) : cint
function fpLstat(path: Ansistring;Info: PStat) : cint
function fpLstat(path: pchar;var Info: Stat) : cint
function fpLstat(Filename: ansistring;var Info: Stat) : cint
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpLstat gets information about the link specified in Path (or FileName, and stores it in Info, which points to a record of type TStat. Contrary to FpFstat (127), it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero return value indicates failure. failed.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (129) function.

**sys\_enoent**Path does not exist.

See also: FpFStat (127), #rtl.unix.StatFS (1401)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex29.pp

---

```
program example29;

{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil ');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil ', info) <> 0 then
    begin
      writeln ('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of stat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode    : ', info.st_ino);
  writeln ('Mode     : ', info.st_mode);
  writeln ('nlink    : ', info.st_nlink);
  writeln ('uid      : ', info.st_uid);
  writeln ('gid      : ', info.st_gid);
  writeln ('rdev     : ', info.st_rdev);
  writeln ('Size     : ', info.st_size);
  writeln ('Blksize  : ', info.st_blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks   : ', info.st_blocks);
  writeln ('atime    : ', info.st_atime);
  writeln ('mtime    : ', info.st_mtime);
```

---

```

writeln ( 'ctime      : ',info.st_ctime);

if fpSymLink ( 'test.fil ', 'test.lnk') <> 0 then
  writeln ( 'Link failed ! Errno : ',fpgeterrno);

if fplstat ( 'test.lnk ',@info) <> 0 then
  begin
    writeln ( 'LStat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
    halt (1);
  end;
writeln;
writeln ( 'Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''. ');
writeln ( 'Inode      : ',info.st_ino);
writeln ( 'Mode       : ',info.st_mode);
writeln ( 'nlink      : ',info.st_nlink);
writeln ( 'uid        : ',info.st_uid);
writeln ( 'gid        : ',info.st_gid);
writeln ( 'rdev       : ',info.st_rdev);
writeln ( 'Size       : ',info.st_size);
writeln ( 'Blksize    : ',info.st_blksize);
writeln ( 'Blocks     : ',info.st_blocks);
writeln ( 'atime      : ',info.st_atime);
writeln ( 'mtime      : ',info.st_mtime);
writeln ( 'ctime      : ',info.st_ctime);
  { Remove file and link }
  erase (f);
  fpunlink ( 'test.lnk');
end.

```

---

#### 1.4.40 FpMkdir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function FpMkdir(path: pChar;Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpMkdir(path: AnsiString;Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMkDir` creates a new directory `Path`, and sets the new directory's mode to `Mode`. `Path` can be an absolute path or a relative path. Note that only the last element of the directory will be created, higher level directories must already exist, and must be writeable by the current user.

On succes, 0 is returned. if the function fails, -1 is returned.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpMkDir`: `system.mkdir`. Please use `fpMkDir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.mkdir` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `fpGetCWD` ([128](#)), `fpChDir` ([117](#))

#### 1.4.41 FpMkfifo

Synopsis: Create FIFO (named pipe) in file system

Declaration: `function FpMkfifo(path: pChar;Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpMkfifo(path: AnsiString;Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpMkFifo` creates a named pipe in the filesystem, with name `Path` and mode `Mode`.

The function returns zero if the command was successful, and nonzero if it failed.

Errors: The error codes include:

**sys\_emfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

### 1.4.42 Fpmmmap

Synopsis: Create memory map of a file

Declaration: `function Fpmmmap(start: pointer; len: size_t; prot: cint; flags: cint; fd: cint; offst: off_t) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMMap` maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different arguments determine what and how the file is mapped:

**adr** Address where to `mmap` the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**len** Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot** Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC** The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ** The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE** The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE** The memory can not be accessed.

**flags** Contains some options for the `mmap` call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED** Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, `MMap` will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED** Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE** Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS** `fd` does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options `MAP_SHARED` and `MAP_PRIVATE` must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd** File descriptor from which to map.

**off** Offset to be used in file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function.

**Sys\_EBADF** `fd` is not a valid file descriptor and `MAP_ANONYMOUS` was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCES** `MAP_PRIVATE` was specified, but `fd` is not open for reading. Or `MAP_SHARED` was asked and `PROT_WRITE` is set, `fd` is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL** One of the record fields `Start`, `length` or `offset` is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY** `MAP_DENYWRITE` was set but the object specified by `fd` is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN** `fd` is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM** Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: [FpMUnMap \(139\)](#)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex66.pp

**Program** Example66;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

```

Var S      : String;
      fd     : cint;
      Len    : longint;
      // args : tmapargs;
      P      : PChar;

begin
  s:= 'This is the string';
  Len:=Length(S);
  fd:=fpOpen('testfile.txt',O_wrOnly or o_creat);
  If fd=-1 then
    Halt(1);
  If fpWrite(fd,S[1],Len)=-1 then
    Halt(2);
  fpClose(fd);
  fd:=fpOpen('testfile.txt',O_rdOnly);
  if fd=-1 then
    Halt(3);
  P:=Pchar(fpmmmap(nil,len+1,PROT_READ or PROT_WRITE,MAP_PRIVATE,fd,0));

  If longint(P)=-1 then
    Halt(4);
  Writeln('Read in memory :',P);
  fpclose(fd);
  if fpMUnMap(P,Len)<>0 Then
    Halt(fpgeterrno);
end.

```

### 1.4.43 Fpmunmap

**Synopsis:** Unmap previously mapped memory block

**Declaration:** function Fpmunmap(start: pointer;len: size\_t) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpMUnMap unmaps the memory block of size Len, pointed to by Adr, which was previously allocated with FpMMap ([138](#)).

The function returns **True** if successful, **False** otherwise.

For an example, see FpMMap ([138](#)).

**Errors:** In case of error the function returns a nonzero value, extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([129](#)) function. See FpMMap ([138](#)) for possible error values.

See also: FpMMap ([138](#))

### 1.4.44 FpNanoSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for a short time

Declaration: `function FpNanoSleep(req: timespec;rem: timespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpNanoSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `req` has passed. Then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and `rem` will contain the remaining time till the end of the intended period. In this case the return value will be -1, and `fpErrNo` will be set to `EINTR`

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

Errors: If an error occurred or the call was interrupted, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `FpPause` ([143](#)), `FpAlarm` ([116](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the NanoSleep function. }

uses BaseUnix;

Var
  Req,Rem : TimeSpec;
  Res : Longint;

begin
  With Req do
    begin
      tv_sec:=10;
      tv_nsec:=100;
    end;
  Write( 'NanoSleep returned : ');
  Flush(Output);
  Res:=(fpNanoSleep(@Req,@rem));
  WriteLn(res);
  If (res<>0) then
    With rem do
      begin
        WriteLn( 'Remaining seconds      : ',tv_sec);
        WriteLn( 'Remaining nanoseconds : ',tv_nsec);
      end;
end.
```

---

### 1.4.45 fpNice

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpNice(N: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Nice` adds `-N` to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative `N`, i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

If the function is succesful, zero is returned. On error, a nonzero value is returned.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function.

**sys\_eperm** A non-superuser tried to specify a negative `N`, i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` (132), `FpSetPriority` (151)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex15.pp`

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix;`

```
begin
  writeln ('Setting priority to 5');
  fpsetpriority (prio_process, fpgetpid, 5);
  writeln ('New priority = ', fpgetpriority (prio_process, fpgetpid));
  writeln ('Doing nice 10');
  fpnice (10);
  writeln ('New Priority = ', fpgetpriority (prio_process, fpgetpid));
end.
```

### 1.4.46 FpOpen

**Synopsis:** Open file and return file descriptor

**Declaration:**

```
function FpOpen(path: pChar; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint
function FpOpen(path: pChar; flags: cint) : cint
function FpOpen(path: AnsiString; flags: cint) : cint
function FpOpen(path: AnsiString; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint
function FpOpen(path: String; flags: cint) : cint
function FpOpen(path: String; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpOpen` opens a file in `Path` with flags `flags` and mode `Mode` One of the following:

**O\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only

**O\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only

**O\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write

The flags may beOR-ed with one of the following constants:

**O\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**O\_ExcIf** the file is opened with `O_Creat` and it already exists, the call wil fail.

**O\_NoCttyIf** the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**O\_TruncIf** the file exists, it will be truncated.

**O\_Append**the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**O\_NonBlock**The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**O\_NDelay**Idem as O\_NonBlock

**O\_Sync**The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return until the data is physically written to disk.

**O\_NoFollow**if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

**O\_Directory**if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

Path can be of type PChar or String. The optional mode argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the umask setting. The real permissions are Mode and not umask. The return value of the function is the filedescriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno (129).

See also: FpClose (120), FpRead (146), FpWrite (166), FpFTruncate (128), FpLSeek (135)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex19.pp

---

**Program** Example19;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdOpen, fdwrite and fdClose functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Const** Line : **String**[80] = 'This is easy writing !';

**Var** FD : CInt;

**begin**

FD:=fpOpen ( 'Test.dat',O\_WrOnly or O\_Creat);

**if** FD>0 **then**

**begin**

**if** length(Line)<>fpwrite (FD,Line[1],Length(Line)) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'Error when writing to file !');

fpClose(FD);

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 1.4.47 FpOpendir

Synopsis: Open a directory for reading

**Declaration:** function FpOpendir(dirname: pChar) : pDir  
 function FpOpendir(dirname: AnsiString) : pDir  
 function FpOpendir(dirname: shortString) : pDir

Visibility: default

**Description:** FpOpenDir opens the directory DirName, and returns a pdir pointer to a Dir (101) record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, nil is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno (129).

See also: [FpCloseDir \(120\)](#), [FpReadDir \(147\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex35.pp

**Program** Example35;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the
  OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and Telldir functions. }
```

**Uses** BaseUnix;

```
Var TheDir : PDir;
     ADirent : PDirent;
     Entry : Longint;
```

**begin**

```
TheDir:=fpOpenDir( './. ' );
Repeat
//   Entry:=fpTelldir(TheDir);
ADirent:=fpReadDir ( TheDir^ );
If ADirent<>Nil then
    With ADirent^ do
        begin
            Writeln ( 'Entry No : ', Entry );
            Writeln ( 'Inode      : ', d_fileno );
//          Writeln ( 'Offset     : ', d_off );
            Writeln ( 'Reclen    : ', d_reclen );
            Writeln ( 'Name       : ', pchar(@d_name[0]));
        end;
    Until ADirent=Nil;
Repeat
    Write ( 'Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ' );
    ReadLn ( Entry );
    If Entry<>-1 then
        begin
//          fpSeekDir ( TheDir, Entry );           // not implemented for various platforms
ADirent:=fpReadDir ( TheDir^ );
If ADirent<>Nil then
            With ADirent^ do
                begin
                    Writeln ( 'Entry No : ', Entry );
                    Writeln ( 'Inode      : ', d_fileno );
//                  Writeln ( 'Offset     : ', off );
                    Writeln ( 'Reclen    : ', d_reclen );
                    Writeln ( 'Name       : ', pchar(@d_name[0]));
                end;
            end;
        Until Entry=-1;
    fpCloseDir ( TheDir^ );
end.
```

### 1.4.48 FpPause

Synopsis: Wait for a signal to arrive

Declaration: `function FpPause : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpPause` puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received signal, the handler will be called and after that pause will return control to the process.

For an example, see `fpAlarm` (116).

### 1.4.49 FpPipe

**Synopsis:** Create a set of pipe file handlers

**Declaration:** `function FpPipe(var fildes: TFilDes) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. The filehandles are returned in the array `fildes`. The input handle is in the 0-th element of the array, the output handle is in the 1-st element.

The function returns zero if everything went successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** In case the function fails, the following return values are possible:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `#rtl.unix.POpen` (1397), `fpMkFifo` (137)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
s : String;

**begin**

Writeln ('Assigning Pipes.');

If assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 then

Writeln ('Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno);

Writeln ('Writing to pipe, and flushing.');

Writeln (pipo, 'This is a textstring'); close(pipo);

Writeln ('Reading from pipe.');

While not eof(pipi) do

begin

Readln (pipi, s);

Writeln ('Read from pipe : ', s);

end;

close (pipi);

writeln ('Closed pipes.');

writeln

**end.**

---

### 1.4.50 FpPoll

Synopsis: Poll a file descriptor for events.

Declaration: `function FpPoll(fds: ppollfd;nfds: cuint;timeout: clong) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpPoll` waits for events on file descriptors. `fds` points to an array of `tpollfd` records, each of these records describes a file descriptor on which to wait for events. The number of file descriptors is given by `nfds`. `>timeout` specifies the maximum time (in milliseconds) to wait for events.

On timeout, the result value is 0. If an event occurred on some descriptors, then the return value is the number of descriptors on which an event (or error) occurred. The `revents` field of the `tpollfd` records will contain the events for the file descriptor it described.

See also: `tpollfd` ([112](#))

### 1.4.51 FpPRead

Synopsis: Positional read: read from file descriptor at a certain position.

Declaration: `function FpPRead(fd: cint;buf: pChar;nbytes: TSize;offset: TOff) : TsSize`  
`function FpPRead(fd: cint;var buf;nbytes: TSize;offset: TOff) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPRead` reads `nbytes` bytes from file descriptor `fd` into buffer `buf` starting at offset `offset`. Offset is measured from the start of the file. This function can only be used on files, not on pipes or sockets (i.e. any seekable file descriptor).

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 on error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpReadV` ([148](#)), `FpPWrite` ([145](#))

### 1.4.52 FpPWrite

Synopsis: Positional write: write to file descriptor at a certain position.

Declaration: `function FpPWrite(fd: cint;buf: pChar;nbytes: TSize;offset: TOff) : TsSize`  
`function FpPWrite(fd: cint;const buf;nbytes: TSize;offset: TOff) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPWrite` writes `nbytes` bytes from buffer `buf` into file descriptor `fd` starting at offset `offset`. Offset is measured from the start of the file. This function can only be used on files, not on pipes or sockets (i.e. any seekable file descriptor).

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 on error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpPRead` ([145](#)), `FpWriteV` ([167](#))

### 1.4.53 FpRead

Synopsis: Read data from file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpRead(fd: cint;buf: pChar;nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`  
`function FpRead(fd: cint;var buf;nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpdRead` reads at most `nbytes` bytes from the file descriptor `fd`, and stores them in `buf`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of `buf` is done.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `FpOpen` ([141](#)), `FpClose` ([120](#)), `FpWrite` ([166](#)), `FpFTruncate` ([128](#)), `FpLSeek` ([135](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Const** `Data : string[10] = '1234567890'`;

**Var** `FD : cint;`  
`l : longint;`

**begin**

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly or o_creat,&666);`

**if** `fd>0` **then**

**begin**

*{ Fill file with data }*

**for** `l:=1 to 10` **do**

**if** `fpWrite (FD,Data[l],10)<>10` **then**

**begin**

`writeln ('Error when writing !');`

`halt(1);`

**end;**

`fpClose(FD);`

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_rdonly);`

*{ Read data again }*

**if** `FD>0` **then**

**begin**

**For** `l:=1 to 5` **do**

**if** `fpRead (FD,Data[l],10)<>10` **then**

**begin**

`Writeln ('Error when Reading !');`

`Halt(2);`

**end;**

`fpClose(FD);`

*{ Truncating file at 60 bytes }*

*{ For truncating , file must be open or write }*

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly,&666);`

**if** `FD>0` **then**

**begin**

**if** `fpfTruncate (FD,60)<>0` **then**

---

```

        Writeln('Error when truncating !');
        fpClose (FD);
    end;
end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.54 FpReaddir

Synopsis: Read entry from directory

Declaration: `function FpReaddir(var dirp: Dir) : pDirent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpReaddir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a `dirent` (102) record describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see `FpOpenDir` (142).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

See also: `FpCloseDir` (120), `FpOpenDir` (142)

### 1.4.55 fpReadLink

Synopsis: Read destination of symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpReadLink(name: pchar; linkname: pchar; maxlen: size_t) : cint`  
`function fpReadLink(Name: ansistring) : ansistring`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link `name` is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

Errors: On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function.

**SYS\_ENOTDIR**A part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL**`maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG**A pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT**the link `name` does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCES**No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP**Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO**An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**Not enough kernel memory was available.

See also: `FpSymLink` (159)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** F : Text;  
      S : String;

**begin**  
  Assign (F, 'test.txt');  
  Rewrite (F);  
  Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');  
  Close(f);  
  *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
  if fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then  
    writeln ('Error when symlinking !');  
  S:=fpReadLink('new.txt');  
  If S='' then  
    Writeln ('Error reading link !')  
  Else  
    Writeln ('Link points to : ',S);  
  *{ Now remove links }*  
  If fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 then  
    Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');  
  If fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 then  
    Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.56 FpReadV

Synopsis: Vector read: Read into multiple buffers

Declaration: function FpReadV(fd: cint; const iov: piovec; iovcnt: cint) : TsSize

Visibility: default

Description: FpReadV reads data from file descriptor fd and writes it into iovcnt buffers described by the tiovec (111) buffers pointed to by iov. It works like fpRead (146) only on multiple buffers.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: FpWriteV (167), FpPWrite (145), FpPRead (145)

### 1.4.57 FpRename

Synopsis: Rename file

Declaration: function FpRename(old: pChar; newpath: pChar) : cint  
              function FpRename(old: AnsiString; newpath: AnsiString) : cint

Visibility: default

Description: FpRename renames the file Old to NewPath. NewPath can be in a different directory than Old, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the Old file will be preserved.

The function returns zero on succes, a nonzero value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alterative to `fpRename`: `system.rename`. Please use `fpRename` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.rename` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

**sys\_eisdir**`NewPath` exists and is a directory, but `Old` is not a directory.

**sys\_exdev**`NewPath` and `Old` are on different devices.

**sys\_enotempty** or **sys\_eexist**`NewPath` is an existing, non-empty directory.

**sys\_ebusy**`Old` or `NewPath` is a directory and is in use by another process.

**sys\_einval**`NewPath` is part of `Old`.

**sys\_emlink**`OldPath` or `NewPath` already have tha maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**sys\_enotdir**part of `Old` or `NewPath` is not directory.

**sys\_efault**For the `pchar` case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**sys\_eaccess**access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**sys\_enametoolong**Either `Old` or `NewPath` is too long.

**sys\_enoenta** directory component in `Old` or `NewPath` didn't exist.

**sys\_enomem**not enough kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**`NewPath` or `Old` is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand `Old` or `NewPath`

**sys\_enosp**the filesystem has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: `FpUnLink` ([164](#))

## 1.4.58 FpRmdir

Synopsis: Remove a directory.

Declaration: `function FpRmdir(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpRmdir(path: AnsiString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpRmdir` removes the directory `Path` from the system. The directory must be empty for this call to succeed, and the user must have the necessary permissions in the parent directory. Only the last component of the directory is removed, i.e. higher-lying directories are not removed.

On success, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alterative to `fpRmdir`: `system.rmdir`. Please use `fpRmdir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.rmdir` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

## 1.4.59 fpSelect

Synopsis: Wait for events on file descriptors

Declaration: `function FPSelect(N: cint; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet;`  
`exceptfds: pFDSet; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(N: cint; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet;`  
`exceptfds: pFDSet; TimeOut: cint) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; TimeOut: time_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpSelect` checks one of the file descriptors in the `FDsets` to see if the following I/O operation on the file descriptors will block.

`readfds`, `writelfds` and `exceptfds` are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in `readfds` are checked to see if the following read operation will block. The entries in `writelfds` are checked to see if the following write operation will block, while entries in `exceptfds` are checked to see if an exception occurred on them.

You can use the functions `fpFD_ZERO` (126), `fpFD_Clr` (125), `fpFD_Set` (126) or `fpFD_IsSet` (126) to manipulate the individual elements of a set.

The pointers can be `Nil`.

`N` is the value of the largest file descriptor in one of the sets, + 1. In other words, it is the position of the last bit which is set in the array of bits.

`TimeOut` can be used to set a time limit. If `TimeOut` can be two types :

1. `TimeOut` is of type `ptimeval` and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If `TimeOut` is `Nil`, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. `TimeOut` is of type `cint`. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a `Timeout` of type `PTime` which is `Nil`. Otherwise, `TimeOut` contains a time in milliseconds.

When the `TimeOut` is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the `Select` call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

The variant with the text file will execute the `FpSelect` call on the file descriptor associated with the text file `T`

**Errors:** On error, the function returns -1. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

**SYS\_EBADF** An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTRA** non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL** `N` is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** `Select` was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: `fpFD_ZERO` (126), `fpFD_Clr` (125), `fpFD_Set` (126), `fpFD_IsSet` (126)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function . }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Var** `FDS` : `Tfdset`;

**begin**

`fpfd_zero(FDS)`;

`fpfd_set(0,FDS)`;

`Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' )`;

---

```

{ Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
fpSelect (1,@FDS,nil,nil,nil);
{ Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
readln;
Writeln ('Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds... ');
Fpfd_zero(FDS);
FpFd_set (0,FDS);
if fpSelect (1,@FDS,nil,nil,2000)>0 then
  Writeln ('Thank you !')
  { FD_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }
else
  Writeln ('Too late !');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.60 fpseterrno

Synopsis: Set extended error information.

Declaration: `procedure fpseterrno(err: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpseterrno` sets the extended information on the latest error. It is called by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Unless a direct kernel call is performed, there should never be any need to call this function.

Errors:

See also: `fpgeterrno` ([129](#))

### 1.4.61 FpSetgid

Synopsis: Set the current group ID

Declaration: `function FpSetgid(gid: TGid) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the group ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setgid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` ([129](#)).

See also: `FpSetUid` ([153](#)), `FpGetGid` ([130](#)), `FpGetUid` ([132](#)), `FpGetEUid` ([130](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([128](#)), `FpGetPid` ([131](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([132](#))

### 1.4.62 fpSetPriority

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpSetPriority(Which: cint;Who: cint;What: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetPriority` sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. `Which` can be one of the pre-defined constants:

**Prio\_Process**Who is interpreted as process ID

**Prio\_PGrp**Who is interpreted as process group ID

**Prio\_User**Who is interpreted as user ID

Prio is a value in the range -20 to 20.

For an example, see FpNice (140).

The function returns zero on success, -1 on failure

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (129) function.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of Prio\_Process, Prio\_Grp or Prio\_User.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: FpGetPriority (132), FpNice (140)

### 1.4.63 FpSetsid

Synopsis: Create a new session.

Declaration: `function FpSetsid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: FpSetsid creates a new session (process group). It returns the new process group id (as returned by FpGetpgrp (131)). This call will fail if the current process is already the process group leader.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with fpGetErrNo (129)

### 1.4.64 fpsettimeofday

Synopsis: Set kernel time

Declaration: `function fpsettimeofday(tp: ptimeval;tzp: ptimezone) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: FpSetTimeOfDay sets the kernel time to the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT specified in the tp record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account time-zones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

See also: #rtl.unix.FPGetTimeOfDay (1392)

### 1.4.65 FpSetuid

Synopsis: Set the current user ID

Declaration: `function FpSetuid(uid: TUid) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the user ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setuid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (129).

See also: `FpGetGid` (130), `FpGetUid` (132), `FpGetEUid` (130), `FpGetEGid` (128), `FpGetPid` (131), `FpGetPPid` (132), `FpSetGid` (151)

### 1.4.66 FPSigaction

Synopsis: Install signal handler

Declaration: `function FPSigaction(sig: cint;act: psigactionrec;oact: psigactionrec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPSigaction` changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. `Act` and `Oact` are pointers to a `SigActionRec` (109) record. `Sig` specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

If `Act` is non-nil, then the new action for signal `Sig` is taken from it. If `Oact` is non-nil, the old action is stored there. `Sa_Handler` may be `SIG_DFL` for the default action or `SIG_IGN` to ignore the signal. `Sa_Mask` Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. `Sa_Flags` Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP**If `sig` is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND**Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART**For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER**Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

**sys\_einval**an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault**`Act`, `OldAct` point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `FpSigProcMask` (157), `FpSigPending` (156), `FpSigSuspend` (157), `FpKill` (133)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex57.pp`

---

```

Program example57;

{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function.}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses BaseUnix;

Var
    oa, na : PSigActionRec;

Procedure DoSig(sig : cint); cdecl;

begin
    writeln( 'Receiving signal: ', sig );
end;

begin
    new(na);
    new(oa);
    na^.sa_Handler:=SigActionHandler(@DoSig);
    fillchar(na^.Sa_Mask, sizeof(na^.sa_mask), #0);
    na^.Sa_Flags:=0;
    { $ifdef Linux }                // Linux specific
    na^.Sa_Restorer:=Nil;
    { $endif }
    if fpSigAction(SigUsr1, na, oa) <> 0 then
    begin
        writeln( 'Error: ', fpgeterrno, '. ');
        halt(1);
    end;
    Writeln( 'Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit ');
    readln;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.67 FpSigAddSet

Synopsis: Set a signal in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigAddSet(var nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigAddSet` adds signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` ([155](#)), `FpSigFillSet` ([155](#)), `FpSigDelSet` ([154](#)), `FpSigIsMember` ([155](#))

### 1.4.68 FpSigDelSet

Synopsis: Remove a signal from a signal set.

**Declaration:** `function FpSigDelSet (var nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSigDelSet` removes signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

**Errors:** If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FpSigEmptySet` (155), `FpSigFillSet` (155), `FpSigAddSet` (154), `FpSigIsMember` (155)

### 1.4.69 FpSigEmptySet

**Synopsis:** Clear all signals from signal set.

**Declaration:** `function FpSigEmptySet (var nset: tsigset) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSigEmptySet` clears all signals from the signal set `nset`.

**Errors:** None. This function always returns zero.

**See also:** `FpSigFillSet` (155), `FpSigAddSet` (154), `FpSigDelSet` (154), `FpSigIsMember` (155)

### 1.4.70 FpSigFillSet

**Synopsis:** Set all signals in signal set.

**Declaration:** `function FpSigFillSet (var nset: tsigset) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSigFillSet` sets all signals in the signal set `nset`.

**Errors:** None. This function always returns zero.

**See also:** `FpSigEmptySet` (155), `FpSigAddSet` (154), `FpSigDelSet` (154), `FpSigIsMember` (155)

### 1.4.71 FpSigIsMember

**Synopsis:** Check whether a signal appears in a signal set.

**Declaration:** `function FpSigIsMember (const nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSigIsMember` checks whether `Signo` appears in the set `nset`. If it is a member, then 1 is returned. If not, zero is returned.

**Errors:** If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FpSigEmptySet` (155), `FpSigFillSet` (155), `FpSigAddSet` (154), `FpSigDelSet` (154)

### 1.4.72 FpSignal

Synopsis: Install signal handler (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FpSignal(signum: LongInt; Handler: signalhandler)  
: signalhandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSignal` installs a new signal handler (specified by `Handler`) for signal `SigNum`.

This call has a subset of the functionality provided by the `FpSigAction` (153) call. The return value for `FpSignal` is the old signal handler, or nil on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

**SIG\_ERR** An error occurred.

See also: `FpSigAction` (153), `FpKill` (133)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `example58;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function. }*

*{  
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.  
replace pid with the real pid of this program.  
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.  
}*

**uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : cint); cdecl;`

**begin**

`writeln('Receiving signal: ', sig);`

**end;**

**begin**

`if fpSignal(SigUsr1, SignalHandler(@DoSig)) = signalhandler(SIG_ERR) then`

`begin`

`writeln('Error: ', fpGetErrno, '.');`

`halt(1);`

`end;`

`Writeln('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');`

`readln;`

**end.**

---

### 1.4.73 FpSigPending

Synopsis: Return set of currently pending signals

Declaration: `function FpSigPending(var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigpending` allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.)

The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

Errors: None

See also: [fpSigAction \(153\)](#), [fpSigProcMask \(157\)](#), [fpSigSuspend \(157\)](#), [fpSignal \(156\)](#), [fpKill \(133\)](#)

### 1.4.74 FpSigProcMask

Synopsis: Set list of blocked signals

Declaration: `function FpSigProcMask(how: cint;nset: psigset;oset: psigset) : cint`  
`function FpSigProcMask(how: cint;const nset: tsigset;var oset: tsigset)`  
`: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on `How` :

**SIG\_BLOCK**The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the `nset` argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK**The signals in `nset` are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK**The list of blocked signals is set so `nset`.

If `oset` is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: `Errno` is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault**`oset` or `nset` point to an adress outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: [fpSigAction \(153\)](#), [fpSigPending \(156\)](#), [fpSigSuspend \(157\)](#), [fpKill \(133\)](#)

### 1.4.75 FpSigSuspend

Synopsis: Set signal mask and suspend process till signal is received

Declaration: `function FpSigSuspend(const sigmask: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigSuspend` temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in `SigMask`, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: [fpSigAction \(153\)](#), [fpSigProcMask \(157\)](#), [fpSigPending \(156\)](#), [fpSignal \(156\)](#), [fpKill \(133\)](#)

### 1.4.76 FpSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for several seconds

Declaration: `function FpSleep(seconds: cuint) : cuint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `seconds` has passed, then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and the return value is the remaining time till the end of the intended period.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

See also: [fpPause \(143\)](#), [fpAlarm \(116\)](#), [fpNanoSleep \(140\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex73.pp

---

```

program example73;

  { Program to demonstrate the FpSleep function. }

uses BaseUnix;

Var
  Res : Longint;

begin
  Write( 'Sleep returned : ');
  Flush( Output );
  Res:=(fpSleep(10));
  WriteLn( res );
  If ( res<>0) then
    WriteLn( 'Remaining seconds      : ',res );
end.

```

---

### 1.4.77 FpStat

**Synopsis:** Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

**Declaration:** `function FpStat( path: pChar; var buf: Stat) : cint`  
`function FpStat( path: AnsiString; var buf: Stat) : cint`  
`function FpStat( path: String; var buf: Stat) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in `Path`, and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` ([110](#)). The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

`sys_enoent` `Path` does not exist.

See also: [FpStat \(158\)](#), [FpLStat \(136\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex28.pp

---

```

program example28;

  { Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign ( f, 'test.fil' );

```

---

---

```

rewrite (f);
for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f,'Testline # ',i);
close (f);
{ Do the call on made file. }
if fpstat ('test.fil',info)<>0 then
begin
    writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
    halt (1);
end;
writeln;
writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
writeln ('Inode   : ',info.st_ino);
writeln ('Mode    : ',info.st_mode);
writeln ('nlink   : ',info.st_nlink);
writeln ('uid     : ',info.st_uid);
writeln ('gid     : ',info.st_gid);
writeln ('rdev    : ',info.st_rdev);
writeln ('Size    : ',info.st_size);
writeln ('Blksize  : ',info.st_blksize);
writeln ('Blocks  : ',info.st_blocks);
writeln ('atime   : ',info.st_atime);
writeln ('mtime   : ',info.st_mtime);
writeln ('ctime   : ',info.st_ctime);
{ Remove file }
erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.78 fpSymlink

Synopsis: Create a symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpSymlink(oldname: pchar;newname: pchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SymLink` makes `NewName` point to the file in `OldName`, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link.

The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link.

The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero value if the call failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing `oldpath` and `newpath` does not support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing `Newpath` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `OldPath` or `NewPath` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist**`NewPath` already exists.

**sys\_eloop**`OldPath` or `NewPath` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing `NewPath` has no room for another entry.

See also: `FpLink` (134), `FpUnLink` (164), `FpReadLink` (147)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex22.pp`

**Program** `Example22;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** `baseunix, Unix;`

**Var** `F : Text;`  
       `S : String;`

**begin**  
   `Assign (F, 'test.txt');`  
   `Rewrite (F);`  
   `Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');`  
   `Close(f);`  
   *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
   **if** `fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0` **then**  
     `writeln ('Error when symlinking !');`  
   *{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt*  
     *Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }*  
   **if** `fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0` **then**  
     `Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');`  
   `Assign (f, 'new.txt');`  
   *{ This should fail, since the symbolic link*  
     *points to a non-existent file ! }*  
   *{ \$i- }*  
   `Reset (F);`  
   *{ \$i+ }*  
   **if** `IOResult=0` **then**  
     `Writeln ('This shouldn't happen');`  
   *{ Now remove new.txt also }*  
   **if** `fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0` **then**  
     `Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');`  
**end.**

### 1.4.79 fpS\_ISBLK

**Synopsis:** Is file a block device

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISBLK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FpS_ISBLK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` (127), `FpS_ISLNK` (161), `FpS_ISREG` (162), `FpS_ISDIR` (161), `FpS_ISCHR` (160), `FpS_ISFIFO` (161), `FpS_ISSOCK` (162)

### 1.4.80 fpS\_ISCHR

**Synopsis:** Is file a character device

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISCHR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpS_ISCHR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` (127), `FpS_ISLNK` (161), `FpS_ISREG` (162), `FpS_ISDIR` (161), `FpS_ISBLK` (160), `FpS_ISFIFO` (161), `FpS_ISSOCK` (162)

### 1.4.81 `fpS_ISDIR`

**Synopsis:** Is file a directory

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISDIR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpS_ISDIR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a directory. If so, it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (127), `FpS_ISLNK` (161), `FpS_ISREG` (162), `FpS_ISCHR` (160), `FpS_ISBLK` (160), `fpS_ISFIFO` (161), `FpS_ISSOCK` (162)

### 1.4.82 `fpS_ISFIFO`

**Synopsis:** Is file a FIFO

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISFIFO(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FpS_ISFIFO` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` (127), `FpS_ISLNK` (161), `FpS_ISREG` (162), `FpS_ISCHR` (160), `FpS_ISBLK` (160), `FpS_ISDIR` (161), `FpS_ISSOCK` (162)

### 1.4.83 `fpS_ISLNK`

**Synopsis:** Is file a symbolic link

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISLNK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FpS_ISLNK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (127), `FpS_ISFIFO` (161), `FpS_ISREG` (162), `FpS_ISCHR` (160), `FpS_ISBLK` (160), `FpS_ISDIR` (161), `FpS_ISSOCK` (162)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** `Example53`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the S\_ISLNK function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix`;

---

```

Var Info : Stat;

begin
  if fpLStat (paramstr(1),@info)=0 then
    begin
      if fpS_ISLNK(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a link');
      if fpS_ISREG(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a regular file');
      if fpS_ISDIR(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a directory');
      if fpS_ISCHR(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a character device file');
      if fpS_ISBLK(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a block device file');
      if fpS_ISFIFO(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a named pipe (FIFO)');
      if fpS_ISSOCK(info.st_mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a socket');
    end;
  end.

```

---

#### 1.4.84 fpS\_ISREG

Synopsis: Is file a regular file

Declaration: `function fpS_ISREG(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISREG` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` ([127](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([161](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([161](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([160](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([160](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([161](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([162](#))

#### 1.4.85 fpS\_ISSOCK

Synopsis: Is file a unix socket

Declaration: `function fpS_ISSOCK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISSOCK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([127](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([161](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([161](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([160](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([160](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([161](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([162](#))

#### 1.4.86 fptime

Synopsis: Return the current unix time

Declaration: `function FpTime(var tloc: TTime) : TTime`  
`function fptime : time_t`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpTime` returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 GMT, January 1, 1970. It is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST. The result is also stored in `tlloc`, if it is specified.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fptime function. }*

**Uses** `baseunix`;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ' );

**Writeln** ( `fptime` );

**end.**

---

### 1.4.87 FpTimes

**Synopsis:** Return execution times for the current process

**Declaration:** `function FpTimes (var buffer: tms) : TClock`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpTimes` stores the execution time of the current process and child processes in `buffer`.

The return value (on linux) is the number of clock ticks since boot time. On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` ([129](#)).

See also: `fpUtime` ([164](#))

### 1.4.88 FpUmask

**Synopsis:** Set file creation mask.

**Declaration:** `function FpUmask (cmask: TMode) : TMode`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpUmask` changes the file creation mask for the current user to `cmask`. The current mask is returned.

See also: `fpChmod` ([117](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Old Umask was : ', `fpUmask`(&111));

**Writeln** ( 'New Umask is : ', &111);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.89 FpUname

Synopsis: Return system name.

Declaration: `function FpUname(var name: UtsName) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Uname` gets the name and configuration of the current linux kernel, and returns it in the `name` record.

On success, 0 is returned, on error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

See also: `FpUTime` (164)

### 1.4.90 FpUnlink

Synopsis: Unlink (i.e. remove) a file.

Declaration: `function FpUnlink(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpUnlink(path: AnsiString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpUnlink` decreases the link count on file `Path`. `Path` can be of type `AnsiString` or `PChar`. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk.

The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, a nonzero value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to erase files: `system.erase`. Please use `fpUnlink` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.erase` will work on all operating systems.

For an example, see `FpLink` (134).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

**sys\_eaccess** You have no write access right in the directory containing `Path`, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of `Path`.

**sys\_eperm** The directory containing pathname has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent** A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir** `Path` refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** `Path` is on a read-only filesystem.

See also: `FpLink` (134), `FpSymLink` (159)

### 1.4.91 FpUtime

Synopsis: Set access and modification times of a file (touch).

Declaration: `function FpUtime(path: pChar; times: pUtimBuf) : cint`  
`function FpUtime(path: AnsiString; times: pUtimBuf) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpUtime` sets the access and modification times of the file specified in `Path`. the times record contains 2 fields, `actime`, and `modtime`, both of type `time_t` (commonly a `longint`). They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some filesystem (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

The function returns zero on success, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

**sys\_eaccess** One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: `FpTime` (162), `FpChown` (119), `FpAccess` (116)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex25.pp`

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function. }*

**Uses** `Dos, BaseUnix, Unix, UnixUtil`;

**Var** `utim : utimbuf`;  
`dow, msec, year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word`;

**begin**  
*{ Set access and modification time of executable source }*  
`GetTime ( hour, minute, second, msec );`  
`GetDate ( year, month, day, dow );`  
`utim.actime := LocalToEpoch ( year, month, day, hour, minute, second );`  
`utim.modtime := utim.actime;`  
**if** `Fputime ( 'ex25.pp', @utim ) <> 0` **then**  
    **writeln** ( 'Call to UTime failed !' )  
**else**  
    **begin**  
        **Write** ( 'Set access and modification times to : ' );  
        **Write** ( Hour:2, ': ', minute:2, ': ', second, ' ', ' );  
        **Writeln** ( Day:2, ' / ', month:2, ' / ', year:4 );  
    **end**;  
**end.**

### 1.4.92 FpWait

**Synopsis:** Wait for a child to exit.

**Declaration:** `function FpWait (var stat_loc: cint) : TPid`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpWait` suspends the current process and waits for any child to exit or stop due to a signal. It reports the exit status of the exited child in `stat_loc`.

The return value of the function is the process ID of the child that exited, or -1 on error.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` (129).

See also: `fpFork` (126), `fpExecve` (123), `fpWaitPid` (166)

### 1.4.93 FpWaitPid

Synopsis: Wait for a process to terminate

Declaration: `function FpWaitpid(pid: TPid; stat_loc: pcint; options: cint) : TPid`  
`function FpWaitPid(pid: TPid; var Status: cint; Options: cint) : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpWaitPid` waits for a child process with process ID `Pid` to exit. The value of `Pid` can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of `pid`.

**Pid = -1** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of `Pid`.

The `Options` parameter can be used to specify further how `fpWaitPid` behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes `fpWaitpid` to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes `fpWaitPid` to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

**\_\_WCLONE** Causes `fpWaitPid` also to wait for threads created by the `#rtl.linux.Clone` (473) call.

The exit status of the process that caused `fpWaitPID` is reported in `stat_loc` or `Status`.

Upon return, it returns the process id of the process that exited, 0 if no process exited, or -1 in case of failure.

For an example, see `fpFork` (126).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` (129).

See also: `fpFork` (126), `fpExecve` (123), `fpWait` (165)

### 1.4.94 FpWrite

Synopsis: Write data to file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWrite(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`  
`function FpWrite(fd: cint; const buf; nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWrite` writes at most `nbytes` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (129).

See also: `FpOpen` (141), `FpClose` (120), `FpRead` (146), `FpFTruncate` (128), `FpLSeek` (135)

### 1.4.95 FpWriteV

Synopsis: Vector write: Write from multiple buffers to a file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWriteV(fd: cint; const iov: piovec; iovcnt: cint) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWriteV` writes data to file descriptor `fd`. The data is taken from `iovcnt` buffers described by the `tiovec` (111) buffers pointed to by `iov`. It works like `fpWrite` (166) only from multiple buffers.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpReadV` (148), `FpPWrite` (145), `FpPRead` (145)

### 1.4.96 FreeShellArgV

Synopsis: Free the result of a `CreateShellArgV` (115) function

Declaration: `procedure FreeShellArgV(p: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeShellArgV` frees the memory pointed to by `P`, which was allocated by a call to `CreateShellArgV` (115).

Errors: None.

See also: `CreateShellArgV` (115)

### 1.4.97 wexitStatus

Synopsis: Extract the exit status from the `fpWaitPID` (166) result.

Declaration: `function wexitStatus(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WEXITSTATUS` can be used to extract the exit status from `Status`, the result of the `FpWaitPID` (166) call.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (166), `WTERMSIG` (168), `WSTOPSIG` (168), `WIFEXITED` (167), `WIFSIGNALED` (168)

### 1.4.98 wifexited

Synopsis: Check whether the process exited normally

Declaration: `function wifexited(Status: cint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFEXITED` checks `Status` and returns `True` if the status indicates that the process terminated normally, i.e. was not stopped by a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (166), `WTERMSIG` (168), `WSTOPSIG` (168), `WIFSIGNALED` (168), `WEXITSTATUS` (167)

### 1.4.99 wifsignaled

Synopsis: Check whether the process was exited by a signal.

Declaration: `function wifsignaled(Status: cint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSIGNALED` returns `True` if `Status` indicates that the process exited because it received a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (166), `WTERMSIG` (168), `WSTOPSIG` (168), `WIFEXITED` (167), `WEXITSTATUS` (167)

### 1.4.100 wstopsig

Synopsis: Return the exit code from the process.

Declaration: `function wstopsig(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WSTOPSIG` is an alias for `WEXITSTATUS` (167).

See also: `FpWaitPID` (166), `WTERMSIG` (168), `WIFEXITED` (167), `WIFSIGNALED` (168), `WEXITSTATUS` (167)

### 1.4.101 wtermsig

Synopsis: Return the signal that caused a process to exit.

Declaration: `function wtermsig(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WTERMSIG` extracts from `Status` the signal number which caused the process to exit.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (166), `WSTOPSIG` (168), `WIFEXITED` (167), `WIFSIGNALED` (168), `WEXITSTATUS` (167)

## Chapter 2

# Reference for unit 'Classes'

### 2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'Classes'

Name	Page
rtlconsts	<a href="#">169</a>
sysutils	<a href="#">1174</a>
types	<a href="#">169</a>
typinfo	<a href="#">1332</a>

### 2.2 Overview

This documentation describes the FPC `classes` unit. The `Classes` unit contains basic classes for the Free Component Library (FCL):

- a `TList` ([169](#)) class for maintaining lists of pointers,
- `TStringList` ([169](#)) for lists of strings,
- `TCollection` ([169](#)) to manage collections of objects
- `TStream` ([169](#)) classes to support streaming.

Furthermore it introduces methods for object persistence, and classes that understand an owner-owned relationship, with automatic memory management.

## Chapter 3

# Reference for unit 'clocale'

### 3.1 Overview

The `clocale` offers no API by itself: it just initializes the internationalization settings of the `sysutils` (1174) unit with the values provided by the C library found on most Unix or Linux systems that are POSIX compliant.

The `clocale` should simply be included in the `uses` clause of the program, preferably as one of the first units, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit, links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-posix system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS - therefore it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}clocale{$endif},
  classes, sysutils;
```

## Chapter 4

# Reference for unit 'cmem'

### 4.1 Overview

The `cmem` memory manager sets the system units memory manager to a C-based memory manager: all memory management calls are shunted through to the C memory manager, using `Malloc` ([172](#)), `Free` ([171](#)) and `ReAlloc` ([172](#)). For this reason, the `cmem` unit should be the first unit of the uses clause of the program.

The unit also offers the C memory calls directly as external declarations from the C library, but it is recommended to use the normal FPC routines for this.

Obviously, including this unit links your program to the C library.

### 4.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 4.2.1 Constants

`LibName = 'c'`

`LibName` is the name of the library that is actually used. On most systems, this is simply "libc.so".

### 4.3 Procedures and functions

#### 4.3.1 CAlloc

Synopsis: Allocate memory based on item size and count

Declaration: `function CAlloc(unitSize: ptruint; UnitCount: ptruint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CAlloc` allocates memory to hold `UnitCount` units of size `UnitSize` each. The memory is one block of memory. It returns a pointer to the newly allocated memory block.

See also: `Malloc` ([172](#)), `Free` ([171](#)), `Realloc` ([172](#))

#### 4.3.2 Free

Synopsis: Free a previously allocated block

**Declaration:** `procedure Free(P: pointer)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Free` returns the memory block pointed to by `P` to the system. After `Free` was called, the pointer `P` is no longer valid.

**See also:** `Malloc` ([172](#)), `ReAlloc` ([172](#))

### 4.3.3 Malloc

**Synopsis:** `Malloc` external declaration.

**Declaration:** `function Malloc(Size: ptruint) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Malloc` is the external declaration of the C library's `malloc` call. It accepts a size parameter, and returns a pointer to a memory block of the requested size or `Nil` if no more memory could be allocated.

**See also:** `Free` ([171](#)), `ReAlloc` ([172](#))

### 4.3.4 ReAlloc

**Synopsis:** `ReAlloc` re-allocates a memory block

**Declaration:** `function ReAlloc(P: Pointer;Size: ptruint) : pointer`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `ReAlloc` re-allocates a block of memory pointed to by `p`. The new block will have size `Size`, and as much data as was available or as much data as fits is copied from the old to the new location.

**See also:** `Malloc` ([172](#)), `Free` ([171](#))

## Chapter 5

# Reference for unit 'Crt'

### 5.1 Overview

This chapter describes the CRT unit for Free Pascal, both under dos linux and Windows. The unit was first written for dos by Florian klaempfl. The unit was ported to linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt and Peter Vreman. It works on the linux console, and in xterm and rxvt windows under X-Windows. The functionality for both is the same, except that under linux the use of an early implementation (versions 0.9.1 and earlier of the compiler) the crt unit automatically cleared the screen at program startup.

There are some caveats when using the CRT unit:

- Programs using the CRT unit will *not* be usable when input/output is being redirected on the command-line.
- For similar reasons they are not usable as CGI-scripts for use with a webserver.
- The use of the CRT unit and the graph unit may not always be supported.
- The CRT unit is not thread safe.
- On linux or other unix OSes , executing other programs that expect special terminal behaviour (using one of the special functions in the linux unit) will not work. The terminal is set in RAW mode, which will destroy most terminal emulation settings.

### 5.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 5.2.1 Constants

`Black = 0`

Black color attribute

`Blink = 128`

Blink attribute

`Blue = 1`

**Blue color attribute**

Brown = 6

**Brown color attribute**

BW40 = 0

40 columns black and white screen mode.

BW80 = 2

80 columns black and white screen mode.

C40 = CO40

40 columns color screen mode.

C80 = CO80

80 columns color screen mode.

CO40 = 1

40 columns color screen mode.

CO80 = 3

80 columns color screen mode.

ConsoleMaxX = 1024

ConsoleMaxY = 1024

Cyan = 3

**Cyan color attribute**

DarkGray = 8

**Dark gray color attribute**

Flushing = false

Font8x8 = 256

**Internal ROM font mode**

Green = 2

Green color attribute

LightBlue = 9

Light Blue color attribute

LightCyan = 11

Light cyan color attribute

LightGray = 7

Light gray color attribute

LightGreen = 10

Light green color attribute

LightMagenta = 13

Light magenta color attribute

LightRed = 12

Light red color attribute

Magenta = 5

Magenta color attribute

Mono = 7

Monochrome screen mode (hercules screens)

Red = 4

Red color attribute

ScreenHeight : LongInt = 25

Current screen height.

ScreenWidth : LongInt = 80

Current screen width

White = 15

White color attribute

Yellow = 14

Yellow color attribute

### 5.2.2 Types

`PConsoleBuf = ^TConsoleBuf`

```
TCharAttr = packed record
  ch : Char;
  attr : Byte;
end
```

`TConsoleBuf = Array[0..ConsoleMaxX*ConsoleMaxY-1] of TCharAttr`

`tcrtcoord = 1..255`

`tcrtcoord` is a subrange type for denoting CRT coordinates. It supports coordinates ranging from 1 to 255. Using this type together with range-checking turned on can be used to debug CRT code.

### 5.2.3 Variables

`CheckBreak : Boolean`

Check for CTRL-Break keystroke. Not used.

`CheckEOF : Boolean`

Check for EOF on standard input. Not used.

`CheckSnow : Boolean`

Check snow on CGA screens. Not used.

`ConsoleBuf : PConsoleBuf`

`DirectVideo : Boolean`

The `DirectVideo` variable controls the writing to the screen. If it is `True`, the the cursor is set via direct port access. If `False`, then the BIOS is used. This is defined under dos only.

`LastMode : Word = 3`

The `Lastmode` variable tells you which mode was last selected for the screen. It is defined on DOS only.

`TextAttr : Byte = $07`

The `TextAttr` variable controls the attributes with which characters are written to screen.

`WindMax : Word = $184f`

The upper byte of `WindMax` contains the Y coordinate while the lower byte contains the X coordinate. The use of this variable is deprecated, use `WindMaxX` and `WindMaxY` instead.

`WindMaxX : DWord`

X coordinate of lower right corner of the defined window

`WindMaxY : DWord`

Y coordinate of lower right corner of the defined window

`WindMin : Word = $0`

The upper byte of `WindMin` contains the Y coordinate while the lower byte contains the X coordinate. The use of this variable is deprecated, use `WindMinX` and `WindMinY` instead.

`WindMinX : DWord`

X coordinate of upper left corner of the defined window

`WindMinY : DWord`

Y coordinate of upper left corner of the defined window

## 5.3 Procedures and functions

### 5.3.1 AssignCrt

Synopsis: Assign file to CRT.

Declaration: `procedure AssignCrt (var F: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignCrt` Assigns a file `F` to the console. Everything written to the file `F` goes to the console instead. If the console contains a window, everything is written to the window instead.

Errors: None.

See also: [Window \(188\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex1.pp`

---

```
Program Example1;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the AssignCrt function. }

var
  F : Text;
begin
  AssignCrt(F);
  Rewrite(F); { Don't forget to open for output! }
  WriteLn(F, 'This is written to the Assigned File');
  Close(F);
end.
```

---

### 5.3.2 ClrEol

Synopsis: Clear from cursor position till end of line.

Declaration: `procedure ClrEol`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrEol` clears the current line, starting from the cursor position, to the end of the window. The cursor doesn't move

Errors: None.

See also: `DelLine` ([180](#)), `InsLine` ([182](#)), `ClrScr` ([178](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ClrEol function. }
var
  I,J : integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to 15 do
    For J:=1 to 80 do
      begin
        gotoxy(j,i);
        Write(j mod 10);
      end;
  Window(5,5,75,12);
  Write('This line will be cleared from',
        ' here till the right of the window');
  GotoXY(27,WhereY);
  ReadKey;
  ClrEol;
  WriteLn;
end.
```

---

### 5.3.3 ClrScr

Synopsis: Clear current window.

Declaration: `procedure ClrScr`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrScr` clears the current window (using the current colors), and sets the cursor in the top left corner of the current window.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([188](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the ClrScr function. }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn('Press any key to clear the screen');  
  ReadKey;  
  ClrScr;  
  WriteLn('Have fun with the cleared screen');  
end.
```

---

### 5.3.4 cursorbig

Synopsis: Show big cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursorbig`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorBig` makes the cursor a big rectangle. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([179](#)), `CursorOff` ([179](#))

### 5.3.5 cursoroff

Synopsis: Hide cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoroff`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOff` switches the cursor off (i.e. the cursor is no longer visible). Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([179](#)), `CursorBig` ([179](#))

### 5.3.6 cursoron

Synopsis: Display cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoron`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOn` switches the cursor on. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorBig` ([179](#)), `CursorOff` ([179](#))

### 5.3.7 Delay

Synopsis: Delay program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Delay (MS: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delay` waits a specified number of milliseconds. The number of specified seconds is an approximation, and may be off a lot, if system load is high.

Errors: None

See also: `Sound` ([185](#)), `NoSound` ([184](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex15.pp`

---

```

Program Example15;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Delay function. }
var
  i : longint;
begin
  WriteLn( 'Counting Down' );
  for i:=10 downto 1 do
    begin
      WriteLn(i);
      Delay(1000); { Wait one second }
    end;
  WriteLn( 'BOOM!!! ' );
end.

```

---

### 5.3.8 DelLine

Synopsis: Delete line at cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure DelLine`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelLine` removes the current line. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line up, and an empty line is inserted at the bottom of the current window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` ([178](#)), `InsLine` ([182](#)), `ClrScr` ([178](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn( 'Line 1 ' );

```

---

---

```

WriteLn('Line 2');
WriteLn('Line 2');
WriteLn('Line 3');
WriteLn;
WriteLn('Oops, Line 2 is listed twice,',
        ' let''s delete the line at the cursor postion');
GotoXY(1,3);
ReadKey;
DelLine;
GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

### 5.3.9 GotoXY

Synopsis: Set cursor position on screen.

Declaration: `procedure GotoXY(X: tcrtcoord; Y: tcrtcoord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GotoXY` positions the cursor at  $(X, Y)$ ,  $X$  in horizontal,  $Y$  in vertical direction relative to the origin of the current window. The origin is located at  $(1, 1)$ , the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [WhereX \(187\)](#), [WhereY \(187\)](#), [Window \(188\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program Example6;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the GotoXY function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  GotoXY(10,10);
  Write('10,10');
  GotoXY(70,20);
  Write('70,20');
  GotoXY(1,22);
end.

```

---

### 5.3.10 HighVideo

Synopsis: Switch to highlighted text mode

Declaration: `procedure HighVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `HighVideo` switches the output to highlighted text. (It sets the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

Errors: None.

See also: [TextColor \(186\)](#), [TextBackground \(185\)](#), [LowVideo \(183\)](#), [NormVideo \(183\)](#)

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the LowVideo, HighVideo, NormVideo functions. }

begin
  LowVideo;
  WriteLn( 'This is written with LowVideo' );
  HighVideo;
  WriteLn( 'This is written with HighVideo' );
  NormVideo;
  WriteLn( 'This is written with NormVideo' );
end.

```

---

### 5.3.11 InsLine

Synopsis: Insert an empty line at cursor position

Declaration: `procedure InsLine`

Visibility: default

Description: `InsLine` inserts an empty line at the current cursor position. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line down, causing the last line to disappear from the window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` ([178](#)), `DelLine` ([180](#)), `ClrScr` ([178](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex10.pp

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn( 'Line 1 ' );
  WriteLn( 'Line 3 ' );
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn( 'Oops, forgot Line 2, let's insert at the cursor position' );
  GotoXY(1,3);
  ReadKey;
  InsLine;
  Write( 'Line 2 ' );
  GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

### 5.3.12 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check if there is a keypress in the keybuffer

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KeyPressed` scans the keyboard buffer and sees if a key has been pressed. If this is the case, `True` is returned. If not, `False` is returned. The `Shift`, `Alt`, `Ctrl` keys are not reported. The key is not removed from the buffer, and can hence still be read after the `KeyPressed` function has been called.

Errors: None.

See also: `ReadKey` ([184](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex2.pp`

---

```
Program Example2;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the KeyPressed function. }

begin
  WriteLn ('Waiting until a key is pressed');
  repeat
    until KeyPressed;
  { The key is not Read,
    so it should also be outputted at the commandline}
end.
```

---

### 5.3.13 LowVideo

Synopsis: Switch to low intensity colors.

**Declaration:** `procedure LowVideo`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LowVideo` switches the output to non-highlighted text. (It clears the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

For an example, see `HighVideo` ([181](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([186](#)), `TextBackground` ([185](#)), `HighVideo` ([181](#)), `NormVideo` ([183](#))

### 5.3.14 NormVideo

Synopsis: Return to normal (startup) modus

**Declaration:** `procedure NormVideo`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NormVideo` switches the output to the defaults, read at startup. (The defaults are read from the cursor position at startup)

For an example, see `HighVideo` ([181](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([186](#)), `TextBackground` ([185](#)), `LowVideo` ([183](#)), `HighVideo` ([181](#))

### 5.3.15 NoSound

Synopsis: Stop system speaker

Declaration: `procedure NoSound`

Visibility: default

Description: `NoSound` stops the speaker sound. This call is not supported on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sound` ([185](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex16.pp`

---

```

Program Example16;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Sound and NoSound function. }

var
  i : longint;
begin
  WriteLn('You will hear some tones from your speaker');
  while (i < 15000) do
    begin
      inc(i, 500);
      Sound(i);
      Delay(100);
    end;
  WriteLn('Quiet now!');
  NoSound; { Stop noise }
end.
```

---

### 5.3.16 ReadKey

Synopsis: Read key from keybuffer

Declaration: `function ReadKey : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadKey` reads 1 key from the keyboard buffer, and returns this. If an extended or function key has been pressed, then the zero ASCII code is returned. You can then read the scan code of the key with a second `ReadKey` call.

Key mappings under Linux can cause the wrong key to be reported by `ReadKey`, so caution is needed when using `ReadKey`.

Errors: None.

See also: `KeyPressed` ([182](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ReadKey function. }
```

---

---

```

var
  ch : char;
begin
  writeln( 'Press Left/Right , Esc=Quit' );
  repeat
    ch:=ReadKey;
    case ch of
      #0 : begin
        ch:=ReadKey; {Read ScanCode}
        case ch of
          #75 : WriteLn( 'Left' );
          #77 : WriteLn( 'Right' );
        end;
      end;
      #27 : WriteLn( 'ESC' );
    end;
  until ch=#27 {Esc}
end.

```

---

### 5.3.17 Sound

Synopsis: Sound system speaker

Declaration: `procedure Sound(Hz: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sound` sounds the speaker at a frequency of `hz`. Under Windows, a system sound is played and the frequency parameter is ignored. On other operating systems, this routine may not be implemented.

Errors: None.

See also: `NoSound` ([184](#))

### 5.3.18 TextBackground

Synopsis: Set text background

Declaration: `procedure TextBackground(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextBackground` sets the background color to `CL`. `CL` can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([186](#)), `HighVideo` ([181](#)), `LowVideo` ([183](#)), `NormVideo` ([183](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex13.pp`

---

```

Program Example13;
uses Crt;

```

```

{ Program to demonstrate the TextBackground function. }

```

```

begin

```

```

    TextColor(White);
    WriteLn('This is written in with the default background color');
    TextBackground(Green);
    WriteLn('This is written in with a Green background');
    TextBackground(Brown);
    WriteLn('This is written in with a Brown background');
    TextBackground(Black);
    WriteLn('Back with a black background');
end.

```

---

### 5.3.19 TextColor

Synopsis: Set text color

Declaration: `procedure TextColor(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextColor` sets the foreground color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextBackground` ([185](#)), `HighVideo` ([181](#)), `LowVideo` ([183](#)), `NormVideo` ([183](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex12.pp`

---

```

Program Example12;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the TextColor function. }

begin
    WriteLn('This is written in the default color');
    TextColor(Red);
    WriteLn('This is written in Red');
    TextColor(White);
    WriteLn('This is written in White');
    TextColor(LightBlue);
    WriteLn('This is written in Light Blue');
end.

```

---

### 5.3.20 TextMode

Synopsis: Set screen mode.

Declaration: `procedure TextMode(Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextMode` sets the textmode of the screen (i.e. the number of lines and columns of the screen). The lower byte is use to set the VGA text mode.

This procedure is only implemented on dos.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([188](#))

### 5.3.21 WhereX

Synopsis: Return X (horizontal) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereX : tcrtcoord`

Visibility: default

Description: `WhereX` returns the current X-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1, 1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [GotoXY \(181\)](#), [WhereY \(187\)](#), [Window \(188\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }

begin
  WriteLn( 'Cursor position: X= ',WhereX, ' Y= ',WhereY);
end.

```

---

### 5.3.22 WhereY

Synopsis: Return Y (vertical) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereY : tcrtcoord`

Visibility: default

Description: `WhereY` returns the current Y-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1, 1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [GotoXY \(181\)](#), [WhereX \(187\)](#), [Window \(188\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }

begin
  WriteLn( 'Cursor position: X= ',WhereX, ' Y= ',WhereY);
end.

```

---

### 5.3.23 Window

Synopsis: Create new window on screen.

Declaration: `procedure Window(X1: Byte;Y1: Byte;X2: Byte;Y2: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Window` creates a window on the screen, to which output will be sent.  $(X1, Y1)$  are the coordinates of the upper left corner of the window,  $(X2, Y2)$  are the coordinates of the bottom right corner of the window. These coordinates are relative to the entire screen, with the top left corner equal to  $(1, 1)$ . Further coordinate operations, except for the next `Window` call, are relative to the window's top left corner.

Errors: None.

See also: `GotoXY` ([181](#)), `WhereX` ([187](#)), `WhereY` ([187](#)), `ClrScr` ([178](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Window function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Creating a window from 30,10 to 50,20');
  Window(30,10,50,20);
  WriteLn('We are now writing in this small window we just created, we '+
    'can''t get outside it when writing long lines like this one');
  Write('Press any key to clear the window');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  Write('The window is cleared, press any key to restore to fullscreen');
  ReadKey;
  { Full Screen is 80x25 }
  Window(1,1,80,25);
  Clrscr;
  WriteLn('Back in Full Screen');
end.

```

---

## Chapter 6

# Reference for unit 'cthreads'

### 6.1 Overview

The `CThreads` unit initializes the system unit's thread management routines with an implementation based on the POSIX thread managing routines in the C library. This assures that C libraries that are thread-aware still work if they are linked to by a FPC program.

It doesn't offer any API by itself: the initialization section of the unit just initializes the `ThreadManager` record in the `System` (966) unit. This is done using the `SetCThreadManager` (189) call

The `cthreads` unit simply needs to be included in the `uses` clause of the program, preferably the very first unit, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-posix system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS, therefor it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}cthreads{$endif},
  classes, sysutils;
```

The Lazarus IDE inserts this conditional automatically for each new started program.

### 6.2 Procedures and functions

#### 6.2.1 SetCThreadManager

**Synopsis:** Sets the thread manager to the C thread manager

**Declaration:** `procedure SetCThreadManager`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SetCThreadManager` actually sets the thread manager to the C thread manager. It can be called to re-set the thread manager if the thread manager was set to some other thread manager during the life-time of the program.

## Chapter 7

# Reference for unit 'ctypes'

### 7.1 Used units

Table 7.1: Used units by unit 'ctypes'

Name	Page
unixtype	<a href="#">1404</a>

### 7.2 Overview

The `ctypes` unit contains the definitions of commonly found C types. It can be used when interfaces to C libraries need to be defined. The types here are correct on all platforms, 32 or 64 bit.

The main advantage of using this file is to make sure that all C header import units use the same definitions for basic C types.

The `h2pas` program can include the `ctypes` unit automatically in the units it generates. The `-C` command-line switch can be used for this.

### 7.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 7.3.1 Types

`cbool = UnixType.cbool`

C boolean (longbool)

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

C character type (No signedness specification, 8 bit integer)

`cdouble = UnixType.cdouble`

Double precision floating point type (double)

`cfloat = UnixType.cfloat`

Single precision floating point type (single)

`cint = UnixType.cint`

C integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cint16 = UnixType.cint16`

16-bit signed integer.

`cint32 = UnixType.cint32`

32-bit signed integer (commonly: int)

`cint64 = UnixType.cint64`

64-bit integer

`cint8 = UnixType.cint8`

8-bit signed integer

`clong = UnixType.clong`

long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`clongdouble = packed Array[0..15] of Byte`

Long precision floating point type (extended/double, depending on CPU)

`clonglong = UnixType.clonglong`

Long (64-bit) integer

`coff_t = UnixType.TOff`

Generic type to indicate offset

`cschar = UnixType.cschar`

C signed character type (8 bit signed integer)

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

Short integer (16 bit)

`csigned = UnixType.csigned`

Signed integer (commonly 32 bit)

`csint = UnixType.csint`

Signed integer (commonly 32 bit)

`csize_t = UnixType.size_t`

Generic type to contain a size of all kinds of structures

`cslong = UnixType.cslong`

Signed long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong`

Signed long (64-bit) integer

`csshort = UnixType.csshort`

Short signed integer (16 bit)

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

C unsigned character type (8 bit unsigned integer).

`cuint = UnixType.cuint`

Unsigned integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16`

16-bit unsigned integer.

`cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32`

32-bit unsigned integer

`cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64`

Unsigned 64-bit integer

`cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8`

8-bit unsigned integer

`culong = UnixType.culong`

Unsigned long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`culonglong = UnixType.culonglong`

Unsigned long (64-bit) integer

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Unsigned integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

Short unsigned integer (16 bit)

`pcbool = UnixType.pcbbool`

Pointer to `cbool` (190) type.

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Pointer to `cchar` (190) type.

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (190) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (191) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to `cint` (191) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to `cint16` (191) type.

`pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32`

Pointer to `cint32` (191) type.

`pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64`

Pointer to `cint64` (191) type.

`pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8`

Pointer to `cint8` (191) type.

`pclong = UnixType.pclong`

Pointer to `clong` (191) type.

`Pclongdouble = ^clongdouble`

Pointer to `clongdouble` (191) type.

`pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong`

Pointer to `clonglong` (191) type.

`pcschar = UnixType.pcschar`

Pointer to `cschar` (191) type.

`pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to `cshort` (191) type.

`pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned`

Pointer to `csigned` (191) type.

`pcsint = UnixType.pcsint`

Pointer to `csint` (192) type.

`pcsize_t = UnixType.psize_t`

Pointer to generic size type

`pcslong = UnixType.pcslong`

Pointer to `clong` (192) type.

`pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong`

Pointer to `cslonglong` (192) type.

`pcsshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to `csshort` (192) type.

`pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar`

Pointer to `cuchar` (192) type.

`pcuint = UnixType.pcuint`

Pointer to `cuint` (192) type.

`pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16`

Pointer to `cuint16` (192) type.

`pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32`

Pointer to `cuint32` (192) type.

```
pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64
```

Pointer to `cuint64` (192) type.

```
pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8
```

Pointer to `cuint8` (192) type.

```
pculong = UnixType.pculong
```

Pointer to `culong` (192) type.

```
pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong
```

Pointer to `culonglong` (192) type.

```
pcunsigned = UnixType.punsigned
```

Pointer to `cunsigned` (193) type.

```
pcushort = UnixType.pcushort
```

Pointer to `cushort` (193) type.

## 7.4 Procedures and functions

### 7.4.1 `operator :=(clongdouble): double`

Synopsis: Override assignment operator for `clongdouble` (191) type.

Declaration: `function operator :=(clongdouble): double(const v: clongdouble) : double`

Visibility: default

### 7.4.2 `operator :=(double): clongdouble`

Synopsis: Override assignment operator for `clongdouble` (191) type.

Declaration: `function operator :=(double): clongdouble(const v: double) : clongdouble`

Visibility: default

## Chapter 8

# Reference for unit 'cwstring'

### 8.1 Overview

The `cstring` unit offers no API by itself: it just initializes the widestring manager record of the system (966) unit with an implementation that uses collation and conversion routines which are provided by the C library found on most Unix or Linux systems that are POSIX compliant.

The `cstring` should simply be included in the uses clause of the program, preferably as one of the first units, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-posix system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS, therefor it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}cstring, {$endif}
  classes, sysutils;
```

### 8.2 Procedures and functions

#### 8.2.1 SetCWidestringManager

**Synopsis:** Set the Widestring manager of the system unit to the C version

**Declaration:** `procedure SetCWidestringManager`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SetCWidestringManager` actually sets the widestring manager record of the system unit. It is called automatically by the initialization section of the unit.

## Chapter 9

# Reference for unit 'dateutils'

### 9.1 Used units

Table 9.1: Used units by unit 'dateutils'

Name	Page
math	<a href="#">493</a>
sysutils	<a href="#">1174</a>
Types	<a href="#">197</a>

### 9.2 Overview

`DateUtils` contains a large number of date/time manipulation routines, all based on the `TDateTime` type. There are routines for date/time math, for comparing dates and times, for composing dates and decomposing dates in their constituent parts.

### 9.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 9.3.1 Constants

`ApproxDaysPerMonth : Double = 30.4375`

Average number of days in a month, measured over a year. Used in `MonthsBetween` ([243](#)).

`ApproxDaysPerYear : Double = 365.25`

Average number of days in a year, measured over 4 years. Used in `YearsBetween` ([284](#)).

`DayFriday = 5`

ISO day number for Friday

`DayMonday = 1`

ISO day number for Monday

DaySaturday = 6

ISO day number for Saturday

DaysPerWeek = 7

Number of days in a week.

DaysPerYear : Array[Boolean] of Word = (365, 366 )

Array with number of days in a year. The boolean index indicates whether it is a leap year or not.

DaySunday = 7

ISO day number for Sunday

DayThursday = 4

ISO day number for Thursday

DayTuesday = 2

ISO day number for Tuesday

DayWednesday = 3

ISO day number for Wednesday

MonthsPerYear = 12

Number of months in a year

OneHour = 1 / HoursPerDay

One hour as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMillisecond = 1 / MSecsPerDay

One millisecond as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMinute = 1 / MinsPerDay

One minute as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneSecond = 1 / SecsPerDay

One second as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs = High ( Word )

Bitmask deciding what to do with each TDateTime field in recode routines

`WeeksPerFortnight = 2`

Number of weeks in fortnight

`YearsPerCentury = 100`

Number of years in a century

`YearsPerDecade = 10`

Number of years in a decade

`YearsPerMillennium = 1000`

Number of years in a millenium

## 9.4 Procedures and functions

### 9.4.1 CompareDate

Synopsis: Compare 2 dates, disregarding the time of day

Declaration: `function CompareDate(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareDate` compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if the day part of A is earlier than the day part of B.

0 if A and B are the on same day (times may differ) .

> 0 if the day part of A is later than the day part of B.

See also: `CompareTime` (201), `CompareDateTime` (200), `SameDate` (253), `SameTime` (255), `SameDateTime` (254)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex99.pp`

---

**Program** Example99;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy';

**Procedure** Test(D1, D2 : TDateTime);

**Var**

    Cmp : Integer;

```
Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';
```

---

```

Procedure Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

Var
  Cmp : Integer;

begin
  Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is ');
  Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);
  If Cmp<0 then
    write('earlier than ')
  else if Cmp>0 then
    Write('later than ')
  else
    Write('equal to ');
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));
end;

Var
  D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Today;
  N:=Now;
  Test(D,D);
  Test(N,N);
  Test(D+1,D);
  Test(D-1,D);
  Test(D+OneSecond,D);
  Test(D-OneSecond,D);
  Test(N+OneSecond,N);
  Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.3 CompareTime

**Synopsis:** Compares two times of the day, disregarding the date part.

**Declaration:** `function CompareTime(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CompareTime` compares the time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if the time part of A is earlier than the time part of B.

0 if A and B have the same time part (dates may differ) .

> 0 if the time part of A is later than the time part of B.

See also: `CompareDateTime` (200), `CompareDate` (199), `SameDate` (253), `SameTime` (255), `SameDateTime` (254)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex100.pp

---

```

Program Example100;

{ This program demonstrates the CompareTime function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

Procedure Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

Var
    Cmp : Integer;

begin
    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' has ');
    Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);
    If Cmp<0 then
        write('earlier time than ')
    else if Cmp>0 then
        Write('later time than ')
    else
        Write('equal time with ');
    WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));
end;

Var
    D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
    D:=Today;
    N:=Now;
    Test(D,D);
    Test(N,N);
    Test(N+1,N);
    Test(N-1,N);
    Test(N+OneSecond,N);
    Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 9.4.4 DateOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the date part from a DateTime indication.

**Declaration:** `function DateOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateOf extracts the date part from AValue and returns the result.

Since the TDateTime is actually a double with the date part encoded in the integer part, this operation corresponds to a call to Trunc.

See also: TimeOf (264), YearOf (283), MonthOf (243), DayOf (204), HourOf (219), MinuteOf (239), SecondOf (256), MilliSecondOf (235)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex1.pp

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateOf function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

    WriteLn( 'Date is: ', DateTimeToStr( DateOf(Now) ) );

**End.**

---

### 9.4.5 DateTimeToDosDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert TDateTime format to DOS date/time format

**Declaration:** function DateTimeToDosDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateTimeToDosDatetime takes Value, a TDateTime formatted timestamp, and recodes it to a MS-DOS encoded date/time value. This is a longint with the date/time encoded in the bits as:

**0-4**Seconds divided by 2

**5-10**Minutes

**11-15**Hours

**16-20**Day

**21-24**Month

**25-31**Years since 1980

See also: DosDateTimeToDateTime ([212](#))

### 9.4.6 DateTimeToJulianDate

**Synopsis:** Converts a TDateTime value to a Julian date representation

**Declaration:** function DateTimeToJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateTimeToJulianDate converts the AValue date/time indication to a julian (as opposed to Gregorian) date.

See also: JulianDateToDateTime ([234](#)), TryJulianDateToDateTime ([269](#)), DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate ([204](#)), TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime ([269](#))

### 9.4.7 DateTimeToMac

**Synopsis:** Convert a TDateTime timestamp to a Mac timestamp

**Declaration:** function DateTimeToMac(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateTimeToMac converts the TDateTime value AValue to a valid Mac timestamp indication and returns the result.

Errors: None.

See also: [UnixTimeStampToMac \(271\)](#), [MacToDateTime \(234\)](#), [MacTimeStampToUnix \(234\)](#)

### 9.4.8 DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` value to a modified Julian date representation

Declaration: `function DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(203\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(234\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(269\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(269\)](#)

### 9.4.9 DateTimeToUnix

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` value to Unix epoch time

Declaration: `function DateTimeToUnix(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToUnix` converts a `TDateTime` value to a epoch time (i.e. the time elapsed since 1/1/1970).

See also: [UnixToDateTime \(271\)](#)

### 9.4.10 DayOf

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part from a `DateTime` value

Declaration: `function DayOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOf` returns the day of the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 31.

For an example, see [YearOf \(283\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(283\)](#), [WeekOf \(271\)](#), [MonthOf \(243\)](#), [HourOf \(219\)](#), [MinuteOf \(239\)](#), [SecondOf \(256\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(235\)](#)

### 9.4.11 DayOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part of a `DateTime` value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DayOfTheMonth` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the month will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (271) function.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` (205), `WeekOfTheMonth` (271), `HourOfTheMonth` (220), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (240), `SecondOfTheMonth` (257), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (236)

### 9.4.12 DayOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Extracts the day of the week from a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function DayOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DayOfTheWeek` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the week till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the week will return 1.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` (205), `DayOfTheMonth` (204), `HourOfTheWeek` (220), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (240), `SecondOfTheWeek` (257), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (237)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex42.pp`

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Day of the Week : ', DayOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Hour of the Week : ', HourOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Minute of the Week : ', MinuteOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Week : ', SecondOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Week : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheWeek(N));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.13 DayOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extracts the day of the year from a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function DayOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DayOfTheYear` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the year till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. January 1 will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (272) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (272), `HourOfTheYear` (221), `MinuteOfTheYear` (241), `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237)

### 9.4.14 DaysBetween

Synopsis: Number of whole days between two DateTime values.

Declaration: `function DaysBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysBetween` returns the number of whole days between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a day (hours, minutes, etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (284), `MonthsBetween` (243), `WeeksBetween` (273), `HoursBetween` (221), `MinutesBetween` (241), `SecondsBetween` (258), `MillisecondsBetween` (237)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** Example58;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of days between ');

  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn(' : ', DaysBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Now;

  D2 := Today - 23/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 1;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 25/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 26/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 5.4;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 2.5;

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.15 DaysInAMonth

Synopsis: Number of days in a month of a certain year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month `AMonth` in the year `AYear`. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(274\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(274\)](#), [DaysInYear \(208\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(207\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(208\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y,M` : `Word`;

**Begin**

**For** `Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

**For** `M:=1 to 12 do`

**WriteLn** (`LongMonthNames[m]`, ' ', `Y`, ' has ', `DaysInAMonth(Y,M)`, ' days. ');

**End.**

---

#### 9.4.16 DaysInAYear

**Synopsis:** Number of days in a particular year.

**Declaration:** `function DaysInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DaysInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(274\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(274\)](#), [DaysInYear \(208\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(208\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(206\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y` : `Word`;

**Begin**

**For** `Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

**WriteLn** (`Y`, ' has ', `DaysInAYear(Y)`, ' days. ');

**End.**

---

### 9.4.17 DaysInMonth

Synopsis: Return the number of days in the month in which a date occurs.

Declaration: `function DaysInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month in which `AValue` falls. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(274\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(274\)](#), [DaysInYear \(208\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(207\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(206\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

For M:=1 to 12 do

WriteLn(LongMonthNames[m], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInMonth(EncodeDate(Y,M,1)), ' days.');

**End.**

---

### 9.4.18 DaysInYear

Synopsis: Return the number of days in the year in which a date occurs.

Declaration: `function DaysInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `daysInYear` returns the number of days in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(274\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(274\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(207\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(208\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(206\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

WriteLn(Y, ' has ', DaysInYear(EncodeDate(Y,1,1)), ' days.');

**End.**

---

### 9.4.19 DaySpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of days between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function DaySpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DaySpan` returns the number of Days between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a Day.

See also: [YearSpan \(285\)](#), [MonthSpan \(244\)](#), [WeekSpan \(275\)](#), [HourSpan \(222\)](#), [MinuteSpan \(242\)](#), [SecondSpan \(259\)](#), [MillisecondSpan \(238\)](#), [DaysBetween \(206\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex66.pp`

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaySpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write( 'Number of days between ' );

  Write( **DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow) );

  WriteLn( ' : ', DaySpan(ANow, AThen) );

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := **Now**;

  D2 := Today - 23/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 1;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 25/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 26/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 5.4;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 2.5;

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.20 DecodeDateDay

**Synopsis:** Decode a `DateTime` value in year and year of day.

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateDay(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word; var ADayOfYear: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeDateDay` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `ADayOfYear`.

**See also:** [EncodeDateTime \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(214\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(213\)](#), [DecodeDateTime \(211\)](#), [DecodeDateWeek \(211\)](#), [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(210\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex83.pp`

---

**Program** `Example83`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, DoY : Word;`  
`TS : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDateDay(Now, Y, DoY);`  
`TS := EncodeDateDay(Y, DoY);`  
`WriteLn('Today is : ', DateToStr(TS));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.21 DecodeDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Decode a `DateTime` value in a month, week of month and day of week

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateMonthWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word;`  
`var AMonth: Word; var AWeekOfMonth: Word;`  
`var ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DecodeDateMonthWeek` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek`.

**See also:** [EncodeDateTime \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(214\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(213\)](#), [DecodeDateTime \(211\)](#), [DecodeDateWeek \(211\)](#), [DecodeDateDay \(209\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex85.pp`

---

**Program** `Example85`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, M, WoM, DoW : Word;`  
`TS : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDateMonthWeek(Now, Y, M, WoM, DoW);`  
`TS := EncodeDateMonthWeek(Y, M, WoM, DoW);`  
`WriteLn('Today is : ', DateToStr(TS));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.22 DecodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Decode a datetime value in a date and time value

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word;  
var AMonth: Word; var ADay: Word; var AHour: Word;  
var AMinute: Word; var ASecond: Word;  
var AMilliSecond: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeDateTime` decomposes the date/time indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond`, `AMilliSecond`

**See also:** `EncodeDateTime` (213), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (213), `EncodeDateWeek` (214), `EncodeDateDay` (213), `DecodeDateWeek` (211), `DecodeDateDay` (209), `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (210)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex79.pp`

---

**Program** `Example79;`

`{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateTime function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDateTime(Now, Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);  
TS := EncodeDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);  
WriteLn('Now is : ', DateTimeToStr(TS));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.23 DecodeDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Decode a `DateTime` value in a week of year and day of week.

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word;  
var AWeekOfYear: Word; var ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeDateWeek` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear`, `ADayOfWeek`.

**See also:** `EncodeDateTime` (213), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (213), `EncodeDateWeek` (214), `EncodeDateDay` (213), `DecodeDateTime` (211), `DecodeDateDay` (209), `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (210)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex81.pp`

---

**Program** `Example81;`

`{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateWeek function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

```

Var
  Y,W,Dow : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;

Begin
  DecodeDateWeek(Now,Y,W,Dow);
  TS:=EncodeDateWeek(Y,W,Dow);
  WriteIn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS));
End.

```

---

#### 9.4.24 DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth

Synopsis: Decode a DateTime value in year, month, day of week parts

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime;`  
   `var AYear: Word;var AMonth: Word;`  
   `var ANthDayOfWeek: Word;`  
   `var ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` decodes the date `AValue` in a `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek`. (This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third saturday of the month.)

See also: `NthDayOfWeek` ([245](#)), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` ([213](#)), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` ([1224](#)), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` ([214](#)), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` ([268](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex105.pp`

---

**Program** `Example105;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

```

Var
  Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;
  D : TDateTime;
Begin
  DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Date,Y,M,NDoW,DoW);
  D:=EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Y,M,NDoW,DoW);
  Write(DateToStr(D),' is the ',NDoW,'-th ');
  WriteIn(formatDateTime('dddd',D),' of the month. ');
End.

```

---

#### 9.4.25 DosDateTimeToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert DOS date/time format to TDateTime format

**Declaration:** `function DosDateTimeToDateTime(AValue: LongInt) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DosDateTimeToDateTime` takes a DOS encoded date/time `AValue` and recodes it as a `TDateTime` value.

The bit encoding of the DOS date/time is explained in the `DateTimeToDosDateTime` ([203](#)) function.

See also: [DateTimeToDosDateTime \(203\)](#)

### 9.4.26 EncodeDateDay

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year and day of year to a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function EncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateDay` encodes the values `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateDay \(209\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(213\)](#), [DecodeDateDay \(209\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(214\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(267\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(266\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(268\)](#)

### 9.4.27 EncodeDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year, month, week of month and day of week to a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function EncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateMonthWeek` encodes the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `WeekOfMonth`, `ADayOfWeek`, to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(210\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(210\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(214\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(213\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(267\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(268\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(266\)](#), [TryEncodeDateDay \(266\)](#), [NthDayOfWeek \(245\)](#)

### 9.4.28 EncodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Encodes a `DateTime` value from all its parts

**Declaration:** `function EncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateTime` encodes the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond` to a date/time value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateTime \(211\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [DecodeDateTime \(211\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(214\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(213\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(267\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(268\)](#), [TryEncodeDateDay \(266\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(266\)](#)

### 9.4.29 EncodeDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Encode a `TDateTime` value from a year, week and day of week triplet

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                        const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word)
                        : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateWeek` encodes the values `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear` and `ADayOfWeek` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateWeek \(211\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(213\)](#), [DecodeDateWeek \(211\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(213\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(213\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(267\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(268\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(266\)](#)

### 9.4.30 EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year, month, week, day of week specification to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                                const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;
                                const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` encodes `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek` to a valid date stamp and returns the result.

`ANthDayOfWeek` is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third saturday of the month.

For an example, see [DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(212\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the values is not in range, then an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: [NthDayOfWeek \(245\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(213\)](#), [#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek \(1224\)](#), [DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(212\)](#), [TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(268\)](#)

### 9.4.31 EndOfADay

**Synopsis:** Calculates a `DateTime` value representing the end of a specified day

**Declaration:**

```
function EndOfADay(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                  const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload
function EndOfADay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word) : TDateTime
                  ; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfDay` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of the day given by `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`.

The day may also be indicated with a `AYear`, `ADayOfYear` pair.

See also: `StartOfDay` (262), `StartOfDay` (260), `StartOfTheWeek` (263), `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfAMonth` (261), `StartOfTheMonth` (263), `EndOfTheWeek` (218), `EndOfAWeek` (216), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215), `EndOfTheDay` (217)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';`

**Var**

`Y,M,D : Word;`

**Begin**

`Y:=YearOf(Today);`

`M:=MonthOf(Today);`

`D:=DayOf(Today);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,EndOfDay(Y,M,D)));`

`DecodeDateDay(Today,Y,D);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,EndOfDay(Y,D)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.32 EndOfAMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate a datetime value representing the last day of the indicated month

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `EndOfAMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.

See also: `StartOfTheMonth` (263), `StartOfAMonth` (261), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfTheWeek` (263)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `Example31`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "Last day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Var**

`Y,M : Word;`

**Begin**

```
Y:=YearOf(Today);
M:=MonthOf(Today);
WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfAMonth(Y,M)));
End.
```

---

### 9.4.33 EndOfAWeek

Synopsis: Return the last moment of day of the week, given a year and a week in the year.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word; const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime`  
`function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `EndOfAWeek` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last moment (23:59:59:999) on the indicated day of the week indicated by the `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek` values.

The default value for `ADayOfWeek` is 7.

See also: `StartOfTheWeek` (263), `EndOfTheWeek` (218), `EndOfAWeek` (216), `StartOfAMonth` (261), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex35.pp`

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

```
Fmt = 'Last day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
Fmt2 = 'Last-1 day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
```

**Var**

```
Y,W : Word;
```

**Begin**

```
Y:=YearOf(Today);
W:=WeekOf(Today);
WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfAWeek(Y,W)));
WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt2, EndOfAWeek(Y,W,6)));
End.
```

---

### 9.4.34 EndOfAYear

Synopsis: Calculate a `DateTime` value representing the last day of a year

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StartOfYear` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of the year `AYear` (December 31).

See also: `StartOfYear` ([264](#)), `EndOfYear` ([219](#)), `EndOfYear` ([216](#)), `EndOfMonth` ([217](#)), `EndOfMonth` ([215](#)), `StartOfWeek` ([261](#)), `StartOfWeek` ([263](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'Last day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfYear (YearOf (Today))));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.35 EndOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate a datetime value that represents the end of a given day.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `EndOfDay` extracts the date part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/-time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of this day.

See also: `StartOfDay` ([262](#)), `StartOfDay` ([260](#)), `StartOfWeek` ([263](#)), `StartOfWeek` ([261](#)), `StartOfMonth` ([261](#)), `StartOfMonth` ([263](#)), `EndOfWeek` ([218](#)), `EndOfWeek` ([216](#)), `EndOfYear` ([219](#)), `EndOfYear` ([216](#)), `EndOfMonth` ([217](#)), `EndOfMonth` ([215](#)), `EndOfDay` ([214](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** `Example37`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfDay (Today)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.36 EndOfMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate a `DateTime` value representing the last day of the month, given a day in that month.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheMonth` extracts the year and month parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the `EndOfAMonth` (215) function.

See also: `StartOfAMonth` (261), `StartOfTheMonth` (263), `EndOfAMonth` (215), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfTheWeek` (263)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `Example29;`

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "last day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheMonth (Today)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.37 EndOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate a `DateTime` value which represents the end of a week, given a date in that week.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheWeek` extracts the year and week parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of that week as the `EndOfAWeek` (216) function.

See also: `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfTheWeek` (263), `EndOfAWeek` (216), `StartOfAMonth` (261), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33;`

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "last day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheWeek (Today)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.38 EndOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate a `DateTime` value representing the last day of a year, given a date in that year.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheYear` extracts the year part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of that year (December 31), as the `EndOfAYear` (216) function.

**See also:** `StartOfAYear` (262), `StartOfTheYear` (264), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215), `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfTheWeek` (263), `EndOfAYear` (216)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "Last day of this year : "dd mmmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheYear (Today) ));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.39 HourOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the hour part from a `DateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function HourOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOf` returns the hour of the day part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 23.

For an example, see `YearOf` (283)

**See also:** `YearOf` (283), `WeekOf` (271), `MonthOf` (243), `DayOf` (204), `MinuteOf` (239), `SecondOf` (256), `MilliSecondOf` (235)

### 9.4.40 HourOfTheDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the hour of a given `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function HourOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOfTheDay` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the day till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 will return 0.

**See also:** `HourOfTheYear` (221), `HourOfTheMonth` (220), `HourOfTheWeek` (220), `MinuteOfTheDay` (239), `SecondOfTheDay` (256), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (235)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex43.pp

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourOfDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Hour of the Day : ', HourOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Minute of the Day : ', MinuteOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Day : ', SecondOfDay(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Day : ',  
MilliSecondOfDay(N));

**End.**

#### 9.4.41 HourOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** function HourOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourOfTheMonth returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the WeekOfTheMonth (271) function.

See also: WeekOfTheMonth (271), DayOfTheMonth (204), MinuteOfTheMonth (240), SecondOfTheMonth (257), MilliSecondOfTheMonth (236)

#### 9.4.42 HourOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours elapsed since the start of the week.

**Declaration:** function HourOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourOfTheWeek returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the Week till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the DayOfTheWeek (205) function.

See also: HourOfTheYear (221), HourOfTheMonth (220), HourOfDay (219), DayOfTheWeek (205), MinuteOfTheWeek (240), SecondOfTheWeek (257), MilliSecondOfTheWeek (237)

### 9.4.43 HourOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function HourOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOfTheYear` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:59:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (272) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (272), `DayOfTheYear` (205), `MinuteOfTheYear` (241), `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237)

### 9.4.44 HoursBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole hours between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function HoursBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HoursBetween` returns the number of whole hours between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of an hour (minutes, seconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (284), `MonthsBetween` (243), `WeeksBetween` (273), `DaysBetween` (206), `MinutesBetween` (241), `SecondsBetween` (258), `MillisecondsBetween` (237)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the HoursBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of hours between ');  
  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));  
  WriteLn(' : ', HoursBetween(ANow, AThen));  
**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;  
  D2:=D1-(59\*OneMinute);  
  Test(D1, D2);  
  D2:=D1-(61\*OneMinute);  
  Test(D1, D2);  
  D2:=D1-(122\*OneMinute);  
  Test(D1, D2);  
  D2:=D1-(306\*OneMinute);

```

    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.45 HourSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of hours between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function HourSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourSpan` returns the number of Hours between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a Hour.

See also: `YearSpan` (285), `MonthSpan` (244), `WeekSpan` (275), `DaySpan` (209), `MinuteSpan` (242), `SecondSpan` (259), `MilliSecondSpan` (238), `HoursBetween` (221)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

    Write('Number of hours between ');
    Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
    Writeln(' : ', HourSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

D1,D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

    D1:=Now;
    D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.46 IncDay

**Synopsis:** Increase a DateTime value with a number of days.

**Declaration:** `function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime;const ANumberOfDays: Integer)  
: TDateTime  
function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncDay adds ANumberOfDays days to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfDays can be positive or negative.

**See also:** IncYear (226), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1269), IncWeek (225), IncHour (223), IncMinute (224), IncSecond (225), IncMilliSecond (224)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**( 'One Day from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncDay(Today,1)));

**WriteIn**( 'One Day ago from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncDay(Today,-1)));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.47 IncHour

**Synopsis:** Increase a DateTime value with a number of hours.

**Declaration:** `function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime;const ANumberOfHours: Int64)  
: TDateTime  
function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncHour adds ANumberOfHours hours to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfHours can be positive or negative.

**See also:** IncYear (226), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1269), IncWeek (225), IncDay (223), IncMinute (224), IncSecond (225), IncMilliSecond (224)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex75.pp

---

**Program** Example75

;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**( 'One Hour from now is ', **DateTimeToStr**(IncHour(**Now**,1)));

**WriteIn**( 'One Hour ago from now is ', **DateTimeToStr**(IncHour(**Now**,-1)));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.48 IncMilliSecond

Synopsis: Increase a DateTime value with a number of milliseconds.

Declaration: `function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMilliseconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncMilliSecond` adds `ANumberOfMilliseconds` milliseconds to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfMilliseconds` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (226), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1269), `IncWeek` (225), `IncDay` (223), `IncHour` (223), `IncSecond` (225), `IncMilliSecond` (224)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex78.pp`

---

**Program** `Example78;`

`{ This program demonstrates the IncMilliSecond function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One MilliSecond from now is ', TimeToStr(IncMilliSecond(Now, 1)));  
WriteLn('One MilliSecond ago from now is ', TimeToStr(IncMilliSecond(Now, -1)));  
End.`

---

### 9.4.49 IncMinute

Synopsis: Increase a DateTime value with a number of minutes.

Declaration: `function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMinutes: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncMinute` adds `ANumberOfMinutes` minutes to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfMinutes` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (226), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1269), `IncWeek` (225), `IncDay` (223), `IncHour` (223), `IncSecond` (225), `IncMilliSecond` (224)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex76.pp`

---

**Program** `Example76;`

`{ This program demonstrates the IncMinute function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One Minute from now is ', TimeToStr(IncMinute(Time, 1)));  
WriteLn('One Minute ago from now is ', TimeToStr(IncMinute(Time, -1)));  
End.`

---

### 9.4.50 IncSecond

**Synopsis:** Increase a `DateTime` value with a number of seconds.

**Declaration:** `function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
                                  const ANumberOfSeconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
          function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IncSecond` adds `ANumberOfSeconds` seconds to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfSeconds` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (226), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1269), `IncWeek` (225), `IncDay` (223), `IncHour` (223), `IncSecond` (225), `IncMilliSecond` (224)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** `Example77`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncSecond function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'One Second from now is ', **TimeToStr** ( `IncSecond` ( **Time**, 1 ) ) );

**WriteLn** ( 'One Second ago from now is ', **TimeToStr** ( `IncSecond` ( **Time**, - 1 ) ) );

**End.**

---

### 9.4.51 IncWeek

**Synopsis:** Increase a `DateTime` value with a number of weeks.

**Declaration:** `function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfWeeks: Integer)  
                                  : TDateTime  
          function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IncWeek` adds `ANumberOfWeeks` weeks to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfWeeks` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (226), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1269), `IncDay` (223), `IncHour` (223), `IncMinute` (224), `IncSecond` (225), `IncMilliSecond` (224)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex73.pp`

---

**Program** `Example73`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'One Week from today is ', **DateToStr** ( `IncWeek` ( **Today**, 1 ) ) );

**WriteLn** ( 'One Week ago from today is ', **DateToStr** ( `IncWeek` ( **Today**, - 1 ) ) );

**End.**

---

### 9.4.52 IncYear

**Synopsis:** Increase a `DateTime` value with a number of years.

**Declaration:** `function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfYears: Integer) : TDateTime`  
`function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IncYear` adds `ANumberOfYears` years to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfYears` can be positive or negative.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1269), `IncWeek` (225), `IncDay` (223), `IncHour` (223), `IncMinute` (224), `IncSecond` (225), `IncMilliSecond` (224)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex71.pp`

---

**Program** `Example71`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One year from today is ', DateToStr(IncYear(Today, 1)));`

`WriteLn('One year ago from today is ', DateToStr(IncYear(Today, -1)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.53 InvalidDateDayError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a day is not a valid day of a year.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDateDayError(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateDayError` raises an `EConvertError` (1319) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear` and `ADayOfYear`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (227), `InvalidDateTimeError` (227), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (226), `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` (228)

### 9.4.54 InvalidDateMonthWeekError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year, Month, WeekOfMonth, DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDateMonthWeekError(const AYear: Word;`  
`const AMonth: Word;`  
`const AWeekOfMonth: Word;`  
`const ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1319) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (227), `InvalidDateTimeError` (227), `InvalidDateDayError` (226), `InvalidDay-Of-WeekInMonthError` (228)

### 9.4.55 InvalidDateTimeError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` about an invalid date-time specification.

**Declaration:**

```

procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word;
                               const ABaseDate: TDateTime)
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word)

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateTimeError` raises an `EConvertError` (1319) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (227), `InvalidDateDayError` (226), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (226), `InvalidDayOf-WeekInMonthError` (228)

### 9.4.56 InvalidDateWeekError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` with an invalid Year, WeekOfyear and DayOfWeek specification

**Declaration:**

```

procedure InvalidDateWeekError(const AYear: Word;
                               const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                               const ADayOfWeek: Word)

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1319) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek`

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateTimeError` (227), `InvalidDateDayError` (226), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (226), `InvalidDayOf-WeekInMonthError` (228)

### 9.4.57 InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year,Month,NthDayOfWeek,DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError(const AYear: Word;
                                       const AMonth: Word;
                                       const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;
                                       const ADayOfWeek: Word)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` raises an `EConvertError` (1319) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ANthDayOfWeek` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

**See also:** `InvalidDateWeekError` (227), `InvalidDateTimeError` (227), `InvalidDateDayError` (226), `InvalidDate-MonthWeekError` (226)

### 9.4.58 IsInLeapYear

**Synopsis:** Determine whether a date is in a leap year.

**Declaration:**

```
function IsInLeapYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsInLeapYear` returns `True` if the year part of `AValue` is leap year, or `False` if not.

**See also:** `YearOf` (283), `IsPM` (228), `IsToday` (229), `IsSameDay` (229)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsInLeapYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**( 'Current year is leap year: ', IsInLeapYear( **Date** ));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.59 IsPM

**Synopsis:** Determine whether a time is PM or AM.

**Declaration:**

```
function IsPM(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsPM` returns `True` if the time part of `AValue` is later then 12:00 (PM, or afternoon).

**See also:** `YearOf` (283), `IsInLeapYear` (228), `IsToday` (229), `IsSameDay` (229)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;

{ This program demonstrates the IsPM function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Begin
  WriteLn('Current time is PM : ', IsPM(Now));
End.

```

---

### 9.4.60 IsSameDay

Synopsis: Check if two date/time indications are the same day.

Declaration: `function IsSameDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ABasis: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSameDay` checks whether `AValue` and `ABasis` have the same date part, and returns `True` if they do, `False` if not.

See also: [Today \(265\)](#), [Yesterday \(286\)](#), [Tomorrow \(265\)](#), [IsToday \(229\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex21.pp

---

```

Program Example21;

{ This program demonstrates the IsSameDay function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Var
  I : Integer;
  D : TDateTime;

Begin
  For I:=1 to 3 do
    begin
      D:=Today+Random(3)-1;
      Write(FormatDateTime('dd mmm yyyy "is today : "', D));
      WriteLn(IsSameDay(D, Today));
    end;
End.

```

---

### 9.4.61 IsToday

Synopsis: Check whether a given date is today.

Declaration: `function IsToday(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsToday` returns `True` if `AValue` is today's date, and `False` otherwise.

See also: [Today \(265\)](#), [Yesterday \(286\)](#), [Tomorrow \(265\)](#), [IsSameDay \(229\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex20.pp

---

**Program** Example20;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsToday function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

```
WriteLn('Today      : ', IsToday(Today));
WriteLn('Tomorrow   : ', IsToday(Tomorrow));
WriteLn('Yesterday  : ', IsToday(Yesterday));
```

**End.**

---

### 9.4.62 IsValidDate

**Synopsis:** Check whether a set of values is a valid date indication.

**Declaration:** function IsValidDate(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsValidDate returns True when the values AYear, AMonth, ADay form a valid date indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the day is invalid or does not exist in that particular month), False is returned.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: IsValidTime (234), IsValidDateTime (232), IsValidDateDay (230), IsValidDateWeek (233), IsValidDateMonthWeek (231)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M,D : Word;

**Begin**

```
For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
  For M:=1 to 12 do
    For D:=1 to 31 do
      If Not IsValidDate(Y,M,D) then
        WriteLn(D, ' is not a valid day in ', Y, '/', M);
```

**End.**

---

### 9.4.63 IsValidDateDay

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/day of year combination is a valid date.

**Declaration:** function IsValidDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** IsValidDateDay returns True if AYear and ADayOfYear form a valid date indication, or False otherwise.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The ADayOfYear value is checked to see whether it falls within the valid range of dates for AYear.

See also: IsValidDate (230), IsValidTime (234), IsValidDateTime (232), IsValidDateWeek (233), IsValidDateMonthWeek (231)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex9.pp

---

**Program** Example9;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1996 to 2004 do

if IsValidDateDay(Y,366) then

WriteLn(Y, ' is a leap year');

**End.**

---

#### 9.4.64 IsValidDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/month/week/day of the week combination is a valid day

**Declaration:** function IsValidDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** IsValidDateMonthWeek returns True if AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth and ADayOfWeek form a valid date indication, or False otherwise.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The AWeekOfMonth, ADayOfWeek values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for the AYear, AMonth combination.

See also: IsValidDate (230), IsValidTime (234), IsValidDateTime (232), IsValidDateDay (230), IsValidDateWeek (233)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,W,D : Word;

```

    B : Boolean;

Begin
  For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
    begin
      B:=True;
      For W:=4 to 6 do
        For D:=1 to 7 do
          If B then
            begin
              B:=IsValidDateMonthWeek(Y,12,W,D);
            end
          If Not B then
            if (D=1) then
              Writeln('December ',Y,' has exactly ',W,' weeks. ');
            else
              Writeln('December ',Y,' has ',W,' weeks and ',D-1,' days. ');
            end;
          end;
        end;
      end;
    end;
  End.

```

---

#### 9.4.65 IsValidDateTime

Synopsis: Check whether a set of values is a valid date and time indication.

Declaration: `function IsValidDateTime(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsValidTime` returns `True` when the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond` form a valid date and time indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the seconds are larger than 60), `False` is returned.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: `IsValidDate` (230), `IsValidTime` (234), `IsValidDateDay` (230), `IsValidDateWeek` (233), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` (231)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

```

Y,Mo,D : Word;
H,M,S,MS : Word;
I : Integer;

```

**Begin**

```

For I:=1 to 10 do
  begin
    Y:=2000+Random(5);
    Mo:=Random(15);

```

```

D:=Random(40);
H:=Random(32);
M:=Random(90);
S:=Random(90);
MS:=Random(1500);
If Not IsValidDateTime(Y,Mo,D,H,M,S,MS) then
  WriteLn(Y,'-',Mo,'-',D,' ',H,':',M,':',S,'.',MS,' is not a valid date/time. ');
end;
End.

```

---

### 9.4.66 IsValidDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/week/day of the week combination is a valid day.

**Declaration:** function IsValidDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsValidDateWeek returns True if AYear, AWeekOfYear and ADayOfWeek form a valid date indication, or False otherwise.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The ADayOfWeek,ADayOfWeek values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for AYear.

See also: IsValidDate (230), IsValidTime (234), IsValidDateTime (232), IsValidDateDay (230), IsValidDate-MonthWeek (231)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,W,D : Word;  
B : Boolean;

**Begin**

```

For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
  begin
    B:=True;
    For W:=51 to 54 do
      For D:=1 to 7 do
        If B then
          begin
            B:=IsValidDateWeek(Y,W,D);
            If Not B then
              if (D=1) then
                WriteLn(Y,' has exactly ',W,' weeks. ');
              else
                WriteLn(Y,' has ',W,' weeks and ',D-1,' days. ');
            end;
          end;
        end;
      end;
    end;
  end;
end;

```

**End.**

---

### 9.4.67 IsValidTime

Synopsis: Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

Declaration: `function IsValidTime(const AHour: Word;const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word;const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

### 9.4.68 JulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function JulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `JulianDateToDateTime` converts the Julian `AValue` date/time indication to a regular `TDateTime` date/time indication.

See also: `DateTimeToJulianDate` (203), `TryJulianDateToDateTime` (269), `DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate` (204), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` (269)

### 9.4.69 MacTimeStampToUnix

Synopsis: Convert a Mac timestamp to a Unix timestamp

Declaration: `function MacTimeStampToUnix(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `MacTimeStampToUnix` converts the Mac timestamp indication in `AValue` to a unix timestamp indication (epoch time)

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` (271), `DateTimeToMac` (203), `MacToDateTime` (234)

### 9.4.70 MacToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Mac timestamp to a TDateTime timestamp

Declaration: `function MacToDateTime(const AValue: Int64) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `MacToDateTime` converts the Mac timestamp indication in `AValue` to a valid `TDateTime` indication.

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` (271), `DateTimeToMac` (203), `MacTimeStampToUnix` (234)

### 9.4.71 MilliSecondOf

Synopsis: Extract the millisecond part from a DateTime value.

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOf` returns the second of the minute part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 999.

For an example, see [YearOf \(283\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(283\)](#), [WeekOf \(271\)](#), [MonthOf \(243\)](#), [DayOf \(204\)](#), [HourOf \(219\)](#), [MinuteOf \(239\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(235\)](#)

### 9.4.72 MilliSecondOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfDay` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the [HourOfDay \(219\)](#) function.

See also: [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(237\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMonth \(236\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheWeek \(237\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheHour \(235\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMinute \(235\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheSecond \(236\)](#), [HourOfTheDay \(219\)](#), [MinuteOfDay \(239\)](#), [SecondOfDay \(256\)](#)

### 9.4.73 MilliSecondOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfTheHour` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the [MinuteOfTheHour \(239\)](#) function.

See also: [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(237\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMonth \(236\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheWeek \(237\)](#), [MilliSecondOfDay \(235\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMinute \(235\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheSecond \(236\)](#), [MinuteOfTheHour \(239\)](#), [SecondOfTheHour \(256\)](#)

### 9.4.74 MilliSecondOfTheMinute

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the minute

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Minute (HH:MM:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `SecondOfTheMinute` (257) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (236), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (237), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` (236), `SecondOfTheMinute` (257)

### 9.4.75 MilliSecondOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (271) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (271), `DayOfTheMonth` (204), `HourOfTheMonth` (220), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (240), `SecondOfTheMonth` (257), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (236)

### 9.4.76 MilliSecondOfTheSecond

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the second

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the second (HH:MM:SS.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:SS.000 will return 0.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (236), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (237), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (235), `SecondOfTheMinute` (257)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** Example46;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondOfTheSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Second : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheSecond(N));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.77 MilliSecondOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Week (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the Week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (205) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (236), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (235), `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` (236), `DayOfTheWeek` (205), `HourOfTheWeek` (220), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (240), `SecondOfTheWeek` (257)

### 9.4.78 MilliSecondOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheYear` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (272) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (272), `DayOfTheYear` (205), `HourOfTheYear` (221), `MinuteOfTheYear` (241), `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237)

### 9.4.79 MilliSecondsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole milliseconds between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondsBetween` returns the number of whole milliseconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means a fractional part of a millisecond is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (284), `MonthsBetween` (243), `WeeksBetween` (273), `DaysBetween` (206), `HoursBetween` (221), `MinutesBetween` (241), `SecondsBetween` (258)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondsBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

---

```

begin
  Write( 'Number of milliseconds between ');
  Write( TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', MilliSecondsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1:=Now;
  D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.80 MilliSecondSpan

Synopsis: Calculate the approximate number of milliseconds between two DateTime values.

Declaration: `function MilliSecondSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondSpan` returns the number of milliseconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. Since millisecond is the smallest fraction of a `TDateTime` indication, the returned number will always be an integer value.

See also: [YearSpan \(285\)](#), [MonthSpan \(244\)](#), [WeekSpan \(275\)](#), [DaySpan \(209\)](#), [HourSpan \(222\)](#), [MinuteSpan \(242\)](#), [SecondSpan \(259\)](#), [MilliSecondsBetween \(237\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70`;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondSpan function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime)`;

```

begin
  Write( 'Number of milliseconds between ');
  Write( TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', MilliSecondSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

```

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

**Begin**

---

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.81 MinuteOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the minute part from a `DateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOf` returns the minute of the hour part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see [YearOf \(283\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(283\)](#), [WeekOf \(271\)](#), [MonthOf \(243\)](#), [DayOf \(204\)](#), [HourOf \(219\)](#), [SecondOf \(256\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(235\)](#)

### 9.4.82 MinuteOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the day

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOfDay` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the [HourOfDay \(219\)](#) function.

See also: [MinuteOfTheYear \(241\)](#), [MinuteOfTheMonth \(240\)](#), [MinuteOfTheWeek \(240\)](#), [MinuteOfTheHour \(239\)](#), [HourOfDay \(219\)](#), [SecondOfDay \(256\)](#), [MilliSecondOfDay \(235\)](#)

### 9.4.83 MinuteOfTheHour

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the hour

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheHour` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:59 will return 0.

See also: [MinuteOfTheYear \(241\)](#), [MinuteOfTheMonth \(240\)](#), [MinuteOfTheWeek \(240\)](#), [MinuteOfDay \(239\)](#), [SecondOfTheHour \(256\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheHour \(235\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex44.pp

**Program** Example44;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteOfTheHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Minute of the Hour : ', MinuteOfTheHour(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Hour : ', SecondOfTheHour(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Hour : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheHour(N));

**End.**

#### 9.4.84 MinuteOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of minutes elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** function MinuteOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteOfTheMonth returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the WeekOfTheMonth (271) function.

See also: WeekOfTheMonth (271), DayOfTheMonth (204), HourOfTheMonth (220), MinuteOfTheMonth (240), SecondOfTheMonth (257), MilliSecondOfTheMonth (236)

#### 9.4.85 MinuteOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** function MinuteOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteOfTheWeek returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the DayOfTheWeek (205) function.

See also: MinuteOfTheYear (241), MinuteOfTheMonth (240), MinuteOfTheDay (239), MinuteOfTheHour (239), DayOfTheWeek (205), HourOfTheWeek (220), SecondOfTheWeek (257), MilliSecondOfTheWeek (237)

### 9.4.86 MinuteOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the year

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheYear` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (272) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (272), `DayOfTheYear` (205), `HourOfTheYear` (221), `MinuteOfTheYear` (241), `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237)

### 9.4.87 MinutesBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole minutes between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MinutesBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinutesBetween` returns the number of whole minutes between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a minute (seconds, milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (284), `MonthsBetween` (243), `WeeksBetween` (273), `DaysBetween` (206), `HoursBetween` (221), `SecondsBetween` (258), `MillisecondsBetween` (237)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinutesBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of minutes between ');  
  Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));  
  WriteLn(' : ', MinutesBetween(ANow, AThen));  
**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;  
  D2:=D1-(59\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1, D2);  
  D2:=D1-(61\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1, D2);  
  D2:=D1-(122\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1, D2);  
  D2:=D1-(306\*OneSecond);

```

    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.88 MinuteSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of minutes between two DateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function MinuteSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteSpan returns the number of minutes between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a minute.

**See also:** YearSpan (285), MonthSpan (244), WeekSpan (275), DaySpan (209), HourSpan (222), SecondSpan (259), MilliSecondSpan (238), MinutesBetween (241)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex68.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

    Write('Number of minutes between ');
    Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
    WriteLn(' : ', MinuteSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

D1,D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

    D1:=Now;
    D2:=D1-(59*OneSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(61*OneSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(122*OneSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(306*OneSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);

```

**End.**

---

### 9.4.89 ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a modified Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Not yet implemented.

**Errors:** Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

**See also:** [DateTimeToJulianDate \(203\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(234\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(269\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(204\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(269\)](#)

### 9.4.90 MonthOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the month from a given date.

**Declaration:** `function MonthOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MonthOf` returns the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 12.

For an example, see [YearOf \(283\)](#)

**See also:** [YearOf \(283\)](#), [DayOf \(204\)](#), [WeekOf \(271\)](#), [HourOf \(219\)](#), [MinuteOf \(239\)](#), [SecondOf \(256\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(235\)](#)

### 9.4.91 MonthOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extract the month of a `DateTime` indication.

**Declaration:** `function MonthOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MonthOfTheYear` extracts the month part of `AValue` and returns it. It is an alias for [MonthOf \(243\)](#), and is provided for completeness only, corresponding to the other `PartOfTheYear` functions.

For an example, see the [WeekOfTheYear \(272\)](#) function.

**See also:** [MonthOf \(243\)](#), [WeekOfTheYear \(272\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(205\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(221\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(241\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(258\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(237\)](#)

### 9.4.92 MonthsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole months between two `DateTime` values

**Declaration:** `function MonthsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MonthsBetween` returns the number of whole months between `ANow` and `AThen`. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 30.4375 per month (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a month is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween \(284\)](#), [WeeksBetween \(273\)](#), [DaysBetween \(206\)](#), [HoursBetween \(221\)](#), [MinutesBetween \(241\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(258\)](#), [MilliSecondsBetween \(237\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex56.pp

**Program** Example56 ;

```
{ This program demonstrates the MonthsBetween function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Procedure** Test (ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

```
begin
  Write('Number of months between ');
  Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn(' : ', MonthsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

```
Var
    D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

```

Begin
  D1 := Today ;
  D2 := Today - 364 ;
  Test (D1, D2) ;
  D2 := Today - 365 ;
  Test (D1, D2) ;
  D2 := Today - 366 ;
  Test (D1, D2) ;
  D2 := Today - 390 ;
  Test (D1, D2) ;
  D2 := Today - 368 ;
  Test (D1, D2) ;
  D2 := Today - 1000 ;
  Test (D1, D2) ;
End.

```

### 9.4.93 MonthSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of months between two `DateTime` values.

```
Declaration: function MonthSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime)
                        : Double
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** MonthSpan returns the number of month between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a month. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 30.4375 per month (average over 4 years).

See also: [YearSpan \(285\)](#), [WeekSpan \(275\)](#), [DaySpan \(209\)](#), [HourSpan \(222\)](#), [MinuteSpan \(242\)](#), [SecondSpan \(259\)](#), [MilliSecondSpan \(238\)](#), [MonthsBetween \(243\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex64.pp

---

**Program** Example64;

*{ This program demonstrates the MonthSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of months between ');

**Write**( **DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));

**WriteLn**( ' : ', MonthSpan(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Today;

    D2 := Today - 364;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 365;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 366;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 390;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 368;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 1000;

    Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

#### 9.4.94 NthDayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate which occurrence of weekday in the month a given day represents

**Declaration:** `function NthDayOfWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NthDayOfWeek` returns the occurrence of the weekday of `AValue` in the month. This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month (e.g. the third saturday of the month).

**See also:** `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (213), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1224), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (212), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (214), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (268)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex104.pp

---

**Program** Example104;

*{ This program demonstrates the NthDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**Write**( 'Today is the ', NthDayOfWeek(Today), '-th ');

```

WriteIn(formatdateTime( 'dddd ',Today), ' of the month. ');
End.

```

---

### 9.4.95 PreviousDayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Given a day of the week, return the previous day of the week.

**Declaration:** `function PreviousDayOfWeek(DayOfWeek: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PreviousDayOfWeek` returns the previous day of the week. If the current day is the first day of the week (1) then the last day will be returned (7).

**Remark:** Note that the days of the week are in ISO notation, i.e. 1-based.

See also: [Yesterday \(286\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the PreviousDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

D : Word;

**Begin**

For D:=1 to 7 do

WriteIn('Previous day of ',D,' is : ',PreviousDayOfWeek(D));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.96 RecodeDate

**Synopsis:** Replace date part of a `TDateTime` value with another date.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeDate(const AValue: TDateTime;const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word;const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeDate` replaces the date part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`. All other parts (the time part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` values is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(252\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(250\)](#), [RecodeDay \(248\)](#), [RecodeHour \(248\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(250\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(251\)](#), [RecodeDate \(246\)](#), [RecodeTime \(252\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(247\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex94.pp`

---

**Program** Example94;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, RecodeDate(**Now**, 2001, 1, 1));

**WriteLn**('This moment on the first of the millenium : ', S);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.97 RecodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Replace selected parts of a TDateTime value with other values

**Declaration:** function RecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word;  
const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** RecodeDateTime replaces selected parts of the timestamp AValue with the date/time values specified in AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond. If any of these values equals the pre-defined constant RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs (199), then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the values AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond, AMilliSecond is not within a valid range (RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs excepted) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

**See also:** RecodeYear (252), RecodeMonth (250), RecodeDay (248), RecodeHour (248), RecodeMinute (250), RecodeSecond (251), RecodeMilliSecond (249), RecodeDate (246), RecodeTime (252), TryRecodeDateTime (270)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex96.pp

---

**Program** Example96;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```
D:=Now;
D:=RecodeDateTime(D,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0);
S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,D);
WriteLn('This moment in february 2000 : ',S);
End.
```

---

### 9.4.98 RecodeDay

Synopsis: Replace day part of a TDateTime value with another day.

Declaration: `function RecodeDay(const AValue: TDateTime;const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeDay replaces the Day part of the timestamp AValue with ADay. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the ADay value is not within a valid range (1 till the number of days in the month) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear (252), RecodeMonth (250), RecodeHour (248), RecodeMinute (250), RecodeSecond (251), RecodeMilliSecond (249), RecodeDate (246), RecodeTime (252), RecodeDateTime (247)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex89.pp

---

**Program** Example89;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

```
S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeDay(Now,1));
WriteLn('This moment on the first of the month : ',S);
End.
```

---

### 9.4.99 RecodeHour

Synopsis: Replace hours part of a TDateTime value with another hour.

Declaration: `function RecodeHour(const AValue: TDateTime;const AHour: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeHour replaces the Hour part of the timestamp AValue with AHour. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the AHour value is not within a valid range (0..23) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(252\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(250\)](#), [RecodeDay \(248\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(250\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(251\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(249\)](#), [RecodeDate \(246\)](#), [RecodeTime \(252\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(247\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex90.pp

---

**Program** Example90;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, RecodeHour(**Now**, 0));

**WriteIn**('Today, in the first hour : ', S);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.100 RecodeMilliSecond

**Synopsis:** Replace milliseconds part of a TDateTime value with another millisecond.

**Declaration:** function RecodeMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** RecodeMilliSecond replaces the millisecond part of the timestamp AValue with AMilliSecond. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the AMilliSecond value is not within a valid range (0..999) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(252\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(250\)](#), [RecodeDay \(248\)](#), [RecodeHour \(248\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(250\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(251\)](#), [RecodeDate \(246\)](#), [RecodeTime \(252\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(247\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex93.pp

---

**Program** Example93;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMilliSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, RecodeMilliSecond(**Now**, 0));

**WriteIn**('This moment, milliseconds stripped : ', S);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.101 RecodeMinute

**Synopsis:** Replace minutse part of a TDateTime value with another minute.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMinute(const AValue: TDateTime;const AMinute: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMinute` replaces the Minute part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMinute`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMinute` value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** [RecodeYear \(252\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(250\)](#), [RecodeDay \(248\)](#), [RecodeHour \(248\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(251\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(249\)](#), [RecodeDate \(246\)](#), [RecodeTime \(252\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(247\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex91.pp`

---

**Program** Example91 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss' ;

**Var**

    S : AnsiString ;

**Begin**

    S:=**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,RecodeMinute(**Now**,0));

**WriteIn**('This moment in the first minute of the hour: ',S);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.102 RecodeMonth

**Synopsis:** Replace month part of a TDateTime value with another month.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMonth(const AValue: TDateTime;const AMonth: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMonth` replaces the Month part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMonth`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMonth` value is not within a valid range (1..12) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** [RecodeYear \(252\)](#), [RecodeDay \(248\)](#), [RecodeHour \(248\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(250\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(251\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(249\)](#), [RecodeDate \(246\)](#), [RecodeTime \(252\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(247\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex88.pp`



### 9.4.104 RecodeTime

**Synopsis:** Replace time part of a `TDateTime` value with another time.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeTime(const AValue: TDateTime;const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeTime` replaces the time part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. All other parts (the date part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the values `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (252), `RecodeMonth` (250), `RecodeDay` (248), `RecodeHour` (248), `RecodeMinute` (250), `RecodeSecond` (251), `RecodeMilliSecond` (249), `RecodeDate` (246), `RecodeDateTime` (247)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex95.pp`

---

**Program** Example95;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

    S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, **RecodeTime**(**Now**, 8, 0, 0, 0));

**WriteIn**( 'Today, 8 AM : ', S);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.105 RecodeYear

**Synopsis:** Replace year part of a `TDateTime` value with another year.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeYear(const AValue: TDateTime;const AYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeYear` replaces the year part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AYear`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AYear` value is not within a valid range (1..9999) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeMonth` (250), `RecodeDay` (248), `RecodeHour` (248), `RecodeMinute` (250), `RecodeSecond` (251), `RecodeMilliSecond` (249), `RecodeDate` (246), `RecodeTime` (252), `RecodeDateTime` (247)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex87.pp`

---

```

Program Example87;

{ This program demonstrates the RecodeYear function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeYear(Now, 1999));
  WriteLn('This moment in 1999 : ', S);
End.

```

---

#### 9.4.106 SameDate

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date part.

**Declaration:** function SameDate(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SameDate compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareDate ([199](#)) returns zero.

See also: CompareDateTime ([200](#)), CompareDate ([199](#)), CompareTime ([201](#)), SameDateTime ([254](#)), SameTime ([255](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex102.pp

---

```

Program Example102;

{ This program demonstrates the SameDate function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

Procedure Test(D1, D2 : TDateTime);

begin
  Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt, D1), ' is the same date as ');
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, D2), ' : ', SameDate(D1, D2));
end;

Var
  D, N : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Today;
  N:=Now;

```

---

```

Test(D,D);
Test(N,N);
Test(N+1,N);
Test(N-1,N);
Test(N+OneSecond,N);
Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.107 SameDateTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date and time parts.

**Declaration:** `function SameDateTime(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SameDateTime compares the date/time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareDateTime (200) returns zero.

See also: CompareDateTime (200), CompareDate (199), CompareTime (201), SameDate (253), SameTime (255)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1),' is the same datetime as ');

WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2),' : ',SameDateTime(D1,D2));

**end;**

**Var**

D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D:=Today;

N:=Now;

Test(D,D);

Test(N,N);

Test(N+1,N);

Test(N-1,N);

Test(N+OneSecond,N);

Test(N-OneSecond,N);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.108 SameTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether two `TDateTime` values have the same time part.

**Declaration:** `function SameTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SameTime` compares the time parts of two timestamps `A` and `B` and returns `True` if they are equal, `False` if they are not.

The function simply checks whether `CompareTime` (201) returns zero.

**See also:** `CompareDateTime` (200), `CompareDate` (199), `CompareTime` (201), `SameDateTime` (254), `SameDate` (253)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex103.pp`

---

**Program** `Example102`;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';`

**Procedure** `Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);`

**begin**

`Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is the same time as ');`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameTime(D1,D2));`

**end;**

**Var**

`D,N : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D:=Today;`

`N:=Now;`

`Test(D,D);`

`Test(N,N);`

`Test(N+1,N);`

`Test(N-1,N);`

`Test(N+OneSecond,N);`

`Test(N-OneSecond,N);`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.109 ScanDateTime

**Synopsis:** Scans a string for a `DateTime` pattern and returns the date/time

**Declaration:** `function ScanDateTime(const Pattern: String; const s: String;  
const fmt: TFormatSettings; startpos: Integer)  
: tdatetime; Overload`  
`function ScanDateTime(const Pattern: String; const s: String;  
startpos: Integer) : tdatetime; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ScanDateTime` scans string `S` for the date/time pattern `Pattern`, starting at position `StartPos` (default 1). Optionally, the format settings `fmt` can be specified.

In effect, this function does the opposite of what `FormatDateTime` (1260) does. The `Pattern` variable must contain a valid date/time pattern: note that not all possible `formatdatetime` patterns can be recognized, e.g., `hn` cannot be detected properly.

**Errors:** In case of an error, a `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.FormatDateTime` (1260)

### 9.4.110 SecondOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the second part from a `DateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOf` returns the second of the minute part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see `YearOf` (283)

See also: `YearOf` (283), `WeekOf` (271), `MonthOf` (243), `DayOf` (204), `HourOf` (219), `MinuteOf` (239), `MilliSecondOf` (235)

### 9.4.111 SecondOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the day

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfDay` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` (219) function.

See also: `SecondOfYear` (258), `SecondOfMonth` (257), `SecondOfTheWeek` (257), `SecondOfTheHour` (256), `SecondOfTheMinute` (257), `HourOfDay` (219), `MinuteOfDay` (239), `MilliSecondOfDay` (235)

### 9.4.112 SecondOfTheHour

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the hour

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheHour` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `MinuteOfTheHour` (239) function.

See also: `SecondOfYear` (258), `SecondOfMonth` (257), `SecondOfTheWeek` (257), `SecondOfDay` (256), `SecondOfTheMinute` (257), `MinuteOfTheHour` (239), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (235)

### 9.4.113 SecondOfTheMinute

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the minute

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the minute (HH:MM:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.999 return 0.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `SecondOfTheMonth` (257), `SecondOfTheWeek` (257), `SecondOfTheDay` (256), `SecondOfTheHour` (256), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (235)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** Example45;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondOfTheMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Second of the Minute : ',SecondOfTheMinute(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Minute : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheMinute(N));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.114 SecondOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of seconds elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (271) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (271), `DayOfTheMonth` (204), `HourOfTheMonth` (220), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (240), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (236)

### 9.4.115 SecondOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (205) function.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `SecondOfTheMonth` (257), `SecondOfTheDay` (256), `SecondOfTheHour` (256), `SecondOfTheMinute` (257), `DayOfTheWeek` (205), `HourOfTheWeek` (220), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (240), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (237)

### 9.4.116 `SecondOfTheYear`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheYear` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.999 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (272) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (272), `DayOfTheYear` (205), `HourOfTheYear` (221), `MinuteOfTheYear` (241), `SecondOfTheYear` (258), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (237)

### 9.4.117 `SecondsBetween`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole seconds between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function SecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondsBetween` returns the number of whole seconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a second (milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (284), `MonthsBetween` (243), `WeeksBetween` (273), `DaysBetween` (206), `HoursBetween` (221), `MinutesBetween` (241), `MilliSecondsBetween` (237)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example61` ;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondsBetween function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils` ;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime)` ;

**begin**

`Write('Number of seconds between ');`  
`Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));`  
`WriteLn(' : ', SecondsBetween(ANow, AThen));`  
**end** ;

**Var**

```
D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(999*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1001*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2001*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5001*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
```

**End.**

---

### 9.4.118 SecondSpan

Synopsis: Calculate the approximate number of seconds between two DateTime values.

Declaration: `function SecondSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `SecondSpan` returns the number of seconds between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a second.

See also: `YearSpan` (285), `MonthSpan` (244), `WeekSpan` (275), `DaySpan` (209), `HourSpan` (222), `MinuteSpan` (242), `MilliSecondSpan` (238), `SecondsBetween` (258)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex69.pp

---

**Program** Example69;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```
Write('Number of seconds between ');
Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', SecondSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

**Var**

```
D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(999*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1001*OneMilliSecond);
```

```

Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2001*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5001*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.119 StartOfDay

**Synopsis:** Return the start of a day as a DateTime value, given a day indication

**Declaration:**

```

function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                    const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload
function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word)
                    : TDateTime; Overload

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfDay returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of the day given by AYear, AMonth, ADay.

The day may also be indicated with a AYear, ADayOfYear pair.

See also: StartOfDay (262), StartOfTheWeek (263), StartOfAWeek (261), StartOfAMonth (261), StartOfTheMonth (263), EndOfTheWeek (218), EndOfAWeek (216), EndOfTheYear (219), EndOfAYear (216), EndOfTheMonth (217), EndOfAMonth (215), EndOfTheDay (217), EndOfDay (214)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';

**Var**

Y,M,D : Word;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf(Today);

M:=MonthOf(Today);

D:=DayOf(Today);

WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfDay(Y,M,D)));

DecodeDateDay(Today,Y,D);

WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfDay(Y,D)));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.120 StartOfAMonth

Synopsis: Return first date of month, given a year/month pair.

Declaration: `function StartOfAMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.

See also: `StartOfTheMonth` (263), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfTheWeek` (263)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** Example30;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = ' "First day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy ';

**Var**

    Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

    Y:=YearOf(Today);

    M:=MonthOf(Today);

    WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAMonth(Y,M)));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.121 StartOfAWeek

Synopsis: Return a day of the week, given a year, week and day in the week.

Declaration: `function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
                                  const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime`  
`function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word)  
                      : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAWeek` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the indicated day of the week indicated by the `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek` values.

The default value for `ADayOfWeek` is 1.

See also: `StartOfTheWeek` (263), `EndOfTheWeek` (218), `EndOfAWeek` (216), `StartOfAMonth` (261), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** Example34;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

```
Fmt = '"First day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
Fmt2 = '"Second day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
```

**Var**

```
Y,W : Word;
```

**Begin**

```
Y:=YearOf(Today);
W:=WeekOf(Today);
WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAWeek(Y,W)));
WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt2, StartOfAWeek(Y,W,2)));
```

```
End.
```

---

**9.4.122 StartOfAYear**

Synopsis: Return the first day of a given year.

Declaration: `function StartOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAYear` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the year `AYear` (January 1).

See also: `StartOfTheYear` (264), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfA-Month` (215), `StartOfAWeek` (261), `StartOfTheWeek` (263)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** Example26;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAYear function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

```
Fmt = '"First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy';
```

**Begin**

```
WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAYear(YearOf(Today))));
```

```
End.
```

---

**9.4.123 StartOfTheDay**

Synopsis: Calculate the start of the day as a `DateTime` value, given a moment in the day.

Declaration: `function StartOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfTheDay` extracts the date part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of this day.

See also: [StartOfADay \(260\)](#), [StartOfTheWeek \(263\)](#), [StartOfAWeek \(261\)](#), [StartOfAMonth \(261\)](#), [StartOfTheMonth \(263\)](#), [EndOfTheWeek \(218\)](#), [EndOfAWeek \(216\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(219\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(216\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(217\)](#), [EndOfAMonth \(215\)](#), [EndOftheDay \(217\)](#), [EndOfADay \(214\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheDay (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 9.4.124 StartOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Calculate the first day of the month, given a date in that month.

**Declaration:** function StartOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** StartOfTheMonth extracts the year and month parts of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the StartOfAMonth ([261](#)) function.

See also: [StartOfAMonth \(261\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(219\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(216\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(217\)](#), [EndOfAMonth \(215\)](#), [StartOfAWeek \(261\)](#), [StartOfTheWeek \(263\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'First day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheMonth (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 9.4.125 StartOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Return the first day of the week, given a date.

**Declaration:** function StartOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StartOfTheWeek` extracts the year and week parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that week as the `StartOfAWeek` (261) function.

See also: `StartOfAWeek` (261), `EndOfTheWeek` (218), `EndOfAWeek` (216), `StartOfAMonth` (261), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216), `EndOfTheMonth` (217), `EndOfAMonth` (215)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** `Example32`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "First day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheWeek (Today)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.126 StartOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Return the first day of the year, given a date in this year.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `StartOfTheYear` extracts the year part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year (January 1), as the `StartOfAYear` (262) function.

See also: `StartOfAYear` (262), `EndOfTheYear` (219), `EndOfAYear` (216)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** `Example24`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheYear (Today)));`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.127 TimeOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the time part from a `DateTime` indication.

**Declaration:** `function TimeOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `TimeOf` extracts the time part from `AValue` and returns the result.

Since the `TDateTime` is actually a double with the time part encoded in the fractional part, this operation corresponds to a call to `Frac`.

See also: `DateOf` ([202](#)), `YearOf` ([283](#)), `MonthOf` ([243](#)), `DayOf` ([204](#)), `HourOf` ([219](#)), `MinuteOf` ([239](#)), `SecondOf` ([256](#)), `MilliSecondOf` ([235](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeOf function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('Time is : ', TimeToStr(TimeOf(Now)));`  
**End.**

---

### 9.4.128 Today

**Synopsis:** Return the current date

**Declaration:** `function Today : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Today` is an alias for the `Date` ([1220](#)) function in the `sysutils` ([1174](#)) unit.

For an example, see `Yesterday` ([286](#))

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.Date` ([1220](#)), `Yesterday` ([286](#)), `Tomorrow` ([265](#))

### 9.4.129 Tomorrow

**Synopsis:** Return the next day

**Declaration:** `function Tomorrow : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Tomorrow` returns tomorrow's date. `Tomorrow` is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is `Today` ([265](#)) +1.

See also: `Today` ([265](#)), `Yesterday` ([286](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19`;

*{ This program demonstrates the Tomorrow function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime('"Today is" dd mmm yyyy', Today));`  
`WriteLn(FormatDateTime('"Tomorrow will be" dd mmm yyyy', Tomorrow));`  
**End.**

---

### 9.4.130 TryEncodeDateDay

**Synopsis:** Encode a year and day of year to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function TryEncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word;  
var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** TryEncodeDateDay encodes the values AYear and ADayOfYear to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned. False is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

**See also:** EncodeDateDay (213), EncodeDateTime (213), EncodeDateMonthWeek (213), EncodeDateWeek (214), TryEncodeDateTime (267), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (266), TryEncodeDateWeek (268)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex84.pp

---

**Program** Example84;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, DoY : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateDay(**Now**, Y, DoY);  
**If** TryEncodeDateDay(Y, DoY, TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Today is : ', DateToStr(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Wrong year/day of year indication');

**End.**

---

### 9.4.131 TryEncodeDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Encode a year, month, week of month and day of week to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word;  
var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** TryEncodeDateMonthWeek encodes the values AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth, ADayOfWeek, to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned, False if any of the arguments is not valid.

**See also:** DecodeDateMonthWeek (210), EncodeDateTime (213), EncodeDateWeek (214), EncodeDateDay (213), EncodeDateMonthWeek (213), TryEncodeDateTime (267), TryEncodeDateWeek (268), TryEncodeDateDay (266), NthDayOfWeek (245)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

Y,M,WoM,Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateMonthWeek(**Now**,Y,M,WoM,Dow);  
**If** TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(Y,M,WoM,Dow,TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Today is : ',**DateToStr**(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Invalid year/month/week/dow indication ');

**End.**

---

### 9.4.132 TryEncodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Encode a Year, Month, Day, Hour, minute, seconds, milliseconds tuple to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** function TryEncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
  const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;  
  const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;  
  const AMilliSecond: Word;  
  var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EncodeDateTime encodes the values AYearAMonth, ADay,AHour, AMinute,ASecond and AMilliSecond to a date/time value and returns this value in AValue.

If the date was encoded successfully, True is returned, False is returned if one of the arguments is not valid.

**See also:** EncodeDateTime (213), EncodeDateMonthWeek (213), EncodeDateWeek (214), EncodeDateDay (213), TryEncodeDateDay (266), TryEncodeDateWeek (268), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (266)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

Y,Mo,D,H,Mi,S,MS : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateTime(**Now**,Y,Mo,D,H,Mi,S,MS);  
**If** TryEncodeDateTime(Y,Mo,D,H,Mi,S,MS,TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Now is : ',**DateTimeToStr**(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Wrong date/time indication ');

---

End.

---

### 9.4.133 TryEncodeDateWeek

Synopsis: Encode a year, week and day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

Declaration: 

```
function TryEncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                           var AValue: TDateTime;const ADayOfWeek: Word)
                           : Boolean
function TryEncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                           var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: TryEncodeDateWeek encodes the values AYear, AWeekOfYear and ADayOfWeek to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned. False is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: EncodeDateMonthWeek (213), EncodeDateWeek (214), EncodeDateTime (213), EncodeDateDay (213), TryEncodeDateTime (267), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (266), TryEncodeDateDay (266)

Listing: ./datutex/ex82.pp

---

Program Example82;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateWeek function }*

Uses SysUtils , DateUtils ;

Var

Y,W,Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

Begin

DecodeDateWeek(**Now**,Y,W,Dow);  
**If** TryEncodeDateWeek(Y,W,TS,Dow) **then**  
    **WriteLn**('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**('Invalid date/week indication');

End.

---

### 9.4.134 TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

Synopsis: Encode a year, month, week, day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

Declaration: 

```
function TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                                   const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;
                                   const ADayOfWeek: Word;
                                   var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` encodes `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek` to a valid date stamp and returns the result in `AValue`.

`ANthDayOfWeek` is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third saturday of the month.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was succesful, `False` if any of the values is not in range.

See also: `NthDayOfWeek` (245), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (213), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1224), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (212), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (214)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex106.pp`

**Program** `Example105`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y,M,NDoW,DoW` : `Word`;

`D` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth (Date , Y,M,NDoW,DoW) ;`

**If** `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth (Y,M,NDoW,DoW,D)` **then**

**begin**

`Write (DateToStr(D), ' is the ',NDoW, '-th ');`

`WriteLn (formatdateTime( 'dddd',D), ' of the month. ');`

**end**

**else**

`WriteLn( 'Invalid year/month/NthDayOfWeek combination ');`

**End.**

### 9.4.135 TryJulianDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function TryJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;`  
`var ADateTime: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Try to convert a Julian date to a regular `TDateTime` date/time representation.

See also: `DateTimeToJulianDate` (203), `JulianDateToDateTime` (234), `DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate` (204), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` (269)

### 9.4.136 TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a modified Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;`  
`var ADateTime: TDateTime)`  
`: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(203\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(234\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(269\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(204\)](#), [ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(243\)](#)

### 9.4.137 TryRecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Replace selected parts of a `TDateTime` value with other values

Declaration: 

```
function TryRecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime;const AYear: Word;
                           const AMonth: Word;const ADay: Word;
                           const AHour: Word;const AMinute: Word;
                           const ASecond: Word;const AMilliSecond: Word;
                           var AResult: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `TryRecodeDateTime` replaces selected parts of the timestamp `AValue` with the date/time values specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. If any of these values equals the pre-defined constant `RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs (199)`, then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

The resulting date/time is returned in `AValue`.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was succesful. It returns `False` if one of the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range.

See also: [RecodeYear \(252\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(250\)](#), [RecodeDay \(248\)](#), [RecodeHour \(248\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(250\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(251\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(249\)](#), [RecodeDate \(246\)](#), [RecodeTime \(252\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(247\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex97.pp`

---

**Program** `Example97`;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryRecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

`D : TDateTime ;`

**Begin**

`If TryRecodeDateTime(Now,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0,D) then`

`begin`

`S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,D);`

`WriteLn('This moment in februari 2000 : ',S);`

`end`

`else`

`WriteLn('This moment did/does not exist in februari 2000');`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.138 UnixTimeStampToMac

**Synopsis:** Convert Unix Timestamp to a Mac Timestamp

**Declaration:** `function UnixTimeStampToMac(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnixTimeStampToMac` converts the unix epoch time in `AValue` to a valid Mac timestamp indication and returns the result.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `DateTimeToMac` (203), `MacToDateTime` (234), `MacTimeStampToUnix` (234)

### 9.4.139 UnixToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert Unix epoch time to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function UnixToDateTime(const AValue: Int64) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnixToDateTime` converts epoch time (time elapsed since 1/1/1970) to a `TDateTime` value.

**See also:** `DateTimeToUnix` (204)

### 9.4.140 WeekOf

**Synopsis:** Extract week (of the year) from a given date.

**Declaration:** `function WeekOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOf` returns the week-of-the-year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 53.

For an example, see `YearOf` (283)

**See also:** `YearOf` (283), `DayOf` (204), `MonthOf` (243), `HourOf` (219), `MinuteOf` (239), `SecondOf` (256), `MilliSecondOf` (235)

### 9.4.141 WeekOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the month (and optionally month and year) from a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload`  
`function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word;`  
`var AMonth: Word) : Word; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOfTheMonth` extracts the week of the month from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year and month as well (in `AYear`, `AMonth` respectively).

**Remark:** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year and month may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: [WeekOfTheYear \(272\)](#), [DayOfTheMonth \(204\)](#), [HourOfTheMonth \(220\)](#), [MinuteOfTheMonth \(240\)](#), [SecondOfTheMonth \(257\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMonth \(236\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex41.pp

---

**Program** Example41 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

N : TDateTime ;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn ( 'Week of the Month : ', WeekOfTheMonth(N));

WriteLn ( 'Day of the Month : ', DayOfTheMonth(N));

WriteLn ( 'Hour of the Month : ', HourOfTheMonth(N));

WriteLn ( 'Minute of the Month : ', MinuteOfTheMonth(N));

WriteLn ( 'Second of the Month : ', SecondOfTheMonth(N));

WriteLn ( 'MilliSecond of the Month : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheMonth(N));

**End.**

---

### 9.4.142 WeekOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the year (and optionally year) of a DateTime indication.

**Declaration:** function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload  
function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word) : Word  
; Overload

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WeekOfTheYear extracts the week of the year from AValue and returns it, and optionally returns the year as well. It returns the same value as WeekOf (271).

**Remark:** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: [WeekOf \(271\)](#), [MonthOfTheYear \(243\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(205\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(221\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(241\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(258\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(237\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

N : TDateTime ;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

---

```

WriteLn ( 'Month of the year      : ', MonthOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn ( 'Week of the year       : ', WeekOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn ( 'Day of the year        : ', DayOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn ( 'Hour of the year       : ', HourOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn ( 'Minute of the year     : ', MinuteOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn ( 'Second of the year    : ', SecondOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn ( 'MilliSecond of the year : ',
          MilliSecondOfTheYear(N));
End.

```

---

### 9.4.143 WeeksBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole weeks between two `DateTime` values

**Declaration:** `function WeeksBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeeksBetween` returns the number of whole weeks between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a Week is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (284), `MonthsBetween` (243), `DaysBetween` (206), `HoursBetween` (221), `MinutesBetween` (241), `SecondsBetween` (258), `MillisecondsBetween` (237)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write** ( 'Number of weeks between ' );

**Write** ( **DateToStr** (AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr** (ANow) );

**WriteLn** ( ' : ', WeeksBetween(ANow, AThen) );

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Today;

  D2 := Today - 7;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 8;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 14;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 35;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 36;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 17;

```
Test(D1,D2);
End.
```

---

### 9.4.144 WeeksInAYear

Synopsis: Return the number of weeks in a given year

Declaration: `function WeeksInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeeksInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark:** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a thursday.

See also: `WeeksInYear` (274), `DaysInYear` (208), `DaysInAYear` (207), `DaysInMonth` (208), `DaysInAMonth` (206)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

Writeln(Y, ' has ', WeeksInAYear(Y), ' weeks. ');

**End.**

---

### 9.4.145 WeeksInYear

Synopsis: return the number of weeks in the year, given a date

Declaration: `function WeeksInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeeksInYear` returns the number of weeks in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark:** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a thursday.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` (274), `DaysInYear` (208), `DaysInAYear` (207), `DaysInMonth` (208), `DaysInAMonth` (206)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex12.pp

---

```

Program Example12;

{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInYear function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Var
  Y : Word;

Begin
  For Y:=1992 to 2010 do
    WriteLn(Y, ' has ', WeeksInYear(EncodeDate(Y,2,1)), ' weeks. ');
End.

```

---

### 9.4.146 WeekSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of weeks between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function WeekSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekSpan` returns the number of weeks between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a week.

See also: `YearSpan` ([285](#)), `MonthSpan` ([244](#)), `DaySpan` ([209](#)), `HourSpan` ([222](#)), `MinuteSpan` ([242](#)), `SecondSpan` ([259](#)), `MilliSecondSpan` ([238](#)), `WeeksBetween` ([273](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex65.pp`

---

```

Program Example57;

{ This program demonstrates the WeekSpan function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Procedure Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

begin
  Write( 'Number of weeks between ');
  Write( DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', WeekSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-7;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-8;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-14;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-35;
  Test(D1,D2);

```

```

D2:=Today-36;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-17;
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.147 WithinPastDays

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of days apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastDays(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const ADays: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastDays` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ADays` days apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `DaysBetween` (206) function to calculate the difference in days, this means that fractional days do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half days apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastSeconds` (280), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example50;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastDays function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ADays : Integer);

**begin**

  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  Write(' are within ', ADays, ' days: ');

  WriteLn(WithinPastDays(ANow, AThen, ADays));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;

  D2:=Today-23/24;

  Test(D1,D2,1);

  D2:=Today-1;

  Test(D1,D2,1);

  D2:=Today-25/24;

  Test(D1,D2,1);

  D2:=Today-26/24;

  Test(D1,D2,5);

  D2:=Today-5.4;

  Test(D1,D2,5);

  D2:=Today-2.5;

  Test(D1,D2,1);

```

    Test(D1,D2,2);
    Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.148 WithinPastHours

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of hours apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastHours(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AHours: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastHours` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AHours` hours apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `HoursBetween` (221) function to calculate the difference in Hours, this means that fractional hours do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half hours apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastSeconds` (280), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** Example51 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastHours function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Procedure** Test(ANow,AThen : TDateTime; AHours : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**( **DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow));

**Write**( ' are within ',AHours, ' hours: ' );

**WriteLn**( **WithinPastHours**(ANow,AThen,AHours));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1,D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1:=**Now**;

    D2:=D1-(59\*OneMinute);

    Test(D1,D2,1);

    D2:=D1-(61\*OneMinute);

    Test(D1,D2,1);

    D2:=D1-(122\*OneMinute);

    Test(D1,D2,1);

    D2:=D1-(306\*OneMinute);

    Test(D1,D2,5);

    D2:=D1-(5.4\*OneHour);

    Test(D1,D2,5);

    D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneHour);

    Test(D1,D2,1);

    Test(D1,D2,2);

    Test(D1,D2,3);

---

End.

---

### 9.4.149 WithinPastMilliseconds

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of milliseconds apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMilliseconds(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AMilliSeconds: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastMilliseconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMilliSeconds` milliseconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `MillisecondsBetween` (237) function to calculate the difference in milliseconds, this means that fractional milliseconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half milliseconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastSeconds` (280)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** Example54;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMilliseconds function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMilliSeconds : Integer);

**begin**  
  Write( **TimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **TimeToStr**(ANow));  
  Write( ' are within ', AMilliSeconds, ' milliseconds: ');  
  WriteLn( WithinPastMilliseconds(ANow, AThen, AMilliSeconds));  
**end**;

**Var**  
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**  
  D1:=**Now**;  
  D2:=D1-(0.9\*OneMilliSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2,1);  
  D2:=D1-(1.0\*OneMilliSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2,1);  
  D2:=D1-(1.1\*OneMilliSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2,1);  
  D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneMilliSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2,1);  
  Test(D1,D2,2);  
  Test(D1,D2,3);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.150 WithinPastMinutes

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of minutes apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMinutes(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AMinutes: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastMinutes` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMinutes` minutes apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `MinutesBetween` (241) function to calculate the difference in Minutes, this means that fractional minutes do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half minutes apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastSeconds` (280), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMinutes function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMinutes : Integer);

**begin**

    Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

    Write(' are within ', AMinutes, ' Minutes: ');

    WriteLn(WithinPastMinutes(ANow, AThen, AMinutes));

**end;**

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1:=Now;

    D2:=D1-(59\*OneSecond);

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2:=D1-(61\*OneSecond);

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2:=D1-(122\*OneSecond);

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2:=D1-(306\*OneSecond);

    Test(D1, D2, 5);

    D2:=D1-(5.4\*OneMinute);

    Test(D1, D2, 5);

    D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneMinute);

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    Test(D1, D2, 2);

    Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.151 WithinPastMonths

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of months apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMonths(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AMonths: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WithinPastMonths` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMonths` months apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `MonthsBetween` (243) function to calculate the difference in Months, this means that fractional months do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half months apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastSeconds` (280), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMonths function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMonths : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AMonths, ' months: ');

**WriteLn**(WithinPastMonths(ANow, AThen, AMonths));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Today;

    D2 := Today - 364;

    Test(D1, D2, 12);

    D2 := Today - 365;

    Test(D1, D2, 12);

    D2 := Today - 366;

    Test(D1, D2, 12);

    D2 := Today - 390;

    Test(D1, D2, 12);

    D2 := Today - 368;

    Test(D1, D2, 11);

    D2 := Today - 1000;

    Test(D1, D2, 31);

    Test(D1, D2, 32);

    Test(D1, D2, 33);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.152 WithinPastSeconds

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of seconds apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastSeconds(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const ASeconds: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WithinPastSeconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ASeconds` seconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `SecondsBetween` (258) function to calculate the difference in seconds, this means that fractional seconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half seconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex53.pp`

**Program** `Example53`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastSeconds function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow,AThen : TDateTime; ASeconds : Integer);`

**begin**

`Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));`

`Write(' are within ',ASeconds,' seconds: ');`

`WriteLn(WithinPastSeconds(ANow,AThen,ASeconds));`

**end;**

**Var**

`D1,D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D1:=Now;`

`D2:=D1-(999*OneMilliSecond);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=D1-(1001*OneMilliSecond);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=D1-(2001*OneMilliSecond);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=D1-(5001*OneMilliSecond);`

`Test(D1,D2,5);`

`D2:=D1-(5.4*OneSecond);`

`Test(D1,D2,5);`

`D2:=D1-(2.5*OneSecond);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`Test(D1,D2,2);`

`Test(D1,D2,3);`

**End.**

### 9.4.153 WithinPastWeeks

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of weeks apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastWeeks(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AWeeks: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WithinPastWeeks` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AWeeks` weeks apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `WeeksBetween` (273) function to calculate the difference in Weeks, this means that fractional Weeks do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half weeks apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (282), `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastSeconds` (280), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastWeeks function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AWeeks : Integer);`

**begin**

`Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));`

`Write(' are within ', AWeeks, ' weeks: ');`

`WriteLn(WithinPastWeeks(ANow, AThen, AWeeks));`

**end**;

**Var**

`D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D1 := Today;`

`D2 := Today - 7;`

`Test(D1, D2, 1);`

`D2 := Today - 8;`

`Test(D1, D2, 1);`

`D2 := Today - 14;`

`Test(D1, D2, 1);`

`D2 := Today - 35;`

`Test(D1, D2, 5);`

`D2 := Today - 36;`

`Test(D1, D2, 5);`

`D2 := Today - 17;`

`Test(D1, D2, 1);`

`Test(D1, D2, 2);`

`Test(D1, D2, 3);`

**End.**

---

### 9.4.154 WithinPastYears

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of years apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastYears(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AYears: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `WithinPastYears` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AYears` years apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `YearsBetween` (284) function to calculate the difference in years, this means that fractional years do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half years apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastMonths` (279), `WithinPastWeeks` (281), `WithinPastDays` (276), `WithinPastHours` (277), `WithinPastMinutes` (279), `WithinPastSeconds` (280), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (278)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastYears function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AYears : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AYears, ' years: ');

**WriteLn**(**WithinPastYears**(ANow, AThen, AYears));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Today;

    D2 := Today - 364;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 365;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 366;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 390;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 368;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 1000;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    Test(D1, D2, 2);

    Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

---

### 9.4.155 YearOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the year from a given date.

**Declaration:** `function YearOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `YearOf` returns the year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 9999.

See also: `MonthOf` (243), `DayOf` (204), `WeekOf` (271), `HourOf` (219), `MinuteOf` (239), `SecondOf` (256), `MilliSecondOf` (235)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex23.pp

**Program** Example23;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearOf function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D:=Now;

WriteLn('Year : ', YearOf(D));

WriteLn('Month : ', MonthOf(D));

WriteLn('Day : ', DayOf(D));

WriteLn('Week : ', WeekOf(D));

WriteLn('Hour : ', HourOf(D));

WriteLn('Minute : ', MinuteOf(D));

WriteLn('Second : ', SecondOf(D));

WriteLn('MilliSecond : ', MilliSecondOf(D));

**End.**

### 9.4.156 YearsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole years between two DateTime values

**Declaration:** function YearsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** YearsBetween returns the number of whole years between ANow and AThen. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a year is dropped.

See also: MonthsBetween (243), WeeksBetween (273), DaysBetween (206), HoursBetween (221), MinutesBetween (241), SecondsBetween (258), MilliSecondsBetween (237), YearSpan (285)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex55.pp

**Program** Example55;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearsBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

Write('Number of years between ');

Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));

WriteLn(' : ', YearsBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```
D1:=Today;
D2:=Today-364;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-365;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-366;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-390;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-368;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-1000;
Test(D1,D2);
```

**End.**

---

### 9.4.157 YearSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of years between two DateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function YearSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** YearSpan returns the number of years between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a year. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years).

See also: MonthSpan ([244](#)), WeekSpan ([275](#)), DaySpan ([209](#)), HourSpan ([222](#)), MinuteSpan ([242](#)), SecondSpan ([259](#)), MilliSecondSpan ([238](#)), YearsBetween ([284](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```
Write('Number of years between ');
Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', YearSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

**Var**

```
D1, D2 : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
D1:=Today;
D2:=Today-364;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-365;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-366;
```

---

```

Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-390;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-368;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-1000;
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

### 9.4.158 Yesterday

Synopsis: Return the previous day.

Declaration: `function Yesterday : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Yesterday` returns yesterday's date. Yesterday is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is `Today` (265) -1.

See also: `Today` (265), `Tomorrow` (265)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ This program demonstrates the Yesterday function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

```

  WriteLn(FormatDateTime('"Today is " dd mmm yyyy ',Today));
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime('"Yesterday was " dd mmm yyyy ',Yesterday));
End.

```

---

## Chapter 10

# Reference for unit 'Dos'

### 10.1 System information

Functions for retrieving and setting general system information such as date and time.

Table 10.1:

Name	Description
DosVersion (296)	Get OS version
GetCBreak (302)	Get setting of control-break handling flag
GetDate (302)	Get system date
GetIntVec (305)	Get interrupt vector status
GetTime (306)	Get system time
GetVerify (307)	Get verify flag
Intr (307)	Execute an interrupt
Keep (307)	Keep process in memory and exit
MSDos (308)	Execute MS-dos function call
PackTime (308)	Pack time for file time
SetCBreak (309)	Set control-break handling flag
SetDate (309)	Set system date
SetIntVec (310)	Set interrupt vectors
SetTime (311)	Set system time
SetVerify (311)	Set verify flag
SwapVectors (311)	Swap interrupt vectors
UnPackTime (312)	Unpack file time

### 10.2 Process handling

Functions to handle process information and starting new processes.

### 10.3 Directory and disk handling

Routines to handle disk information.

Table 10.2:

Name	Description
DosExitCode (296)	Exit code of last executed program
EnvCount (297)	Return number of environment variables
EnvStr (298)	Return environment string pair
Exec (298)	Execute program
GetEnv (303)	Return specified environment string

Table 10.3:

Name	Description
AddDisk (294)	Add disk to list of disks (UNIX only)
DiskFree (294)	Return size of free disk space
DiskSize (295)	Return total disk size

## 10.4 File handling

Routines to handle files on disk.

Table 10.4:

Name	Description
FExpand (298)	Expand filename to full path
FindClose (299)	Close finfirst/findnext session
FindFirst (299)	Start find of file
FindNext (300)	Find next file
FSearch (300)	Search for file in a path
FSplit (301)	Split filename in parts
GetFAttr (303)	Return file attributes
GetFTime (304)	Return file time
GetLongName (305)	Convert short filename to long filename (DOS only)
GetShortName (306)	Convert long filename to short filename (DOS only)
SetFAttr (309)	Set file attributes
SetFTime (310)	Set file time

## 10.5 File open mode constants.

These constants are used in the `Mode` field of the `TextRec` record. Gives information on the file-mode of the text I/O. For their definitions consult the following table:

## 10.6 File attributes

The File Attribute constants are used in `FindFirst` (299), `FindNext` (300) to determine what type of special file to search for in addition to normal files. These flags are also used in the `SetFAttr` (309) and

Table 10.5: Possible mode constants

Constant	Description	Value
fmclosed	File is closed	\$D7B0
fminput	File is read only	\$D7B1
fmoutput	File is write only	\$D7B2
fminout	File is read and write	\$D7B3

GetFAttr (303) routines to set and retrieve attributes of files. For their definitions consult fileattributes (288).

Table 10.6: Possible file attributes

Constant	Description	Value
readonly	Read-Only file attribute	\$01
hidden	Hidden file attribute	\$02
sysfile	System file attribute	\$04
volumeid	Volumd ID file attribute	\$08
directory	Directory file attribute	\$10
archive	Archive file attribute	\$20
anyfile	Match any file attribute	\$3F

## 10.7 Used units

Table 10.7: Used units by unit 'Dos'

Name	Page
baseunix	<a href="#">287</a>

## 10.8 Overview

The DOS unit gives access to some operating system calls related to files, the file system, date and time. Except for the PalmOS target, this unit is available to all supported platforms.

The unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl. It was ported to linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt. The Amiga version was ported by Nils Sjöholm.

Under non-DOS systems, some of the functionality is lost, as it is either impossible or meaningless to implement it. Other than that, the functionality is the same for all operating systems.

Because the DOS unit is a Turbo Pascal compatibility unit, it is no longer actively developed: the interface is frozen and it is maintained only for the purpose of porting Turbo Pascal programs. For new development, it is recommended to use the sysutils ([1174](#)) unit instead.

## 10.9 Constants, types and variables

### 10.9.1 Constants

`anyfile = $3F`

Match any file attribute

`archive = $20`

Archive file attribute

`directory = $10`

Directory file attribute

`fauxiliary = $0010`

CPU auxiliary flag. Not used.

`fcarry = $0001`

CPU carry flag. Not used.

`FileNameLen = 255`

Maximum length of a filename

`filerecnamelength = 255`

Maximum length of FileName part in FileRec ([292](#))

`fmclosed = $D7B0`

File is closed

`fminout = $D7B3`

File is read and write

`fminput = $D7B1`

File is read only

`fmoutput = $D7B2`

File is write only

`foverflow = $0800`

CPU overflow flag. Not used.

`fparity = $0004`

CPU parity flag. Not used.

`fsign = $0080`

CPU sign flag. Not used.

`fzero = $0040`

CPU zero flag. Not used.

`hidden = $02`

Hidden file attribute

`readonly = $01`

Read-Only file attribute

`sysfile = $04`

System file attribute

`TextRecBufSize = 256`

Size of default buffer in TextRec ([293](#))

`TextRecNameLength = 256`

Maximum length of filename in TextRec ([293](#))

`volumeid = $08`

Volume ID file attribute

## 10.9.2 Types

`ComStr =`

Command-line string type

`DateTime = packed record`

`Year : Word;`

`Month : Word;`

`Day : Word;`

`Hour : Word;`

`Min : Word;`

`Sec : Word;`

`end`

The `DateTime` type is used in `PackTime` (308) and `UnPackTime` (312) for setting/reading file times with `GetFTime` (304) and `SetFTime` (310).

`DirStr =`

Full directory string type.

`ExtStr =`

Filename extension string type.

```
FileRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  RecSize : SizeInt;
  _private : Array[1..3*SizeOf(SizeInt)+5*SizeOf(pointer)] of Byte;
  UserData : Array[1..32] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..filerecnamelength] of Char;
end
```

`FileRec` is used for internal representation of typed and untyped files.

`NameStr =`

Fill filename string type.

`PathStr =`

Full File path string type.

```
Registers = packed record
end
```

This structure is only defined on a i386 compatible 32-bit platform, and is not used anywhere: it is defined for Turbo Pascal backwards compatibility only.

```
SearchRec = packed record
  SearchPos : TOff;
  SearchNum : LongInt;
  DirPtr : Pointer;
  SearchType : Byte;
  SearchAttr : Byte;
  Mode : Word;
  Fill : Array[1..1] of Byte;
  Attr : Byte;
  Time : LongInt;
  Size : LongInt;
  Reserved : Word;
  Name : String;
  SearchSpec : String;
  NamePos : Word;
end
```

`SearchRec` is filled by the `FindFirst` (299) call and can be used in subsequent `FindNext` (300) calls to search for files. The structure of this record depends on the platform. Only the following fields are present on all platforms:

**Attr** File attributes.

**Time** File modification time.

**Size** File size

**Name** File name (name part only, no path)

**Mode** File access mode (linux only)

`TextBuf = Array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of Char`

Type for default buffer in `TextRec` (293)

```
TextRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  bufsize : SizeInt;
  _private : SizeInt;
  bufpos : SizeInt;
  bufend : SizeInt;
  bufptr : ^TextBuf;
  openfunc : pointer;
  inoutfunc : pointer;
  flushfunc : pointer;
  closefunc : pointer;
  UserData : Array[1..32] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of Char;
  LineEnd : TLineEndStr;
  buffer : TextBuf;
end
```

`TextRec` describes the internal working of a Text file.

Remark that this is not binary compatible with the Turbo Pascal definition of `TextRec`, since the sizes of the different fields are different.

`TLineEndStr =`

`TLineEndStr` is used in the `TextRec` (293) record to indicate the end-of-line sequence for a text file.

### 10.9.3 Variables

`DosError : Integer`

The `DosError` variable is used by the procedures in the `dos` unit to report errors. It can have the following values :

Other values are possible, but are not documented.

Table 10.8: Dos error codes

Value	Meaning
2	File not found.
3	path not found.
5	Access denied.
6	Invalid handle.
8	Not enough memory.
10	Invalid environment.
11	Invalid format.
18	No more files.

## 10.10 Procedures and functions

### 10.10.1 AddDisk

**Synopsis:** Add disk definition to list if drives (Unix only)

**Declaration:** `function AddDisk(const path: String) : Byte`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AddDisk` adds a filename `S` to the internal list of disks. It is implemented for systems which do not use DOS type drive letters. This list is used to determine which disks to use in the `DiskFree` (294) and `DiskSize` (295) calls. The `DiskFree` (294) and `DiskSize` (295) functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. The names are added sequentially. The dos initialization code presets the first three disks to:

- `'.'` for the current drive,
- `'/fd0/.'` for the first floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/fd1/.'` for the second floppy-drive (linux only).
- `''` for the first hard disk.

The first call to `AddDisk` will therefore add a name for the second harddisk, The second call for the third drive, and so on until 23 drives have been added (corresponding to drives `'D:'` to `'Z:'`)

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `DiskFree` (294), `DiskSize` (295)

### 10.10.2 DiskFree

**Synopsis:** Get free size on Disk.

**Declaration:** `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DiskFree` returns the number of free bytes on a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy `a:`, 2 for floppy `b:`, etc. A value of 0 returns the free space on the current drive.

**Remark:** For Unices: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the dos unit, and have been preset to :

- `'.'` for the current drive,
- `'/fd0/.'` for the first floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/fd1/.'` for the second floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/'` for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (294) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskSize` (295), `AddDisk` (294)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program Example6;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the DiskSize and DiskFree function. }

begin
  WriteLn('This partition size has ', DiskSize(0), ' bytes');
  WriteLn('Currently ', DiskFree(0), ' bytes are free');
end.

```

---

### 10.10.3 DiskSize

Synopsis: Get total size of disk.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the total size (in bytes) of a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the size of the current drive.

**Remark:** For unix only: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the `dos` unit, and have been preset to :

- `'.'` for the current drive,
- `'/fd0/.'` for the first floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/fd1/.'` for the second floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/'` for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (294) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

For an example, see `DiskFree` (294).

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskFree` (294), `AddDisk` (294)

### 10.10.4 DosExitCode

Synopsis: Exit code of last executed program.

Declaration: `function DosExitCode : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosExitCode` contains (in the low byte) the exit-code of a program executed with the `Exec` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` ([298](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function. }

begin
  {$IFDEF Unix}
    WriteLn('Executing /bin/ls -la');
    Exec('/bin/ls', '-la');
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn('Executing Dir');
    Exec(GetEnv('COMSPEC'), '/C dir');
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn('Program returned with ExitCode ', Lo(DosExitCode));
end.

```

---

### 10.10.5 DosVersion

Synopsis: Current OS version

Declaration: `function DosVersion : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosVersion` returns the operating system or kernel version. The low byte contains the major version number, while the high byte contains the minor version number.

**Remark:** On systems where versions consists of more then two numbers, only the first two numbers will be returned. For example Linux version 2.1.76 will give you `DosVersion` 2.1. Some operating systems, such as FreeBSD, do not have system calls to return the kernel version, in that case a value of 0 will be returned.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the DosVersion function. }

var
  OS      : string[32];

```

---

---

```

    Version : word;
begin
{$IFDEF LINUX}
    OS:= 'Linux';
{$ENDIF}
{$IFDEF FreeBSD}
    OS:= 'FreeBSD';
{$endif}
{$IFDEF NetBSD}
    OS:= 'NetBSD';
{$endif}
{$IFDEF Solaris}
    OS:= 'Solaris';
{$endif}
{$IFDEF QNX}
    OS:= 'QNX';
{$endif}

{$IFDEF DOS}
    OS:= 'Dos';
{$ENDIF}
    Version:=DosVersion;
    WriteLn('Current ',OS,' version is ',Lo(Version),'. ',Hi(Version));
end.

```

---

### 10.10.6 DToUnixDate

Synopsis: Convert a DateTime to unix timestamp

Declaration: `function DToUnixDate(DT: DateTime) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `DToUnixDate` converts the `DateTime` value in `DT` to a unix timestamp. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixDateToDT` (312), `PackTime` (308), `UnpackTime` (312), `GetTime` (306), `SetTime` (311)

### 10.10.7 EnvCount

Synopsis: Return the number of environment variables

Declaration: `function EnvCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnvCount` returns the number of environment variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvStr` (298), `GetEnv` (303)

### 10.10.8 EnvStr

Synopsis: Return environment variable by index

Declaration: `function EnvStr(Index: LongInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnvStr` returns the `Index`-th Name=Value pair from the list of environment variables. The index of the first pair is zero.

Errors: The length is limited to 255 characters.

See also: `EnvCount` (297), `GetEnv` (303)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13;`  
**uses** `Dos;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the EnvCount and EnvStr function. }*

```
var
  i : Longint;
begin
  WriteLn('Current Environment is:');
  for i:=1 to EnvCount do
    WriteLn(EnvStr(i));
end.
```

---

### 10.10.9 Exec

Synopsis: Execute another program, and wait for it to finish.

Declaration: `procedure Exec(const path: PathStr; const comline: ComStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exec` executes the program in `Path`, with the options given by `ComLine`. The program name should *not* appear again in `ComLine`, it is specified in `Path`. `Comline` contains only the parameters that are passed to the program.

After the program has terminated, the procedure returns. The Exit value of the program can be consulted with the `DosExitCode` function.

For an example, see `DosExitCode` (296)

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `DosExitCode` (296)

### 10.10.10 FExpand

Synopsis: Expand a relative path to an absolute path

Declaration: `function FExpand(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FExpand` takes its argument and expands it to a complete filename, i.e. a filename starting from the root directory of the current drive, prepended with the drive-letter or volume name (when supported).

**Remark:** On case sensitive file systems (such as unix and linux), the resulting name is left as it is, otherwise it is converted to uppercase.

Errors: `FSplit` (301)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program Example11;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FExpand function. }

begin
  WriteLn('Expanded Name of this program is ',FExpand(ParamStr(0)));
end.
```

---

### 10.10.11 FindClose

**Synopsis:** Dispose resources allocated by a `FindFirst` (299)/`FindNext` (300) sequence.

**Declaration:** `procedure FindClose(var f: SearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindClose` frees any resources associated with the search record `F`.

This call is needed to free any internal resources allocated by the `FindFirst` (299) or `FindNext` (300) calls.

The unix implementation of the dos unit therefore keeps a table of open directories, and when the table is full, closes one of the directories, and reopens another. This system is adequate but slow if you use a lot of `searchrecs`.

So, to speed up the `findfirst/findnext` system, the `FindClose` call was implemented. When you don't need a `searchrec` any more, you can tell this to the dos unit by issuing a `FindClose` call. The directory which is kept open for this `searchrec` is then closed, and the table slot freed.

**Remark:** It is recommended to use the linux call `Glob` when looking for files on linux.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindFirst` (299), `FindNext` (300)

### 10.10.12 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start search for one or more files.

**Declaration:** `procedure FindFirst(const path: PathStr;attr: Word;var f: SearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindFirst` searches the file specified in `Path`. Normal files, as well as all special files which have the attributes specified in `Attr` will be returned.

It returns a `SearchRec` record for further searching in `F`. `Path` can contain the wildcard characters `?` (matches any single character) and `*` (matches 0 ore more arbitrary characters). In this case

`FindFirst` will return the first file which matches the specified criteria. If `DosError` is different from zero, no file(s) matching the criteria was(were) found.

**Remark:** On os/2, you cannot issue two different `FindFirst` calls. That is, you must close any previous search operation with `FindClose` (299) before starting a new one. Failure to do so will end in a Run-Time Error 6 (Invalid file handle)

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindNext` (300), `FindClose` (299)

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex7.pp

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FindFirst and FindNext function. }

var
  Dir : SearchRec;
begin
  FindFirst( '*.*', archive, Dir );
  WriteLn( 'FileName'+Space(32), 'FileSize':9);
  while ( DosError=0) do
    begin
      WriteLn( Dir.Name+Space(40-Length( Dir.Name)), Dir.Size:9);
      FindNext( Dir );
    end;
  FindClose( Dir );
end.

```

---

### 10.10.13 FindNext

Synopsis: Find next matching file after `FindFirst` (299)

Declaration: `procedure FindNext (var f: SearchRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNext` takes as an argument a `SearchRec` from a previous `FindNext` call, or a `FindFirst` call, and tries to find another file which matches the criteria, specified in the `FindFirst` call. If `DosError` is different from zero, no more files matching the criteria were found.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (299).

Errors: `DosError` is used to report errors.

See also: `FindFirst` (299), `FindClose` (299)

### 10.10.14 FSearch

Synopsis: Search a file in searchpath

Declaration: `function FSearch (path: PathStr; dirlist: String) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FSearch` searches the file `Path` in all directories listed in `DirList`. The full name of the found file is returned. `DirList` must be a list of directories, separated by semi-colons. When no file is found, an empty string is returned.

**Remark:** On unix systems, `DirList` can also be separated by colons, as is customary on those environments.

Errors: None.

See also: `FExpand` ([298](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex10.pp`

---

```

program Example10;

uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

var s:pathstr;

begin
  s:=FSearch(ParamStr(1),GetEnv('PATH'));
  if s='' then
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1),' not Found in PATH')
  else
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1),' Found in PATH at ',s);
end.

```

---

### 10.10.15 FSplit

**Synopsis:** Split a full-path filename in parts.

**Declaration:** `procedure FSplit(path: PathStr; var dir: DirStr; var name: NameStr; var ext: ExtStr)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in ext.) The extension is taken to be all letters after the *last* dot (.). For dos, however, an exception is made when `LFNSupport=False`, then the extension is defined as all characters after the *first* dot.

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` ([300](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex12.pp`

---

```

program Example12;

uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }

var dir:dirstr;
    name:namestr;
    ext:extstr;

begin

```

---

```

FSplit(ParamStr(1),dir,name,ext);
WriteLn('Splitted ',ParamStr(1),' in:');
WriteLn('Path      : ',dir);
WriteLn('Name       : ',name);
WriteLn('Extension : ',ext);
end.

```

---

### 10.10.16 GetCBreak

Synopsis: Get control-Break flag

Declaration: `procedure GetCBreak(var breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCBreak` gets the status of CTRL-Break checking under dos and Amiga. When `BreakValue` is `false`, then dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to `True`, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark:** Under non-dos and non-Amiga operating systems, `BreakValue` always returns `True`.

Errors: None

See also: `SetCBreak` ([309](#))

### 10.10.17 GetDate

Synopsis: Get the current date

Declaration: `procedure GetDate(var year: Word;var month: Word;var mday: Word;  
var wday: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDate` returns the system's date. `Year` is a number in the range 1980..2099. `mday` is the day of the month, `wday` is the day of the week, starting with Sunday as day 0.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` ([306](#)), `SetDate` ([309](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** Example2;

**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }*

**const**

DayStr:array[0..6] of string[3]=('Sun','Mon','Tue','Wed','Thu','Fri','Sat');

MonthStr:array[1..12] of string[3]=('Jan','Feb','Mar','Apr','May','Jun',  
'Jul','Aug','Sep','Oct','Nov','Dec');

**var**

Year,Month,Day,WDay : word;

**begin**

GetDate(Year,Month,Day,WDay);

**WriteLn**('Current date');

**WriteLn**(DayStr[WDay],', ',',Day,', ',MonthStr[Month],', ',Year,', ');

**end.**

---

### 10.10.18 GetEnv

Synopsis: Get environment variable by name.

Declaration: `function GetEnv(envvar: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable `EnvVar`. When there is no environment variable `EnvVar` defined, an empty string is returned.

**Remark:** Under some operating systems (such as unix), case is important when looking for `EnvVar`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvCount` ([297](#)), `EnvStr` ([298](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex14.pp`

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }

begin
  WriteLn('Current PATH is ',GetEnv('PATH'));
end

```

---

### 10.10.19 GetFAttr

Synopsis: Get file attributes

Declaration: `procedure GetFAttr(var f;var attr: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFAttr` returns the file attributes of the file-variable `f`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `f` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be examined with the following constants :

- `ReadOnly`
- `Hidden`
- `SysFile`
- `VolumeId`
- `Directory`
- `Archive`

Under linux, supported attributes are:

- `Directory`
- `ReadOnly` if the current process doesn't have access to the file.
- `Hidden` for files whose name starts with a dot ( `'.'` ).

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFAttr` ([309](#))

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex8.pp

---

```

Program Example8;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFAttr function. }

var
  Attr : Word;
  f    : File;
begin
  Assign(f, ParamStr(1));
  GetFAttr(f, Attr);
  WriteLn('File ', ParamStr(1), ' has attribute ', Attr);
  if (Attr and archive) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Archive ');
  if (Attr and directory) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Directory ');
  if (Attr and readonly) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Read-Only ');
  if (Attr and sysfile) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - System ');
  if (Attr and hidden) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Hidden ');
end.

```

---

### 10.10.20 GetFTime

Synopsis: Get file last modification time.

Declaration: `procedure GetFTime(var f; var time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFTime` returns the modification time of a file. This time is encoded and must be decoded with `UnPackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFTime` ([310](#)), `PackTime` ([308](#)), `UnPackTime` ([312](#))

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex9.pp

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w, s);
  if w < 10 then
    L0 := '0' + s
  else
    L0 := s;
end;

var
  f    : File;
  Time : Longint;
  DT   : DateTime;

```

---

---

```

begin
  if Paramcount>0 then
    Assign(f,ParamStr(1))
  else
    Assign(f,'ex9.pp');
  Reset(f);
  GetFTime(f,Time);
  Close(f);
  UnPackTime(Time,DT);
  Write('File ',ParamStr(1),' is last modified on ');
  WriteLn(L0(DT.Month),'-',L0(DT.Day),'-',DT.Year,
    ' at ',L0(DT.Hour),':',L0(DT.Min));
end.

```

---

### 10.10.21 GetIntVec

Synopsis: Get interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure GetIntVec(intno: Byte;var vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetIntVec` returns the address of interrupt vector `IntNo`.

**Remark:** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only. Modern systems do not allow low level access to the hardware.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetIntVec` ([310](#))

### 10.10.22 GetLongName

Synopsis: Get the long filename of a DOS 8.3 filename.

Declaration: `function GetLongName(var p: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 and Win32 versions of Free Pascal.

`GetLongName` changes the filename `p` to a long filename if the API call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the long file name corresponding to the short filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the API call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the API call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetShortName` ([306](#))

### 10.10.23 GetMsCount

Synopsis: Number of milliseconds since a starting point.

Declaration: `function GetMsCount : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetMSCount` returns a number of milliseconds elapsed since a certain moment in time. This moment in time is implementation dependent. This function is used for timing purposes: Subtracting the results of 2 subsequent calls to this function returns the number of milliseconds elapsed between the two calls.

This call is not very reliable, it is recommended to use some system specific calls for timings.

See also: `GetTime` (306)

#### 10.10.24 GetShortName

**Synopsis:** Get the short (8.3) filename of a long filename.

**Declaration:** `function GetShortName(var p: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 and Win32 versions of Free Pascal.

`GetShortName` changes the filename `p` to a short filename if the API call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the short file name corresponding to the long filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the API call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

**Errors:** If the API call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetLongName` (305)

#### 10.10.25 GetTime

**Synopsis:** Return the current time

**Declaration:** `procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word; var sec100: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetTime` returns the system's time. `Hour` is on a 24-hour time scale. `sec100` is in hundredth of a second.

**Remark:** Certain operating systems (such as Amiga), always set the `sec100` field to zero.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GetDate` (302), `SetTime` (311)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w,s);
  if w<10 then
```

---

```

    L0:= '0'+s
  else
    L0:=s;
end;

var
  Hour,Min,Sec,HSec : word;
begin
  GetTime(Hour,Min,Sec,HSec);
  WriteLn('Current time');
  WriteLn(L0(Hour),':',L0(Min),':',L0(Sec));
end.

```

---

### 10.10.26 GetVerify

Synopsis: Get verify flag

Declaration: `procedure GetVerify(var verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVerify` returns the status of the verify flag under dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark:** Under non-dos systems (excluding os/2 applications running under vanilla DOS), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` ([311](#))

### 10.10.27 Intr

Synopsis: Execute interrupt

Declaration: `procedure Intr(intno: Byte;var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intr` executes a software interrupt number `IntNo` (must be between 0 and 255), with processor registers set to `Regs`. After the interrupt call returned, the processor registers are saved in `Regs`.

**Remark:** Under non-dos operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `MSDos` ([308](#))

### 10.10.28 Keep

Synopsis: Terminate and stay resident.

Declaration: `procedure Keep(exitcode: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Keep` terminates the program, but stays in memory. This is used for TSR (Terminate Stay Resident) programs which catch some interrupt. `ExitCode` is the same parameter as the `Halt` function takes.

**Remark:** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

### 10.10.29 MSDos

**Synopsis:** Execute MS-DOS system call

**Declaration:** `procedure MSDos (var regs: Registers)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MSDos` executes an operating system call. This is the same as doing a `Intr` call with the interrupt number for an os call.

**Remark:** Under non-dos operating systems, this call does nothing. On DOS systems, this calls interrupt \$21.

Errors: None.

See also: `Intr` ([307](#))

### 10.10.30 PackTime

**Synopsis:** Pack `DateTime` value to a packed-time format.

**Declaration:** `procedure PackTime (var t: DateTime; var p: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnPackTime` converts the date and time specified in `T` to a packed-time format which can be fed to `SetFTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFTime` ([310](#)), `FindFirst` ([299](#)), `FindNext` ([300](#)), `UnPackTime` ([312](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the PackTime and UnPackTime functions. }

var
    DT    : DateTime;
    Time  : longint;
begin
    with DT do
        begin
            Year:=2008;
            Month:=11;
            Day:=11;
            Hour:=11;
            Min:=11;
            Sec:=11;
        end;
    PackTime(DT, Time);

```

---

```

WriteLn( 'Packed Time : ',Time);
UnPackTime(Time,DT);
WriteLn( 'Unpacked Again: ');
with DT do
  begin
    WriteLn( 'Year   ',Year);
    WriteLn( 'Month  ',Month);
    WriteLn( 'Day    ',Day);
    WriteLn( 'Hour   ',Hour);
    WriteLn( 'Min    ',Min);
    WriteLn( 'Sec    ',Sec);
  end;
end.

```

---

### 10.10.31 SetCBreak

Synopsis: Set Control-Break flag status

Declaration: `procedure SetCBreak(breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCBreak` sets the status of CTRL-Break checking. When `BreakValue` is false, then dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to `True`, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark:** Under non-dos and non-Amiga operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetCBreak` ([302](#))

### 10.10.32 SetDate

Synopsis: Set system date

Declaration: `procedure SetDate(year: Word;month: Word;day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDate` sets the system's internal date. `Year` is a number between 1980 and 2099.

**Remark:** On a unix machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` ([302](#)), `SetTime` ([311](#))

### 10.10.33 SetFAttr

Synopsis: Set file attributes

Declaration: `procedure SetFAttr(var f;attr: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetFAttr` sets the file attributes of the file-variable `F`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `F` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be a sum of the following constants:

- `ReadOnly`
- `Hidden`
- `SysFile`
- `VolumeId`
- `Directory`
- `Archive`

**Remark:** Under unix like systems (such as linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `GetFAttr` ([303](#))

### 10.10.34 SetFTime

Synopsis: Set file modification time.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetFTime(var f; time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetFTime` sets the modification time of a file, this time is encoded and must be encoded with `PackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

**Remark:** Under unix like systems (such as linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `GetFTime` ([304](#)), `PackTime` ([308](#)), `UnPackTime` ([312](#))

### 10.10.35 SetIntVec

Synopsis: Set interrupt vector

**Declaration:** `procedure SetIntVec(intno: Byte; vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetIntVec` sets interrupt vector `IntNo` to `Vector`. `Vector` should point to an interrupt procedure.

**Remark:** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetIntVec` ([305](#))

### 10.10.36 SetTime

Synopsis: Set system time

Declaration: `procedure SetTime(hour: Word; minute: Word; second: Word; sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTime` sets the system's internal clock. The `Hour` parameter is on a 24-hour time scale.

**Remark:** On a linux machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (306), `SetDate` (309)

### 10.10.37 SetVerify

Synopsis: Set verify flag

Declaration: `procedure SetVerify(verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVerify` sets the status of the verify flag under dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark:** Under non-dos operating systems (excluding os/2 applications running under vanilla dos), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` (311)

### 10.10.38 SwapVectors

Synopsis: Swap interrupt vectors

Declaration: `procedure SwapVectors`

Visibility: default

Description: `SwapVectors` swaps the contents of the internal table of interrupt vectors with the current contents of the interrupt vectors. This is called typically in before and after an `Exec` call.

**Remark:** Under certain operating systems, this routine may be implemented as an empty stub.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` (298), `SetIntVec` (310)

### 10.10.39 UnixDateToDt

Synopsis: Convert a unix timestamp to a DateTime record

Declaration: `procedure UnixDateToDt (SecsPast: LongInt; var Dt: DateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DTToUnixDate` converts the unix timestamp value in `SecsPast` to a `DateTime` representation in `DT`. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `DTToUnixDate` (297), `PackTime` (308), `UnpackTime` (312), `GetTime` (306), `SetTime` (311)

### 10.10.40 UnpackTime

Synopsis: Unpack packed file time to a DateTime value

Declaration: `procedure UnpackTime (p: LongInt; var t: DateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnPackTime` converts the file-modification time in `p` to a `DateTime` record. The file-modification time can be returned by `GetFTime`, `FindFirst` or `FindNext` calls.

For an example, see `PackTime` (308).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetFTime` (304), `FindFirst` (299), `FindNext` (300), `PackTime` (308)

### 10.10.41 weekday

Synopsis: Return the day of the week

Declaration: `function weekday (y: LongInt; m: LongInt; d: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeekDay` returns the day of the week on which the day `Y/M/D` falls. Sunday is represented by 0, Saturday is 6.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `PackTime` (308), `UnpackTime` (312), `GetTime` (306), `SetTime` (311)

# Chapter 11

## Reference for unit 'dxeload'

### 11.1 Overview

The `dxeload` unit was implemented by Pierre Mueller for dos, it allows to load a DXE file (an object file with 1 entry point) into memory and return a pointer to the entry point.

It exists only for dos.

### 11.2 Procedures and functions

#### 11.2.1 `dxeload`

Synopsis: Load DXE file in memory

Declaration: `function dxeload(filename: String) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `dxeload` loads the contents of the file `filename` into memory. It performs the necessary relocations in the object code, and returns then a pointer to the entry point of the code.

For an example, see the `emu387` ([317](#)) unit in the RTL.

Errors: If an error occurs during the load or relocations, `Nil` is returned.

## Chapter 12

# Reference for unit 'dynlibs'

### 12.1 Overview

The Dynlibs unit provides support for dynamically loading shared libraries. It is available only on those platforms that support shared libraries. The functionality available here may only be a part of the functionality available on each separate platform, in the interest of portability.

On unix platforms, using this unit will cause the program to be linked to the C library, as most shared libraries are implemented in C and the dynamical linker too.

### 12.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 12.2.1 Constants

```
NilHandle = TLibHandle ( 0 )
```

Correctly typed Nil handle - returned on error by LoadLibrary ([315](#))

```
SharedSuffix = 'so'
```

SharedSuffix contains the extension of a shared library (dynamically loadable library) on the current platform. It does not contain the . (dot) character. This can be used to determine the name of a shared library in a platform independent way.

#### 12.2.2 Types

```
HModule = TLibHandle
```

Alias for TLibHandle ([314](#)) type.

```
TLibHandle = PtrInt
```

TLibHandle should be considered an opaque type. It is defined differently on various platforms. The definition shown here depends on the platform for which the documentation was generated.

## 12.3 Procedures and functions

### 12.3.1 FreeLibrary

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Unload a library

Declaration: `function FreeLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeLibrary` provides the same functionality as `UnloadLibrary` (316), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` (316)

### 12.3.2 GetProcAddress

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Get the address of a procedure

Declaration: `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcAddress` provides the same functionality as `GetProcedureAddress` (315), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `GetProcedureAddress` (315)

### 12.3.3 GetProcedureAddress

Synopsis: Get the address of a procedure or symbol in a dynamic library.

Declaration: `function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; ProcName: AnsiString)  
: Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcedureAddress` returns a pointer to the location in memory of the symbol `ProcName` in the dynamically loaded library specified by its handle `lib`. If the symbol cannot be found or the handle is invalid, `Nil` is returned.

On Windows, only an exported procedure or function can be searched this way. On Unix platforms the location of any exported symbol can be retrieved this way.

Errors: If the symbol cannot be found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` (315), `UnLoadLibrary` (316)

### 12.3.4 LoadLibrary

Synopsis: Load a dynamic library and return a handle to it.

Declaration: `function LoadLibrary(Name: AnsiString) : TLibHandle`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LoadLibrary` loads a dynamic library in file `Name` and returns a handle to it. If the library cannot be loaded, `NilHandle` (314) is returned.

No assumptions should be made about the location of the loaded library if a relative pathname is specified. The behaviour is dependent on the platform. Therefore it is best to specify an absolute pathname if possible.

**Errors:** On error, `NilHandle` (314) is returned.

**See also:** `UnloadLibrary` (316), `GetProcAddress` (315)

### 12.3.5 SafeLoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Saves the control word and loads a library

**Declaration:** `function SafeLoadLibrary(Name: AnsiString) : TLibHandle`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SafeLoadLibrary` saves the FPU control word, and calls `LoadLibrary` (315) with library name `Name`. After that function has returned, the FPU control word is saved again. (only on Intel i386 CPUs).

**See also:** `LoadLibrary` (315)

### 12.3.6 UnloadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Unload a previously loaded library

**Declaration:** `function UnloadLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnloadLibrary` unloads a previously loaded library (specified by the handle `lib`). The call returns `True` if succesful, `False` otherwisa.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `LoadLibrary` (315), `GetProcAddress` (315)

## Chapter 13

# Reference for unit 'emu387'

### 13.1 Overview

The `emu387` unit was written by Pierre Mueller for dos. It sets up the coprocessor emulation for FPC under dos. It is not necessary to use this unit on other OS platforms because they either simply do not run on a machine without coprocessor, or they provide the coprocessor emulation themselves.

It shouldn't be necessary to use the function in this unit, it should be enough to place this unit in the `uses` clause of your program to enable the coprocessor emulation under dos. The unit initialization code will try and load the coprocessor emulation code and initialize it.

### 13.2 Procedures and functions

#### 13.2.1 `npxsetup`

**Synopsis:** Set up coprocessor emulation.

**Declaration:** `procedure npxsetup(prog_name: String)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `npxsetup` checks whether a coprocessor is found. If not, it loads the file `wmemu387.dxe` into memory and initializes the code in it.

If the environment variable `387` is set to `N`, then the emulation will be loaded, even if there is a coprocessor present. If the variable doesn't exist, or is set to any other value, the unit will try to detect the presence of a coprocessor unit.

The function searches the file `wmemu387.dxe` in the following way:

- 1.If the environment variable `EMU387` is set, then it is assumed to point at the `wmemu387.dxe` file.
- 2.if the environment variable `EMU387` does not exist, then the function will take the path part of `prog_name` and look in that directory for the file `wmemu387.dxe`.

It should never be necessary to call this function, because the initialization code of the unit contains a call to the function with as an argument `paramstr(0)`. This means that you should deliver the file `wmemu387.dxe` together with your program.

**Errors:** If there is an error, an error message is printed to standard error, and the program is halted, since any floating-point code is bound to fail anyhow.

## Chapter 14

# Reference for unit 'exeinfo'

### 14.1 Overview

The `exeinfo` unit implements some cross-platform routines to examine the contents of an executable: information about sections, mapping addresses to loaded modules etc.

It is mainly used by the `lineinfo` ([472](#)) and `Infodwrf` ([492](#)) unit to examine the binary for debug info.

### 14.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 14.2.1 Types

```
TExeFile = record
  f : File;
  size : Int64;
  isopen : Boolean;
  nsects : LongInt;
  sechdrofs : ptruint;
  secstrofs : ptruint;
  processaddress : ptruint;
  FunctionRelative : Boolean;
  ImgOffset : ptruint;
  filename : String;
  buf : Array[0..4095] of Byte;
  bufsize : LongInt;
  bufcnt : LongInt;
end
```

`TExeFile` is a record used in the various calls of this unit. It contains a file descriptor, and various fields that describe the executable.

The structure of `TExeFile` is opaque, that is, one shouldn't rely on the exactness of this structure, it may change any time in the future.

## 14.3 Procedures and functions

### 14.3.1 CloseExeFile

Synopsis: Close a previously opened file.

Declaration: `function CloseExeFile(var e: TExeFile) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseExeFile` closes an executable file image previously opened with `OpenExeFile` (319), and represented by `e`.

The function returns `True` if the file was closed succesfully, or `False` if something went wrong.

Errors: In case of an error, `False` is returned.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (319)

### 14.3.2 FindExeSection

Synopsis: Find a section in the binary image.

Declaration: `function FindExeSection(var e: TExeFile; const secname: String;  
var secofs: LongInt; var seclen: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindExeSection` examines the binary that was opened with `OpenExeFile` (319) (represented by `e`) and searches for the section named `secname`. If found, the section offset is returned in `secofs` and the section length (in bytes) is returned in `seclen`.

The function returns `True` if the section was found, `False` if not.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (319)

### 14.3.3 GetModuleByAddr

Synopsis: Return the module name by address

Declaration: `procedure GetModuleByAddr(addr: pointer; var baseaddr: pointer;  
var filename: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModuleByAddr` returns the name of the module that contains address `addr`. If succesful, it returns `True` and returns the filename in `FileName` and the base address at which it is loaded in `BaseAddr`.

### 14.3.4 OpenExeFile

Synopsis: Open an executable file

Declaration: `function OpenExeFile(var e: TExeFile; const fn: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `OpenExeFile` opens the executable file `fn` and initializes the structure `e` for subsequent calls to routines in the `exeinfo` unit.

The function returns `True` if the file was opened successfully, `false` otherwise.

See also: `FindExeSection` (319), `CloseExeFile` (319), `ReadDebugLink` (320)

### 14.3.5 ReadDebugLink

**Synopsis:** Read the location of a debug info filename

**Declaration:** `function ReadDebugLink (var e: TExeFile; var dbgfn: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `ReadDebugLink` examines the `.gnu_debuglink` section to see if the debug information is stored in an external file. If so, then the name of the file with the debug information is returned in the `dbgfn` parameter.

The function returns `false` if there is no external debug information file, or if the file with debug information does not exist. It is searched next to the binary file or in the current directory.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (319), `CloseExeFile` (319)

# Chapter 15

## Reference for unit 'getopts'

### 15.1 Overview

This document describes the GETOPTS unit for Free Pascal. It was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It now also works for all supported platforms.

The getopts unit provides a mechanism to handle command-line options in a structured way, much like the GNU getopts mechanism. It allows you to define the valid options for your program, and the unit will then parse the command-line options for you, and inform you of any errors.

### 15.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 15.2.1 Constants

`EndOfOptions = #255`

Returned by `getopt` (323), `getlongopts` (323) to indicate that there are no more options.

`No_Argument = 0`

Specifies that a long option does not take an argument.

`Optional_Argument = 2`

Specifies that a long option optionally takes an argument.

`OptSpecifier : Set of Char = ['-']`

Character indicating an option on the command-line.

`Required_Argument = 1`

Specifies that a long option needs an argument.

Table 15.1: Enumeration values for type Orderings

Value	Explanation
permute	Change command-line options.
require_order	Don't touch the ordering of the command-line options
return_in_order	Return options in the correct order.

### 15.2.2 Types

```
Orderings = (require_order, permute, return_in_order)
```

Command-line ordering options.

```
POption = ^TOption
```

Pointer to TOption (322) record.

```
TOption = record
  Name : String;
  Has_arg : Integer;
  Flag : PChar;
  Value : Char;
end
```

The TOption type is used to communicate the long options to GetLongOpts (323). The Name field is the name of the option. Has\_arg specifies if the option wants an argument, Flag is a pointer to a char, which is set to Value, if it is non-nil.

### 15.2.3 Variables

```
OptArg : String
```

Set to the argument of an option, if the option needs one.

```
OptErr : Boolean
```

Indicates whether getopt() prints error messages.

```
OptInd : LongInt
```

when all options have been processed, optind is the index of the first non-option parameter. This is a read-only variable. Note that it can become equal to paramcount+1.

```
OptOpt : Char
```

In case of an error, contains the character causing the error.

## 15.3 Procedures and functions

### 15.3.1 GetLongOpts

Synopsis: Return next long option.

Declaration: `function GetLongOpts (ShortOpts: String; LongOpts: POption;  
var Longind: LongInt) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the next option found on the command-line, taking into account long options as well. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. (see [Getopt \(323\)](#) for its description and use) `LongOpts` is a pointer to the first element of an array of `Option` records, the last of which needs a name of zero length.

The function tries to match the names even partially (i.e. `-app` will match e.g. the append option), but will report an error in case of ambiguity. If the option needs an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Required_argument`, if the option optionally has an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Optional_argument`. If the option needs no argument, set `Has_arg` to zero.

Required arguments can be specified in two ways :

1. Pasted to the option : `-option=value`
2. As a separate argument : `-option value`

Optional arguments can only be specified through the first method.

Errors: see [Getopt \(323\)](#).

See also: [Getopt \(323\)](#)

### 15.3.2 GetOpt

Synopsis: Get next short option.

Declaration: `function GetOpt (ShortOpts: String) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the next option found on the command-line. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. If a letter is followed by a colon (:), then that option needs an argument. If a letter is followed by 2 colons, the option has an optional argument. If the first character of `shortoptions` is a '+' then options following a non-option are regarded as non-options (standard Unix behavior). If it is a '-', then all non-options are treated as arguments of a option with character #0. This is useful for applications that require their options in the exact order as they appear on the command-line. If the first character of `shortoptions` is none of the above, options and non-options are permuted, so all non-options are behind all options. This allows options and non-options to be in random order on the command line.

Errors: Errors are reported through giving back a '?' character. `OptOpt` then gives the character which caused the error. If `OptErr` is `True` then `getopt` prints an error-message to `stdout`.

See also: [GetLongOpts \(323\)](#)

**Listing:** ./optex/optex.pp

---

```

program testopt;

{ Program to depmonstrate the getopt function. }

{
  Valid calls to this program are
  optex --verbose --add me --delete you
  optex --append --create child
  optex -ab -c me -d you
  and so on
}
uses getopt;

var c : char;
    optionindex : Longint;
    theopts : array[1..7] of TOption;

begin
  with theopts[1] do
    begin
      name := 'add';
      has_arg := 1;
      flag := nil;
      value := #0;
    end;
  with theopts[2] do
    begin
      name := 'append';
      has_arg := 0;
      flag := nil;
      value := #0;
    end;
  with theopts[3] do
    begin
      name := 'delete';
      has_arg := 1;
      flag := nil;
      value := #0;
    end;
  with theopts[4] do
    begin
      name := 'verbose';
      has_arg := 0;
      flag := nil;
      value := #0;
    end;
  with theopts[5] do
    begin
      name := 'create';
      has_arg := 1;
      flag := nil;
      value := 'c';
    end;
  with theopts[6] do
    begin
      name := 'file';
      has_arg := 1;

```

---

```

    flag:=nil;
    value:=#0;
end;
with theopts[7] do
    begin
        name:='';
        has_arg:=0;
        flag:=nil;
    end;
c:=#0;
repeat
    c:=getlongopts('abc:d:012',@theo[1],optionindex);
    case c of
        '1','2','3','4','5','6','7','8','9' :
            begin
                writeln('Got optind : ',c)
            end;
        #0 : begin
                write('Long option : ',theo[optionindex].name);
                if theopts[optionindex].has_arg>0 then
                    writeln(' With value : ',optarg)
                else
                    writeln
                end;
            'a' : writeln('Option a. ');
            'b' : writeln('Option b. ');
            'c' : writeln('Option c : ',optarg);
            'd' : writeln('Option d : ',optarg);
            '?' : writeln('Error with opt : ',optopt);
        end; { case }
    until c=endofoptions;
    if optind<=paramcount then
        begin
            write('Non options : ');
            while optind<=paramcount do
                begin
                    write(paramstr(optind),' ');
                    inc(optind)
                end;
            writeln
        end
    end.
end.

```

---

## Chapter 16

# Reference for unit 'go32'

### 16.1 Real mode callbacks

The callback mechanism can be thought of as the converse of calling a real mode procedure (i.e. interrupt), which allows your program to pass information to a real mode program, or obtain services from it in a manner that's transparent to the real mode program. In order to make a real mode callback available, you must first get the real mode callback address of your procedure and the selector and offset of a register data structure. This real mode callback address (this is a segment:offset address) can be passed to a real mode program via a software interrupt, a dos memory block or any other convenient mechanism. When the real mode program calls the callback (via a far call), the DPMI host saves the registers contents in the supplied register data structure, switches into protected mode, and enters the callback routine with the following settings:

- interrupts disabled
- `%CS : %EIP` = 48 bit pointer specified in the original call to `get_rm_callback` ([344](#))
- `%DS : %ESI` = 48 bit pointer to to real mode `SS : SP`
- `%ES : %EDI` = 48 bit pointer of real mode register data structure.
- `%SS : %ESP` = locked protected mode stack
- All other registers undefined

The callback procedure can then extract its parameters from the real mode register data structure and/or copy parameters from the real mode stack to the protected mode stack. Recall that the segment register fields of the real mode register data structure contain segment or paragraph addresses that are not valid in protected mode. Far pointers passed in the real mode register data structure must be translated to virtual addresses before they can be used with a protected mode program. The callback procedure exits by executing an `IRET` with the address of the real mode register data structure in `%ES : %EDI`, passing information back to the real mode caller by modifying the contents of the real mode register data structure and/or manipulating the contents of the real mode stack. The callback procedure is responsible for setting the proper address for resumption of real mode execution into the real mode register data structure; typically, this is accomplished by extracting the return address from the real mode stack and placing it into the `%CS : %EIP` fields of the real mode register data structure. After the `IRET`, the DPMI host switches the CPU back into real mode, loads ALL registers with the contents of the real mode register data structure, and finally returns control to the real mode program. All variables and code touched by the callback procedure **MUST** be locked to prevent page faults.

See also: `get_rm_callback` ([344](#)), `free_rm_callback` ([340](#)), `lock_code` ([352](#)), `lock_data` ([353](#))

## 16.2 Executing software interrupts

Simply execute a `realintr()` call with the desired interrupt number and the supplied register data structure. But some of these interrupts require you to supply them a pointer to a buffer where they can store data to or obtain data from in memory. These interrupts are real mode functions and so they only can access the first Mb of linear address space, not FPC's data segment. For this reason FPC supplies a pre-initialized dos memory location within the GO32 unit. This buffer is internally used for dos functions too and so it's contents may change when calling other procedures. It's size can be obtained with `tb_size` (362) and it's linear address via `transfer_buffer` (362). Another way is to allocate a completely new dos memory area via the `global_dos_alloc` (349) function for your use and supply its real mode address.

See also: `tb_size` (362), `transfer_buffer` (362), `global_dos_alloc` (349), `global_dos_free` (351), `realintr` (355)

## 16.3 Software interrupts

Ordinarily, a handler installed with `set_pm_interrupt` (359) only services software interrupts that are executed in protected mode; real mode software interrupts can be redirected by `set_rm_interrupt` (360).

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (360), `get_rm_interrupt` (347), `set_pm_interrupt` (359), `get_pm_interrupt` (344), `lock_data` (353), `lock_code` (352), `enable` (339), `disable` (337), `outportb` (354)

## 16.4 Hardware interrupts

Hardware interrupts are generated by hardware devices when something unusual happens; this could be a keypress or a mouse move or any other action. This is done to minimize CPU time, else the CPU would have to check all installed hardware for data in a big loop (this method is called 'polling') and this would take much time. A standard IBM-PC has two interrupt controllers, that are responsible for these hardware interrupts: both allow up to 8 different interrupt sources (IRQs, interrupt requests). The second controller is connected to the first through IRQ 2 for compatibility reasons, e.g. if controller 1 gets an IRQ 2, he hands the IRQ over to controller 2. Because of this up to 15 different hardware interrupt sources can be handled. IRQ 0 through IRQ 7 are mapped to interrupts 8h to Fh and the second controller (IRQ 8 to 15) is mapped to interrupt 70h to 77h. All of the code and data touched by these handlers MUST be locked (via the various locking functions) to avoid page faults at interrupt time. Because hardware interrupts are called (as in real mode) with interrupts disabled, the handler has to enable them before it returns to normal program execution. Additionally a hardware interrupt must send an EOI (end of interrupt) command to the responsible controller; this is accomplished by sending the value 20h to port 20h (for the first controller) or A0h (for the second controller). The following example shows how to redirect the keyboard interrupt.

## 16.5 Disabling interrupts

The GO32 unit provides the two procedures `disable()` and `enable()` to disable and enable all interrupts.

## 16.6 Creating your own interrupt handlers

Interrupt redirection with FPC pascal is done via the `set_pm_interrupt()` for protected mode interrupts or via the `set_rm_interrupt()` for real mode interrupts.

## 16.7 Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts

As mentioned before, there's a distinction between real mode interrupts and protected mode interrupts; the latter are protected mode programs, while the former must be real mode programs. To call a protected mode interrupt handler, an assembly 'int' call must be issued, while the other is called via the `realintr()` or `intr()` function. Consequently, a real mode interrupt then must either reside in dos memory (<1MB) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address via the `get_rm_callback()` function.

## 16.8 Handling interrupts with DPMI

The interrupt functions are real-mode procedures; they normally can't be called in protected mode without the risk of an protection fault. So the DPMI host creates an interrupt descriptor table for the application. Initially all software interrupts (except for int 31h, 2Fh and 21h function 4Ch) or external hardware interrupts are simply directed to a handler that reflects the interrupt in real-mode, i.e. the DPMI host's default handlers switch the CPU to real-mode, issue the interrupt and switch back to protected mode. The contents of general registers and flags are passed to the real mode handler and the modified registers and flags are returned to the protected mode handler. Segment registers and stack pointer are not passed between modes.

## 16.9 Interrupt redirection

Interrupts are program interruption requests, which in one or another way get to the processor; there's a distinction between software and hardware interrupts. The former are explicitly called by an 'int' instruction and are a bit comparable to normal functions. Hardware interrupts come from external devices like the keyboard or mouse. Functions that handle hardware interrupts are called handlers.

## 16.10 Processor access

These are some functions to access various segment registers (`%cs`, `%ds`, `%ss`) which makes your work a bit easier.

See also: `get_cs` (340), `get_ds` (341), `get_ss` (349)

## 16.11 I/O port access

The I/O port access is done via the various `inportb` (351), `outportb` (354) functions which are available. Additionally Free Pascal supports the Turbo Pascal `PORT[]`-arrays but it is by no means recommended to use them, because they're only for compatibility purposes.

See also: `outportb` (354), `inportb` (351)

## 16.12 dos memory access

Dos memory is accessed by the predefined `dosmemselector` selector; the GO32 unit additionally provides some functions to help you with standard tasks, like copying memory from heap to dos memory and the likes. Because of this it is strongly recommended to use them, but you are still free

to use the provided standard memory accessing functions which use 48 bit pointers. The third, but only thought for compatibility purposes, is using the `mem[]`-arrays. These arrays map the whole 1 Mb dos space. They shouldn't be used within new programs. To convert a segment:offset real mode address to a protected mode linear address you have to multiply the segment by 16 and add its offset. This linear address can be used in combination with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable.

See also: `dosmemget` (331), `dosmemput` (331), `dosmemmove` (331), `dosmemfillchar` (330), `dosmemfillword` (330), `seg_move` (358), `seg_fillchar` (356), `seg_fillword` (357)

### 16.13 FPC specialities

The `%ds` and `%es` selector MUST always contain the same value or some system routines may crash when called. The `%fs` selector is preloaded with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable at startup, and it MUST be restored after use, because again FPC relies on this for some functions. Luckily we asm programmers can still use the `%gs` selector for our own purposes, but for how long ?

See also: `get_cs` (340), `get_ds` (341), `get_ss` (349), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `free_ldt_descriptor` (339), `segment_to_descriptor` (356), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (343), `get_segment_base_address` (348), `set_segment_base_address` (360), `set_segment_limit` (361), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (337)

### 16.14 Selectors and descriptors

Descriptors are a bit like real mode segments; they describe (as the name implies) a memory area in protected mode. A descriptor contains information about segment length, its base address and the attributes of it (i.e. type, access rights, ...). These descriptors are stored internally in a so-called descriptor table, which is basically an array of such descriptors. Selectors are roughly an index into this table. Because these 'segments' can be up to 4 GB in size, 32 bits aren't sufficient anymore to describe a single memory location like in real mode. 48 bits are now needed to do this, a 32 bit address and a 16 bit sized selector. The GO32 unit provides the `tseginfo` record to store such a pointer. But due to the fact that most of the time data is stored and accessed in the `%ds` selector, FPC assumes that all pointers point to a memory location of this selector. So a single pointer is still only 32 bits in size. This value represents the offset from the data segment base address to this memory location.

### 16.15 What is DPMI

The dos Protected Mode Interface helps you with various aspects of protected mode programming. These are roughly divided into descriptor handling, access to dos memory, management of interrupts and exceptions, calls to real mode functions and other stuff. Additionally it automatically provides swapping to disk for memory intensive applications. A DPMI host (either a Windows dos box or `CWSDPMI.EXE`) provides these functions for your programs.

### 16.16 Overview

This document describes the GO32 unit for the Free Pascal compiler under dos. It was donated by Thomas Schatzl (`tom_at_work@geocities.com`), for which my thanks. This unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl.

Only the GO32V2 DPMI mode is discussed by me here due to the fact that new applications shouldn't be created with the older GO32V1 model. The go32v2 version is much more advanced and better. Additionally a lot of functions only work in DPMI mode anyway. I hope the following explanations and introductions aren't too confusing at all. If you notice an error or bug send it to the FPC mailing list or directly to me. So let's get started and happy and error free coding I wish you.... Thomas Schatzl, 25. August 1998

## 16.17 Constants, types and variables

### 16.17.1 Constants

```
auxcarryflag = $010
```

Check for auxiliary carry flag in `trealregs` ([333](#))

```
carryflag = $001
```

Check for carry flag in `trealregs` ([333](#))

```
directionflag = $400
```

Check for direction flag in `trealregs` ([333](#))

```
dosmemfillchar : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;count: LongInt;c: Char) = @dpmi_dosmemfillchar
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific byte value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemfillword : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;count: LongInt;w: Word) = @dpmi_dosmemfillword
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific word value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemget : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;var data;count: LongInt) = @dpmi_dosmemget
```

Copies data from the dos memory onto the heap.

Parameters:

**seg** source real mode segment.

**ofs** source real mode offset.

**data** destination.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see [global\\_dos\\_alloc \(349\)](#).

```
dosmemmove : procedure(sseg: Word;sofs: Word;dseg: Word;dofs: Word;count: LongInt) =
```

Copies count bytes of data between two dos real mode memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg** source real mode segment.

**sofs** source real mode offset.

**dseg** destination real mode segment.

**dofs** destination real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range check is performed in any way.

```
dosmemput : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;var data;count: LongInt) = @dpmi_dosmemput
```

Copies heap data to dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**seg** destination real mode segment.

**ofs** destination real mode offset.

**data** source.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see [global\\_dos\\_alloc \(349\)](#).

```
interruptflag = $200
```

Check for interrupt flag in [trealregs \(333\)](#)

```
overflowflag = $800
```

Check for overflow flag in `trealregs` (333)

```
parityflag = $004
```

Check for parity flag in `trealregs` (333)

```
rm_dpml = 4
```

`get_run_mode` (348) return value: DPMI (e.g. dos box or 386Max)

```
rm_raw = 1
```

`get_run_mode` (348) return value: raw (without HIMEM)

```
rm_unknown = 0
```

`get_run_mode` (348) return value: Unknown runmode

```
rm_vcpi = 3
```

`get_run_mode` (348) return value: VCPI (with HIMEM and EMM386)

```
rm_xms = 2
```

`get_run_mode` (348) return value: XMS (with HIMEM, without EMM386)

```
signflag = $080
```

Check for sign flag in `trealregs` (333)

```
trapflag = $100
```

Check for trap flag in `trealregs` (333)

```
zeroflag = $040
```

Check for zero flag in `trealregs` (333)

### 16.17.2 Types

```
registers = trealregs
```

Alias for `trealregs` (333)

```
tmeminfo = record
    available_memory : LongInt;
    available_pages : LongInt;
    available_lockable_pages : LongInt;
    linear_space : LongInt;
    unlocked_pages : LongInt;
    available_physical_pages : LongInt;
```

```

total_physical_pages : LongInt;
free_linear_space : LongInt;
max_pages_in_paging_file : LongInt;
reserved0 : LongInt;
reserved1 : LongInt;
reserved2 : LongInt;
end

```

`tmeminfo` Holds information about the memory allocation, etc.

**NOTE:** The value of a field is -1 (0ffffffh) if the value is unknown, it's only guaranteed, that `available_memory` contains a valid value. The size of the pages can be determined by the `get_page_size()` function.

```

trealregs = record
end

```

The `trealregs` type contains the data structure to pass register values to a interrupt handler or real mode callback.

```

tseginfo = record
    offset : pointer;
    segment : Word;
end

```

This record is used to store a full 48-bit pointer. This may be either a protected mode selector:offset address or in real mode a segment:offset address, depending on application.

See also: Selectors and descriptors, dos memory access, Interrupt redirection

### 16.17.3 Variables

```
dosmemselector : Word
```

Selector to the dos memory. The whole dos memory is automatically mapped to this single descriptor at startup. This selector is the recommended way to access dos memory.

```
int31error : Word
```

This variable holds the result of a DPMI interrupt call. Any nonzero value must be treated as a critical failure.

## 16.18 Procedures and functions

### 16.18.1 `allocate_ldt_descriptors`

Synopsis: Allocate a number of descriptors

Declaration: `function allocate_ldt_descriptors(count: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a number of new descriptors.

Parameters:

**count:** \ specifies the number of requested unique descriptors.

Return value: The base selector.

**Remark:** Notes: The descriptors allocated must be initialized by the application with other function calls. This function returns descriptors with a limit and size value set to zero. If more than one descriptor was requested, the function returns a base selector referencing the first of a contiguous array of descriptors. The selector values for subsequent descriptors in the array can be calculated by adding the value returned by the `get_next_selector_increment_value` (343) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `free_ldt_descriptor` (339), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (343), `segment_to_descriptor` (356), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (337), `set_segment_limit` (361), `set_segment_base_address` (360)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/seldes.pp`

---

```
{ $mode delphi }
uses
    crt ,
    go32;

const
    maxx = 80;
    maxy = 25;
    bytespercell = 2;
    screensize = maxx * maxy * bytespercell;

    linB8000 = $B800 * 16;

type
    string80 = string[80];

var
    text_save : array[0..screensize-1] of byte;
    text_oldx , text_oldy : Word;

    text_sel : Word;

procedure status(s : string80);
begin
    gotoxy(1, 1); clreol; write(s); readkey;
end;

procedure selinfo(sel : Word);
begin
    gotoxy(1, 24);
    clreol; writeln('Descriptor base address : $',
        hexstr(get_segment_base_address(sel), 8));
    clreol; write('Descriptor limit : ', get_segment_limit(sel));
end;

function makechar(ch : char; color : byte) : Word;
```

---

```

begin
    result := byte(ch) or (color shl 8);
end;

begin
    seg_move(dosmemselector, linB8000, get_ds, longint(@text_save),
        screensize);
    text_oldx := wherex; text_oldy := wherey;
    seg_fillword(dosmemselector, linB8000, screensize div 2,
        makechar(' ', Black or (Black shl 4)));
    status('Creating selector ''text_sel'' to a part of ' +
        'text screen memory');
    text_sel := allocate_ldt_descriptors(1);
    set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
        linB8000 + bytespercell * maxx * 1);
    set_segment_limit(text_sel, screensize - 1 - bytespercell *
        maxx * 3);
    selinfo(text_sel);

    status('and clearing entire memory selected by ''text_sel'' +
        ' descriptor');
    seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
        makechar(' ', LightBlue shl 4));

    status('Notice that only the memory described by the ' +
        ' descriptor changed, nothing else');

    status('Now reducing it''s limit and base and setting it''s ' +
        'described memory');
    set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
        get_segment_base_address(text_sel) + bytespercell * maxx);
    set_segment_limit(text_sel,
        get_segment_limit(text_sel) - bytespercell * maxx * 2);
    selinfo(text_sel);
    status('Notice that the base addr increased by one line but ' +
        'the limit decreased by 2 lines');
    status('This should give you the hint that the limit is ' +
        'relative to the base');
    seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
        makechar(#176, LightMagenta or Brown shl 4));

    status('Now let''s get crazy and copy 10 lines of data from ' +
        'the previously saved screen');
    seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), text_sel,
        maxx * bytespercell * 2, maxx * bytespercell * 10);

    status('At last freeing the descriptor and restoring the old ' +
        'screen contents..');
    status('I hope this little program may give you some hints on ' +
        'working with descriptors');
    free_ldt_descriptor(text_sel);
    seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), dosmemselector,
        linB8000, screensize);
    gotoxy(text_oldx, text_oldy);
end.

```

---

### 16.18.2 allocate\_memory\_block

Synopsis: Allocate a block of linear memory

Declaration: `function allocate_memory_block(size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of linear memory.

Parameters:

**size:**Size of requested linear memory block in bytes.

Returned values: blockhandle - the memory handle to this memory block. Linear address of the requested memory.

**Remark:** *warning* According to my DPMI docs this function is not implemented correctly. Normally you should also get a blockhandle to this block after successful operation. This handle can then be used to free the memory block afterwards or use this handle for other purposes. Since the function isn't implemented correctly, and doesn't return a blockhandle, the block can't be deallocated and is hence unusable ! This function doesn't allocate any descriptors for this block, it's the applications responsibility to allocate and initialize for accessing this memory.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `free_memory_block` (339)

### 16.18.3 copyfromdos

Synopsis: Copy data from DOS to to heap

Declaration: `procedure copyfromdos(var addr;len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from the pre-allocated dos memory transfer buffer to the heap.

Parameters:

**addr**data to copy to.

**len**number of bytes to copy to heap.

Notes: Can only be used in conjunction with the dos memory transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `tb_size` (362), `transfer_buffer` (362), `copytodos` (336)

### 16.18.4 copytodos

Synopsis: Copy data from heap to DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure copytodos(var addr;len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from heap to the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Parameters:

**addr**data to copy from.

**len**number of bytes to copy to dos memory buffer.

Notes: This function fails if you try to copy more bytes than the transfer buffer is in size. It can only be used in conjunction with the transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `tb_size` (362), `transfer_buffer` (362), `copyfromdos` (336)

### 16.18.5 `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor`

Synopsis: Create new descriptor from existing descriptor

Declaration: `function create_code_segment_alias_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Creates a new descriptor that has the same base and limit as the specified descriptor.

Parameters:

**seg**Descriptor.

Return values: The data selector (alias).

Notes: In effect, the function returns a copy of the descriptor. The descriptor alias returned by this function will not track changes to the original descriptor. In other words, if an alias is created with this function, and the base or limit of the original segment is then changed, the two descriptors will no longer map the same memory.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_limit` (361), `set_segment_base_address` (360)

### 16.18.6 `disable`

Synopsis: Disable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure disable`

Visibility: default

Description: Disables all hardware interrupts by execution a CLI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `enable` (339)

### 16.18.7 `dpmi_dosmemfillchar`

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a character

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillchar(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` characters `c`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempget` (338), `dpmi_dosmemget` (338), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (338), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (338)

### 16.18.8 dpmi\_dosmemfillword

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a word value

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillword(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt;  
w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillword` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` words `W`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (338), `dpmi_dosmemget` (338), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (337), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (338)

### 16.18.9 dpmi\_dosmemget

Synopsis: Move data from DOS memory to DPMI memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemget(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempout` moves `count` bytes of data from the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs` to DPMI memory indicated by `data`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (338), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (338), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (337), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (338)

### 16.18.10 dpmi\_dosmemmove

Synopsis: Move DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemmove(sseg: Word; sofs: Word; dseg: Word; dofs: Word;  
count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemmove` moves `count` bytes from DOS memory `sseg,sofs` to `dseg,dofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (338), `dpmi_dosmemget` (338), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (337), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (338)

### 16.18.11 dpmi\_dosmempout

Synopsis: Move data from DPMI memory to DOS memory.

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmempout(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempout` moves `count` bytes of data from `data` to the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemget` (338), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (338), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (337), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (338)

**16.18.12 enable**

Synopsis: Enable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure enable`

Visibility: default

Description: Enables all hardware interrupts by executing a STI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: [disable \(337\)](#)

**16.18.13 free\_ldt\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Free a descriptor

Declaration: `function free_ldt_descriptor(d: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated descriptor.

Parameters:

**des**The descriptor to be freed.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. Notes: After this call this selector is invalid and must not be used for any memory operations anymore. Each descriptor allocated with `allocate_ldt_descriptors (333)` must be freed individually with this function, even if it was previously allocated as a part of a contiguous array of descriptors.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors (333)`.

Errors: Check the `int31error (333)` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors (333)`, `get_next_selector_increment_value (343)`

**16.18.14 free\_memory\_block**

Synopsis: Free allocated memory block

Declaration: `function free_memory_block(blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated memory block.

Parameters:

**blockhandle**the handle to the memory area to free.

Return value: `True` if successful, `false` otherwise. Notes: Frees memory that was previously allocated with `allocate_memory_block (336)` . This function doesn't free any descriptors mapped to this block, it's the application's responsibility.

Errors: Check `int31error (333)` variable.

See also: `allocate_memory_block (336)`

### 16.18.15 free\_rm\_callback

Synopsis: Release real mode callback.

Declaration: `function free_rm_callback(var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Releases a real mode callback address that was previously allocated with the `get_rm_callback` (344) function.

Parameters:

**intaddr** real mode address buffer returned by `get_rm_callback` (344) .

Return values: True if successful, False if not

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (344).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (360), `get_rm_callback` (344)

### 16.18.16 get\_cs

Synopsis: Get CS selector

Declaration: `function get_cs : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the cs selector.

Return value: The content of the cs segment register.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (359).

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (341), `get_ss` (349)

### 16.18.17 get\_descriptor\_access\_right

Synopsis: Get descriptor's access rights

Declaration: `function get_descriptor_access_right(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Gets the access rights of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**d** selector to descriptor.

Return value: Access rights bit field.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `set_descriptor_access_right` (358)

**16.18.18 get\_ds**

Synopsis: Get DS Selector

Declaration: `function get_ds : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ds selector.

Return values: The content of the ds segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_cs` (340), `get_ss` (349)

**16.18.19 get\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Return current exception handler

Declaration: `function get_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_exception_handler` returns the exception handler for exception E in intaddr. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (358), `get_pm_exception_handler` (344)

**16.18.20 get\_linear\_addr**

Synopsis: Convert physical to linear address

Declaration: `function get_linear_addr(phys_addr: LongInt; size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a physical address into a linear address.

Parameters:

**phys\_addr** physical address of device.

**size** Size of region to map in bytes.

Return value: Linear address that can be used to access the physical memory. Notes: It's the applications responsibility to allocate and set up a descriptor for access to the memory. This function shouldn't be used to map real mode addresses.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_limit` (361), `set_segment_base_address` (360)

**16.18.21 get\_meminfo**

Synopsis: Return information on the available memory

Declaration: `function get_meminfo(var meminfo: tmeminfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns information about the amount of available physical memory, linear address space, and disk space for page swapping.

Parameters:

**meminfo**buffer to fill memory information into.

Return values: Due to an implementation bug this function always returns `False`, but it always succeeds.

**Remark:** Notes: Only the first field of the returned structure is guaranteed to contain a valid value. Any fields that are not supported by the DPMI host will be set by the host to `-1` (`0FFFFFFFFH`) to indicate that the information is not available. The size of the pages used by the DPMI host can be obtained with the `get_page_size` (343) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `get_page_size` (343)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/meminfo.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

var
    meminfo : tmeminfo;

begin
    get_meminfo(meminfo);
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln('Error getting DPMI memory information... Halting');
        Writeln('DPMI error number : ', int31error);
    end else begin
        with meminfo do begin
            Writeln('Largest available free block : ',
                available_memory div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (available_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum available unlocked pages : ',
                    available_pages);
            if (available_lockable_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum lockable available pages : ',
                    available_lockable_pages);
            if (linear_space <> -1) then
                Writeln('Linear address space size : ',
                    linear_space*get_page_size div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (unlocked_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of unlocked pages : ',
                    unlocked_pages);
            if (available_physical_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of free pages : ',
                    available_physical_pages);
            if (total_physical_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of physical pages : ',

```

```

                                total_physical_pages);
    if (free_linear_space <> -1) then
        WriteLn('Free linear address space : ',
                free_linear_space*get_page_size div 1024,
                ' kbytes');
    if (max_pages_in_paging_file <> -1) then
        WriteLn('Maximum size of paging file : ',
                max_pages_in_paging_file*get_page_size div 1024,
                ' kbytes');
    end;
end;
end.
```

---

### 16.18.22 get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value

Synopsis: Return selector increment value

Declaration: function get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value : Word

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the selector increment value when allocating multiple subsequent descriptors via allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (333).

Return value: Selector increment value.

**Remark:** Notes: Because allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (333) only returns the selector for the first descriptor and so the value returned by this function can be used to calculate the selectors for subsequent descriptors in the array.

Errors: Check the int31error (333) variable.

See also: allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (333), free\_ldt\_descriptor (339)

### 16.18.23 get\_page\_size

Synopsis: Return the page size

Declaration: function get\_page\_size : LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of a single memory page.

Return value: Size of a single page in bytes.

**Remark:** The returned size is typically 4096 bytes.

For an example, see get\_meminfo (342).

Errors: Check the int31error (333) variable.

See also: get\_meminfo (342)

### 16.18.24 `get_pm_exception_handler`

Synopsis: Get protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_pm_exception_handler` returns the protected mode exception handler for exception `E` in `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` (341), `set_pm_exception_handler` (359)

### 16.18.25 `get_pm_interrupt`

Synopsis: Return protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the address of a current protected mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt handler number you want the address to.

**intaddr** buffer to store address.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark:** The returned address is a protected mode selector:offset address.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (359).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `set_pm_interrupt` (359), `set_rm_interrupt` (360), `get_rm_interrupt` (347)

### 16.18.26 `get_rm_callback`

Synopsis: Return real mode callback

Declaration: `function get_rm_callback(pm_func: pointer; const reg: trealregs; var rmcb: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a unique real mode `segment:offset` address, known as a "real mode callback," that will transfer control from real mode to a protected mode procedure.

Parameters:

**pm\_func** pointer to the protected mode callback function.

**reg** supplied registers structure.

**rmcb** buffer to real mode address of callback function.

Return values: `True` if successful, otherwise `False`.

**Remark:** Callback addresses obtained with this function can be passed by a protected mode program for example to an interrupt handler, device driver, or TSR, so that the real mode program can call procedures within the protected mode program or notify the protected mode program of an event. The contents of the supplied `regs` structure is not valid after function call, but only at the time of the actual callback.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `free_rm_callback` (340)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/callback.pp`

---

```

{$ASMMODE ATT}
{$MODE FPC}

uses
    crt ,
    go32;

const
    mouseint = $33;

var
    mouse_regs      : trealregs; external name '___v2prt0_rmcb_regs';
    mouse_seginfo   : tseginfo;

var
    mouse_numbuttons : longint;

    mouse_action     : word;
    mouse_x, mouse_y : Word;
    mouse_b          : Word;

    userproc_installed : Longbool;
    userproc_length   : Longint;
    userproc_proc      : pointer;

procedure callback_handler; assembler;
asm
    pushw %ds
    pushl %eax
    movw %es, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds

    cmpl $1, USERPROC_INSTALLED
    jne .LNoCallback
    pushal
    movw DOSmemSELECTOR, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs
    call *USERPROC_PROC
    popal
.LNoCallback:

    popl %eax
    popw %ds

    pushl %eax

```

```

    movl (%esi), %eax
    movl %eax, %es: 42(%edi)
    addw $4, %es:46(%edi)
    popl %eax
    iret
end;
procedure mouse_dummy; begin end;

procedure textuserproc;
begin
    mouse_b := mouse_regs.bx;
    mouse_x := (mouse_regs.cx shr 3) + 1;
    mouse_y := (mouse_regs.dx shr 3) + 1;
end;

procedure install_mouse(userproc : pointer; userproclen : longint);
var r : trealregs;
begin
    r.eax := $0; realintr(mouseint, r);
    if (r.eax <> $FFFF) then begin
        WriteLn('No Microsoft compatible mouse found');
        WriteLn('A Microsoft compatible mouse driver is necessary ',
            'to run this example');
        halt;
    end;
    if (r.bx = $ffff) then mouse_numbuttons := 2
    else mouse_numbuttons := r.bx;
    WriteLn(mouse_numbuttons, ' button Microsoft compatible mouse ',
        ' found. ');
    if (userproc <> nil) then begin
        userproc_proc := userproc;
        userproc_installed := true;
        userproc_length := userproclen;
        lock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
    end else begin
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    lock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    lock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    lock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    lock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    lock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));
    lock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));

    lock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    lock_data(mouse_seginf, sizeof(mouse_seginf));
    lock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
    get_rm_callback(@callback_handler, mouse_regs, mouse_seginf);
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := $7f;
    r.edx := longint(mouse_seginf.offset);
    r.es := mouse_seginf.segment;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    r.eax := $01;
    realintr(mouseint, r);

```

```

end;

procedure remove_mouse;
var
    r : trealregs;
begin
    r.eax := $02; realintr(mouseint, r);
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := 0; r.edx := 0; r.es := 0;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    free_rm_callback(mouse_seginfo);
    if (userproc_installed) then begin
        unlock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    unlock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    unlock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    unlock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    unlock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    unlock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));
    unlock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));

    unlock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    unlock_data(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo));
    unlock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
    fillchar(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo), 0);
end;

begin
    install_mouse(@textuserproc, 400);
    Writeln('Press any key to exit...');
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('MouseX : ', mouse_x:2, ' MouseY : ', mouse_y:2,
            ' Buttons : ', mouse_b:2);
    end;
    remove_mouse;
end.

```

---

### 16.18.27 get\_rm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Get real mode interrupt vector

Declaration: `function get_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the contents of the current machine's real mode interrupt vector for the specified interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt vector number.

**intaddr** buffer to store real mode segment:offset address.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** The returned address is a real mode segment address, which isn't valid in protected mode.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (360), `set_pm_interrupt` (359), `get_pm_interrupt` (344)

### 16.18.28 `get_run_mode`

Synopsis: Return current run mode

Declaration: `function get_run_mode : Word`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the current mode your application runs with.

Return values: One of the constants used by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_run_mode` (348)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/getrunmd.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

begin
    case (get_run_mode) of
        rm_unknown :
            WriteLn( 'Unknown environment found' );
        rm_raw :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently running in raw mode ',
                '(without HIMEM)' );
        rm_xms :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently using HIMEM.SYS only' );
        rm_vcpi :
            WriteLn( 'VCPI server detected. You''re using HIMEM and ',
                'EMM386' );
        rm_dpml :
            WriteLn( 'DPML detected. You''re using a DPML host like ',
                'a windows DOS box or CWSDPML' );
    end;
end.
```

---

### 16.18.29 `get_segment_base_address`

Synopsis: Return base address from descriptor table

Declaration: `function get_segment_base_address(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the 32-bit linear base address from the descriptor table for the specified segment.

Parameters:

`d` selector of the descriptor you want the base address of.

Return values: Linear base address of specified descriptor.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_base_address` (360), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_limit` (361), `get_segment_limit` (349)

### 16.18.30 `get_segment_limit`

Synopsis: Return segment limit from descriptor

Declaration: `function get_segment_limit(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a descriptors segment limit.

Parameters:

**d**selector.

Return value: Limit of the descriptor in bytes.

Errors: Returns zero if descriptor is invalid.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_limit` (361), `set_segment_base_address` (360), `get_segment_base_address` (348)

### 16.18.31 `get_ss`

Synopsis: Return SS selector

Declaration: `function get_ss : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ss selector.

Return values: The content of the ss segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (341), `get_cs` (340)

### 16.18.32 `global_dos_alloc`

Synopsis: Allocate DOS real mode memory

Declaration: `function global_dos_alloc(bytes: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**bytesize** of requested real mode memory.

Return values: The low word of the returned value contains the selector to the allocated dos memory block, the high word the corresponding real mode segment value. The offset value is always zero. This function allocates memory from dos memory pool, i.e. memory below the 1 MB boundary that is controlled by dos. Such memory blocks are typically used to exchange data with real mode programs, TSRs, or device drivers. The function returns both the real mode segment base address of the block and one descriptor that can be used by protected mode applications to access the block. This function should only be used for temporary buffers to get real mode information (e.g. interrupts that need a data structure in ES:(E)DI), because every single block needs an unique selector. The returned selector should only be freed by a `global_dos_free` (351) call.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `global_dos_free` (351)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/buffer.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

procedure dosalloc(var selector : word;
    var segment : word; size : longint);
var
    res : longint;
begin
    res := global_dos_alloc(size);
    selector := word(res);
    segment := word(res shr 16);
end;

procedure dosfree(selector : word);
begin
    global_dos_free(selector);
end;

type
    VBEInfoBuf = packed record
        Signature : array[0..3] of char;
        Version : Word;
        reserved : array[0..505] of byte;
    end;

var
    selector ,
    segment : Word;

    r : trealregs;
    infobuf : VBEInfoBuf;

begin
    fillchar(r, sizeof(r), 0);
    fillchar(infobuf, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf), 0);
    dosalloc(selector, segment, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf));
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        WriteLn('Error while allocating real mode memory, halting');
        halt;
    end;
    infobuf.Signature := 'VBE2';
    dosmempnt(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));

```

---

```

    r.ax := $4f00; r.es := segment;
    realintr($10, r);
    dosmemget(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));
    dosfree(selector);
    if (r.ax <> $4f) then begin
        Writeln('VBE BIOS extension not available, function call ',
            'failed');
        halt;
    end;
    if (infobuf.signature[0] = 'V') and
        (infobuf.signature[1] = 'E') and
        (infobuf.signature[2] = 'S') and
        (infobuf.signature[3] = 'A') then begin
        Writeln('VBE version ', hi(infobuf.version), '.',
            lo(infobuf.version), ' detected');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 16.18.33 global\_dos\_free

Synopsis: Free DOS memory block

Declaration: `function global_dos_free(selector: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated dos memory block.

Parameters:

**selector** selector to the dos memory block.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** The descriptor allocated for the memory block is automatically freed and hence invalid for further use. This function should only be used for memory allocated by `global_dos_alloc` (349).

For an example, see `global_dos_alloc` (349).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `global_dos_alloc` (349)

### 16.18.34 inportb

Synopsis: Read byte from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportb(port: Word) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 byte from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportb` (354), `inportw` (352), `inportl` (352)

**16.18.35 inportl**

Synopsis: Read longint from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportl(port: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 longint from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: [outportb \(354\)](#), [inportb \(351\)](#), [inportw \(352\)](#)

**16.18.36 inportw**

Synopsis: Read word from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportw(port: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 word from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: [outportw \(355\)](#), [inportb \(351\)](#), [inportl \(352\)](#)

**16.18.37 lock\_code**

Synopsis: Lock code memory range

Declaration: `function lock_code(functionaddr: pointer; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which is in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of the function to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see [get\\_rm\\_callback \(344\)](#).

Errors: Check the [int31error \(333\)](#) variable.

See also: [lock\\_linear\\_region \(353\)](#), [lock\\_data \(353\)](#), [unlock\\_linear\\_region \(363\)](#), [unlock\\_data \(363\)](#), [unlock\\_code \(362\)](#)

**16.18.38 lock\_data**

Synopsis: Lock data memory range

Declaration: `function lock_data(var data;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of data to be locked.

**size** length of data to be locked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (344).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (353), `lock_code` (352), `unlock_linear_region` (363), `unlock_data` (363), `unlock_code` (362)

**16.18.39 lock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Lock linear memory region

Declaration: `function lock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory region to prevent swapping of it.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** the linear address of the memory are to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `lock_data` (353), `lock_code` (352), `unlock_linear_region` (363), `unlock_data` (363), `unlock_code` (362)

**16.18.40 map\_device\_in\_memory\_block**

Synopsis: Map a device into program's memory space

Declaration: `function map_device_in_memory_block(handle: LongInt;offset: LongInt;  
pagecount: LongInt;device: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `map_device_in_memory_block` allows to map a device in memory. This function is a direct call of the extender. For more information about it's arguments, see the extender documentation.

**16.18.41 outportb**

Synopsis: Write byte to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportb(port: Word; data: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 byte of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `inportb` ([351](#)), `outportl` ([354](#)), `outportw` ([355](#))

**Listing:** `./go32ex/outport.pp`

---

**uses**

`crt ,  
go32;`

**begin**

`outportb($61, $ff);  
delay(50);  
outportb($61, $0);`

**end.**

---

**16.18.42 outportl**

Synopsis: Write longint to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportl(port: Word; data: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 longint of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see `outportb` ([354](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `inportl` ([352](#)), `outportw` ([355](#)), `outportb` ([354](#))

**16.18.43 outportw**

Synopsis: Write word to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportw(port: Word; data: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 word of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see `outportb` (354).

Errors: None.

See also: `inportw` (352), `outportl` (354), `outportb` (354)

**16.18.44 realintr**

Synopsis: Simulate interrupt

Declaration: `function realintr(intnr: Word; var regs: trealregs) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Simulates an interrupt in real mode.

Parameters:

**intnr** interrupt number to issue in real mode.

**regs** registers data structure.

Return values: The supplied registers data structure contains the values that were returned by the real mode interrupt. `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark:** The function transfers control to the address specified by the real mode interrupt vector of `intnr`. The real mode handler must return by executing an `IRET`.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

**Listing:** `./go32ex/flags.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

var
    r : trealregs;

begin
    r.ax := $5300;
    r.bx := 0;
    realintr($15, r);
    if ((r.flags and carryflag)=0) then begin
        WriteLn('APM v', (r.ah and $f), '.',
                (r.al shr 4), (r.al and $f), ' detected');
    end else
        WriteLn('APM not present');
end.

```

---

### 16.18.45 request\_linear\_region

Synopsis: Request linear address region.

Declaration: `function request_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt;  
var blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `request_linear_region` requests a linear range of addresses of size `Size`, starting at `linearaddr`. If successful, `True` is returned, and a handle to the address region is returned in `blockhandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

### 16.18.46 segment\_to\_descriptor

Synopsis: Map segment address to descriptor

Declaration: `function segment_to_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Maps a real mode segment (paragraph) address onto an descriptor that can be used by a protected mode program to access the same memory.

Parameters:

**seg** the real mode segment you want the descriptor to.

Return values: Descriptor to real mode segment address.

**Remark:** The returned descriptors limit will be set to 64 kB. Multiple calls to this function with the same segment address will return the same selector. Descriptors created by this function can never be modified or freed. Programs which need to examine various real mode addresses using the same selector should use the function `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333) and change the base address as necessary.

For an example, see `seg_fillchar` (356).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `free_ldt_descriptor` (339), `set_segment_base_address` (360)

### 16.18.47 seg\_fillchar

Synopsis: Fill segment with byte value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillchar(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** byte data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

Errors: None.

See also: [seg\\_move \(358\)](#), [seg\\_fillword \(357\)](#), [dosmemfillchar \(330\)](#), [dosmemfillword \(330\)](#), [dosmemget \(331\)](#), [dosmempur \(331\)](#), [dosmemmove \(331\)](#)

**Listing:** ./go32ex/vgasel.pp

---

**uses**

go32;

**var**

vgasel : Word;  
r : trealregs;

**begin**

r.eax := \$13; realintr(\$10, r);  
vgasel := segment\_to\_descriptor(\$A000);  
seg\_fillchar(vgasel, 0, 64000, #15);  
**readln**;  
r.eax := \$3; realintr(\$10, r);

**end.**

---

### 16.18.48 seg\_fillword

Synopsis: Fill segment with word value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillword(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** word data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

For an example, see [allocate\\_ldt\\_descriptors \(333\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [seg\\_move \(358\)](#), [seg\\_fillchar \(356\)](#), [dosmemfillchar \(330\)](#), [dosmemfillword \(330\)](#), [dosmemget \(331\)](#), [dosmempur \(331\)](#), [dosmemmove \(331\)](#)

**16.18.49 seg\_move**

Synopsis: Move data between 2 locations

Declaration: `procedure seg_move(sseg: Word; source: LongInt; dseg: Word; dest: LongInt; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data between two memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg**source selector.

**source**source offset.

**dseg**destination selector.

**dest**destination offset.

**count**size in bytes to copy.

Return values: None.

**Remark:** Overlapping is only checked if the source selector is equal to the destination selector. No range check is done.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333).

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_fillchar` (356), `seg_fillword` (357), `dosmemfillchar` (330), `dosmemfillword` (330), `dosmemget` (331), `dosmemput` (331), `dosmemmove` (331)

**16.18.50 set\_descriptor\_access\_right**

Synopsis: Set access rights to memory descriptor

Declaration: `function set_descriptor_access_right(d: Word; w: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_descriptor_access_right` sets the access rights for descriptor `d` to `w`

**16.18.51 set\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Set exception handler

Declaration: `function set_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_exception_handler` sets the exception handler for exception `E` to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` (341), `set_pm_exception_handler` (359)

### 16.18.52 set\_pm\_exception\_handler

Synopsis: Set protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_pm_exception_handler` sets the protected mode exception handler for exception E to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (358), `get_pm_exception_handler` (344)

### 16.18.53 set\_pm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Set protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the address of the protected mode handler for an interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** number of protected mode interrupt to set.

**intaddr** selector:offset address to the interrupt vector.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** The address supplied must be a valid `selector:offset` protected mode address.

Errors: Check the `int3lerror` (333) variable.

See also: `get_pm_interrupt` (344), `set_rm_interrupt` (360), `get_rm_interrupt` (347)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/intpm.pp`

---

**uses**

`crt ,  
go32;`

**const**

`int1c = $1c;`

**var**

`oldint1c : tseginfo;  
newint1c : tseginfo;`

`int1c_counter : Longint;`

`int1c_ds : Word; external name '___v2prt0_ds_alias';`

**procedure** `int1c_handler`; **assembler**;

**asm**

`cli  
pushw %ds  
pushw %ax`

---

```

    movw %cs:int1c_ds, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    incl int1c_counter
    popw %ax
    popw %ds
    sti
    iret
end;

var i : Longint;

begin
    newint1c.offset := @int1c_handler;
    newint1c.segment := get_cs;
    get_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
    Writeln('-- Press any key to exit --');
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, newint1c);
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('Number of interrupts occurred : ', int1c_counter);
    end;
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
end.

```

---

#### 16.18.54 set\_rm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Set real mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a real mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** the interrupt vector number to set.

**intaddr** address of new interrupt vector.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False.

**Remark:** The address supplied MUST be a real mode segment address, not a `selector:offset` address. So the interrupt handler must either reside in dos memory (below 1 Mb boundary) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address with `get_rm_callback` (344).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `get_rm_interrupt` (347), `set_pm_interrupt` (359), `get_pm_interrupt` (344), `get_rm_callback` (344)

#### 16.18.55 set\_segment\_base\_address

Synopsis: Set descriptor's base address

Declaration: `function set_segment_base_address(d: Word; s: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the 32-bit linear base address of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**dselector.**

snew base address of the descriptor.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `get_segment_base_address` (348), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_limit` (361), `get_segment_base_address` (348), `get_segment_limit` (349)

### 16.18.56 `set_segment_limit`

Synopsis: Set descriptor limit

Declaration: `function set_segment_limit(d: Word; s: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the limit of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**dselector.**

snew limit of the descriptor.

Return values: Returns `True` if successful, else `False`.

**Remark:** The new limit specified must be the byte length of the segment - 1. Segment limits bigger than or equal to 1MB must be page aligned, they must have the lower 12 bits set.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (333), `set_segment_base_address` (360), `get_segment_limit` (349), `set_segment_limit` (361)

### 16.18.57 `tb_offset`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer offset

Declaration: `function tb_offset : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_offset` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (362), `tb_segment` (361), `tb_size` (362)

### 16.18.58 `tb_segment`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer segment

Declaration: `function tb_segment : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_segment` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (362), `tb_offset` (361), `tb_size` (362)

**16.18.59 tb\_size**

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer memory buffer size

Declaration: `function tb_size : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Return values: The size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer. This block always seems to be 16k in size, but don't rely on this.

Errors: None.

See also: [transfer\\_buffer \(362\)](#), [copyfromdos \(336\)](#), [copytodos \(336\)](#)

**16.18.60 transfer\_buffer**

Synopsis: Return offset of DOS transfer buffer

Declaration: `function transfer_buffer : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `transfer_buffer` returns the offset of the transfer buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: [tb\\_size \(362\)](#)

**16.18.61 unlock\_code**

Synopsis: Unlock code segment

Declaration: `function unlock_code(functionaddr: pointer;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of function to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see [get\\_rm\\_callback \(344\)](#).

Errors: Check the `int31error (333)` variable.

See also: [unlock\\_linear\\_region \(363\)](#), [unlock\\_data \(363\)](#), [lock\\_linear\\_region \(353\)](#), [lock\\_data \(353\)](#), [lock\\_code \(352\)](#)

**16.18.62 unlock\_data**

Synopsis: Unlock data segment

Declaration: `function unlock_data(var data; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (344).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (363), `unlock_code` (362), `lock_linear_region` (353), `lock_data` (353), `lock_code` (352)

**16.18.63 unlock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Unlock linear memory region

Declaration: `function unlock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a previously locked linear region range to allow it to be swapped out again if needed.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** linear address of the memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (333) variable.

See also: `unlock_data` (363), `unlock_code` (362), `lock_linear_region` (353), `lock_data` (353), `lock_code` (352)

# Chapter 17

## Reference for unit 'gpm'

### 17.1 Used units

Table 17.1: Used units by unit 'gpm'

Name	Page
baseUnix	<a href="#">364</a>

### 17.2 Overview

The GPM unit implements an interface to `libgpm`, the console program for mouse handling. This unit was created by Peter Vreman, and is only available on linux.

When this unit is used, your program is linked to the C libraries, so you must take care of the C library version. Also, it will only work with version 1.17 or higher of the `libgpm` library.

### 17.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 17.3.1 Constants

`GPM_BOT` = 2

Bottom of area.

`GPM_B_LEFT` = 4

Left mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_MIDDLE` = 2

Middle mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_RIGHT` = 1

Right mouse button identifier.

GPM\_DOUBLE = 32

Mouse double click event.

GPM\_DOWN = 4

Mouse button down event.

GPM\_DRAG = 2

Mouse drag event.

GPM\_ENTER = 512

Enter area event.

GPM\_HARD = 256

?

GPM\_LEAVE = 1024

Leave area event.

GPM\_LEFT = 4

Left side of area.

GPM\_MAGIC = \$47706D4C

Constant identifying GPM in gpm\_Open ([372](#)).

GPM\_MFLAG = 128

Motion flag.

GPM\_MOVE = 1

Mouse move event.

GPM\_NODE\_CTL = GPM\_NODE\_DEV

Control socket

GPM\_NODE\_DEV = '/dev/gpmctl'

Device socket filename

GPM\_NODE\_DIR = \_PATH\_VARRUN

Where to write socket.

`GPM_NODE_DIR_MODE = 0775`

Mode of socket.

`GPM_NODE_FIFO = '/dev/gpmdata'`

FIFO name

`GPM_NODE_PID = '/var/run/gpm.pid'`

Name of PID file.

`GPM_RGT = 8`

Right side of area.

`GPM_SINGLE = 16`

Mouse single click event.

`GPM_TOP = 1`

Top of area.

`GPM_TRIPLE = 64`

Mouse triple click event.

`GPM_UP = 8`

Mouse button up event.

`_PATH_DEV = '/dev/'`

Location of `/dev` directory.

`_PATH_VARRUN = '/var/run/'`

Location of run PID files directory.

### 17.3.2 Types

`Pgpmconnect = Pgpm_connect`

Pointer to `TGpmConnect` (368) record.

`Pgpmevent = Pgpm_event`

Pointer to TGpmEvent (368) record

```
Pgpmroi = Pgpm_roi
```

Pointer to TGpmRoi (368) record.

```
Pgpm_connect = ^TGpm_connect
```

Pointer to TGpm\_Connect (368) record.

```
Pgpm_event = ^Tgpm_event
```

Pointer to TGpm\_Event (368) record

```
Pgpm_roi = ^Tgpm_roi
```

Pointer to Tgpm\_roi (368) record.

```
Tgpmconnect = Tgpm_connect
```

Alias for TGpm\_Connect (368) record.

```
TGpmEtype = LongInt
```

Type for event type.

```
Tgpmevent = Tgpm_event
```

Alias for TGPM\_EVent (368) record

```
TGpmHandler = function(var event: Tgpmevent; clientdata: pointer)
                  : LongInt
```

Mouse event handler callback.

```
TGpmMargin = LongInt
```

Type to hold area margin.

```
Tgpmroi = Tgpm_roi
```

Alias for TGpm\_roi (368)Record

```
Tgpm_connect = packed record
    eventMask : Word;
    defaultMask : Word;
    minMod : Word;
    maxMod : Word;
    pid : LongInt;
    vc : LongInt;
end
```

GPM server connection information.

```
Tgpm_event = packed record
  buttons : Byte;
  modifiers : Byte;
  vc : Word;
  dx : Word;
  dy : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word;
  EventType : TGpmEtype;
  clicks : LongInt;
  margin : TGpmMargin;
  wdx : Word;
  wdy : Word;
end
```

Tgpm\_event describes the events that are reported by GPM.

```
Tgpm_roi = packed record
  xmin : Integer;
  xmax : Integer;
  ymin : Integer;
  ymax : Integer;
  minmod : Word;
  maxmod : Word;
  eventmask : Word;
  owned : Word;
  handler : TGpmHandler;
  clientdata : pointer;
  prev : Pgpm_roi;
  next : Pgpm_roi;
end
```

Record used to define regions of interest.

### 17.3.3 Variables

```
gpm_current_roi : Pgpm_roi
```

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

```
gpm_handler : TGpmHandler
```

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

```
gpm_roi : Pgpm_roi
```

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

```
gpm_roi_data : pointer
```

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi_handler : TGpmHandler`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

## 17.4 Procedures and functions

### 17.4.1 Gpm\_AnyDouble

Synopsis: Check whether event has double click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyDouble(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnyDouble` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_DOUBLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (374), `Gpm_AnySingle` (369), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (374), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (374), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (369)

### 17.4.2 Gpm\_AnySingle

Synopsis: Check whether event has a single click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnySingle(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_SINGLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (374), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (369), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (374), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (374), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (369)

### 17.4.3 Gpm\_AnyTriple

Synopsis: Check whether event has a triple click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_TRIPLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (374), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (369), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (374), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (374), `Gpm_AnySingle` (369)

#### 17.4.4 gpm\_close

Synopsis: Close connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_close : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Close` closes the current connection, and pops the connection stack; this means that the previous connection becomes active again.

The function returns -1 if the current connection is not the last one, and it returns 0 if the current connection is the last one.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` ([370](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_Open` ([372](#))

#### 17.4.5 gpm\_fitvalues

Synopsis: Change coordinates to fit physical screen.

Declaration: `function gpm_fitvalues(var x: LongInt;var y: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_fitValues` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the visible screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValuesM` ([370](#))

#### 17.4.6 gpm\_fitvaluesM

Synopsis: Change coordinates to fit margin.

Declaration: `function gpm_fitvaluesM(var x: LongInt;var y: LongInt;margin: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_FitValuesM` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the margin indicated by `margin`. If `margin` is -1, then the values are fitted to the screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValues` ([370](#))

#### 17.4.7 gpm\_getevent

Synopsis: Get event from event queue.

Declaration: `function gpm_getevent(var event: Tgpm_event) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Gpm_GetEvent` Reads an event from the file descriptor `gpm_fd`. This file is only for internal use and should never be called by a client application.

It returns 1 on succes, and -1 on failue.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` ([372](#))

**Listing:** `./gpmex/gpmex.pp`

---

```

program gpmex;

{
  Example program to demonstrate the use of the gpm unit.
}

uses gpm;

var
  connect : TGPMConnect;
  event : tgpmevent;

begin
  connect.EventMask:=GPM_MOVE or GPM_DRAG or GPM_DOWN or GPM_UP;
  connect.DefaultMask:=0;
  connect.MinMod:=0;
  connect.MaxMod:=0;
  if Gpm_Open(connect,0)=-1 then
    begin
      Writeln('No mouse handler present. ');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln('Click right button to end. ');
  Repeat
    gpm_getevent(Event);
    With Event do
      begin
        Write('Pos = ( ',X,', ',Y,', ') Buttons : ( ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_left)<>0 then
          write('left ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_right)<>0 then
          write('right ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_middle)<>0 then
          Write('middle ');
        Write(') Event : ');
        Case EventType and $F of
          GPM_MOVE: write('Move');
          GPM_DRAG: write('Drag');
          GPM_DOWN: write('Down');
          GPM_UP: write('Up');
        end;
        Writeln;
      end;
    Until (Event.Buttons and gpm_b_right)<>0;
    gpm_close;
  end.

```

---

### 17.4.8 gpm\_getsnapshot

Synopsis: Return servers' current image of mouse state.

Declaration: `function gpm_getsnapshot (eptr: Pgpmevent) : LongInt`  
`function gpm_getsnapshot (var eptr: Tgpmevent) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` returns the picture that the server has of the current situation in `Event`. This call will not read the current situation from the mouse file descriptor, but returns a buffered version.

The function returns the number of mouse buttons, or -1 if this information is not available.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` ([370](#))

### 17.4.9 gpm\_lowerroi

Synopsis: Lower a region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_lowerroi (which: Pgpm_roi; after: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_LowerRoi` lowers the region of interest `which` after `after`. If `after` is `Nil`, the region of interest is moved to the bottom of the stack.

The return value is the new top of the region-of-interest stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` ([373](#)), `Gpm_PopRoi` ([373](#)), `Gpm_PushRoi` ([373](#))

### 17.4.10 gpm\_open

Synopsis: Open connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_open (var conn: Tgpm_connect; flag: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Open` opens a new connection to the mouse server. The connection is described by the fields of the `conn` record of type `TGPMConnect` ([368](#)).

if `Flag` is 0, then the application only receives events that come from its own terminal device. If it is negative it will receive all events. If the value is positive then it is considered a console number to which to connect.

The return value is -1 on error, or the file descriptor used to communicate with the client. Under an X-Term the return value is -2.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` ([370](#)).

Errors: On Error, the return value is -1.

See also: `Gpm_Open` ([372](#))

### 17.4.11 gpm\_poproi

Synopsis: Pop region of interest from the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_poproi(which: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_PopRoi` pops the topmost region of interest from the stack. It returns the next element on the stack, or `Nil` if the current element was the last one.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (373), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (372), `Gpm_PushRoi` (373)

### 17.4.12 gpm\_pushroi

Synopsis: Push region of interest on the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_pushroi(x1: LongInt; y1: LongInt; x2: LongInt; y2: LongInt; mask: LongInt; fun: TGpmHandler; xtradata: pointer) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_PushRoi` puts a new *region of interest* on the stack. The region of interest is defined by a rectangle described by the corners (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2).

The mask describes which events the handler {fun} will handle; `ExtraData` will be put in the `xtradata` field of the {TGPM\_Roi} record passed to the fun handler.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (373), `Gpm_PopRoi` (373), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (372)

### 17.4.13 gpm\_raiseroi

Synopsis: Raise region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_raiseroi(which: Pgpm_roi; before: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` raises the *region of interest* which till it is on top of region before. If before is nil then the region is put on top of the stack. The returned value is the top of the stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_PushRoi` (373), `Gpm_PopRoi` (373), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (372)

### 17.4.14 gpm\_repeat

Synopsis: Check for presence of mouse event.

Declaration: `function gpm_repeat(millisec: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Repeat` returns 1 if no mouse event arrives in the next `millisec` milliseconds, it returns 0 otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_GetEvent \(370\)](#)

### 17.4.15 Gpm\_StrictDouble

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a double-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictDouble(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns `true` if `EventType` contains only a doubleclick event, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_StrictSingle \(374\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyTriple \(369\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyDouble \(369\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictTriple \(374\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnySingle \(369\)](#)

### 17.4.16 Gpm\_StrictSingle

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a single-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictSingle(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictSingle` returns `True` if `EventType` contains only a singleclick event, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_AnyTriple \(369\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictDouble \(374\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyDouble \(369\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictTriple \(374\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnySingle \(369\)](#)

### 17.4.17 Gpm\_StrictTriple

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a triple-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictTriple` returns `true` if `EventType` contains only a triple click event, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_AnyTriple \(369\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictDouble \(374\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyDouble \(369\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictSingle \(374\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnySingle \(369\)](#)

## Chapter 18

# Reference for unit 'Graph'

### 18.1 Categorized functions: Text and font handling

Functions to set texts on the screen.

Table 18.1:

Name	Description
GetTextSettings ( <a href="#">410</a> )	Get current text settings
InstallUserFont ( <a href="#">413</a> )	Install a new font
OutText ( <a href="#">414</a> )	Write text at current cursor position
OutTextXY ( <a href="#">401</a> )	Write text at coordinates X,Y
RegisterBGIFont ( <a href="#">416</a> )	Register a new font
SetTextJustify ( <a href="#">419</a> )	Set text justification
SetTextStyle ( <a href="#">420</a> )	Set text style
SetUserCharSize ( <a href="#">420</a> )	Set text size
TextHeight ( <a href="#">421</a> )	Calculate height of text
TextWidth ( <a href="#">421</a> )	Calculate width of text

### 18.2 Categorized functions: Filled drawings

Functions for drawing filled regions.

### 18.3 Categorized functions: Drawing primitives

Functions for simple drawing.

### 18.4 Categorized functions: Color management

All functions related to color management.

Table 18.2:

Name	Description
Bar3D (403)	Draw a filled 3D-style bar
Bar (403)	Draw a filled rectangle
FloodFill (405)	Fill starting from coordinate
FillEllipse (404)	Draw a filled ellipse
FillPoly (405)	Draw a filled polygone
GetFillPattern (407)	Get current fill pattern
GetFillSettings (407)	Get current fill settings
SetFillPattern (417)	Set current fill pattern
SetFillStyle (418)	Set current fill settings

Table 18.3:

Name	Description
Arc (402)	Draw an arc
Circle (400)	Draw a complete circle
DrawPoly (404)	Draw a polygone with N points
Ellipse (404)	Draw an ellipse
GetArcCoords (405)	Get arc coordinates
GetLineSettings (408)	Get current line drawing settings
Line (401)	Draw line between 2 points
LineRel (413)	Draw line relative to current position
LineTo (414)	Draw line from current position to absolute position
MoveRel (414)	Move cursor relative to current position
MoveTo (414)	Move cursor to absolute position
PieSlice (415)	Draw a pie slice
PutPixel (402)	Draw 1 pixel
Rectangle (415)	Draw a non-filled rectangle
Sector (416)	Draw a sector
SetLineStyle (418)	Set current line drawing style

## 18.5 Categorized functions: Screen management

General drawing screen management functions.

## 18.6 Categorized functions: Initialization

Initialization of the graphics screen.

## 18.7 Target specific issues: Linux

There are several issues on Linux that need to be taken care of:

The Linux version of the Graph unit uses the libvga library. This library works on the console, not under X.

If you get an error similar to

Table 18.4:

Name	Description
GetBkColor (406)	Get current background color
GetColor (406)	Get current foreground color
GetDefaultPalette (406)	Get default palette entries
GetMaxColor (408)	Get maximum valid color
GetPaletteSize (410)	Get size of palette for current mode
GetPixel (400)	Get color of selected pixel
GetPalette (410)	Get palette entry
SetAllPalette (402)	Set all colors in palette
SetBkColor (417)	Set background color
SetColor (417)	Set foreground color
SetPalette (419)	Set palette entry
SetRGBPalette (402)	Set palette entry with RGB values

Table 18.5:

Name	Description
ClearViewPort (400)	Clear the current viewport
GetImage (400)	Copy image from screen to memory
GetMaxX (409)	Get maximum X coordinate
GetMaxY (409)	Get maximum Y coordinate
GetX (411)	Get current X position
GetY (411)	Get current Y position
ImageSize (401)	Get size of selected image
GetViewSettings (410)	Get current viewport settings
PutImage (401)	Copy image from memory to screen
SetActivePage (402)	Set active video page
SetAspectRatio (416)	Set aspect ratio for drawing routines
SetViewPort (421)	Set current viewport
SetVisualPage (402)	Set visual page
SetWriteMode (421)	Set write mode for screen operations

```
/usr/bin/ld: cannot find -lvga
```

This can mean one of two things: either libvga and it's development package is not installed properly, or the directory where it is installed is not in the linker path.

To remedy the former, you should install both the libvga package and libvga-devel package (or compile and install from scratch).

To remedy the latter, you should add the path to the compiler command-line using the `-F` option.

Programs using **libvga** need root privileges to run. You can make them `setuid` root with the following command:

```
chown root.root myprogram
chmod u+s myprogram
```

The libvga library will give up the root privileges after it is initialized.

there is an experimental version of the Graphics library available that uses GGI to do all the drawing, but it is not well tested. It's called **ggigraph** and is distributed in source form only.

Table 18.6:

Name	Description
ClearDevice (403)	Empty the graphics screen
CloseGraph (403)	Finish drawing session, return to text mode
DetectGraph (404)	Detect graphical modes
GetAspectRatio (406)	Get aspect ratio of screen
GetModeRange (409)	Get range of valid modes for current driver
GraphDefaults (411)	Set defaults
GetDriverName (407)	Return name of graphical driver
GetGraphMode (408)	Return current or last used graphics mode
GetMaxMode (408)	Get maximum mode for current driver
GetModeName (409)	Get name of current mode
GraphErrorMsg (411)	String representation of graphical error
GraphResult (412)	Result of last drawing operation
InitGraph (412)	Initialize graphics drivers
InstallUserDriver (413)	Install a new driver
RegisterBGIDriver (415)	Register a new driver
RestoreCRTMode (416)	Go back to text mode
SetGraphMode (418)	Set graphical mode

Do not use the CRT unit together with the Graph unit: the console may end up in an unusable state. Instead, the `ncurses` unit may function fine.

## 18.8 Target specific issues: DOS

VESA modes (i.e., anything but 320x200x256 and 640x480x16) do not work under most installations of Windows NT, Windows 2000 and Windows XP. They also do not work for some people under Windows 98 and Windows ME, depending on their graphics drivers. However, the graph unit cannot detect this, because no errors are returned from the system. In such cases, the screen simply turns black, or will show garbage.

Nothing can be done about this, the reason is missing or buggy support in the graphics drivers of the operating system.

## 18.9 A word about mode selection

The graph unit was implemented for compatibility with the old Turbo Pascal graph unit. For this reason, the mode constants as they were defined in the Turbo Pascal graph unit are retained.

However, since

1. Video cards have evolved very much
2. Free Pascal runs on multiple platforms

it was decided to implement new mode and graphic driver constants, which are more independent of the specific platform the program runs on.

In this section we give a short explanation of the new mode system. the following drivers were defined:

```

D1bit = 11;
D2bit = 12;
D4bit = 13;
D6bit = 14; { 64 colors Half-brite mode - Amiga }
D8bit = 15;
D12bit = 16; { 4096 color modes HAM mode - Amiga }
D15bit = 17;
D16bit = 18;
D24bit = 19; { not yet supported }
D32bit = 20; { not yet supported }
D64bit = 21; { not yet supported }

lowNewDriver = 11;
highNewDriver = 21;

```

Each of these drivers specifies a desired color-depth.

The following modes have been defined:

```

detectMode = 30000;
m320x200 = 30001;
m320x256 = 30002; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m320x400 = 30003; { amiga/atari resolution }
m512x384 = 30004; { mac resolution }
m640x200 = 30005; { vga resolution }
m640x256 = 30006; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m640x350 = 30007; { vga resolution }
m640x400 = 30008;
m640x480 = 30009;
m800x600 = 30010;
m832x624 = 30011; { mac resolution }
m1024x768 = 30012;
m1280x1024 = 30013;
m1600x1200 = 30014;
m2048x1536 = 30015;

lowNewMode = 30001;
highNewMode = 30015;

```

These modes start at 30000 because Borland specified that the mode number should be ascending with increasing X resolution, and the new constants shouldn't interfere with the old ones.

The above constants can be used to set a certain color depth and resolution, as demonstrated in the below example.

If other modes than the ones above are supported by the graphics card, you will not be able to select them with this mechanism.

For this reason, there is also a 'dynamic' mode number, which is assigned at run-time. This number increases with increasing X resolution. It can be queried with the `getmoderange` call. This call will return the range of modes which are valid for a certain graphics driver. The numbers are guaranteed to be consecutive, and can be used to search for a certain resolution, as in the second example below.

Thus, the `getmoderange` function can be used to detect all available modes and drivers, as in the third example below:

## 18.10 Requirements

The unit Graph exports functions and procedures for graphical output. It requires at least a VGA-compatible Card or a VGA-Card with software-driver (min. **512Kb** video memory).

## 18.11 Overview

This document describes the `GRAPH` unit for Free Pascal, for all platforms. The unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl, but was later completely rewritten by Carl-Eric Codere to be completely portable. The unit is provided for compatibility only: It is recommended to use more modern graphical systems. The graph unit will allow to recompile old programs. They will work to some extent, but if the application has heavy graphical needs, it's recommended to use another set of graphical routines, suited to the platform the program should work on.

## 18.12 Constants, types and variables

### 18.12.1 Constants

AndPut = 3

Draw operation: use AND

```
AnsiToASCIITransTable : TCharsetTransTable = (#$00,$$01,$$02,$$03,$$04,$$05,$$06,$$07,
```

Default ansi transliteration table.

BkSlashFill = 5

Fill style: Diagonal (backslash) lines

```
black = 0
```

Color code: black.

```
blue = 1
```

Color code: blue

BoldFont = 10

Font number: Bold font.

BottomText = 0

Vertical text alignment: Align text to bottom

brown = 6

Color code: brown

`CenterLn = 2`

Line style: centered line

`CenterText = 1`

Horizontal text alignment: Center text

`ClipOff = false`

Viewport clipping off

`ClipOn = true`

Viewport clipping on

`CloseDotFill = 11`

Fill style: Closely spaced dotted lines

`CopyPut = 0`

Draw operation: use Copy

`CurrentDriver = -128`

Currently used driver

`cyan = 3`

Color code: Cyan

`D12bit = 16`

Mode: Depth 12 bit

`D15bit = 17`

Mode: Depth 15 bit

`D16bit = 18`

Mode: Depth 16 bit

`D1bit = 11`

Mode: Depth 1 bit

`D24bit = 19`

Mode: Depth 24 bit

D2bit = 12

Mode: Depth 2 bit

D32bit = 20

Mode: Depth 32 bit

D4bit = 13

Mode: Depth 4 bit

D64bit = 21

Mode: Depth 64 bit

D6bit = 14

Mode: Depth 6 bit

D8bit = 15

Mode: Depth 8 bit

darkgray = 8

Color code: Dark gray

DashedLn = 3

Line style: dashed line

Default = 0

Default mode

DefaultFont = 0

Font number: Normal font

Detect = 0

Mode: Detect mode.

detectMode = 30000

Mode: Autodetect optimal mode

DottedLn = 1

Line style: Dotted line

`DrawTextBackground : Boolean = false`

Should the background of texts be drawn or should it be left untouched ?

`EGABlack = 0`

Color code: EGA Black

`EGABlue = 1`

Color code: EGA blue

`EGABrown = 20`

Color code: EGA brown

`EGACyan = 3`

Color code: EGA cyan

`EGADarkgray = 56`

Color code: EGA dark gray

`EGAGreen = 2`

Color code: EGA green

`EGALightblue = 57`

Color code: EGA Light blue

`EGALightcyan = 59`

Color code: EGA Light cyan

`EGALightgray = 7`

Color code: EGA Light gray

`EGALightgreen = 58`

Color code: EGA Light green

`EGALightmagenta = 61`

Color code: EGA light magenta

`EGALightred = 60`

Color code: EGA light red

EGAMagenta = 5

Color code: EGA magenta

$$\text{EGARed} = 4$$

Color code: EGA red

```
EGAWWhite = 63
```

Color code: EGA white

EGAYellow = 62

Color code: EGA yellow

EmptyFill = 0

Fill style: Do not fill

EuroFont = 9

Font number: ?

```
fillpatternTable : Array[0..12] of FillPatternType = ( ( $00,$00,$00,$00,$00,$00,$00
```

Table with standard fill patterns

$$G1024 \times 768 \times 16 = 30$$

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 16 colors

$$G1024 \times 768 \times 16M = 25$$

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 16M colors

$$G1024 \times 768 \times 16M32 = 36$$

Mode: Resolution 1024x758, 16M 32-bit colors

$$G1024 \times 768 \times 256 = 12$$

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 256 colors

$$G1024 \times 768 \times 32K = 23$$

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 32K colors

$$G1024 \times 768 \times 64K = 24$$

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 64K colors

G1152x864x16 = 38

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16 colors

G1152x864x16M = 42

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M colors

G1152x864x16M32 = 43

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M 32-bit colors

G1152x864x256 = 39

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 256 colors

G1152x864x32K = 40

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 32K colors

G1152x864x64K = 41

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 64K colors

G1280x1024x16 = 31

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16 colors

G1280x1024x16M = 28

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M colors

G1280x1024x16M32 = 37

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M 32-bit colors

G1280x1024x256 = 13

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 256 colors

G1280x1024x32K = 26

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 32K colors

G1280x1024x64K = 27

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 64K colors

G1600x1200x16 = 44

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16 colors

G1600x1200x16M = 48

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M colors

G1600x1200x16M32 = 49

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M 32-bit colors

G1600x1200x256 = 45

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 256 colors

G1600x1200x32K = 46

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 32K colors

G1600x1200x64K = 47

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 64K colors

G320x200x16 = 1

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16 colors

G320x200x16M = 16

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M colors

G320x200x16M32 = 33

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M 32-bit colors

G320x200x256 = 5

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 256 colors

G320x200x32K = 14

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 32K colors

G320x200x64K = 15

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 64K colors

G320x240x256 = 6

Mode: Resolution 320x240, 256 colors

G320x400x256 = 7

Mode: Resolution 320x400, 256 colors

G360x480x256 = 8

Mode: Resolution 360x480, 256 colors

G640x200x16 = 2

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x350x16 = 3

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16 = 4

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16M = 19

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M colors

G640x480x16M32 = 34

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M 32-bit colors

G640x480x2 = 9

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 2 colors

G640x480x256 = 10

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 256 colors

G640x480x32K = 17

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 32K colors

G640x480x64K = 18

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 64K colors

G720x348x2 = 32

Mode: Resolution 720x348, 2 colors

G800x600x16 = 29

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16 colors

G800x600x16M = 22

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M colors

G800x600x16M32 = 35

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M 32-bit colors

G800x600x256 = 11

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 256 colors

G800x600x32K = 20

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 32K colors

G800x600x64K = 21

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 64K colors

GothicFont = 4

Font number: Gothic font

GraphStringTransTable : PCharsetTransTable = nil

Table used when transliterating strings.

green = 2

Color code: green

grError = -11

Error: Unknown error.

grFileNotFound = -3

Error: File for driver not found.

grFontNotFound = -8

Error: font description file not found.

grInvalidDriver = -4

Error: Invalid driver specified

grInvalidFont = -13

Error: Invalid font description

grInvalidFontNum = -14

Error: Invalid font number

`grInvalidMode = -10`

Error: Invalid mode specified.

`grInvalidVersion = -18`

Error: Invalid version.

`grIOerror = -12`

Error: Unspecified Input/Output error.

`grNoFloodMem = -7`

Error: Could not allocate memory for flood operation.

`grNoFontMem = -9`

Error: Not enough memory to load font.

`grNoInitGraph = -1`

Error: Graphical system not initialized

`grNoLoadMem = -5`

Error: Memory error.

`grNoScanMem = -6`

Error: Could not allocate memory for scan

`grNotDetected = -2`

Error: Graphics device not detected.

`grOk = 0`

Graphical operation went OK.

`HatchFill = 7`

Fill style: Hatch lines

`HercMono = 7`

Mode: Hercules, mono color

`HercMonoHi = 0`

Mode: Hercules card, monochrome, high resolution

`highNewDriver = 21`

Mode: highest number for new driver

`highNewMode = 30015`

Mode: Highest possible value of the new modes.

`HorizDir = 0`

Text write direction: Horizontal

`InterleaveFill = 9`

Fill style: Interleaving lines

`LCOMFont = 8`

Font number: ?

`LeftText = 0`

Horizontal text alignment: Align text left

`lightblue = 9`

Color code: Light blue

`lightcyan = 11`

Color code: Light cyan

`lightgray = 7`

Color code: Light gray

`lightgreen = 10`

Color code: Light green

`lightmagenta = 13`

Color code: Light magenta

`lightred = 12`

Color code: Light red

`LineFill = 2`

Fill style: Fill using horizontal lines

`lowNewDriver = 11`

**Mode:** lowest number for new driver

`lowNewMode = 30001`

**Mode:** Lowest possible value of the new modes.

`LowRes = 1`

**Mode:** Low resolution.

`LtBkSlashFill = 6`

**Fill style:** Light diagonal (backslash) lines

`LtSlashFill = 3`

**Fill style:** Light diagonal (slash) lines

`m1024x768 = 30012`

**Mode:** Resolution 1024x768

`m1280x1024 = 30013`

**Mode:** Resolution 1280x1024

`m1600x1200 = 30014`

**Mode:** Resolution 1600x1200

`m2048x1536 = 30015`

**Mode:** Resolution 2048x1536

`m320x200 = 30001`

**Mode:** Resolution 320x200

`m320x256 = 30002`

**Mode:** Resolution 320x256

`m320x400 = 30003`

**Mode:** Resolution 320x400

`m512x384 = 30004`

**Mode:** Resolution 512x384

m640x200 = 30005

Mode: Resolution 640x200

m640x256 = 30006

Mode: Resolution 640x256

m640x350 = 30007

Mode: Resolution 640x350

m640x400 = 30008

Mode: Resolution 640x400

m640x480 = 30009

Mode: Resolution 640x480

m800x600 = 30010

Mode: Resolution 800x600

m832x624 = 30011

Mode: Resolution 832x624

magenta = 5

Color code: Magenta

MaxColors = 255

Max amount of colors in a palette

maxsmallint = high ( smallint )

Maximum value for smallint type

NormalPut = 0

Draw operation: Use Normal (copy) operation

NormWidth = 1

Line width: Normal width

NotPut = 4

Draw operation: use NOT

OrPut = 2

Draw operation: use OR

red = 4

Color code: Red

resolutions : Array[lowNewMode..highNewMode] of TResolutionRec = ( ( x:320;y:200 ) ,

Array with actual resolutions of the new modes

RightText = 2

Horizontal text alignment: Align text right

SansSerifFont = 3

Font number: Sans Serif font

ScriptFont = 5

Font number: Script font

SimpleFont = 6

Font number: Simple font

SlashFill = 4

Fill style: Diagonal (slash) lines

SmallFont = 2

Font number: Small font

SolidFill = 1

Fill style: Solid fill.

SolidLn = 0

Line style: Solid line

ThickWidth = 3

Line width: double width

TopOff = false

Top off

TopOn = true

Top on

TopText = 2

Vertical text alignment: Align text to top

TriplexFont = 1

Font number: Triplex font

TSCRFont = 7

Font number: Terminal font

UserBitLn = 4

Line style: User defined

UserCharSize = 0

User character size

UserFill = 12

Fill style: User-defined fill.

VertDir = 1

Text write direction: Vertical

VESA = 10

Mode: VESA graphics adaptor.

VGA = 9

Mode: VGA graphics adaptor.

VGAHi = 2

Mode: VGA high resolution (640x480)

VGALo = 0

Mode: VGA low resolution (640x200)

VGAMed = 1

Mode: VGA medium resolution (640x350)

`white = 15`

Color code: White

`WideDotFill = 10`

Fill style: Widely spaced dotted lines

`XHatchFill = 8`

Fill style: Heavy hatch lines

`XORPut = 1`

Draw operation: use XOR

`yellow = 14`

Color code: Yellow

### 18.12.2 Types

```
ArcCoordsType = record
  x : SmallInt;
  y : SmallInt;
  xstart : SmallInt;
  ystart : SmallInt;
  xend : SmallInt;
  yend : SmallInt;
end
```

Describe the last arc which was drawn on screen

```
CircleProc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;Radius: Word)
```

Standard circle drawing routine prototype.

```
clrviewproc = procedure
```

Standard clearviewport routine prototype

```
defpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt)
```

This is the standard putpixel routine used by all function drawing routines, it will use the viewport settings, as well as clip, and use the current foreground color to plot the desired pixel.

```
ellipseproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;XRadius: Word;
  YRadius: Word;stAngle: Word;EndAngle: Word;
  fp: patternlineproc)
```

Standard ellipse drawing routine prototype.

```
FillPatternType = Array[1..8] of Byte
```

Bit pattern used when drawing lines. Set bits are drawn.

```
FillSettingsType = record
  pattern : Word;
  color : Word;
end
```

Record describing fill mode

```
getimageproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt;Y1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;
                          Y2: SmallInt;var Bitmap)
```

Standard GetImage (400) procedure prototype.

```
getpixelproc = function(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt) : Word
```

Standard pixel fetching routine prototype

```
getrgbpaletteproc = procedure(ColorNum: SmallInt;var RedValue: SmallInt;
                              var GreenValue: SmallInt;
                              var BlueValue: SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for GetRGBPalette (401)

```
getscanlineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;
                             var data)
```

This routine is used for FloodFill (405) It returns an entire screen scan line with a word for each pixel in the scanline. Also handy for GetImage.

```
graphfreememprc = procedure(var P: Pointer;size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is freed by the graph routines.

```
graphgetmemprc = procedure(var P: pointer;size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is needed by the graph routines.

```
graph_float = single
```

The platform's preferred floating point size for fast graph operations

```
hlineproc = procedure(x: SmallInt;x2: SmallInt;y: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single horizontal line

```
imagesizeproc = function(X1: SmallInt;Y1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;
                        Y2: SmallInt) : LongInt
```

Standard ImageSize (401) calculation procedure prototype.

```
initmodeproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to initialize a mode.

```
lineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt;Y1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;
                    Y2: SmallInt)
```

Standard line drawing routine prototype.

```
LineSettingsType = record
    linestyle : Word;
    pattern : Word;
    thickness : Word;
end
```

Record describing current line drawing mode

```
OutTextXYProc = procedure(x: SmallInt;y: SmallInt;
                        const TextString: String)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for OutTextXY (401)

```
PaletteType = record
    Size : LongInt;
    Colors : Array[0..MaxColors] of RGBRec;
end
```

Record describing palette.

```
patternlineproc = procedure(x1: SmallInt;x2: SmallInt;y: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a patterned line

```
PCharsetTransTable = ^TCharsetTransTable
```

Pointer to TCharsetTransTable (398) array.

```
PModeInfo = ^TModeInfo
```

Pointer to TModeInfo (399) record

```
PointType = record
    x : SmallInt;
    y : SmallInt;
end
```

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane

```
putimageproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;var Bitmap;
                        BitBlt: Word)
```

Standard PutImage (401) procedure prototype.

```
putpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;Color: Word)
```

Standard pixel drawing routine prototype

```
restorestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to restore the graphical state at a closegraph call.

```
RGBRec = packed record
  Red : SmallInt;
  Green : SmallInt;
  Blue : SmallInt;
end
```

Record describing palette RGB color

```
savestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to save the graphical state before a mode is set.

```
setactivepageproc = procedure(page: Word)
```

Standard SetActivePage (402) procedure prototype.

```
SetAllPaletteProc = procedure(const Palette: PaletteType)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetAllPalette (402)

```
setrgbpaletteproc = procedure(ColorNum: SmallInt;RedValue: SmallInt;
                             GreenValue: SmallInt;BlueValue: SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetRGBPalette (402)

```
setvisualpageproc = procedure(page: Word)
```

Standard SetVisualPage (402) procedure prototype.

```
TCharsetTransTable = Array[Char] of Char
```

Character transliteration table, with entries for 256 characters

```

TextSettingsType = record
  font : Word;
  direction : Word;
  charsize : Word;
  horiz : Word;
  vert : Word;
end

```

Record describing how texts are drawn.

```

TModeInfo = record
  DriverNumber : SmallInt;
  ModeNumber : SmallInt;
  internModeNumber : SmallInt;
  MaxColor : LongInt;
  PaletteSize : LongInt;
  XAspect : Word;
  YAspect : Word;
  MaxX : Word;
  MaxY : Word;
  DirectColor : Boolean;
  Hardwarepages : Byte;
  ModeName : String;
  DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc;
  GetPixel : getpixelproc;
  PutPixel : putpixelproc;
  SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc;
  GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc;
  SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc;
  SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc;
  SetActivePage : setactivepageproc;
  ClearViewPort : clrviewproc;
  PutImage : putimageproc;
  GetImage : getimageproc;
  ImageSize : imagesizeproc;
  GetScanLine : getscanlineproc;
  Line : lineproc;
  InternalEllipse : ellipseproc;
  PatternLine : patternlineproc;
  HLine : hlineproc;
  VLine : vlineproc;
  Circle : CircleProc;
  InitMode : initmodeproc;
  OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc;
  next : PModeInfo;
end

```

Record describing a graphical mode.

```

TNewModeInfo = record
  modeInfo : Array[lowNewDriver..highNewDriver] of PModeInfo;

```

```

    loHiModeNr : Array[lowNewDriver..highNewDriver] of ;
end

```

Mode information for new modes.a

```

TResolutionRec = record
    x : LongInt;
    y : LongInt;
end

```

Record describing resolution

```

ViewPortType = record
    x1 : SmallInt;
    y1 : SmallInt;
    x2 : SmallInt;
    y2 : SmallInt;
    Clip : Boolean;
end

```

Record describing a viewport

```

vlineproc = procedure(x: SmallInt;y: SmallInt;y2: SmallInt)

```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single vertical line

### 18.12.3 Variables

```

Circle : CircleProc

```

Circle draws a complete circle with center at (X,Y), radius radius.

```

ClearViewPort : clrviewproc

```

Clears the current viewport. The current background color is used as filling color. The pointer is set at (0,0).

```

DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc

```

Hook to directly draw a pixel on the screen.

```

GetImage : getimageproc

```

GetImage Places a copy of the screen area (X1,Y1) to X2,Y2 in BitMap

```

GetPixel : getpixelproc

```

GetPixel returns the color of the point at (X,Y)

GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc

Hook to set a RGB palette entries.

GetScanLine : getscanlineproc

Hook to get a scan line from the screen.

GraphFreeMemPtr : graphfreememprc

Hook to free heap memory.

GraphGetMemPtr : graphgetmemprc

Hook to get heap memory

HLine : hlineproc

Hook to draw a solid horizontal line

ImageSize : imagesizeproc

ImageSize returns the number of bytes needed to store the image in the rectangle defined by (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2).

InternalEllipse : ellipseproc

Hook to draw an ellipse

Line : lineproc

Line draws a line starting from (X1,Y1 to (X2,Y2), in the current line style and color. The current position is put to (X2,Y2)

OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc

OutText puts TextString on the screen, at position (X,Y), using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

PatternLine : patternlineproc

Hook to draw a patterned line

PutImage : putimageproc

PutImage Places the bitmap in Bitmap on the screen at (X1,Y1). How determines how the bitmap will be placed on the screen. Possible values are :

- CopyPut
- XORPut

- ORPut
- AndPut
- NotPut

PutPixel : putpixelproc

Puts a point at (X, Y) using color Color

RestoreVideoState : restorestateproc

Hook to restore a saved video mode

SaveVideoState : savestateproc

Hook to save the current video state

SetActivePage : setactivepageproc

Sets Page as the active page for all graphical output.

SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc

Sets the current palette to Palette. Palette is an untyped variable, usually pointing to a record of type PaletteType

SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc

SetRGBPalette sets the ColorNr-th entry in the palette to the color with RGB-values Red, Green Blue.

SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc

SetVisualPage sets the video page to page number Page.

VLine : vlineproc

Hook to draw a solid vertical line

## 18.13 Procedures and functions

### 18.13.1 Arc

Synopsis: Draw part of a circle

Declaration: `procedure Arc(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word;  
                                Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Arc draws part of a circle with center at (X, Y), radius radius, starting from angle start, stopping at angle stop. These angles are measured counterclockwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Circle (400), Ellipse (404), GetArcCoords (405), PieSlice (415), Sector (416)

### 18.13.2 Bar

Synopsis: Draw filled rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar3D ([403](#)), Rectangle ([415](#))

### 18.13.3 Bar3D

Synopsis: Draw filled 3-dimensional rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar3D(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt; depth: Word; top: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Bar3d draws a 3-dimensional Bar with corners at (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style. Depth specifies the number of pixels used to show the depth of the bar.

If Top is true; then a 3-dimensional top is drawn.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar ([403](#)), Rectangle ([415](#))

### 18.13.4 ClearDevice

Synopsis: Clear the complete screen

Declaration: `procedure ClearDevice`

Visibility: default

Description: Clears the graphical screen (with the current background color), and sets the pointer at (0, 0).

Errors: None.

See also: ClearViewPort ([400](#)), SetBkColor ([417](#))

### 18.13.5 Closegraph

Synopsis: Close graphical system.

Declaration: `procedure Closegraph`

Visibility: default

Description: Closes the graphical system, and restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was activated.

Errors: None.

See also: InitGraph ([412](#))

### 18.13.6 DetectGraph

Synopsis: Detect correct graphical driver to use

Declaration: `procedure DetectGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt; var GraphMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectGraph` checks the hardware in the PC and determines the driver and screen-modus to be used. These are returned in `Driver` and `Modus`, and can be fed to `InitGraph`. See the `InitGraph` for a list of drivers and modi.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#))

### 18.13.7 DrawPoly

Synopsis: Draw a polygone

Declaration: `procedure DrawPoly(NumPoints: Word; var polypoints)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DrawPoly` draws a polygone with `NumberOfPoints` corner points, using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType` ([398](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` ([403](#)), `Bar3D` ([403](#)), `Rectangle` ([415](#))

### 18.13.8 Ellipse

Synopsis: Draw an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Ellipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ellipse` draws part of an ellipse with center at `(X, Y)`. `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. `Start` and `Stop` are the starting and stopping angles of the part of the ellipse. They are measured counterclockwise from the X-axis (3 o'clock is equal to 0 degrees). Only positive angles can be specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` ([402](#)), `Circle` ([400](#)), `FillEllipse` ([404](#))

### 18.13.9 FillEllipse

Synopsis: Draw and fill an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure FillEllipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Ellipse` draws an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadiu`s and `Yradiu`s are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. The ellipse is filled with the current color and fill-style.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Arc` (402), `Circle` (400), `GetArcCoords` (405), `PieSlice` (415), `Sector` (416)

### 18.13.10 FillPoly

**Synopsis:** Draw, close and fill a polygone

**Declaration:** `procedure FillPoly (NumPoints: Word; var PolyPoints)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FillPoly` draws a polygone with `NumberOfPoints` corner points and fills it using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Bar` (403), `Bar3D` (403), `Rectangle` (415)

### 18.13.11 FloodFill

**Synopsis:** Fill an area with a given color

**Declaration:** `procedure FloodFill (x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; Border: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Fills the area containing the point  $(X, Y)$ , bounded by the color `BorderColor`.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `SetColor` (417), `SetBkColor` (417)

### 18.13.12 GetArcCoords

**Synopsis:** Return coordinates of last drawn arc or ellipse.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetArcCoords (var ArcCoords: ArcCoordsType)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetArcCoords` returns the coordinates of the latest `Arc` or `Ellipse` call.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Arc` (402), `Ellipse` (404)

### 18.13.13 GetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Return screen resolution

Declaration: `procedure GetAspectRatio (var Xasp: Word; var Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetAspectRatio` determines the effective resolution of the screen. The aspect ration can then be calculated as  $Xasp/Yasp$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#)), `SetAspectRatio` ([416](#))

### 18.13.14 GetBkColor

Synopsis: Return current background color

Declaration: `function GetBkColor : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetBkColor` returns the current background color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([406](#)), `SetBkColor` ([417](#))

### 18.13.15 GetColor

Synopsis: Return current drawing color

Declaration: `function GetColor : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetColor` returns the current drawing color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([406](#)), `SetBkColor` ([417](#))

### 18.13.16 GetDefaultPalette

Synopsis: Return default palette

Declaration: `procedure GetDefaultPalette (var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDefaultPalette` returns the current palette in `Palette`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([406](#)), `GetBkColor` ([406](#))

### 18.13.17 GetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

Declaration: `function GetDirectVideo : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

Errors:

### 18.13.18 GetDriverName

Synopsis: Return current driver name

Declaration: `function GetDriverName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDriverName` returns a string containing the name of the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetModeName` ([409](#)), `InitGraph` ([412](#))

### 18.13.19 GetFillPattern

Synopsis: Return current fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure GetFillPattern(var FillPattern: FillPatternType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillPattern` returns an array with the current fill-pattern in `FillPattern`

Errors: None

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([417](#))

### 18.13.20 GetFillSettings

Synopsis: Return current fill settings

Declaration: `procedure GetFillSettings(var Fillinfo: FillSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillSettings` returns the current fill-settings in `FillInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([417](#))

### 18.13.21 GetGraphMode

Synopsis: Get current graphical modus

Declaration: `function GetGraphMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetGraphMode` returns the current graphical modus

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#))

### 18.13.22 GetLineSettings

Synopsis: Get current line drawing settings

Declaration: `procedure GetLineSettings (var ActiveLineInfo: LineSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineSettings` returns the current Line settings in `LineInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLineStyle` ([418](#))

### 18.13.23 GetMaxColor

Synopsis: return maximum number of colors

Declaration: `function GetMaxColor : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxColor` returns the maximum color-number which can be set with `SetColor`. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, this color isn't always guaranteed to be white (for instance in 256+ color modes).

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` ([417](#)), `GetPaletteSize` ([410](#))

### 18.13.24 GetMaxMode

Synopsis: Return biggest mode for the current driver

Declaration: `function GetMaxMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxMode` returns the highest modus for the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#))

### 18.13.25 GetMaxX

Synopsis: Return maximal X coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxX` returns the maximum horizontal screen length

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxY` ([409](#))

### 18.13.26 GetMaxY

Synopsis: Return maximal Y coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxY` returns the maximum number of screen lines

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxX` ([409](#))

### 18.13.27 GetModeName

Synopsis: Return description a modus

Declaration: `function GetModeName (ModeNumber: SmallInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeName` Returns a string with the name of modus Modus

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDriverName` ([407](#)), `InitGraph` ([412](#))

### 18.13.28 GetModeRange

Synopsis: Return lowest and highest modus of current driver

Declaration: `procedure GetModeRange (GraphDriver: SmallInt; var LoMode: SmallInt;  
var HiMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeRange` returns the Lowest and Highest modus of the currently installed driver. If no modes are supported for this driver, `HiModus` will be -1.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#))

### 18.13.29 GetPalette

Synopsis: Return current palette

Declaration: `procedure GetPalette (var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPalette` returns in `Palette` the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPaletteSize` ([410](#)), `SetPalette` ([419](#))

### 18.13.30 GetPaletteSize

Synopsis: Return maximal number of entries in current palette

Declaration: `function GetPaletteSize : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPaletteSize` returns the maximum number of entries in the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPalette` ([410](#)), `SetPalette` ([419](#))

### 18.13.31 GetTextSettings

Synopsis: Return current text style

Declaration: `procedure GetTextSettings (var TextInfo: TextSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTextSettings` returns the current text style settings : The font, direction, size and placement as set with `SetTextStyle` and `SetTextJustify`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([420](#)), `SetTextJustify` ([419](#))

### 18.13.32 GetViewSettings

Synopsis: Return current viewport

Declaration: `procedure GetViewSettings (var viewport: ViewPortType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetViewSettings` returns the current viewport and clipping settings in `ViewPort`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([421](#))

### 18.13.33 GetX

Synopsis: Return current cursor X position

Declaration: `function GetX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetX` returns the X-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetY` ([411](#))

### 18.13.34 GetY

Synopsis: Return current cursor Y position

Declaration: `function GetY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetY` returns the Y-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetX` ([411](#))

### 18.13.35 GraphDefaults

Synopsis: Reset graphical mode to defaults

Declaration: `procedure GraphDefaults`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphDefaults` resets all settings for viewport, palette, foreground and background pattern, line-style and pattern, filling style, filling color and pattern, font, text-placement and text size.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([421](#)), `SetFillStyle` ([418](#)), `SetColor` ([417](#)), `SetBkColor` ([417](#)), `SetLineStyle` ([418](#))

### 18.13.36 GraphErrorMsg

Synopsis: Return a description of an error

Declaration: `function GraphErrorMsg(ErrorCode: SmallInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphErrorMsg` returns a string describing the error `Errorcode`. This string can be used to let the user know what went wrong.

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphResult` ([412](#))

**18.13.37 GraphResult**

Synopsis: Result of last graphical operation

Declaration: `function GraphResult : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphResult` returns an error-code for the last graphical operation. If the returned value is zero, all went well. A value different from zero means an error has occurred. besides all operations which draw something on the screen, the following procedures also can produce a `GraphResult` different from zero:

- `InstallUserFont` (413)
- `SetLineStyle` (418)
- `SetWriteMode` (421)
- `SetFillStyle` (418)
- `SetTextJustify` (419)
- `SetGraphMode` (418)
- `SetTextStyle` (420)

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphErrorMsg` (411)

**18.13.38 InitGraph**

Synopsis: Initialize graphical system

Declaration: `procedure InitGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt; var GraphMode: SmallInt; const PathToDriver: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitGraph` initializes the graph package. `GraphDriver` has two valid values: `GraphDriver=0` which performs an auto detect and initializes the highest possible mode with the most colors. 1024x768x64K is the highest possible resolution supported by the driver, if you need a higher resolution, you must edit `MODES.PPI`. If you need another mode, then set `GraphDriver` to a value different from zero and `graphmode` to the mode you wish (VESA modes where 640x480x256 is 101h etc.). `PathToDriver` is only needed, if you use the BGI fonts from Borland. Free Pascal does not offer BGI fonts like Borland, these must be obtained separately.

Example code:

```
var
  gd,gm : integer;
  PathToDriver : string;
begin
  gd:=detect; { highest possible resolution }
  gm:=0; { not needed, auto detection }
  PathToDriver:='C:\PP\BGI'; { path to BGI fonts,
                             drivers aren't needed }
  InitGraph(gd,gm,PathToDriver);
  if GraphResult<>grok then
    halt; ..... { whatever you need }
  CloseGraph; { restores the old graphics mode }
end.
```

Errors: None.

See also: Modes ([378](#)), DetectGraph ([404](#)), CloseGraph ([403](#)), GraphResult ([412](#))

### 18.13.39 InstallUserDriver

Synopsis: Install a user driver

Declaration: `function InstallUserDriver (Name: String; AutoDetectPtr: Pointer)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserDriver` adds the device-driver `DriverPath` to the list of .BGI drivers. `AutoDetectPtr` is a pointer to a possible auto-detect function.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#)), `InstallUserFont` ([413](#))

### 18.13.40 InstallUserFont

Synopsis: Install a user-defined font

Declaration: `function InstallUserFont (const FontFileName: String) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserFont` adds the font in `FontPath` to the list of fonts of the .BGI system.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#)), `InstallUserDriver` ([413](#))

### 18.13.41 LineRel

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position in given direction

Declaration: `procedure LineRel (Dx: SmallInt; Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineRel` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point  $(DX, DY)$ , `\textbf{relative}` to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current Position is set to the endpoint of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `Line` ([401](#)), `LineTo` ([414](#))

### 18.13.42 LineTo

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position to a given point

Declaration: `procedure LineTo(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineTo` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point  $(DX, DY, \text{\textbf{relative}})$  to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current position is set to the end of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `LineRel` ([413](#)), `Line` ([401](#))

### 18.13.43 MoveRel

Synopsis: Move cursor relative to current position

Declaration: `procedure MoveRel(Dx: SmallInt;Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveRel` moves the pointer to the point  $(DX, DY)$ , relative to the current pointer position

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveTo` ([414](#))

### 18.13.44 MoveTo

Synopsis: Move cursor to absolute position.

Declaration: `procedure MoveTo(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveTo` moves the pointer to the point  $(X, Y)$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveRel` ([414](#))

### 18.13.45 OutText

Synopsis: Write text on the screen at the current location.

Declaration: `procedure OutText(const TextString: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at the current pointer position, using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutTextXY` ([401](#))

### 18.13.46 PieSlice

Synopsis: Draw a pie-slice

Declaration: `procedure PieSlice(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stangle: SmallInt;  
                                  endAngle: SmallInt; Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PieSlice` draws and fills a sector of a circle with center (X, Y) and radius Radius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: Arc ([402](#)), Circle ([400](#)), Sector ([416](#))

### 18.13.47 queryadapterinfo

Synopsis: Function called to retrieve the current video adapter settings.

Declaration: `function queryadapterinfo : PModeInfo`

Visibility: default

### 18.13.48 Rectangle

Synopsis: Draw a rectangle on the screen.

Declaration: `procedure Rectangle(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2), using the current color and style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar ([403](#)), Bar3D ([403](#))

### 18.13.49 RegisterBGIDriver

Synopsis: Register a new BGI driver.

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIDriver(driver: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: `InstallUserDriver` ([413](#)), `RegisterBGIFont` ([416](#))

### 18.13.50 RegisterBGIfont

Synopsis: Register a new BGI font

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIfont (font: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: [InstallUserFont \(413\)](#), [RegisterBGIDriver \(415\)](#)

### 18.13.51 RestoreCrtMode

Synopsis: Restore text screen

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCrtMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was started.

To get back to the graph mode you were last in, you can use `SetGraphMode (GetGraphMode)`

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(412\)](#)

### 18.13.52 Sector

Synopsis: Draw and fill a sector of an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Sector (x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word;  
                                  XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sector` draws and fills a sector of an ellipse with center (X, Y) and radii XRadius and YRadius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: [Arc \(402\)](#), [Circle \(400\)](#), [PieSlice \(415\)](#)

### 18.13.53 SetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Set aspect ration of the screen

Declaration: `procedure SetAspectRatio (Xasp: Word; Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the aspect ratio of the current screen to Xasp/Yasp.

Errors: None

See also: [InitGraph \(412\)](#), [GetAspectRatio \(406\)](#)

#### 18.13.54 SetBkColor

Synopsis: Set background drawing color

Declaration: `procedure SetBkColor (ColorNum: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the background color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetBkColor \(406\)](#), [SetColor \(417\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(421\)](#)

#### 18.13.55 SetColor

Synopsis: Set foreground drawing color

Declaration: `procedure SetColor (Color: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the foreground color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetColor \(406\)](#), [SetBkColor \(417\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(421\)](#)

#### 18.13.56 SetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Attempt to enter direct video mode.

Declaration: `procedure SetDirectVideo (DirectAccess: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirectVideo` attempts to enter direct video mode. In that mode, everything is drawn straight in the video buffer.

#### 18.13.57 SetFillPattern

Synopsis: Set drawing fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure SetFillPattern (Pattern: FillPatternType; Color: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillPattern` sets the current fill-pattern to `FillPattern`, and the filling color to `Color`. The pattern is an 8x8 raster, corresponding to the 64 bits in `FillPattern`.

Errors: None

See also: [GetFillPattern \(407\)](#), [SetFillStyle \(418\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(421\)](#)

**18.13.58 SetFillStyle**

Synopsis: Set drawing fill style

Declaration: `procedure SetFillStyle (Pattern: Word; Color: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillStyle` sets the filling pattern and color to one of the predefined filling patterns. `Pattern` can be one of the following predefined constants :

**EmptyFill** Uses backgroundcolor.

**SolidFill** Uses filling color

**LineFill** Fills with horizontal lines.

**ltSlashFill** Fills with lines from left-under to top-right.

**SlashFill** Idem as previous, thick lines.

**BkSlashFill** Fills with thick lines from left-Top to bottom-right.

**LtBkSlashFill** Idem as previous, normal lines.

**HatchFill** Fills with a hatch-like pattern.

**XHatchFill** Fills with a hatch pattern, rotated 45 degrees.

**InterLeaveFill**

**WideDotFill** Fills with dots, wide spacing.

**CloseDotFill** Fills with dots, narrow spacing.

**UserFill** Fills with a user-defined pattern.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([417](#)), `SetWriteMode` ([421](#))

**18.13.59 SetGraphMode**

Synopsis: Set graphical mode

Declaration: `procedure SetGraphMode (Mode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetGraphMode` sets the graphical mode and clears the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([412](#))

**18.13.60 SetLineStyle**

Synopsis: Set line drawing style

Declaration: `procedure SetLineStyle (LineStyle: Word; Pattern: Word; Thickness: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLineStyle` sets the drawing style for lines. You can specify a `LineStyle` which is one of the following pre-defined constants:

**SolidIn** Draws a solid line.

**DottedIn** Draws a dotted line.

**CenterIn** Draws a non-broken centered line.

**DashedIn** Draws a dashed line.

**UserBitIn** Draws a User-defined bit pattern.

If **UserBitIn** is specified then **Pattern** contains the bit pattern. In all another cases, **Pattern** is ignored. The parameter **Width** indicates how thick the line should be. You can specify one of the following pre-defined constants:

**NormWidth** Normal line width

**ThickWidth** Double line width

Errors: None.

See also: [GetLineSettings \(408\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(421\)](#)

### 18.13.61 SetPalette

Synopsis: Set palette entry using color constant

Declaration: `procedure SetPalette (ColorNum: Word; Color: ShortInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: **SetPalette** changes the **ColorNr**-th entry in the palette to **NewColor**

Errors: None.

See also: [SetAllPalette \(402\)](#), [SetRGBPalette \(402\)](#)

### 18.13.62 SetTextJustify

Synopsis: Set text placement style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextJustify (horiz: Word; vert: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: **SetTextJustify** controls the placement of new text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. **Horizontal** controls horizontal placement, and can be one of the following pre-defined constants:

**LeftText** Text is set left of the pointer.

**CenterText** Text is set centered horizontally on the pointer.

**RightText** Text is set to the right of the pointer.

**Vertical** controls the vertical placement of the text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. Its value can be one of the following pre-defined constants :

**BottomText** Text is placed under the pointer.

**CenterText** Text is placed centered vertically on the pointer.

**TopText** Text is placed above the pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: [OutText \(414\)](#), [OutTextXY \(401\)](#)

### 18.13.63 SetTextStyle

Synopsis: Set text style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextStyle(font: Word; direction: Word; charsize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextStyle` controls the style of text to be put on the screen. pre-defined constants for `Font` are:

**DefaultFont**The default font

**TriplexFont**A special font

**SmallFont**A smaller font

**SansSerifFont**A sans-serif font (like Arial)

**GothicFont**A gothic font

**ScriptFont**A script font

**SimpleFont**A simple font

**TSCRFont**Terminal screen font

**LCOMFont?**

**EuroFont?**

**BoldFont**A bold typeface font

Pre-defined constants for `Direction` are :

**HorizDir**Write horizontal

**VertDir**Write vertical

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTextSettings` ([410](#))

### 18.13.64 SetUserCharSize

Synopsis: Set user character size for vector font

Declaration: `procedure SetUserCharSize(Multx: Word; Divx: Word; Multy: Word; Divy: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the width and height of vector-fonts. The horizontal size is given by `Xasp1/Xasp2`, and the vertical size by `Yasp1/Yasp2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([420](#))

**18.13.65 SetViewPort**

Synopsis: Set the graphical drawing window

Declaration: `procedure SetViewPort (X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt;  
Y2: SmallInt; Clip: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the current graphical viewport (window) to the rectangle defined by the top-left corner (X1, Y1) and the bottom-right corner (X2, Y2). If Clip is true, anything drawn outside the viewport (window) will be clipped (i.e. not drawn). Coordinates specified after this call are relative to the top-left corner of the viewport.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetViewSettings` ([410](#))

**18.13.66 SetWriteMode**

Synopsis: Specify binary operation to perform when drawing on screen

Declaration: `procedure SetWriteMode (WriteMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWriteMode` controls the drawing of lines on the screen. It controls the binary operation used when drawing lines on the screen. Mode can be one of the following pre-defined constants:

**CopyPutDraw** as specified using current bitmask and color

**XORPutDraw** XOR-ing current bitmask and color

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` ([417](#)), `SetBkColor` ([417](#)), `SetLineStyle` ([418](#)), `SetFillStyle` ([418](#))

**18.13.67 TextHeight**

Synopsis: Return height (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextHeight (const TextString: String) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextHeight` returns the height (in pixels) of the string S in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextWidth` ([421](#))

**18.13.68 TextWidth**

Synopsis: Return width (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextWidth (const TextString: String) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextWidth` returns the width (in pixels) of the string S in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: TextHeight ([421](#))

## Chapter 19

# Reference for unit 'heaptrc'

### 19.1 Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables

The `HeapTrc` unit can be controlled with the `HEAPTRC` environment variable. The contents of this variable controls the initial setting of some constants in the unit. `HEAPTRC` consists of one or more of the following strings, separated by spaces:

**keepreleased** If this string occurs, then the `KeepReleased` (425) variable is set to `True`

**disabled** If this string occurs, then the `UseHeapTrace` (425) variable is set to `False` and the heap trace is disabled. It does not make sense to combine this value with other values.

**nohalt** If this string occurs, then the `HaltOnError` (424) variable is set to `False`, so the program continues executing even in case of a heap error.

**log=filename** If this string occurs, then the output of `heaptrc` is sent to the specified `Filename`. (see also `SetHeapTraceOutput` (427))

The following are valid values for the `HEAPTRC` variable:

```
HEAPTRC=disabled
HEAPTRC="keepreleased log=heap.log"
HEAPTRC="log=myheap.log nohalt"
```

Note that these strings are case sensitive, and the name of the variable too.

### 19.2 HeapTrc Usage

All that you need to do is to include `heaptrc` in the `uses` clause of your program. Make sure that it is the first unit in the clause, otherwise memory allocated in initialization code of units that precede the `heaptrc` unit will not be accounted for, causing an incorrect memory usage report.

If you use the `-gh` switch, the compiler will insert the unit by itself, so you don't have to include it in your `uses` clause.

The below example shows how to use the `heaptrc` unit.

This is the memory dump shown when running this program in a standard way:

```

Marked memory at 0040FA50 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x00408708
  0x0040CB49
  0x0040C481
Call trace for block 0x0040FA50 size 128
  0x0040CB3D
  0x0040C481

```

If you use the `lineinfo` unit (or use the `-gl` switch) as well, then `heaptrc` will also give you the filenames and line-numbers of the procedures in the backtrace:

```

Marked memory at 00410DA0 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x004094B8
  0x0040D8F9  main,   line 25 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231
Call trace for block 0x00410DA0 size 128
  0x0040D8ED  main,   line 23 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231

```

If lines without filename/line-number occur, this means there is a unit which has no debug info included.

## 19.3 Overview

This document describes the HEAPTRC unit for Free Pascal. It was written by Pierre Muller. It is system independent, and works on all supported systems.

The HEAPTRC unit can be used to debug your memory allocation/deallocation. It keeps track of the calls to `getmem/freemem`, and, implicitly, of `New/Dispose` statements.

When the program exits, or when you request it explicitly. It displays the total memory used, and then dumps a list of blocks that were allocated but not freed. It also displays where the memory was allocated.

If there are any inconsistencies, such as memory blocks being allocated or freed twice, or a memory block that is released but with wrong size, this will be displayed also.

The information that is stored/displayed can be customized using some constants.

## 19.4 Constants, types and variables

### 19.4.1 Constants

```
add_tail : Boolean = true
```

If `add\_tail` is `True` (the default) then a check is also performed on the memory location just behind the allocated memory.

```
HaltOnError : Boolean = true
```

If `HaltOnError` is set to `True` then an illegal call to `FreeMem` will cause the memory manager to execute a `halt (1)` instruction, causing a memory dump. By Default it is set to `True`.

```
HaltOnNotReleased : Boolean = false
```

`HaltOnNotReleased` can be set to `True` to make the `DumpHeap` (426) procedure halt (exit code 203) the program if any memory was not released when the dump is made. If it is `False` (the default) then `DumpHeap` just returns.

```
keepreleased : Boolean = false
```

If `keepreleased` is set to `true`, then a list of freed memory blocks is kept. This is useful if you suspect that the same memory block is released twice. However, this option is very memory intensive, so use it sparingly, and only when it's really necessary.

```
quicktrace : Boolean = true
```

`Quicktrace` determines whether the memory manager checks whether a block that is about to be released is allocated correctly. This is a rather time consuming search, and slows program execution significantly, so by default it is set to `True`.

```
tracesize = 8
```

`Tracesize` specifies how many levels of calls are displayed of the call stack during the memory dump. If you specify `keepreleased:=True` then half the `TraceSize` is reserved for the `GetMem` call stack, and the other half is reserved for the `FreeMem` call stack. For example, the default value of 8 will cause eight levels of call frames to be dumped for the `getmem` call if `keepreleased` is `False`. If `KeepReleased` is `true`, then 4 levels of call frames will be dumped for the `GetMem` call and 4 frames will be dumped for the `FreeMem` call. If you want to change this value, you must recode the `heaptrc` unit.

```
usecrc : Boolean = true
```

If `usecrc` is `True` (the default) then a `crc` check is performed on locations before and after the allocated memory. This is useful to detect memory overwrites.

```
useheaptrace : Boolean = true
```

This variable must be set at program startup, through the help of an environment variable.

### 19.4.2 Types

```
tdisplayextrainfoProc = procedure(var ptext: text;p: pointer)
```

The `TDisplayExtraInfoType` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (426) call to display a memory location which was previously filled with `TFillExtraInfoProc` (425)

```
tFillExtraInfoProc = procedure(p: pointer)
```

The `TFillExtraInfoProc` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (426) call to fill a memory location with extra data for displaying.

## 19.5 Procedures and functions

### 19.5.1 DumpHeap

**Synopsis:** Dump memory usage report to stderr.

**Declaration:** `procedure DumpHeap`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DumpHeap` dumps to standard output a summary of memory usage. It is called automatically by the `heaptrc` unit when your program exits (by installing an exit procedure), but it can be called at any time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `MarkHeap` ([423](#))

### 19.5.2 SetHeapExtraInfo

**Synopsis:** Store extra information in blocks.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetHeapExtraInfo(size: ptruint; fillproc: tFillExtraInfoProc; displayproc: tdisplayextrainfoProc)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** You can use `SetHeapExtraInfo` to store extra info in the blocks that the `heaptrc` unit reserves when tracing `getmem` calls. `Size` indicates the size (in bytes) that the trace mechanism should reserve for your extra information. For each call to `getmem`, `FillProc` will be called, and passed a pointer to the memory reserved.

When dumping the memory summary, the extra info is shown by calling `displayproc` and passing it the memory location which was filled by `fillproc`. It should write the information in readable form to the text file provided in the call to `displayproc`.

**Errors:** You can only call `SetHeapExtraInfo` if no memory has been allocated yet. If memory was already allocated prior to the call to `SetHeapExtraInfo`, then an error will be displayed on standard error output, and a `DumpHeap` ([426](#)) is executed.

**See also:** `DumpHeap` ([426](#)), `SetHeapTraceOutput` ([427](#))

**Listing:** `./heapex/setinfo.pp`

---

**Program** `heapex`;

*{ Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit }*

**Uses** `heaptrc`;

**Var** `P1 : ^Longint;`  
       `P2 : Pointer;`  
       `I : longint;`  
       `Marker : Longint;`

**Procedure** `SetMarker (P : pointer);`

**Type** `PLongint = ^Longint;`

---

```

begin
  PLongint(P)^:= Marker;
end;

Procedure Part1;

begin
  // Blocks allocated here are marked with $FFAAFFAA = -5570646
  Marker := $FFAAFFAA;
  New(P1);
  New(P1);
  Dispose(P1);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      GetMem (P2,128);
      If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
    end;
  GetMem(P2,128);
end;

Procedure Part2;

begin
  // Blocks allocated here are marked with $FAFAFAFA = -84215046
  Marker := $FAFAFAFA;
  New(P1);
  New(P1);
  Dispose(P1);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      GetMem (P2,128);
      If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
    end;
  GetMem(P2,128);
end;

begin
  SetExtraInfo (SizeOf(Marker), @SetMarker);
  Writeln ( 'Part 1 ' );
  part1;
  Writeln ( 'Part 2 ' );
  part2;
end.

```

---

### 19.5.3 SetHeapTraceOutput

Synopsis: Specify filename for heap trace output.

Declaration: `procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(const name: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetHeapTraceOutput` sets the filename into which heap trace info will be written. By default information is written to standard output, this function allows you to redirect the information to a file with full filename `name`.

Errors: If the file cannot be written to, errors will occur when writing the trace.

See also: [SetHeapExtraInfo \(426\)](#)

## Chapter 20

# Reference for unit 'ipc'

### 20.1 Used units

Table 20.1: Used units by unit 'ipc'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">429</a>
UnixType	<a href="#">429</a>

### 20.2 Overview

This document describes the IPC unit for Free Pascal. It was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It gives all the functionality of system V Inter-Process Communication: shared memory, semaphores and messages. It works only on the linux operating system.

Many constants here are provided for completeness only, and should under normal circumstances not be used by the programmer.

### 20.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 20.3.1 Constants

`IPC_CREAT = 1 shl 9`

Create if key is nonexistent

`IPC_EXCL = 2 shl 9`

fail if key exists

`IPC_INFO = 3`

For ipcs call

IPC\_NOWAIT = 4 shl 9

return error on wait

IPC\_RMID = 0

Remove resource

IPC\_SET = 1

set ipc\_perm options

IPC\_STAT = 2

get ipc\_perm options

MSGMAX = 4056

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSGMNB = 16384

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSGMNI = 128

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSG\_EXCEPT = 2 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSG\_NOERROR = 1 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

SEM\_GETALL = 13

Semaphore operation: Get all semaphore values

SEM\_GETNCNT = 14

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for resource.

SEM\_GETPID = 11

Semaphore operation: Get process ID of last operation.

SEM\_GETVAL = 12

Semaphore operation: Get current value of semaphore

`SEM_GETZCNT = 15`

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for semaphores to reach zero

`SEM_SEMMNI = 128`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEMMNS = (SEM_SEMMNI * SEM_SEMMSL )`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEMMSL = 32`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEMOPM = 32`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEVMX = 32767`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SETALL = 17`

Semaphore operation: Set all semaphore values

`SEM_SETVAL = 16`

Semaphore operation: Set semaphore value

`SEM_UNDO = $1000`

Constant for use in `semop` ([445](#))

`SHM_LOCK = 11`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([447](#)) call.

`SHM_R = 4 shl 6`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([447](#)) call.

`SHM_RDONLY = 1 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([447](#)) call.

`SHM_REMAP = 4 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([447](#)) call.

```
SHM_RND = 2 shl 12
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (447) call.

```
SHM_UNLOCK = 12
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (447) call.

```
SHM_W = 2 shl 6
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (447) call.

### 20.3.2 Types

```
key_t = TKey
```

Alias for TKey (433) type

```
msglen_t = culong
```

Message length type

```
msgqnum_t = culong
```

Message queue number type

```
PIPC_Perm = ^TIPC_Perm
```

Pointer to TIPC\_Perm (433) record.

```
PMSG = ^TMSG
```

Pointer to TMSG (433) record

```
PMSGbuf = ^TMSGbuf
```

Pointer to TMsgBuf (434) record

```
PMSGinfo = ^TMSGinfo
```

Pointer to TMSGinfo (434) record

```
PMSQid_ds = ^TMSQid_ds
```

Pointer to TMSQid\_ds (434)

```
PSEMbuf = ^TSEMbuf
```

Pointer to TSembuf (434) record.

```
PSEMid_ds = ^TSEMid_ds
```

Pointer to TSEMid\_ds (435) record.

```
PSEMinfo = ^TSEMinfo
```

Pointer to TSEMinfo (435) record.

```
PSEMun = ^TSEMun
```

Pointer to TSEMun (435) record

```
PShmid_DS = ^TShmid_ds
```

Pointer to TSHMid\_ds (435) record.

```
PSHMinfo = ^TSHMinfo
```

```
TIPC_Perm = record
  key : TKey;
  uid : uid_t;
  gid : gid_t;
  cuid : uid_t;
  cgid : gid_t;
  mode : mode_t;
  seq : cushort;
end
```

TIPC\_Perm is used in all IPC systems to specify the permissions. It should never be used directly.

```
TKey = cint
```

Type returned by the ftok (436) key generating function.

```
TMSG = record
  msg_next : PMSG;
  msg_type : LongInt;
  msg_spot : PChar;
  msg_stime : LongInt;
  msg_ts : Integer;
end
```

Record used in the handling of message queues. Do not use directly.

```
TMSGbuf = record
  mtype : clong;
  mtext : Array[0..0] of Char;
end
```

The TMSGbuf record is a record containing the data of a record. you should never use this record directly, instead you should make your own record that follows the structure of the TMSGbuf record, but that has a size that is big enough to accomodate your messages. The `mtype` field should always be present, and should always be filled.

```
TMSGinfo = record
  msgpool : cint;
  msgmap : cint;
  msgmax : cint;
  msgmnb : cint;
  msgmni : cint;
  msgssz : cint;
  msgtql : cint;
  msgseg : cushort;
end
```

Internal message system record. Do not use directly.

```
TMSGid_ds = record
  msg_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  msg_first : PMSG;
  msg_last : PMSG;
  msg_stime : time_t;
  msg_rtime : time_t;
  msg_ctime : time_t;
  msg_cbytes : Word;
  msg_qnum : Word;
  msg_qbytes : Word;
  msg_lspid : ipc_pid_t;
  msg_lrpid : ipc_pid_t;
end
```

This record should never be used directly, it is an internal kernel record. It's fields may change at any time.

```
TSEMbuf = record
  sem_num : cushort;
  sem_op : cshort;
  sem_flg : cshort;
end
```

The TSEMbuf record is used in the `semop` (445) call, and is used to specify which operations you want to do.

```
TSEMid_ds = record
  sem_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  sem_otime : time_t;
  sem_ctime : time_t;
  sem_base : pointer;
  sem_pending : pointer;
```

```

    sem_pending_last : pointer;
    undo : pointer;
    sem_nsems : cushort;
end

```

Structure returned by the `semctl` (440) call, contains all data of a semaphore

```

TSEMinfo = record
    semmap : cint;
    semmni : cint;
    semmns : cint;
    semmnu : cint;
    semmsl : cint;
    semopm : cint;
    semume : cint;
    semusz : cint;
    semvmx : cint;
    semaem : cint;
end

```

Internal semaphore system record. Do not use.

```

TSEMun = record
end

```

Record used in `semctl` (440) call.

```

TShmid_ds = record
    shm_perm : TIPC_Perm;
    shm_segsz : cint;
    shm_atime : time_t;
    shm_dtime : time_t;
    shm_ctime : time_t;
    shm_cpid : ipc_pid_t;
    shm_lpid : ipc_pid_t;
    shm_nattch : Word;
    shm_npages : Word;
    shm_pages : pointer;
    attaches : pointer;
end

```

Record used in the `shmctl` (447) call to set or retrieve settings for shared memory.

```

TSHMinfo = record
    shmmax : cint;
    shmmni : cint;
    shmmni : cint;
    shmseg : cint;
    shmall : cint;
end

```

Record used by the shared memory system, Do not use directly.

## 20.4 Procedures and functions

### 20.4.1 ftok

Synopsis: Create token from filename

Declaration: `function ftok(Path: pchar; ID: cint) : TKey`

Visibility: default

Description: `ftok` returns a key that can be used in a `semget` (445), `shmget` (449) or `msgget` (439) call to access a new or existing IPC resource.

`Path` is the name of a file in the file system, `ID` is a character of your choice. The `ftok` call does the same as it's C counterpart, so a pascal program and a C program will access the same resource if they use the same `Path` and `ID`.

For an example, see `msgctl` (436), `semctl` (440) or `shmctl` (447).

Errors: `ftok` returns -1 if the file in `Path` doesn't exist.

See also: `semget` (445), `shmget` (449), `msgget` (439)

### 20.4.2 msgctl

Synopsis: Perform various operations on a message queue

Declaration: `function msgctl(msqid: cint; cmd: cint; buf: PMSQid_ds) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgctl` performs various operations on the message queue with id `ID`. Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT** In this case, the `msgctl` call fills the `TMSQid_ds` structure with information about the message queue.

**IPC\_SET** In this case, the `msgctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record inside `buf`.

**IPC\_RMID** If this is specified, the message queue will be removed from the system.

`buf` contains the data that are needed by the call. It can be `Nil` in case the message queue should be removed.

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `msgget` (439), `msgsnd` (440), `msgrcv` (439)

**Listing:** `./ipcex/msgtool.pp`

---

**program** `msgtool`;

**Uses** `ipc`, `baseunix`;

**Type**

```

PMyMsgBuf = ^TMyMsgBuf;
TMyMsgBuf = record
  mtype : Longint;
  mtext : string[255];
end;

Procedure DoError (Const Msg : string);

begin
  Writeln (msg, ' returned an error : ',fpgeterrno);
  halt(1);
end;

Procedure SendMessage (Id : Longint;
  Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
  MType : Longint;
  Const MText : String);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Sending message. ');
  Buf.mtype:=mtype;
  Buf.Mtext:=mtext;
  If msgsnd(Id ,PMsgBuf(@Buf),256,0)=-1 then
    DoError( 'msgsnd' );
end;

Procedure ReadMessage (ID : Longint;
  Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
  MType : longint);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Reading message. ');
  Buf.MType:=MType;
  If msgrcv(ID ,PMSGBuf(@Buf),256,mtype,0)<>-1 then
    Writeln ( 'Type : ',buf.mtype, ' Text : ',buf.mtext)
  else
    DoError ( 'msgrcv' );
end;

Procedure RemoveQueue ( ID : Longint);

begin
  If msgctl (id,IPC_RMID,Nil)<>-1 then
    Writeln ( 'Removed Queue with id ',Id);
end;

Procedure ChangeQueueMode (ID,mode : longint);

Var QueueDS : TMSQid_ds;

begin
  If msgctl (Id,IPC_STAT,@QueueDS)=-1 then
    DoError ( 'msgctl : stat' );
  Writeln ( 'Old permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode);
  QueueDS.msg_perm.mode:=Mode;
  if msgctl (ID,IPC_SET,@QueueDS)=0 then
    Writeln ( 'New permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode)
  else

```

---

```

    DoError ( 'msgctl : IPC_SET');
end;

procedure usage;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Usage : msgtool s(end)    <type> <text> (max 255 characters) ');
    Writeln ( '                      r(eceive) <type> ');
    Writeln ( '                      d(etele) ');
    Writeln ( '                      m(ode) <decimal mode> ');
    halt(1);
end;

Function StrToInt (S : String): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val (S,M,C);
    If C<>0 Then DoError ( 'StrToInt : '+S);
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var
    Key : TKey;
    ID : longint;
    Buf : TMyMsgBuf;

const ipckey = '. '#0;

begin
    If Paramcount<1 then Usage;
    key := Ftok (@ipckey[1], ord( 'M' ));
    ID:=msgget(key,IPC_CREAT or 438);
    If ID<0 then DoError ( 'MsgGet');
    Case upCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'S' : If ParamCount<>3 then
            Usage
        else
            SendMessage ( id , Buf , StrToInt (Paramstr(2)) , paramstr(3));
        'R' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
        else
            ReadMessage ( id , buf , strtoint (Paramstr(2)));
        'D' : If ParamCount<>1 then
            Usage
        else
            RemoveQueue ( ID );
        'M' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
        else
            ChangeQueueMode ( id , strtoint (paramstr(2)));
    else
        Usage
    end;
end.

```

---

### 20.4.3 msgget

**Synopsis:** Return message queue ID, possibly creating the queue

**Declaration:** `function msgget(key: TKey;msgflg: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `msgget` returns the ID of the message queue described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `msgflg`, a new queue is created.

`msgflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT**The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL**If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

For an example, see `msgctl` (436).

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCErr` is set.

See also: `ftok` (436), `msgsnd` (440), `msgrcv` (439), `msgctl` (436)

### 20.4.4 msgrcv

**Synopsis:** Retrieve a message from the queue

**Declaration:** `function msgrcv(msqid: cint;msgp: PMSGbuf;msgsz: size_t;msgtyp: cint; msgflg: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `msgrcv` retrieves a message of type `msgtyp` from the message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgtyp` corresponds to the `mtype` field of the `TMSGbuf` record. The message is stored in the `MSGbuf` structure pointed to by `msgp`.

The `msgflg` parameter can be used to control the behaviour of the `msgrcv` call. It consists of an ORed combination of the following flags:

**0**No special meaning.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If no messages are available, then the call returns immediately, with the `ENOMSG` error.

**MSG\_NOERROR**If the message size is wrong (too large), no error is generated, instead the message is truncated. Normally, in such cases, the call returns an error (`E2BIG`)

The function returns `True` if the message was received correctly, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (436).

**Errors:** In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCErr` is set.

See also: `msgget` (439), `msgsnd` (440), `msgctl` (436)

### 20.4.5 msgsnd

**Synopsis:** Send a message to the message queue

**Declaration:** `function msgsnd(msqid: cint;msgp: PMSGbuf;msgsz: size_t;msgflg: cint)  
: cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `msgsend` sends a message to a message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgp` is a pointer to a message buffer, that should be based on the `TMsgBuf` type. `msgsz` is the size of the message (NOT of the message buffer record !)

The `msgflg` can have a combination of the following values (ORed together):

**0**No special meaning. The message will be written to the queue. If the queue is full, then the process is blocked.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If the queue is full, then no message is written, and the call returns immediately.

The function returns `True` if the message was sent successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (436).

**Errors:** In case of error, the call returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (439), `msgrcv` (439), `msgctl` (436)

### 20.4.6 semctl

**Synopsis:** Perform various control operations on a semaphore set

**Declaration:** `function semctl(semid: cint;semnum: cint;cmd: cint;var arg: TSEMun)  
: cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `semctl` performs various operations on the semaphore `semnum` with semaphore set id `ID`.

The `arg` parameter supplies the data needed for each call. This is a variant record that should be filled differently, according to the command:

```
Type
TSEMun = record
  case longint of
    0 : ( val : longint );
    1 : ( buf : PSEMid_ds );
    2 : ( arr : PWord );
    3 : ( padbuf : PSeminfo );
    4 : ( padpad : pointer );
  end;
```

Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call fills this `TSEMid_ds` structure with information about the semaphore set.

**IPC\_SET**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record.

**IPC\_RMID**If this is specified, the semaphore set is removed from the system.

**GETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be stored. The size of this memory area is `\var{SizeOf(Word)* Number of semaphores in the set}`. This call will then fill the memory array with all the values of the semaphores.

**GETNCNT**This will fill the `val` field of the `arg` union with the number of processes waiting for resources.

**GETPID**`semctl` returns the process ID of the process that performed the last `semop` (445) call.

**GETVAL**`semctl` returns the value of the semaphore with number `semnum`.

**GETZCNT**`semctl` returns the number of processes waiting for semaphores that reach value zero.

**SETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be retrieved from. The size of this memory area is `\var{SizeOf(Word)* Number of semaphores in the set}`. This call will then set the values of the semaphores from the memory array.

**SETVAL**This will set the value of semaphore `semnum` to the value in the `val` field of the `arg` parameter.

The function returns -1 on error.

Errors: The function returns -1 on error, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `semget` (445), `semop` (445)

**Listing:** `./ipccex/semtool.pp`

---

**Program** `semtool`;

*{ Program to demonstrat the use of semaphores }*

**Uses** `ipc,baseunix`;

**Const** `MaxSemValue = 5`;

**Procedure** `DoError (Const Msg : String)`;

**begin**  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Error : ',msg, ' Code : ',fpgeterrno);  
     **Halt**(1);  
**end**;

**Function** `getsemval (ID,Member : longint) : longint`;

**Var** `S : TSEMun`;

**begin**  
     `GetSemVal:= SemCtl(id ,member,SEM_GETVAL,S)`;  
**end**;

**Procedure** `DispVal (ID,member : longint)`;

**begin**  
     **writeln** ( 'Value for member ',member, ' is ',GetSemVal(ID,Member));

```

end;

Function GetMemberCount (ID : Longint) : longint;

Var opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
    opts.buf:=@semds;
    If semctl(Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1 then
        GetMemberCount:=semds.sem_nsems
    else
        GetMemberCount:=-1;
end;

Function OpenSem (Key : TKey) : Longint;

begin
    OpenSem:=semget(Key,0,438);
    If OpenSem=-1 then
        DoError ('OpenSem');
end;

Function CreateSem (Key : TKey; Members : Longint) : Longint;

Var Count : Longint;
    Semopts : TSemun;

begin
    // the semmsl constant seems kernel specific
    { If members>semmsl then
        DoError ('Sorry, maximum number of semaphores in set exceeded');
    }
    WriteLn ('Trying to create a new semaphore set with ',members,' members. ');
    CreateSem:=semget(key,members,IPC_CREAT or IPC_Excl or 438);
    If CreateSem=-1 then
        DoError ('Semaphore set already exists. ');
    Semopts.val:=MaxSemValue; { Initial value of semaphores }
    For Count:=0 to Members-1 do
        semctl(CreateSem,count,SEM_SETVAL,semopts);
end;

Procedure lockSem (ID,Member: Longint);

Var lock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With lock do
        begin
            sem_num:=0;
            sem_op:=-1;
            sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if (member<0) or (member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
            DoError ('semaphore member out of range ');
        if getsemval(ID,member)=0 then
            DoError ('Semaphore resources exhausted (no lock) ');
        lock.sem_num:=member;

```

```

Writeln ( 'Attempting to lock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID );
if semop( Id ,@lock,1)=-1 then
    DoError ( 'Lock failed ' )
else
    Writeln ( 'Semaphore resources decremented by one ' );
    dispval( ID ,Member );
end;

Procedure UnlockSem ( ID ,Member: Longint );

Var Unlock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With Unlock do
        begin
            sem_num:=0;
            sem_op:=1;
            sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if ( member<0 ) or ( member>GetMemberCount( ID )-1 ) then
            DoError ( 'semaphore member out of range ' );
        if getsemval( ID ,member)=MaxSemValue then
            DoError ( 'Semaphore not locked ' );
        Unlock.sem_num:=member;
        Writeln ( 'Attempting to unlock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID );
        if semop( Id ,@unlock,1)=-1 then
            DoError ( 'Unlock failed ' )
        else
            Writeln ( 'Semaphore resources incremented by one ' );
            dispval( ID ,Member );
        end;

Procedure RemoveSem ( ID : longint );

var S : TSemun;

begin
    If semctl( Id ,0 ,IPC_RMID ,s)<>-1 then
        Writeln ( 'Semaphore removed ' )
    else
        DoError ( 'Couldn't remove semaphore ' );
end;

Procedure ChangeMode ( ID ,Mode : longint );

Var rc : longint;
    opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
    opts.buf:=@semds;
    If not semctl ( Id ,0 ,IPC_STAT ,opts)<>-1 then
        DoError ( 'Couldn't stat semaphore ' );
    Writeln ( 'Old permissions were : ',semds.sem_perm.mode );
    semds.sem_perm.mode:=mode;
    If semctl( id ,0 ,IPC_SET ,opts)<>-1 then
        Writeln ( 'Set permissions to ',mode)

```

```

    else
        DoError ( 'Couldn't set permissions' );
end;

Procedure PrintSem ( ID : longint );

Var I, cnt : longint;

begin
    cnt := getmembercount ( ID );
    Writeln ( 'Semaphore ', ID, ' has ', cnt, ' Members' );
    For I := 0 to cnt - 1 Do
        DispVal ( id, i );
end;

Procedure USage;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Usage : semtool c(reate) <count>' );
    Writeln ( '          l(ock) <member>' );
    Writeln ( '          u(nlock) <member>' );
    Writeln ( '          d(etele)' );
    Writeln ( '          m(ode) <mode>' );
    halt ( 1 );
end;

Function StrToInt ( S : String ): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val ( S, M, C );
    If C <> 0 Then DoError ( 'StrToInt : ' + S );
    StrToInt := M;
end;

Var Key : TKey;
    ID : Longint;

const ipckey = ' '#0;

begin
    If ParamCount < 1 then USage;
    key := ftok ( @ipckey [ 1 ], ORD ( 's' ) );
    Case UpCase ( Paramstr ( 1 ) [ 1 ] ) of
        'C' : begin
            if paramcount <> 2 then usage;
            CreateSem ( key, strtoint ( paramstr ( 2 ) ) );
            end;
        'L' : begin
            if paramcount <> 2 then usage;
            ID := OpenSem ( key );
            LockSem ( ID, strtoint ( paramstr ( 2 ) ) );
            end;
        'U' : begin
            if paramcount <> 2 then usage;

```

---

```

        ID:=OpenSem ( key );
        UnLockSem ( ID , strtoint ( paramstr ( 2 ) ) );
        end;
'M' : begin
        if paramcount<>2 then usage;
        ID:=OpenSem ( key );
        ChangeMode ( ID , strtoint ( paramstr ( 2 ) ) );
        end;
'D' : Begin
        ID:=OpenSem ( Key );
        RemoveSem ( Id );
        end;
'P' : begin
        ID:=OpenSem ( Key );
        PrintSem ( Id );
        end;
else
        Usage
end;
end.

```

---

### 20.4.7 semget

**Synopsis:** Return the ID of a semaphore set, possibly creating the set

**Declaration:** `function semget (key: TKey; nsems: cint; semflg: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `msgget` returns the ID of the semaphore set described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `semflg`, a new queue is created.

`semflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the set already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new set of semaphores is created, then there will be `nsems` semaphores in it.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` ([436](#)), `semop` ([445](#)), `semctl` ([440](#))

### 20.4.8 semop

**Synopsis:** Perform semaphore operation.

**Declaration:** `function semop (semid: cint; sops: PSEMbuf; nsops: cuint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `semop` performs a set of operations on a message queue. `sops` points to an array of type `TSEMbuf`. The array should contain `nsops` elements.

The fields of the `TSEMbuf` ([434](#)) structure

```
TSEMBuf = record
    sem_num : word;
    sem_op  : integer;
    sem_flg : integer;
```

should be filled as follows:

**sem\_num**The number of the semaphore in the set on which the operation must be performed.

**sem\_op**The operation to be performed. The operation depends on the sign of `sem_op`: A positive number is simply added to the current value of the semaphore. If 0 (zero) is specified, then the process is suspended until the specified semaphore reaches zero. If a negative number is specified, it is subtracted from the current value of the semaphore. If the value would become negative then the process is suspended until the value becomes big enough, unless `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified in the `sem_flg`.

**sem\_flg**Optional flags: if `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified, then the calling process will never be suspended.

The function returns `True` if the operations were successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `semget` (445), `semctl` (440)

## 20.4.9 shmat

Synopsis: Attach a shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmat(shmid: cint; shmaddr: pointer; shmflg: cint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmat` attaches a shared memory block with identified `shmid` to the current process. The function returns a pointer to the shared memory block.

If `shmaddr` is `Nil`, then the system chooses a free unmapped memory region, as high up in memory space as possible.

If `shmaddr` is non-nil, and `SHM_RND` is in `shmflg`, then the returned address is `shmaddr`, rounded down to `SHMLBA`. If `SHM_RND` is not specified, then `shmaddr` must be a page-aligned address.

The parameter `shmflg` can be used to control the behaviour of the `shmat` call. It consists of a ORed combination of the following constants:

**SHM\_RND**The suggested address in `shmaddr` is rounded down to `SHMLBA`.

**SHM\_RDONLY**the shared memory is attached for read access only. Otherwise the memory is attached for read-write. The process then needs read-write permissions to access the shared memory.

For an example, see `shmctl` (447).

Errors: If an error occurs, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (449), `shmdt` (449), `shmctl` (447)

### 20.4.10 shmctl

**Synopsis:** Perform control operations on a shared memory block.

**Declaration:** `function shmctl(shmid: cint;cmd: cint;buf: PShmid_DS) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `shmctl` performs various operations on the shared memory block identified by identifier `shmid`.

The `buf` parameter points to a `TSHMid_ds` record. The `cmd` parameter is used to pass which operation is to be performed. It can have one of the following values :

**IPC\_STAT**`shmctl` fills the `TSHMid_ds` record that `buf` points to with the available information about the shared memory block.

**IPC\_SET**applies the values in the `ipc_perm` record that `buf` points to, to the shared memory block.

**IPC\_RMID**the shared memory block is destroyed (after all processes to which the block is attached, have detached from it).

If successful, the function returns `True`, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, the function returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (449), `shmat` (446), `shmdt` (449)

**Listing:** `./ipccex/shmtool.pp`

---

```

Program shmtool;

uses ipc , strings , Baseunix;

Const SegSize = 100;

var key : Tkey;
    shmId,cntr : longint;
    segptr : pchar;

Procedure USage;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Usage : shmtool w(rite) text' );
  writeln ( '                      r(ead)' );
  writeln ( '                      d(elete)' );
  writeln ( '                      m(ode change) mode' );
  halt (1);
end;

Procedure Writeshm (ID : Longint; ptr : pchar; S : string);

begin
  strcpy ( ptr , S );
end;

Procedure Readshm (ID : longint; ptr : pchar);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Read : ', ptr );
end;

```

```

Procedure removeshm (ID : Longint);

begin
    shmctl (ID,IPC_RMID,Nil);
    writeln ( 'Shared memory marked for deletion' );
end;

Procedure CHangeMode (ID : longint; mode : String);

Var m : word;
    code : integer;
    data : TSHMid_ds;

begin
    val (mode,m,code);
    if code<>0 then
        usage;
    if shmctl (shmid,IPC_STAT,@data)=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    writeln ( 'Old permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
    data.shm_perm.mode:=m;
    if shmctl (shmid,IPC_SET,@data)=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    writeln ( 'New permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
end;

const ftokpath = '.'#0;

begin
    if paramcount<1 then usage;
    key := ftok (pchar(@ftokpath[1]),ord('S'));
    shmid := shmget(key,segsz,IPC_CREAT or IPC_EXCL or 438);
    if shmid=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Shared memory exists. Opening as client' );
            shmid := shmget(key,segsz,0);
            if shmid = -1 then
                begin
                    writeln ( 'shmget : Error ! ',fpgeterrno);
                    halt(1);
                end
            end
        else
            writeln ( 'Creating new shared memory segment.' );
            segptr:=shmat(shmid,Nil,0);
            if longint(segptr)=-1 then
                begin
                    writeln ( 'Shmat : error ! ',fpgeterrno);
                    halt(1);
                end;
            case upcase(paramstr(1)[1]) of

```

---

```

    'W' : writeshm ( shmId , segptr , paramstr (2));
    'R' : readshm ( shmId , segptr );
    'D' : removeshm (shmId);
    'M' : changemode ( shmId , paramstr (2));
else
    begin
        writeln ( paramstr (1));
        usage;
    end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 20.4.11 shmdt

Synopsis: Detach shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmdt (shmaddr: pointer) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmdt` detaches the shared memory at address `shmaddr`. This shared memory block is unavailable to the current process, until it is attached again by a call to `shmat` (446).

The function returns `True` if the memory block was detached successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (449), `shmat` (446), `shmctl` (447)

### 20.4.12 shmget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a shared memory block, possibly creating it

Declaration: `function shmget (key: TKey; size: size_t; flag: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmget` returns the ID of a shared memory block, described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `flag`, a new memory block is created.

`flag` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new memory block is created, then it will have size `Size` bytes in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

## Chapter 21

# Reference for unit 'keyboard'

### 21.1 Unix specific notes

On Unix, applications run on a "terminal", and the application writes to the screen and reads from the keyboard by communicating with the terminal. Unix keyboard handling is mostly backward compatible with the DEC vt100 and vt220 terminals from tens of years ago. The vt100 and vt220 had very different keyboards than today's PC's and this is where the problems start. To make it worse the protocol of both terminals has not been very well designed.

Because of this, the keyboard unit on Unix operating systems does a best effort to provide keyboard functionality. An implementation with full keyboard facilities like on other operating systems is not possible.

The exception is the Linux kernel. The terminal emulation of the Linux kernel is from a PC keyboard viewpoint hopeless as well, but unlike other terminal emulators it is configurable. On the Linux console, the Free Pascal keyboard unit tries to implement full functionality.

Users of applications using the keyboard unit should expect the following:

- Full functionality on the Linux console. It must be the bare console, SSH into another machine will kill the full functionality.
- Limited functionality otherwise.

Notes about Linux full functionality:

- The keyboard is reprogrammed. If the keyboard is for whatever reason not restored in its original state, please load your keymap to reinitialize it.
- Alt+function keys generate keycodes for those keys. To switch virtual consoles, use ctrl+alt+function key.
- Unlike what you're used to with other Unix software, escape works as you intuitively expect, it generates the keycode for an escape key **without a delay**.

The limited functionality does include these quirks:

- Escape must be pressed two times before it has effect.
- On the Linux console, when the user runs the program by logging into another machine:
  - Shift+F1 and Shift+F12 will generate keycodes for F11 and F12.

- Shift+arrow keys, shift+ins, shift+del, shift+home, shift+end do not work. The same is true about the control and alt combinations.
- Alt+function keys will switch virtual consoles instead of generating the right key sequences.
- Ctrl+function keys will generate the keycodes for the function keys without ctrl
- In Xterm:
  - Shift+insert pastes the x clipboard, no keycode will be generated.
- In Konsole:
  - Shift+insert pastes the x clipboard, no keycode will be generated.
  - Shift+arrow keys doesn't work, nor does ctrl+arrow keys

If you have a non-standard terminal, some keys may not work at all. When in limited functionality mode, the user can work around using an escape prefix:

- Esc+1 = F1, Esc+2 = F2.
- Esc before another key is equal to alt+key.

In such cases, if the terminal does output an escape sequence for those keys, please submit a bug report so we can add them.

## 21.2 Writing a keyboard driver

Writing a keyboard driver means that hooks must be created for most of the keyboard unit functions. The `TKeyboardDriver` record contains a field for each of the possible hooks:

```
TKeyboardDriver = Record
  InitDriver : Procedure;
  DoneDriver : Procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : Function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent : Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
  TranslateKeyEventUnicode: Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
end;
```

The meaning of these hooks is explained below:

**InitDriver** Called to initialize and enable the driver. Guaranteed to be called only once. This should initialize all needed things for the driver.

**DoneDriver** Called to disable and clean up the driver. Guaranteed to be called after a call to `initDriver`. This should clean up all things initialized by `InitDriver`.

**GetKeyEvent** Called by `GetKeyEvent` (460). Must wait for and return the next key event. It should NOT store keys.

**PollKeyEvent** Called by `PollKeyEvent` (465). It must return the next key event if there is one. Should not store keys.

**GetShiftState** Called by PollShiftStateEvent (466). Must return the current shift state.

**TranslateKeyEvent** Should translate a raw key event to a correct key event, i.e. should fill in the shiftstate and convert function key scancodes to function key keycodes. If the TranslateKeyEvent is not filled in, a default translation function will be called which converts the known scancodes from the tables in the previous section to a correct keyevent.

**TranslateKeyEventUnicode** Should translate a key event to a unicode key representation.

Strictly speaking, only the GetKeyEvent and PollKeyEvent hooks must be implemented for the driver to function correctly.

The example unit demonstrates how a keyboard driver can be installed. It takes the installed driver, and hooks into the GetKeyEvent function to register and log the key events in a file. This driver can work on top of any other driver, as long as it is inserted in the uses clause *after* the real driver unit, and the real driver unit should set the driver record in its initialization section.

Note that with a simple extension of this unit could be used to make a driver that is capable of recording and storing a set of keyboard strokes, and replaying them at a later time, so a 'keyboard macro' capable driver. This driver could sit on top of any other driver.

## 21.3 Keyboard scan codes

Special physical keys are encoded with the DOS scan codes for these keys in the second byte of the TKeyEvent (457) type. A complete list of scan codes can be found in the below table. This is the list of keys that is used by the default key event translation mechanism. When writing a keyboard driver, either these constants should be returned by the various key event functions, or the TranslateKeyEvent hook should be implemented by the driver.

A list of scan codes for special keys and combinations with the SHIFT, ALT and CTRL keys can be found in the following table: They are for quick reference only.

## 21.4 Overview

The Keyboard unit implements a keyboard access layer which is system independent. It can be used to poll the keyboard state and wait for certain events. Waiting for a keyboard event can be done with the GetKeyEvent (460) function, which will return a driver-dependent key event. This key event can be translated to an interpretable event by the TranslateKeyEvent (469) function. The result of this function can be used in the other event examining functions.

A custom keyboard driver can be installed using the SetKeyboardDriver (468) function. The current keyboard driver can be retrieved using the GetKeyboardDriver (460) function. The last section of this chapter demonstrates how to make a keyboard driver.

## 21.5 Constants, types and variables

### 21.5.1 Constants

AltPrefix : Byte = 0

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Alt key. Unix Only

CtrlPrefix : Byte = 0

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Ctrl key. Unix only

```
errKbdBase = 1010
```

Base of keyboard routine error reporting constants.

```
errKbdInitError = errKbdBase + 0
```

Failed to initialize keyboard driver

```
errKbdNotImplemented = errKbdBase + 1
```

Keyboard driver not implemented.

```
kbAlt = 8
```

Alt key modifier

```
kbASCII = $00
```

Ascii code key event

```
kbCtrl = 4
```

Control key modifier

```
kbdApps = $FF17
```

Application key (popup-menu) pressed.

```
kbdDelete = $FF2A
```

Delete key pressed

```
kbdDown = $FF27
```

Arrow down key pressed

```
kbdEnd = $FF26
```

End key pressed

```
kbdF1 = $FF01
```

F1 function key pressed.

```
kbdF10 = $FF0A
```

F10 function key pressed.

```
kbdF11 = $FF0B
```

F12 function key pressed.

kbdF12 = \$FF0C

F12 function key pressed.

kbdF13 = \$FF0D

F13 function key pressed.

kbdF14 = \$FF0E

F14 function key pressed.

kbdF15 = \$FF0F

F15 function key pressed.

kbdF16 = \$FF10

F16 function key pressed.

kbdF17 = \$FF11

F17 function key pressed.

kbdF18 = \$FF12

F18 function key pressed.

kbdF19 = \$FF13

F19 function key pressed.

kbdF2 = \$FF02

F2 function key pressed.

kbdF20 = \$FF14

F20 function key pressed.

kbdF3 = \$FF03

F3 function key pressed.

kbdF4 = \$FF04

F4 function key pressed.

kbdF5 = \$FF05

F5 function key pressed.

kbdF6 = \$FF06

F6 function key pressed.

kbdF7 = \$FF07

F7 function key pressed.

kbdF8 = \$FF08

F8 function key pressed.

kbdF9 = \$FF09

F9 function key pressed.

kbdHome = \$FF20

Home key pressed

kbdInsert = \$FF29

Insert key pressed

kbdLeft = \$FF23

Arrow left key pressed

kbdLWin = \$FF15

Left windows key pressed.

kbdMiddle = \$FF24

Middle key pad key pressed (numerical 5)

kbdPgDn = \$FF28

Page down key pressed

kbdPgUp = \$FF22

Page Up key pressed

kbdRight = \$FF25

Arrow right key pressed

kbdRWin = \$FF16

Right windows key pressed.

`kbdUp = $FF21`

Arrow up key pressed

`kbFnKey = $02`

function key pressed.

`kbLeftShift = 1`

Left shift key modifier

`kbPhys = $03`

Physical key code event

`kbReleased = $04`

Key release event

`kbRightShift = 2`

Right shift key modifier

`kbShift = kbLeftShift or kbRightShift`

Shift key modifier

`kbUnicode = $01`

Unicode code key event

`SAnd : String = 'AND'`

This constant is used as the 'And' word in key descriptions. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`ShiftPrefix : Byte = 0`

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Shift key. Unix Only

`SKeyPad : Array[0..($FF2F-kbdHome)] of String = ('Home', 'Up', 'PgUp', 'Left', 'Middle',`

This constant describes all keypad keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SLeftRight : Array[1..2] of String = ('LEFT', 'RIGHT' )`

This constant contains strings to describe left and right keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SScanCode : String = 'Key with scancode '
```

This constant contains a string to denote a scancode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SShift : Array[1..3] of String = ('SHIFT', 'CTRL', 'ALT' )
```

This constant describes the various modifier keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SUnicodeChar : String = 'Unicode character '
```

This constant contains a string to denote a unicode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SUnknownFunctionKey : String = 'Unknown function key : '
```

This constant contains a string to denote that an unknown function key was found. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

## 21.5.2 Types

```
PTreeElement = ^TTreeElement
```

Pointer to TTreeElement ([458](#)) record

```
TKeyboardDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent : function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent : function(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
  TranslateKeyEventUniCode : function(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
end
```

The TKeyboardDriver record can be used to install a custom keyboard driver with the SetKeyboardDriver ([468](#)) function.

The various fields correspond to the different functions of the keyboard unit interface. For more information about this record see kbddriver ([451](#))

```
TKeyEvent = Cardinal
```

The TKeyEvent type is the base type for all keyboard events.

The key stroke is encoded in the 4 bytes of the TKeyEvent type. The various fields of the key stroke encoding can be obtained by typecasting the TKeyEvent type to the TKeyRecord ([458](#)) type.

```
TKeyRecord = packed record
  KeyCode : Word;
  ShiftState : Byte;
  Flags : Byte;
end
```

The structure of a TKeyRecord structure is explained in the following table:

The shift-state can be checked using the various shift-state constants, and the flags in the last byte can be checked using one of the kbASCII, kbUnicode, kbFnKey, kbPhys, kbReleased constants.

If there are two keys returning the same char-code, there's no way to find out which one was pressed (Gray+ and Simple+). If it needs to be known which was pressed, the untranslated keycodes must be used, but these are system dependent. System dependent constants may be defined to cover those, with possibly having the same name (but different value).

```
Tprocedure = procedure
```

Procedure prototype

```
TTreeElement = record
  Next : PTreeElement;
  Parent : PTreeElement;
  Child : PTreeElement;
  CanBeTerminal : Boolean;
  char : Byte;
  ScanValue : Byte;
  CharValue : Byte;
  SpecialHandler : Tprocedure;
end
```

TTreeElement is used to describe key scancode sequences, and is used to handle special key combinations in AddSpecialSequence ([458](#)) on unix platforms. There should be no need to handle records of this type.

## 21.6 Procedures and functions

### 21.6.1 AddSequence

**Declaration:** procedure AddSequence(const St: String; AChar: Byte; AScan: Byte)

Visibility: default

### 21.6.2 AddSpecialSequence

**Synopsis:** Add a handler for a special key sequence

**Declaration:** function AddSpecialSequence(const St: String; Proc: Tprocedure)  
: PTreeElement

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AddSpecialSequence` adds a sequence of key combinations to the keyboard handler. When the key combination specified in `st` is encountered, then `Proc` will be executed. The function returns the element in the special key sequence handling tree which handles `st`.

See also: `AddSequence` ([458](#))

### 21.6.3 DoneKeyboard

**Synopsis:** Deactivate keyboard driver.

**Declaration:** `procedure DoneKeyboard`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DoneKeyboard` de-initializes the keyboard interface if the keyboard driver is active. If the keyboard driver is not active, the function does nothing.

This will cause the keyboard driver to clear up any allocated memory, or restores the console or terminal the program was running in to its initial state before the call to `InitKeyBoard` ([464](#)). This function should be called on program exit. Failing to do so may leave the terminal or console window in an unusable state. Its exact action depends on the platform on which the program is running.

On Unix the default keyboard driver restores the line ending of `system.output` to `#10`.

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `InitKeyBoard` ([464](#))

### 21.6.4 FindSequence

**Declaration:** `function FindSequence(const St: String; var AChar: Byte; var Ascan: Byte) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

### 21.6.5 FunctionKeyName

**Synopsis:** Return string representation of a function key code.

**Declaration:** `function FunctionKeyName(KeyCode: Word) : String`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FunctionKeyName` returns a string representation of the function key with code `KeyCode`. This can be an actual function key, or one of the cursor movement keys.

**Errors:** In case `KeyCode` does not contain a function code, the `SUnknownFunctionKey` string is returned, appended with the `KeyCode`.

See also: `ShiftStateToString` ([469](#)), `KeyEventToString` ([465](#))

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex8.pp`

---

```

Program Example8;

{ Program to demonstrate the FunctionKeyName function. }

Uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyboard;
  WriteLn('Press function keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    If IsFunctionKey(k) then
      begin
        Write('Got function key : ');
        WriteLn(FunctionKeyName(TkeyRecord(K).KeyCode));
      end;
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
  DoneKeyboard;
end.

```

---

### 21.6.6 GetKeyboardDriver

**Synopsis:** Return the current keyboard driver record.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetKeyboardDriver(var Driver: TKeyboardDriver)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyboardDriver` returns in `Driver` the currently active keyboard driver. This function can be used to enhance an existing keyboarddriver.

For more information on getting and setting the keyboard driver `kbddriver` ([451](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetKeyboardDriver` ([468](#))

### 21.6.7 GetKeyEvent

**Synopsis:** Get the next raw key event, wait if needed.

**Declaration:** `function GetKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyEvent` returns the last keyevent if it is available, or waits for one if none is available. A non-blocking version is available in `PollKeyEvent` ([465](#)).

The returned key is encoded as a `TKeyEvent` type variable, and is normally the physical key scan code, (the scan code is driver dependent) which can be translated with one of the translation functions `TranslateKeyEvent` ([469](#)) or `TranslateKeyEventUniCode` ([469](#)). See the types section for a description of how the key is described.

**Errors:** If no key became available (e.g. when the driver does not support it), 0 is returned.

See also: [PutKeyEvent \(467\)](#), [PollKeyEvent \(465\)](#), [TranslateKeyEvent \(469\)](#), [TranslateKeyEventUnicode \(469\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex1.pp

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    Write('Got key event with ');
    Case GetKeyEventFlags(K) of
      kbASCII    : WriteLn('ASCII key ');
      kbUnicode  : WriteLn('Unicode key ');
      kbFnKey    : WriteLn('Function key ');
      kbPhys     : WriteLn('Physical key ');
      kbReleased : WriteLn('Released key event ');
    end;
    WriteLn('Got key : ', KeyEventToString(K));
  Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

### 21.6.8 GetKeyEventChar

**Synopsis:** Get the character key part of a key event.

**Declaration:** `function GetKeyEventChar(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Char`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventChar` returns the charcode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated character key keycode. The charcode is simply the ascii code of the character key that was pressed.

It returns the null character if the key was not a character key, but e.g. a function key.

For an example, see [GetKeyEvent \(460\)](#)

**Errors:** None.

See also: [GetKeyEventUnicode \(463\)](#), [GetKeyEventShiftState \(463\)](#), [GetKeyEventFlags \(462\)](#), [GetKeyEventCode \(461\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(460\)](#)

### 21.6.9 GetKeyEventCode

**Synopsis:** Translate function key part of a key event code.

**Declaration:** `function GetKeyEventCode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventCode` returns the translated function keycode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated function key.

If the key pressed was not a function key, the null character is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (463), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (463), `GetKeyEventFlags` (462), `GetKeyEventChar` (461), `GetKeyEvent` (460)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventCode function. }*

**Uses** `keyboard`;

**Var**

`K : TKeyEvent`;

**begin**

`InitKeyBoard`;

**WriteIn** ( 'Press function keys, or press "q" to end.' );

**Repeat**

`K:=GetKeyEvent`;

`K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K)`;

**If** ( `GetKeyEventFlags(K)<>KbfnKey` ) **then**

**WriteIn** ( 'Not a function key' )

**else**

**begin**

**Write** ( 'Got key ( ', `GetKeyEventCode(K)` );

**WriteIn** ( ' ) : ', `KeyEventToString(K)` );

**end**;

**Until** ( `GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q'` );

`DoneKeyboard`;

**end.**

---

### 21.6.10 GetKeyEventFlags

**Synopsis:** Extract the flags from a key event.

**Declaration:** `function GetKeyEventFlags(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventFlags` returns the flags part of the given `KeyEvent`.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (460)

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (463), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (463), `GetKeyEventCode` (461), `GetKeyEventChar` (461), `GetKeyEvent` (460)

### 21.6.11 GetKeyEventShiftState

Synopsis: Return the current state of the shift keys.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventShiftState(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventShiftState` returns the shift-state values of the given `KeyEvent`. This can be used to detect which of the modifier keys `Shift`, `Alt` or `Ctrl` were pressed. If none were pressed, zero is returned.

Note that this function does not always return expected results; In a unix X-Term, the modifier keys do not always work.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUniCode` (463), `GetKeyEventFlags` (462), `GetKeyEventCode` (461), `GetKeyEventChar` (461), `GetKeyEvent` (460)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventShiftState function. }*

**Uses** `keyboard;`

**Var**

`K : TKeyEvent;`  
`S : Byte;`

**begin**

`InitKeyBoard;`

`Write('Press keys combined with CTRL/SHIFT/ALT');`

`WriteLn(', or press "q" to end.');`

**Repeat**

`K:=GetKeyEvent;`

`K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);`

`S:=GetKeyEventShiftState(K);`

**If** `(S=0)` **then**

`WriteLn('No special keys pressed')`

**else**

**begin**

`WriteLn('Detected special keys : ',ShiftStateToString(K,False));`

`WriteLn('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));`

**end;**

**Until** `(GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');`

`DoneKeyboard;`

**end.**

---

### 21.6.12 GetKeyEventUniCode

Synopsis: Return the unicode key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventUniCode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventUnicode` returns the unicode part of the given `KeyEvent` if it contains a translated unicode character.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEventShiftState` (463), `GetKeyEventFlags` (462), `GetKeyEventCode` (461), `GetKeyEventChar` (461), `GetKeyEvent` (460)

### 21.6.13 InitKeyboard

**Synopsis:** Initialize the keyboard driver.

**Declaration:** `procedure InitKeyboard`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InitKeyboard` initializes the keyboard driver. If the driver is already active, it does nothing. When the driver is initialized, it will do everything necessary to ensure the functioning of the keyboard, including allocating memory, initializing the terminal etc.

This function should be called once, before using any of the keyboard functions. When it is called, the `DoneKeyboard` (459) function should also be called before exiting the program or changing the keyboard driver with `SetKeyboardDriver` (468).

On Unix, the default keyboard driver sets terminal in raw mode. In raw mode the line feed behaves as an actual linefeed, i.e. the cursor is moved down one line. while the x coordinate does not change. To compensate, the default keyboard sets driver line ending of `system.output` to `#13#10`.

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `DoneKeyboard` (459), `SetKeyboardDriver` (468)

### 21.6.14 IsFunctionKey

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given event is a function key event.

**Declaration:** `function IsFunctionKey (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsFunctionKey` returns `True` if the given key event in `KeyEvent` was a function key or not.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEvent` (460)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program example1 ;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard ;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent ;

begin
```

---

```

InitKeyBoard ;
WriteIn ( 'Press keys , press "q" to end.' );
Repeat
  K:=GetKeyEvent ;
  K:=TranslateKeyEvent (K);
  If IsFunctionKey (K) then
    WriteIn ( 'Got function key : ', KeyEventToString (K))
  else
    WriteIn ( 'not a function key.' );
  Until ( GetKeyEventChar (K)= 'q' );
DoneKeyBoard ;
end .

```

---

### 21.6.15 KeyEventToString

Synopsis: Return a string describing the key event.

Declaration: `function KeyEventToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyEventToString` translates the key event in `KeyEvent` to a human-readable description of the pressed key. It will use the constants described in the constants section to do so.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: If an unknown key is passed, the scancode is returned, prefixed with the `SScanCode` string.

See also: `FunctionKeyName` ([459](#)), `ShiftStateToString` ([469](#))

### 21.6.16 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check event queue for key press

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyPressed` checks the keyboard event queue to see whether a key event is present, and returns `True` if a key event is available. This function simply calls `PollKeyEvent` ([465](#)) and checks for a valid result.

Errors: None.

See also: `PollKeyEvent` ([465](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([460](#))

### 21.6.17 PollKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get next key event, but does not wait.

Declaration: `function PollKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollKeyEvent` checks whether a key event is available, and returns it if one is found. If no event is pending, it returns 0.

Note that this does not remove the key from the pending keys. The key should still be retrieved from the pending key events list with the `GetKeyEvent` ([460](#)) function.

Errors: None.

See also: [PutKeyEvent \(467\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(460\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex4.pp

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the PollKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        writeln;
        WriteLn('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
      end
    else
      write(' ');
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 21.6.18 PollShiftStateEvent

Synopsis: Check current shift state.

Declaration: `function PollShiftStateEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollShiftStateEvent` returns the current shiftstate in a keyevent. This will return 0 if there is no key event pending.

Errors: None.

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(465\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(460\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the PollShiftStateEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

```

---

```

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=PollShiftStateEvent;
        WriteLn('Got shift state : ', ShiftStateToString(K, False));
        // Consume the key.
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
      end
    else
      write(' ');
  Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 21.6.19 PutKeyEvent

Synopsis: Put a key event in the event queue.

Declaration: `procedure PutKeyEvent (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutKeyEvent` adds the given `KeyEvent` to the input queue. Please note that depending on the implementation this can hold only one value, i.e. when calling `PutKeyEvent` multiple times, only the last pushed key will be remembered.

Errors: None

See also: `PollKeyEvent` ([465](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([460](#))

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex5.pp`

---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the PutKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K, k2 : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  K2:=0;
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        if (k2 mod 2)=0 then
          K2:=K+1
        else

```

---

```

        K2:=0;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        WriteLn('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
        if (K2<>0) then
            begin
                PutKeyEvent(k2);
                K2:=TranslateKeyEvent(K2);
                WriteLn('Put key : ',KeyEventToString(K2))
            end
        end
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
    DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

### 21.6.20 RawReadKey

Declaration: function RawReadKey : Char

Visibility: default

### 21.6.21 RawReadString

Declaration: function RawReadString : String

Visibility: default

### 21.6.22 RestoreStartMode

Declaration: procedure RestoreStartMode

Visibility: default

### 21.6.23 SetKeyboardDriver

Synopsis: Set a new keyboard driver.

Declaration: function SetKeyboardDriver(const Driver: TKeyboardDriver) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: SetKeyBoardDriver sets the keyboard driver to Driver, if the current keyboard driver is not yet initialized. If the current keyboard driver is initialized, then SetKeyboardDriver does nothing. Before setting the driver, the currently active driver should be disabled with a call to DoneKeyboard ([459](#)).

The function returns True if the driver was set, False if not.

For more information on setting the keyboard driver, see kbddriver ([451](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: GetKeyboardDriver ([460](#)), DoneKeyboard ([459](#))

### 21.6.24 ShiftStateToString

Synopsis: Return description of key event shift state

Declaration: `function ShiftStateToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent; UseLeftRight: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShiftStateToString` returns a string description of the shift state of the key event `KeyEvent`. This can be an empty string.

The shift state is described using the strings in the `SShift` constant.

For an example, see `PollShiftStateEvent` (466).

Errors: None.

See also: `FunctionKeyName` (459), `KeyEventToString` (465)

### 21.6.25 TranslateKeyEvent

Synopsis: Translate raw event to ascii key event

Declaration: `function TranslateKeyEvent(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateKeyEvent` performs ASCII translation of the `KeyEvent`. It translates a physical key to a function key if the key is a function key, and translates the physical key to the ordinal of the ascii character if there is an equivalent character key.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (460)

Errors: None.

See also: `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (469)

### 21.6.26 TranslateKeyEventUnicode

Synopsis: Translate raw event to UNICODE key event

Declaration: `function TranslateKeyEventUnicode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` performs Unicode translation of the `KeyEvent`. It is not yet implemented for all platforms.

Errors: If the function is not yet implemented, then the `ErrorCode` of the `system` unit will be set to `errKbdNotImplemented`

See also: `TranslateKeyEvent` (469)

Table 21.1: Key Scancodes

Code	Key	Code	Key	Code	Key
00	NoKey	3D	F3	70	ALT-F9
01	ALT-Esc	3E	F4	71	ALT-F10
02	ALT-Space	3F	F5	72	CTRL-PrtSc
04	CTRL-Ins	40	F6	73	CTRL-Left
05	SHIFT-Ins	41	F7	74	CTRL-Right
06	CTRL-Del	42	F8	75	CTRL-end
07	SHIFT-Del	43	F9	76	CTRL-PgDn
08	ALT-Back	44	F10	77	CTRL-Home
09	ALT-SHIFT-Back	47	Home	78	ALT-1
0F	SHIFT-Tab	48	Up	79	ALT-2
10	ALT-Q	49	PgUp	7A	ALT-3
11	ALT-W	4B	Left	7B	ALT-4
12	ALT-E	4C	Center	7C	ALT-5
13	ALT-R	4D	Right	7D	ALT-6
14	ALT-T	4E	ALT-GrayPlus	7E	ALT-7
15	ALT-Y	4F	end	7F	ALT-8
16	ALT-U	50	Down	80	ALT-9
17	ALT-I	51	PgDn	81	ALT-0
18	ALT-O	52	Ins	82	ALT-Minus
19	ALT-P	53	Del	83	ALT-Equal
1A	ALT-LftBrack	54	SHIFT-F1	84	CTRL-PgUp
1B	ALT-RgtBrack	55	SHIFT-F2	85	F11
1E	ALT-A	56	SHIFT-F3	86	F12
1F	ALT-S	57	SHIFT-F4	87	SHIFT-F11
20	ALT-D	58	SHIFT-F5	88	SHIFT-F12
21	ALT-F	59	SHIFT-F6	89	CTRL-F11
22	ALT-G	5A	SHIFT-F7	8A	CTRL-F12
23	ALT-H	5B	SHIFT-F8	8B	ALT-F11
24	ALT-J	5C	SHIFT-F9	8C	ALT-F12
25	ALT-K	5D	SHIFT-F10	8D	CTRL-Up
26	ALT-L	5E	CTRL-F1	8E	CTRL-Minus
27	ALT-SemiCol	5F	CTRL-F2	8F	CTRL-Center
28	ALT-Quote	60	CTRL-F3	90	CTRL-GreyPlus
29	ALT-OpQuote	61	CTRL-F4	91	CTRL-Down
2B	ALT-BkSlash	62	CTRL-F5	94	CTRL-Tab
2C	ALT-Z	63	CTRL-F6	97	ALT-Home
2D	ALT-X	64	CTRL-F7	98	ALT-Up
2E	ALT-C	65	CTRL-F8	99	ALT-PgUp
2F	ALT-V	66	CTRL-F9	9B	ALT-Left
30	ALT-B	67	CTRL-F10	9D	ALT-Right
31	ALT-N	68	ALT-F1	9F	ALT-end
32	ALT-M	69	ALT-F2	A0	ALT-Down
33	ALT-Comma	6A	ALT-F3	A1	ALT-PgDn
34	ALT-Period	6B	ALT-F4	A2	ALT-Ins
35	ALT-Slash	6C	ALT-F5	A3	ALT-Del
37	ALT-GreyAst	6D	ALT-F6	A5	ALT-Tab
3B	F1	6E	ALT-F7		
3C	F2	6F	ALT-F8		

Table 21.2: Special keys scan codes

Key	Code	SHIFT-Key	CTRL-Key	Alt-Key
NoKey	00			
F1	3B	54	5E	68
F2	3C	55	5F	69
F3	3D	56	60	6A
F4	3E	57	61	6B
F5	3F	58	62	6C
F6	40	59	63	6D
F7	41	5A	64	6E
F8	42	5A	65	6F
F9	43	5B	66	70
F10	44	5C	67	71
F11	85	87	89	8B
F12	86	88	8A	8C
Home	47		77	97
Up	48		8D	98
PgUp	49		84	99
Left	4B		73	9B
Center	4C		8F	
Right	4D		74	9D
end	4F		75	9F
Down	50		91	A0
PgDn	51		76	A1
Ins	52	05	04	A2
Del	53	07	06	A3
Tab	8	0F	94	A5
GreyPlus			90	4E

Table 21.3: Structure of TKeyRecord

Field	Meaning
KeyCode	Depending on <code>flags</code> either the physical representation of a key (under DOS scancode, ascii code pair), or the t
ShiftState	Shift-state when this key was pressed (or shortly after)
Flags	Determine how to interpret <code>KeyCode</code>

## Chapter 22

# Reference for unit 'lineinfo'

### 22.1 Overview

The `lineinfo` provides a routine that reads the debug information of an executable (if any exists) and returns source code information about this address. It works with `Stabs` debug information. Note that this unit is not thread-safe, and that its behaviour is undefined if multiple threads try to write a backtrace at the same time.

For DWARF debug information, the `Infodwrf` ([492](#)) unit must be used.

### 22.2 Procedures and functions

#### 22.2.1 GetLineInfo

**Synopsis:** Return source line information about an address.

**Declaration:**

```
function GetLineInfo(addr: ptruint; var func: String; var source: String;
                    var line: LongInt) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetLineInfo` returns source line information about the address `addr`. It searches this information in the stabs debugging information found in the binary: If the file was compiled without debug information, nothing will be returned. Upon succesful retrieval of the debug information, `True` is returned, and the `func` parameter is filled with the name of the function in which the address is located. The `source` parameter contains the name of the file in which the function was implemented, and `line` contains the line number in the source file for `addr`.

**Errors:** If no debug information is found, `False` is returned.

## Chapter 23

# Reference for unit 'Linux'

### 23.1 Used units

Table 23.1: Used units by unit 'Linux'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">76</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">1404</a>

### 23.2 Overview

The linux unit contains linux specific operating system calls.

The platform independent functionality of the FPC 1.0.X version of the linux unit has been split out over the unix ([1367](#)), baseunix ([76](#)) and unixutil ([1418](#)) units.

The X86-specific parts have been moved to the X86 ([1448](#)) unit.

People wanting to use the old version (FPC 1.0.X and before) of the linux can use the oldlinux ([748](#)) unit instead.

### 23.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 23.3.1 Constants

`CAP_AUDIT_CONTROL = 30`

Allow manipulation of kernel auditing features

`CAP_AUDIT_WRITE = 29`

Allow writing to kernel audit log

`CAP_CHOWN = 0`

Perform chown operation

`CAP_DAC_OVERRIDE = 1`

Bypass file operation (rwx) checks

`CAP_DAC_READ_SEARCH = 2`

Bypass file read-only operation checks

`CAP_FOWNER = 3`

Bypass owner ID checks

`CAP_FSETID = 4`

Do not clear SUID/GUID bits on modified files

`CAP_FS_MASK = 0xf`

?

`CAP_IPC_LOCK = 14`

Allow memory locking calls

`CAP_IPC_OWNER = 15`

Bypass permission checks on IPC operations

`CAP_KILL = 5`

Bypass permission checks for sending signals

`CAP_LEASE = 28`

Allow file leases

`CAP_LINUX_IMMUTABLE = 9`

Allow setting ext2 file attributes

`CAP_MKNOD = 27`

Allow creation of special files through mknod calls

`CAP_NET_ADMIN = 12`

Allow network operations (e.g. setting socket options)

`CAP_NET_BIND_SERVICE = 10`

Allow binding to ports less than 1024

`CAP_NET_BROADCAST = 11`

Allow socket broadcast operations

`CAP_NET_RAW = 13`

Allow use of RAW and PACKET sockets

`CAP_SETGID = 6`

Allow GID manipulations

`CAP_SETPCAP = 8`

Allow to set other process' capabilities

`CAP_SETUID = 7`

Allow process ID manipulations

`CAP_SYS_ADMIN = 21`

Allow various system administration calls

`CAP_SYS_BOOT = 22`

Allow reboot calls

`CAP_SYS_CHROOT = 18`

Allow chroot calls.

`CAP_SYS_MODULE = 16`

Allow loading/unloading of kernel modules

`CAP_SYS_NICE = 23`

Allowing raising process and thread priorities

`CAP_SYS_PACCT = 20`

Allow acct calls

`CAP_SYS_PTRACE = 19`

Allow ptrace calls

`CAP_SYS_RAWIO = 17`

Allow raw I/O port operations

`CAP_SYS_RESOURCE = 24`

Allow use of special resources or raising of resource limits

`CAP_SYS_TIME = 25`

Allow system or real-time clock modification

`CAP_SYS_TTY_CONFIG = 26`

Allow vhangup calls

`CLONE_CHILD_CLEAR_TID = $00200000`

Clone option: Erase child thread ID in child memory space when child exits.

`CLONE_CHILD_SETTID = $01000000`

Clone option: Store child thread ID in child memory.

`CLONE_DETACHED = $00400000`

Clone option: Start clone detached.

`CLONE_FILES = $00000400`

Clone (473) option: open files shared between processes

`CLONE_FS = $00000200`

Clone (473) option: fs info shared between processes

`CLONE_NEWNS = $00020000`

Clone options: Start child in new (filesystem) namespace.

`CLONE_PARENT = $00008000`

Clone options: Set child parent to parent of calling process.

`CLONE_PARENT_SETTID = $00100000`

Clone option: Store child thread ID in memory in both parent and child.

`CLONE_PID = $00001000`

Clone (473) option: PID shared between processes

`CLONE_PTRACE = $00002000`

Clone options: if parent is traced, trace child also

`CLONE_SETTLS = $00080000`

Clone option: The newtls parameter is the TLS descriptor of the child

`CLONE_SIGHAND = $00000800`

Clone (473) option: signal handlers shared between processes

`CLONE_STOPPED = $02000000`

Clone option: Start child in stopped state.

`CLONE_SYSVSEM = $00040000`

Clone option: Caller and child share the same semaphore undo values

`CLONE_THREAD = $00010000`

Clone options: Set child in thread group of calling process.

`CLONE_UNTRACED = $00800000`

Clone option: Do not allow a ptrace call on this clone.

`CLONE_VFORK = $00004000`

Clone options: suspend parent till child execs

`CLONE_VM = $00000100`

Clone (473) option: VM shared between processes

`CSIGNAL = $000000ff`

Clone (473) option: Signal mask to be sent at exit

`EPOLLERR = $08`

Poll error condition

`EPOLLET = $80000000`

Undocumented

`EPOLLHUP = $10`

Poll hung up

`EPOLLIN = $01`

Poll input file descriptor ready event

`EPOLLOUT = 04`

Poll output file descriptor ready event

`EPOLLPRI = 02`

Priority data available on input file descriptor

`EPOLL_CTL_ADD = 1`

Add filedescriptor to list of events

`EPOLL_CTL_DEL = 2`

Delete event for filedescriptor

`EPOLL_CTL_MOD = 3`

Modify event for filedescriptor

`FUTEX_CMP_REQUEUE = 4`

Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex, but check it's value first

`FUTEX_FD = 2`

Futex option: Associate file descriptor with futex.

`FUTEX_LOCK_PI = 6`

Futex option: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_ADD = 1`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_ANDN = 3`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_EQ = 0`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_GE = 5`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_GT = 4`

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_CMP\_LE = 3

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_CMP\_LT = 2

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_CMP\_NE = 1

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_OPARG\_SHIFT = 8

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_OR = 2

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_SET = 0

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_XOR = 4

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_REQUEUE = 3

Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex.

FUTEX\_TRYLOCK\_PI = 8

Futex option: Undocumented

FUTEX\_UNLOCK\_PI = 7

Futex option: Undocumented

FUTEX\_WAIT = 0

Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

FUTEX\_WAKE = 1

Futex option: wakes any waiting processes on this futex

FUTEX\_WAKE\_OP = 5

Futex option: Undocumented

GIO\_CMAP = \$4B70

IOCTL: Get colour palette on VGA+

GIO\_FONT = \$4B60

IOCTL: Get font in expanded form.

GIO\_FONTX = \$4B6B

IOCTL: Get font in consolefontdesc record.

GIO\_SCRNMAP = \$4B40

IOCTL: get screen mapping from kernel

GIO\_UNIMAP = \$4B66

IOCTL: get unicode-to-font mapping from kernel

GIO\_UNISCRNMAP = \$4B69

IOCTL: get full Unicode screen mapping

KB\_101 = 2

IOCTL: Keyboard types: 101 keys

KB\_84 = 1

IOCTL: Keyboard types: 84 keys

KB\_OTHER = 3

IOCTL: Keyboard types: other type

KDADDIO = \$4B34

IOCTL: add i/o port as valid

KDDELIO = \$4B35

IOCTL: delete i/o port as valid

KDDISABIO = \$4B37

IOCTL: disable i/o to video board

KDENABIO = \$4B36

**IOCTL: enable i/o to video board**

KDFONTOP = \$4B72

**IOCTL: font operations**

KDGETKEYCODE = \$4B4C

**IOCTL: read kernel keycode table entry**

KDGETLED = \$4B31

**IOCTL: return current led state**

KDGETMODE = \$4B3B

**IOCTL: get current mode**

KDGKBDIACR = \$4B4A

**IOCTL: read kernel accent table**

KDGKBTYPE = \$4B33

**IOCTL: get keyboard type**

KDMAPDISP = \$4B3C

**IOCTL: map display into address space**

KDMKTONE = \$4B30

**IOCTL: generate tone**

KDSETKEYCODE = \$4B4D

**IOCTL: write kernel keycode table entry**

KDSETLED = \$4B32

**IOCTL: set led state**

KDSETMODE = \$4B3A

**IOCTL: set text/graphics mode**

KDSIGACCEPT = \$4B4E

**IOCTL: accept kbd generated signals**

KDSKBDIACR = \$4B4B

**IOCTL: write kernel accent table**

KDUNMAPDISP = \$4B3D

**IOCTL: unmap display from address space**

KD\_GRAPHICS = 1

**IOCTL: Tty modes: graphics mode**

KD\_TEXT = 0

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode**

KD\_TEXT0 = 2

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode (obsolete)**

KD\_TEXT1 = 3

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode (obsolete)**

KIOCSOUND = \$4B2F

**IOCTL: start/stop sound generation (0 for off)**

LED\_CAP = 4

**IOCTL: LED\_CAP : caps lock led**

LED\_NUM = 2

**IOCTL: LED\_SCR : Num lock led**

LED\_SCR = 1

**IOCTL: LED\_SCR : scroll lock led**

LINUX\_CAPABILITY\_VERSION = \$19980330

**Current capability version in use by kernel**

MAP\_DENYWRITE = \$800

**Read-only**

MAP\_EXECUTABLE = \$1000

**Memory area is marked as executable**

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

Memory map grows down, like stack

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

Memory pages are locked

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

Do not check for reservations

MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_CODE = 2

Modify\_ldt option: Undocumented

MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_DATA = 0

Modify\_ldt option: Undocumented

MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_STACK = 1

Modify\_ldt option: Undocumented

PIO\_CMAP = \$4B71

IOCTL: Set colour palette on VGA+

PIO\_FONT = \$4B61

IOCTL: Use font in expanded form.

PIO\_FONTRESET = \$4B6D

IOCTL: Reset to default font

PIO\_FONTX = \$4B6C

IOCTL: Set font in consolefontdesc record.

PIO\_SCRNMAP = \$4B41

IOCTL: put screen mapping table in kernel

PIO\_UNIMAP = \$4B67

IOCTL: put unicode-to-font mapping in kernel

PIO\_UNIMAPCLR = \$4B68

IOCTL: clear table, possibly advise hash algorithm

PIO\_UNISCRNMAP = \$4B6A

**IOCTL: set full Unicode screen mapping**

POLLMSG = \$0400

**Unused in linux**

POLLRDHUP = \$2000

**Peer Shutdown/closed writing half of connection**

POLLREMOVE = \$1000

**Undocumented linux extension of Poll**

SPLICE\_F\_GIFT = 8

**Pages spliced in are a gift**

SPLICE\_F\_MORE = 4

**Expect more data**

SPLICE\_F\_MOVE = 1

**Move pages instead of copying**

SPLICE\_F\_NONBLOCK = 2

**Don't block on pipe splicing operations**

SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_AFTER = 4

**Wait upon write-out of specified pages in the range after performing any write.**

SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_BEFORE = 1

**Wait for write-out of previously-submitted specified pages before writing more data.**

SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WRITE = 2

**Initiate write of all dirty pages in the specified range.**

UD\_CONTENTS\_CODE = MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_CODE shl 1

**TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented**

UD\_CONTENTS\_DATA = MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_DATA shl 1

**TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented**

UD\_CONTENTS\_STACK = MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_STACK shl 1

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_LIMIT\_IN\_PAGES = \$10

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_LM = \$80

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_READ\_EXEC\_ONLY = \$08

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_SEG\_32BIT = \$01

TLS segment descriptor : Undocumented

UD\_SEG\_NOT\_PRESENT = \$20

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_USEABLE = \$40

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

### 23.3.2 Types

```
EPoll_Data = record
end
```

Data structure used in EPOLL IOCTL call.

```
EPoll_Event = record
    Events : cuint32;
    Data : TEPoll_Data;
end
```

Structure used in `epoll_ctl` (488) call.

PEPoll\_Data = ^EPoll\_Data

Pointer to EPoll\_Data (485) record

PEpoll\_Event = ^EPoll\_Event

Pointer to EPoll\_Event (485) type

PSysInfo = ^TSysInfo

Pointer to TSysInfo (486) record.

```
Puser_cap_data = ^user_cap_data
```

Pointer to user\_cap\_data (487) record

```
Puser_cap_header = ^user_cap_header
```

Pointer to user\_cap\_header (487) record

```
PUser_Desc = ^user_desc
```

PUser\_Desc is a pointer to the user\_desc (487) type.

```
TCloneFunc = function(args: pointer) : LongInt
```

Clone function prototype.

```
TEPoll_Data = EPoll_Data
```

Alias for EPoll\_Data (485) type

```
TEPoll_Event = EPoll_Event
```

Alias for EPoll\_Event (485) type

```
TSysInfo = record
  uptime : clong;
  loads : Array[0..2] of culong;
  totalram : culong;
  freeram : culong;
  sharedram : culong;
  bufferram : culong;
  totalswap : culong;
  freeswap : culong;
  procs : cushort;
  pad : cushort;
  totalhigh : culong;
  freehigh : culong;
  mem_unit : cuint;
  _f : Array[0..19-2*sizeof(clong)-sizeof(cint)] of cchar;
end
```

Record with system information, used by the SysInfo (490) call.

```
TUser_Desc = user_desc
```

TUser\_Desc is an alias for the user\_desc (487) type.

```

user_cap_data = packed record
  effective : cardinal;
  permitted : cardinal;
  inheritable : cardinal;
end

```

`user_cap_data` describes the set of capabilities for the indicated thread.

```

user_cap_header = packed record
  version : cardinal;
  pid : cardinal;
end

```

`user_cap_header` describes the root user capabilities for the current thread, as set by `getcap` (473) and `setcap` (473)

```

user_desc = packed record
  entry_number : cint;
  base_addr : cuint;
  limit : cuint;
  flags : cuint;
end

```

`user_desc` is the TLS (Thread Local Storage) segment descriptor used in the `Clone` call. It should not be used, as it contains highly kernel-specific data.

## 23.4 Procedures and functions

### 23.4.1 `capget`

**Synopsis:** Return the capabilities for the indicated thread

**Declaration:** `function capget(header: Puser_cap_header; data: Puser_cap_data) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `capget` returns the capabilities of the indicated thread in `header`. The thread is identified by the process ID, or -1 for all caller (and child) process ID's.

Refer to the linux man pages (7 capabilities) for more info.

**Errors:** On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned, and `fperrno` is set to the error.

**See also:** `capset` (487)

### 23.4.2 `capset`

**Synopsis:** Set the capabilities for the indicated thread

**Declaration:** `function capset(header: Puser_cap_header; data: Puser_cap_data) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `capget` sets the capabilities of the indicated thread in `header`. The thread is identified by the process ID, or -1 for all caller (and child) process ID's.

Refer to the linux man pages (7 capabilities) for more info.

**Errors:** On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned, and `fperrno` is set to the error.

See also: `capget` ([487](#))

### 23.4.3 `epoll_create`

**Synopsis:** Create new `epoll` file descriptor

**Declaration:** `function epoll_create(size: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `epoll_create` creates a new `epoll` file descriptor. The `size` argument indicates to the kernel approximately how many structures should be allocated, but is by no means an upper limit.

On success, a file descriptor is returned that can be used in subsequent `epoll_ctl` ([488](#)) or `epoll_wait` ([489](#)) calls, and should be closed using the `fpClose` ([120](#)) call.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `errno` ([76](#)) is set.

See also: `epoll_ctl` ([488](#)), `epoll_wait` ([489](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpClose` ([120](#))

### 23.4.4 `epoll_ctl`

**Synopsis:** Modify an `epoll` file descriptor

**Declaration:** `function epoll_ctl(epfd: cint;op: cint;fd: cint;event: PEpoll_Event) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `epoll_ctl` performs the `op` operation on `epoll` file descriptor `epfd`. The operation will be monitored on file descriptor `fd`, and is optionally controlled by `event`.

`op` can be one of the following values:

**EPOLL\_CTL\_ADD**Add filedescriptor to list of events

**EPOLL\_CTL\_MOD**Modify event for filedescriptor

**EPOLL\_CTL\_DEL**Delete event for filedescriptor

The `events` field in `event_data` is a bitmask of one or more of the following values:

**EPOLLIN**The file is ready for read operations

**EPOLLOUT**The file is ready for write operations.

**EPOLLPRIO**Urgent data is available for read operations.

**EPOLLERR**An error condition is signaled on the file descriptor.

**EPOLLHUP**A Hang up happened on the file descriptor.

**EPOLLET**Set the Edge Triggered behaviour for the file descriptor.

**EPOLLONESHOT**Set One-Shot behaviour for the file descriptor. The event will be triggered only once.

**Errors:** On error -1 is returned, and `errno` is set accordingly.

See also: `epoll_create` ([488](#)), `epoll_wait` ([489](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpClose` ([120](#))

### 23.4.5 `epoll_wait`

Synopsis: Wait for an event on an `epoll` file descriptor.

Declaration: `function epoll_wait(epfd: cint; events: PEpoll_Event; maxevents: cint; timeout: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `epoll_wait` waits for `timeout` milliseconds for an event to occur on `epoll` file descriptor `epfd`. If `timeout` is -1, it waits indefinitely, if `timeout` is zero, it does not wait, but returns immediately, even if no events were detected.

On return, data for at most `maxevents` will be returned in the memory pointed to by `events`. The function returns the number of file descriptors for which events were reported. This can be zero if the timeout was reached.

Errors: On error -1 is returned, and `errno` is set accordingly.

See also: `epoll_create` ([488](#)), `epoll_ctl` ([488](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpClose` ([120](#))

### 23.4.6 `fdatasync`

Synopsis: Synchronize the data in memory with the data on storage device

Declaration: `function fdatasync(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdatasync` does the same as `ffsync` but does not flush the metadata, unless it is vital to the correct reading/writing of the file. In practice, this means that unless the file size changed, the file metadata will not be synced.

See also: `#rtl.unix.fsync` ([1395](#))

### 23.4.7 `futex_op`

Synopsis: Futex operation:

Declaration: `function futex_op(op: cint; oparg: cint; cmp: cint; cmparg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FUTEX_OP` Performs an operation on a futex:

```
FUTEX_OP := ((op and $F) shl 28) or
              ((cmp and $F) shl 24) or
              ((oparg and $FFF) shl 12)
              or (cmparg and $FFF);
```

### 23.4.8 `sync_file_range`

Synopsis: Force committing of data to disk

Declaration: `function sync_file_range(fd: cint; offset: off64_t; nbytes: off64_t; flags: cuint) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `sync_file_range` forces the linux kernel to write any data pages of a specified file (file descriptor `fd`) to disk. The range of the file is specified by the offset `offset` and the number of bytes `nbytes`. `Options` is an OR-ed combination of

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_BEFORE** Wait for write-out of previously-submitted specified pages before writing more data.

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WRITE** Initiate write of all dirty pages in the specified range.

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_AFTER** Wait upon write-out of specified pages in the range after performing any write.

If none is specified, the operation does nothing.

**Errors:** On return -1 is returned and `fperrno` is set to the actual error code. See the linux man page for more on the error codes.

See also: `fdatasync` ([489](#))

### 23.4.9 Sysinfo

**Synopsis:** Return kernel system information

**Declaration:** `function Sysinfo(Info: PSysInfo) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysInfo` returns system information in `Info`. Returned information in `Info` includes:

**uptime** Number of seconds since boot.

**loads** 1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.

**totalram** total amount of main memory.

**freeram** amount of free memory.

**sharedram** amount of shared memory.

**bufferram** amount of memory used by buffers.

**totalswapt** total amount of swap space.

**freeswap** amount of free swap space.

**procs** number of current processes.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpUname` ([164](#))

**Listing:** `./linuxex/ex64.pp`

---

**program** `Example64;`

```
{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function.
  Sysinfo is Linux-only. }
```

```
{ $ifdef Linux }
```

```
Uses Linux;
```

```
Function Mb(L : Longint) : longint;
```

```
begin
```

---

```
    Mb:=L div (1024*1024);
end;

Var Info : TSysInfo;
    D,M,Secs,H : longint;
{$endif}

begin
    {$ifdef Linux}
    If Not SysInfo(Info) then
        Halt(1);
    With Info do
        begin
            D:=Uptime div (3600*24);
            UpTime:=UpTime mod (3600*24);
            h:=uptime div 3600;
            uptime:=uptime mod 3600;
            m:=uptime div 60;
            secs:=uptime mod 60;
            Writeln('Uptime : ',d,'days, ',h,' hours, ',m,' min, ',secs,' s. ');
            Writeln('Loads : ',Loads[1], '/',Loads[2], '/',Loads[3]);
            Writeln('Total Ram : ',Mb(totalram), 'Mb. ');
            Writeln('Free Ram : ',Mb(freeram), 'Mb. ');
            Writeln('Shared Ram : ',Mb(sharedram), 'Mb. ');
            Writeln('Buffer Ram : ',Mb(bufferram), 'Mb. ');
            Writeln('Total Swap : ',Mb(totalswap), 'Mb. ');
            Writeln('Free Swap : ',Mb(freeswap), 'Mb. ');
        end;
    {$endif}
end.
```

---

## Chapter 24

# Reference for unit 'Infodwrf'

### 24.1 Overview

The `Infodwrf` provides a routine that reads the debug information of an executable (if any exists) and returns source code information about this address. It works with DWARF debug information. Note that this unit is not thread-safe, and that its behaviour is undefined if multiple threads try to write a backtrace at the same time.

For stabs debug information, the `lineinfo` ([472](#)) unit must be used.

### 24.2 Procedures and functions

#### 24.2.1 GetLineInfo

**Synopsis:** Return source line information about an address.

**Declaration:**

```
function GetLineInfo(addr: ptruint; var func: String; var source: String;
                    var line: LongInt) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetLineInfo` returns source line information about the address `addr`. It searches this information in the DWARF debugging information found in the binary: If the file was compiled without debug information, nothing will be returned. Upon successful retrieval of the debug information, `True` is returned, and the `func` parameter is filled with the name of the function in which the address is located. The `source` parameter contains the name of the file in which the function was implemented, and `line` contains the line number in the source file for `addr`.

**Errors:** If no debug information is found, `False` is returned.

## Chapter 25

# Reference for unit 'math'

### 25.1 Geometrical functions

Table 25.1:

Name	Description
hypot (511)	Hypotenuse of triangle
norm (522)	Euclidian norm

### 25.2 Statistical functions

Table 25.2:

Name	Description
mean (518)	Mean of values
meanandstddev (519)	Mean and standard deviation of values
momentskewkurtosis (522)	Moments, skew and kurtosis
popnstddev (523)	Population standard deviation
popnvariance (524)	Population variance
randg (527)	Gaussian distributed random value
stddev (531)	Standard deviation
sum (532)	Sum of values
sumofsquares (533)	Sum of squared values
sumsandsquares (534)	Sum of values and squared values
totalvariance (535)	Total variance of values
variance (536)	variance of values

Table 25.3:

Name	Description
<code>ceil</code> (503)	Round to infinity
<code>floor</code> (508)	Round to minus infinity
<code>frexp</code> (508)	Return mantissa and exponent

## 25.3 Number converting

## 25.4 Exponential and logarithmic functions

Table 25.4:

Name	Description
<code>intpower</code> (512)	Raise float to integer power
<code>ldexp</code> (513)	Calculate $2^p \times x$
<code>lnxp1</code> (514)	calculate $\log(x+1)$
<code>log10</code> (514)	calculate 10-base log
<code>log2</code> (515)	calculate 2-base log
<code>logn</code> (515)	calculate N-base log
<code>power</code> (525)	raise float to arbitrary power

## 25.5 Hyperbolic functions

Table 25.5:

Name	Description
<code>arcosh</code> (500)	calculate reverse hyperbolic cosine
<code>arsinh</code> (502)	calculate reverse hyperbolic sine
<code>artanh</code> (502)	calculate reverse hyperbolic tangent
<code>cosh</code> (504)	calculate hyperbolic cosine
<code>sinh</code> (531)	calculate hyperbolic sine
<code>tanh</code> (535)	calculate hyperbolic tangent

## 25.6 Trigonometric functions

## 25.7 Angle unit conversion

Routines to convert angles between different angle units.

Table 25.6:

Name	Description
<code>arccos</code> (499)	calculate reverse cosine
<code>arcsin</code> (500)	calculate reverse sine
<code>arctan2</code> (501)	calculate reverse tangent
<code>cotan</code> (505)	calculate cotangent
<code>sincos</code> (530)	calculate sine and cosine
<code>tan</code> (534)	calculate tangent

Table 25.7:

Name	Description
<code>cycleto rad</code> (506)	convert cycles to radians
<code>degtograd</code> (506)	convert degrees to grads
<code>degtorad</code> (507)	convert degrees to radians
<code>gradtodeg</code> (509)	convert grads to degrees
<code>gradtorad</code> (510)	convert grads to radians
<code>radto cycle</code> (525)	convert radians to cycles
<code>radtodeg</code> (526)	convert radians to degrees
<code>radto grad</code> (526)	convert radians to grads

## 25.8 Min/max determination

Functions to determine the minimum or maximum of numbers:

Table 25.8:

Name	Description
<code>max</code> (516)	Maximum of 2 values
<code>maxIntValue</code> (516)	Maximum of an array of integer values
<code>maxvalue</code> (517)	Maximum of an array of values
<code>min</code> (519)	Minimum of 2 values
<code>minIntValue</code> (520)	Minimum of an array of integer values
<code>minvalue</code> (521)	Minimum of an array of values

## 25.9 Used units

### 25.10 Overview

This document describes the `math` unit. The `math` unit was initially written by Florian Klaempfl. It provides mathematical functions which aren't covered by the system unit.

This chapter starts out with a definition of all types and constants that are defined, after which an overview is presented of the available functions, grouped by category, and the last part contains a complete explanation of each function.

The following things must be taken into account when using this unit:

Table 25.9: Used units by unit 'math'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1174</a>

1. This unit is compiled in Object Pascal mode so all `integers` are 32 bit.
2. Some overloaded functions exist for data arrays of integers and floats. When using the address operator (`@`) to pass an array of data to such a function, make sure the address is typecasted to the right type, or turn on the 'typed address operator' feature. failing to do so, will cause the compiler not be able to decide which function you want to call.

## 25.11 Constants, types and variables

### 25.11.1 Constants

`EqualsValue = 0`

Values are the same

`GreaterThanValue = High ( TValueRelationship )`

First values is greater than second value

`Infinity = 1.0 / 0.0`

Value is infinity

`LessThanValue = Low ( TValueRelationship )`

First value is less than second value

`MaxExtended = 1.1e + 4932`

Maximum value of extended type

`MaxFloat = MaxExtended`

Maximum value of float type

`MinExtended = 3.4e - 4932`

Minimum value (closest to zero) of extended type

`MinFloat = MinExtended`

Minimum value (closest to zero) of float type

`NaN = 0.0 / 0.0`

Value is Not a Number

```
NegativeValue = Low ( TValueSign )
```

Value is negative

```
NegInfinity = -1.0 / 0.0
```

Value is negative (minus) infinity

```
PositiveValue = High ( TValueSign )
```

Value is positive

```
ZeroValue = 0
```

Value is zero

### 25.11.2 Types

```
float = extended
```

All calculations are done with the Float type. This allows to recompile the unit with a different float type to obtain a desired precision. The pointer type PFloat (497) is used in functions that accept an array of values of arbitrary length.

```
PFloat = ^float
```

Pointer to Float (497) type.

```
PInteger = ObjPas.PInteger
```

Pointer to integer type

```
TFPUException = (exInvalidOp,exDenormalized,exZeroDivide,exOverflow,  
exUnderflow,exPrecision)
```

Table 25.10: Enumeration values for type TFPUException

Value	Explanation
exDenormalized	
exInvalidOp	Invalid operation error
exOverflow	Float overflow error
exPrecision	Precision error
exUnderflow	Float underflow error
exZeroDivide	Division by zero error.

Type describing Floating Point processor exceptions.

Table 25.11: Enumeration values for type TFPUPrecisionMode

Value	Explanation
pmDouble	Double-type precision
pmExtended	Extended-type precision
pmReserved	?
pmSingle	Single-type precision

TFPUExceptionMask= Set of (exDenormalized,exInvalidOp,exOverflow,  
exPrecision,exUnderflow,exZeroDivide)

Type to set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

TFPUPrecisionMode = (pmSingle,pmReserved,pmDouble,pmExtended)

Type describing the default precision for the Floating Point processor.

TFPURoundingMode = (rmNearest,rmDown,rmUp,rmTruncate)

Table 25.12: Enumeration values for type TFPURoundingMode

Value	Explanation
rmDown	Round to biggest integer smaller than value.
rmNearest	Round to nearest integer value
rmTruncate	Cut off fractional part.
rmUp	Round to smallest integer larger than value.

Type describing the rounding mode for the Floating Point processor.

tpaymenttime = (ptendofperiod,ptstartofperiod)

Table 25.13: Enumeration values for type tpaymenttime

Value	Explanation
ptendofperiod	End of period.
ptstartofperiod	Start of period.

Type used in financial (interest) calculations.

TRoundToRange = -37..37

TRoundToRange is the range of valid digits to be used in the RoundTo (528) function.

TValueRelationship = -1..1

Type to describe relational order between values

TValueSign = -1..1

Type indicating sign of a valuea

## 25.12 Procedures and functions

### 25.12.1 arccos

Synopsis: Return inverse cosine

Declaration: `function arccos(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arccos` returns the inverse cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1 (borders included).

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcsin` ([500](#)), `arcosh` ([500](#)), `arsinh` ([502](#)), `artanh` ([502](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arccos function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Procedure** `WriteRadDeg(X : float)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')`

**end**;

**begin**

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(1) );`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(sqrt(3)/2) );`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(sqrt(2)/2) );`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(1/2) );`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(0) );`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(-1) );`

**end.**

---

### 25.12.2 arcosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function arcosh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arcosh` ([500](#)), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arcosh` ([500](#))

### 25.12.3 arcosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function arcosh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should be larger than 1. The `arccosh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `cosh` (504), `sinh` (531), `arcsin` (500), `arsinh` (502), `artanh` (502), `tanh` (535)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcosh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(arcosh(1));

**WriteLn**(arcosh(2));

**end.**

---

### 25.12.4 arcsin

Synopsis: Return inverse sine

Declaration: `function arcsin(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcsin` returns the inverse sine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1.

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arccos` (499), `arcosh` (500), `arsinh` (502), `artanh` (502)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcsin function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')

**end;**

**begin**

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(1));

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(**sqrt**(3)/2));

---

```

WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (sqrt (2)/2));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (1/2));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (0));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (-1));
end.

```

---

### 25.12.5 arcsinh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function arcsinh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arsinh` (502), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arsinh` (502)

### 25.12.6 arctan2

Synopsis: Return arctangent of (y/x)

Declaration: `function arctan2(y: float;x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arctan2` calculates `arctan(y/x)`, and returns an angle in the correct quadrant. The returned angle will be in the range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  radians. The values of `x` and `y` must be between  $-2^{64}$  and  $2^{64}$ , moreover `x` should be different from zero. On Intel systems this function is implemented with the native intel `fpatan` instruction.

Errors: If `x` is zero, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `arccos` (499), `arcosh` (500), `arsinh` (502), `artanh` (502)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arctan2 function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')

**end**;

**begin**

**WriteRadDeg** ( arctan2 (2,1));

**end**.

---

### 25.12.7 arctanh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function arctanh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `artanh` (502), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `artanh` (502)

### 25.12.8 arsinh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function arsinh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`. The `arcsinh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` (500), `arccos` (499), `arcsin` (500), `artanh` (502)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arsinh function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(0)`);

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(1)`);

**end**.

---

### 25.12.9 artanh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function artanh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `artanh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`, where `x` should lie in the interval `[-1,1]`, borders included. The `arctanh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: In case `x` is not in the interval `[-1,1]`, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcosh` (500), `arccos` (499), `arcsin` (500), `artanh` (502)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;

{ Program to demonstrate the artanh function. }

Uses math;

begin
  WriteLn(artanh(0));
  WriteLn(artanh(0.5));
end.

```

---

### 25.12.10 ceil

Synopsis: Return the lowest integer number greater than or equal to argument

Declaration: `function ceil(x: float) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ceil` returns the lowest integer number greater than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If the absolute value of `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `floor` ([508](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;

{ Program to demonstrate the Ceil function. }

Uses math;

begin
  WriteLn(Ceil(-3.7)); // should be -3
  WriteLn(Ceil(3.7)); // should be 4
  WriteLn(Ceil(-4.0)); // should be -4
end.

```

---

### 25.12.11 ClearExceptions

Synopsis: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

Declaration: `procedure ClearExceptions(RaisePending: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

### 25.12.12 CompareValue

Synopsis: Compare 2 values

**Declaration:**

```
function CompareValue(const A: Integer;const B: Integer)
    : TValueRelationship
function CompareValue(const A: Int64;const B: Int64)
    : TValueRelationship
function CompareValue(const A: QWord;const B: QWord)
    : TValueRelationship
function CompareValue(const A: Extended;const B: Extended;
    delta: Extended) : TValueRelationship
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** CompareValue compares 2 integer or floating point values A and B and returns one of the following values:

```
-1if A<B
0if A=B
-1if A>B
```

See also: TValueRelationship ([498](#))

### 25.12.13 cosecant

**Synopsis:** Calculate cosecant

**Declaration:** `function cosecant(x: float) : float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** cosecant calculates the cosecant ( $1/\sin(x)$ ) of its argument x.

**Errors:** If 0 or 180 degrees is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: secant ([529](#))

### 25.12.14 cosh

**Synopsis:** Return hyperbolic cosine

**Declaration:** `function cosh(x: float) : float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Cosh returns the hyperbolic cosine of it's argument {x}.

**Errors:** None.

See also: arcosh ([500](#)), sinh ([531](#)), arsinh ([502](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the cosh function. }
```

**Uses** math;

**begin**

```
    Writeln(Cosh(0));
```

```
    Writeln(Cosh(1));
```

**end.**

---

**25.12.15 cot**

Synopsis: Alias for `Cotan`

Declaration: `function cot(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `cot` is an alias for the `cotan` (505) function.

See also: `cotan` (505)

**25.12.16 cotan**

Synopsis: Return cotangent

Declaration: `function cotan(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cotan` returns the cotangent of it's argument `x`. The argument `x` must be in radians. `x` should be different from zero.

Errors: If `x` is zero then a overflow error will occur.

See also: `tanh` (535)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `Example9`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the cotan function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

**writeln**(`cotan(pi/2)`);

**Writeln**(`cotan(pi/3)`);

**Writeln**(`cotan(pi/4)`);

**end.**

---

**25.12.17 csc**

Synopsis: Alias for `cosecant`

Declaration: `function csc(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `csc` is an alias for the `cosecant` (504) function.

See also: `cosecant` (504)

**25.12.18 cycletorad**

Synopsis: Convert cycle angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function cycletorad(cycle: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cycletorad` transforms it's argument `cycle` (an angle expressed in cycles) to radians. (1 cycle is  $2\pi$  radians).

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` ([506](#)), `degtorad` ([507](#)), `radtodeg` ([526](#)), `radtograd` ([526](#)), `radto cycle` ([525](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** `Example10;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the cycletorad function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`writeln(cos(cycletorad(1/6))); // Should print 1/2`

`writeln(cos(cycletorad(1/8))); // should be sqrt(2)/2`

**end.**

---

**25.12.19 degtograd**

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to grads angle

Declaration: `function degtograd(deg: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Degtograd` transforms it's argument `deg` (an angle in degrees) to grads. (90 degrees is 100 grad.)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([506](#)), `degtorad` ([507](#)), `radtodeg` ([526](#)), `radtograd` ([526](#)), `radto cycle` ([525](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the degtograd function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`writeln(degtograd(90));`

`writeln(degtograd(180));`

`writeln(degtograd(270))`

**end.**

---

**25.12.20 degtorad**

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to radians angle.

Declaration: `function degtorad(deg: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Degtorad converts it's argument deg (an angle in degrees) to radians. (pi radians is 180 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: [cycletorad \(506\)](#), [degtograd \(506\)](#), [radto deg \(526\)](#), [radtograd \(526\)](#), [radto cycle \(525\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degtorad function. }*

**Uses** math;

```
begin
  writeln(degtorad(45));
  writeln(degtorad(90));
  writeln(degtorad(180));
  writeln(degtorad(270));
  writeln(degtorad(360));
end.
```

---

**25.12.21 DivMod**

Synopsis: Return DIV and MOD of arguments

Declaration: `procedure DivMod(Dividend: Integer; Divisor: Word; var Result: Word; var Remainder: Word)`  
`procedure DivMod(Dividend: Integer; Divisor: Word; var Result: SmallInt; var Remainder: SmallInt)`  
`procedure DivMod(Dividend: DWord; Divisor: DWord; var Result: DWord; var Remainder: DWord)`  
`procedure DivMod(Dividend: Integer; Divisor: Integer; var Result: Integer; var Remainder: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: DivMod returns Dividend DIV Divisor in Result, and Dividend MOD Divisor in Remainder

**25.12.22 EnsureRange**

Synopsis: Change value to it falls in specified range.

Declaration: `function EnsureRange(const AValue: Integer; const AMin: Integer; const AMax: Integer) : Integer; Overload`  
`function EnsureRange(const AValue: Int64; const AMin: Int64; const AMax: Int64) : Int64; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnsureRange` returns `Value` if `AValue` is in the range `AMin..AMax`. It returns `AMin` if the value is less than `AMin`, or `AMax` if the value is larger than `AMax`.

See also: `InRange` (511)

### 25.12.23 floor

Synopsis: Return the largest integer smaller than or equal to argument

Declaration: `function floor(x: float) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Floor` returns the largest integer smaller than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow will occur.

See also: `ceil` (503)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the floor function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`WriteLn (Ceil (-3.7)); // should be -4`

`WriteLn (Ceil (3.7)); // should be 3`

`WriteLn (Ceil (-4.0)); // should be -4`

**end.**

---

### 25.12.24 Frexp

Synopsis: Return mantissa and exponent.

Declaration: `procedure Frexp(X: float; var Mantissa: float; var Exponent: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frexp` returns the mantissa and exponent of it's argument `x` in mantissa and exponent.

Errors: None

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the frexp function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Procedure** `dofrexp(Const X : extended);`

---

```

var man : extended;
    exp: longint;

begin
    man:=0;
    exp:=0;
    frexp(x,man,exp);
    write(x,' has ');
    WriteLn('mantissa ',man,' and exponent ',exp);
end;

begin
//    dofrep(1.00);
    dofrep(1.02e-1);
    dofrep(1.03e-2);
    dofrep(1.02e1);
    dofrep(1.03e2);
end.

```

---

### 25.12.25 GetExceptionMask

Synopsis: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: function GetExceptionMask : TFPUExceptionMask

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 25.12.26 GetPrecisionMode

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: function GetPrecisionMode : TFPUPrecisionMode

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 25.12.27 GetRoundMode

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: function GetRoundMode : TFPURoundingMode

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

### 25.12.28 gradtodeg

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to degrees angle

Declaration: function gradtodeg(grad: float) : float

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtodeg` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to degrees. (100 grad is 90 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([506](#)), `degtograd` ([506](#)), `radtodeg` ([526](#)), `radtograd` ([526](#)), `radto cycle` ([525](#)), `gradtorad` ([510](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the `gradtodeg` function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

```
begin
  writeln(gradtodeg(100));
  writeln(gradtodeg(200));
  writeln(gradtodeg(300));
end.
```

---

### 25.12.29 `gradtorad`

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function gradtorad(grad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtorad` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to radians. (200 grad is pi degrees).

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([506](#)), `degtograd` ([506](#)), `radtodeg` ([526](#)), `radtograd` ([526](#)), `radto cycle` ([525](#)), `gradtodeg` ([509](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the `gradtorad` function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

```
begin
  writeln(gradtorad(100));
  writeln(gradtorad(200));
  writeln(gradtorad(300));
end.
```

---

### 25.12.30 hypot

Synopsis: Return hypotenuse of triangle

Declaration: `function hypot(x: float;y: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hypot` returns the hypotenuse of the triangle where the sides adjacent to the square angle have lengths `x` and `y`. The function uses Pythagoras' rule for this.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the hypot function. }`

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`WriteLn(hypot(3,4)); // should be 5`  
**end.**

---

### 25.12.31 ifthen

Synopsis: Return one of two values, depending on a boolean condition

Declaration: `function ifthen(val: Boolean;const iftrue: Integer;  
                          const iffalse: Integer) : Integer; Overload`  
`function ifthen(val: Boolean;const iftrue: Int64;const iffalse: Int64)  
                  : Int64; Overload`  
`function ifthen(val: Boolean;const iftrue: double;const iffalse: double)  
                  : double; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ifthen` returns `iftrue` if `val` is `True`, and `iffalse` if `val` is `False`.

This function can be used in expressions.

### 25.12.32 InRange

Synopsis: Check whether value is in range.

Declaration: `function InRange(const AValue: Integer;const AMin: Integer;  
                          const AMax: Integer) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function InRange(const AValue: Int64;const AMin: Int64;  
                  const AMax: Int64) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `InRange` returns `True` if `AValue` is in the range `AMin..AMax`. It returns `False` if `Value` lies outside the specified range.

See also: `EnsureRange` ([507](#))

**25.12.33 intpower**

Synopsis: Return integer power.

Declaration: `function intpower(base: float; const exponent: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intpower` returns `base` to the power `exponent`, where `exponent` is an integer value.

Errors: If `base` is zero and the exponent is negative, then an overflow error will occur.

See also: `power` ([525](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the intpower function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Procedure** `DoIntpower (X : extended; Pow : Integer);`

**begin**

`writeln (X:8:4, '^', Pow:2, ' = ', intpower(X,pow):8:4);`  
**end;**

**begin**

`dointpower (0.0,0);`  
`dointpower (1.0,0);`  
`dointpower (2.0,5);`  
`dointpower (4.0,3);`  
`dointpower (2.0,-1);`  
`dointpower (2.0,-2);`  
`dointpower (-2.0,4);`  
`dointpower (-4.0,3);`

**end.**

---

**25.12.34 IsInfinite**

Synopsis: Check whether value is infinite

Declaration: `function IsInfinite(const d: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsInfinite` returns `True` if the double `d` contains the infinite value.

See also: `IsZero` ([513](#)), `IsInfinite` ([512](#))

**25.12.35 IsNan**

Synopsis: Check whether value is Not a Number

Declaration: `function IsNan(const d: Double) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsNan` returns `True` if the double `d` contains Not A Number (a value which cannot be represented correctly in double format).

See also: `IsZero` ([513](#)), `IsInfinite` ([512](#))

### 25.12.36 `IsZero`

**Synopsis:** Check whether value is zero

**Declaration:**

```
function IsZero(const A: Single;Epsilon: Single) : Boolean; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Single) : Boolean; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Extended;Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean
; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Extended) : Boolean; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsZero` checks whether the float value `A` is zero, up to a precision of `Epsilon`. It returns `True` if `Abs(A)` is less than `Epsilon`.

The default value for `Epsilon` depends on the type of the argument: it is 1E-4 for `Single`, 1E-12 for `Double` and 1E-16 for `extended`.

See also: `IsNan` ([512](#)), `IsInfinite` ([512](#)), `SameValue` ([528](#))

### 25.12.37 `ldexp`

**Synopsis:** Return (2 to the power `p`) times `x`

**Declaration:**

```
function ldexp(x: float;const p: Integer) : float
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Ldexp` returns (2 to the power `p`) times `x`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `lnxp1` ([514](#)), `log10` ([514](#)), `log2` ([515](#)), `logn` ([515](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the `ldexp` function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

**writeln** (`ldexp(2,4):8:4`);

**writeln** (`ldexp(0.5,3):8:4`);

**end.**

---

**25.12.38 lnxp1**

Synopsis: Return natural logarithm of 1+X

Declaration: `function lnxp1(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lnxp1` returns the natural logarithm of 1+X. The result is more precise for small values of x. x should be larger than -1.

Errors: If  $x \leq -1$  then an `EInvalidArgument` exception will be raised.

See also: `ldexp` (513), `log10` (514), `log2` (515), `logn` (515)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** Example20;

*{ Program to demonstrate the lnxp1 function. }*

**Uses** math;

```
begin
  writeln(lnxp1(0));
  writeln(lnxp1(0.5));
  writeln(lnxp1(1));
end.
```

---

**25.12.39 log10**

Synopsis: Return 10-Based logarithm.

Declaration: `function log10(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Log10` returns the 10-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (513), `lnxp1` (514), `log2` (515), `logn` (515)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the log10 function. }*

**Uses** math;

```
begin
  Writeln(Log10(10):8:4);
  Writeln(Log10(100):8:4);
  Writeln(Log10(1000):8:4);
  Writeln(Log10(1):8:4);
  Writeln(Log10(0.1):8:4);
  Writeln(Log10(0.01):8:4);
  Writeln(Log10(0.001):8:4);
end.
```

---

**25.12.40 log2**

Synopsis: Return 2-based logarithm

Declaration: `function log2(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Log2 returns the 2-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If  $x$  is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (513), `lnxp1` (514), `log10` (514), `logn` (515)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the log2 function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

```

  WriteLn(Log2(2):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(8):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(1):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.5):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.25):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.125):8:4);

```

**end.**

---

**25.12.41 logn**

Synopsis: Return N-based logarithm.

Declaration: `function logn(n: float;x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Logn returns the n-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If  $x$  is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (513), `lnxp1` (514), `log10` (514), `log2` (515)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ Program to demonstrate the logn function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

```

  WriteLn(Logn(3,4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(2,4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(6,9):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(exp(1),exp(1)):8:4);

```

---

```

Writeln (Logn (0.5 , 1):8:4);
Writeln (Logn (0.25 , 3):8:4);
Writeln (Logn (0.125 , 5):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 25.12.42 Max

Synopsis: Return largest of 2 values

Declaration: `function Max(a: Integer;b: Integer) : Integer; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Int64;b: Int64) : Int64; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Extended;b: Extended) : Extended; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Max returns the maximum of Int1 and Int2.

Errors: None.

See also: min ([519](#)), maxIntValue ([516](#)), maxvalue ([517](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** Example24 ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the max function. }*

**Uses** math ;

**Var**

A,B : Cardinal ;

**begin**

A:=1;b:=2;

**writeln** (max(a,b));

**end.**

---

### 25.12.43 MaxIntValue

Synopsis: Return largest element in integer array

Declaration: `function MaxIntValue(const Data: Array of Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: MaxIntValue returns the largest integer out of the Data array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use the maxvalue ([517](#)) function instead.

Errors: None.

See also: maxvalue ([517](#)), minvalue ([521](#)), minIntValue ([520](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex25.pp

---

```

Program Example25;

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxIntValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(exarray) to high(exarray) do
    ExArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
  WriteLn(MaxIntValue(ExArray));
end.

```

---

### 25.12.44 maxvalue

Synopsis: Return largest value in array

**Declaration:** function maxvalue(const data: Array of Extended) : Extended  
 function maxvalue(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer) : Extended  
 function maxvalue(const data: Array of Integer) : Integer  
 function maxvalue(const data: PInteger;const N: Integer) : Integer

Visibility: default

**Description:** Maxvalue returns the largest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: maxIntValue ([516](#)), minvalue ([521](#)), minIntValue ([520](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex26.pp

---

```

program Example26;

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

uses math;

var i:1..100;
    f_array:array[1..100] of Float;
    i_array:array[1..100] of Integer;

```

```

    Pf_array : Pfloat;
    Pi_array : Pinteger;

begin
    randomize;

    Pf_array := @f_array[1];
    Pi_array := @i_array[1];

    for i:=low(f_array) to high(f_array) do
        f_array[i] := (random-random)*100;
    for i:=low(i_array) to high(i_array) do
        i_array[i] := random(l)-random(100);

    WriteLn('Max Float      : ',MaxValue(f_array):8:4);
    WriteLn('Max Float    (b) : ',MaxValue(Pf_array,100):8:4);
    WriteLn('Max Integer    : ',MaxValue(i_array):8);
    WriteLn('Max Integer (b) : ',MaxValue(Pi_array,100):8);
end.

```

---

### 25.12.45 mean

Synopsis: Return mean value of array

Declaration: `function mean(const data: Array of Extended) : float`  
`function mean(const data: PExtended;const N: LongInt) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Mean` returns the average value of `data`. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `meanandstddev` ([519](#)), `momentskewkurtosis` ([522](#)), `sum` ([532](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Mean function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`l : Integer;`  
`ExArray : TExArray;`

**begin**

**Randomize;**

**for** `l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do`

`ExArray[i] := (Random-Random)*100;`

**WriteLn** ('Max : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);

**WriteLn** ('Min : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);

**WriteLn** ('Mean : ',Mean(ExArray):8:4);

**WriteLn** ('Mean (b) : ',Mean(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);

---

end.

---

### 25.12.46 meanandstddev

Synopsis: Return mean and standard deviation of array

**Declaration:** `procedure meanandstddev(const data: Array of Extended; var mean: float;  
var stddev: float)  
procedure meanandstddev(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt;  
var mean: float; var stddev: float)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `meanandstddev` calculates the mean and standard deviation of data and returns the result in `mean` and `stddev`, respectively. `Stddev` is zero if there is only one value. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` (518), `sum` (532), `sumofsquares` (533), `momentskewkurtosis` (522)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `Example28;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Meanandstddev function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Extended;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;  
Mean, stddev : Extended;`

**begin**

`Randomize;  
for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do  
ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;  
MeanAndStdDev(ExArray, Mean, StdDev);  
WriteLn('Mean : ', Mean:8:4);  
WriteLn('StdDev : ', StdDev:8:4);  
MeanAndStdDev(@ExArray[1], 100, Mean, StdDev);  
WriteLn('Mean (b) : ', Mean:8:4);  
WriteLn('StdDev (b) : ', StdDev:8:4);`

`end.`

---

### 25.12.47 Min

Synopsis: Return smallest of two values.

**Declaration:** `function Min(a: Integer; b: Integer) : Integer; Overload  
function Min(a: Int64; b: Int64) : Int64; Overload  
function Min(a: Extended; b: Extended) : Extended; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `min` returns the smallest value of `Int1` and `Int2`;

Errors: None.

See also: `max` ([516](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex29.pp`

---

```
Program Example29;

{ Program to demonstrate the min function. }

Uses math;

Var
  A,B : Cardinal;

begin
  A:=1;b:=2;
  writeln(min(a,b));
end.
```

---

### 25.12.48 MinIntValue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in integer array

Declaration: `function MinIntValue(const Data: Array of Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinIntvalue` returns the smallest value in the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use `minvalue` instead.

Errors: None

See also: `minvalue` ([521](#)), `maxIntValue` ([516](#)), `maxvalue` ([517](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex30.pp`

---

```
Program Example30;

{ Program to demonstrate the MinIntValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
```

---

```

Randomize;
for i:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
  ExArray[i]:=Random(i)-Random(100);
WriteLn(MinIntValue(ExArray));
end.

```

---

### 25.12.49 minvalue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in array

Declaration: `function minvalue(const data: Array of Extended) : Extended`  
`function minvalue(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer) : Extended`  
`function minvalue(const data: Array of Integer) : Integer`  
`function MinValue(const Data: PInteger;const N: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Minvalue` returns the smallest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxIntValue` (516), `maxvalue` (517), `minIntValue` (520)

Listing: `./mathex/ex31.pp`

---

**program** Example31;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MinValue function. }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**uses** math;

**var** i:1..100;  
 f\_array:array[1..100] of Float;  
 i\_array:array[1..100] of Integer;  
 Pf\_array:Pfloat;  
 Pi\_array:Pinteger;

**begin**  
 randomize;

Pf\_array:=@f\_array[1];  
 Pi\_array:=@i\_array[1];

**for** i:=low(f\_array) to high(f\_array) **do**  
 f\_array[i]:=(random-random)\*100;  
**for** i:=low(i\_array) to high(i\_array) **do**  
 i\_array[i]:=random(i)-random(100);

**WriteLn**( 'Min Float : ',MinValue(f\_array):8:4);  
**WriteLn**( 'Min Float (b) : ',MinValue(Pf\_array,100):8:4);  
**WriteLn**( 'Min Integer : ',MinValue(i\_array):8);  
**WriteLn**( 'Min Integer (b) : ',MinValue(Pi\_array,100):8);  
**end.**

---

**25.12.50 momentskewkurtosis**

Synopsis: Return 4 first moments of distribution

Declaration: `procedure momentskewkurtosis(const data: Array of Extended;  
   out m1: float;out m2: float;out m3: float;  
   out m4: float;out skew: float;  
   out kurtosis: float)  
 procedure momentskewkurtosis(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer;  
                                   out m1: float;out m2: float;out m3: float;  
                                   out m4: float;out skew: float;  
                                   out kurtosis: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `momentskewkurtosis` calculates the 4 first moments of the distribution of values in `data` and returns them in `m1,m2,m3` and `m4`, as well as the `skew` and `kurtosis`.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([518](#)), `meanandstddev` ([519](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex32.pp`

---

```
program Example32;

{ Program to demonstrate the momentskewkurtosis function. }

uses math;

var distarray: array[1..1000] of float;
    l: longint;
    m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis: float;

begin
  randomize;
  for l:=low(distarray) to high(distarray) do
    distarray[l]:=random;
  momentskewkurtosis(DistArray,m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis);

  Writeln ( '1st moment : ',m1:8:6);
  Writeln ( '2nd moment : ',m2:8:6);
  Writeln ( '3rd moment : ',m3:8:6);
  Writeln ( '4th moment : ',m4:8:6);
  Writeln ( 'Skew       : ',skew:8:6);
  Writeln ( 'kurtosis    : ',kurtosis:8:6);
end.
```

---

**25.12.51 norm**

Synopsis: Return Euclidian norm

Declaration: `function norm(const data: Array of Extended) : float  
 function norm(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Norm` calculates the Euclidian norm of the array of data. This equals `sqrt (sumofsquares (data))`.

The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `sumofsquares` ([533](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex33.pp`

---

```

program Example33;

  { Program to demonstrate the norm function. }

uses math;

var v:array[1..10] of Float;
    l:1..10;

begin
  for l:=low(v) to high(v) do
    v[l]:=random;
    writeln(norm(v));
end.

```

---

### 25.12.52 operator **\*\***(float, float): float

**Declaration:** `function operator **(float, float): float(bas: float;expo: float)`  
`: float`

**Visibility:** default

### 25.12.53 operator **\*\***(Int64, Int64): Int64

**Declaration:** `function operator **(Int64, Int64): Int64(bas: Int64;expo: Int64)`  
`: Int64`

**Visibility:** default

### 25.12.54 popnstddev

**Synopsis:** Return population variance

**Declaration:** `function popnstddev(const data: Array of Extended) : float`  
`function popnstddev(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer) : float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Popnstddev` returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the `Data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `popnvariance` ([524](#)), `mean` ([518](#)), `meanandstddev` ([519](#)), `stddev` ([531](#)), `momentskewkurtosis` ([522](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ Program to demonstrate the PopnStdDev function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] **of** Float;

**Var**

I : Integer;

ExArray : TExArray;

**begin**

Randomize;

**for** I:=**low**(ExArray) **to high**(ExArray) **do**

ExArray[I]:= (**Random**-**Random**)\*100;

WriteIn('Max : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);

WriteIn('Min : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);

WriteIn('Pop. stddev. : ',PopnStdDev(ExArray):8:4);

WriteIn('Pop. stddev. (b) : ',PopnStdDev(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);

**end.**

---

### 25.12.55 popnvariance

Synopsis: Return population variance

**Declaration:** function popnvariance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : float  
 function popnvariance(const data: Array of Extended) : float

Visibility: default

**Description:** Popnvariance the population variance of the values in the Data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: popnstddev ([523](#)), mean ([518](#)), meanandstddev ([519](#)), stddev ([531](#)), momentskewkurtosis ([522](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the PopnVariance function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

I : Integer;

ExArray : **Array**[1..100] **of** Float;

**begin**

Randomize;

**for** I:=**low**(ExArray) **to high**(ExArray) **do**

ExArray[I]:= (**Random**-**Random**)\*100;

---

```

WriteIn ( 'Max           : ',MaxValue ( ExArray ):8:4 );
WriteIn ( 'Min           : ',MinValue ( ExArray ):8:4 );
WriteIn ( 'Pop. var.     : ',PopnVariance ( ExArray ):8:4 );
WriteIn ( 'Pop. var. (b) : ',PopnVariance ( @ExArray [ 1 ], 100 ):8:4 );
end.

```

---

### 25.12.56 power

Synopsis: Return real power.

Declaration: `function power (base: float; exponent: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `power` raises `base` to the power `power`. This is equivalent to `exp (power*ln (base) )`. Therefore `base` should be non-negative.

Errors: None.

See also: `intpower` ([512](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** Example34;

*{ Program to demonstrate the power function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**procedure** dopower (x,y : float);

```

begin
  writeln (x:8:6, '^', y:8:6, ' = ', power (x,y):8:6)
end;

```

```

begin
  dopower (2,2);
  dopower (2,-2);
  dopower (2,0.0);
end.

```

---

### 25.12.57 radtocycle

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to cycle angle

Declaration: `function radtocycle (rad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Radtocycle` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in cycles.  
(1 cycle equals  $2\pi$  radians)

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` ([506](#)), `degtorad` ([507](#)), `radtodeg` ([526](#)), `radtograd` ([526](#)), `cycletorad` ([506](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex37.pp

**Program** Example37;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtocycle function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**writeln**(radtocycle(2\***pi**):8:6);

**writeln**(radtocycle(**pi**):8:6);

**writeln**(radtocycle(**pi**/2):8:6);

**end.**

### 25.12.58 radtodeg

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function radtodeg(rad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in degrees. (180 degrees equals  $\pi$  radians)

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` ([506](#)), `degtorad` ([507](#)), `radtocycle` ([525](#)), `radtoegrad` ([526](#)), `cycletorad` ([506](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex38.pp

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtodeg function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**writeln**(radtodeg(2\***pi**):8:6);

**writeln**(radtodeg(**pi**):8:6);

**writeln**(radtodeg(**pi**/2):8:6);

**end.**

### 25.12.59 radtoegrad

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to grads angle

Declaration: `function radtoegrad(rad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in grads. (200 grads equals  $\pi$  radians)

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` ([506](#)), `degtorad` ([507](#)), `radtocycle` ([525](#)), `radtodeg` ([526](#)), `cycletorad` ([506](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radto grad function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**  
     **writeln**(radto grad(2\***pi**):8:6);  
     **writeln**(radto grad(**pi**):8:6);  
     **writeln**(radto grad(**pi**/2):8:6);  
**end.**

---

### 25.12.60 randg

Synopsis: Return gaussian distributed random number.

Declaration: `function randg(mean: float; stddev: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `randg` returns a random number which - when produced in large quantities - has a Gaussian distribution with mean `mean` and standard deviation `stddev`.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([518](#)), `stddev` ([531](#)), `meanandstddev` ([519](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ Program to demonstrate the randg function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**Var**  
     I : Integer;  
     ExArray : **Array**[1..10000] of Float;;  
     Mean, stddev : Float;  
  
**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     **for** I := **low**(ExArray) **to high**(ExArray) **do**  
         ExArray[I] := Randg(1, 0.2);  
     MeanAndStdDev(ExArray, Mean, StdDev);  
     **Writeln**( 'Mean : ', Mean:8:4);  
     **Writeln**( 'StdDev : ', StdDev:8:4);  
**end.**

---

### 25.12.61 RandomFrom

Synopsis: Return a random element of an array of numbers

Visibility: default

See also: [#rtl.system.Random \(1110\)](#), [RandomRange \(528\)](#)

### Synopsis: Return a random number in a range

Visibility: default

See also: [#rtl.system.Random \(1110\)](#), [RandomFrom \(527\)](#)

### Synopsis: Round to the specified number of digits

Visibility: default

See also: [TRoundToRange \(498\)](#), [SimpleRoundTo \(530\)](#)

### Synopsis: Check whether 2 float values are the same

Visibility: default

If unspecified, the default value for `Epsilon` is 0.0.

See also: [MinFloat \(496\)](#), [IsZero \(513\)](#)

### 25.12.65 **sec**

Synopsis: Alias for `secant`

Declaration: `function sec(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `sec` is an alias for the `secant` ([529](#)) function.

See also: `secant` ([529](#))

### 25.12.66 **secant**

Synopsis: Calculate `secant`

Declaration: `function secant(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Secant` calculates the `secant` ( $1/\cos(x)$ ) of its argument `x`.

Errors: If 90 or 270 degrees is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `cosecant` ([504](#))

### 25.12.67 **SetExceptionMask**

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: `function SetExceptionMask(const Mask: TFPUEExceptionMask)  
: TFPUEExceptionMask`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 25.12.68 **SetPrecisionMode**

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: `function SetPrecisionMode(const Precision: TFPUPrecisionMode)  
: TFPUPrecisionMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 25.12.69 **SetRoundMode**

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: `function SetRoundMode(const RoundMode: TFPURoundingMode)  
: TFPURoundingMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

### 25.12.70 Sign

Synopsis: Return sign of argument

Declaration: `function Sign(const AValue: Integer) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Int64) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Double) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Extended) : TValueSign; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sign` returns the sign of it's argument, which can be an Integer, 64 bit integer, or a double. The returned value is an integer which is -1, 0 or 1, and can be used to do further calculations with.

### 25.12.71 SimpleRoundTo

Synopsis: Round to the specified number of digits (rounding up if needed)

Declaration: `function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Extended;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `SimpleRoundTo` rounds the specified float `AValue` to the specified number of digits, but rounds up, and returns the result. This result is accurate to "10 to the power Digits". It uses the standard `Round` function for this.

See also: `TRoundToRange` ([498](#)), `RoundTo` ([528](#))

### 25.12.72 sincos

Synopsis: Return sine and cosine of argument

Declaration: `procedure sincos(theta: float; out sinus: float; out cosinus: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sincos` calculates the sine and cosine of the angle `theta`, and returns the result in `sinus` and `cosinus`.

On Intel hardware, This calculation will be faster than making 2 calls to calculate the sine and cosine separately.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcsin` ([500](#)), `arccos` ([499](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the sincos function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Procedure** `dosincos(Angle : Float);`

**Var**

`Sine, Cosine : Float;`

---

```

begin
  sincos (angle , sine , cosine );
  Write ( 'Angle : ', Angle : 8 : 6 );
  Write ( ' Sine : ', sine : 8 : 6 );
  Write ( ' Cosine : ', cosine : 8 : 6 );
end;

begin
  dosincos (pi );
  dosincos (pi / 2 );
  dosincos (pi / 3 );
  dosincos (pi / 4 );
  dosincos (pi / 6 );
end.

```

---

### 25.12.73 sinh

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function sinh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sinh` returns the hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

Errors:

See also: `cosh` ([504](#)), `arsinh` ([502](#)), `tanh` ([535](#)), `artanh` ([502](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex42.pp`

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ Program to demonstrate the sinh function. }*

**Uses** math;

```

begin
  writeln (sinh (0));
  writeln (sinh (1));
  writeln (sinh (-1));
end.

```

---

### 25.12.74 stddev

Synopsis: Return standard deviation of data

Declaration: `function stddev(const data: Array of Extended) : float`  
`function stddev(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Stddev` returns the standard deviation of the values in `Data`. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: mean ([518](#)), meanandstddev ([519](#)), variance ([536](#)), totalvariance ([535](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ Program to demonstrate the stddev function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**Var**

  I : Integer;  
  ExArray : **Array**[1..10000] of Float;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**for** I:=**low**(ExArray) **to high**(ExArray) **do**

    ExArray[I]:=Randg(1,0.2);

**WriteIn**( 'StdDev      : ',StdDev(ExArray):8:4);

**WriteIn**( 'StdDev (b) : ',StdDev(@ExArray[0],10000):8:4);

**end.**

---

### 25.12.75 sum

Synopsis: Return sum of values

**Declaration:** function sum(const data: Array of Extended) : float  
                  function sum(const data: PExtended;const N: LongInt) : float

Visibility: default

**Description:** Sum returns the sum of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: sumofsquares ([533](#)), sumsandsquares ([534](#)), totalvariance ([535](#)), variance ([536](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex44.pp

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Sum function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

  I : 1..100;  
  ExArray : **Array**[1..100] of Float;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**for** I:=**low**(ExArray) **to high**(ExArray) **do**

    ExArray[I]:=(**Random**-**Random**)\*100;

**WriteIn**( 'Max      : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);

---

```

Writeln ( 'Min      : ', MinValue ( ExArray ) : 8 : 4 );
Writeln ( 'Sum      : ', Sum ( ExArray ) : 8 : 4 );
Writeln ( 'Sum (b) : ', Sum (@ExArray[1], 100) : 8 : 4 );
end.

```

---

### 25.12.76 sumInt

Synopsis: Return the sum of an array of integers

Declaration: `function sumInt(const data: PInt64; const N: LongInt) : Int64`  
`function sumInt(const data: Array of Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `SumInt` returns the sum of the `N` integers in the `Data` array, where this can be an open array or a pointer to an array.

Errors: An overflow may occur.

### 25.12.77 sumofsquares

Synopsis: Return sum of squares of values

Declaration: `function sumofsquares(const data: Array of Extended) : float`  
`function sumofsquares(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sumofsquares` returns the sum of the squares of the values in the `data` array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sum` (532), `sumsandsquares` (534), `totalvariance` (535), `variance` (536)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** Example45;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

`I : 1..100;`  
`ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do`

`ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;`

`Writeln` ( 'Max : ', MaxValue ( ExArray ) : 8 : 4 );

`Writeln` ( 'Min : ', MinValue ( ExArray ) : 8 : 4 );

`Writeln` ( 'Sum squares : ', SumOfSquares ( ExArray ) : 8 : 4 );

`Writeln` ( 'Sum squares (b) : ', SumOfSquares (@ExArray[1], 100) : 8 : 4 );

**end.**

---

**25.12.78 sumsandsquares**

Synopsis: Return sum and sum of squares of values.

Declaration: `procedure sumsandsquares(const data: Array of Extended; var sum: float;  
var sumofsquares: float)  
procedure sumsandsquares(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer;  
var sum: float; var sumofsquares: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `sumsandsquares` calculates the sum of the values and the sum of the squares of the values in the `data` array and returns the results in `sum` and `sumofsquares`.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sum` (532), `sumofsquares` (533), `totalvariance` (535), `variance` (536)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex46.pp`

**Program** Example45;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

`l : 1..100;  
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float  
s,ss : float;`

**begin**

`Randomize;  
for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do  
ExArray[l]:=(Random-Random)*100;  
WriteLn('Max : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);  
WriteLn('Min : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);  
SumsAndSquares(ExArray,S,SS);  
WriteLn('Sum : ',S:8:4);  
WriteLn('Sum squares : ',SS:8:4);  
SumsAndSquares(@ExArray[1],100,S,SS);  
WriteLn('Sum (b) : ',S:8:4);  
WriteLn('Sum squares (b) : ',SS:8:4);`

**end.**

**25.12.79 tan**

Synopsis: Return tangent

Declaration: `function tan(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tan` returns the tangent of `x`. The argument `x` must be in radians.

Errors: If `x` (normalized) is `pi/2` or `3pi/2` then an overflow will occur.

See also: `tanh` (535), `arcsin` (500), `sincos` (530), `arccos` (499)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Tan function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** DoTan(Angle : Float);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Angle : ',RadToDeg(Angle):8:6);

**WriteLn**( ' Tangent : ',Tan(Angle):8:6);

**end**;

**begin**

    DoTan(0);

    DoTan(**Pi**);

    DoTan(**Pi**/3);

    DoTan(**Pi**/4);

    DoTan(**Pi**/6);

**end**.

---

### 25.12.80 tanh

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function tanh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tanh returns the hyperbolic tangent of x.

Errors: None.

See also: [arcsin \(500\)](#), [sincos \(530\)](#), [arccos \(499\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Tanh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**writeln**(tanh(0));

**writeln**(tanh(1));

**writeln**(tanh(-1));

**end**.

---

### 25.12.81 totalvariance

Synopsis: Return total variance of values

Declaration: `function totalvariance(const data: Array of Extended) : float`

`function totalvariance(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TotalVariance` returns the total variance of the values in the `data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `variance` (536), `stddev` (531), `mean` (518)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TotalVariance function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float`;

**Var**

`I : Integer`;

`ExArray : TExArray`;

`TV : float`;

**begin**

`Randomize`;

**for** `I:=1 to 100 do`

`ExArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100`;

`TV := TotalVariance(ExArray)`;

`WriteIn('Total variance : ',TV:8:4)`;

`TV := TotalVariance(@ExArray[1],100)`;

`WriteIn('Total Variance (b) : ',TV:8:4)`;

**end.**

---

### 25.12.82 variance

Synopsis: Return variance of values

**Declaration:** `function variance(const data: Array of Extended) : float`  
`function variance(const data: PExtended;const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Variance` returns the variance of the values in the `data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `totalvariance` (535), `stddev` (531), `mean` (518)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example50;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Variance function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

  I : 1..100;

  ExArray : **Array**[1..100] **of** Float;

  V : float;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**for** I:=**low**(ExArray) **to high**(ExArray) **do**

    ExArray[I]:=(**Random-~~Random~~**)\*100;

  V:=Variance(ExArray);

**WriteIn**( 'Variance      : ',V:8:4);

  V:=Variance(@ExArray[1],100);

**WriteIn**( 'Variance (b) : ',V:8:4);

**end.**

---

## 25.13 **EINVALARGUMENT**

### 25.13.1 **Description**

Exception raised when invalid arguments are passed to a function.

## Chapter 26

# Reference for unit 'matrix'

### 26.1 Overview

The unit `matrix` is a unit that provides objects for the common two, three and four dimensional vectors matrixes. These vectors and matrixes are very common in computer graphics and are often implemented from scratch by programmers while every implementation provides exactly the same functionality.

It makes therefore sense to provide this functionality in the runtime library. This eliminates the need for programmers to reinvent the wheel and also allows libraries that use matrix operations to become more compatible.

The matrix unit does not provide n-dimensional matrixes. The functionality needs of a general matrix unit varies from application to application; one can think of reduced memory usage tricks for matrixes that only have data around the diagonal etc., desire for parallelization etc. etc. It is believed that programmers that do use n-dimensional matrices would not necessarily benefit from such a unit in the runtime library.

Design goals:

- Provide common dimensions, two three and four.
- Provide multiple floating point precisions, single, double, extended.
- Simple trivial binary representation; it is possible to typecast vectors into other implementations that use the same trivial representation.
- No dynamic memory management in the background. It must be possible to write expressions like `matrix A * B * C` without worrying about memory management.

Design decisions:

- Class object model is ruled out. The objects object model, without virtual methods, is suitable.
- Operator overloading is a good way to allow programmers to write matrix expressions.
- 3 dimensions \* 3 precision means 9 vector and 9 matrix objects. Macro's have been used in the source to take care of this.

## 26.2 Constants, types and variables

### 26.2.1 Types

```
Tmatrix2_double_data = Array[0..1,0..1] of double
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix2_extended_data = Array[0..1,0..1] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix2_single_data = Array[0..1,0..1] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix3_double_data = Array[0..2,0..2] of double
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix3_extended_data = Array[0..2,0..2] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix3_single_data = Array[0..2,0..2] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix4_double_data = Array[0..3,0..3] of double
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix4_extended_data = Array[0..3,0..3] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix4_single_data = Array[0..3,0..3] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector2_double_data = Array[0..1] of double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector2_extended_data = Array[0..1] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector2_single_data = Array[0..1] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector3_double_data = Array[0..2] of double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector3_extended_data = Array[0..2] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector3_single_data = Array[0..2] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector4_double_data = Array[0..3] of double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector4_extended_data = Array[0..3] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector4_single_data = Array[0..3] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

## 26.3 Procedures and functions

### 26.3.1 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_double, double): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix2_double,
const x: double)
: Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.2 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_double, Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix2_double, Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix2_double,
const m2: Tmatrix2_double)
: Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.3 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_double, Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix2_double,
const v: Tvector2_double)
: Tvector2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional double precision matrices with a two dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.4 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_extended, extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix2_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.5 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_extended, Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration:

```
function operator *(
const m1: Tmatrix2_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)
: Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.6 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_extended, Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration:

```
function operator *(
const m: Tmatrix2_extended,
const v: Tvector2_extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional extended precision matrices with a two dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.7 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_single, single): Tmatrix2\_single

**Synopsis:** Multiply a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

**Declaration:** `function operator *(Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_single, const x: single): Tmatrix2_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.8 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_single, Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_single

**Synopsis:** Give product of two two-dimensional single precision matrices

**Declaration:** `function operator *(Tmatrix2_single, Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix2_single, const m2: Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.9 operator \*(Tmatrix2\_single, Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_single

**Synopsis:** Give product of a two-dimendional single precision matrix and vector

**Declaration:** `function operator *(Tmatrix2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_single, const v: Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional single precision matrices with a two dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.10 operator \*(Tmatrix3\_double, double): Tmatrix3\_double

**Synopsis:** Multiply a three-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

**Declaration:** `function operator *(Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const m: Tmatrix3_double, const x: double): Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.11 operator\*(Tmatrix3\_double, Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix3\_double

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix3_double, Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix3_double,
const m2: Tmatrix3_double)
: Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.12 operator\*(Tmatrix3\_double, Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_double,
const v: Tvector3_double)
: Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional double precision matrices with a three dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.13 operator\*(Tmatrix3\_extended, extended): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.14 operator\*(Tmatrix3\_extended, Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration:

```
function
(const m
const m2
: Tmatr
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.15 operator \*(Tmatrix3\_extended, Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimendional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration:

```
function
(const m
const v:
: Tvect
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional extended precision matrices with a three dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.16 operator \*(Tmatrix3\_single, single): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional single precision matrix bye a scalar

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single
(const m: Tmatrix3_sing
const x: single)
: Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.17 operator \*(Tmatrix3\_single, Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tmatrix3_single, Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single
(const m1: Tma
const m2: Tmat
: Tmatrix3_si
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.18 operator\*(Tmatrix3\_single, Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single`

```
(const m: Tmat
const v: Tvect
: Tvector3_si
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional single precision matrices with a three dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.19 operator\*(Tmatrix4\_double, double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_doub
const x: double)
: Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.20 operator\*(Tmatrix4\_double, Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_double, Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m1: Tmat
const m2: Tmat
: Tmatrix4_do
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.21 operator\*(Tmatrix4\_double, Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double`

```
(const m: Tmat
const v: Tvect
: Tvector4_do
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional double precision matrices with a four dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.22 operator \*(Tmatrix4\_extended, extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.23 operator \*(Tmatrix4\_extended, Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration:

```
function operator *(
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.24 operator \*(Tmatrix4\_extended, Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration:

```
function operator *(
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const v: Tvector4_extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional extended precision matrices with a four dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**26.3.25 operator \*(Tmatrix4\_single, single): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.26 operator \*(Tmatrix4\_single, Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_single

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_single, Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix4_single,
const m2: Tmatrix4_single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.27 operator \*(Tmatrix4\_single, Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_single

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `function operator *(Tmatrix4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_single,
const v: Tvector4_single)
: Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional single precision matrices with a four dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

### 26.3.28 operator \*(Tvector2\_double, double): Tvector2\_double

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector2_double, double): Tvector2_double`

```
(const x: Tvector2_double,
y: double)
: Tvector2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.29 operator \*(Tvector2\_double, Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_double

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double`

```
(const x: Tvector2_double,
const y: Tvector2_double)
: Tvector2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.30 operator \*(Tvector2\_extended, extended): Tvector2\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector2_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.31 operator \*(Tvector2\_extended, Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration:

```
function operator *(
const x: Tvector2_extended,
const y: Tvector2_extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.32 operator \*(Tvector2\_single, single): Tvector2\_single

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single`

```
(const x: Tvector2_single,
y: single)
: Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.33 operator \*(Tvector2\_single, Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_single

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`

```
(const x: Tvector2_single,
const y: Tvector2_single)
: Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.34 operator \*(Tvector3\_double, double): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double
                    (const x: Tvector3_double,
                     y: double)
                    : Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.35 operator \*(Tvector3\_double, Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double
                    (const x: Tvector3_double,
                     const y: Tvector3_double)
                    : Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.36 operator \*(Tvector3\_extended, extended): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended
                    (const x: Tvector3_extended,
                     y: extended)
                    : Tvector3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.37 operator \*(Tvector3\_extended, Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_extended
                    (const x: Tvector3_extended,
                     const y: Tvector3_extended)
                    : Tvector3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.38 operator \*(Tvector3\_single, single): Tvector3\_single

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single
                    (const x: Tvector3_single,
                     y: single)
                    : Tvector3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.39 operator \*(Tvector3\_single, Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single
                    (const x: Tvector3_single,
                     const y: Tvector3_single)
                    : Tvector3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.40 operator \*(Tvector4\_double, double): Tvector4\_double

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double
                    (const x: Tvector4_double,
                     y: double)
                    : Tvector4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.41 operator \*(Tvector4\_double, Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_double

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: 

```
function operator *(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double
                    (const x: Tvector4_double,
                     const y: Tvector4_double)
                    : Tvector4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.42 operator \*(Tvector4\_extended, extended): Tvector4\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector4_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.43 operator \*(Tvector4\_extended, Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_extended

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration:

```
function operator *(
const x: Tvector4_extended,
const y: Tvector4_extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.44 operator \*(Tvector4\_single, single): Tvector4\_single

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single`

```
(const x: Tvector4_single,
y: single)
: Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.45 operator \*(Tvector4\_single, Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_single

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `function operator *(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single`

```
(const x: Tvector4_single,
const y: Tvector4_single)
: Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

### 26.3.46 operator \*\*(Tvector2\_double, Tvector2\_double): double

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator **(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): double
                                (const x: Tvector2_double,
                                const y: Tvector2_double)
                                : double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.47 operator \*\*(Tvector2\_extended, Tvector2\_extended): extended

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator **(Tvector2_extended, Tvector2_extended): extended
                                (const x: Tvector2_extended,
                                const y: Tvector2_extended)
                                : extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.48 operator \*\*(Tvector2\_single, Tvector2\_single): single

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator **(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): single
                                (const x: Tvector2_single,
                                const y: Tvector2_single)
                                : single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.49 operator \*\*(Tvector3\_double, Tvector3\_double): double

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator **(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): double
                                (const x: Tvector3_double,
                                const y: Tvector3_double)
                                : double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.50 operator\*\*(Tvector3\_extended, Tvector3\_extended): extended

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator ** (Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended): extended
                                (const x: Tvector3_extended,
                                 const y: Tvector3_extended)
                                : extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.51 operator\*\*(Tvector3\_single, Tvector3\_single): single

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator ** (Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): single
                                (const x: Tvector3_single,
                                 const y: Tvector3_single)
                                : single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.52 operator\*\*(Tvector4\_double, Tvector4\_double): double

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator ** (Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): double
                                (const x: Tvector4_double,
                                 const y: Tvector4_double)
                                : double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.53 operator\*\*(Tvector4\_extended, Tvector4\_extended): extended

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator ** (Tvector4_extended, Tvector4_extended): extended
                                (const x: Tvector4_extended,
                                 const y: Tvector4_extended)
                                : extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.54 operator **\*\*(Tvector4\_single, Tvector4\_single): single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: 

```
function operator **(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): single
                                (const x: Tvector4_single,
                                const y: Tvector4_single)
                                : single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

### 26.3.55 operator **+(Tmatrix2\_double, double): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator +(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double
                                (const m: Tmatrix2_double,
                                const x: double)
                                : Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.56 operator **+(Tmatrix2\_double, Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: 

```
function operator +(Tmatrix2_double, Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double
                                (const m1: Tmatrix2_double,
                                const m2: Tmatrix2_double)
                                : Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.57 operator **+(Tmatrix2\_extended, extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator +(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended
                                (const m: Tmatrix2_extended,
                                const x: extended)
                                : Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.58 operator +(Tmatrix2\_extended, Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix2\_extended

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration:

```
function
(const m: Tmatrix2_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)
: Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.59 operator +(Tmatrix2\_single, single): Tmatrix2\_single

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: function operator +(Tmatrix2\_single, single): Tmatrix2\_single

```
(const m: Tmatrix2_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.60 operator +(Tmatrix2\_single, Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_single

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: function operator +(Tmatrix2\_single, Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_single

```
(const m1: Tmatrix2_single,
const m2: Tmatrix2_single)
: Tmatrix2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.61 operator +(Tmatrix3\_double, double): Tmatrix3\_double

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: function operator +(Tmatrix3\_double, double): Tmatrix3\_double

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_double,
const x: double)
: Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.62 operator +(Tmatrix3\_double, Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix3\_double

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix3_double, Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix3_double,
const m2: Tmatrix3_double)
: Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.63 operator +(Tmatrix3\_extended, extended): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.64 operator +(Tmatrix3\_extended, Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration:

```
function operator +(
const m1: Tmatrix3_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)
: Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.65 operator +(Tmatrix3\_single, single): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single`

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.66 operator +(Tmatrix3\_single, Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix3_single, Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix3_single,
const m2: Tmatrix3_single)
: Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.67 operator +(Tmatrix4\_double, double): Tmatrix4\_double

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_double,
const x: double)
: Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.68 operator +(Tmatrix4\_double, Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix4\_double

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix4_double, Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix4_double,
const m2: Tmatrix4_double)
: Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.69 operator +(Tmatrix4\_extended, extended): Tmatrix4\_extended

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator +(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.70 operator +(Tmatrix4\_extended, Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix4\_extended

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration:

```
function
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.71 operator +(Tmatrix4\_single, single): Tmatrix4\_single

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: function operator +(Tmatrix4\_single, single): Tmatrix4\_single

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.72 operator +(Tmatrix4\_single, Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_single

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: function operator +(Tmatrix4\_single, Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_single

```
(const m1: Tmatrix4_single,
const m2: Tmatrix4_single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

### 26.3.73 operator +(Tvector2\_double, double): Tvector2\_double

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: function operator +(Tvector2\_double, double): Tvector2\_double

```
(const x: Tvector2_double,
y: double)
: Tvector2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.74 operator +(Tvector2\_double, Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_double

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double): Tvector2_double`

```
(const x: Tvector2_double,
const y: Tvector2_double)
: Tvector2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with double precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.75 operator +(Tvector2\_extended, extended): Tvector2\_extended

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector2_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.76 operator +(Tvector2\_extended, Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_extended

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration:

```
function operator +(
const x: Tvector2_extended,
const y: Tvector2_extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.77 operator +(Tvector2\_single, single): Tvector2\_single

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single`

```
(const x: Tvector2_single,
y: single)
: Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.78 operator +(Tvector2\_single, Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_single

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional single precision vectors together

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`

```
(const x: Tvector2_single,
const y: Tvector2_single)
: Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.79 operator +(Tvector3\_double, double): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double`

```
(const x: Tvector3_double,
y: double)
: Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.80 operator +(Tvector3\_double, Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`

```
(const x: Tvector3_double,
const y: Tvector3_double)
: Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with double precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.81 operator +(Tvector3\_extended, extended): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector3_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.82 operator +(Tvector3\_extended, Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration:

```
function
(const x: Tvector3_extended,
const y: Tvector3_extended)
: Tvector3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.83 operator +(Tvector3\_single, single): Tvector3\_single

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: function operator +(Tvector3\_single, single): Tvector3\_single

```
(const x: Tvector3_single,
y: single)
: Tvector3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.84 operator +(Tvector3\_single, Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: function operator +(Tvector3\_single, Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single

```
(const x: Tvector3_single,
const y: Tvector3_single)
: Tvector3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.85 operator +(Tvector4\_double, double): Tvector4\_double

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: function operator +(Tvector4\_double, double): Tvector4\_double

```
(const x: Tvector4_double,
y: double)
: Tvector4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.86 operator +(Tvector4\_double, Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_double

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double`

```
(const x: Tvector4_double,
const y: Tvector4_double)
: Tvector4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.87 operator +(Tvector4\_extended, extended): Tvector4\_extended

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector4_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.88 operator +(Tvector4\_extended, Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_extended

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration:

```
function operator +(
const x: Tvector4_extended,
const y: Tvector4_extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.89 operator +(Tvector4\_single, single): Tvector4\_single

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single`

```
(const x: Tvector4_single,
y: single)
: Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 26.3.90 operator +(Tvector4\_single, Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_single

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional single precision vectors together

Declaration: `function operator +(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single`

```
(const x: Tvector4_single,
const y: Tvector4_single)
: Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

### 26.3.91 operator -(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix2_double)
: Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

### 26.3.92 operator -(Tmatrix2\_double, double): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Subtract scalar to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix2_double,
const x: double)
: Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

### 26.3.93 operator -(Tmatrix2\_double, Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_double, Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix2_double,
const m2: Tmatrix2_double)
: Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.94 operator -(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.95 operator -(Tmatrix2\_extended, extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_extended)`  
`const x: extended`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.96 operator -(Tmatrix2\_extended, Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `function operator -(m1: Tmatrix2_extended, m2: Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended)`  
`const m2: Tmatrix2_extended`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.97 operator -(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix2_single)`  
`: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.98 operator -(Tmatrix2\_single, single): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_single, const x: single): Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.99 operator -(Tmatrix2\_single, Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix2_single, Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix2_single, const m2: Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.100 operator -(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.101 operator -(Tmatrix3\_double, double): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const m: Tmatrix3_double, const x: double): Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.102 operator -(Tmatrix3\_double, Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_double, Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix3_double,
const m2: Tmatrix3_double)
: Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.103 operator -(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_extended`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended)
: Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.104 operator -(Tmatrix3\_extended, extended): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.105 operator -(Tmatrix3\_extended, Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration:

```
function operator -(
const m1: Tmatrix3_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)
: Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.106 operator -(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.107 operator -(Tmatrix3\_single, single): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const m: Tmatrix3_single,`  
`const x: single)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.108 operator -(Tmatrix3\_single, Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix3_single, Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix3_single,`  
`const m2: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.109 operator -(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const m1: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.110 operator -(Tmatrix4\_double, double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_double,
const x: double)
: Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.111 operator -(Tmatrix4\_double, Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix4_double, Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix4_double,
const m2: Tmatrix4_double)
: Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.112 operator -(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_extended`

```
(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.113 operator -(Tmatrix4\_extended, extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator -(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.114 operator -(Tmatrix4\_extended, Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration:

```
function
(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended,
const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.115 operator -(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: 

```
function operator -(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single
(const m1: Tmatrix4_single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**26.3.116 operator -(Tmatrix4\_single, single): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator -(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single
(const m: Tmatrix4_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.117 operator -(Tmatrix4\_single, Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: 

```
function operator -(Tmatrix4_single, Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_single
(const m1: Tmatrix4_single,
const m2: Tmatrix4_single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**26.3.118 operator -(Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_double`  
`(const x: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.119 operator -(Tvector2\_double, double): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_double, double) : Tvector2_double`  
`(const x: Tvector2_double`  
`y: double)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.120 operator -(Tvector2\_double, Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_double, Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_double`  
`(const x: Tvec`  
`const y: Tvect`  
`: Tvector2_do`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.121 operator -(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector2_extended`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.122 operator -(Tvector2\_extended, extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector2_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.123 operator -(Tvector2\_extended, Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration:

```
function operator -(
const x: Tvector2_extended,
const y: Tvector2_extended)
: Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.124 operator -(Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`

```
(const x: Tvector2_single)
: Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.125 operator -(Tvector2\_single, single): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single`

```
(const x: Tvector2_single,
y: single)
: Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.126 operator -(Tvector2\_single, Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector2_single, Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`  
`(const x: Tvector2_single, const y: Tvector2_single): Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.127 operator -(Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`  
`(const x: Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.128 operator -(Tvector3\_double, double): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double`  
`(const x: Tvector3_double, y: double): Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.129 operator -(Tvector3\_double, Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`  
`(const x: Tvector3_double, const y: Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.130 operator -(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector3_extended`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.131 operator -(Tvector3\_extended, extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_extended, extended) : Tvector3_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector`  
`y: extended)`  
`: Tvector3_exten`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.132 operator -(Tvector3\_extended, Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_extended, Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector3_extended`  
`const y: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two three-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.133 operator -(Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_single`  
`(const x: Tvector3_single)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.134 operator -(Tvector3\_single, single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single`  
`(const x: Tvector3_single, y: single): Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.135 operator -(Tvector3\_single, Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single`  
`(const x: Tvector3_single, const y: Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two three-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.136 operator -(Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double`  
`(const x: Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.137 operator -(Tvector4\_double, double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double`  
`(const x: Tvector4_double, y: double): Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.138 operator-(Tvector4\_double, Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_double, Tvector4_double): Tvector4_double`

```
(const x: Tvector4_double,
const y: Tvector4_double)
: Tvector4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.139 operator-(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector4_extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.140 operator-(Tvector4\_extended, extended): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended`

```
(const x: Tvector4_extended,
y: extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.141 operator-(Tvector4\_extended, Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration:

```
function operator -(
const x: Tvector4_extended,
const y: Tvector4_extended)
: Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.142 operator -(Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single`  
`(const x: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**26.3.143 operator -(Tvector4\_single, single): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single`  
`(const x: Tvector4_single,`  
`y: single)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.144 operator -(Tvector4\_single, Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `function operator -(Tvector4_single, Tvector4_single): Tvector4_single`  
`(const x: Tvector4_single,`  
`const y: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**26.3.145 operator /(Tmatrix2\_double, double): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator /(Tmatrix2_double, double): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_double,`  
`const x: double)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.146 operator /(Tmatrix2\_extended, extended): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tmatrix2_extended, extended): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_extended, const x: extended): Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.147 operator /(Tmatrix2\_single, single): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tmatrix2_single, single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const m: Tmatrix2_single, const x: single): Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.148 operator /(Tmatrix3\_double, double): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tmatrix3_double, double): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const m: Tmatrix3_double, const x: double): Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.149 operator /(Tmatrix3\_extended, extended): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tmatrix3_extended, extended): Tmatrix3_extended`  
`(const m: Tmatrix3_extended, const x: extended): Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.150 operator /(Tmatrix3\_single, single): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator /(Tmatrix3_single, single): Tmatrix3_single`

```
(const m: Tmatrix3_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.151 operator /(Tmatrix4\_double, double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator /(Tmatrix4_double, double): Tmatrix4_double`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_double,
const x: double)
: Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.152 operator /(Tmatrix4\_extended, extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator /(Tmatrix4_extended, extended): Tmatrix4_extended`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_extended,
const x: extended)
: Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.153 operator /(Tmatrix4\_single, single): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator /(Tmatrix4_single, single): Tmatrix4_single`

```
(const m: Tmatrix4_single,
const x: single)
: Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**26.3.154 operator /(Tvector2\_double, double): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector2_double, double): Tvector2_double`  
`(const x: Tvector2_double, y: double): Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.155 operator /(Tvector2\_extended, extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector2_extended, extended): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector2_extended, y: extended): Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.156 operator /(Tvector2\_single, single): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector2_single, single): Tvector2_single`  
`(const x: Tvector2_single, y: single): Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.157 operator /(Tvector3\_double, double): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector3_double, double): Tvector3_double`  
`(const x: Tvector3_double, y: double): Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.158 operator /(Tvector3\_extended, extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector3_extended, extended): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector3_extended, y: extended): Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.159 operator /(Tvector3\_single, single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector3_single, single): Tvector3_single`  
`(const x: Tvector3_single, y: single): Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.160 operator /(Tvector4\_double, double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector4_double, double): Tvector4_double`  
`(const x: Tvector4_double, y: double): Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.161 operator /(Tvector4\_extended, extended): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator / (Tvector4_extended, extended): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const x: Tvector4_extended, y: extended): Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.162 operator /(Tvector4\_single, single): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `function operator /(Tvector4_single, single): Tvector4_single`

```
(const x: Tvector4_single,
 y: single)
: Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**26.3.163 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_extended`

```
(const v: Tmatrix2_double)
: Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.164 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix2_single`

```
(const v: Tmatrix2_double)
: Tmatrix2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.165 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix3_double`

```
(const v: Tmatrix2_double)
: Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**26.3.166 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix3_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_double)`  
`: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**26.3.167 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_double)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.168 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**26.3.169 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**26.3.170 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_double): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_double): Tmatrix4_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.171 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional two with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.172 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.173 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.174 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix3\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.175 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix3\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix3_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.176 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix4\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.177 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix4\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.178 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_extended): Tmatrix4\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_extended): Tmatrix4_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_extended)
                                : Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.179 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_double
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

### 26.3.180 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix2\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix2_extended
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

### 26.3.181 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix3\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix3_double
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.182 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix3_extended
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.183 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix3_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.184 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix4\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix4_double
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.185 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix4\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix4_extended
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.186 operator :=(Tmatrix2\_single): Tmatrix4\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix2_single): Tmatrix4_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix2_single)
                                : Tmatrix4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 26.3.187 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix2_double
                                (const v: Tmatrix3_double)
                                : Tmatrix2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 26.3.188 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix2\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix2_extended
                                (const v: Tmatrix3_double)
                                : Tmatrix2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 26.3.189 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix2\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix2_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix3_double)
                                : Tmatrix2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.190 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_extended
                                (const v: Tmatrix3_double)
                                : Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

### 26.3.191 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix3_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix3_double)
                                : Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.192 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix4\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix4_double
                                (const v: Tmatrix3_double)
                                : Tmatrix4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

### 26.3.193 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix4\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

### 26.3.194 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_double): Tmatrix4\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_double): Tmatrix4_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.195 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix2\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.196 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix2\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.197 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.198 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.199 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.200 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.201 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.202 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_extended): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_extended): Tmatrix4_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.203 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.204 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.205 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.206 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**26.3.207 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix3_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.208 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**26.3.209 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.210 operator :=(Tmatrix3\_single): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix3_single): Tmatrix4_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix3_single)`  
`: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected.

**26.3.211 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.212 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.213 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

**26.3.214 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.215 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix3_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.216 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.217 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix4\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

### 26.3.218 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_double): Tmatrix4\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_double): Tmatrix4_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_double)`  
`: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.219 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

### 26.3.220 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix2\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.221 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix2_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

**26.3.222 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix3_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.223 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix3_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.224 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix3_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.225 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**26.3.226 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_extended): Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_extended): Tmatrix4_single`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_extended)`  
`: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.227 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix2_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_single)`  
`: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.228 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix2_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_single)`  
`: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 26.3.229 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix2\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix2_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix4_single)
                                : Tmatrix2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 26.3.230 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix3\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix3_double
                                (const v: Tmatrix4_single)
                                : Tmatrix3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 26.3.231 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix3\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix3_extended
                                (const v: Tmatrix4_single)
                                : Tmatrix3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 26.3.232 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix3\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix3_single
                                (const v: Tmatrix4_single)
                                : Tmatrix3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**26.3.233 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_double`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_single)`  
`: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**26.3.234 operator :=(Tmatrix4\_single): Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tmatrix4_single): Tmatrix4_extended`  
`(const v: Tmatrix4_single)`  
`: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.235 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of double precision vector to extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with double precision values wherever an extended precision vector is expected.

**26.3.236 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of double precision vector to single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with double precision values wherever a single precision vector is expected, at the cost of losing some precision.

**26.3.237 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.238 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.239 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.240 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.241 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.242 operator :=(Tvector2\_double): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_double): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_double)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.243 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of extended precision vector to double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with extended precision values wherever a double precision vector is expected, at the cost of losing some precision.

**26.3.244 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of extended precision vector to single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with extended precision values wherever a single precision vector is expected, at the cost of losing some precision.

**26.3.245 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.246 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.247 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.248 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.249 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.250 operator :=(Tvector2\_extended): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_extended): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.251 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of single precision vector to double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with single precision values wherever a double precision vector is expected.

**26.3.252 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of single precision vector to extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with single precision values wherever an extended precision vector is expected.

**26.3.253 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.254 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.255 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**26.3.256 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.257 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.258 operator :=(Tvector2\_single): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector2_single): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector2_single)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**26.3.259 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**26.3.260 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**26.3.261 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.262 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.263 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.264 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**26.3.265 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**26.3.266 operator :=(Tvector3\_double): Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_double): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector3_double)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.267 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.268 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**26.3.269 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.270 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.271 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.272 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.273 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector4\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

### 26.3.274 operator :=(Tvector3\_extended): Tvector4\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector3_extended): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector3_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.275 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector2\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector3_single)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

### 26.3.276 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector2\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector3_single)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

### 26.3.277 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector2\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector2_single
                                (const v: Tvector3_single)
                                : Tvector2_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

### 26.3.278 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector3_double
                                (const v: Tvector3_single)
                                : Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected.

### 26.3.279 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector3_extended
                                (const v: Tvector3_single)
                                : Tvector3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

### 26.3.280 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector4\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector4_double
                                (const v: Tvector3_single)
                                : Tvector4_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

### 26.3.281 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector4\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector4_extended
                                (const v: Tvector3_single)
                                : Tvector4_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

### 26.3.282 operator :=(Tvector3\_single): Tvector4\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector3_single): Tvector4_single
                                (const v: Tvector3_single)
                                : Tvector4_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

### 26.3.283 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector2\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector2_double
                                (const v: Tvector4_double)
                                : Tvector2_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

### 26.3.284 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector2\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: 

```
function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector2_extended
                                (const v: Tvector4_double)
                                : Tvector2_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

### 26.3.285 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector2\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_double)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.286 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector3\_double

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_double)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

### 26.3.287 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector3\_extended

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_double)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

### 26.3.288 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector3\_single

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_double)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.289 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_double)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

### 26.3.290 operator :=(Tvector4\_double): Tvector4\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_double): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_double)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.291 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector2\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.292 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**26.3.293 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.294 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**26.3.295 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimensions are thrown away.

### 26.3.296 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector3\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.297 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.298 operator :=(Tvector4\_extended): Tvector4\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_extended): Tvector4_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_extended)`  
`: Tvector4_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 26.3.299 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector2\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector2_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

### 26.3.300 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector2\_extended

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector2_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector2_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

### 26.3.301 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector2\_single

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector2_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector2_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

### 26.3.302 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector3\_double

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector3_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector3_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**26.3.303 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector3_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**26.3.304 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector3_single`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**26.3.305 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector4_double`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected.

**26.3.306 operator :=(Tvector4\_single): Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `function operator :=(Tvector4_single): Tvector4_extended`  
`(const v: Tvector4_single)`  
`: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**26.3.307 operator ><(Tvector3\_double, Tvector3\_double): Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `function operator ><(Tvector3_double, Tvector3_double): Tvector3_double`

```
(const x: Tvector3_double,
const y: Tvector3_double)
: Tvector3_double
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**26.3.308 operator ><(Tvector3\_extended, Tvector3\_extended): Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration:

```
function operator ><
(const x: Tvector3_extended,
const y: Tvector3_extended)
: Tvector3_extended
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**26.3.309 operator ><(Tvector3\_single, Tvector3\_single): Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `function operator ><(Tvector3_single, Tvector3_single): Tvector3_single`

```
(const x: Tvector3_single,
const y: Tvector3_single)
: Tvector3_single
```

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

## 26.4 Tmatrix2\_double

### 26.4.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_double` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 double precision scalars.

### 26.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">621</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">621</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">621</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">620</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">620</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">620</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">621</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">621</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">621</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">622</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.4.3 Tmatrix2\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.4.4 Tmatrix2\_double.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.4.5 Tmatrix2\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: double;ab: double;ba: double;bb: double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.4.6 Tmatrix2\_double.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.4.7 Tmatrix2\_double.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.4.8 Tmatrix2\_double.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.4.9 Tmatrix2\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.4.10 Tmatrix2\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 26.4.11 Tmatrix2\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A_determinant: double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 26.4.12 Tmatrix2\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.5 Tmatrix2\_extended

### 26.5.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_extended` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 extended precision scalars.

### 26.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">623</a>	determinant	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">623</a>	get\_column	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">623</a>	get\_row	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">623</a>	init	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">622</a>	init\_identity	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">622</a>	init\_zero	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">624</a>	inverse	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">623</a>	set\_column	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">623</a>	set\_row	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">624</a>	transpose	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.5.3 Tmatrix2\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.5.4 Tmatrix2\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.5.5 Tmatrix2\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ba: extended; bb: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.5.6 Tmatrix2\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.5.7 Tmatrix2\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.5.8 Tmatrix2\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.5.9 Tmatrix2\_extended.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.5.10 Tmatrix2\_extended.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 26.5.11 Tmatrix2\_extended.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 26.5.12 Tmatrix2\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.6 Tmatrix2\_single

### 26.6.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_single` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 single precision scalars.

### 26.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">626</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">625</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">625</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">625</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">625</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">624</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">626</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">625</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">626</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">626</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.6.3 Tmatrix2\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.6.4 Tmatrix2\_single.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.6.5 Tmatrix2\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single;ab: single;ba: single;bb: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.6.6 Tmatrix2\_single.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.6.7 Tmatrix2\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.6.8 Tmatrix2\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte;const v: Tvector2_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.6.9 Tmatrix2\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.6.10 Tmatrix2\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 26.6.11 Tmatrix2\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A: determinant: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Tmatrix2\_single.inverse returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 26.6.12 Tmatrix2\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Tmatrix2\_single.transpose returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.7 Tmatrix3\_double

### 26.7.1 Description

The Tmatrix3\_double object provides a matrix of 3\*3 double precision scalars.

### 26.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
628	determinant	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
627	get\_column	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
628	get\_row	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
627	init	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
627	init\_identity	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
627	init\_zero	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
628	inverse	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
628	set\_column	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
628	set\_row	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
628	transpose	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.7.3 Tmatrix3\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.7.4 Tmatrix3\_double.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.7.5 Tmatrix3\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: double;ab: double;ac: double;ba: double;bb: double;  
bc: double;ca: double;cb: double;cc: double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.7.6 Tmatrix3\_double.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**26.7.7 Tmatrix3\_double.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**26.7.8 Tmatrix3\_double.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

**26.7.9 Tmatrix3\_double.set\_row**

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

**26.7.10 Tmatrix3\_double.determinant**

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

**26.7.11 Tmatrix3\_double.inverse**

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A_determinant: double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

**26.7.12 Tmatrix3\_double.transpose**

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the *x* and *y* coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.8 Tmatrix3\_extended

### 26.8.1 Description

The Tmatrix3\_extended object provides a matrix of 3\*3 extended precision scalars.

### 26.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
630	determinant	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
630	get\_column	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
630	get\_row	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
629	init	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
629	init\_identity	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
629	init\_zero	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
630	inverse	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
630	set\_column	Sets r-th column of the matrix with a vector.
630	set\_row	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
631	transpose	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.8.3 Tmatrix3\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.8.4 Tmatrix3\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.8.5 Tmatrix3\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended;ab: extended;ac: extended;ba: extended;  
bb: extended;bc: extended;ca: extended;cb: extended;  
cc: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**26.8.6 Tmatrix3\_extended.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**26.8.7 Tmatrix3\_extended.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**26.8.8 Tmatrix3\_extended.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

**26.8.9 Tmatrix3\_extended.set\_row**

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

**26.8.10 Tmatrix3\_extended.determinant**

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

**26.8.11 Tmatrix3\_extended.inverse**

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A_determinant: extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 26.8.12 Tmatrix3\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.9 Tmatrix3\_single

### 26.9.1 Description

The `Tmatrix3_single` object provides a matrix of 3\*3 single precision scalars.

### 26.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">633</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">632</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">632</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">632</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">631</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">631</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">633</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">632</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">632</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">633</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.9.3 Tmatrix3\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.9.4 Tmatrix3\_single.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.9.5 Tmatrix3\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single;ab: single;ac: single;ba: single;bb: single;  
bc: single;ca: single;cb: single;cc: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.9.6 Tmatrix3\_single.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.9.7 Tmatrix3\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.9.8 Tmatrix3\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte;const v: Tvector3_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.9.9 Tmatrix3\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte;const v: Tvector3_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.9.10 Tmatrix3\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 26.9.11 Tmatrix3\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse (Adeterminant: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 26.9.12 Tmatrix3\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.10 Tmatrix4\_double

### 26.10.1 Description

The `Tmatrix4_double` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 double precision scalars.

### 26.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">635</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">634</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">634</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">634</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">634</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">634</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">635</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">635</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">635</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">635</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

**26.10.3 Tmatrix4\_double.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**26.10.4 Tmatrix4\_double.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**26.10.5 Tmatrix4\_double.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: double;ab: double;ac: double;ad: double;ba: double;  
bb: double;bc: double;bd: double;ca: double;cb: double;  
cc: double;cd: double;da: double;db: double;dc: double;  
dd: double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**26.10.6 Tmatrix4\_double.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**26.10.7 Tmatrix4\_double.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.10.8 Tmatrix4\_double.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.10.9 Tmatrix4\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.10.10 Tmatrix4\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 26.10.11 Tmatrix4\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A_determinant: double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 26.10.12 Tmatrix4\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.11 Tmatrix4\_extended

### 26.11.1 Description

The Tmatrix4\_extended object provides a matrix of 4\*4 extended precision scalars.

### 26.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">637</a>	determinant	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">637</a>	get\_column	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">637</a>	get\_row	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">636</a>	init	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">636</a>	init\_identity	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">636</a>	init\_zero	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">638</a>	inverse	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">637</a>	set\_column	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">637</a>	set\_row	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">638</a>	transpose	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.11.3 Tmatrix4\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.11.4 Tmatrix4\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.11.5 Tmatrix4\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended;ab: extended;ac: extended;ad: extended;  
ba: extended;bb: extended;bc: extended;bd: extended;  
ca: extended;cb: extended;cc: extended;cd: extended;  
da: extended;db: extended;dc: extended;dd: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.11.6 Tmatrix4\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.11.7 Tmatrix4\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.11.8 Tmatrix4\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.11.9 Tmatrix4\_extended.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.11.10 Tmatrix4\_extended.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 26.11.11 Tmatrix4\_extended.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse (Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 26.11.12 Tmatrix4\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.12 Tmatrix4\_single

### 26.12.1 Description

The `Tmatrix4_single` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 single precision scalars.

### 26.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">640</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">639</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">639</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">639</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">639</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">638</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">640</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">639</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">640</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">640</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 26.12.3 Tmatrix4\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.12.4 Tmatrix4\_single.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 26.12.5 Tmatrix4\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single;ab: single;ac: single;ad: single;ba: single;  
bb: single;bc: single;bd: single;ca: single;cb: single;  
cc: single;cd: single;da: single;db: single;dc: single;  
dd: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 26.12.6 Tmatrix4\_single.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.12.7 Tmatrix4\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.12.8 Tmatrix4\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte;const v: Tvector4_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 26.12.9 Tmatrix4\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 26.12.10 Tmatrix4\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 26.12.11 Tmatrix4\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 26.12.12 Tmatrix4\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 26.13 Tvector2\_double

### 26.13.1 Description

The `Tvector2_double` object provides a vector of two double precision scalars.

### 26.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">641</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">641</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">641</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">641</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">641</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.13.3 Tvector2\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.13.4 Tvector2\_double.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.13.5 Tvector2\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: double;b: double)`

Visibility: default

### 26.13.6 Tvector2\_double.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([641](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.13.7 Tvector2\_double.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 26.14 Tvector2\_extended

### 26.14.1 Description

The `Tvector2_extended` object provides a vector of two extended precision scalars.

### 26.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">642</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">642</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">642</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">642</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">643</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.14.3 Tvector2\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.14.4 Tvector2\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.14.5 Tvector2\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended;b: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 26.14.6 Tvector2\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([643](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.14.7 Tvector2\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 26.15 Tvector2\_single

### 26.15.1 Description

The `Tvector2_single` object provides a vector of two single precision scalars.

### 26.15.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">643</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">643</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">643</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">644</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">644</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.15.3 Tvector2\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.15.4 Tvector2\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.15.5 Tvector2\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single;b: single)`

Visibility: default

### 26.15.6 Tvector2\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (644) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.15.7 Tvector2\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 26.16 Tvector3\_double

### 26.16.1 Description

The `Tvector3_double` object provides a vector of three double precision scalars.

### 26.16.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
645	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
644	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
644	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
645	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
645	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.16.3 Tvector3\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.16.4 Tvector3\_double.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.16.5 Tvector3\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: double;b: double;c: double)`

Visibility: default

### 26.16.6 Tvector3\_double.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (645) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.16.7 Tvector3\_double.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

## 26.17 Tvector3\_extended

### 26.17.1 Description

The `Tvector3_extended` object provides a vector of three extended precision scalars.

### 26.17.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">646</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">646</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">645</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">646</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">646</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.17.3 Tvector3\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.17.4 Tvector3\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.17.5 Tvector3\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended;b: extended;c: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 26.17.6 Tvector3\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (646) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.17.7 Tvector3\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

## 26.18 Tvector3\_single

### 26.18.1 Description

The `Tvector3_single` object provides a vector of three single precision scalars.

### 26.18.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">647</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">647</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">647</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">647</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">647</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.18.3 Tvector3\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.18.4 Tvector3\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.18.5 Tvector3\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single;b: single;c: single)`

Visibility: default

### 26.18.6 Tvector3\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector:  $\text{length} = \sqrt{\text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2}$ . Try to use `squared_length` (647) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.18.7 Tvector3\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector:  $\text{squared\_length} = \text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2$ .

## 26.19 Tvector4\_double

### 26.19.1 Description

The `Tvector4_double` object provides a vector of four double precision scalars.

**26.19.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">648</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">648</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">648</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">648</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">648</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

**26.19.3 Tvector4\_double.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**26.19.4 Tvector4\_double.init\_one**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

**26.19.5 Tvector4\_double.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: double;b: double;c: double;d: double)`

Visibility: default

**26.19.6 Tvector4\_double.length**

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([648](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

**26.19.7 Tvector4\_double.squared\_length**

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

## 26.20 Tvector4\_extended

### 26.20.1 Description

The `Tvector4_extended` object provides a vector of four extended precision scalars.

### 26.20.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">649</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">649</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">649</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">649</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">650</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.20.3 Tvector4\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.20.4 Tvector4\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.20.5 Tvector4\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended;b: extended;c: extended;d: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 26.20.6 Tvector4\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([650](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.20.7 Tvector4\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

## 26.21 Tvector4\_single

### 26.21.1 Description

The `Tvector4_single` object provides a vector of four single precision scalars.

### 26.21.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
650	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
650	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
650	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
651	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
651	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 26.21.3 Tvector4\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 26.21.4 Tvector4\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 26.21.5 Tvector4\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single;b: single;c: single;d: single)`

Visibility: default

### 26.21.6 Tvector4\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([651](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 26.21.7 Tvector4\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

## Chapter 27

# Reference for unit 'mmx'

### 27.1 Overview

This document describes the MMX unit. This unit allows you to use the MMX capabilities of the Free Pascal compiler. It was written by Florian Klaempfl for the I386 processor. It should work on all platforms that use the Intel processor.

### 27.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 27.2.1 Constants

```
is_amd_3d_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_amd_3d_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D DSP extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_mmx_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse2_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_sse2_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE2 extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_sse_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

### 27.2.2 Types

`pmmxbyte = ^tmmxbyte`

Pointer to `tmmxbyte` (653) array type

`pmmxcardinal = ^tmmxcardinal`

Pointer to `tmmxcardinal` (653) array type

`pmmxinteger = ^tmmxinteger`

Pointer to `tmmxinteger` (653) array type

`pmmxlongint = ^tmmxlongint`

Pointer to `tmmxlongint` (653) array type

`pmmxshortint = ^tmmxshortint`

Pointer to `tmmxshortint` (653) array type

`pmmxsingle = ^tmmxsingle`

Pointer to `tmmxsingle` (653) array type

`pmmxword = ^tmmxword`

Pointer to `tmmxword` (653) array type

`tmmxbyte = Array[0..7] of Byte`

Array of bytes, 64 bits in size

`tmmxcardinal = Array[0..1] of cardinal`

Array of cardinals, 64 bits in size

`tmmxinteger = Array[0..3] of Integer`

Array of integers, 64 bits in size

`tmmxlongint = Array[0..1] of LongInt`

Array of longint, 64 bits in size

`tmmxshortint = Array[0..7] of ShortInt`

Array of shortints, 64 bits in size

`tmmxsingle = Array[0..1] of single`

Array of singles, 64 bits in size

`tmmxword = Array[0..3] of Word`

Array of words, 64 bits in size

## 27.3 Procedures and functions

### 27.3.1 emms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers

Declaration: `procedure emms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Emms` sets all floating point registers to empty. This procedure must be called after you have used any MMX instructions, if you want to use floating point arithmetic. If you just want to move floating point data around, it isn't necessary to call this function, the compiler doesn't use the FPU registers when moving data. Only when doing calculations, you should use this function. The following code demonstrates this:

```
Program MMXDemo;
uses mmx;
var
  dl : double;
  a : array[0..10000] of double;
  i : longint;
begin
  dl:=1.0;
  {$mmx+}
  { floating point data is used, but we do _no_ arithmetic }
  for i:=0 to 10000 do
    a[i]:=d2; { this is done with 64 bit moves }
  {$mmx-}
  emms; { clear fpu }
  { now we can do floating point arithmetic again }
end.
```

See also: `femms` ([654](#))

### 27.3.2 femms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers - AMD version

Declaration: `procedure femms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `femms` executes the `femms` assembler instruction for AMD processors. it is not supported by all assemblers, hence it is coded as byte codes.

See also: `emms` ([654](#))

## Chapter 28

# Reference for unit 'Mouse'

### 28.1 Writing a custom mouse driver

The `mouse` unit has support for adding a custom mouse driver. This can be used to add support for mice not supported by the standard Free Pascal driver, but also to enhance an existing driver for instance to log mouse events or to implement a record and playback function.

The following unit shows how a mouse driver can be enhanced by adding some logging capabilities to the driver.

### 28.2 Overview

The `Mouse` unit implements a platform independent mouse handling interface. It is implemented identically on all platforms supported by Free Pascal and can be enhanced with custom drivers, should this be needed. It is intended to be used only in text-based screens, for instance in conjunction with the keyboard and video unit. No support for graphical screens is implemented, and there are (currently) no plans to implement this.

### 28.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 28.3.1 Constants

```
errMouseBase = 1030
```

Base for mouse error codes.

```
errMouseInitError = errMouseBase + 0
```

Mouse initialization error

```
errMouseNotImplemented = errMouseBase + 1
```

Mouse driver not implemented.

```
MouseActionDown = $0001
```

Mouse button down event signal.

```
MouseActionMove = $0004
```

Mouse cursor move event signal.

```
MouseActionUp = $0002
```

Mouse button up event signal.

```
MouseEventBufSize = 16
```

The mouse unit has a mechanism to buffer mouse events. This constant defines the size of the event buffer.

```
MouseLeftButton = $01
```

Left mouse button event.

```
MouseMiddleButton = $04
```

Middle mouse button event.

```
MouseRightButton = $02
```

Right mouse button event.

### 28.3.2 Types

```
PMouseEvent = ^TMouseEvent
```

Pointer to TMouseEvent (657) record.

```
TMouseDriver = record
  UseDefaultQueue : Boolean;
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  DetectMouse : function : Byte;
  ShowMouse : procedure;
  HideMouse : procedure;
  GetMouseX : function : Word;
  GetMouseY : function : Word;
  GetMouseButtons : function : Word;
  SetMouseXY : procedure(x: Word;y: Word);
  GetMouseEvent : procedure(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
  PollMouseEvent : function(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean;
  PutMouseEvent : procedure(const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
end
```

The TMouseDriver record is used to implement a mouse driver in the SetMouseDriver (662) function. Its fields must be filled in before calling the SetMouseDriver (662) function.

```

TMouseEvent = packed record
  buttons : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word;
  Action : Word;
end

```

The `TMouseEvent` is the central type of the mouse unit, it is used to describe all mouse events.

The `Buttons` field describes which buttons were down when the event occurred. The `x`, `y` fields describe where the event occurred on the screen. The `Action` describes what action was going on when the event occurred. The `Buttons` and `Action` field can be examined using the constants defined in the unit interface.

### 28.3.3 Variables

```
MouseButtons : Byte
```

This variable keeps track of the last known mouse button state. Do not use.

```
MouseIntFlag : Byte
```

This variable keeps track of the last known internal mouse state. Do not use.

```
MouseWhereX : Word
```

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

```
MouseWhereY : Word
```

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

## 28.4 Procedures and functions

### 28.4.1 DetectMouse

Synopsis: Detect the presence of a mouse.

Declaration: `function DetectMouse : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectMouse` detects whether a mouse is attached to the system or not. If there is no mouse, then zero is returned. If a mouse is attached, then the number of mouse buttons is returned.

This function should be called after the mouse driver was initialized.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitMouse` ([661](#)), `DoneMouse` ([658](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the DetectMouse function. }

Uses mouse;

Var
    Buttons : Byte;

begin
    InitMouse;
    Buttons:=DetectMouse;
    If Buttons=0 then
        WriteLn( 'No mouse present.' )
    else
        WriteLn( 'Found mouse with ',Buttons,' buttons.' );
    DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

### 28.4.2 DoneMouse

Synopsis: Deinitialize mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneMouse` De-initializes the mouse driver. It cleans up any memory allocated when the mouse was initialized, or removes possible mouse hooks from memory. The mouse functions will not work after `DoneMouse` was called. If `DoneMouse` is called a second time, it will exit at once. `InitMouse` should be called before `DoneMouse` can be called again.

For an example, see most other mouse functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DetectMouse` ([657](#)), `InitMouse` ([661](#))

### 28.4.3 GetMouseButtons

Synopsis: Get the state of the mouse buttons

Declaration: `function GetMouseButtons : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseButtons` returns the current button state of the mouse, i.e. it returns a or-ed combination of the following constants:

**MouseLeftButton** When the left mouse button is held down.

**MouseRightButton** When the right mouse button is held down.

**MouseMiddleButton** When the middle mouse button is held down.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` ([659](#)), `GetMouseX` ([659](#)), `GetMouseY` ([660](#))

**Listing:** ./mouseex/ex2.pp

**Program** Example2;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseButtons function. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**begin**

  InitMouse;

**WriteLn**('Press right mouse button to exit program');

**While** (GetMouseButtons<>MouseRightButton) **do** ;

  DoneMouse;

**end.**

#### 28.4.4 GetMouseDriver

**Synopsis:** Get a copy of the currently active mouse driver.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetMouseDriver (var Driver: TMouseDriver)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMouseDriver` returns the currently set mouse driver. It can be used to retrieve the current mouse driver, and override certain callbacks.

A more detailed explanation about getting and setting mouse drivers can be found in `mousedrv` (655).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom mouse driver, `mousedrv` (655)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetMouseDriver` (662)

#### 28.4.5 GetMouseEvent

**Synopsis:** Get next mouse event from the queue.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetMouseEvent (var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMouseEvent` returns the next mouse event (a movement, button press or button release), and waits for one if none is available in the queue.

Some mouse drivers can implement a mouse event queue which can hold multiple events till they are fetched. Others don't, and in that case, a one-event queue is implemented for use with `PollMouseEvent` (662).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetMouseButtons` (658), `GetMouseX` (659), `GetMouseY` (660)

#### 28.4.6 GetMouseX

**Synopsis:** Query the current horizontal position of the mouse cursor.

**Declaration:** `function GetMouseX : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseX` returns the current X position of the mouse. X is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the left side of the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` (658), `GetMouseEvent` (659), `GetMouseY` (660)

**Listing:** ./mouseex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseX,GetMouseY functions. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**Var**

X,Y : Word;

**begin**

InitMouse;

**WriteLn**( 'Move mouse cursor to square 10,10 to end' );

**Repeat**

X:=GetMouseX;

Y:=GetMouseY;

**WriteLn**( 'X,Y= ( ',X,' ',Y,' ' ) );

**Until** (X=9) **and** (Y=9);

DoneMouse;

**end.**

---

### 28.4.7 GetMouseY

Synopsis: Query the current vertical position of the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `function GetMouseY : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseY` returns the current Y position of the mouse. Y is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the top of the screen.

For an example, see `GetMouseX` (659)

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` (658), `GetMouseEvent` (659), `GetMouseX` (659)

### 28.4.8 HideMouse

Synopsis: Hide the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure HideMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `HideMouse` hides the mouse cursor. This may or may not be implemented on all systems, and depends on the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: ShowMouse ([663](#))

**Listing:** ./mouseex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the HideMouse function. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**Var**

Event : TMouseEvent;

Visible : Boolean;

**begin**

InitMouse;

ShowMouse;

Visible:=True;

**WriteIn**('Press left mouse button to hide/show, right button quits');

**Repeat**

GetMouseEvent(Event);

**With** Event **do**

**If** (Buttons=MouseLeftbutton) **and**  
(Action=MouseDown) **then**

**begin**

**If** Visible **then**

HideMouse

**else**

ShowMouse;

Visible:=**Not** Visible;

**end**;

**Until** (Event.Buttons=MouseRightButton) **and**  
(Event.Action=MouseDown);

DoneMouse;

**end.**

---

### 28.4.9 InitMouse

Synopsis: Initialize the FPC mouse driver.

Declaration: procedure InitMouse

Visibility: default

Description: InitMouse initializes the mouse driver. This will allocate any data structures needed for the mouse to function. All mouse functions can be used after a call to InitMouse.

A call to InitMouse must always be followed by a call to DoneMouse ([658](#)) at program exit. Failing to do so may leave the mouse in an unusable state, or may result in memory leaks.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: DoneMouse ([658](#)), DetectMouse ([657](#))

### 28.4.10 PollMouseEvent

Synopsis: Query next mouse event. Do not wait if none available.

Declaration: `function PollMouseEvent (var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollMouseEvent` checks whether a mouse event is available, and returns it in `MouseEvent` if one is found. The function result is `True` in that case. If no mouse event is pending, the function result is `False`, and the contents of `MouseEvent` is undefined.

Note that after a call to `PollMouseEvent`, the event should still be removed from the mouse event queue with a call to `GetMouseEvent`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` (659), `PutMouseEvent` (662)

### 28.4.11 PutMouseEvent

Synopsis: Put a mouse event in the venet queue.

Declaration: `procedure PutMouseEvent (const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutMouseEvent` adds `MouseEvent` to the input queue. The next call to `GetMouseEvent` (659) or `PollMouseEvent` will then return `MouseEvent`.

Please note that depending on the implementation the mouse event queue can hold only one value.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` (659), `PollMouseEvent` (662)

### 28.4.12 SetMouseDriver

Synopsis: Set a new mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseDriver (const Driver: TMouseDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseDriver` sets the mouse driver to `Driver`. This function should be called before `InitMouse` (661) is called, or after `DoneMouse` is called. If it is called after the mouse has been initialized, it does nothing.

For more information on setting the mouse driver, `mousedrv` (655).

For an example, see `mousedrv` (655)

Errors:

See also: `InitMouse` (661), `DoneMouse` (658), `GetMouseDriver` (659)

### 28.4.13 SetMouseXY

Synopsis: Set the mouse cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseXY(x: Word; y: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseXY` places the mouse cursor on X, Y. X and Y are zero based character coordinates: 0, 0 is the top-left corner of the screen, and the position is in character cells (i.e. not in pixels).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseX` (659), `GetMouseY` (660)

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetMouseXY function. }*

**Uses** `mouse;`

**begin**

`InitMouse;`

`WriteLn('Click right mouse button to quit.');`

`SetMouseXY(40,12);`

**Repeat**

`WriteLn(GetMouseX, ' ', GetMouseY);`

**If** `(GetMouseX>70) then`

`SetMouseXY(10,GetMouseY);`

**If** `(GetMouseY>20) then`

`SetMouseXY(GetMouseX, 5);`

**Until** `(GetMouseButtons=MouseRightButton);`

`DoneMouse;`

**end.**

---

### 28.4.14 ShowMouse

Synopsis: Show the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure ShowMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShowMouse` shows the mouse cursor if it was previously hidden. The capability to hide or show the mouse cursor depends on the driver.

For an example, see `HideMouse` (660)

Errors: None.

See also: `HideMouse` (660)

## Chapter 29

# Reference for unit 'Objects'

### 29.1 Overview

This document documents the `objects` unit. The unit was implemented by many people, and was mainly taken from the FreeVision sources. It has been ported to all supported platforms.

The methods and fields that are in a `Private` part of an object declaration have been left out of this documentation.

### 29.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 29.2.1 Constants

`coIndexError = -1`

Collection list error: Index out of range

`coOverflow = -2`

Collection list error: Overflow

`DefaultTPCompatible : Boolean = false`

`DefaultTPCompatible` is used to initialize `tstream.tpcompatible` (??).

`MaxBytes = 128 * 1024 * 128`

Maximum data size (in bytes)

`MaxCollectionSize = MaxBytes div SizeOf ( Pointer )`

Maximum collection size (in items)

`MaxPtrs = MaxBytes div SizeOf ( Pointer )`

Maximum data size (in pointers)

MaxReadBytes = \$7fffffff

Maximum data that can be read from a stream (not used)

MaxTPCompatibleCollectionSize = 65520 div 4

Maximum collection size (in items, same value as in TP)

MaxWords = MaxBytes div SizeOf ( Word )

Maximum data size (in words)

RCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType:50;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TCollection ) ^ ) ;Load

Default stream record for the TCollection (681) object.

RStrCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType:69;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStrCollection ) ^

Default stream record for the TStrCollection (720) object.

RStringCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType:51;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStringCollection

Default stream record for the TStringCollection (730) object.

RStringList : TStreamRec = (ObjType:52;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStringList ) ^ ) ;Load

Default stream record for the TStringList (732) object.

RStrListMaker : TStreamRec = (ObjType:52;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStrListMaker ) ^ )

Default stream record for the TStrListMaker (734) object.

stCreate = \$3C00

Stream initialization mode: Create new file

stError = -1

Stream error codes: Access error

stGetError = -5

Stream error codes: Get object error

stInitError = -2

Stream error codes: Initialize error

stOk = 0

Stream error codes: No error

`stOpen = $3D02`

Stream initialization mode: Read/write access

`stOpenError = -8`

Stream error codes: Error opening stream

`stOpenRead = $3D00`

Stream initialization mode: Read access only

`stOpenWrite = $3D01`

Stream initialization mode: Write access only

`stPutError = -6`

Stream error codes: Put object error

`stReadError = -3`

Stream error codes: Stream read error

`StreamError : Pointer = nil`

Pointer to default stream error handler.

`stSeekError = -7`

Stream error codes: Seek error in stream

`stWriteError = -4`

Stream error codes: Stream write error

`vmtHeaderSize = 8`

Size of the VMT header in an object (not used).

### 29.2.2 Types

`AsciiZ = Array[0..255] of Char`

Filename - null terminated array of characters.

`FNameStr = String`

Filename - shortstring version.

```
LongRec = packed record
  Hi : Word;
  Lo : Word;
end
```

Record describing a longint (in Words)

```
PBufStream = ^TBufStream
```

Pointer to TBufStream (677) object.

```
PByteArray = ^TByteArray
```

Pointer to TByteArray (669)

```
PCharSet = ^TCharSet
```

Pointer to TCharSet (669).

```
PCollection = ^TCollection
```

Pointer to TCollection (681) object.

```
PDosStream = ^TDosStream
```

Pointer to TDosStream (695) object.

```
PItemList = ^TItemList
```

Pointer to TItemList (669) object.

```
PMemoryStream = ^TMemoryStream
```

Pointer to TMemoryStream (700) object.

```
PObject = ^TObject
```

Pointer to TObject (702) object.

```
PPoint = ^TPoint
```

Pointer to TPoint (704) record.

```
PPointerArray = ^TPointerArray
```

Pointer to TPointerArray (669)

```
PRect = ^TRect
```

Pointer to TRect (704) object.

`PResourceCollection = ^TResourceCollection`

Pointer to `TResourceCollection` (710) object.

`PResourceFile = ^TResourceFile`

Pointer to `TResourceFile` (711) object.

`PSortedCollection = ^TSortedCollection`

Pointer to `TSortedCollection` (714) object.

`PStrCollection = ^TStrCollection`

Pointer to `TStrCollection` (720) object.

`PStream = ^TStream`

Pointer type to `TStream` (722)

`PStreamRec = ^TStreamRec`

Pointer to `TStreamRec` (669)

`PStrIndex = ^TStrIndex`

Pointer to `TStrIndex` (669) array.

`PString = PShortString`

Pointer to a shortstring.

`PStringCollection = ^TStringCollection`

Pointer to `TStringCollection` (730) object.

`PStringList = ^TStringList`

Pointer to `TStringList` (732) object.

`PStrListMaker = ^TStrListMaker`

Pointer to `TStrListMaker` (734) object.

```
PTrRec = packed record
  Ofs : Word;
  Seg : Word;
end
```

Record describing a pointer to a memory location.

PUnSortedStrCollection = ^TUnSortedStrCollection

Pointer to TUnsortedStrCollection (735) object.

PWordArray = ^TWordArray

Pointer to TWordArray (670)

Sw\_Integer = LongInt

Alias for longint

Sw\_Word = Cardinal

Alias for Cardinal

TByteArray = Array[0..MaxBytes-1] of Byte

Array with maximum allowed number of bytes.

TCharSet = Set of Char

Generic set of characters type.

TItemList = Array[0..MaxCollectionSize-1] of Pointer

Pointer array type used in a TCollection (681)

TPointerArray = Array[0..MaxPtrs-1] of Pointer

Array with maximum allowed number of pointers

```
TStreamRec = packed record
  ObjType : Sw_Word;
  VmtLink : pointer;
  Load : Pointer;
  Store : Pointer;
  Next : PStreamRec;
end
```

TStreamRec is used by the **Objects** unit streaming mechanism: when an object is registered, a TStreamRec record is added to a list of records. This list is used when objects need to be streamed from/streamed to a stream. It contains all the information needed to stream the object.

TStrIndex = Array[0..9999] of TStrIndexRec

Pointer array type used in a TStringList (732)

```
TStrIndexRec = packed record
  Key : Sw_Word;
  Count : Word;
  Offset : Word;
end
```

Record type used in a TStringList (732) to store the strings

```
TWordArray = Array[0..MaxWords-1] of Word
```

Array with maximum allowed number of words.

```
WordRec = packed record
  Hi : Byte;
  Lo : Byte;
end
```

Record describing a Word (in bytes)

### 29.2.3 Variables

```
invalidhandle : THandle
```

Value for invalid handle. Initial value for file stream handles or when the stream is closed.

## 29.3 Procedures and functions

### 29.3.1 Abstract

Synopsis: Abstract error handler.

Declaration: `procedure Abstract`

Visibility: default

Description: When implementing abstract methods, do not declare them as `abstract`. Instead, define them simply as `virtual`. In the implementation of such abstract methods, call the `Abstract` procedure. This allows explicit control of what happens when an abstract method is called.

The current implementation of `Abstract` terminates the program with a run-time error 211.

Errors: None.

### 29.3.2 CallPointerConstructor

Synopsis: Call a constructor with a pointer argument.

Declaration: `function CallPointerConstructor(Ctor: pointer; Obj: pointer; VMT: pointer; Param1: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. `Param1` is passed to the constructor. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require a pointer as the sole argument. It can also be used to call a constructor with a single argument by reference.

**Errors:** If the constructor expects other arguments than a pointer, the stack may be corrupted.

**See also:** `CallVoidConstructor` (672), `CallPointerMethod` (671), `CallVoidLocal` (672), `CallPointerLocal` (671), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (673), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (671)

### 29.3.3 CallPointerLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local nested function with a pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer;Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

**Errors:** If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallPointerMethod` (671), `CallVoidMethod` (672), `CallVoidLocal` (672), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (673), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (671), `CallVoidConstructor` (672), `CallPointerConstructor` (670)

### 29.3.4 CallPointerMethod

**Synopsis:** Call a method with a single pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerMethod(Method: pointer;Obj: pointer;Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It passes `Param1` to the method as the single argument. It returns a pointer to the instance.

**Errors:** If the method expects other parameters than a single pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallVoidMethod` (672), `CallVoidLocal` (672), `CallPointerLocal` (671), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (673), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (671), `CallVoidConstructor` (672), `CallPointerConstructor` (670)

### 29.3.5 CallPointerMethodLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local procedure of a method with a pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerMethodLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer;Obj: pointer;Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

Errors: If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerMethod \(671\)](#), [CallVoidMethod \(672\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(671\)](#), [CallVoidLocal \(672\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(673\)](#), [CallVoidConstructor \(672\)](#), [CallPointerConstructor \(670\)](#)

### 29.3.6 CallVoidConstructor

Synopsis: Call a constructor with no arguments

Declaration: `function CallVoidConstructor(Ctor: pointer;Obj: pointer;VMT: pointer)  
: pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require no arguments.

Errors: If the constructor expects arguments, the stack may be corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerConstructor \(670\)](#), [CallPointerMethod \(671\)](#), [CallVoidLocal \(672\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(671\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(673\)](#), [CallPointerMethodLocal \(671\)](#)

### 29.3.7 CallVoidLocal

Synopsis: Call a local nested procedure.

Declaration: `function CallVoidLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerMethod \(671\)](#), [CallVoidMethod \(672\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(671\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(673\)](#), [CallPointerMethodLocal \(671\)](#), [CallVoidConstructor \(672\)](#), [CallPointerConstructor \(670\)](#)

### 29.3.8 CallVoidMethod

Synopsis: Call an object method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethod(Method: pointer;Obj: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It returns a pointer to the instance.

Errors: If the method expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerMethod \(671\)](#), [CallVoidLocal \(672\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(671\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(673\)](#), [CallPointerMethodLocal \(671\)](#), [CallVoidConstructor \(672\)](#), [CallPointerConstructor \(670\)](#)

### 29.3.9 CallVoidMethodLocal

Synopsis: Call a local procedure of a method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethodLocal (Func: pointer; Frame: Pointer; Obj: pointer)  
: pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (671), `CallVoidMethod` (672), `CallPointerLocal` (671), `CallVoidLocal` (672), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (671), `CallVoidConstructor` (672), `CallPointerConstructor` (670)

### 29.3.10 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose of a shortstring which was allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr (P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes a dynamically allocated string from the heap.

For an example, see `NewStr` (674).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (674), `SetStr` (676)

### 29.3.11 LongDiv

Synopsis: Overflow safe divide

Declaration: `function LongDiv (X: LongInt; Y: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongDiv` divides `X` by `Y`. The result is of type `Integer` instead of type `Longint`, as you would get normally.

Errors: If `Y` is zero, a run-time error will be generated.

See also: `LongMul` (673)

### 29.3.12 LongMul

Synopsis: Overflow safe multiply.

Declaration: `function LongMul (X: Integer; Y: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongMul` multiplies `X` with `Y`. The result is of type `Longint`. This avoids possible overflow errors you would normally get when multiplying `X` and `Y` that are too big.

Errors: None.

See also: `LongDiv` (673)

### 29.3.13 NewStr

Synopsis: Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: String) : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewStr` makes a copy of the string `S` on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy. If the string is empty then `Nil` is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to `NewStr`, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: `DisposeStr` (673), `SetStr` (676)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex40.pp`

---

```

Program ex40;

{ Program to demonstrate the NewStr function }

Uses Objects;

Var S : String;
    P : PString;

begin
    S:= 'Some really cute string';
    P:=NewStr(S);
    If P^<>S then
        WriteLn ( 'Oh-oh... Something is wrong !!' );
    DisposeStr(P);
end.

```

---

### 29.3.14 RegisterObjects

Synopsis: Register standard objects.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterObjects`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterObjects` registers the following objects for streaming:

1. `TCollection`, see `TCollection` (681).
2. `TStringCollection`, see `TStringCollection` (730).
3. `TStrCollection`, see `TStrCollection` (720).

Errors: None.

See also: `RegisterType` (675)

### 29.3.15 RegisterType

**Synopsis:** Register new object for streaming.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterType (var S: TStreamRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterType` registers a new type for streaming. An object cannot be streamed unless it has been registered first. The stream record `S` needs to have the following fields set:

**ObjType: Sw\_Word** This should be a unique identifier. Each possible type should have it's own identifier.

**VmtLink: pointer** This should contain a pointer to the VMT (Virtual Method Table) of the object you try to register.

**Load : Pointer** is a pointer to a method that initializes an instance of that object, and reads the initial values from a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

**Store: Pointer** is a pointer to a method that stores an instance of the object to a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

The VMT of the object can be retrieved with the following expression:

```
VmtLink: Ofs (TypeOf (MyType) ^);
```

**Errors:** In case of error (if a object with the same `ObjType`) is already registered), run-time error 212 occurs.

**Listing:** `./objectex/myobject.pp`

---

```
Unit MyObject;
```

#### Interface

```
Uses Objects;
```

#### Type

```
PMyObject = ^TMyObject;
TMyObject = Object (TObject)
  Field : Longint;
  Constructor Init;
  Constructor Load (Var Stream : TStream);
  Destructor Done;
  Procedure Store (Var Stream : TStream);
  Function GetField : Longint;
  Procedure SetField (Value : Longint);
end;
```

#### Implementation

```
Constructor TMyobject.Init;

begin
  Inherited Init;
  Field := -1;
end;
```

---

```

Constructor TMyobject.Load ( Var Stream : TStream );

begin
    Stream.Read( Field , Sizeof( Field ) );
end;

Destructor TMyObject.Done;

begin
end;

Function TMyObject.GetField : Longint;

begin
    GetField := Field;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.SetField ( Value : Longint );

begin
    Field := Value;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.Store ( Var Stream : TStream );

begin
    Stream.Write( Field , SizeOf( Field ) );
end;

Const MyObjectRec : TStreamRec = (
    Objtype : 666;
    vmtlink : Ofs( TypeOf( TMyObject ) ^ );
    Load : @TMyObject.Load;
    Store : @TMyObject.Store;
    );

begin
    RegisterObjects;
    RegisterType ( MyObjectRec );
end.

```

---

### 29.3.16 SetStr

**Synopsis:** Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetStr( var p: PString; const s: String )`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetStr` makes a copy of the string `S` on the heap and returns the pointer to this copy in `P`. If `P` pointed to another string (i.e. was not `Nil`, the memory is released first. Contrary to `NewStr` (674), if the string is empty then a pointer to an empty string is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to `NewStr`, but is based on the actual length of the string.

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: `DisposeStr` ([673](#)), `NewStr` ([674](#))

## 29.4 TBufStream

### 29.4.1 Description

`TBufStream` implements a buffered file stream. That is, all data written to the stream is written to memory first. Only when the buffer is full, or on explicit request, the data is written to disk.

Also, when reading from the stream, first the buffer is checked if there is any unread data in it. If so, this is read first. If not the buffer is filled again, and then the data is read from the buffer.

The size of the buffer is fixed and is set when constructing the file.

This is useful if you need heavy throughput for your stream, because it speeds up operations.

### 29.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">678</a>	<code>Close</code>	Flush data and Close the file.
<a href="#">678</a>	<code>Done</code>	Close the file and cleans up the instance.
<a href="#">678</a>	<code>Flush</code>	FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.
<a href="#">677</a>	<code>Init</code>	Initialize an instance of <code>TBufStream</code> and open the file.
<a href="#">680</a>	<code>Open</code>	Open the file if it is closed.
<a href="#">680</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.
<a href="#">679</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set current position in file.
<a href="#">679</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.
<a href="#">680</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

### 29.4.3 TBufStream.Init

**Synopsis:** Initialize an instance of `TBufStream` and open the file.

**Declaration:** `constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word; Size: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Init` instantiates an instance of `TBufStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpenRead and write** access.

The `Size` parameter determines the size of the buffer that will be created. It should be different from zero.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` ([678](#)).

**Errors:** On error, `Status` is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` ([696](#)), `TBufStream.Done` ([678](#))

### 29.4.4 TBufStream.Done

Synopsis: Close the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done` flushes and closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TBufStream`.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (678).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` (696), `TBufStream.Init` (677), `TBufStream.Close` (678)

### 29.4.5 TBufStream.Close

Synopsis: Flush data and Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Close` flushes and closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (678) it does not clean up the instance of `TBufStream`

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (678).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (726), `TBufStream.Init` (677), `TBufStream.Done` (678)

### 29.4.6 TBufStream.Flush

Synopsis: FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: When the stream is in write mode, the contents of the buffer are written to disk, and the buffer position is set to zero. When the stream is in read mode, the buffer position is set to zero.

Errors: Write errors may occur if the file was in write mode. see `Write` (680) for more info on the errors.

See also: `TStream.Close` (726), `TBufStream.Init` (677), `TBufStream.Done` (678)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `ex15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Flush method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`

`P : PString;`

`S : PBufStream; { Only one with Flush implemented. }`

**begin**

---

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PBufStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate, 100));
WriteIn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ At this moment, there is no data on disk yet. }
S^.Flush;
{ Now there is. }
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ Close calls flush first }
S^.Close;
WriteIn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
S^.Open (stOpenRead);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
WriteIn ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S, Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.4.7 TBufStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to flush the buffer, and then truncates the stream size to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` (697).

Errors: Errors can be those of `Flush` (678) or `TDosStream.Truncate` (697).

See also: `TStream.Truncate` (727), `TDosStream.Truncate` (697), `TStream.GetSize` (724)

### 29.4.8 TBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set current position in file.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

For an example, see `TStream.Seek` (728);

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` (728), `TStream.GetPos` (724)

### 29.4.9 TBufStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the file if it is closed.

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` (678) call.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (699).

Errors: If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` (726), `TBufStream.Close` (678)

### 29.4.10 TBufStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Read` will read `Count` bytes from the stream and place them in `Buf`.

`Read` will first try to read the data from the stream's internal buffer. If insufficient data is available, the buffer will be filled before continuing to read. This process is repeated until all needed data has been read.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (729).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StReadError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` (729), `TBufStream.Write` (680)

### 29.4.11 TBufStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Write` will write `Count` bytes from `Buf` and place them in the stream.

`Write` will first try to write the data to the stream's internal buffer. When the internal buffer is full, then the contents will be written to disk. This process is repeated until all data has been written.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (729).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` (729), `TBufStream.Read` (680)

## 29.5 TCollection

### 29.5.1 Description

The `TCollection` object manages a collection of pointers or objects. It also provides a series of methods to manipulate these pointers or objects.

Whether or not objects are used depends on the kind of calls you use. All kinds come in 2 flavors, one for objects, one for pointers.

### 29.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">683</a>	<code>At</code>	Return the item at a certain index.
<a href="#">691</a>	<code>AtDelete</code>	Delete item at certain position.
<a href="#">690</a>	<code>AtFree</code>	Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.
<a href="#">694</a>	<code>AtInsert</code>	Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.
<a href="#">694</a>	<code>AtPut</code>	Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.
<a href="#">690</a>	<code>Delete</code>	Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.
<a href="#">688</a>	<code>DeleteAll</code>	Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.
<a href="#">682</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up collection, release all memory.
<a href="#">693</a>	<code>Error</code>	Set error code.
<a href="#">685</a>	<code>FirstThat</code>	Return first item which matches a test.
<a href="#">692</a>	<code>ForEach</code>	Execute procedure for each item in the list.
<a href="#">689</a>	<code>Free</code>	Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.
<a href="#">687</a>	<code>FreeAll</code>	Release all objects from the collection.
<a href="#">691</a>	<code>FreeItem</code>	Destroy a non-nil item.
<a href="#">684</a>	<code>GetItem</code>	Read one item off the stream.
<a href="#">683</a>	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find the position of a certain item.
<a href="#">681</a>	<code>Init</code>	Instantiate a new collection.
<a href="#">689</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new item in the collection at the end.
<a href="#">685</a>	<code>LastThat</code>	Return last item which matches a test.
<a href="#">682</a>	<code>Load</code>	Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.
<a href="#">686</a>	<code>Pack</code>	Remove all <code>&gt;Nil</code> pointers from the collection.
<a href="#">695</a>	<code>PutItem</code>	Put one item on the stream
<a href="#">693</a>	<code>SetLimit</code>	Set maximum number of elements in the collection.
<a href="#">695</a>	<code>Store</code>	Write collection to a stream.

### 29.5.3 TCollection.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new collection.

Declaration: `constructor Init (ALimit: Sw_Integer; ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` initializes a new instance of a collection. It sets the (initial) maximum number of items in the collection to `ALimit`. `ADelta` is the increase size : The number of memory places that will be allocated in case `ALimit` is reached, and another element is added to the collection.

For an example, see `TCollection.ForEach` ([692](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Load` ([682](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([682](#))

### 29.5.4 TCollection.Load

Synopsis: Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.

Declaration: constructor Load(var S: TStream)

Visibility: default

Description: Load initializes a new instance of a collection. It reads from stream S the item count, the item limit count, and the increase size. After that, it reads the specified number of items from the stream.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of GetItem (684).

See also: TCollection.Init (681), TCollection.GetItem (684), TCollection.Done (682)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** ex22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Load method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
       M : PMyObject;  
       I : Longint;  
       S : PMemoryStream;

**begin**

  C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);

      M^.SetField(100-I);

      C^.Insert(M);

**end**;

  WriteLn('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects');

  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,10));

  C^.Store(S^);

  C^.FreeAll;

  Dispose(C, Done);

  S^.Seek(0);

  C^.Load(S^);

  WriteLn('Read ', C^.Count, ' objects from stream.');

  Dispose(S, Done);

  Dispose(C, Done);

**end.**

---

### 29.5.5 TCollection.Done

Synopsis: Clean up collection, release all memory.

Declaration: destructor Done; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: Done frees all objects in the collection, and then releases all memory occupied by the instance.

For an example, see TCollection.ForEach (692).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([681](#)), `TCollection.FreeAll` ([687](#))

### 29.5.6 TCollection.At

Synopsis: Return the item at a certain index.

Declaration: `function At(Index: Sw_Integer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `At` returns the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is less than zero or larger than the number of items in the collection, `seep1{Error}{TCollection.Error}` is called with `coIndexError` and `Index` as arguments, resulting in a run-time error.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` ([689](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `ex23`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.At method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
   `C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));`  
   **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
     **begin**  
       `M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
       `M^.SetField(100-I);`  
       `C^.Insert(M);`  
     **end**;  
   **For** `I:=0 to C^.Count-1 do`  
     **begin**  
       `M:=C^.At(I);`  
       `Writeln('Object ',i,' has field : ',M^.GetField);`  
     **end**;  
   `C^.FreeAll;`  
   `Dispose(C,Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 29.5.7 TCollection.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find the position of a certain item.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. If `Item` isn't present in the collection, -1 is returned.

Errors: If the item is not present, -1 is returned.

See also: TCollection.At ([683](#)), TCollection.GetItem ([684](#)), TCollection.Insert ([689](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** ex24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.IndexOf method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
       M, Keep : PMyObject;  
       I : Longint;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

    C:=**New**(PCollection, Init(100,10));

    Keep:=**Nil**;

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

            M:=**New**(PMyObject, Init);

            M^.SetField(I-1);

**If** Random<0.1 **then**

                Keep:=M;

            C^.Insert(M);

**end**;

**If** Keep=**Nil** **then**

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Please run again. No object selected' );

**Halt** (1);

**end**;

**Writeln** ( 'Selected object has field : ', Keep^.GetField );

**Write** ( 'Selected object has index : ', C^.IndexOf(Keep) );

**Writeln** ( ' should match it's field.' );

    C^.FreeAll;

**Dispose**(C, Done);

**end.**

---

### 29.5.8 TCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read one item off the stream.

Declaration: function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: GetItem reads a single item off the stream S, and returns a pointer to this item. This method is used internally by the Load method, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Possible errors are the ones from TStream.Get ([722](#)).

See also: TStream.Get ([722](#)), TCollection.Store ([695](#))

### 29.5.9 TCollection.LastThat

Synopsis: Return last item which matches a test.

Declaration: `function LastThat (Test: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: This function returns the last item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([685](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `ex21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Foreach method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C : PCollection`;  
       `M : PMyObject`;  
       `I : Longint`;

**Function** `CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint`;

**begin**  
     **If** `P^.GetField < 56` **then**  
         `Checkfield := 1`  
     **else**  
         `CheckField := 0`;  
**end**;

**begin**  
     `C := New (PCollection, Init (100, 10));`  
     **For** `I := 1 to 100` **do**  
         **begin**  
             `M := New (PMyObject, Init);`  
             `M^.SetField (I);`  
             `C^.Insert (M);`  
         **end**;  
     **Writeln** ( 'Inserted ', `C^.Count`, ' objects ' );  
     **Writeln** ( 'Last one for which Field < 56 has index (should be 54) : ',  
                 `C^.IndexOf (C^.LastThat (@CheckField))` );  
     `C^.FreeAll`;  
     **Dispose** (C, Done);  
**end**.

---

### 29.5.10 TCollection.FirstThat

Synopsis: Return first item which matches a test.

Declaration: `function FirstThat (Test: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This function returns the first item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.LastThat` ([685](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `ex21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**Function** `CheckField` (`Dummy`: `Pointer`; `P` : `PMMyObject`) : `Longint`;

**begin**  
   **If** `P^.GetField > 56` **then**  
     `Checkfield := 1`  
   **else**  
     `CheckField := 0`;  
**end**;

**begin**  
   `C := New(PCollection, Init(100, 10));`  
   **For** `I := 1` **to** `100` **do**  
     **begin**  
       `M := New(PMyObject, Init);`  
       `M^.SetField(I);`  
       `C^.Insert(M);`  
     **end**;  
   **Writeln** ('Inserted ', `C^.Count`, ' objects');  
   **Writeln** ('first one for which Field > 56 has index (should be 56) : ',  
             `C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField))`);  
   `C^.FreeAll`;  
   **Dispose**(`C`, `Done`);  
**end**.

---

### 29.5.11 TCollection.Pack

**Synopsis:** Remove all `>Nil` pointers from the collection.

**Declaration:** `procedure Pack`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Pack` removes all `Nil` pointers from the collection, and adjusts `Count` to reflect this change. No memory is freed as a result of this call. In order to free any memory, you can call `SetLimit` with an argument of `Count` after a call to `Pack`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.SetLimit` ([693](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex26.pp

---

**Program** ex21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
       M : PMyObject;  
       I : Longint;

**Function** CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

**begin**

**If** P^.GetField > 56 **then**  
     Checkfield := 1

**else**  
     CheckField := 0;

**end**;

**begin**

  C := **New**(PCollection, Init(100, 10));

**For** I := 1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

      M := **New**(PMyObject, Init);

      M^.SetField(I);

      C^.Insert(M);

**end**;

**WriteLn** ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects');

**WriteLn** ('first one for which Field > 56 has index (should be 56) : ',  
           C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField)));

  C^.FreeAll;

**Dispose**(C, Done);

**end**.

---

### 29.5.12 TCollection.FreeAll

Synopsis: Release all objects from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeAll` calls the destructor of each object in the collection. It doesn't release any memory occupied by the collection itself, but it does set `Count` to zero.

Errors:

See also: `TCollection.DeleteAll` ([688](#)), `TCollection.FreeItem` ([691](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** ex28;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FreeAll method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  WriteLn ('Added 100 Items. ');
  C^.FreeAll;
  WriteLn ('Freed all objects. ');
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.5.13 TCollection.DeleteAll

Synopsis: Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeleteAll` deletes all elements from the collection. It just sets the `Count` variable to zero. Contrary to `FreeAll` (687), `DeleteAll` doesn't call the destructor of the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeAll` (687), `TCollection.Delete` (690)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `ex29`;

```

{
  Program to demonstrate the TCollection.DeleteAll method
  Compare with example 28, where FreeAll is used.
}

```

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }`

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  WriteLn ('Added 100 Items. ');
  C^.FreeAll;
  WriteLn ('Freed all objects. ');
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

```

    end;
    Writeln ( 'Added 100 Items. ');
    C^.DeleteAll;
    Writeln ( 'Deleted all objects. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.5.14 TCollection.Free

Synopsis: Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.

Declaration: `procedure Free(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Free` Deletes `Item` from the collection, and calls the destructor `Done` of the object.

Errors: If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([691](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex30.pp`

---

```

Program ex30;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Free method }

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

begin
    Randomize;
    C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I-1);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ( 'Added 100 Items. ');
    With C^ do
        While Count>0 do Free(At(Count-1));
    Writeln ( 'Freed all objects. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.5.15 TCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new item in the collection at the end.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Insert` inserts `Item` in the collection. `TCollection` inserts this item at the end, but descendent objects may insert it at another place.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.AtInsert` (694), `TCollection.AtPut` (694)

### 29.5.16 TCollection.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Item: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Delete` deletes `Item` from the collection. It doesn't call the item's destructor, though. For this the `Free` (689) call is provided.

**Errors:** If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

**See also:** `TCollection.AtDelete` (691), `TCollection.Free` (689)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `ex31`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     `Randomize`;  
     `C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));`  
     **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
       **begin**  
         `M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
         `M^.SetField(I-1);`  
         `C^.Insert(M);`  
       **end**;  
     `WriteLn ('Added 100 Items.');`  
     **With** `C^ do`  
       **While** `Count>0 do Delete(At(Count-1));`  
     `WriteLn ('Freed all objects');`  
     `Dispose(C, Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 29.5.17 TCollection.AtFree

**Synopsis:** Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.

**Declaration:** `procedure AtFree(Index: Sw_Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AtFree` deletes the item at position `Index` in the collection, and calls the item's destructor if it is not `Nil`.

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (693) is called with `CoIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.Free` (689), `TCollection.AtDelete` (691)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** `ex32`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtFree method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     `C:=New`(`PCollection`, `Init`(120,10));  
     **For** `I:=1` **to** 100 **do**  
       **begin**  
         `M:=New`(`PMMyObject`, `Init`);  
         `M^.SetField`(`I-1`);  
         `C^.Insert`(`M`);  
       **end**;  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Added 100 Items' );  
     **With** `C^` **do**  
       **While** `Count>0` **do** `AtFree`(`Count-1`);  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Freed all objects.' );  
     **Dispose**(`C`, `Done`);  
**end.**

---

### 29.5.18 TCollection.FreeItem

**Synopsis:** Destroy a non-nil item.

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FreeItem` calls the destructor of `Item` if it is not nil.

**Remark:** This function is used internally by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TCollection.Free` (689), `TCollection.AtFree` (690)

### 29.5.19 TCollection.AtDelete

**Synopsis:** Delete item at certain position.

**Declaration:** `procedure AtDelete(Index: Sw_Integer)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `AtDelete` deletes the pointer at position `Index` in the collection. It doesn't call the object's destructor.

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (693) is called with `CoIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.Delete` (690)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `ex33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtDelete method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     `Randomize`;  
     `C:=New( PCollection , Init(120,10));`  
     **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
       **begin**  
         `M:=New( PMyObject, Init );`  
         `M^.SetField( I-1 );`  
         `C^.Insert( M );`  
       **end**;  
     `WriteLn ( 'Added 100 Items. ' );`  
     **With** `C^ do`  
       **While** `Count>0 do AtDelete( Count-1 );`  
     `WriteLn ( 'Freed all objects. ' );`  
     `Dispose( C, Done );`  
**end.**

---

### 29.5.20 TCollection.ForEach

**Synopsis:** Execute procedure for each item in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure ForEach( Action: Pointer )`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `ForEach` calls `Action` for each element in the collection, and passes the element as an argument to `Action`.

`Action` is a procedural type variable that accepts a pointer as an argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` (685), `TCollection.LastThat` (685)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** `ex21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.ForEach method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

---

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Field : ',P^.GetField);
end;

begin
  C:=New( PCollection , Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(100-I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  WriteLn ( 'Inserted ',C^.Count,' objects ');
  C^.ForEach( @PrintField );
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.5.21 TCollection.SetLimit

Synopsis: Set maximum number of elements in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure SetLimit(ALimit: Sw_Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLimit` sets the maximum number of elements in the collection. `ALimit` must not be less than `Count`, and should not be larger than `MaxCollectionSize`

For an example, see Pack (686).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` (681)

### 29.5.22 TCollection.Error

Synopsis: Set error code.

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer;Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` is called by the various `TCollection` methods in case of an error condition. The default behaviour is to make a call to `RunError` with an error of 212-Code.

This method can be overridden by descendent objects to implement a different error-handling.

Errors:

See also: `Abstract` (670)

### 29.5.23 TCollection.AtPut

Synopsis: Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.

Declaration: `procedure AtPut (Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtPut` sets the element at position `Index` in the collection to `Item`. Any previous value is overwritten.

For an example, see `Pack` (686).

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (693) is called with `CoIndexError`.

### 29.5.24 TCollection.AtInsert

Synopsis: Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure AtInsert (Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtInsert` inserts `Item` in the collection at position `Index`, shifting all elements by one position. In case the current limit is reached, the collection will try to expand with a call to `SetLimit`

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (693) is called with `CoIndexError`. If the collection fails to expand, then `coOverflow` is passed to `Error`.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (689)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `ex34`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtInsert method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**Procedure** `PrintField` (`Dummy`: `Pointer`; `P` : `PMMyObject`);

**begin**  
     `WriteLn` ( 'Field : ', `P`^.`GetField` );  
**end**;

**begin**  
     `Randomize`;  
     `C`:=`New`(`PCollection`, `Init`(120,10));  
     `WriteLn` ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );  
     **For** `I`:=1 **to** 100 **do**  
         **begin**  
             `M`:=`New`(`PMMyObject`, `Init` );  
             `M`^.`SetField`(`I`-1);  
             **If** `I`=1 **then**  
                 `C`^.`Insert`(`M`)

```

    else
      With C^ do
        AtInsert(Random(Count),M);
      end;
      WriteLn ('Values : ');
      C^.Foreach(@PrintField);
      Dispose(C,Done);
    end.

```

---

### 29.5.25 TCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write collection to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by writeing the current `Count`, `Limit` and `Delta` to the stream, and then writing each item to the stream.

The contents of the stream are then suitable for instantiating another collection with `Load` (682).

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` (682).

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Put` (727).

See also: `TCollection.Load` (682), `TCollection.PutItem` (695)

### 29.5.26 TCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Put one item on the stream

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream;Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to stream `S`. This method is used internaly by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

Errors: Errors are those returned by `TStream.Put` (727).

See also: `TCollection.Store` (695), `TCollection.GetItem` (684)

## 29.6 TDosStream

### 29.6.1 Description

`TDosStream` is a stream that stores it's contents in a file. it overrides a couple of methods of `TStream` (722) for this.

In addition to the fields inherited from `TStream` (see `TStream` (722)), there are some extra fields, that describe the file. (mainly the name and the OS file handle)

No buffering in memory is done when using `TDosStream`. All data are written directly to the file. For a stream that buffers in memory, see `TBufStream` (677).

### 29.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">697</a>	Close	Close the file.
<a href="#">696</a>	Done	Closes the file and cleans up the instance.
<a href="#">696</a>	Init	Instantiate a new instance of TDosStream.
<a href="#">699</a>	Open	Open the file stream
<a href="#">699</a>	Read	Read data from the stream to a buffer.
<a href="#">698</a>	Seek	Set file position.
<a href="#">697</a>	Truncate	Truncate the file on the current position.
<a href="#">700</a>	Write	Write data from a buffer to the stream.

### 29.6.3 TDosStream.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of TDosStream.

Declaration: `constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates an instance of `TDosStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([697](#)).

Errors: On error, `Status` (??) is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` ([696](#))

### 29.6.4 TDosStream.Done

Synopsis: Closes the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TDosStream`.

for an example, see e.g. `TDosStream.Truncate` ([697](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` ([696](#)), `TDosStream.Close` ([697](#))

### 29.6.5 TDosStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Close` closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (696) it does not clean up the instance of `TDosStream`

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (699).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (726), `TDosStream.Init` (696), `TDosStream.Done` (696)

### 29.6.6 TDosStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the file on the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to truncate the stream size to the current file position.

Errors: If an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stError` and `ErrorInfo` is set to the OS error code.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` (727), `TStream.GetSize` (724)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `ex16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PDosStream; { Only one with Truncate implemented. }`

**begin**

```

  L:= 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
  Writeln ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  { Close calls flush first }
  S^.Close;
  S^.Open (stOpen);
  Writeln ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);
  P:=S^.ReadStr;
  L:=P^;
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);

```

---

```

S^.Truncate;
Writeln ( 'Truncated stream. Size is : ',S^.GetSize);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.6.7 TDosStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set file position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([728](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([724](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex17.pp`

---

```

Program ex17;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Seek method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
    Marker : Word;
    P : PString;
    S : PDosStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S:=New(PDosStream, Init( 'test.dat', stcreate));
  Writeln ( 'Writing "',L, '"' to stream. ');
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Marker:=S^.GetPos;
  Writeln ( 'Set marker at ',Marker);
  L:= 'Some other constant String';
  Writeln ( 'Writing "',L, '"' to stream. ');
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  S^.Close;
  S^.Open (stOpenRead);
  Writeln ( 'Size of stream is : ',S^.GetSize);
  Writeln ( 'Seeking to marker');
  S^.Seek(Marker);
  P:=S^.ReadStr;
  L:=P^;
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln ( 'Read "',L, '"' from stream. ');
  S^.Close;
  Dispose (S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.6.8 TDosStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the file stream

Declaration: `procedure Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` (697) call.

Errors: If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` (726), `TDosStream.Close` (697)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `ex14;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Close method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PDosStream; { Only one with Close implemented. }`

**begin**

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.Close;
WriteLn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
S^.Open (stOpenRead);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
WriteLn ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S, Done);

```

**end.**

---

### 29.6.9 TDosStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Read (var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Read` will read `Count` bytes from the stream and place them in `Buf`.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (729).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StReadError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` (729), `TDosStream.Write` (700)

### 29.6.10 TDosStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data from a buffer to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Write` will write `Count` bytes from `Buf` and place them in the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (729).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` (729), `TDosStream.Read` (699)

## 29.7 TMemoryStream

### 29.7.1 Description

The `TMemoryStream` object implements a stream that stores it's data in memory. The data is stored on the heap, with the possibility to specify the maximum amount of data, and the the size of the memory blocks being used.

### 29.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">701</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.
<a href="#">700</a>	<code>Init</code>	Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.
<a href="#">702</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream to a location in memory.
<a href="#">701</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Set the stream size to the current position.
<a href="#">702</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream.

### 29.7.3 TMemoryStream.Init

Synopsis: Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.

Declaration: `constructor Init(ALimit: LongInt; ABlockSize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new `TMemoryStream` object. The `memorystreamobject` will initially allocate at least `ALimit` bytes memory, divided into memory blocks of size `ABlockSize`. The number of blocks needed to get to `ALimit` bytes is rounded up.

By default, the number of blocks is 1, and the size of a block is 8192. This is selected if you specify 0 as the blocksize.

For an example, see e.g `TStream.CopyFrom` (730).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate the initial memory needed for the memory blocks, then the stream's status is set to `stInitError`.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Done` (701)

### 29.7.4 TMemoryStream.Done

Synopsis: Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done` releases the memory blocks used by the stream, and then cleans up the memory used by the stream object itself.

For an example, see e.g `TStream.CopyFrom` (730).

Errors: `None`.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Init` (700)

### 29.7.5 TMemoryStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Set the stream size to the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Truncate` sets the size of the memory stream equal to the current position. It de-allocates any memory-blocks that are no longer needed, so that the new size of the stream is the current position in the stream, rounded up to the first multiple of the stream blocksize.

Errors: If an error occurs during memory de-allocation, the stream's status is set to `stError`

See also: `TStream.Truncate` (727)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `ex20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TMemoryStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
`P : PString;`  
`S : PMemoryStream;`  
`I : Longint;`

**begin**

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,100));
Writeln ( 'Writing 100 times "',L,'" to stream.' );
For I:=1 to 100 do
  S^. WriteStr(@L);
Writeln ( 'Finished.' );
S^.Seek(100);
S^.Truncate;
Writeln ( 'Truncated at byte 100.' );
Dispose (S,Done);
Writeln ( 'Finished.' );

```

**end.**

---

### 29.7.6 TMemoryStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a location in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Read reads Count bytes from the stream to Buf. It updates the position of the stream.

For an example, see TStream.Read (729).

Errors: If there is not enough data available, no data is read, and the stream's status is set to `stReadError`.

See also: TStream.Read (729), TMemoryStream.Write (702)

### 29.7.7 TMemoryStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write copies Count bytes from Buf to the stream. It updates the position of the stream.

If not enough memory is available to hold the extra Count bytes, then the stream will try to expand, by allocating as much blocks with size `BlkSize` (as specified in the constructor call `Init` (700)) as needed.

For an example, see TStream.Read (729).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate more memory, then the status is set to `stWriteError`

See also: TStream.Write (729), TMemoryStream.Read (702)

## 29.8 TObject

### 29.8.1 Description

This type serves as the basic object for all other objects in the Objects unit.

### 29.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">704</a>	Done	Destroy an object.
<a href="#">703</a>	Free	Destroy an object and release all memory.
<a href="#">702</a>	Init	Construct (initialize) a new object
<a href="#">703</a>	Is\_Object	Check whether a pointer points to an object.

### 29.8.3 TObject.Init

Synopsis: Construct (initialize) a new object

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: default

Description: Instantiates a new object of type `TObject`. It fills the instance up with Zero bytes.

For an example, see [Free \(703\)](#)

Errors: None.

See also: [TObject.Free \(703\)](#), [TObject.Done \(704\)](#)

### 29.8.4 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Destroy an object and release all memory.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: default

Description: `Free` calls the destructor of the object, and releases the memory occupied by the instance of the object.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `self` is `nil` and whether the object is indeed allocated on the heap.

See also: [TObject.Init \(702\)](#), [TObject.Done \(704\)](#)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program ex7;

  { Program to demonstrate the TObject.Free call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : TObject;

begin
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(TObject, Init);
  // Free memory of object.
  O^.free;
end.
```

---

### 29.8.5 TObject.Is\_Object

Synopsis: Check whether a pointer points to an object.

Declaration: `function Is_Object(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Is_Object` returns `True` if the pointer `P` points to an instance of a `TObject` descendent, it returns `false` otherwise.

### 29.8.6 TObject.Done

Synopsis: Destroy an object.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done`, the destructor of `TObject` does nothing. It is mainly intended to be used in the `TObject.Free` (703) method.

The destructore `Done` does not free the memory occupied by the object.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `TObject.Free` (703), `TObject.Init` (702)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex8.pp`

---

```

program ex8;

  { Program to demonstrate the TObject.Done call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init);
  O^.Done;
end.

```

---

## 29.9 TPoint

### 29.9.1 Description

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane.

## 29.10 TRect

### 29.10.1 Description

Describes a rectangular region in a plane.

### 29.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
709	Assign	Set rectangle corners.
706	Contains	Determine if a point is inside the rectangle
706	Copy	Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.
705	Empty	Is the surface of the rectangle zero
706	Equals	Do the corners of the rectangles match
709	Grow	Expand rectangle with certain size.
707	Intersect	Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle
708	Move	Move rectangle along a vector.
707	Union	Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

---

### 29.10.3 TRect.Empty

Synopsis: Is the surface of the rectangle zero

Declaration: `function Empty : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Empty` returns `True` if the rectangle defined by the corner points A, B has zero or negative surface.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Equals` (706), `TRect.Contains` (706)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `ex1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Empty }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect,BRect : TRect`;  
       `P : TPoint`;

**begin**

**With** `ARect.A` **do**

**begin**

`X:=10`;

`Y:=10`;

**end**;

**With** `ARect.B` **do**

**begin**

`X:=20`;

`Y:=20`;

**end**;

*{ Offset B by (5,5) }*

**With** `BRect.A` **do**

**begin**

`X:=15`;

`Y:=15`;

**end**;

**With** `BRect.B` **do**

**begin**

`X:=25`;

`Y:=25`;

**end**;

*{ Point }*

**With** `P` **do**

**begin**

`X:=15`;

`Y:=15`;

**end**;

**Writeln** ( 'A empty : ',`ARect.Empty`);

**Writeln** ( 'B empty : ',`BRect.Empty`);

**Writeln** ( 'A Equals B : ',`ARect.Equals(BRect)`);

**Writeln** ( 'A Contains (15,15) : ',`ARect.Contains(P)`);

**end.**

---

### 29.10.4 TRect.Equals

Synopsis: Do the corners of the rectangles match

Declaration: `function Equals(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Equals` returns `True` if the rectangle has the same corner points A, B as the rectangle R, and `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TRect.Empty` (705)

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Empty` (705), `TRect.Contains` (706)

### 29.10.5 TRect.Contains

Synopsis: Determine if a point is inside the rectangle

Declaration: `function Contains(P: TPoint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Contains` returns `True` if the point P is contained in the rectangle (including borders), `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` (707), `TRect.Equals` (706)

### 29.10.6 TRect.Copy

Synopsis: Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.

Declaration: `procedure Copy(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: Assigns the rectangle R to the object. After the call to `Copy`, the rectangle R has been copied to the object that invoked `Copy`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Assign` (709)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program ex2;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Copy }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);

```

---

```

CRect.Copy(ARect);
If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
  Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect')
Else
  Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !');
end.

```

---

### 29.10.7 TRect.Union

Synopsis: Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

Declaration: `procedure Union(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Union` enlarges the current rectangle so that it becomes the union of the current rectangle with the rectangle `R`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` ([707](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `ex3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Union }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect`;

**begin**

```

  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is union of ARect and BRect }

```

```

  CRect.Assign(10,10,25,25);
  { Calculate it explicitly }

```

```

  ARect.Union(BRect);

```

```

  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect')

```

```

  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !');

```

```

end.

```

---

### 29.10.8 TRect.Intersect

Synopsis: Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intersect` makes the intersection of the current rectangle with `R`. If the intersection is empty, then the rectangle is set to the empty rectangle at coordinate (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Union` ([707](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program ex4;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Intersect }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is intersection of ARect and BRect }
  CRect.Assign(15,15,20,20);
  { Calculate it explicitly }
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect' )
  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );
  BRect.Assign(25,25,30,30);
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Empty Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect is empty' );
end.

```

---

### 29.10.9 TRect.Move

Synopsis: Move rectangle along a vector.

Declaration: `procedure Move(ADX: Sw_Integer; ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Move` moves the current rectangle along a vector with components (ADX, ADY). It adds ADX to the X-coordinate of both corner points, and ADY to both end points.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Grow` ([709](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex5.pp

---

```

Program ex5;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Move }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect : TRect;

```

---

```

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Move(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.

```

---

### 29.10.10 TRect.Grow

Synopsis: Expand rectangle with certain size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow(ADX: Sw_Integer;ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Grow` expands the rectangle with an amount `ADX` in the `X` direction (both on the left and right side of the rectangle, thus adding a length `2*ADX` to the width of the rectangle), and an amount `ADY` in the `Y` direction (both on the top and the bottom side of the rectangle, adding a length `2*ADY` to the height of the rectangle).

`ADX` and `ADY` can be negative. If the resulting rectangle is empty, it is set to the empty rectangle at `(0,0)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Move` ([708](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program ex6;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Grow }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Grow(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(5,5,25,25);
  If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.

```

---

### 29.10.11 TRect.Assign

Synopsis: Set rectangle corners.

**Declaration:** `procedure Assign(XA: Sw_Integer; YA: Sw_Integer; XB: Sw_Integer;  
YB: Sw_Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Assign` sets the corner points of the rectangle to `(XA, YA)` and `(XB, YB)`.

For an example, see `TRect.Copy` (706).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Copy` (706)

## 29.11 TResourceCollection

### 29.11.1 Description

A `TResourceCollection` manages a collection of resource names. It stores the position and the size of a resource, as well as the name of the resource. It stores these items in records that look like this:

```
TYPE
  TResourceItem = packed RECORD
    Posn: LongInt;
    Size: LongInt;
    Key : String;
  End;
  PResourceItem = ^TResourceItem;
```

It overrides some methods of `TStringCollection` in order to accomplish this.

**Remark:** Remark that the `TResourceCollection` manages the names of the resources and their associated positions and sizes, it doesn't manage the resources themselves.

### 29.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">711</a>	<code>FreeItem</code>	Release memory occupied by item.
<a href="#">711</a>	<code>GetItem</code>	Read an item from the stream.
<a href="#">710</a>	<code>KeyOf</code>	Return the key of an item in the collection.
<a href="#">711</a>	<code>PutItem</code>	Write an item to the stream.

### 29.11.3 TResourceCollection.KeyOf

**Synopsis:** Return the key of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function KeyOf(Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `KeyOf` returns the key of an item in the collection. For resources, the key is a pointer to the string with the resource name.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TStringCollection.Compare` (731)

### 29.11.4 TResourceCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read an item from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a resource item from the stream `S`. It reads the position, size and name from the stream, in that order. It DOES NOT read the resource itself from the stream.

The resulting item is not inserted in the collection. This call is mainly for internal use by the `TCollection.Load` (682) method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Read` (729)

See also: `TCollection.Load` (682), `TStream.Read` (729)

### 29.11.5 TResourceCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Release memory occupied by item.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeItem` releases the memory occupied by `Item`. It de-allocates the name, and then the resource item record.

It does NOT remove the item from the collection.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` (691)

### 29.11.6 TResourceCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write an item to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the position and size and name of the resource item to the stream.

This method is used primarily by the `Store` (695) method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Write` (729).

See also: `TCollection.Store` (695)

## 29.12 TResourceFile

### 29.12.1 Description

`TResourceFile` (711) represents the resources in a binary file image.

### 29.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">712</a>	Count	Number of resources in the file
<a href="#">714</a>	Delete	Delete a resource from the file
<a href="#">712</a>	Done	Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.
<a href="#">713</a>	Flush	Writes the resources to the stream.
<a href="#">713</a>	Get	Return a resource by key name.
<a href="#">712</a>	Init	Instantiate a new instance.
<a href="#">713</a>	KeyAt	Return the key of the item at a certain position.
<a href="#">714</a>	Put	Set a resource by key name.
<a href="#">713</a>	SwitchTo	Write resources to a new stream.

### 29.12.3 TResourceFile.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Init (AStream: PStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new instance of a `TResourceFile` object. If `AStream` is not nil then it is considered as a stream describing an executable image on disk.

`Init` will try to position the stream on the start of the resources section, and read all resources from the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Done` ([712](#))

### 29.12.4 TResourceFile.Done

Synopsis: Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` cleans up the instance of the `TResourceFile` Object. If `Stream` was specified at initialization, then `Stream` is disposed of too.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([712](#))

### 29.12.5 TResourceFile.Count

Synopsis: Number of resources in the file

Declaration: `function Count : Sw_Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Count` returns the number of resources. If no resources were read, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([712](#))

### 29.12.6 TResourceFile.KeyAt

Synopsis: Return the key of the item at a certain position.

Declaration: `function KeyAt (I: Sw_Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyAt` returns the key (the name) of the `I`-th resource.

Errors: In case `I` is invalid, `TCollection.Error` will be executed.

See also: `TResourceFile.Get` (713)

### 29.12.7 TResourceFile.Get

Synopsis: Return a resource by key name.

Declaration: `function Get (Key: String) : PObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` returns a pointer to a instance of a resource identified by `Key`. If `Key` cannot be found in the list of resources, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Get`

### 29.12.8 TResourceFile.SwitchTo

Synopsis: Write resources to a new stream.

Declaration: `function SwitchTo (AStream: PStream; Pack: Boolean) : PStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `SwitchTo` switches to a new stream to hold the resources in. `AStream` will be the new stream after the call to `SwitchTo`.

If `Pack` is true, then all the known resources will be copied from the current stream to the new stream (`AStream`). If `Pack` is False, then only the current resource is copied.

The return value is the value of the original stream: `Stream`.

The `Modified` flag is set as a consequence of this call.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `TStream.Read` (729) and `TStream.Write` (729).

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` (713)

### 29.12.9 TResourceFile.Flush

Synopsis: Writes the resources to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: default

Description: If the `Modified` flag is set to `True`, then `Flush` writes the resources to the stream `Stream`. It sets the `Modified` flag to true after that.

Errors: Errors can be those by `TStream.Seek` (728) and `TStream.Write` (729).

See also: `TResourceFile.SwitchTo` (713)

### 29.12.10 TResourceFile.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a resource from the file

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Key: String)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Delete` deletes the resource identified by `Key` from the collection. It sets the `Modified` flag to `true`.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` (713)

### 29.12.11 TResourceFile.Put

Synopsis: Set a resource by key name.

Declaration: `procedure Put(Item: PObject;Key: String)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Put` sets the resource identified by `Key` to `Item`. If no such resource exists, a new one is created. The item is written to the stream.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Put` (727) and `TStream.Seek`

See also: `TResourceFile.Get` (713)

## 29.13 TSortedCollection

### 29.13.1 Description

`TSortedCollection` is an abstract class, implementing a sorted collection. You should never use an instance of `TSortedCollection` directly, instead you should declare a descendent type, and override the `Compare` (716) method.

Because the collection is ordered, `TSortedCollection` overrides some `TCollection` methods, to provide faster routines for lookup.

The `Compare` (716) method decides how elements in the collection should be ordered. Since `TCollection` has no way of knowing how to order pointers, you must override the compare method.

Additionally, `TCollection` provides a means to filter out duplicates. if you set `Duplicates` to `False` (the default) then duplicates will not be allowed.

The example below defines a descendent of `TSortedCollection` which is used in the examples.

### 29.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">716</a>	Compare	Compare two items in the collection.
<a href="#">716</a>	IndexOf	Return index of an item in the collection.
<a href="#">715</a>	Init	Instantiates a new instance of a <code>TSortedCollection</code>
<a href="#">718</a>	Insert	Insert new item in collection.
<a href="#">715</a>	KeyOf	Return the key of an item
<a href="#">715</a>	Load	Instantiates a new instance of a <code>TSortedCollection</code> and loads it from stream.
<a href="#">717</a>	Search	Search for item with given key.
<a href="#">719</a>	Store	Write the collection to the stream.

### 29.13.3 `TSortedCollection.Init`

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a `TSortedCollection`

Declaration: `constructor Init (ALimit: Sw_Integer; ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Init` ([681](#))) and sets the `Duplicates` flag to `false`.

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the `inherited` keyword.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([715](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([682](#))

### 29.13.4 `TSortedCollection.Load`

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a `TSortedCollection` and loads it from stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load (var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Load` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Load` ([682](#))) and reads the `Duplicates` flag from the stream..

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the `inherited` keyword.

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([682](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Init` ([715](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([682](#))

### 29.13.5 `TSortedCollection.KeyOf`

Synopsis: Return the key of an item

Declaration: `function KeyOf (Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KeyOf` returns the key associated with `Item`. `TSortedCollection` returns the item itself as the key, descendent objects can override this method to calculate a (unique) key based on the item passed (such as hash values).

`Keys` are used to sort the objects, they are used to search and sort the items in the collection. If descendent types override this method then it allows possibly for faster search/sort methods based on keys rather than on the objects themselves.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` (716), `TSortedCollection.Compare` (716)

### 29.13.6 TSortedCollection.IndexOf

**Synopsis:** Return index of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. It searches for the object based on it's key. If duplicates are allowed, then it returns the index of last object that matches `Item`.

In case `Item` is not found in the collection, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `TCollection.IndexOf` (683)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.Search` (717), `TSortedCollection.Compare` (716)

### 29.13.7 TSortedCollection.Compare

**Synopsis:** Compare two items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function Compare(Key1: Pointer;Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Compare` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects in order to compare two items in the collection. This method is used in the `Search` (717) method and in the `Insert` (718) method to determine the ordering of the objects.

The function should compare the two keys of items and return the following function results:

**Result < 0** If `Key1` is logically before `Key2` (`Key1<Key2`)

**Result = 0** If `Key1` and `Key2` are equal. (`Key1=Key2`)

**Result > 0** If `Key1` is logically after `Key2` (`Key1>Key2`)

**Errors:** An 'abstract run-time error' will be generated if you call `TSortedCollection.Compare` directly.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` (716), `TSortedCollection.Search` (717)

**Listing:** `./objectex/mysortc.pp`

---

**Unit** MySortC;

**Interface**

**Uses** Objects;

**Type**

```

PMySortedCollection = ^TMySortedCollection;
TMySortedCollection = Object(TSortedCollection)
    Function Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer) : Sw_integer; virtual;
    end;

```

**Implementation**

**Uses** MyObject;

**Function** TMySortedCollection.Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer) : sw\_integer;

**begin**

```

    Compare:=PMyobject(Key1)^.GetField - PMyObject(Key2)^.GetField;

```

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 29.13.8 TSortedCollection.Search

Synopsis: Search for item with given key.

Declaration: `function Search(Key: Pointer;var Index: Sw_Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Search looks for the item with key Key and returns the position of the item (if present) in the collection in Index.

Instead of a linear search as TCollection does, TSortedCollection uses a binary search based on the keys of the objects. It uses the Compare (716) function to implement this search.

If the item is found, Search returns True, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.IndexOf (683)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** ex36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject, MySortC;

*{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PSortedCollection;

    M : PMyObject;

    I : Longint;

**Procedure** PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PMySortedCollection, Init(120,10));
  C^.Duplicates:=True;
  Writeln ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(Random(100));
      C^.Insert(M)
    end;
  M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
  Repeat;
    Write ( 'Value to search for (-1 stops) : ' );
    read ( I );
    If I<>-1 then
      begin
        M^.SetField(i);
        If Not C^.Search (M,I) then
          Writeln ( 'No such value found' )
        else
          begin
            Write ( 'Value ', PMyObject(C^.At(I))^ .GetField );
            Writeln ( ' present at position ', I );
          end;
        end;
      Until I=-1;
      Dispose (M, Done );
      Dispose (C, Done );
    end.

```

---

### 29.13.9 TSortedCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert new item in collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts an item in the collection at the correct position, such that the collection is ordered at all times. You should never use `Atinsert` (694), since then the collection ordering is not guaranteed.

If `Item` is already present in the collection, and `Duplicates` is `False`, the item will not be inserted.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.AtInsert` (694)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex35.pp

---

```

Program ex35;

{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }

Uses Objects, MyObject, MySortC;
{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }

Var C : PSortedCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin
    WriteLn ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
    Randomize;
    C:=New( PMySortedCollection, Init(120,10));
    WriteLn ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
            M^.SetField(Random(100));
            C^.Insert(M)
        end;
    WriteLn ( 'Values : ' );
    C^.Foreach( @PrintField );
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.13.10 TSortedCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write the collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by calling the inherited `TCollection.Store` ([695](#)), and then writing the `Duplicates` flag to the stream.

After a `Store`, the collection can be loaded from the stream with the constructor `Load` ([715](#))

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([682](#)).

Errors: Errors can be those of `TStream.Put` ([727](#)).

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([715](#))

## 29.14 TStrCollection

### 29.14.1 Description

The `TStrCollection` object manages a sorted collection of null-terminated strings (pchar strings). To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (716) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

### 29.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">720</a>	<code>Compare</code>	Compare two strings in the collection.
<a href="#">721</a>	<code>FreeItem</code>	Free null-terminated string from the collection.
<a href="#">721</a>	<code>GetItem</code>	Read a null-terminated string from the stream.
<a href="#">721</a>	<code>PutItem</code>	Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

### 29.14.3 TStrCollection.Compare

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer;Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` (716)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex38.pp`

**Program** `ex38;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStrCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** `Objects , Strings ;`

**Var** `C : PStrCollection ;`

`S : String ;`

`I : longint ;`

`P : Pchar ;`

**begin**

`Randomize ;`

`C:=New( PStrCollection , Init(120,10));`

`C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }`

`WriteLn ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );`

**For** `I:=1 to 100 do`

`begin`

`Str(Random(100),S);`

---

```

S:= 'String with value '+S;
P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
C^.Insert(StrPCopy(P,S));
end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(I),At(I+1))=0 then
      WriteLn ('Duplicate string found at position ',I);
    Dispose(C,Done);
  end.

```

---

#### 29.14.4 TStrCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a null-terminated string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.StrRead` ([723](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.PutItem` ([721](#))

#### 29.14.5 TStrCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Free null-terminated string from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([691](#))

#### 29.14.6 TStrCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.StrWrite` ([728](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.GetItem` ([721](#))

## 29.15 TStream

### 29.15.1 Description

The `TStream` object is the ancestor for all streaming objects, i.e. objects that have the capability to store and retrieve data.

It defines a number of methods that are common to all objects that implement streaming, many of them are virtual, and are only implemented in the descendent types.

Programs should not instantiate objects of type `TStream` directly, but instead instantiate a descendant type, such as `TDosStream`, `TMemoryStream`.

### 29.15.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">726</a>	<code>Close</code>	Close the stream
<a href="#">730</a>	<code>CopyFrom</code>	Copy data from another stream.
<a href="#">728</a>	<code>Error</code>	Set stream status
<a href="#">727</a>	<code>Flush</code>	Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Get</code>	Read an object definition from the stream.
<a href="#">724</a>	<code>GetPos</code>	Return current position in the stream
<a href="#">724</a>	<code>GetSize</code>	Return the size of the stream.
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Init</code>	Constructor for <code>TStream</code> instance
<a href="#">726</a>	<code>Open</code>	Open the stream
<a href="#">727</a>	<code>Put</code>	Write an object to the stream.
<a href="#">729</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from stream to buffer.
<a href="#">725</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a shortstring from the stream.
<a href="#">726</a>	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the stream
<a href="#">728</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set stream position.
<a href="#">723</a>	<code>StrRead</code>	Read a null-terminated string from the stream.
<a href="#">728</a>	<code>StrWrite</code>	Write a null-terminated string to the stream.
<a href="#">727</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Truncate the stream size on current position.
<a href="#">729</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write a number of bytes to the stream.
<a href="#">728</a>	<code>WriteStr</code>	Write a pascal string to the stream.

### 29.15.3 TStream.Init

Synopsis: Constructor for `TStream` instance

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Init` initializes a `TStream` instance. Descendent streams should always call the inherited `Init`.

### 29.15.4 TStream.Get

Synopsis: Read an object definition from the stream.

Declaration: `function Get : PObject`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Get` reads an object definition from a stream, and returns a pointer to an instance of this object.

Errors: On error, TStream.Status (??) is set, and NIL is returned.

See also: TStream.Put ([727](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex9.pp

---

**Program** ex9;

*{ Program to demonstrate TStream.Get and TStream.Put }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ Definition and registration of TMyObject }*

**Var** Obj : PMyObject;  
S : PStream;

**begin**

```
Obj:=New(PMyObject, Init);
Obj^.SetField($1111);
Writeln ('Field value : ', Obj^.GetField);
{ Since Stream is an abstract type, we instantiate a TMemoryStream }
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.Put(Obj);
Writeln ('Disposing object');
S^.Seek(0);
Dispose(Obj, Done);
Writeln ('Reading object');
Obj:=PMyObject(S^.Get);
Writeln ('Field Value : ', Obj^.GetField);
Dispose(Obj, Done);
```

**end.**

---

### 29.15.5 TStream.StrRead

Synopsis: Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

Declaration: `function StrRead : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: StrRead reads a string from the stream, allocates memory for it, and returns a pointer to a null-terminated copy of the string on the heap.

Errors: On error, Nil is returned.

See also: TStream.StrWrite ([728](#)), TStream.ReadStr ([725](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** ex10;

*{  
Program to demonstrate the TStream.StrRead TStream.StrWrite functions  
}*

**Uses** objects;

**Var** P : PChar;  
S : PStream;

---

```

begin
  P:= 'Constant Pchar string';
  Writeln ('Writing to stream : ',P,'');
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  S^.StrWrite(P);
  S^.Seek(0);
  P:= Nil;
  P:=S^.StrRead;
  Dispose (S,Done);
  Writeln ('Read from stream : ',P,'');
  Freemem(P, Strlen(P)+1);
end.

```

---

### 29.15.6 TStream.GetPos

Synopsis: Return current position in the stream

Declaration: `function GetPos : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk`, `GetPos` returns the current position in the stream. Otherwise it returns `-1`

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([728](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([724](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program ex11;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetPos function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  Writeln ('Stream position before write : ',S^.GetPos);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln ('Stream position after write : ',S^.GetPos);
  Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.15.7 TStream.GetSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the stream.

Declaration: `function GetSize : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk` then `GetSize` returns the size of the stream, otherwise it returns `-1`.

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([728](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([724](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex12.pp`

---

```

Program ex12;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetSize function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  Writeln ( 'Stream size before write : ',S^.GetSize);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln ( 'Stream size after write : ',S^.GetSize);
  Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.15.8 TStream.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadStr : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string from the stream, copies it to the heap and returns a pointer to this copy. The string is saved as a pascal string, and hence is NOT null terminated.

Errors: On error (e.g. not enough memory), `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TStream.StrRead` ([723](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex13.pp`

---

```

Program ex13;

{
  Program to demonstrate the TStream.ReadStr TStream.WriteStr functions
}

Uses objects;

Var P : PString;
    L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Constant string line';
  Writeln ( 'Writing to stream : " ',L,'" ');

```

---

---

```

S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.Seek(0);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
Dispose(S, Done);
WriteLn('Read from stream : "', L, '"');
end.

```

---

### 29.15.9 TStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the stream

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Open` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since opening a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (699).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (726), `TStream.Reset` (726)

### 29.15.10 TStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the stream

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since Closing a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

for an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (699).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` (726), `TStream.Reset` (726)

### 29.15.11 TStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: default

Description: `Reset` sets the stream's status to 0, as well as the `ErrorInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` (726), `TStream.Close` (726)

### 29.15.12 TStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to tell streams that implement a buffer to clear the buffer.

for an example, see `TBufStream.Flush` ([678](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([727](#))

### 29.15.13 TStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the stream size on current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` is an abstract procedure that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to truncate the size of the stream to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([697](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([728](#))

### 29.15.14 TStream.Put

Synopsis: Write an object to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Put (P: PObject)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` writes the object pointed to by `P`. `P` should be non-nil. The object type must have been registered with `RegisterType` ([675](#)).

After the object has been written, it can be read again with `Get` ([722](#)).

For an example, see `TStream.Get` ([722](#));

Errors: No check is done whether `P` is `Nil` or not. Passing `Nil` will cause a run-time error 216 to be generated. If the object has not been registered, the status of the stream will be set to `stPutError`.

See also: `TStream.Get` ([722](#))

**29.15.15 TStream.StrWrite**

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure StrWrite(P: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the null-terminated string `P` to the stream. `P` can only be 65355 bytes long.

For an example, see `TStream.StrRead` (723).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.WriteString` (728), `TStream.StrRead` (723), `TStream.ReadStr` (725)

**29.15.16 TStream.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a pascal string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the pascal string pointed to by `P` to the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.ReadStr` (725).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.StrWrite` (728), `TStream.StrRead` (723), `TStream.ReadStr` (725)

**29.15.17 TStream.Seek**

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Pos`. This position is counted from the beginning, and is zero based. (i.e. `seek(0)` sets the position pointer on the first byte of the stream)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Seek` (698).

Errors: If `Pos` is larger than the stream size, `Status` is set to `StSeekError`.

See also: `TStream.GetPos` (724), `TStream.GetSize` (724)

**29.15.18 TStream.Error**

Synopsis: Set stream status

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer; Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` sets the stream's status to `Code` and `ErrorInfo` to `Info`. If the `StreamError` procedural variable is set, `Error` executes it, passing `Self` as an argument.

This method should not be called directly from a program. It is intended to be used in descendent objects.

Errors: None.

**29.15.19 TStream.Read**

Synopsis: Read data from stream to buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Read is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Read reads Count bytes from the stream into Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count. Buf must be large enough to contain Count bytes.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf is large enough to contain Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Write (729), TStream.ReadStr (725), TStream.StrRead (723)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex18.pp

---

```

program ex18;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Read method }

Uses Objects;

Var Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..1000] of Byte;
    I : longint;
    S : PMemoryStream;

begin
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=Random(1000);
    Buf2:=Buf1;
    S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
    S^.Write(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    S^.Seek(0);
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=0;
    S^.Read(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        If Buf1[I]<>buf2[i] then
            WriteLn('Buffer differs at position ',I);
    Dispose(S, Done);
end.

```

---

**29.15.20 TStream.Write**

Synopsis: Write a number of bytes to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Write writes Count bytes to the stream from Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count.

For an example, see TStream.Read (729).

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf actually contains Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Read (729), TStream.WriteStr (728), TStream.StrWrite (728)

### 29.15.21 TStream.CopyFrom

Synopsis: Copy data from another stream.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFrom(var S: TStream; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from stream `S` and stores them in the current stream. It uses the `Read` (729) method to read the data, and the `Write` (729) method to write in the current stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Read` (729), `TStream.Write` (729)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `ex19`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.CopyFrom function }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `P` : `PString`;  
       `L` : **String**;  
       `S1,S2` : `PStream`;

**begin**  
   `L:= 'Constant string line';`  
   **Writeln** ( 'Writing to stream 1 : " ',`L`, ' " ');  
   `S1:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));`  
   `S2:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));`  
   `S1^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `S1^.Seek(0);`  
   **Writeln** ( 'Copying contents of stream 1 to stream 2 ');  
   `S2^.Copyfrom(S1^,S1^.GetSize);`  
   `S2^.Seek(0);`  
   `P:=S2^.ReadStr;`  
   `L:=P^;`  
   **DisposeStr**(`P`);  
   **Dispose** ( `S1`, `Done` );  
   **Dispose** ( `S2`, `Done` );  
   **Writeln** ( 'Read from stream 2 : " ',`L`, ' " ');  
**end.**

---

## 29.16 TStringCollection

### 29.16.1 Description

The `TStringCollection` object manages a sorted collection of pascal strings. To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (716) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

### 29.16.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">731</a>	Compare	Compare two strings in the collection.
<a href="#">732</a>	FreeItem	Dispose a string in the collection from memory.
<a href="#">731</a>	GetItem	Get string from the stream.
<a href="#">732</a>	PutItem	Write a string to the stream.

### 29.16.3 TStringCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Get string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.ReadStr` ([725](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.PutItem` ([732](#))

### 29.16.4 TStringCollection.Compare

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns the following results:

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([716](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex37.pp`

**Program** `ex37;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStringCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `C : PStringCollection;`  
      `S : String;`  
      `I : longint;`

**begin**  
  `Randomize;`

---

```

C:=New(PStringCollection, Init(120,10));
C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }
WriteLn ('Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
For I:=1 to 100 do
  begin
    Str(Random(100),S);
    S:='String with value '+S;
    C^.Insert(NewStr(S));
  end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(i),At(I+1))=0 then
      WriteLn ('Duplicate string found at position ',i);
Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 29.16.5 TStringCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Dispose a string in the collection from memory.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` (691)

### 29.16.6 TStringCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.WriteString` (728).

See also: `TStringCollection.GetItem` (731)

## 29.17 TStringList

### 29.17.1 Description

A `TStringList` object can be used to read a collection of strings stored in a stream. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` (675) function, you cannot register the `TStrListMaker` object.

**29.17.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">733</a>	Done	Clean up the instance
<a href="#">733</a>	Get	Return a string by key name
<a href="#">733</a>	Load	Load stringlist from stream.

**29.17.3 TStringList.Load**

Synopsis: Load stringlist from stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Load` constructor reads the `TStringList` object from the stream `S`. It also reads the descriptions of the strings from the stream. The string descriptions are stored as an array of `TStrIndexrec` records, where each record describes a string on the stream. These records are kept in memory.

Errors: If an error occurs, a stream error is triggered.

See also: `TStringList.Done` ([733](#))

**29.17.4 TStringList.Done**

Synopsis: Clean up the instance

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Done` destructor frees the memory occupied by the string descriptions, and destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringList.Load` ([733](#)), `TObject.Done` ([704](#))

**29.17.5 TStringList.Get**

Synopsis: Return a string by key name

Declaration: `function Get(Key: Sw_Word) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` reads the string with key `Key` from the list of strings on the stream, and returns this string. If there is no string with such a key, an empty string is returned.

Errors: If no string with key `Key` is found, an empty string is returned. A stream error may result if the stream doesn't contain the needed strings.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Put` ([734](#))

## 29.18 TStrListMaker

### 29.18.1 Description

The `TStrListMaker` object can be used to generate a stream with strings, which can be read with the `TStringList` object. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` (675) function, you cannot register the `TStringList` object.

### 29.18.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">734</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up the instance and free all related memory.
<a href="#">734</a>	<code>Init</code>	Instantiate a new instance of <code>TStrListMaker</code>
<a href="#">734</a>	<code>Put</code>	Add a new string to the list with associated key.
<a href="#">735</a>	<code>Store</code>	Write the strings to the stream.

### 29.18.3 TStrListMaker.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of `TStrListMaker`

Declaration: `constructor Init (AStrSize: Sw_Word; AIndexSize: Sw_Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Init` constructor creates a new instance of the `TstrListMaker` object. It allocates `AStrSize` bytes on the heap to hold all the strings you wish to store. It also allocates enough room for `AIndexSize` key description entries (of the type `TStrIndexrec`).

`AStrSize` must be large enough to contain all the strings you wish to store. If not enough memory is allocated, other memory will be overwritten. The same is true for `AIndexSize` : maximally `AIndexSize` strings can be written to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Init` (702), `TStrListMaker.Done` (734)

### 29.18.4 TStrListMaker.Done

Synopsis: Clean up the instance and free all related memory.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Done` destructor de-allocates the memory for the index description records and the string data, and then destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Done` (704), `TStrListMaker.Init` (734)

### 29.18.5 TStrListMaker.Put

Synopsis: Add a new string to the list with associated key.

Declaration: `procedure Put (Key: Sw_Word; S: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` adds the string `S` with key `Key` to the collection of strings. This action doesn't write the string to a stream. To write the strings to the stream, see the `Store` (735) method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Store` (735)

### 29.18.6 TStrListMaker.Store

Synopsis: Write the strings to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection of strings to the stream `S`. The collection can then be read with the `TStringList` object.

Errors: A stream error may occur when writing the strings to the stream.

See also: `TStringList.Load` (733), `TStrListMaker.Put` (734)

## 29.19 TUnSortedStrCollection

### 29.19.1 Description

The `TUnSortedStrCollection` object manages an unsorted list of strings. To this end, it overrides the `TStringCollection.Insert` (730) method to add strings at the end of the collection, rather than in the alphabetically correct position.

Take care, the `Search` (717) and `IndexOf` (683) methods will not work on an unsorted string collection.

### 29.19.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">735</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new string in the collection.

### 29.19.3 TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new string in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts a string at the end of the collection, instead of on its alphabetical place, resulting in an unsorted collection of strings.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (689)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex39.pp`

---

```
Program ex39;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the TUnsortedStrCollection.Insert method }  
  
Uses Objects , Strings ;  
  
Var C : PUnsortedStrCollection ;  
      S : String ;  
      I : longint ;  
      P : Pchar ;  
  
begin  
  Randomize ;  
  C:=New(PUnsortedStrCollection , Init(120,10));  
  Writeln ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );  
  For I:=1 to 100 do  
    begin  
      Str(Random(100),S);  
      S:= 'String with value ' + S;  
      C^.Insert(NewStr(S));  
    end ;  
  For I:=0 to 99 do  
    Writeln ( I:2, ' : ', PString(C^.At(i))^ );  
  Dispose(C,Done);  
end.
```

---

## Chapter 30

# Reference for unit 'objpas'

### 30.1 Overview

The `objpas` unit is meant for compatibility with Object Pascal as implemented by Delphi. The unit is loaded automatically by the Free Pascal compiler whenever the `Delphi` or `objfpc` more is entered, either through the command line switches `-Sd` or `-Sh` or with the `{ $MODE DELPHI }` or `{ $MODE OBJFPC }` directives.

It redefines some basic pascal types, introduces some functions for compatibility with Delphi's system unit, and introduces some methods for the management of the resource string tables.

### 30.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 30.2.1 Constants

`MaxInt = MaxLongint`

Maximum value for Integer (737) type.

#### 30.2.2 Types

`Integer = LongInt`

In OBJPAS mode and in DELPHI mode, an `Integer` has a size of 32 bit. In TP or regular FPC mode, an integer is 16 bit.

`IntegerArray = Array[0..$efffffff] of Integer`

Generic array of integer (737)

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to Integer (737) type.

`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to TIntegerArray (738) type.

```
PointerArray = Array[0..512*1024*1024-2] of Pointer
```

Generic Array of pointers.

```
PPointerArray = ^PointerArray
```

Pointer to PointerArray ([738](#))

```
PResStringRec = ^AnsiString
```

Pointer to ansistring (Delphi compatibility).

```
PString = PAnsiString
```

Pointer to ansistring type.

```
TBoundArray = Array of Integer
```

Array of integer, used in interfaces.

```
TIntegerArray = IntegerArray
```

Alias for IntegerArray ([737](#))

```
TPointerArray = PointerArray
```

Alias for PointerArray ([738](#))

```
TResourceIterator = function(Name: AnsiString;Value: AnsiString;  
                             Hash: LongInt;arg: pointer) : AnsiString
```

The resource string tables can be managed with a callback function which the user must provide:

```
TResourceIterator.
```

```
TResStringRec = AnsiString
```

Ansistring record in resource table (Delphi compatibility).

### 30.2.3 Variables

```
ExceptionClass : TClass
```

ExceptionClass is the base class for all exceptions. Normally, this is Exception ([1324](#)), defined in the Sysutils ([1174](#)) unit.

```
ExceptObjProc : Pointer
```

ExceptObjProc is unused in Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 30.3 Procedures and functions

### 30.3.1 AssignFile

Synopsis: Assign text or untyped file

**Declaration:** `procedure AssignFile(out f: File;const Name: String)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out f: File;p: pchar)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out f: File;c: Char)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out t: Text;const s: String)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out t: Text;p: pchar)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out t: Text;c: Char)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out f: TypedFile;const Name: String)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out f: TypedFile;p: pchar)`  
`procedure AssignFile(out f: TypedFile;c: Char)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AssignFile` is completely equivalent to the system unit's `Assign` (1018) function: It assigns `Name` to a function of any type (`FileType` can be `Text` or a typed or untyped `File` variable). `Name` can be a string, a single character or a `PChar`.

It is most likely introduced to avoid confusion between the regular `Assign` (1018) function and the `Assign` method of `TPersistent` in the Delphi VCL.

Errors: None.

See also: `CloseFile` (739), `#rtl.system.Assign` (1018), `#rtl.system.Reset` (1116), `#rtl.system.Rewrite` (1117), `#rtl.system.Append` (1016)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex88.pp`

**Program** `Example88`;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the AssignFile and CloseFile functions. }

{$MODE Delphi}

Var F : text;

begin
  AssignFile(F, 'textfile.tmp');
  Rewrite(F);
  WriteLn (F, 'This is a silly example of AssignFile and CloseFile. ');
  CloseFile(F);
end.
```

---

### 30.3.2 CloseFile

Synopsis: Close text or untyped file

**Declaration:** `procedure CloseFile(var f: File)`  
`procedure CloseFile(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CloseFile` flushes and closes a file `F` of any file type. `F` can be `Text` or a typed or untyped `File` variable. After a call to `CloseFile`, any attempt to write to the file `F` will result in an error.

It is most likely introduced to avoid confusion between the regular `Close` (1025) function and the `Close` method of `TForm` in the Delphi VCL.

for an example, see `AssignFile` (739).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `#rtl.system.Close` (1025), `AssignFile` (739), `#rtl.system.Reset` (1116), `#rtl.system.Rewrite` (1117), `#rtl.system.Append` (1016)

### 30.3.3 FinalizeResourceTables

**Synopsis:** Finalize resource string tables

**Declaration:** `procedure FinalizeResourceTables`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FinalizeResourceTables` should be called by any routine that sets the resource string tables to translated versions of the strings. Typically, it should be called in the `Finalization` code of the unit that does the initialization of the tables. This is needed to correctly deallocate the strings from memory

### 30.3.4 GetStringCurrentValue

**Synopsis:** Return current value of resourcestring

**Declaration:** `function GetStringCurrentValue (TableIndex: LongInt;  
StringIndex: LongInt) : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetStringCurrentValue` returns the current value of the resourcestring in table `TableIndex` with index `StringIndex`.

The current value depends on the system of internationalization that was used, and which language is selected when the program is executed.

**Errors:** If either `TableIndex` or `StringIndex` are out of range, then a empty string is returned.

**See also:** `SetResourceStrings` (745), `GetStringDefaultValue` (741), `GetStringHash` (741), `GetStringName` (742), `ResourceStringTableCount` (745), `ResourceStringCount` (744)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex90.pp`

---

**Program** `Example90`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the GetStringCurrentValue function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

```
ResourceString
```

```
    First = 'First string';
    Second = 'Second String';
```

```
Var I, J : Longint;
```

---

```

begin
  { Print current values of all resourcestrings }
  For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
    For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
      Writeln (I, ', ', J, ' : ', GetResourceStringCurrentValue(I,J));
end.

```

---

### 30.3.5 GetResourceStringDefaultValue

Synopsis: Return default (original) value of resourcestring

Declaration: `function GetResourceStringDefaultValue(TableIndex: LongInt; StringIndex: LongInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` returns the default value of the resourcestring in table `TableIndex` with index `StringIndex`.

The default value is the value of the string that appears in the source code of the programmer, and is compiled into the program.

Errors: If either `TableIndex` or `StringIndex` are out of range, then a empty string is returned.

See also: `SetResourceStrings` (745), `GetResourceStringCurrentValue` (740), `GetResourceStringHash` (741), `GetResourceStringName` (742), `ResourceStringTableCount` (745), `ResourceStringCount` (744)

Listing: `./refex/ex91.pp`

---

**Program** Example91;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the GetResourceStringDefaultValue function. }
{$Mode Delphi}

```

ResourceString

```

  First  = 'First string';
  Second = 'Second String';

```

**Var** I,J : Longint;

```

begin
  { Print default values of all resourcestrings }
  For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
    For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
      Writeln (I, ', ', J, ' : ', GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
end.

```

---

### 30.3.6 GetResourceStringHash

Synopsis: Return hash value of resource string

Declaration: `function GetResourceStringHash(TableIndex: LongInt; StringIndex: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetResourceStringHash` returns the hash value associated with the resource string in table `TableIndex`, with index `StringIndex`.

The hash value is calculated from the default value of the resource string in a manner that gives the same result as the GNU `gettext` mechanism. It is stored in the resourcestring tables, so retrieval is faster than actually calculating the hash for each string.

For an example, see [Hash \(743\)](#).

**Errors:** If either `TableIndex` or `StringIndex` is zero, 0 is returned.

**See also:** [Hash \(743\)](#), [SetResourceStrings \(745\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(741\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(741\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(742\)](#), [ResourceStringTableCount \(745\)](#), [ResourceStringCount \(744\)](#)

### 30.3.7 GetResourceStringName

**Synopsis:** Return name of resource string.

**Declaration:** `function GetResourceStringName (TableIndex: LongInt; StringIndex: LongInt) : Ansistring`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetResourceStringName` returns the name of the resourcestring in table `TableIndex` with index `StringIndex`. The name of the string is always the unit name in which the string was declared, followed by a period and the name of the constant, all in lowercase.

If a unit `MyUnit` declares a resourcestring `MyTitle` then the name returned will be `myunit.mytitle`. A resourcestring in the program file will have the name of the program prepended.

The name returned by this function is also the name that is stored in the resourcestring file generated by the compiler.

Strictly speaking, this information isn't necessary for the functioning of the program, it is provided only as a means to easier translation of strings.

**Errors:** If either `TableIndex` or `StringIndex` is zero, an empty string is returned.

**See also:** [SetResourceStrings \(745\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(741\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(741\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(742\)](#), [ResourceStringTableCount \(745\)](#), [ResourceStringCount \(744\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex92.pp`

**Program** `Example92`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the GetResourceStringName function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

```
ResourceString
```

```
    First = 'First string';
    Second = 'Second String';
```

```
Var I,J : Longint;
```

```
begin
```

```
    { Print names of all resourcestrings }
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(I)-1 do
            Writeln (I, ', ', J, ' : ', GetResourceStringName(I,J));
```

```
end.
```

### 30.3.8 Hash

Synopsis: Create GNU Gettext hash value for a string

Declaration: `function Hash(S: AnsiString) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hash` calculates the hash value of the string `S` in a manner that is compatible with the GNU gettext hash value for the string. It is the same value that is stored in the Resource string tables, and which can be retrieved with the `GetResourceStringHash` (741) function call.

Errors: None. In case the calculated hash value should be 0, the returned result will be -1.

See also: `GetResourceStringHash` (741)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex93.pp`

---

**Program** `Example93`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Hash function. }
{$Mode Delphi}

ResourceString

    First  = 'First string';
    Second = 'Second String';

Var I,J : Longint;

begin
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
            If Hash(GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J))
                <>GetResourceStringHash(I,J) then
                Writeln ('Hash mismatch at ',I,', ',J)
            else
                Writeln ('Hash ( ',I,', ',J,') matches. ');
end.
```

---

### 30.3.9 LoadResString

Synopsis: Load resource string

Declaration: `function LoadResString(p: PResStringRec) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadResString` loads a resource string based on the description in the `p` parameter, and returns the current value of the string. It is provided for Delphi compatibility but is otherwise unused in the Free Pascal RTL.

### 30.3.10 ParamStr

Synopsis: Return command-line parameter

Declaration: `function ParamStr(Param: Integer) : Ansistring`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ParamStr` returns the `Param`-th command-line parameter as an `AnsiString`. The system unit `Paramstr` (743) function limits the result to 255 characters, and is overridden with this function.

The zeroeth command-line parameter contains the path of the executable. On some operating systems (BSD) it may be simply the command as typed on the command-line, because the OS does not offer a method to retrieve the full binary name.

For an example, see `#rtl.system.Paramstr` (1107).

**Errors:** In case `Param` is an invalid value, an empty string is returned.

See also: `Paramstr` (743)

### 30.3.11 ResetResourceTables

**Synopsis:** Restore all resource strings to their declared values

**Declaration:** `procedure ResetResourceTables`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ResetResourceTables` resets all resource strings to their default (i.e. as in the source code) values.

Normally, this should never be called from a user's program. It is called in the initialization code of the `objpas` unit. However, if the resourcetables get messed up for some reason, this procedure will fix them again.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SetResourceStrings` (745), `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741), `GetResourceStringHash` (741), `GetResourceStringName` (742), `ResourceStringTableCount` (745), `ResourceStringCount` (744)

### 30.3.12 ResourceStringCount

**Synopsis:** Return number of resource strings in table

**Declaration:** `function ResourceStringCount (TableIndex: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ResourceStringCount` returns the number of resource strings in the table with index `TableIndex`. The strings in a particular table are numbered from 0 to `ResourceStringCount-1`, i.e. they're zero based.

For an example, see `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741)

**Errors:** If an invalid `TableIndex` is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `SetResourceStrings` (745), `GetResourceStringCurrentValue` (740), `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741), `GetResourceStringHash` (741), `GetResourceStringName` (742), `ResourceStringTableCount` (745)

### 30.3.13 ResourceStringTableCount

Synopsis: Return number of resource string tables

Declaration: `function ResourceStringTableCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ResourceStringTableCount` returns the number of resource string tables; this may be zero if no resource strings are used in a program.

The tables are numbered from 0 to `ResourceStringTableCount-1`, i.e. they're zero based.

For an example, see `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741)

Errors:

See also: `SetResourceStrings` (745), `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741), `GetResourceStringHash` (741), `GetResourceStringName` (742), `ResourceStringCount` (744)

### 30.3.14 SetResourceStrings

Synopsis: Set values of all resource strings.

Declaration: `procedure SetResourceStrings (SetFunction: TResourceIterator;  
arg: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetResourceStrings` calls `SetFunction` for all resource strings in the resource string tables and sets the resource string's current value to the value returned by `SetFunction`.

The `Name`, `Value` and `Hash` parameters passed to the iterator function are the values stored in the tables.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetResourceStringCurrentValue` (740), `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741), `GetResourceStringHash` (741), `GetResourceStringName` (742), `ResourceStringTableCount` (745), `ResourceStringCount` (744)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex95.pp`

**Program** `Example95`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SetResourceStrings function. }
{$Mode objfpc}
```

`ResourceString`

```
First = 'First string';
Second = 'Second String';
```

```
Var I, J : Longint;
    S : AnsiString;
```

**Function** `Translate (Name, Value : AnsiString; Hash : longint): AnsiString;`

**begin**

```
WriteLn ( 'Translate ( ', Name, ' ) => ', Value );
Write ( ' -> ' );
```

```

    ReadLn (Result);
end;

begin
    SetResourceStrings(@Translate);
    WriteLn ('Translated strings : ');
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
            begin
                WriteLn (GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
                WriteLn ('Translates to : ');
                WriteLn (GetResourceStringCurrentValue(I,J));
            end;
        end;
    end.

```

---

### 30.3.15 SetResourceStringValue

Synopsis: Set value of a resource string

Declaration: `function SetResourceStringValue (TableIndex: LongInt;  
StringIndex: LongInt; Value: Ansistring)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetResourceStringValue` assigns `Value` to the resource string in table `TableIndex` with index `StringIndex`.

Errors:

See also: `SetResourceStrings` (745), `GetResourceStringCurrentValue` (740), `GetResourceStringDefaultValue` (741), `GetResourceStringHash` (741), `GetResourceStringName` (742), `ResourceStringTableCount` (745), `ResourceStringCount` (744)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex94.pp

---

**Program** Example94;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the SetResourceStringValue function. }
{$Mode Delphi}

```

ResourceString

```

    First = 'First string';
    Second = 'Second String';

```

```

Var I,J : Longint;
    S : AnsiString;

```

```

begin
    { Print current values of all resourcestrings }
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
            begin
                WriteLn ('Translate => ',GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
                Write ('->');
                ReadLn(S);
            end;
        end;
    end;

```

---

```

        SetResourceStringValue(I,J,S);
    end;
    Writeln ('Translated strings : ');
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
            begin
                Writeln ( GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
                Writeln ('Translates to : ');
                Writeln ( GetResourceStringCurrentValue(I,J));
            end;
        end;
    end.

```

---

### 30.3.16 SetUnitResourceStrings

Synopsis: Set unit resource strings for a given unit

Declaration: `procedure SetUnitResourceStrings(const UnitName: String;  
   SetFunction: TResourceIterator;  
   arg: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetUnitResourceStrings` will call `SetFunction` for all resource strings of the unit indicated by `UnitName`. The additional `Arg` pointer will be passed to the `SetFunction` iterator.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetResourceStrings` ([745](#)), `ResetResourceTables` ([744](#)), `FinalizeResourceTables` ([740](#))

# Chapter 31

## Reference for unit 'oldlinux'

### 31.1 Utility routines

Auxiliary functions that are useful in connection with the other functions.

Table 31.1:

Name	Description
CreateShellArgV (809)	Create an array of pchars from string
EpochToLocal (812)	Convert epoch time to local time
FD_Clr (823)	Clear item of select filedescriptors
FD_IsSet (823)	Check item of select filedescriptors
FD_Set (823)	Set item of select filedescriptors
FD_ZERO (824)	Clear all items in select filedcriptors
LocalToEpoch (842)	Convert local time to epoch time
MMap (845)	Map a file into memory
MUnMap (846)	Unmap previously mapped memory file
Octal (848)	Convert octal to digital
S_ISBLK (864)	Check file mode for block device
S_ISCHR (865)	Check file mode for character device
S_ISDIR (865)	Check file mode for directory
S_ISFIFO (865)	Check file mode for FIFO
S_ISLNK (865)	Check file mode for symboloc link
S_ISREG (866)	Check file mode for regular file
S_ISSOCK (866)	Check file mode for socket
StringToPPchar (861)	Create an array of pchars from string

### 31.2 Terminal functions

Functions for controlling the terminal to which the process is connected.

### 31.3 System information

Functions for retrieving system information such as date and time.

Table 31.2:

Name	Description
CFMakeRaw (804)	Set terminal to raw mode
CFSetISpeed (804)	Set terminal reading speed
CFSetOSpeed (804)	Set terminal writing speed
IOCtl (839)	General IO control call
IsATTY (841)	See if filedescriptor is a terminal
TCDrain (867)	Wait till all output was written
TCFlow (867)	Suspend transmission or receipt of data
TCFlush (867)	Discard data written to terminal
TCGetAttr (868)	Get terminal attributes
TCGetPGrp (868)	Return PID of foreground process
TCSendBreak (869)	Send data for specific time
TCSetAttr (869)	Set terminal attributes
TCSetPGrp (870)	Set foreground process
TTYName (870)	Name of tty file

Table 31.3:

Name	Description
GetDate (830)	Return system date
GetDateTime (830)	Return system date and time
GetDomainName (831)	Return system domain name
GetEpochTime (832)	Return epoch time
GetHostName (834)	Return system host name
GetLocalTimezone (835)	Return system timezone
GetTime (837)	Return system time
GetTimeOfDay (837)	Return system time
GetTimezoneFile (838)	Return name of timezone file
ReadTimezoneFile (853)	Read timezone file contents
SysInfo (863)	Return general system information
Uname (871)	Return system information

## 31.4 Signals

Functions for managing and responding to signals.

## 31.5 Process handling

Functions for managing processes and programs.

## 31.6 Directory handling routines

Functions for reading and searching directories.

Table 31.4:

Name	Description
Alarm (800)	Send alarm signal to self
Kill (841)	Send arbitrary signal to process
pause (850)	Wait for signal to arrive
SigAction (857)	Set signal action
Signal (858)	Set signal action
SigPending (859)	See if signals are waiting
SigProcMask (859)	Set signal processing mask
SigRaise (860)	Send signal to self
SigSuspend (861)	Sets signal mask and waits for signal
NanoSleep (847)	Waits for a specific amount of time

## 31.7 Pipes, FIFOs and streams

Functions for creating and managing pipes.

## 31.8 General File handling routines

Functions for handling files on disk.

## 31.9 File Input/Output routines

Functions for handling file input/output.

## 31.10 Overview

This document describes the LINUX unit for Free Pascal. The unit was written by Michael van Canneyt. It works only on the Linux/X86 operating system.

## 31.11 Constants, types and variables

### 31.11.1 Constants

B0 = \$00000000

B110 = \$00000003

B115200 = \$0001002

B1200 = \$00000009

Table 31.5:

Name	Description
Clone (807)	Create a thread
Execl (813)	Execute process with command-line list
Execle (814)	Execute process with command-line list and environment
Execlp (814)	Search in path and execute process with command list
Execv (815)	Execute process
Execve (816)	Execute process with environment
Execvp (817)	Search in path and execute process
Fork (826)	Spawn child process
GetEGid (831)	Get effective group id
GetEnv (832)	Get environment variable
GetEUid (833)	Get effective user id
GetGid (834)	Get group id
GetPid (835)	Get process id
GetPPid (836)	Get parent process id
GetPriority (836)	Get process priority
GetUid (838)	Get user id
Nice (848)	Change priority of process
SetPriority (856)	Change priority of process
Shell (856)	Execute shell command
WaitPid (873)	Wait for child process to terminate

Table 31.6:

Name	Description
CloseDir (809)	Close directory handle
Glob (838)	Return files matching a search expression
GlobFree (839)	Free result of Glob
OpenDir (849)	Open directory for reading
ReadDir (851)	Read directory entry
SeekDir (853)	Seek directory
TellDir (870)	Seek directory

B134 = \$00000004

B150 = \$00000005

B1800 = \$0000000A

B19200 = \$0000000E

B200 = \$00000006

B230400 = \$00010003

Table 31.7:

Name	Description
AssignPipe (801)	Create a pipe
AssignStream (802)	Create pipes to program's input and output
MkFifo (845)	Make a fifo
PClose (850)	Close a pipe
POpen (850)	Open a pipe for to program's input or output

Table 31.8:

Name	Description
Access (799)	Check access rights on file
BaseName (803)	Return name part of file
Chown (806)	Change owner of file
Chmod (805)	Change access rights on file
DirName (810)	Return directory part of file
FSplit (827)	Split filename in parts
FExpand (824)	Return full-grown filename
FLock (824)	Set lock on a file
FNMatch (825)	Match filename to searchpattern
FSearch (827)	Search for a file in a path
FStat (828)	Return filesystem information
FStat (829)	Return file information
FRename (826)	Rename file
LStat (843)	Return information on a link
Link (841)	Create a link
ReadLink (852)	Read contents of a symbolic link
SymLink (862)	Create a symbolic link
Umask (871)	Set the file creation mask
UnLink (871)	Remove a file
Utime (872)	Change file timestamps

B2400 = \$000000B

B300 = \$0000007

B38400 = \$000000F

B460800 = \$0001004

B4800 = \$000000C

B50 = \$0000001

B57600 = \$0001001

Table 31.9:

Name	Description
Dup (811)	Duplicate a file handle
Dup2 (811)	Copy one file handle to another
Fcntl (818)	General file control
fdClose (819)	Close file descriptor
fdFlush (819)	Flush file descriptor
fdOpen (820)	Open new file descriptor
fdRead (821)	Read from file descriptor
fdSeek (822)	Position in file
fdTruncate (822)	Truncate file
fdWrite (823)	Write to file descriptor
GetFS (833)	Get file descriptor of pascal file
Select (853)	Wait for input from file descriptor
SelectText (855)	Wait for input from pascal file

B600 = \$0000008

B75 = \$0000002

B9600 = \$000000D

BRKINT = \$0000002

BS0 = \$0000000

BS1 = \$0002000

BSDLY = \$0002000

CBAUD = \$000100F

CBAUDEX = \$0001000

CIBAUD = \$100F0000

CLOCAL = \$0000800

CLONE\_FILES = \$00000400

Clone (807) option: open files shared between processes

CLONE\_FS = \$00000200

Clone (807) option: fs info shared between processes

CLONE\_PID = \$00001000

Clone (807) option: PID shared between processes

CLONE\_SIGHAND = \$00000800

Clone (807) option: signal handlers shared between processes

CLONE\_VM = \$00000100

Clone (807) option: VM shared between processes

CMSPAR = \$40000000

CR0 = \$00000000

CR1 = \$00000200

CR2 = \$00000400

CR3 = \$00000600

CRDLY = \$00000600

CREAD = \$00000080

CRTSCTS = \$80000000

CS5 = \$00000000

CS6 = \$00000010

CS7 = \$00000020

CS8 = \$00000030

CSIGNAL = \$000000ff

Clone (807) option: Signal mask to be sent at exit

CSize = \$0000030

CStopB = \$0000040

ECHO = \$0000008

ECHOCTL = \$0000200

ECHOE = \$0000010

ECHOK = \$0000020

ECHOKe = \$0000800

ECHONL = \$0000040

ECHOPRT = \$0000400

EXTA = B19200

EXTB = B38400

FF0 = \$0000000

FF1 = \$0008000

FFDLY = \$0008000

FIOASYNC = \$5452

FIOCLEX = \$5451

FIONBIO = \$5421

FIONCLEX = \$5450

FIONREAD = \$541B

FLUSHO = \$0001000

fs\_ext = \$137d

File system type (FSStat (828)): (ext) Extended

fs\_ext2 = \$ef53

File system type (FSStat (828)): (ext2) Second extended

fs\_iso = \$9660

File system type (FSStat (828)): ISO 9660

fs\_minix = \$137f

File system type (FSStat (828)): Minix

fs\_minix\_30 = \$138f

File system type (FSStat (828)): Minix 3.0

fs\_minux\_V2 = \$2468

File system type (FSStat (828)): Minix V2

fs\_msdos = \$4d44

File system type (FSStat (828)): MSDOS (FAT)

fs\_nfs = \$6969

File system type (FSStat (828)): NFS

fs\_old\_ext2 = \$ef51

File system type (FSStat (828)): (ext2) Old second extended

fs\_proc = \$9fa0

File system type (FSStat (828)): PROC fs

fs\_xia = \$012FD16D

File system type (FSStat (828)): XIA

F\_GetFd = 1

FCntl (818) command: Get close-on-exec flag

F\_GetFl = 3

FCntl (818) command: Get filedescriptor flags

F\_GetLk = 5

FCntl (818) command: Get lock

F\_GetOwn = 9

FCntl (818) command: get owner of filedescriptor events

F\_OK = 0

Access (799) call test: file exists.

F\_SetFd = 2

FCntl (818) command: Set close-on-exec flag

F\_SetFl = 4

FCntl (818) command: Set filedescriptor flags

F\_SetLk = 6

FCntl (818) command: Set lock

F\_SetLkW = 7

FCntl (818) command: Test lock

F\_SetOwn = 8

FCntl (818) command: Set owner of filedescriptor events

HUPCL = \$0000400

ICANON = \$0000002

ICRNL = \$0000100

IEXTEN = \$0008000

IGNBRK = \$0000001

IGNCR = \$00000080

IGNPAR = \$00000004

IMAXBEL = \$00020000

INLCR = \$00000040

INPCK = \$00000010

IOctl\_TCGETS = \$5401

**IOCTL call number: get Terminal Control settings**

ISIG = \$00000001

ISTRIP = \$00000020

IUCLC = \$00002000

IXANY = \$00008000

IXOFF = \$00010000

IXON = \$00004000

LOCK\_EX = 2

**Flock (824) Exclusive lock**

LOCK\_NB = 4

**Flock (824) Non-blocking operation**

LOCK\_SH = 1

**Flock (824) Shared lock**

LOCK\_UN = 8

**Flock (824) unlock**

MAP\_ANONYMOUS = \$20

MMap (845) map type: Don't use a file

MAP\_DENYWRITE = \$800

MMap (845) option: Ignored.

MAP\_EXECUTABLE = \$1000

MMap (845) option: Ignored.

MAP\_FIXED = \$10

MMap (845) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

MMap (845) option: Memory grows downward (like a stack)

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

MMap (845) option: lock the pages in memory.

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

MMap (845) option: Do not reserve swap pages for this memory.

MAP\_PRIVATE = 2

MMap (845) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = \$1

MMap (845) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = \$f

MMap (845) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

MINSIGSTKSZ = 2048

NCC = 8

Number of control characters in termio (795) record.

NCCS = 32

Number of control characters in termios (796) record.

NL0 = \$00000000

NL1 = \$0000100

NLDLY = \$0000100

NOFLSH = \$0000080

OCRNL = \$0000008

OFDEL = \$0000080

OFILL = \$0000040

OLCUC = \$0000002

ONLCR = \$0000004

ONLRET = \$0000020

ONOCR = \$0000010

Open\_Accmode = 3

**Bitmask to determine access mode in open flags.**

Open\_Append = 2 shl 9

**File open mode: Append to file**

Open\_Creat = 1 shl 6

**File open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.**

Open\_Direct = 4 shl 12

**File open mode: Minimize caching effects**

Open\_Directory = 2 shl 15

**File open mode: File must be directory.**

Open\_Excl = 2 shl 6

**File open mode: Open exclusively**

`Open_LargeFile = 1 shl 15`

**File open mode:** Open for 64-bit I/O

`Open_NDelay = Open_NonBlock`

**File open mode:** Alias for `Open_NonBlock` (761)

`Open_NoCtty = 4 shl 6`

**File open mode:** No TTY control.

`Open_NoFollow = 4 shl 15`

**File open mode:** Fail if file is symbolic link.

`Open_NonBlock = 4 shl 9`

**File open mode:** Open in non-blocking mode

`Open_RdOnly = 0`

**File open mode:** Read only

`Open_RdWr = 2`

**File open mode:** Read/Write

`Open_Sync = 1 shl 12`

**File open mode:** Write to disc at once

`Open_Trunc = 1 shl 9`

**File open mode:** Truncate file to length 0

`Open_WrOnly = 1`

**File open mode:** Write only

`OPOST = $0000001`

`PARENB = $0000100`

`PARMRK = $0000008`

`PARODD = $0000200`

PENDIN = \$0004000

Prio\_PGrp = 1

Get/set process group priority

Prio\_Process = 0

Get/Set process priority

Prio\_User = 2

Get/set user priority

PROT\_EXEC = \$4

MMap (845) memory access: page can be executed

PROT\_NONE = \$0

MMap (845) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = \$1

MMap (845) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = \$2

MMap (845) memory access: page can be written

P\_IN = 1

Input file descriptor of pipe pair.

P\_OUT = 2

Output file descriptor of pipe pair.

R\_OK = 4

Access (799) call test: read allowed

SA\_INTERRUPT = \$20000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOCLDSTOP = 1

Sigaction options: Do not receive notification when child processes stop

SA\_NOMASK = \$40000000

Sigaction options: Do not prevent the signal from being received when it is handled.

SA\_ONESHOT = \$80000000

Sigaction options: Restore the signal action to the default state.

SA\_ONSTACK = SA\_STACK

Socket option

SA\_RESTART = \$10000000

Sigaction options: Provide behaviour compatible with BSD signal semantics

SA\_SHIRQ = \$04000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_STACK = \$08000000

Sigaction options: Call the signal handler on an alternate signal stack.

Seek\_Cur = 1

Seek option: Set position relative to current position.

Seek\_End = 2

Seek option: Set position relative to end of file.

Seek\_set = 0

Seek option: Set absolute position.

SIGABRT = 6

Signal: ABRT (Abort)

SIGALRM = 14

Signal: ALRM (Alarm clock)

SIGBUS = 7

Signal: BUS (bus error)

SIGCHLD = 17

Signal: CHLD (child status changed)

SIGCONT = 18

Signal: CONT (Continue)

SIGFPE = 8

Signal: FPE (Floating point error)

SIGHUP = 1

Signal: HUP (Hangup)

SIGILL = 4

Signal: ILL (Illegal instruction)

SIGINT = 2

Signal: INT (Interrupt)

SIGIO = 29

Signal: IO (I/O operation possible)

SIGIOT = 6

Signal: IOT (IOT trap)

SIGKILL = 9

Signal: KILL (unblockable)

SIGPIPE = 13

Signal: PIPE (Broken pipe)

SIGPOLL = SIGIO

Signal: POLL (Pollable event)

SIGPROF = 27

Signal: PROF (Profiling alarm)

SIGPWR = 30

Signal: PWR (power failure restart)

SIGQUIT = 3

Signal: QUIT

SIGSEGV = 11

Signal: SEGV (Segmentation violation)

SIGSTKFLT = 16

Signal: STKFLT (Stack Fault)

SIGSTKSZ = 8192

Signal Stack size error

SIGSTOP = 19

Signal: STOP (Stop, unblockable)

SIGTerm = 15

Signal: TERM (Terminate)

SIGTRAP = 5

Signal: TRAP (Trace trap)

SIGTSTP = 20

Signal: TSTP (keyboard stop)

SIGTTIN = 21

Signal: TTIN (Terminal input, background)

SIGTTOU = 22

Signal: TTOU (Terminal output, background)

SIGUNUSED = 31

Signal: Unused

SIGURG = 23

Signal: URG (Socket urgent condition)

SIGUSR1 = 10

Signal: USR1 (User-defined signal 1)

SIGUSR2 = 12

Signal: USR2 (User-defined signal 2)

`SIGVTALRM = 26`

Signal: VTALRM (Virtual alarm clock)

`SIGWINCH = 28`

Signal: WINCH (Window/Terminal size change)

`SIGXCPU = 24`

Signal: XCPU (CPU limit exceeded)

`SIGXFSZ = 25`

Signal: XFSZ (File size limit exceeded)

`SIG_BLOCK = 0`

Sigprocmask flags: Add signals to the set of blocked signals.

`SIG_DFL = 0`

Signal handler: Default signal handler

`SIG_ERR = -1`

Signal handler: error

`SIG_IGN = 1`

Signal handler: Ignore signal

`SIG_SETMASK = 2`

Sigprocmask flags: Set of blocked signals is given.

`SIG_UNBLOCK = 1`

Sigprocmask flags: Remove signals from the set set of blocked signals.

`SI_PAD_SIZE = ( ( 128 / sizeof ( longint ) ) - 3 )`

Signal information record pad bytes size. Do not use.

`SS_DISABLE = 2`

Socket options

`SS_ONSTACK = 1`

Socket options

STAT\_IFBLK = \$6000

File (stat (794) record) mode: Block device

STAT\_IFCHR = \$2000

File (stat (794) record) mode: Character device

STAT\_IFDIR = \$4000

File (stat (794) record) mode: Directory

STAT\_IFIFO = \$1000

File (stat (794) record) mode: FIFO

STAT\_IFLNK = \$a000

File (stat (794) record) mode: Link

STAT\_IFMT = \$f000

File (stat (794) record) mode: File type bit mask

STAT\_IFREG = \$8000

File (stat (794) record) mode: Regular file

STAT\_IFSOCK = \$c000

File (stat (794) record) mode: Socket

STAT\_IRGRP = STAT\_IROTH shl 3

File (stat (794) record) mode: Group read permission

STAT\_IROTH = \$4

File (stat (794) record) mode: Other read permission

STAT\_IRUSR = STAT\_IROTH shl 6

File (stat (794) record) mode: Owner read permission

STAT\_IRWXG = STAT\_IRW XO shl 3

File (stat (794) record) mode: Group permission bits mask

STAT\_IRW XO = \$7

File (stat (794) record) mode: Other permission bits mask

`STAT_IRWXU = STAT_IRWXO shl 6`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Owner permission bits mask

`STAT_ISGID = $0400`

File (stat (794) record) mode: GID bit set

`STAT_ISUID = $0800`

File (stat (794) record) mode: UID bit set

`STAT_ISVTX = $0200`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Sticky bit set

`STAT_IWGRP = STAT_IWOTH shl 3`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Group write permission

`STAT_IWOTH = $2`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Other write permission

`STAT_IWUSR = STAT_IWOTH shl 6`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Owner write permission

`STAT_IXGRP = STAT_IXOTH shl 3`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Others execute permission

`STAT_IXOTH = $1`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Others execute permission

`STAT_IXUSR = STAT_IXOTH shl 6`

File (stat (794) record) mode: Others execute permission

`syscall_nr_access = 33`

`syscall_nr_acct = 51`

`syscall_nr_adjtimex = 124`

`syscall_nr_afs_syscall = 137`

`syscall_nr_alarm = 27`

`syscall_nr_bdflush = 134`

`syscall_nr_break = 17`

`syscall_nr_brk = 45`

`syscall_nr_chdir = 12`

`syscall_nr_chmod = 15`

`syscall_nr_chown = 16`

`syscall_nr_chroot = 61`

`syscall_nr_clone = 120`

`syscall_nr_close = 6`

`syscall_nr_creat = 8`

`syscall_nr_create_module = 127`

`syscall_nr_delete_module = 129`

`syscall_nr_dup = 41`

`syscall_nr_dup2 = 63`

`syscall_nr_execve = 11`

`syscall_nr_exit = 1`

`syscall_nr_fchdir = 133`

`syscall_nr_fchmod = 94`

syscall\_nr\_fchown = 95

syscall\_nr\_fcntl = 55

syscall\_nr\_fdatasync = 148

syscall\_nr\_flock = 143

syscall\_nr\_fork = 2

syscall\_nr\_fstat = 108

syscall\_nr\_fstatfs = 100

syscall\_nr\_fsync = 118

syscall\_nr\_ftime = 35

syscall\_nr\_ftruncate = 93

syscall\_nr\_getdents = 141

syscall\_nr\_getegid = 50

syscall\_nr\_geteuid = 49

syscall\_nr\_getgid = 47

syscall\_nr\_getgroups = 80

syscall\_nr\_getitimer = 105

syscall\_nr\_getpgid = 132

syscall\_nr\_getpgrp = 65

syscall\_nr\_getpid = 20

syscall\_nr\_getppid = 64

syscall\_nr\_getpriority = 96

syscall\_nr\_getresuid = 165

syscall\_nr\_getrlimit = 76

syscall\_nr\_getrusage = 77

syscall\_nr\_getsid = 147

syscall\_nr\_gettimeofday = 78

syscall\_nr\_getuid = 24

syscall\_nr\_get\_kernel\_syms = 130

syscall\_nr\_gtty = 32

syscall\_nr\_idle = 112

syscall\_nr\_init\_module = 128

syscall\_nr\_ioctl = 54

syscall\_nr\_ioperm = 101

syscall\_nr\_iopl = 110

syscall\_nr\_ipc = 117

syscall\_nr\_kill = 37

syscall\_nr\_link = 9

syscall\_nr\_lock = 53

`syscall_nr_lseek` = 19

`syscall_nr_lstat` = 107

`syscall_nr_mkdir` = 39

`syscall_nr_mknod` = 14

`syscall_nr_mlock` = 150

`syscall_nr_mlockall` = 152

`syscall_nr_mmap` = 90

`syscall_nr_modify_ldt` = 123

`syscall_nr_mount` = 21

`syscall_nr_mprotect` = 125

`syscall_nr_mpx` = 56

`syscall_nr_mremap` = 163

`syscall_nr_msync` = 144

`syscall_nr_munlock` = 151

`syscall_nr_munlockall` = 153

`syscall_nr_munmap` = 91

`syscall_nr_nanosleep` = 162

`syscall_nr_nice` = 34

`syscall_nr_oldfstat` = 28

```
syscall_nr_oldlstat = 84

syscall_nr_oldolduname = 59

syscall_nr_oldstat = 18

syscall_nr_olduname = 109

syscall_nr_open = 5

syscall_nr_pause = 29

syscall_nr_personality = 136

syscall_nr_phys = 52

syscall_nr_pipe = 42

syscall_nr_poll = 168

syscall_nr_prof = 44

syscall_nr_profil = 98

syscall_nr_ptrace = 26

syscall_nr_query_module = 167

syscall_nr_quotactl = 131

syscall_nr_read = 3

syscall_nr_readdir = 89

syscall_nr_readlink = 85

syscall_nr_readv = 145
```

`syscall_nr_reboot = 88`

`syscall_nr_rename = 38`

`syscall_nr_rmdir = 40`

`syscall_nr_sched_getparam = 155`

`syscall_nr_sched_getscheduler = 157`

`syscall_nr_sched_get_priority_max = 159`

`syscall_nr_sched_get_priority_min = 160`

`syscall_nr_sched_rr_get_interval = 161`

`syscall_nr_sched_setparam = 154`

`syscall_nr_sched_setscheduler = 156`

`syscall_nr_sched_yield = 158`

`syscall_nr_select = 82`

`syscall_nr_setdomainname = 121`

`syscall_nr_setfsgid = 139`

`syscall_nr_setfsuid = 138`

`syscall_nr_setgid = 46`

`syscall_nr_setgroups = 81`

`syscall_nr_sethostname = 74`

`syscall_nr_setitimer = 104`

syscall\_nr\_setpgid = 57

syscall\_nr\_setpriority = 97

syscall\_nr\_setregid = 71

syscall\_nr\_setresuid = 164

syscall\_nr\_setreuid = 70

syscall\_nr\_setrlimit = 75

syscall\_nr\_setsid = 66

syscall\_nr\_settimeofday = 79

syscall\_nr\_setuid = 23

syscall\_nr\_setup = 0

syscall\_nr\_sgetmask = 68

syscall\_nr\_sigaction = 67

syscall\_nr\_sigaltstack = 186

syscall\_nr\_signal = 48

syscall\_nr\_sigpending = 73

syscall\_nr\_sigprocmask = 126

syscall\_nr\_sigreturn = 119

syscall\_nr\_sigsuspend = 72

syscall\_nr\_socketcall = 102

`syscall_nr_ssetmask = 69`

`syscall_nr_stat = 106`

`syscall_nr_statfs = 99`

`syscall_nr_stime = 25`

`syscall_nr_stty = 31`

`syscall_nr_swapoff = 115`

`syscall_nr_swapon = 87`

`syscall_nr_symlink = 83`

`syscall_nr_sync = 36`

`syscall_nr_sysfs = 135`

`syscall_nr_sysinfo = 116`

`syscall_nr_syslog = 103`

`syscall_nr_time = 13`

`syscall_nr_times = 43`

`syscall_nr_truncate = 92`

`syscall_nr_ulimit = 58`

`syscall_nr_umask = 60`

`syscall_nr_umount = 22`

`syscall_nr_uname = 122`

syscall\_nr\_unlink = 10

syscall\_nr\_uselib = 86

syscall\_nr\_ustat = 62

syscall\_nr\_utime = 30

syscall\_nr\_vhangup = 111

syscall\_nr\_vm86 = 166

syscall\_nr\_vm86old = 113

syscall\_nr\_wait4 = 114

syscall\_nr\_waitpid = 7

syscall\_nr\_write = 4

syscall\_nr\_writev = 146

syscall\_nr\_\_llseek = 140

syscall\_nr\_\_newselect = 142

syscall\_nr\_\_sysctl = 149

Sys\_E2BIG = 7

Sys\_EACCES = 13

Sys\_EADDRINUSE = 98

Sys\_EADDRNOTAVAIL = 99

Sys\_EADV = 68

Sys\_EAFNOSUPPORT = 97

Sys\_EAGAIN = 11

Sys\_EALREADY = 114

Sys\_EBADE = 52

Sys\_EBADF = 9

Sys\_EBADFD = 77

Sys\_EBADMSG = 74

Sys\_EBADR = 53

Sys\_EBADRQC = 56

Sys\_EBADSLT = 57

Sys\_EBFONT = 59

Sys\_EBUSY = 16

Sys\_ECHILD = 10

Sys\_ECHRNG = 44

Sys\_ECOMM = 70

Sys\_ECONNABORTED = 103

Sys\_ECONNREFUSED = 111

Sys\_ECONNRESET = 104

Sys\_EDEADLK = 35

Sys\_EDEADLOCK = 58

Sys\_EDESTADDRREQ = 89

Sys\_EDOM = 33

Sys\_EDOTDOT = 73

Sys\_EDQUOT = 122

Sys\_EEXIST = 17

Sys\_EFAULT = 14

Sys\_EFBIG = 27

Sys\_EHOSTDOWN = 112

Sys\_EHOSTUNREACH = 113

Sys\_EIDRM = 43

Sys\_EILSEQ = 84

Sys\_EINPROGRESS = 115

Sys\_EINTR = 4

Sys\_EINVAL = 22

Sys\_EIO = 5

Sys\_EISCONN = 106

Sys\_EISDIR = 21

Sys\_EISNAM = 120

Sys\_EL2HLT = 51

Sys\_EL2NSYNC = 45

Sys\_EL3HLT = 46

Sys\_EL3RST = 47

Sys\_ELIBACC = 79

Sys\_ELIBBAD = 80

Sys\_ELIBEXEC = 83

Sys\_ELIBMAX = 82

Sys\_ELIBSCN = 81

Sys\_ELN RNG = 48

Sys\_ELOOP = 40

Sys\_EMFILE = 24

Sys\_EMLINK = 31

Sys\_EMMSGSIZE = 90

Sys\_EMULTIHOP = 72

Sys\_ENAMETOOLONG = 36

Sys\_ENAVAIL = 119

Sys\_ENETDOWN = 100

Sys\_ENETRESET = 102

Sys\_ENETUNREACH = 101

Sys\_ENFILE = 23

Sys\_ENOANO = 55

Sys\_ENOBUFS = 105

Sys\_ENOCSI = 50

Sys\_ENODATA = 61

Sys\_ENODEV = 19

Sys\_ENOENT = 2

Sys\_ENOEXEC = 8

Sys\_ENOLCK = 37

Sys\_ENOLINK = 67

Sys\_ENOMEM = 12

Sys\_ENOMSG = 42

Sys\_ENONET = 64

Sys\_ENOPKG = 65

Sys\_ENOPROTOOPT = 92

Sys\_ENOSPC = 28

Sys\_ENOSR = 63

Sys\_ENOSTR = 60

Sys\_ENOSYS = 38

Sys\_ENOTBLK = 15

Sys\_ENOTCONN = 107

Sys\_ENOTDIR = 20

Sys\_ENOTEMPTY = 39

Sys\_ENOTNAM = 118

Sys\_ENOTSOCK = 88

Sys\_ENOTTY = 25

Sys\_ENOTUNIQ = 76

Sys\_ENXIO = 6

Sys\_EOPNOTSUPP = 95

Sys\_EOVERFLOW = 75

Sys\_EPERM = 1

Sys\_EPFNOSUPPORT = 96

Sys\_EPIPE = 32

Sys\_EPROTO = 71

Sys\_EPROTONOSUPPORT = 93

Sys\_EPROTOTYPE = 91

Sys\_ERANGE = 34

Sys\_EREMCHG = 78

Sys\_EREMOTE = 66

Sys\_EREMOTEIO = 121

Sys\_ERESTART = 85

Sys\_EROFS = 30

Sys\_ERROR\_MAX = \$fff

Sys\_ESHUTDOWN = 108

Sys\_ESOCKTNOSUPPORT = 94

Sys\_ESPIPE = 29

Sys\_ESRCH = 3

Sys\_ESRMNT = 69

Sys\_ESTALE = 116

Sys ESTRPIPE = 86

Sys\_ETIME = 62

Sys\_ETIMEDOUT = 110

Sys\_ETOOMANYREFS = 109

Sys\_ETXTBSY = 26

Sys\_EUCLEAN = 117

Sys\_EUNATCH = 49

Sys\_EUSERS = 87

Sys\_EWOULDBLOCK = Sys\_EAGAIN

Sys\_EXDEV = 18

Sys\_EXFULL = 54

TAB0 = \$00000000

TAB1 = \$00008000

TAB2 = \$00010000

TAB3 = \$00018000

TABDLY = \$00018000

TCFLSH = \$540B

TCGETA = \$5405

TCGETS = \$5401

TCIFLUSH = 0

TCIOFF = 2

TCIOFLUSH = 2

TCION = 3

TCOFLUSH = 1

TCOOFF = 0

TCOON = 1

TCSADRAIN = 1

TCSAFLUSH = 2

TCSANOW = 0

TCSBRK = \$5409

TCSBRKP = \$5425

TCSETA = \$5406

TCSETAF = \$5408

TCSETAW = \$5407

TCSETS = \$5402

TCSETSF = \$5404

TCSETSW = \$5403

TCXONC = \$540A

TIOCCONS = \$541D

TIOCEXCL = \$540C

TIOCGETD = \$5424

TIOCGICOUNT = \$545D

TIOCGLOCKTRMIOS = \$5456

TIOCGPGRP = \$540F

TIOCGSERIAL = \$541E

TIOCGSOFTCAR = \$5419

TIOCGWINSZ = \$5413

TIOCINQ = FIONREAD

TIOCLINUX = \$541C

TIOCMBIC = \$5417

TIOCMBIS = \$5416

TIOCMGET = \$5415

TIOCMWAIT = \$545C

TIOCMSET = \$5418

TIOCM\_CAR = \$040

TIOCM\_CD = TIOCM\_CAR

TIOCM\_CTS = \$020

TIOCM\_DSR = \$100

TIOCM\_DTR = \$002

TIOCM\_LE = \$001

TIOCM\_OUT1 = \$2000

TIOCM\_OUT2 = \$4000

TIOCM\_RI = TIOCM\_RNG

TIOCM\_RNG = \$080

TIOCM\_RTS = \$004

TIOCM\_SR = \$010

TIOCM\_ST = \$008

TIOCNOTTY = \$5422

TIOCNXCL = \$540D

TIOCOUTQ = \$5411

TIOCPKT = \$5420

TIOCPKT\_DATA = 0

TIOCPKT\_DOSTOP = 32

TIOCPKT\_FLUSHREAD = 1

TIOCPKT\_FLUSHWRITE = 2

TIOCPKT\_NOSTOP = 16

TIOCPKT\_START = 8

TIOCPKT\_STOP = 4

TIOCSCTTY = \$540E

TIOCSEERCONFIG = \$5453

TIOCSEERGETLSR = \$5459

TIOCSEERGETMULTI = \$545A

TIOCSEERGSTRUCT = \$5458

TIOCSERGWILD = \$5454

TIOCSERSETMULTI = \$545B

TIOCSERSWILD = \$5455

TIOCSETD = \$5423

TIOCSLCKTRMIOS = \$5457

TIOCSPPGRP = \$5410

TIOCSSERIAL = \$541F

TIOCSSOFTCAR = \$541A

TIOCSTI = \$5412

TIOCSWINSZ = \$5414

TIOCTTYGSTRUCT = \$5426

TOSTOP = \$0000100

VDISCARD = 13

VEOF = 4

VEOL = 11

VEOL2 = 16

VERASE = 2

VINTR = 0

VKILL = 3

VLNEXT = 15

VMIN = 6

VQUIT = 1

VREPRINT = 12

VSTART = 8

VSTOP = 9

VSUSP = 10

VSWTC = 7

VT0 = \$00000000

VT1 = \$00040000

VTDLY = \$00040000

VTIME = 5

VWERASE = 14

Wait\_Any = -1

**WaitPID (873):** Wait on any process

Wait\_Clone = \$80000000

**WaitPID (873):** Wait on clone processes only.

Wait\_MyPGRP = 0

**WaitPID (873):** Wait processes from current process group

Wait\_NoHang = 1

**WaitPID (873):** Do not wait

Wait\_UnTraced = 2

WaitPID (873): Also report stopped but untraced processes

WNOHANG = \$1

Waitpid (873) option: Do not wait for processes to terminate.

WUNTRACED = \$2

Waitpid (873) option: Also report children which were stopped but not yet reported

W\_OK = 2

Access (799) call test: write allowed

XCASE = \$00000004

XTABS = \$0001800

X\_OK = 1

Access (799) call test: execute allowed

\_\_WCLONE = \$80000000

Waitpid option: Wait for clone children only

### 31.11.2 Types

ComStr =

Command-line string type.

dev\_t = Word

Device descriptor type

```
dirent = packed record
  ino : LongInt;
  off : LongInt;
  reclen : Word;
  name : Array[0..255] of Char;
end
```

Record used in the ReadDir (851) function to return files in a directory.

DirStr =

Filename directory part string type.

ExtStr =

Filename extension part string type.

fdSet = Array[0..7] of LongInt

Array containing file descriptor bitmask for the Select (853) call.

NameStr =

Filename name part string type.

PathStr =

Filename path part string type.

PDir = ^TDir

Pointer to TDir (795) record

pdirent = ^dirent

Pointer to Dirent (790) record.

pfdsset = ^fdSet

Pointer to FDSet (823) array.

pfpstate = ^tfpstate

Pointer to tfpstate (796) record.

pglob = ^tglob

Pointer to TGlob (796) record.

PSigActionRec = ^SigActionRec

Pointer to SigActionRec (793) record.

PSigAltStack = ^SigAltStack

Pointer to SigAltStack (793) record

PSigContextRec = ^SigContextRec

Pointer to SigContextRec (793) record

PSignalHandler = ^SignalHandler

Pointer to SignalHandler (793) type.

```
PSignalRestorer = ^SignalRestorer
```

Pointer to SignalRestorer (793) type

```
PSigSet = ^SigSet
```

Pointer to signal set.

```
pstack_t = ^stack_t
```

Pointer to stack\_t (794) record

```
PStat = ^Stat
```

Pointer to Stat (794) record.

```
PStatFS = ^Statfs
```

Pointer to StatFS (794) record.

```
PSysCallRegs = ^SysCallRegs
```

Pointer to SysCallRegs (795) record.

```
PSysInfo = ^TSysinfo
```

Pointer to TSysInfo (798) record.

```
ptimeval = ^timeval
```

Pointer to TTimeVal (798) record

```
ptimezone = ^timezone
```

Pointer to TimeZone (797) record.

```
PUTimeBuf = ^UTimeBuf
```

Pointer to UTimeBuf (798) record

```
PUTSName = ^utsname
```

Pointer to UTSName (799) record.

```
SigActionRec = packed record
  Handler : record
  end;
  Sa_Mask : SigSet;
  Sa_Flags : LongInt;
  Sa_restorer : SignalRestorer;
end
```

Record used in SigAction (857) call.

```
SigAltStack = record
  ss_sp : pointer;
  ss_flags : LongInt;
  ss_size : Size_T;
end
```

Alternate stack registers record

```
SigContextRec = record
  gs : Word;
  __gsh : Word;
  fs : Word;
  __fsh : Word;
  es : Word;
  __esh : Word;
  ds : Word;
  __dsh : Word;
  edi : cardinal;
  esi : cardinal;
  ebp : cardinal;
  esp : cardinal;
  ebx : cardinal;
  edx : cardinal;
  ecx : cardinal;
  eax : cardinal;
  trapno : cardinal;
  err : cardinal;
  eip : cardinal;
  cs : Word;
  __csh : Word;
  eflags : cardinal;
  esp_at_signal : cardinal;
  ss : Word;
  __ssh : Word;
  fpstate : pfpstate;
  oldmask : cardinal;
  cr2 : cardinal;
end
```

The above records contain information about the processor state and process state at the moment a signal is sent to your program.

```
SignalHandler = procedure(Sig: LongInt)
```

Function prototype for the Signal (858) call.

```
SignalRestorer = procedure
```

Signal restorer function prototype

SigSet = LongInt

Signal set type

Size\_T = cardinal

Size type

stack\_t = SigAltStack

Alias for SigAltStack ([793](#)) type

```
Stat = packed record
  dev : dev_t;
  pad1 : Word;
  ino : LongInt;
  mode : Word;
  nlink : Word;
  uid : Word;
  gid : Word;
  rdev : dev_t;
  pad2 : Word;
  size : LongInt;
  blksize : LongInt;
  blocks : LongInt;
  atime : LongInt;
  unused1 : LongInt;
  mtime : LongInt;
  unused2 : LongInt;
  ctime : LongInt;
  unused3 : LongInt;
  unused4 : LongInt;
  unused5 : LongInt;
end
```

Record describing an inode (file) in the fstat ([829](#)) call.

```
Statfs = packed record
  fstype : LongInt;
  bsize : LongInt;
  blocks : LongInt;
  bfree : LongInt;
  bavail : LongInt;
  files : LongInt;
  ffree : LongInt;
  fsid : LongInt;
  namelen : LongInt;
  spare : Array[0..6] of LongInt;
end
```

Record describing a file system in the fsstat ([828](#)) call.

```

SysCallRegs = record
  reg1 : LongInt;
  reg2 : LongInt;
  reg3 : LongInt;
  reg4 : LongInt;
  reg5 : LongInt;
  reg6 : LongInt;
end

```

Register describing system calls.

```

TCloneFunc = function(args: pointer) : LongInt

```

Clone function prototype.

```

TDir = packed record
  fd : Integer;
  loc : LongInt;
  size : Integer;
  buf : dirent;
  nextoff : LongInt;
  dd_max : Integer;
  lock : pointer;
end

```

Record used in [OpenDir \(849\)](#) and [ReadDir \(851\)](#) calls

```

TDirEnt = dirent

```

Alias for [DirEnt \(790\)](#) record

```

Termio = packed record
  c_iflag : Word;
  c_oflag : Word;
  c_cflag : Word;
  c_lflag : Word;
  c_line : Word;
  c_cc : Array[0..NCC-1] of Char;
end

```

Terminal I/O description record (small)

```

Termios = record
  c_iflag : Cardinal;
  c_oflag : Cardinal;
  c_cflag : Cardinal;
  c_lflag : Cardinal;
  c_line : Char;
  c_cc : Array[0..NCCS-1] of Byte;

```

```

    c_ispeed : LongInt;
    c_ospeed : LongInt;
end

```

Terminal I/O description record

```
TFDSet = fdSet
```

Alias for FDSets (823) type.

```

tfpreg = record
    significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
    exponent : Word;
end

```

Record describing floating point register in signal handler.

```

tfpstate = record
    cw : cardinal;
    sw : cardinal;
    tag : cardinal;
    ipoff : cardinal;
    cssel : cardinal;
    dataoff : cardinal;
    datasel : cardinal;
    st : Array[0..7] of tfpreg;
    status : cardinal;
end

```

Record describing floating point unit in signal handler.

```

tglob = record
    name : pchar;
    next : pglob;
end

```

Record containing one entry in the result of Glob (838)

```

timespec = packed record
    tv_sec : LongInt;
    tv_nsec : LongInt;
end

```

Time interval for the NanoSleep (847) function.

```

timeval = packed record
    sec : LongInt;
    usec : LongInt;
end

```

Record specifying a time interval.

```
timezone = packed record
  minuteswest : LongInt;
  dsttime : LongInt;
end
```

Record describing a timezone

```
tmapargs = record
  address : LongInt;
  size : LongInt;
  prot : LongInt;
  flags : LongInt;
  fd : LongInt;
  offset : LongInt;
end
```

Record containing mmap args.

```
Tpipe = Array[1..2] of LongInt
```

Array describing a pipe pair of filedescriptors.

```
TSigAction = procedure(Sig: LongInt; SigContext: SigContextRec)
```

Function prototype for SigAction (857) call.

```
TStat = Stat
```

Alias for Stat (794) record.

```
TStatFS = Statfs
```

Alias for StatFS (794) type.

```
TSysCallRegs = SysCallRegs
```

Alias for SysCallRegs (795) record

```
TSysinfo = packed record
  uptime : LongInt;
  loads : Array[1..3] of LongInt;
  totalram : LongInt;
  freeram : LongInt;
  sharedram : LongInt;
  bufferram : LongInt;
  totalswap : LongInt;
  freeswap : LongInt;
  procs : Integer;
  s : String;
end
```

Record with system information, used by the SysInfo (863) call.

```
TTermio = Termio
```

Alias for TermIO (795) record

```
TTermios = Termios
```

Alias for Termios (796) record.

```
TTimeVal = timeval
```

Alias for TimeVal (797) record.

```
TTimeZone = timezone
```

Alias for TimeZone (797) record.

```
TUTimeBuf = UTimeBuf
```

Alias for UTimBuf (798) record.

```
TUTSName = utsname
```

Alias for UTSName (799) record.

```
TWinSize = winsize
```

Alias for WinSize (799) record.

```
UTimBuf = packed record
  actime : LongInt;
  modtime : LongInt;
end
```

Record used in Utime (872) to set file access and modification times.

```
UTimeBuf = UTimBuf
```

Alias for UTimBuf (798) record.

```
utsname = packed record
  sysname : Array[0..64] of Char;
  nodename : Array[0..64] of Char;
  release : Array[0..64] of Char;
  version : Array[0..64] of Char;
  machine : Array[0..64] of Char;
  domainname : Array[0..64] of Char;
end
```

The elements of this record are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly.

```
winsize = packed record
  ws_row : Word;
  ws_col : Word;
  ws_xpixel : Word;
  ws_ypixel : Word;
end
```

Record describing terminal window size.

### 31.11.3 Variables

`ErrNo` : LongInt

Error number of last operation.

`LinuxError` : LongInt

`Linuxerror` is the variable in which the procedures in the linux unit report errors.

`tzdaylight` : Boolean

Indicates whether daylight savings time is active.

`tzname` : Array[boolean] of pchar

Timezone name.

`tzseconds` : LongInt

Seconds west of GMT

## 31.12 Procedures and functions

### 31.12.1 Access

Synopsis: Check file access

Declaration: `function Access(Path: PathStr; mode: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Access` tests user's access rights on the specified file. `Mode` is a mask existing of one or more of the following:

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**File exists.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If access is denied, or an error occurred, `False` is returned.

**Errors:** `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_eaccess** The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval** Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop** `Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `Chown` (806), `Chmod` (805)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Access function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**begin**

**if** `Access ( '/etc/passwd', W_OK )` **then**

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Better check your system.' );

**WriteLn** ( 'I can write to the /etc/passwd file !' );

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 31.12.2 Alarm

**Synopsis:** Schedule an alarm signal to be delivered

**Declaration:** `function Alarm(Sec: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Alarm` schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in `Sec` seconds. When `Sec` seconds have elapsed, Linux will send a `SIGALRM` signal to the current process. If `Sec` is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of `Sec`, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none.

See also: `SigAction` (857)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** `Example59`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Procedure** `AlarmHandler(Sig : longint); cdecl`;

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Got to alarm handler' );
end;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Setting alarm handler' );
  Signal (SIGALRM, @AlarmHandler);
  Writeln ( 'Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds' );
  Alarm (10);
  Writeln ( 'Pausing' );
  Pause;
  Writeln ( 'Pause returned' );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.3 AssignPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

Declaration: `function AssignPipe (var pipe_in: LongInt; var pipe_out: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function AssignPipe (var pipe_in: text; var pipe_out: text) : Boolean`  
`function AssignPipe (var pipe_in: File; var pipe_out: File) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to `Pipe_out`, can be read from `Pipe_in`.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual `Readln (Pipe_in, ...)` and `Writeln (Pipe_out, ...)` procedures.

The function returns `True` if everything went successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case the function fails and returns `False`, `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` ([850](#)), `MkFifo` ([845](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** `Example36`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `pipi, pipo : Text`;  
`s : String`;

**begin**  
`Writeln ( 'Assigning Pipes.' );`  
`If Not assignpipe (pipi, pipo) then`

---

```

    Writeln('Error assigning pipes !',LinuxError);
    Writeln ('Writing to pipe, and flushing. ');
    Writeln (pipo,'This is a textstring');close(pipo);
    Writeln ('Reading from pipe. ');
    While not eof(pipi) do
    begin
        Readln (pipi,s);
        Writeln ('Read from pipe : ',s);
    end;
    close (pipi);
    writeln ('Closed pipes. ');
    writeln
end.

```

---

### 31.12.4 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign stream for in and output to a program

Declaration: `function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text;var Streamout: text; const Prog: String) : LongInt`  
`function AssignStream(var StreamIn: Text;var StreamOut: Text; var StreamErr: Text;const prog: String) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: AssignStream creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output,(and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of Prog. Prog is the name of a program (including path) with options, which will be executed.

What is written to StreamOut, will go to the standard input of Prog. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard output can be read from StreamIn. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard error read from StreamErr, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual Readln(StreamIn,...) and Writeln (StreamOut,...) procedures.

**Remark:** You should *not* use Reset or Rewrite on a file opened with POpen. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

Errors: In case of error (return value -1) LinuxError is used to report errors:

**sys\_emfile**Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile**The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the fork and exec programs

See also: AssignPipe ([801](#)), POpen ([850](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

---

```

Var Si,So : Text;
    S : String;
    i : longint;

begin
  if not (paramstr(1)='-son') then
    begin
      Writeln ('Calling son');
      Assignstream (Si,So,'./ex38 -son');
      if linuxerror<>0 then
        begin
          writeln ('AssignStream failed !');
          halt(1);
        end;
      Writeln ('Speaking to son');
      For i:=1 to 10 do
        begin
          writeln (so,'Hello son !');
          if ioresult<>0 then writeln ('Can''t speak to son...');
        end;
      For i:=1 to 3 do writeln (so,'Hello chap !');
      close (so);
      while not eof(si) do
        begin
          readln (si,s);
          writeln ('Father: Son said : ',S);
        end;
      Writeln ('Stopped conversation');
      Close (Si);
      Writeln ('Put down phone');
    end
  Else
    begin
      Writeln ('This is the son ');
      While not eof (input) do
        begin
          readln (s);
          if pos ('Hello son !',S)<>0 then
            Writeln ('Hello Dad !')
          else
            writeln ('Who are you ?');
          end;
        close (output);
      end
    end
end.

```

---

### 31.12.5 Basename

Synopsis: Return basename of a file

Declaration: `function Basename(const path: PathStr;const suf: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the filename part of `Path`, stripping off `Suf` if it exists. The filename part is the whole name if `Path` contains no slash, or the part of `Path` after the last slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: [DirName \(810\)](#), [FExpand \(824\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BaseName function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

S:=FExpand(**Paramstr**(0));

**WriteLn** ( 'This program is called : ', Basename(S, ''));

**end.**

---

### 31.12.6 CFMakeRaw

Synopsis: Sets flags in Termios ([796](#)) record.

Declaration: `procedure CFMakeRaw(var tios: Termios)`

Visibility: default

Description: CFMakeRaw sets the flags in the Termios structure Tios to a state so that the terminal will function in Raw Mode.

For an example, see TCGetAttr ([868](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: [CFSetOSpeed \(804\)](#), [CFSetISpeed \(804\)](#)

### 31.12.7 CFSetISpeed

Synopsis: Set input baud rate in Termios ([796](#)) record

Declaration: `procedure CFSetISpeed(var tios: Termios; speed: Cardinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: CFSetISpeed Sets the input baudrate in the TermIOS structure Tios to Speed.

Errors: None.

See also: [CFSetOSpeed \(804\)](#), [CFMakeRaw \(804\)](#)

### 31.12.8 CFSetOSpeed

Synopsis: Set output baud rate in Termios ([796](#)) record

Declaration: `procedure CFSetOSpeed(var tios: Termios; speed: Cardinal)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CFSetOSpeed` Sets the output baudrate in the `Termios` structure `Tios` to `Speed`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `CFSetISpeed` (804), `CFMakeRaw` (804)

### 31.12.9 Chmod

**Synopsis:** Change file permission bits

**Declaration:** `function Chmod(path: PathStr;Newmode: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Chmod` Sets the Mode bits of the file in `Path` to `NewMode`. `Newmode` can be specified by 'or'-ing the following:

- `S_ISUID`Set user ID on execution.
- `S_ISGID`Set Group ID on execution.
- `S_ISVTX`Set sticky bit.
- `S_IRUSR`Read by owner.
- `S_IWUSR`Write by owner.
- `S_IXUSR`Execute by owner.
- `S_IRGRP`Read by group.
- `S_IWGRP`Write by group.
- `S_IXGRP`Execute by group.
- `S_IROTH`Read by others.
- `S_IWOTH`Write by others.
- `S_IXOTH`Execute by others.
- `S_IRWXO`Read, write, execute by others.
- `S_IRWXG`Read, write, execute by groups.
- `S_IRWXU`Read, write, execute by user.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**See also:** `Chown` (806), `Access` (799), `Octal` (848)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex23.pp`

---

```

Program Example23;

{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var F : Text;

begin
  { Create a file }
  Assign (f, 'testex21');
  Rewrite (F);
  WriteLn (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  WriteLn (f, 'echo Some text for this file');
  Close (F);
  { Octal() makes the correct number from a
    number that LOOKS octal }
  Chmod ('testex21', octal (777));
  { File is now executable }
  execl ( './testex21' );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.10 Chown

Synopsis: Change owner of file

Declaration: `function Chown(path: PathStr; NewUid: LongInt; NewGid: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Chown sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in Path to NewUid, NewGid The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: Chmod ([805](#)), Access ([799](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex24.pp

---

```

Program Example24;

{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function. }

Uses oldlinux;

```

```

Var UID,GID : Longint;
      F : Text;

begin

  Writeln ('This will only work if you are root. ');
  Write ('Enter a UID : '); readln(UID);
  Write ('Enter a GID : '); readln(GID);
  Assign (f, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (f);
  Writeln (f, 'The owner of this file should become : ');
  Writeln (f, 'UID : ',UID);
  Writeln (f, 'GID : ',GID);
  Close (F);
  if not Chown ('test.txt',UID,GID) then
    if LinuxError=Sys_EPERM then
      Writeln ('You are not root !')
    else
      Writeln ('Chmod failed with exit code : ',LinuxError)
    else
      Writeln ('Changed owner successfully !');
end.

```

---

### 31.12.11 Clone

**Synopsis:** Clone current process (create new thread)

**Declaration:** `function Clone(func: TCloneFunc; sp: pointer; flags: LongInt; args: pointer) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Clone` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process, just like `Fork` (826) does. In difference with `Fork`, however, the child process shares some parts of it's execution context with its parent, so it is suitable for the implementation of threads: many instances of a program that share the same memory.

When the child process is created, it starts executing the function `Func`, and passes it `Args`. The return value of `Func` is either the explicit return value of the function, or the exit code of the child process.

The `sp` pointer points to the memory reserved as stack space for the child process. This address should be the top of the memory block to be used as stack.

The `Flags` determine the behaviour of the `Clone` call. The low byte of the `Flags` contains the number of the signal that will be sent to the parent when the child dies. This may be bitwise OR'ed with the following constants:

**CLONE\_VM**Parent and child share the same memory space, including memory (un)mapped with subsequent `mmap` calls.

**CLONE\_FS**Parent and child have the same view of the filesystem; the `chroot`, `chdir` and `umask` calls affect both processes.

**CLONE\_FILES**the file descriptor table of parent and child is shared.

**CLONE\_SIGHAND**the parent and child share the same table of signal handlers. The signal masks are different, though.

**CLONE\_PID**Parent and child have the same process ID.

Clone returns the process ID in the parent process, and -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Too many processes are running.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: Fork ([826](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex71.pp

---

```

program TestC{clone};

uses
    oldlinux , Errors , crt;

const
    Ready : Boolean = false;
    aChar : Char    = 'a';

function CloneProc( Arg: Pointer ): LongInt; Cdecl;
begin
    WriteLn('Hello from the clone ',PChar(Arg));
    repeat
        Write(aChar);
        Select(0,Nil,Nil,Nil,Nil);
    until Ready;
    WriteLn('Clone finished. ');
    CloneProc := 1;
end;

var
    PID : LongInt;

procedure MainProc;
begin
    WriteLn('cloned process PID: ', PID );
    WriteLn('Press <ESC> to kill ... ');
    repeat
        Write(' ');
        Select(0,Nil,Nil,Nil,Nil);
        if KeyPressed then
            case ReadKey of
                #27: Ready := true;
                'a': aChar := 'A';
                'A': aChar := 'a';
                'b': aChar := 'b';
                'B': aChar := 'B';
            end;
        until Ready;
    WriteLn('Ready. ');
end;

const
    StackSize = 16384;
    theFlags = CLONE_VM+CLONE_FS+CLONE_FILES+CLONE_SIGHAND;

```

---

```

aMsg      : PChar = 'Oops !';

var
  theStack : Pointer;
  ExitStat : LongInt;

begin
  GetMem(theStack, StackSize);
  PID := Clone(@CloneProc,
               Pointer( LongInt(theStack)+StackSize),
               theFlags,
               aMsg);
  if PID < 0 then
    WriteLn('Error : ', LinuxError, ' when cloning.')
  else
    begin
      MainProc;
      case WaitPID(0, @ExitStat, Wait_Untraced or wait_clone) of
        -1: WriteLn('error: ', LinuxError, '; ', StrError(LinuxError));
        0: WriteLn('error: ', LinuxError, '; ', StrError(LinuxError));
      else
        WriteLn('Clone exited with: ', ExitStat shr 8);
      end;
    end;
  FreeMem( theStack, StackSize );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.12 CloseDir

Synopsis: Close directory file descriptor

Declaration: `function CloseDir(p: PDir) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseDir` closes the directory pointed to by `p`. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

For an example, see `OpenDir` ([849](#)).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `OpenDir` ([849](#)), `ReadDir` ([851](#)), `SeekDir` ([853](#)), `TellDir` ([870](#))

### 31.12.13 CreateShellArgV

Synopsis: Create an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function CreateShellArgV(const prog: String) : ppchar`  
`function CreateShellArgV(const prog: Ansistring) : ppchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateShellArgV` creates an array of 3 `PChar` pointers that can be used as arguments to `ExecVE` the first elements in the array will contain `/bin/sh`, the second will contain `-c`, and the third will contain `prog`.

The function returns a pointer to this array, of type `PPChar`.

Errors: None.

See also: Shell ([856](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex61.pp

---

```

Program ex61;

{ Example program to demonstrate the CreateShellArgV function }

uses oldlinux;

Var
  S: String;
  PP : PPchar;
  I : longint;

begin
  S:= 'script -a -b -c -d -e fghijk';
  PP:=CreateShellArgV(S);
  I:=0;
  If PP<>Nil then
    While PP[I]<>Nil do
      begin
        WriteLn ( 'Got : " ',PP[I], '" ');
        Inc(I);
      end;
    end.

```

---

### 31.12.14 Dirname

Synopsis: Extract directory part from filename

Declaration: `function Dirname(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the directory part of `Path`. The directory is the part of `Path` before the last slash, or empty if there is no slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: BaseName ([803](#)), FExpand ([824](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex47.pp

---

```

Program Example47;

{ Program to demonstrate the DirName function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var S : String;

begin
  S:=FExpand(Paramstr(0));
  WriteLn ( 'This program is in directory : ',Dirname(S));
end.

```

---

### 31.12.15 Dup

Synopsis: Duplicate a file handle

Declaration: `function Dup(oldfile: LongInt;var newfile: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Dup(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : Boolean`  
`function Dup(var oldfile: File;var newfile: File) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Makes `NewFile` an exact copy of `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in case it is a `Text` file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the `dup` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns `False` in case of an error, `True` if successful.

Errors: In case of errors, `Linuxerror` is used to report errors.

`sys_ebadf``OldFile` hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile`Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `Dup2` ([811](#))

Listing: `./olinuxex/ex31.pp`

program `Example31` ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }*

uses `oldlinux` ;

var `f` : `text` ;

begin

  if not `dup (output,f)` then

`Writeln ('Dup Failed !')` ;

`writeln ('This is written to stdout.')` ;

`writeln (f,'This is written to the dup file , and flushed')` ;`flush(f)` ;

`writeln`

end.

### 31.12.16 Dup2

Synopsis: Duplicate one filehandle to another

Declaration: `function Dup2(oldfile: LongInt;newfile: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Dup2(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : Boolean`  
`function Dup2(var oldfile: File;var newfile: File) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Makes `NewFile` an exact copy of `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in the case of `text` or untyped files.

`NewFile` can be an assigned file. If `newfile` was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the `dup2` call in C. The internal Pascal

buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an lseek will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a lseek will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns `True` if succesful, false otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `Linuxerror` is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**OldFile hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile**Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: Dup ([811](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex32.pp

---

```

program Example31 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }

uses oldlinux ;

var f : text ;
    i : longint ;

begin
  Assign ( f , 'text.txt' ) ;
  Rewrite ( F ) ;
  For i:=1 to 10 do writeln ( F , 'Line : ', i ) ;
  if not dup2 ( output , f ) then
    Writeln ( 'Dup2 Failed !' ) ;
  writeln ( 'This is written to stdout.' ) ;
  writeln ( f , 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed' ) ;
  flush ( f ) ;
  writeln ;
  { Remove file . Comment this if you want to check flushing . }
  Unlink ( 'text.txt' ) ;
end.

```

---

### 31.12.17 EpochToLocal

Synopsis: Convert epoch time to local time

Declaration: `procedure EpochToLocal (epoch: LongInt; var year: Word; var month: Word; var day: Word; var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone ) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timzeone settings of your system.

Errors: None

See also: GetEpochTime ([832](#)), LocalToEpoch ([842](#)), GetTime ([837](#)), GetDate ([830](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex3.pp

---

```

Program Example3;

{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : Word;

begin
  EpochToLocal ( GetEpochTime, Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds );
  Writeln ( 'Current date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4 );
  Writeln ( 'Current time : ', Hour:2, ': ', minute:2, ': ', seconds:2 );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.18 Execl

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list)

**Declaration:** `procedure Execl(const Todo: String)`  
`procedure Execl(const Todo: Ansistring)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. `Path` is split into a command and it's options. The executable in `path` is NOT searched in the `path`. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execl` does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `Execve` (816), `Execv` (815), `Execvp` (817), `Execl` (814), `Execlp` (814), `Fork` (826)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;

{ Program to demonstrate the Execl function. }

Uses oldlinux, strings;

begin
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  Execl ( '/bin/ls -l' );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.19 Execle

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `procedure Execle(Todo: String;Ep: ppchar)`  
`procedure Execle(Todo: AnsiString;Ep: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. `Path` is split into a command and it's options. The executable in `path` is searched in the `path`, if it isn't an absolute filename. The environment in `ep` is passed to the program. On success, `execle` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `Execve` (816), `Execv` (815), `Execvp` (817), `Execl` (813), `Execlp` (814), `Fork` (826)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execle function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux` , `strings`;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
`Execle ( '/bin/ls -l',envp);`

**end.**

---

### 31.12.20 Execlp

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment; search path)

Declaration: `procedure Execlp(Todo: String;Ep: ppchar)`  
`procedure Execlp(Todo: AnsiString;Ep: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. `Path` is split into a command and it's options. The executable in `path` is searched in the `path`, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execlp` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eLOOP**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `Execve` (816), `Execv` (815), `Execvp` (817), `Execle` (814), `Execl` (813), `Fork` (826)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execvp function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux` , `strings`;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
`Execvp ( 'ls -l',envp);`

**end.**

---

### 31.12.21 Execv

**Synopsis:** Execute process

**Declaration:** `procedure Execv(const path: PathStr;args: ppchar)`  
`procedure Execv(const path: AnsiString;args: ppchar)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execv` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [Execve \(816\)](#), [Execvp \(817\)](#), [Execle \(814\)](#), [Execl \(813\)](#), [Execlp \(814\)](#), [Fork \(826\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex8.pp

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/l\$';  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

GetMem (PP,3\*SizeOf(Pchar));

PP[0]:=Arg0;

PP[1]:=Arg1;

PP[3]:=Nil;

*{ Execute '/bin/l\$ -l', with current environment }*

Execv ('/bin/l\$',pp);

**end.**

### 31.12.22 Execve

**Synopsis:** Execute process using environment

**Declaration:** procedure Execve(Path: PathStr;args: ppchar;ep: ppchar)  
procedure Execve(Path: AnsiString;args: ppchar;ep: ppchar)  
procedure Execve(path: pchar;args: ppchar;ep: ppchar)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. It gives the program the options in args, and the environment in ep. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. On success, execve does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**sys\_eaccess** File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm** The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big** Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec** The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem** Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [Execve \(816\)](#), [Execl \(813\)](#), [Execlp \(814\)](#), [Execl \(813\)](#), [Execlp \(814\)](#), [Fork \(826\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex7.pp

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS';  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

GetMem (PP,3\*SizeOf(Pchar));

PP[0]:=Arg0;

PP[1]:=Arg1;

PP[3]:=Nil;

*{ Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }*

*{ Env is defined in system.inc }*

ExecVe ('/bin/lS',pp,envp);

**end.**

### 31.12.23 Execvp

**Synopsis:** Execute process, search path

**Declaration:** procedure Execvp(Path: PathStr;Args: ppchar;Ep: ppchar)  
procedure Execvp(Path: AnsiString;Args: ppchar;Ep: ppchar)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, execvp does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [Execve \(816\)](#), [Execl \(813\)](#), [Execlp \(814\)](#), [Execl \(813\)](#), [Execlp \(814\)](#), [Fork \(826\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex9.pp

**Program** Example9;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execvp function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls' ;  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l' ;

**Var** PP : PPchar ;

**begin**

**GetMem** (PP,3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));  
 PP[0]:=Arg0;  
 PP[1]:=Arg1;  
 PP[3]:= **Nil** ;  
*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ Env is defined in the system unit. }*  
 Execvp ('ls',pp,envp);

**end.**

### 31.12.24 ExitProcess

**Synopsis:** Exit the current process

**Declaration:** procedure ExitProcess(val: LongInt)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** ExitProcess exits the currently running process, and report Val as the exit status.

**Remark:** If this call is executed, the normal unit finalization code will not be executed. This may lead to unexpected errors and stray files on your system. It is therefore recommended to use the Halt call instead.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Fork ([826](#)), ExecVE ([816](#))

### 31.12.25 Fcntl

**Synopsis:** File control operations.

**Declaration:** function Fcntl(Fd: LongInt;Cmd: LongInt) : LongInt  
 procedure Fcntl(Fd: LongInt;Cmd: LongInt;Arg: LongInt)  
 function Fcntl(var Fd: Text;Cmd: LongInt) : LongInt  
 procedure Fcntl(var Fd: Text;Cmd: LongInt;Arg: LongInt)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Read a file's attributes. Fd is an assigned file, or a valid file descriptor. Cmd specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFd**Read the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFl**Read the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwn**Get the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

**F\_SetFd**Set the `close_on_exec` flag of `Fd`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLk**Return the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock if there is no obstruction. `Arg` is a pointer to a `flock` record.

**F\_SetLk**Set the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.

**F\_GetLkw**Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn**Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain** or **sys\_eaccess**For **F\_SetLk**, if the lock is held by another process.

### 31.12.26 fdClose

Synopsis: Close file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdClose(fd: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdClose` closes a file with file descriptor `Fd`. The function returns `True` if the file was closed successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `fdOpen` (820).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (820), `fdRead` (821), `fdWrite` (823), `fdTruncate` (822), `fdFlush` (819), `fdSeek` (822)

### 31.12.27 fdFlush

Synopsis: Flush kernel file buffer

Declaration: `function fdFlush(fd: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdflush` flushes the Linux kernel file buffer, so the file is actually written to disk. This is NOT the same as the internal buffer, maintained by Free Pascal. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `false` if an error occurred.

For an example, see `fdRead` (821).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (820), `fdClose` (819), `fdRead` (821), `fdWrite` (823), `fdTruncate` (822), `fdSeek` (822)

### 31.12.28 fdOpen

Synopsis: Open file and return file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdOpen(pathname: String; flags: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function fdOpen(pathname: String; flags: LongInt; mode: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function fdOpen(pathname: pchar; flags: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function fdOpen(pathname: pchar; flags: LongInt; mode: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdOpen` opens a file in `PathName` with flags `flags` One of the following:

**Open\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only

**Open\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only

**Open\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write

The flags may be OR-ed with one of the following constants:

**Open\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**Open\_ExclIf** the file is opened with `Open_Creat` and it already exists, the call will fail.

**Open\_NoCttyIf** the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**Open\_TruncIf** the file exists, it will be truncated.

**Open\_Append** the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**Open\_NonBlock** The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**Open\_NDelay** Idem as `Open_NonBlock`

**Open\_Sync** The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return until the data is physically written to disk.

**Open\_NoFollow** if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

**Open\_Directory** if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

`PathName` can be of type `PChar` or `String`. The optional `mode` argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the `umask` setting. The real permissions are `Mode` and not `umask`. The return value of the function is the file descriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdClose` ([819](#)), `fdRead` ([821](#)), `fdWrite` ([823](#)), `fdTruncate` ([822](#)), `fdFlush` ([819](#)), `fdSeek` ([822](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex19.pp`

**Program** `Example19;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdOpen, fdwrite and fdCLose functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Const** `Line : String[80] = 'This is easy writing !';`

**Var** `FD : Longint;`

**begin**

```

FD:=fdOpen ( 'Test.dat',Open_WrOnly or Open_Creat);
if FD>0 then
begin
  if length(Line)<>fdwrite (FD,Line[1],Length(Line)) then
    Writeln ( 'Error when writing to file !');
  fdClose(FD);
end;
end.

```

---

### 31.12.29 fdRead

Synopsis: Read data from file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdRead(fd: LongInt;var buf;size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdRead` reads at most `size` bytes from the file descriptor `fd`, and stores them in `buf`. The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of `buf` is done.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` ([820](#)), `fdClose` ([819](#)), `fdWrite` ([823](#)), `fdTruncate` ([822](#)), `fdFlush` ([819](#)), `fdSeek` ([822](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** Example20;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Const** Data : **string**[10] = '12345687890';

**Var** FD : Longint;  
I : longint;

**begin**

FD:=fdOpen('test.dat',open\_wronly or open\_creat,octal(666));

if fd>0 then

begin

*{ Fill file with data }*

for I:=1 to 10 do

if fdWrite (FD,Data[I],10)<>10 then

begin

writeln ( 'Error when writing !');

halt(1);

end;

fdClose(FD);

FD:=fdOpen('test.dat',open\_rdonly);

*{ Read data again }*

If FD>0 then

begin

For I:=1 to 5 do

if fdRead (FD,Data[I],10)<>10 then

begin

Writeln ( 'Error when Reading !');

---

```

        Halt (2);
    end;
    fdClose(FD);
    { Truncating file at 60 bytes }
    { For truncating , file must be open or write }
    FD:=fdOpen('test.dat',open_wronly,octal(666));
    if FD>0 then
        begin
            if not fdTruncate(FD,60) then
                Writeln('Error when truncating !');
            fdClose (FD);
        end;
    end;
end.

```

---

### 31.12.30 fdSeek

Synopsis: Set file pointer position.

Declaration: `function fdSeek(fd: LongInt;pos: LongInt;seektype: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdSeek` sets the current fileposition of file `fd` to `Pos`, starting from `SeekType`, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_SetPos** is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_CurPos** is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_endPos** is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new fileposition, or -1 of an error occurred.

For an example, see `fdOpen` (820).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (820), `fdWrite` (823), `fdClose` (819), `fdRead` (821), `fdTruncate` (822), `fdFlush` (819)

### 31.12.31 fdTruncate

Synopsis: Truncate file on certain size.

Declaration: `function fdTruncate(fd: LongInt;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdTruncate` sets the length of a file in `fd` on `size` bytes, where `size` must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in `fd`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `false` if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (820), `fdClose` (819), `fdRead` (821), `fdWrite` (823), `fdFlush` (819), `fdSeek` (822)

### 31.12.32 fdWrite

Synopsis: Write data to file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdWrite(fd: LongInt; const buf; size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdWrite` writes at most `size` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`. The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (820), `fdClose` (819), `fdRead` (821), `fdTruncate` (822), `fdSeek` (822), `fdFlush` (819)

### 31.12.33 FD\_Clr

Synopsis: Clears a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `procedure FD_Clr(fd: LongInt; var fds: fdSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds`.

For an example, see `Select` (853).

Errors: None.

See also: `Select` (853), `SelectText` (855), `GetFS` (833), `FD_ZERO` (824), `FD_Set` (823), `FD_IsSet` (823)

### 31.12.34 FD\_IsSet

Synopsis: Check whether a filedescriptor is set

Declaration: `function FD_IsSet(fd: LongInt; var fds: fdSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds` is set.

For an example, see `Select` (853).

Errors: None.

See also: `Select` (853), `SelectText` (855), `GetFS` (833), `FD_ZERO` (824), `FD_Clr` (823), `FD_Set` (823)

### 31.12.35 FD\_Set

Synopsis: Set a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `procedure FD_Set(fd: LongInt; var fds: fdSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_Set` sets file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds`.

For an example, see `Select` (853).

Errors: None.

See also: `Select` (853), `SelectText` (855), `GetFS` (833), `FD_ZERO` (824), `FD_Clr` (823), `FD_IsSet` (823)

### 31.12.36 FD\_Zero

Synopsis: Clear all file descriptors in set

Declaration: `procedure FD_Zero(var fds: fdSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_ZERO` clears all the filedescriptors in the file descriptor set `fds`.

For an example, see [Select \(853\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [Select \(853\)](#), [SelectText \(855\)](#), [GetFS \(833\)](#), [FD\\_Clr \(823\)](#), [FD\\_Set \(823\)](#), [FD\\_IsSet \(823\)](#)

### 31.12.37 FExpand

Synopsis: Expand filename to fully qualified path

Declaration: `function FExpand(const Path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FExpand` expands `Path` to a full path, starting from root, eliminating directory references such as `.` and `..` from the result.

Errors: None

See also: [BaseName \(803\)](#), [DirName \(810\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FExpand function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'This program is in : ',FExpand(Paramstr(0)));`  
**end.**

---

### 31.12.38 Flock

Synopsis: Lock a file (advisory lock)

Declaration: `function Flock(fd: LongInt;mode: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Flock(var T: text;mode: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Flock(var F: File;mode: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FLock` implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file `F`. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`, or it can be a linux filedescriptor (a longint) `Mode` can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH**sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX**sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN** unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB** This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: If an error occurs, it is reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `Fcntl` ([818](#))

### 31.12.39 FNMatch

Synopsis: Check whether filename matches wildcard specification

Declaration: `function FNMatch(const Pattern: String;const Name: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `FNMatch` returns `True` if the filename in `Name` matches the wildcard pattern in `Pattern`, `False` otherwise.

`Pattern` can contain the wildcards `*` (match zero or more arbitrary characters) or `?` (match a single character).

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` ([827](#)), `FExpand` ([824](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** `Example69;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FNMatch function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Procedure** `TestMatch(Pattern,Name : String);`

**begin**

`Write ('"',Name,'" ');`

`If FNMatch (Pattern,Name) then`

`Write ('matches')`

`else`

`Write ('does not match');`

`Writeln(' ',Pattern,'".');`

`end;`

**begin**

`TestMatch ('*', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('.*', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('*a*', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('?ile*', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('?', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('.?', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('?a*', 'FileName');`

`TestMatch ('??*me?', 'FileName');`

**end.**

---

### 31.12.40 Fork

Synopsis: Create child process

Declaration: `function Fork : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `Fork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `GetPPid` (836)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `Execve` (816), `Clone` (807)

### 31.12.41 FReName

Synopsis: Rename file

Declaration: `function FReName (OldName: Pchar; NewName: Pchar) : Boolean`  
`function FReName (OldName: String; NewName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FReName` renames the file `OldName` to `NewName`. `NewName` can be in a different directory than `OldName`, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the `OldName` file will be preserved.

The function returns `True` on succes, `False` on failure.

Errors: On error, errors are reported in `LinuxError`. Possible errors include:

**sys\_eisdir**`NewName` exists and is a directory, but `OldName` is not a directory.

**sys\_exdev**`NewName` and `OldName` are on different devices.

**sys\_enotempty or sys\_eexist**`NewName` is an existing, non-empty directory.

**sys\_ebusy**`OldName` or `NewName` is a directory and is in use by another process.

**sys\_einval**`NewName` is part of `OldName`.

**sys\_emlink**`OldPath` or `NewPath` already have the maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**sys\_enotdir**part of `OldName` or `NewName` is not directory.

**sys\_efault**For the `pchar` case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**sys\_eaccess**access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**sys\_enametoolong**Either `OldName` or `NewName` is too long.

**sys\_enoenta**directory component in `OldName` or `NewName` didn't exist.

**sys\_enomem**not enough kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**`NewName` or `OldName` is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand `OldName` or `NewName`

**sys\_enosp**the filesystem has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: `UnLink` (871)

### 31.12.42 FSearch

Synopsis: Search for file in search path.

Declaration: `function FSearch(const path: PathStr;dirlist: String) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches in `DirList`, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named `Path`. It then returns a path to the found file.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: `BaseName` (803), `DirName` (810), `FExpand` (824), `FNMatch` (825)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex46.pp`

**Program** `Example46;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux, strings;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Is is in : ', FSearch ( 'Is', strpas ( Getenv ( 'PATH' ) ) ) );`  
**end.**

### 31.12.43 FSplit

Synopsis: Split filename into path, name and extension

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(const Path: PathStr;var Dir: DirStr;var Name: NameStr;  
                          var Ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A `Path`, a `Name` and an extension (in `ext`). The extension is taken to be all letters after the last dot (.).

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` (827)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex67.pp`

**Program** `Example67;`

**uses** `oldlinux;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }*

**var**

`Path, Name, Ext : string;`

**begin**

`FSplit ( ParamStr ( 1 ), Path, Name, Ext );  
  WriteLn ( ' Split ', ParamStr ( 1 ), ' in : ' );  
  WriteLn ( ' Path       : ', Path );  
  WriteLn ( ' Name       : ', Name );  
  WriteLn ( ' Extension : ', Ext );  
end.`

**31.12.44 FSStat**

Synopsis: Retrieve filesystem information.

Declaration: `function FSStat (Path: PathStr; var Info: Statfs) : Boolean`  
`function FSStat (Fd: LongInt; var Info: Statfs) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSStat` returns in `Info` information about the filesystem on which the file `Path` resides, or on which the file with file descriptor `fd` resides. `Info` is of type `statfs`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

`sys_enotdir` A component of `Path` is not a directory.

`sys_einval` Invalid character in `Path`.

`sys_enoent` `Path` does not exist.

`sys_eaccess` Search permission is denied for component in `Path`.

`sys_eloop` A circular symbolic link was encountered in `Path`.

`sys_eio` An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: `FStat` ([829](#)), `LStat` ([843](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex30.pp`

---

```

program Example30;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSStat function. }

uses oldlinux;

var s : string;
    info : statfs;

begin
    writeln ('Info about current partition : ');
    s := '.';
    while s <> 'q' do
        begin
            if not fsstat (s, info) then
                begin
                    writeln ('Fstat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
                    halt (1);
                end;
            writeln;
            writeln ('Result of fsstat on file ''', s, '''');
            writeln ('fstype   : ', info.fstype);
            writeln ('bsize    : ', info.bsize);
            writeln ('bfree     : ', info.bfree);
            writeln ('bavail    : ', info.bavail);
            writeln ('files     : ', info.files);
            writeln ('ffree     : ', info.ffree);
            writeln ('fsid      : ', info.fsid);
            writeln ('Namelen   : ', info.namelen);
            write ('Type name of file to do fsstat. (q quits) : ');
            readln (s);
        end;
    end.
```

---

**31.12.45 FStat**

Synopsis: Retrieve information about a file

Declaration: `function FStat (Path: PathStr; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FStat (Fd: LongInt; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FStat (var F: Text; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FStat (var F: File; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FStat` gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Path**a file on the filesystem.

**Fd**a valid file descriptor.

**F**an opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

`sys_enoent`Path does not exist.

See also: `FSSStat` ([828](#)), `LStat` ([843](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex28.pp`

---

```
program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses oldlinux;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil ');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if not fstat ('test.fil ', info) then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil ''.');
  writeln ('Inode      : ', info.ino);
  writeln ('Mode       : ', info.mode);
  writeln ('nlink      : ', info.nlink);
  writeln ('uid        : ', info.uid);
  writeln ('gid        : ', info.gid);
  writeln ('rdev       : ', info.rdev);
  writeln ('Size       : ', info.size);
```

---

```

writeln ( 'Blksize : ',info.blksize);
writeln ( 'Blocks : ',info.blocks);
writeln ( 'atime : ',info.atime);
writeln ( 'mtime : ',info.mtime);
writeln ( 'ctime : ',info.ctime);
  { Remove file }
  erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 31.12.46 GetDate

Synopsis: Return the system date

Declaration: `procedure GetDate(var Year: Word;var Month: Word;var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current date.

Errors: None

See also: [GetEpochTime \(832\)](#), [GetTime \(837\)](#), [GetDateTime \(830\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(812\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** Year, Month, Day : Word;

**begin**

  GetDate (Year, Month, Day);

**Writeln** ( 'Date : ',Day:2,'/',Month:2,'/',Year:4);

**end.**

---

### 31.12.47 GetDateTime

Synopsis: Return system date and time

Declaration: `procedure GetDateTime(var Year: Word;var Month: Word;var Day: Word;  
var hour: Word;var minute: Word;var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current date and time. The time is corrected for the local time zone. This procedure is equivalent to the [GetDate \(830\)](#) and [GetTime](#) calls.

Errors: None

See also: [GetEpochTime \(832\)](#), [GetTime \(837\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(812\)](#), [GetDate \(830\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex60.pp

---

```

Program Example6;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDateTime function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var Year, Month, Day, Hour, min, sec : Word;

begin
  GetDateTime (Year, Month, Day, Hour, min, sec);
  WriteLn ( 'Date : ',Day:2,'/',Month:2,'/',Year:4);
  WriteLn ( 'Time : ',Hour:2,':',Min:2,':',Sec:2);
end.

```

---

### 31.12.48 GetDomainName

Synopsis: Return current domain name

Declaration: `function GetDomainName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetHostName` ([834](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex39.pp

---

```

Program Example39;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Domain name of this machine is : ',GetDomainName);
end.

```

---

### 31.12.49 GetEGid

Synopsis: Return effective group ID

Declaration: `function GetEGid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the effective group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetGid` ([834](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Group Id = ',getgid,' Effective group Id = ',getegid);

**end.**

---

### 31.12.50 GetEnv

Synopsis: Return value of environment variable.

Declaration: `function GetEnv(P: String) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable in `P`. If the variable is not defined, `nil` is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A `PChar` is returned to accomodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, `TERMCAP` and `LS_COLORS`, for instance.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** Example41;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Path is : ',Getenv('PATH'));

**end.**

---

### 31.12.51 GetEpochTime

Synopsis: Return the current unix time

Declaration: `function GetEpochTime : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 gmt, january 1, 1970. it is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST.

Errors: no errors

See also: `EpochToLocal` ([812](#)), `GetTime` ([837](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEpochTime function. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  Write ( 'Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ');
  WriteLn ( GetEpochTime );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.52 GetEUid

Synopsis: Return effective user ID

Declaration: `function GetEUid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the effective user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetUid` ([838](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  writeln ( 'User Id = ',getuid, ' Effective user Id = ',geteuid);
end.

```

---

### 31.12.53 GetFS

Synopsis: Return file selector

Declaration: `function GetFS(var T: Text) : LongInt`  
`function GetFS(var F: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFS` returns the file selector that the kernel provided for your file. In principle you don't need this file selector. Only for some calls it is needed, such as the `Select` ([853](#)) call or so.

Errors: In case the file was not opened, then -1 is returned.

See also: `Select` ([853](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex34.pp

---

**Program** Example33;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SelectText function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** tv : TimeVal;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );

*{ Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }*

    SelectText ( Input, nil );

*{ Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }*

**readln**;

**Writeln** ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );

    tv.sec:=2;

    tv.usec:=0;

**if** SelectText ( Input, @tv) > 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'Thank you !' )

**else**

**Writeln** ( 'Too late !' );

**end.**

---

### 31.12.54 GetGid

Synopsis: Return real group ID

Declaration: `function GetGid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: GetEGid ([831](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Group Id = ', getgid, ' Effective group Id = ', getegid );

**end.**

---

### 31.12.55 GetHostName

Synopsis: Return host name

Declaration: `function GetHostName : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetDomainName` ([831](#))

---

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex40.pp`

**Program** `Example40;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Name of this machine is : ', GetHostName );  
**end.**

---

### 31.12.56 GetLocalTimezone

**Synopsis:** Return local timezone information

**Declaration:** `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: LongInt; var leap_correct: LongInt;  
var leap_hit: LongInt)  
procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `GetLocalTimezone` returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the `TZSeconds` variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

**See also:** `GetTimezoneFile` ([838](#)), `ReadTimezoneFile` ([853](#))

### 31.12.57 GetPid

**Synopsis:** Return current process ID

**Declaration:** `function GetPid : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** Get the Process ID of the currently running process.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetPPid` ([836](#))

---

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex16.pp`

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

---

```
begin
  WriteIn ( 'Process Id = ',getpid, ' Parent process Id = ',getppid);
end.
```

---

### 31.12.58 GetPPid

Synopsis: Return parent process ID

Declaration: `function GetPPid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetPid \(835\)](#)

---

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid , GetPPid function . }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

```
begin
  WriteIn ( 'Process Id = ',getpid, ' Parent process Id = ',getppid);
end.
```

---

### 31.12.59 GetPriority

Synopsis: Return process priority

Declaration: `function GetPriority(Which: Integer;Who: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: GetPriority returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the Which and Who variables. Which can be one of the pre-defined `Prio_Process`, `Prio_PGrp`, `Prio_User`, in which case Who is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

For an example, see [Nice \(848\)](#).

Errors: Error checking must be done on `LinuxError`, since a priority can be negative.

**sys\_esrch** No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval** Which was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

See also: [SetPriority \(856\)](#), [Nice \(848\)](#)

**31.12.60 GetTime**

Synopsis: Return current system time

Declaration: `procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var min: Word; var sec: Word;  
var msec: Word; var usec: Word)  
procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var min: Word; var sec: Word;  
var sec100: Word)  
procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var min: Word; var sec: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current time of the day, adjusted to local time. Upon return, the parameters are filled with

**hour**Hours since 00:00 today.

**min**minutes in current hour.

**sec**seconds in current minute.

**sec100**hundreds of seconds in current second.

**msec**milliseconds in current second.

**usec**microseconds in current second.

Errors: None

See also: [GetEpochTime \(832\)](#), [GetDate \(830\)](#), [GetDateTime \(830\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(812\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex5.pp`

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** Hour, Minute, Second : Word;

**begin**

GetTime (Hour, Minute, Second);

**WriteLn** ( 'Time : ', Hour:2, ': ', Minute:2, ': ', Second:2 );

**end.**

**31.12.61 GetTimeOfDay**

Synopsis: Return kernel time of day in GMT

Declaration: `procedure GetTimeOfDay(var tv: timeval)  
function GetTimeOfDay : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `timeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call. To get the local time, [GetTime \(837\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [GetTime \(837\)](#), [GetTimeOfDay \(837\)](#)

### 31.12.62 GetTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Return name of timezone information file

Declaration: `function GetTimezoneFile : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTimezoneFile` returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If `/etc/timezone` exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If `/usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If `/etc/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

Errors: If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ReadTimezoneFile` ([853](#))

### 31.12.63 GetUid

Synopsis: Return current user ID

Declaration: `function GetUid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the real user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetEUid` ([833](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'User Id = ',getuid, ' Effective user Id = ',geteuid);

**end.**

---

### 31.12.64 Glob

Synopsis: Find filenames matching a wildcard pattern

Declaration: `function Glob(const path: PathStr) : pglob`

Visibility: default

Description: `Glob` returns a pointer to a glob structure which contains all filenames which exist and match the pattern in `Path`. The pattern can contain wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning.

Errors: Returns nil on error, and `LinuxError` is set.

**sys\_enomem**No memory on heap for glob structure.

**others**As returned by the `opendir` call, and `sys_readdir`.

See also: `GlobFree` ([839](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Glob and GlobFree functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `G1,G2 : PGlob`;

**begin**

`G1:=Glob ( '*' );`

`if LinuxError=0 then`

`begin`

`G2:=G1;`

`Writeln ( 'Files in this directory : ' );`

`While g2<>Nil do`

`begin`

`Writeln ( g2^.name );`

`g2:=g2^.next;`

`end;`

`GlobFree ( g1 );`

`end;`

`end.`

---

### 31.12.65 Globfree

Synopsis: Free result of `Glob` ([838](#)) call

Declaration: `procedure Globfree (var p: pglob)`

Visibility: default

Description: Releases the memory, occupied by a `pglob` structure. `P` is set to nil.

For an example, see `Glob` ([838](#)).

Errors: None

See also: `Glob` ([838](#))

### 31.12.66 IOCtl

Synopsis: General kernel IOCTL call.

Declaration: `function IOCtl (Handle: LongInt;Ndx: LongInt;Data: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This is a general interface to the Unix/ linux ioctl call. It performs various operations on the filedescriptor `Handle`. `Ndx` describes the operation to perform. `Data` points to data needed for the `Ndx` function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under linux.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`. They are very dependent on the used function, that's why we don't list them here

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex54.pp

---

**Program** Example54;

**uses** oldlinux;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOCTL function. }*

**var**

    tios : Termios;

**begin**

    IOCTL(1,TCGETS,@tios);

    WriteLn('Input Flags : \$',hexstr(tios.c\_iflag,8));

    WriteLn('Output Flags : \$',hexstr(tios.c\_oflag,8));

    WriteLn('Line Flags : \$',hexstr(tios.c\_lflag,8));

    WriteLn('Control Flags: \$',hexstr(tios.c\_cflag,8));

**end.**

---

### 31.12.67 IOperm

**Synopsis:** Set permission on IO ports

**Declaration:** function IOperm(From: Cardinal;Num: Cardinal;Value: LongInt) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IOperm sets permissions on Num ports starting with port From to Value. The function returns True if the call was successfull, False otherwise.

**Note:**

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first 0x03ff ports can be set.
- When doing a Fork (826), the permissions are reset. When doing a Execve (816) they are kept.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`

### 31.12.68 IoPL

**Synopsis:** Set I/O privilege level

**Declaration:** function IoPL(Level: LongInt) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IoPL sets the I/O privilege level. It is intended for completeness only, one should normally not use it.

### 31.12.69 IsATTY

Synopsis: Check if filehandle is a TTY (terminal)

Declaration: `function IsATTY(Handle: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function IsATTY(var f: text) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Check if the filehandle described by `f` is a terminal. `f` can be of type

1. `longint` for file handles;
2. Text for text variables such as input etc.

Returns `True` if `f` is a terminal, `False` otherwise.

Errors: No errors are reported

See also: [IOCtl \(839\)](#), [TTYName \(870\)](#)

### 31.12.70 Kill

Synopsis: Send a signal to a process

Declaration: `function Kill(Pid: LongInt; Sig: LongInt) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: Send a signal `Sig` to a process or process group. If `Pid > 0` then the signal is sent to `Pid`, if it equals `-1`, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If `Pid < -1` then the signal is sent to process group `-Pid`. The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_einval** An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch** The `Pid` or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm** The effective userid of the current process doesn't match the one of process `Pid`.

See also: [SigAction \(857\)](#), [Signal \(858\)](#)

### 31.12.71 Link

Synopsis: Create a hard link to a file

Declaration: `function Link(OldPath: PathStr; NewPath: PathStr) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Link` makes `NewPath` point to the same file as `OldPath`. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_exdev** `OldPath` and `NewPath` are not on the same filesystem.

**sys\_eperm** The filesystem containing `oldpath` and `newpath` doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess** Write access for the directory containing Newpath is disallowed, or one of the directories in OldPath or {NewPath} has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist** NewPath already exists.

**sys\_mlink** OldPath has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop** OldPath or NewPath has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing NewPath has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm** OldPath points to . or .. of a directory.

See also: SymLink ([862](#)), UnLink ([871](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex21.pp

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** F : Text;

S : String;

**begin**

Assign (F, 'test.txt');

**Rewrite** (F);

**Writeln** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');

Close(f);

*{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*

**if not** Link ('test.txt', 'new.txt') **then**

**writeln** ('Error when linking !');

*{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }*

**If not** Unlink ('test.txt') **then**

**Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');

Assign (f, 'new.txt');

**Reset** (F);

**While not** EOF(f) **do**

**begin**

**Readln** (F,S);

**Writeln** ('> ',s);

**end**;

Close (f);

*{ Remove new.txt also }*

**If not** Unlink ('new.txt') **then**

**Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');

**end.**

---

### 31.12.72 LocalToEpoch

Synopsis: Convert local time to epoch (unix) time

**Declaration:** `function LocalToEpoch(year: Word;month: Word;day: Word;hour: Word;  
minute: Word;second: Word) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970 ).

**Errors:** None

See also: `GetEpochTime` (832), `EpochToLocal` (812), `GetTime` (837), `GetDate` (830)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Var** `year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;`

**begin**

```
Write ( 'Year      : ' ); readln (Year);
Write ( 'Month     : ' ); readln (Month);
Write ( 'Day       : ' ); readln (Day);
Write ( 'Hour      : ' ); readln (Hour);
Write ( 'Minute    : ' ); readln (Minute);
Write ( 'Seconds   : ' ); readln (Second);
Write ( 'This is   : ' );
Write ( LocalToEpoch(year, month, day, hour, minute, second));
Writeln ( ' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980 ');
```

**end.**

---

### 31.12.73 Lstat

**Synopsis:** Return information about symbolic link. Do not follow the link

**Declaration:** `function Lstat (Filename: PathStr;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LStat` gets information about the link specified in `Path`, and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat`. Contrary to `FStat`, it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` if the call failed.

**Errors:** `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

`sys_enoent`Path does not exist.

See also: `FStat` (829), `FStat` (828)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex29.pp`

---

**program** `example29;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }*

**uses** `oldlinux;`

---

```

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if not fstat ('test.fil', info) then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode      : ', info.ino);
  writeln ('Mode       : ', info.mode);
  writeln ('nlink      : ', info.nlink);
  writeln ('uid        : ', info.uid);
  writeln ('gid        : ', info.gid);
  writeln ('rdev       : ', info.rdev);
  writeln ('Size       : ', info.size);
  writeln ('Blksize    : ', info.blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks     : ', info.blocks);
  writeln ('atime      : ', info.atime);
  writeln ('mtime      : ', info.mtime);
  writeln ('ctime      : ', info.ctime);

  If not SymLink ('test.fil', 'test.lnk') then
    writeln ('Link failed ! Errno : ', linuxerror);

  if not lstat ('test.lnk', info) then
    begin
      writeln('LStat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''.');
  writeln ('Inode      : ', info.ino);
  writeln ('Mode       : ', info.mode);
  writeln ('nlink      : ', info.nlink);
  writeln ('uid        : ', info.uid);
  writeln ('gid        : ', info.gid);
  writeln ('rdev       : ', info.rdev);
  writeln ('Size       : ', info.size);
  writeln ('Blksize    : ', info.blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks     : ', info.blocks);
  writeln ('atime      : ', info.atime);
  writeln ('mtime      : ', info.mtime);
  writeln ('ctime      : ', info.ctime);
  { Remove file and link }
  erase (f);
  unlink ('test.lnk');
end.

```

---

### 31.12.74 mkFifo

Synopsis: Create FIFO (named pipe) in file system

Declaration: `function mkFifo(pathname: String; mode: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `MkFifo` creates named a named pipe in the filesystem, with name `PathName` and mode `Mode`.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` (850), `MkFifo` (845)

### 31.12.75 MMap

Synopsis: Create memory map of a file

Declaration: `function MMap(const m: tmmmapargs) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `MMap` maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different fields of the argument `m` determine what and how the `mmap` maps this:

**address** Address where to `mmap` the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**size** Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot** Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC** The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ** The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE** The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE** The memory can not be accessed.

**flags** Contains some options for the `mmap` call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED** Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, `MMap` will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED** Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE** Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS** `fd` does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options `MAP_SHARED` and `MAP_PRIVATE` must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd** File descriptor from which to map.

**offset** Offset to be used in file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and `LinuxError` is set to the error code:

**Sys\_EBADF** `fd` is not a valid file descriptor and `MAP_ANONYMOUS` was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCES** `MAP_PRIVATE` was specified, but `fd` is not open for reading. Or `MAP_SHARED` was asked and `PROT_WRITE` is set, `fd` is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL** One of the record fields `Start`, `length` or `offset` is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY** `MAP_DENYWRITE` was set but the object specified by `fd` is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN** `fd` is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM** Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: `MUnMap` ([846](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex66.pp`

**Program** `Example66`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `S : String`;  
       `fd, Len : Longint`;  
       `args : tmapargs`;  
       `P : PChar`;

**begin**

```

S:= 'This is a string'#0;
Len:=Length(S);
fd:=fdOpen('testfile.txt',Open_wrOnly or open_creat);
If fd=-1 then
  Halt(1);
If fdWrite(fd,S[1],Len)=-1 then
  Halt(2);
fdClose(fd);
fdOpen('testfile.txt',Open_rdOnly);
if fd=-1 then
  Halt(3);
args.address:=0;
args.offset:=0;
args.size:=Len+1;
args.fd:=Fd;
args.flags:=MAP_PRIVATE;
args.prot:=PROT_READ or PROT_WRITE;
P:=PChar(mmap(args));
If longint(P)=-1 then
  Halt(4);
WriteLn('Read in memory :',P);
fdclose(fd);
if Not MUnMap(P,Len) Then
  Halt(LinuxError);
end.
```

### 31.12.76 MUnMap

**Synopsis:** Unmap previously mapped memory block

**Declaration:** `function MUnMap(P: Pointer;Size: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MUnMap` unmaps the memory block of size `Size`, pointed to by `P`, which was previously allocated with `MMap` (845).

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `MMap` (845).

**Errors:** In case of error the function returns `False` and `LinuxError` is set to an error value. See `MMap` (845) for possible error values.

See also: `MMap` (845)

### 31.12.77 NanoSleep

**Synopsis:** Suspend process for a short time

**Declaration:** `function NanoSleep(const req: timespec; var rem: timespec) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NanoSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `req` has passed. Then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and `rem` will contain the remaining time till the end of the intended period. In this case the return value will be `-1`, and `LinuxError` will be set to `EINTR`.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

**Errors:** If the call was interrupted, `-1` is returned, and `LinuxError` is set to `EINTR`. If invalid time values were specified, then `-1` is returned and `LinuxError` is set to `EINVAL`.

See also: `Pause` (850), `Alarm` (800)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the NanoSleep function. }

uses oldlinux;

Var
  Req, Rem : TimeSpec;
  Res : Longint;

begin
  With Req do
    begin
      tv_sec:=10;
      tv_nsec:=100;
    end;
  Write( 'NanoSleep returned : ');
  Flush( Output );
  Res:=( NanoSleep( Req, rem ) );
  WriteLn( res );
  If ( res<>0) then
    With rem do
      begin
        WriteLn( 'Remaining seconds      : ', tv_sec );
        WriteLn( 'Remaining nanoseconds : ', tv_nsec );
      end;
end.
```

---

### 31.12.78 Nice

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `procedure Nice(N: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Nice` adds  $-N$  to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative  $N$ , i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`

**sys\_eperm** A non-superuser tried to specify a negative  $N$ , i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: `GetPriority` (836), `SetPriority` (856)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

```
writeln ('Setting priority to 5');
setpriority (prio_process, getpid, 5);
writeln ('New priority = ', getpriority (prio_process, getpid));
writeln ('Doing nice 10');
nice (10);
writeln ('New Priority = ', getpriority (prio_process, getpid));
```

**end.**

---

### 31.12.79 Octal

Synopsis: Convert octal to decimal value

Declaration: `function Octal(l: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Octal` will convert a number specified as an octal number to its decimal value.

This is useful for the `Chmod` (805) call, where permissions are specified as octal numbers.

Errors: No checking is performed whether the given number is a correct Octal number. e.g. specifying 998 is possible; the result will be wrong in that case.

See also: `Chmod` (805)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex68.pp`

---

**Program** `Example68;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Octal function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Mode 777 : ', Octal(777));
  Writeln ( 'Mode 644 : ', Octal(644));
  Writeln ( 'Mode 755 : ', Octal(755));
end.

```

---

### 31.12.80 OpenDir

Synopsis: Open directory for reading

Declaration: `function OpenDir(f: pchar) : PDir`  
`function OpenDir(f: String) : PDir`

Visibility: default

Description: `OpenDir` opens the directory `f`, and returns a `pdir` pointer to a `Dir` record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, `nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (809), `ReadDir` (851), `SeekDir` (853), `TellDir` (870)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex35.pp`

---

**Program** `Example35;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the
  OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and TellDir functions. }

```

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

```

Var TheDir : PDir;
      ADirent : PDirent;
      Entry : Longint;

```

```

begin
  TheDir:=OpenDir( './. ' );
  Repeat
    Entry:=TellDir(TheDir);
    ADirent:=ReadDir ( TheDir);
    If ADirent<>Nil then
      With ADirent^ do
        begin
          Writeln ( 'Entry No : ',Entry);
          Writeln ( 'Inode   : ',ino);
          Writeln ( 'Offset  : ',off);
          Writeln ( 'Reclen  : ',reclen);
          Writeln ( 'Name    : ',pchar(@name[0]));
        end;
  Until ADirent=Nil;
  Repeat
    Write ( 'Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ');
    ReadLn ( Entry);
    If Entry<>-1 then
      begin
        SeekDir ( TheDir, Entry);
        ADirent:=ReadDir ( TheDir);

```

---

```

    If ADirent<>Nil then
      With ADirent^ do
        begin
          Writeln ( 'Entry No : ',Entry );
          Writeln ( 'Inode   : ',ino );
          Writeln ( 'Offset  : ',off );
          Writeln ( 'Reclen  : ',reclen );
          Writeln ( 'Name    : ',pchar(@name[0]));
        end;
      end;
    Until Entry=-1;
    CloseDir ( TheDir );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.81 Pause

Synopsis: Wait for a signal

Declaration: `procedure Pause`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pause` puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received signal, the handler will be called and after that pause will return control to the process.

For an example, see [Alarm \(800\)](#).

### 31.12.82 PClose

Synopsis: Close file opened with `POpen (850)`

Declaration: `function PClose(var F: text) : LongInt`  
`function PClose(var F: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `PClose` closes a file opened with `POpen (850)`. It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

For an example, see `POpen (850)`

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors. If it is different from zero, the exit status is not valid.

See also: `POpen (850)`

### 31.12.83 POpen

Synopsis: Pipe file to standard input/output of program

Declaration: `procedure POpen(var F: text;const Prog: String;rw: Char)`  
`procedure POpen(var F: File;const Prog: String;rw: Char)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `POpen` runs the command specified in `Cmd`, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe `F`. The parameter `rw` indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then `F` can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from `stdin`. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from `F`. `F` should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`. A file opened with `POpen` can be closed with `Close`, but also with `PClose` (850). The result is the same, but `PClose` returns the exit status of the command `Cmd`.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError` and are essentially those of the `Execve`, `Dup` and `AssignPipe` commands.

See also: `AssignPipe` (801), `PClose` (850)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex37.pp`

**Program** `Example37`;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function. }

uses oldlinux;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
  writeln ('Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments');
  writeln ('and input back to stdout');
  assign (f, 'test21a');
  rewrite (f);
  writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  writeln (f, 'echo this is the child speaking.... ');
  writeln (f, 'echo got arguments \*"${*}"\*');
  writeln (f, 'cat');
  writeln (f, 'exit 2');
  writeln (f);
  close (f);
  chmod ('test21a', octal (755));
  popen (f, './test21a arg1 arg2', 'W');
  if linuxerror <> 0 then
    writeln ('error from POpen : Linuxerror : ', Linuxerror);
  for i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout. ');
  Flush(f);
  Writeln ('The script exited with status : ', PClose (f));
  writeln;
  writeln ('Press <return> to remove shell script. ');
  readln;
  assign (f, 'test21a');
  erase (f)
end.
```

---

### 31.12.84 ReadDir

**Synopsis:** Read entry from directory

**Declaration:** `function ReadDir(p: PDir) : pdirent`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadDir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `p`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a structure describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see `OpenDir` (849).

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (809), `OpenDir` (849), `SeekDir` (853), `TellDir` (870)

### 31.12.85 ReadLink

**Synopsis:** Read destination of symbolic link

**Declaration:** `function ReadLink(name: pchar; linkname: pchar; maxlen: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function ReadLink(name: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link `name` is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

**Errors:** On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. `LinuxError` is set to report errors:

**SYS\_ENOTDIR**A part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL**`maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG**A pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT**the link `name` does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCESS**No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP**Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO**An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**Not enough kernel memory was available.

See also: `SymLink` (862)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** `Example62`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `F : Text`;  
`S : String`;

**begin**  
`Assign (F, 'test.txt');`  
`Rewrite (F);`  
`WriteLn (F, 'This is written to test.txt');`

---

```

Close(f);
{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
if not SymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') then
  writeln ('Error when symlinking !');
S:=ReadLink('new.txt');
If S='' then
  Writeln ('Error reading link !')
Else
  Writeln ('Link points to : ',S);
{ Now remove links }
If not Unlink ('new.txt') then
  Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
If not Unlink ('test.txt') then
  Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
end.

```

---

### 31.12.86 ReadTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Read the timezone file and initialize time routines

Declaration: `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadTimezoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the linux unit call this routine at unit startup.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetTimezoneFile \(838\)](#), [GetLocalTimezone \(835\)](#)

### 31.12.87 SeekDir

Synopsis: Seek to position in directory

Declaration: `procedure SeekDir(p: PDir; off: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `off`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

For an example, see [OpenDir \(849\)](#).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: [CloseDir \(809\)](#), [ReadDir \(851\)](#), [OpenDir \(849\)](#), [TellDir \(870\)](#)

### 31.12.88 Select

Synopsis: Wait for events on file descriptors

Declaration: `function Select(N: LongInt; readfds: pfdset; writefds: pfdset; exceptfds: pfdset; Timeout: ptimeval) : LongInt`  
`function Select(N: LongInt; readfds: pfdset; writefds: pfdset; exceptfds: pfdset; Timeout: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Select` checks one of the file descriptors in the `FDSet`s to see if its status changed.

`readfds`, `writfds` and `exceptfds` are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in `readfds` are checked to see if characters become available for reading. The entries in `writfds` are checked to see if it is OK to write to them, while entries in `exceptfds` are checked to see if an exception occurred on them.

You can use the functions `FD_ZERO` (824) `FD_Clr` (823), `FD_Set` (823) or `FD_IsSet` (823) to manipulate the individual elements of a set.

The pointers can be `Nil`.

`N` is the largest index of a nonzero entry plus 1. (= the largest file-descriptor + 1).

`Timeout` can be used to set a time limit. If `Timeout` can be two types :

1. `Timeout` is of type `PTime` and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If `Timeout` is `Nil`, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. `Timeout` is of type `Longint`. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a `Timeout` of type `PTime` which is `Nil`. Otherwise, `Timeout` contains a time in milliseconds.

When the `Timeout` is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the `Select` call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

**Errors:** On error, the function returns -1, and Errors are reported in `LinuxError` :

**SYS\_EBADF** An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTR** A non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL** `N` is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** `Select` was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: `SelectText` (855), `GetFS` (833), `FD_ZERO` (824), `FD_Clr` (823), `FD_Set` (823), `FD_IsSet` (823)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex33.pp`

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `FDS` : `FDSet`;

**begin**

```

  FD_Zero (FDS);
  FD_Set (0,FDS);
  Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
  { Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
  Select (1,@FDS,nil,nil,nil);
  { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
  readln;
  Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
  FD_Zero (FDS);
  FD_Set (0,FDS);

```

---

```

if Select (1,@FDS,nil ,nil ,2000)>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Thank you !')
  { FD_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }
else
  Writeln ( 'Too late !');
end.

```

---

### 31.12.89 SelectText

Synopsis: Wait for event on typed ontyped file.

Declaration: `function SelectText (var T: Text; Timeout: ptimeval) : LongInt`  
`function SelectText (var T: Text; Timeout: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SelectText` executes the `Select` (853) call on a file of type `Text`. You can specify a timeout in `Timeout`. The `SelectText` call determines itself whether it should check for read or write, depending on how the file was opened : With `Reset` it is checked for reading, with `Rewrite` and `Append` it is checked for writing.

Errors: See `Select` (853). `SYS_EBADF` can also mean that the file wasn't opened.

See also: `Select` (853), `GetFS` (833)

### 31.12.90 SetDate

Synopsis: Set the current system date.

Declaration: `function SetDate (Year: Word; Month: Word; Day: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDate` sets the system date to year, month, day. This is the kernel date, so it is in GMT. The time is not touched. The function returns `True` if the call was executed corretly, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** You must be root to execute this call.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError` (799)

See also: `GetDate` (830), `SetTime` (856), `SetDateTime` (855)

### 31.12.91 SetDateTime

Synopsis: Set the current system date and time

Declaration: `function SetDateTime (Year: Word; Month: Word; Day: Word; hour: Word;`  
`minute: Word; second: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDate` sets the system date and time to year, month, day, hour, min, Sec. This is the kernel date/time, so it is in GMT. The time is not touched. The function returns `True` if the call was executed corretly, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** You must be root to execute this call.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError` (799)

See also: `SetDate` (855), `SetTime` (856), `GetDateTime` (830)

### 31.12.92 SetPriority

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `procedure SetPriority(Which: Integer;Who: Integer;What: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetPriority` sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. `Which` can be one of the pre-defined constants:

**Prio\_Process**`Who` is interpreted as process ID

**Prio\_PGrp**`Who` is interpreted as process group ID

**Prio\_User**`Who` is interpreted as user ID

`Prio` is a value in the range -20 to 20.

For an example, see `Nice` (848).

Errors: Error checking must be done on `LinuxError`, since a priority can be negative.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using `which` and `who`.

**sys\_einval**`Which` was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: `GetPriority` (836), `Nice` (848)

### 31.12.93 SetTime

Synopsis: Set the current system time.

Declaration: `function SetTime(Hour: Word;Min: Word;Sec: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTime` sets the system time to `hour`, `min`, `Sec`. This is the kernel time, so it is in GMT. The date is not touched. The function returns `True` if the call was executed correctly, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** You must be root to execute this call.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError` (799)

See also: `GetTime` (837), `SetDate` (855), `SetDateTime` (855)

### 31.12.94 Shell

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function Shell(const Command: String) : LongInt`  
`function Shell(const Command: AnsiString) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Shell` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the `Fork` (826) or `Execve` (816) calls.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `POpen` (850), `Fork` (826), `Execve` (816)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex56.pp`

---

```

program example56;

uses oldlinux;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:=Shell ( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  WriteLn ( 'Command exited with status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 31.12.95 SigAction

Synopsis: Install signal handler

Declaration: `procedure SigAction(Signum: LongInt; Act: PSigActionRec;  
OldAct: PSigActionRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. `Act` and `Oldact` are pointers to a `SigActionRec` record. `SigNum` specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

If `Act` is non-nil, then the new action for signal `SigNum` is taken from it. If `OldAct` is non-nil, the old action is stored there. `Sa_Handler` may be `SIG_DFL` for the default action or `SIG_IGN` to ignore the signal. `Sa_Mask` Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. `Sa_Flags` Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP** If `signum` is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND** Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART** For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER** Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_einval** an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault** `Act`, `OldAct` point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr** System call was interrupted.

See also: `SigProcMask` (859), `SigPending` (859), `SigSuspend` (861), `Kill` (841)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex57.pp`

---

```

Program example57;

{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function.}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses oldlinux;

Var
    oa, na : PSigActionRec;

Procedure DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl;

begin
    writeln( 'Receiving signal: ', sig);
end;

begin
    new(na);
    new(oa);
    na^.Handler.sh:=@DoSig;
    na^.Sa_Mask:=0;
    na^.Sa_Flags:=0;
    na^.Sa_Restorer:=Nil;
    SigAction(SigUsr1, na, oa);
    if LinuxError <> 0 then
        begin
            writeln( 'Error: ', linuxerror, '.');
            halt(1);
        end;
    Writeln( 'Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');
    readln;
end.

```

---

### 31.12.96 Signal

Synopsis: Install signal handler (deprecated)

Declaration: `function Signal(Signum: LongInt; Handler: SignalHandler) : SignalHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `Signal` installs a new signal handler for signal `SigNum`. This call has the same functionality as the **SigAction** call. The return value for `Signal` is the old signal handler, or nil on error.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors :

**SIG\_ERR** An error occurred.

See also: `SigAction` ([857](#)), `Kill` ([841](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex58.pp

---

**Program** example58;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function.}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses oldlinux;

Procedure DoSig(sig : Longint);cdecl;

begin
  writeln('Receiving signal: ',sig);
end;

begin
  SigNal(SigUsr1,@DoSig);
  if LinuxError<>0 then
    begin
      writeln('Error: ',linuxerror, '.');
      halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln ('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');
  readln;
end.
```

---

### 31.12.97 SigPending

**Synopsis:** Return set of currently pending signals

**Declaration:** `function SigPending : SigSet`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Sigpending allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.) The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** SigAction ([857](#)), SigProcMask ([859](#)), SigSuspend ([861](#)), Signal ([858](#)), Kill ([841](#))

### 31.12.98 SigProcMask

**Synopsis:** Set list of blocked signals

**Declaration:** `procedure SigProcMask(How: LongInt; SSet: PSigSet; OldSSet: PSigSet)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on How :

**SIG\_BLOCK**The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the SSet argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK**The signals in SSet are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK**The list of blocked signals is set so SSet.

If OldSSet is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault**SSet or OldSSet point to an adress outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `SigAction` (857), `SigPending` (859), `SigSuspend` (861), `Kill` (841)

### 31.12.99 SigRaise

Synopsis: Raise a signal (send to current process)

Declaration: `procedure SigRaise(Sig: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SigRaise` sends a `Sig` signal to the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: `Kill` (841), `GetPid` (835)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex65.pp`

---

**Program** `example64`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SigRaise function. }*

**uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var**

`oa, na : PSigActionRec;`

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl;`

**begin**

`writeln('Receiving signal: ', sig);`

**end;**

**begin**

`new(na);`

`new(oa);`

`na^.handler.sh:=@DoSig;`

`na^.Sa_Mask:=0;`

`na^.Sa_Flags:=0;`

`na^.Sa_Restorer:= Nil;`

`SigAction(SigUsr1, na, oa);`

**if** `LinuxError <> 0` **then**

**begin**

`writeln('Error: ', linuxerror, '.');`

`halt(1);`

**end;**

`Writeln('Sending USR1 (', sigusr1, ') signal to self.');`

`SigRaise(sigusr1);`

**end.**

---

### 31.12.100 SigSuspend

Synopsis: Set signal mask and suspend process till signal is received

Declaration: `procedure SigSuspend(Mask: SigSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: SigSuspend temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in Mask, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: SigAction (857), SigProcMask (859), SigPending (859), Signal (858), Kill (841)

### 31.12.101 StringToPPChar

Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function StringToPPChar(var S: String) : ppchar`  
`function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString) : ppchar`  
`function StringToPPChar(S: Pchar) : ppchar`

Visibility: default

Description: StringToPPChar splits the string S in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of pchars that point to the first letters of the words in S. This array is terminated by a Nil pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of PChar; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various Exec calls.

Errors: None.

See also: CreateShellArgV (809), Execve (816), Execv (815)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex70.pp

---

**Program** Example70;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** S : **String**;  
P : PPChar;  
I : longint;

**begin**  
*// remark whitespace at end.*  
S:= 'This is a string with words. ';  
P:= StringToPPChar(S);  
I:=0;  
**While** P[I]<>Nil **do**  
**begin**  
**Writeln**( 'Word ',I, ' : ',P[I]);  
**Inc**(I);

```

    end;
    FreeMem(P, i*SizeOf(Pchar));
end.

```

---

### 31.12.102 SymLink

Synopsis: Create a symbolic link

Declaration: `function SymLink(OldPath: PathStr; NewPath: PathStr) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SymLink` makes `Newpath` point to the file in `OldPath`, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link.

The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eperm** The filesystem containing `oldpath` and `newpath` does not support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess** Write access for the directory containing `Newpath` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `OldPath` or `NewPath` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist** `NewPath` already exists.

**sys\_eloop** `OldPath` or `NewPath` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing `NewPath` has no room for another entry.

See also: [Link \(841\)](#), [UnLink \(871\)](#), [ReadLink \(852\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** `Example22;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Var** `F : Text;`  
`S : String;`

**begin**  
`Assign (F, 'test.txt');`  
`Rewrite (F);`  
`Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');`  
`Close(f);`  
*{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
**if not** `SymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt')` **then**

---

```

    writeln ( 'Error when symlinking !' );
    { Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt
      Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }
    if not Unlink ( 'test.txt' ) then
        Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
    Assign ( f, 'new.txt' );
    { This should fail, since the symbolic link
      points to a non-existent file ! }
    { $i- }
    Reset ( F );
    { $i+ }
    if IOResult=0 then
        Writeln ( 'This shouldn't happen' );
    { Now remove new.txt also }
    if not Unlink ( 'new.txt' ) then
        Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
end.

```

---

### 31.12.103 SysCall

Synopsis: Execute system call.

Declaration: `function SysCall(callnr: LongInt; var regs: SysCallRegs) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysCall` can be used to execute a direct system call. The call parameters must be encoded in `regs` and the call number must be specified by `callnr`. The call result is returned, and any modified registers are in `regs`

Errors: None.

See also: `SysCallRegs` ([795](#))

### 31.12.104 Sysinfo

Synopsis: Return kernel system information

Declaration: `function Sysinfo(var Info: TSysinfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInfo` returns system information in `Info`. Returned information in `Info` includes:

**uptime** Number of seconds since boot.

**loads** 1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.

**totalram** total amount of main memory.

**freeram** amount of free memory.

**sharedram** amount of shared memory.

**bufferram** amount of memory used by buffers.

**totalswap** total amount of swap space.

**freeswap** amount of free swap space.

**procs** number of current processes.

Errors: None.

See also: Uname ([871](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex64.pp

---

```

program Example64;

{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function }

Uses oldlinux;

Function Mb(L : Longint) : longint;

begin
    Mb:=L div (1024*1024);
end;

Var Info : TSysInfo;
    D,M,Secs,H : longint;

begin
    If Not SysInfo(Info) then
        Halt(1);
    With Info do
        begin
            D:=Uptime div (3600*24);
            UpTime:=UpTime mod (3600*24);
            h:=uptime div 3600;
            uptime:=uptime mod 3600;
            m:=uptime div 60;
            secs:=uptime mod 60;
            Writeln( 'Uptime : ',d,'days', 'h,' hours', 'm,' min', 'secs,' s.' );
            Writeln( 'Loads   : ',Loads[1], '/' ,Loads[2], '/' ,Loads[3]);
            Writeln( 'Total Ram   : ',Mb(totalram), 'Mb.' );
            Writeln( 'Free Ram    : ',Mb(freeram), 'Mb.' );
            Writeln( 'Shared Ram  : ',Mb(sharedram), 'Mb.' );
            Writeln( 'Buffer Ram  : ',Mb(bufferram), 'Mb.' );
            Writeln( 'Total Swap  : ',Mb(totalswap), 'Mb.' );
            Writeln( 'Free Swap   : ',Mb(freeswap), 'Mb.' );
        end;
    end.

```

---

### 31.12.105 S\_ISBLK

Synopsis: Is file a block device

Declaration: `function S_ISBLK(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: S\_ISBLK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns True.

See also: FStat ([829](#)), S\_ISLNK ([865](#)), S\_ISREG ([866](#)), S\_ISDIR ([865](#)), S\_ISCHR ([865](#)), S\_ISFIFO ([865](#)), S\_ISSOCK ([866](#))

### 31.12.106 S\_ISCHR

Synopsis: Is file a character device

Declaration: `function S_ISCHR(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISCHR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FStat` (829), `S_ISLNK` (865), `S_ISREG` (866), `S_ISDIR` (865), `S_ISBLK` (864), `S_ISFIFO` (865), `S_ISSOCK` (866)

### 31.12.107 S\_ISDIR

Synopsis: Is file a directory

Declaration: `function S_ISDIR(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISDIR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a directory. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FStat` (829), `S_ISLNK` (865), `S_ISREG` (866), `S_ISCHR` (865), `S_ISBLK` (864), `S_ISFIFO` (865), `S_ISSOCK` (866)

### 31.12.108 S\_ISFIFO

Synopsis: Is file a FIFO

Declaration: `function S_ISFIFO(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISFIFO` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FStat` (829), `S_ISLNK` (865), `S_ISREG` (866), `S_ISCHR` (865), `S_ISBLK` (864), `S_ISDIR` (865), `S_ISSOCK` (866)

### 31.12.109 S\_ISLNK

Synopsis: Is file a symbolic link

Declaration: `function S_ISLNK(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISLNK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FStat` (829), `S_ISFIFO` (865), `S_ISREG` (866), `S_ISCHR` (865), `S_ISBLK` (864), `S_ISDIR` (865), `S_ISSOCK` (866)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex53.pp`

---

```

Program Example53;

{ Program to demonstrate the S_ISLNK function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var Info : Stat;

begin
  if LStat (paramstr(1),info) then
    begin
      if S_ISLNK(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a link');
      if S_ISREG(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a regular file');
      if S_ISDIR(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a directory');
      if S_ISCHR(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a character device file');
      if S_ISBLK(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a block device file');
      if S_ISFIFO(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a named pipe (FIFO)');
      if S_ISSOCK(info.mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a socket');
      end;
    end.

```

---

### 31.12.110 S\_ISREG

Synopsis: Is file a regular file

Declaration: `function S_ISREG(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: S\_ISREG checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns True

See also: FStat ([829](#)), S\_ISFIFO ([865](#)), S\_ISLNK ([865](#)), S\_ISCHR ([865](#)), S\_ISBLK ([864](#)), S\_ISDIR ([865](#)), S\_ISSOCK ([866](#))

### 31.12.111 S\_ISSOCK

Synopsis: Is file a unix socket

Declaration: `function S_ISSOCK(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: S\_ISSOCK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns True.

See also: FStat ([829](#)), S\_ISFIFO ([865](#)), S\_ISLNK ([865](#)), S\_ISCHR ([865](#)), S\_ISBLK ([864](#)), S\_ISDIR ([865](#)), S\_ISREG ([866](#))

**31.12.112 TCDrain**

Synopsis: Terminal control: Wait till all data was transmitted

Declaration: `function TCDrain(fd: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCDrain` waits until all data to file descriptor `Fd` is transmitted.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`

See also: `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

**31.12.113 TCFlow**

Synopsis: Terminal control: Suspend transmission of data

Declaration: `function TCFlow(fd: LongInt;act: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCFlow` suspends/resumes transmission or reception of data to or from the file descriptor `Fd`, depending on the action `Act`.

This can be one of the following pre-defined values:

**TCOOFF**suspend reception/transmission

**TCOON**resume reception/transmission

**TCIOFF**transmit a stop character to stop input from the terminal

**TCION**transmit start to resume input from the terminal.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

**31.12.114 TCFlush**

Synopsis: Terminal control: Discard data buffer

Declaration: `function TCFlush(fd: LongInt;qsel: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCFlush` discards all data sent or received to/from file descriptor `fd`. `QSel` indicates which queue should be discard. It can be one of the following pre-defined values :

**TCIFLUSH**input buffer

**TCOFLUSH**output buffer

**TCIOFLUSH**both input and output buffers

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

**31.12.115 TCGetAttr**

Synopsis: Terminal Control: Get terminal attributes

Declaration: `function TCGetAttr(fd: LongInt; var tios: Termios) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCGetAttr` gets the terminal parameters from the terminal referred to by the file descriptor `fd` and returns them in a `TermIOS` structure `tios`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`

See also: `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetPGGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** `Example55`;

`uses` `oldlinux`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCGetAttr/TCSetAttr/CFMakeRaw functions. }*

**procedure** `ShowTermios`(**var** `tios`:`Termios`);  
**begin**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Input Flags : \$', `hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8)+#13`);  
    **WriteLn**( 'Output Flags : \$', `hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8)`);  
    **WriteLn**( 'Line Flags : \$', `hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8)`);  
    **WriteLn**( 'Control Flags: \$', `hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8)`);  
**end**;

**var**  
    `oldios` ,  
    `tios` : `Termios`;  
**begin**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Old attributes:');  
    `TCGetAttr`(1,`tios`);  
    `ShowTermios`(`tios`);  
    `oldios:=tios`;  
    **WriteLn**( 'Setting raw terminal mode');  
    `CFMakeRaw`(`tios`);  
    `TCSetAttr`(1,`TCSANOW`,`tios`);  
    **WriteLn**( 'Current attributes:');  
    `TCGetAttr`(1,`tios`);  
    `ShowTermios`(`tios`);  
    `TCSetAttr`(1,`TCSANOW`,`oldios`);  
**end**.

---

**31.12.116 TCGetPGGrp**

Synopsis: Terminal control: Get process group

Declaration: `function TCGetPGGrp(fd: LongInt; var id: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TCGetPGrp` returns the process group ID of a foreground process group in `Id`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

### 31.12.117 TCSendBreak

**Synopsis:** Terminal control: Send break

**Declaration:** `function TCSendBreak(fd: LongInt;duration: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TCSendBreak` Sends zero-valued bits on an asynchronouse serial connection described by file-descriptor `Fd`, for duration `Duration`. The function returns `True` if the action was performed successfully, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

### 31.12.118 TCSetAttr

**Synopsis:** Terminal control: Set attributes

**Declaration:** `function TCSetAttr(fd: LongInt;OptAct: LongInt;const tios: Termios) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TCSetAttr` sets the terminal parameters you specify in a `TermIOS` structure `Tios` for the terminal referred to by the file descriptor `Fd`.

`OptAct` specifies an optional action when the set need to be done, this could be one of the following pre-defined values:

**TCSANOW**set immediately.

**TCSADRAIN**wait for output.

**TCSAFLUSH**wait for output and discard all input not yet read.

The function Returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TCGetAttr` (868).

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

### 31.12.119 TCSetPGrp

Synopsis: Terminal control: Set process group

Declaration: `function TCSetPGrp(fd: LongInt;id: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCSetPGrp` Sets the Process Group Id to `Id`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TCGetPGrp` (868).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TTYName` (870), `IsATTY` (841)

### 31.12.120 TellDir

Synopsis: Return current location in a directory

Declaration: `function TellDir(p: PDir) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `TellDir` returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by `p`. It returns -1 on failure.

For an example, see `OpenDir` (849).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (809), `ReadDir` (851), `SeekDir` (853), `OpenDir` (849)

### 31.12.121 TTYname

Synopsis: Terminal control: Get terminal name

Declaration: `function TTYname(Handle: LongInt) : String`  
`function TTYname(var F: Text) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `TTYName` Returns the name of the terminal pointed to by `f`. `f` must be a terminal. `f` can be of type:

1. `longint` for file handles;
2. `Text` for text variables such as `input` etc.

Errors: Returns an empty string in case of an error. `Linuxerror` may be set to indicate what error occurred, but this is uncertain.

See also: `TCDrain` (867), `TCFlow` (867), `TCFlush` (867), `TCGetAttr` (868), `TCGetPGrp` (868), `TCSendBreak` (869), `TCSetAttr` (869), `TCSetPGrp` (870), `IsATTY` (841), `IOCtl` (839)

### 31.12.122 Umask

Synopsis: Set file creation mask.

Declaration: `function Umask(Mask: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: Change the file creation mask for the current user to `Mask`. The current mask is returned.

See also: `Chmod` ([805](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Old Umask was : ', Umask(Octal(111)));

**WRiteLn** ( 'New Umask is : ', Octal(111));

**end.**

---

### 31.12.123 Uname

Synopsis: Return system name.

Declaration: `function Uname(var unamerec: utsname) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Uname` gets the name and configuration of the current linux kernel, and returns it in `unamerec`.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

See also: `GetHostName` ([834](#)), `GetDomainName` ([831](#))

### 31.12.124 UnLink

Synopsis: Unlink (i.e. remove) a file.

Declaration: `function UnLink(Path: PathStr) : Boolean`  
               `function UnLink(Path: pchar) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLink` decreases the link count on file `Path`. `Path` can be of type `PathStr` or `PChar`. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk. The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` if the call failed.

For an example, see `Link` ([841](#)).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eaccess** You have no write access right in the directory containing `Path`, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of `Path`.

**sys\_eperm**The directory containing pathname has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent**A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir**Path refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**Path is on a read-only filesystem.

See also: [Link \(841\)](#), [SymLink \(862\)](#)

### 31.12.125 Utime

**Synopsis:** Set access and modification times of a file (touch).

**Declaration:** `function Utime(const path: PathStr; utim: UTimeBuf) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Utime` sets the access and modification times of a file. the `utimbuf` record contains 2 fields, `actime`, and `modtime`, both of type `Longint`. They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some filesystem (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: [GetEpochTime \(832\)](#), [Chown \(806\)](#), [Access \(799\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** utim : utimbuf;  
year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;

```
begin
  { Set access and modification time of executable source }
  GetTime ( hour, minute, second );
  GetDate ( year, month, day );
  utim.actime := LocalToEpoch ( year, month, day, hour, minute, second );
  utim.modtime := utim.actime;
  if not Utime ( 'ex25.pp', utim ) then
    writeln ( 'Call to UTime failed !' )
  else
    begin
      Write ( 'Set access and modification times to : ' );
      Write ( Hour:2, ':', minute:2, ':', second, ', ' );
```

```

        Writeln (Day:2, ' / ', month:2, ' / ', year:4);
    end;
end.

```

---

### 31.12.126 WaitPid

Synopsis: Wait for a process to terminate

Declaration: `function WaitPid(Pid: LongInt; Status: pointer; Options: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitPid` waits for a child process with process ID `Pid` to exit. The value of `Pid` can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of `pid`.

**Pid = -1** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of `Pid`.

The `Options` parameter can be used to specify further how `WaitPid` behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes `Waitpid` to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes `WaitPid` to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

**\_\_WCLONE** Causes `WaitPid` also to wait for threads created by the `Clone` (807) call.

Upon return, it returns the exit status of the process, or -1 in case of failure.

For an example, see `Fork` (826).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `Fork` (826), `Execve` (816)

### 31.12.127 WaitProcess

Synopsis: Wait for process to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitProcess(Pid: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitProcess` waits for process `PID` to exit. `WaitProcess` is equivalent to the `WaitPID` (873) call:

```
WaitPid(PID, @result, 0)
```

Handles of Signal interrupts (`errno=EINTR`), and returns the Exitcode of Process `PID` (`>=0`) or - Status if it was terminated

Errors: None.

See also: `WaitPID` (873), `WTERMSIG` (875), `WSTOPSIG` (875), `WIFEXITED` (874), `WIFSTOPPED` (874), `WIFSIGNALED` (874), `W_EXITCODE` (875), `W_STOPCODE` (875), `WEXITSTATUS` (874)

### 31.12.128 WEXITSTATUS

Synopsis: Extract the exit status from the `WaitPID` (873) result.

Declaration: `function WEXITSTATUS (Status: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `WEXITSTATUS` can be used to extract the exit status from `Status`, the result of the `WaitPID` (873) call.

See also: `WaitPID` (873), `WaitProcess` (873), `WTERMSIG` (875), `WSTOPSIG` (875), `WIFEXITED` (874), `WIFSTOPPED` (874), `WIFSIGNALED` (874), `W_EXITCODE` (875), `W_STOPCODE` (875)

### 31.12.129 WIFEXITED

Synopsis: Check whether the process exited normally

Declaration: `function WIFEXITED (Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFEXITED` checks `Status` and returns `True` if the status indicates that the process terminated normally, i.e. was not stopped by a signal.

See also: `WaitPID` (873), `WaitProcess` (873), `WTERMSIG` (875), `WSTOPSIG` (875), `WIFSTOPPED` (874), `WIFSIGNALED` (874), `W_EXITCODE` (875), `W_STOPCODE` (875), `WEXITSTATUS` (874)

### 31.12.130 WIFSIGNALED

Synopsis: Check whether the process was exited by a signal.

Declaration: `function WIFSIGNALED (Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSIGNALED` returns `True` if `Status` indicates that the process exited because it received a signal.

See also: `WaitPID` (873), `WaitProcess` (873), `WTERMSIG` (875), `WSTOPSIG` (875), `WIFEXITED` (874), `WIFSTOPPED` (874), `W_EXITCODE` (875), `W_STOPCODE` (875), `WEXITSTATUS` (874)

### 31.12.131 WIFSTOPPED

Synopsis: Check whether the process is currently stopped.

Declaration: `function WIFSTOPPED (Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSTOPPED` checks `Status` and returns `true` if the process is currently stopped. This is only possible if `WUNTRACED` was specified in the options of `WaitPID` (873).

See also: `WaitPID` (873), `WaitProcess` (873), `WTERMSIG` (875), `WSTOPSIG` (875), `WIFEXITED` (874), `WIFSIGNALED` (874), `W_EXITCODE` (875), `W_STOPCODE` (875), `WEXITSTATUS` (874)

### 31.12.132 WSTOPSIG

Synopsis: Return the exit code from the process.

Declaration: `function WSTOPSIG(Status: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: WSTOPSIG is an alias for WEXITSTATUS (874).

See also: WaitPID (873), WaitProcess (873), WTERMSIG (875), WIFEXITED (874), WIFSTOPPED (874), WIFSIGNALED (874), W\_EXITCODE (875), W\_STOPCODE (875), WEXITSTATUS (874)

### 31.12.133 WTERMSIG

Synopsis: Return the signal that caused a process to exit.

Declaration: `function WTERMSIG(Status: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: WTERMSIG extracts from Status the signal number which caused the process to exit.

See also: WaitPID (873), WaitProcess (873), WSTOPSIG (875), WIFEXITED (874), WIFSTOPPED (874), WIFSIGNALED (874), W\_EXITCODE (875), W\_STOPCODE (875), WEXITSTATUS (874)

### 31.12.134 W\_EXITCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on an return code and signal.

Declaration: `function W_EXITCODE(ReturnCode: Integer;Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: W\_EXITCODE combines ReturnCode and Signal to a status code fit for WaitPid.

See also: WaitPID (873), WaitProcess (873), WTERMSIG (875), WSTOPSIG (875), WIFEXITED (874), WIFSTOPPED (874), WIFSIGNALED (874), W\_STOPCODE (875), WEXITSTATUS (874)

### 31.12.135 W\_STOPCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on a signal.

Declaration: `function W_STOPCODE(Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: W\_STOPCODE constructs an exit status based on Signal, which will cause WIFSIGNALED (874) to return True

See also: WaitPID (873), WaitProcess (873), WTERMSIG (875), WSTOPSIG (875), WIFEXITED (874), WIFSTOPPED (874), WIFSIGNALED (874), W\_EXITCODE (875), WEXITSTATUS (874)

## Chapter 32

# Reference for unit 'ports'

### 32.1 Overview

The ports unit implements the `port` constructs found in Turbo Pascal. It uses classes and default array properties to do this.

The unit exists on linux, os/2 and dos. It is implemented only for compatibility with Turbo Pascal. It's usage is discouraged, because using ports is not portable programming, and the operating system may not even allow it (for instance Windows).

Under linux, your program must be run as root, or the `IOPerm` call must be set in order to set appropriate permissions on the port access.

### 32.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 32.2.1 Variables

`port : tport`

Default instance of type `TPort` ([877](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
port[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the integer 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

`portb : tport`

Default instance of type `TPort` ([877](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portb[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the byte 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

```
portl : tportl
```

Default instance of type TPortL ([877](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portl[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the longint 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

```
portw : tportw
```

Default instance of type TPortW ([878](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portw[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the word 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

## 32.3 tport

### 32.3.1 Description

The TPort type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

### 32.3.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">877</a>	pp	rw	Access integer-sized port by port number

### 32.3.3 tport.pp

Synopsis: Access integer-sized port by port number

Declaration: Property pp[w: LongInt]: Byte; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access integer-sized port by port number

## 32.4 tportl

### 32.4.1 Description

The TPortL type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

### 32.4.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">878</a>	pp	rw	Access Longint-sized port by port number

### 32.4.3 tportl.pp

Synopsis: Access Longint-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: LongInt]: LongInt; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Access Longint-sized port by port number

## 32.5 tportw

### 32.5.1 Description

The `TPortW` type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

### 32.5.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">878</a>	pp	rw	Access word-sized port by port number

### 32.5.3 tportw.pp

Synopsis: Access word-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: LongInt]: Word; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Access word-sized port by port number

## Chapter 33

# Reference for unit 'printer'

### 33.1 Overview

This chapter describes the PRINTER unit for Free Pascal. It was written for dos by Florian Klaempfl, and it was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and has been ported to Windows and os/2 as well. Its basic functionality is the same for all supported systems, although there are minor differences on linux/unix.

### 33.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 33.2.1 Variables

`Lst : text`

`Lst` is the standard printing device.

On linux, `Lst` is set up using `AssignLst ('/tmp/PID.lst')`.

### 33.3 Procedures and functions

#### 33.3.1 AssignLst

Synopsis: Assign text file to printing device

Declaration: `procedure AssignLst (var F: text; ToFile: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignLst` Assigns to `F` a printing device - *Unix only*. `ToFile` is a string with the following form:

- `|filename options'` : This sets up a pipe with the program filename, with the given options, such as in the `popen()` call.
- `'filename'` : Prints to file filename. Filename can contain the string 'PID' (No Quotes), which will be replaced by the PID of your program. When closing `lst`, the file will be sent to `lpr` and deleted. (`lpr` should be in `PATH`)
- `{'filename|'}` Idem as previous, only the file is NOT sent to `lpr`, nor is it deleted. (useful for opening `/dev/printer` or for later printing)

See also: `lst` ([879](#))

**Listing:** `./printex/printex.pp`

---

```

program testprn;

uses printer;

var i : integer;
    f : text;

begin
  writeln ( 'Test of printer unit' );
  writeln ( 'Writing to lst...' );
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (lst, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (lst);
  writeln ( 'Done.' );
  { $ifdef Unix }
  writeln ( 'Writing to pipe...' );
  assignlst ( f, '|/usr/bin/lpr -m' );
  rewrite ( f );
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln ( f, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13 );
  close ( f );
  writeln ( 'Done.' )
  { $endif }
end.

```

---

### 33.3.2 InitPrinter

Synopsis: Initialize the printer

Declaration: `procedure InitPrinter(const PrinterName: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initialize the printer

### 33.3.3 IsLstAvailable

Synopsis: Determine whether printer is available.

Declaration: `function IsLstAvailable : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether printer is available.

## Chapter 34

# Reference for unit 'Sockets'

### 34.1 Used units

Table 34.1: Used units by unit 'Sockets'

Name	Page
baseunix	<a href="#">881</a>
UnixType	<a href="#">881</a>

### 34.2 Overview

This document describes the SOCKETS unit for Free Pascal. it was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and ported to Windows by Florian Klaempfl.

### 34.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 34.3.1 Constants

`AF_APPLETALK = 5`

Address family Appletalk DDP

`AF_ASH = 18`

Address family: Ash

`AF_ATMPVC = 8`

Address family: ATM PVCs

`AF_ATMSVC = 20`

Address family: ATM SVCs

AF\_AX25 = 3

Address family Amateur Radio AX.25

AF\_BLUETOOTH = 31

Address family: Bluetooth sockets

AF\_BRIDGE = 7

Address family Multiprotocol bridge

AF\_DECnet = 12

Address family: Reserved for DECnet project.

AF\_ECONET = 19

Address family: Acorn Econet

AF\_INET = 2

Address family Internet IP Protocol

AF\_INET6 = 10

Address family IP version 6

AF\_IPX = 4

Address family Novell IPX

AF\_IRDA = 23

Address family: IRDA sockets

AF\_KEY = 15

Address family: PF\_KEY key management API

AF\_LLC = 26

Address family: Linux LLC

AF\_LOCAL = 1

Address family: Unix socket

AF\_MAX = 32

Address family Maximum value

AF\_NETBEUI = 13

Address family: Reserved for 802.2LLC project

AF\_NETLINK = 16

Address family: ?

AF\_NETROM = 6

Address family Amateur radio NetROM

AF\_PACKET = 17

Address family: Packet family

AF\_PPPOX = 24

Address family: PPPoX sockets

AF\_ROSE = 11

Address family: Amateur Radio X.25 PLP

AF\_ROUTE = AF\_NETLINK

Address family: Alias to emulate 4.4BSD.

AF\_SECURITY = 14

Address family: Security callback pseudo AF

AF\_SNA = 22

Address family: Linux SNA project

AF\_TIPC = 30

Address family: TIPC sockets

AF\_UNIX = 1

Address family Unix domain sockets

AF\_UNSPEC = 0

Address family Not specified

AF\_WANPIPE = 25

Address family: Wanpipe API Sockets

`AF_X25 = 9`

Address family Reserved for X.25 project

`EsockEACCESS = ESysEAcces`

Access forbidden error

`EsockEBADF = EsysEBADF`

Alias: bad file descriptor

`EsockEFAULT = EsysEFAULT`

Alias: an error occurred

`EsockEINTR = EsysEINTR`

Alias : operation interrupted

`EsockEINVAL = EsysEINVAL`

Alias: Invalid value specified

`EsockEMFILE = ESysEmfile`

Error code ?

`EsockEMSGSIZE = ESysEMsgSize`

Wrong message size error

`EsockENOBUFS = ESysENoBufs`

No buffer space available error

`EsockENOTCONN = ESysENotConn`

Not connected error

`EsockENOTSOCK = ESysENotSock`

File descriptor is not a socket error

`EsockEPROTONOSUPPORT = ESysEProtoNoSupport`

Protocol not supported error

`EsockEWOULDBLOCK = ESysEWouldBlock`

Operation would block error

INADDR\_ANY = CARDINAL ( 0 )

A bitmask matching any IP address on the local machine.

INADDR\_NONE = CARDINAL ( \$FFFFFFFF )

A bitmask matching no valid IP address

IPPROTO\_AH = 51

authentication header.

IPPROTO\_COMP = 108

Compression Header Protocol.

IPPROTO\_DSTOPTS = 60

IPv6 destination options.

IPPROTO\_EGP = 8

Exterior Gateway Protocol.

IPPROTO\_ENCAP = 98

Encapsulation Header.

IPPROTO\_ESP = 50

encapsulating security payload.

IPPROTO\_FRAGMENT = 44

IPv6 fragmentation header.

IPPROTO\_GRE = 47

General Routing Encapsulation.

IPPROTO\_HOPOPTS = 0

IPv6 Hop-by-Hop options.

IPPROTO\_ICMP = 1

Internet Control Message Protocol.

IPPROTO\_ICMPV6 = 58

ICMPv6.

IPPROTO\_IDP = 22

XNS IDP protocol.

IPPROTO\_IGMP = 2

Internet Group Management Protocol.

IPPROTO\_IP = 0

Dummy protocol for TCP.

IPPROTO\_IPIP = 4

IPIP tunnels (older KA9Q tunnels use 94).

IPPROTO\_IPV6 = 41

IPv6 header.

IPPROTO\_MAX = 255

Maximum value for IPPROTO options

IPPROTO\_MTP = 92

Multicast Transport Protocol.

IPPROTO\_NONE = 59

IPv6 no next header.

IPPROTO\_PIM = 103

Protocol Independent Multicast.

IPPROTO\_PUP = 12

PUP protocol.

IPPROTO\_RAW = 255

Raw IP packets.

IPPROTO\_ROUTING = 43

IPv6 routing header.

IPPROTO\_RSVP = 46

Reservation Protocol.

IPPROTO\_SCTP = 132

Stream Control Transmission Protocol.

IPPROTO\_TCP = 6

Transmission Control Protocol.

IPPROTO\_TP = 29

SO Transport Protocol Class 4.

IPPROTO\_UDP = 17

User Datagram Protocol.

IPV6\_ADDRFORM = 1

Change the IPV6 address into a different address family. Deprecated

IPV6\_ADD\_MEMBERSHIP = IPV6\_JOIN\_GROUP

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_AUTHHDR = 10

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Deliver authentication header messages

IPV6\_CHECKSUM = 7

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_DROP\_MEMBERSHIP = IPV6\_LEAVE\_GROUP

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_DSTOPTS = 4

Deliver destination option control messages

IPV6\_HOPLIMIT = 8

Deliver an integer containing the HOP count

IPV6\_HOPOPTS = 3

Deliver hop option control messages

IPV6\_IPSEC\_POLICY = 34

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_JOIN\_ANYCAST = 27

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_JOIN\_GROUP = 20

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control membership (join group) in multicast groups

IPV6\_LEAVE\_ANYCAST = 28

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_LEAVE\_GROUP = 21

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control membership (leave group) in multicast groups

IPV6\_MTU = 24

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set the MTU for the socket

IPV6\_MTU\_DISCOVER = 23

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set Control path MTU Discovery on the socket

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_HOPS = 18

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set the multicast hop limit.

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_IF = 17

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set device for multicast packages on the socket.

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 19

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control whether socket sees multicast packages that it has sent itself

IPV6\_NEXTHOP = 9

sendmsg: set next hop for IPV6 datagram

IPV6\_PKTINFO = 2

Change delivery options for incoming IPV6 datagrams

IPV6\_PKTOPTIONS = 6

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_DO = 2

Always DF.

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_DONT = 0

Never send DF frames.

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_WANT = 1

Use per route hints.

IPV6\_RECVERR = 25

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control receiving of asynchronous error options

IPV6\_ROUTER\_ALERT = 22

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set Pass all forwarded packets containing router alert option

IPV6\_RTHDR = 5

Deliver routing header control messages

IPV6\_RTHDR\_LOOSE = 0

Hop doesn't need to be neighbour.

IPV6\_RTHDR\_STRICT = 1

Hop must be a neighbour.

IPV6\_RTHDR\_TYPE\_0 = 0

IPv6 Routing header type 0.

IPV6\_RXDSTOPTS = IPV6\_DSTOPTS

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_RXHOPOPTS = IPV6\_HOPOPTS

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_RXSRCRT = IPV6\_RTHDR

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_UNICAST\_HOPS = 16

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set unicast hop limit

IPV6\_V6ONLY = 26

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Handle IPV6 connections only

IPV6\_XFRM\_POLICY = 35

Undocumented Getssockopt option ?

IP\_ADD\_MEMBERSHIP = 35

add an IP group membership

IP\_ADD\_SOURCE\_MEMBERSHIP = 39

join source group

IP\_BLOCK\_SOURCE = 38

block data from source

IP\_DEFAULT\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 1

Undocumented ?

IP\_DEFAULT\_MULTICAST\_TTL = 1

Undocumented ?

IP\_DROP\_MEMBERSHIP = 36

drop an IP group membership

IP\_DROP\_SOURCE\_MEMBERSHIP = 40

leave source group

IP\_HDRINCL = 3

Header is included with data.

IP\_MAX\_MEMBERSHIPS = 20

Maximum group memberships for multicast messages

IP\_MSFILTER = 41

Undocumented ?

IP\_MTU\_DISCOVER = 10

Undocumented ?

IP\_MULTICAST\_IF = 32

set/get IP multicast i/f

IP\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 34

set/get IP multicast loopback

IP\_MULTICAST\_TTL = 33

set/get IP multicast ttl

IP\_OPTIONS = 4

IP per-packet options.

IP\_PKTINFO = 8

Undocumented ?

IP\_PKTOPTIONS = 9

Undocumented ?

IP\_PMTUDISC = 10

Undocumented ?

IP\_PMTUDISC\_DO = 2

Always DF.

IP\_PMTUDISC\_DONT = 0

Never send DF frames.

IP\_PMTUDISC\_WANT = 1

Use per route hints.

IP\_RECVERR = 11

Undocumented ?

IP\_RECVOPTS = 6

Receive all IP options w/datagram.

IP\_RECVRETOPTS = IP\_RETOPTS

Receive IP options for response.

IP\_RECVTOS = 13

Undocumented ?

IP\_RECVTTL = 12

Undocumented ?

IP\_RETOPTS = 7

Set/get IP per-packet options.

IP\_ROUTER\_ALERT = 5

Undocumented ?

IP\_TOS = 1

IP type of service and precedence.

IP\_TTL = 2

IP time to live.

IP\_UNBLOCK\_SOURCE = 37

unblock data from source

MCAST\_BLOCK\_SOURCE = 43

block from given group

MCAST\_EXCLUDE = 0

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_INCLUDE = 1

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_JOIN\_GROUP = 42

join any-source group

MCAST\_JOIN\_SOURCE\_GROUP = 46

join source-spec group

MCAST\_LEAVE\_GROUP = 45

leave any-source group

MCAST\_LEAVE\_SOURCE\_GROUP = 47

leave source-spec group

MCAST\_MSFILTER = 48

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_UNBLOCK\_SOURCE = 44

unblock from given group

MSG\_CONFIRM = 0x0800

Send flags: Conform connection

MSG\_CTRUNC = 0x0008

Receive flags: Control Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_DONTROUTE = 0x0004

Send flags: don't use gateway

MSG\_DONTWAIT = 0x0040

Receive flags: Non-blocking operation request.

MSG\_EOF = MSG\_FIN

Alias for MSG\_FIN

MSG\_EOR = 0x0080

Receive flags: End of record

MSG\_ERRQUEUE = 0x2000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_FIN = 0x0200

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_MORE = 0x8000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_NOSIGNAL = 0x4000

Receive flags: Suppress SIG\_PIPE signal.

MSG\_OOB = 0x0001

Receive flags: receive out-of-band data.

MSG\_PEEK = \$0002

Receive flags: peek at data, don't remove from buffer.

MSG\_PROXY = \$0010

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_RST = \$1000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_SYN = \$0400

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_TRUNC = \$0020

Receive flags: packet Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_TRYHARD = MSG\_DONTROUTE

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_WAITALL = \$0100

Receive flags: Wait till operation completed.

NoAddress : in\_addr = (s\_addr:0 )

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoAddress6 : in6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: ( 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 ) )

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

NoNet : in\_addr = (s\_addr:0 )

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoNet6 : in6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: ( 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 ) )

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

PF\_APPLETALK = AF\_APPLETALK

Protocol family: Appletalk DDP

PF\_ASH = AF\_ASH

Protocol family: Ash

PF\_ATMPVC = AF\_ATMPVC

Protocol family: ATM PVCs

PF\_ATMSVC = AF\_ATMSVC

Protocol family: ATM SVCs

PF\_AX25 = AF\_AX25

Protocol family: Amateur Radio AX.25

PF\_BLUETOOTH = AF\_BLUETOOTH

Protocol family: Bluetooth sockets

PF\_BRIDGE = AF\_BRIDGE

Protocol family: Multiprotocol bridge

PF\_DECnet = AF\_DECnet

Protocol Family: DECNET project

PF\_ECONET = AF\_ECONET

Protocol family: Acorn Econet

PF\_INET = AF\_INET

Protocol family: Internet IP Protocol

PF\_INET6 = AF\_INET6

Protocol family: IP version 6

PF\_IPX = AF\_IPX

Protocol family: Novell IPX

PF\_IRDA = AF\_IRDA

Protocol family: IRDA sockets

PF\_KEY = AF\_KEY

Protocol family: Key management API

PF\_LLC = AF\_LLC

Protocol family: Linux LLC

PF\_LOCAL = AF\_LOCAL

Protocol family: Unix socket

PF\_MAX = AF\_MAX

Protocol family: Maximum value

PF\_NETBEUI = AF\_NETBEUI

Protocol family: Reserved for 802.2LLC project

PF\_NETLINK = AF\_NETLINK

Protocol family: ?

PF\_NETROM = AF\_NETROM

Protocol family:Amateur radio NetROM

PF\_PACKET = AF\_PACKET

Protocol family: Packet family

PF\_PPPOX = AF\_PPPOX

Protocol family: PPPoX sockets

PF\_ROSE = AF\_ROSE

Protocol family: Amateur Radio X.25 PLP

PF\_ROUTE = AF\_ROUTE

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_SECURITY = AF\_SECURITY

Protocol family: Security callback pseudo PF

PF\_SNA = AF\_SNA

Protocol Family: Linux SNA project

PF\_TIPC = AF\_TIPC

Protocol family: TIPC sockets

PF\_UNIX = AF\_UNIX

Protocol family: Unix domain sockets

PF\_UNSPEC = AF\_UNSPEC

Protocol family: Unspecified

PF\_WANPIPE = AF\_WANPIPE

Protocol family: Wanpipe API Sockets

PF\_X25 = AF\_X25

Protocol family: Reserved for X.25 project

SCM\_SRCRT = IPV6\_RXSRCRT

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

SCM\_TIMESTAMP = SO\_TIMESTAMP

Socket option: ?

SHUT\_RD = 0

Shutdown read part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_RDWR = 2

Shutdown read and write part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_WR = 1

Shutdown write part of full duplex socket

SOCK\_DGRAM = 2

Type of socket: datagram (conn.less) socket (UDP)

SOCK\_MAXADDRLLEN = 255

Maximum socket address length for Bind (907) call.

SOCK\_RAW = 3

Type of socket: raw socket

SOCK\_RDM = 4

Type of socket: reliably-delivered message

SOCK\_SEQPACKET = 5

Type of socket: sequential packet socket

SOCK\_STREAM = 1

Type of socket: stream (connection) type socket (TCP)

SOL\_ICMPV6 = 58

Socket level values for IPv6: ICMPV6

SOL\_IP = 0

Undocumented ?

SOL\_IPV6 = 41

Socket level values for IPv6: IPV6

SOL\_SOCKET = 1

Socket option level: Socket level

SOMAXCONN = 128

Maximum queue length specifiable by listen.

SO\_ACCEPTCONN = 30

Socket option: ?

SO\_ATTACH\_FILTER = 26

Socket option: ?

SO\_BINDTODEVICE = 25

Socket option: ?

SO\_BROADCAST = 6

Socket option: Broadcast

SO\_BSDCOMPAT = 14

Socket option: ?

SO\_DEBUG = 1

Socket option level: debug

SO\_DETACH\_FILTER = 27

Socket option: ?

SO\_DONTROUTE = 5

Socket option: Don't route

SO\_ERROR = 4

Socket option: Error

SO\_KEEPALIVE = 9

Socket option: keep alive

SO\_LINGER = 13

Socket option: ?

SO\_NO\_CHECK = 11

Socket option: ?

SO\_OOBINLINE = 10

Socket option: ?

SO\_PASSCRED = 16

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERCRECRED = 17

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERNAME = 28

Socket option: ?

SO\_PRIORITY = 12

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVBUF = 8

Socket option: receive buffer

SO\_RCVLOWAT = 18

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVTIMEO = 20

Socket option: ?

SO\_REUSEADDR = 2

Socket option: Reuse address

SO\_SECURITY\_AUTHENTICATION = 22

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_NETWORK = 24

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_TRANSPORT = 23

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDBUF = 7

Socket option: Send buffer

SO\_SNDLOWAT = 19

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDTIMEO = 21

Socket option: ?

SO\_TIMESTAMP = 29

Socket option: ?

SO\_TYPE = 3

Socket option: Type

S\_IN = 0

Input socket in socket pair.

S\_OUT = 1

Output socket in socket pair

TCP\_CONGESTION = 13

Get/set the congestion-control algorithm for this socket

TCP\_CORK = 3

Get/Set CORK algorithm: Send only complete packets

TCP\_DEFER\_ACCEPT = 9

Get/Set deferred accept on server socket

TCP\_INFO = 11

Get TCP connection information (linux only)

TCP\_KEEPCNT = 6

Get/Set retry count for unacknowledged KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_KEEPIDL = 4

Get/Set inactivity interval between KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_KEEPINTVL = 5

Get/Set retry interval for unacknowledged KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_LINGER2 = 8

Get/Set Linger2 flag

TCP\_MAXSEG = 2

Get/Set Maximum segment size

TCP\_MD5SIG = 14

Get/Set TCP MD5 signature option

TCP\_NODELAY = 1

Get/Set No delay flag: disable Nagle algorithm

TCP\_QUICKACK = 12

Get/Set quick ACK packet option.

TCP\_SYNCNT = 7

Get/Set number of SYN packets to send before giving up on connection establishment

TCP\_WINDOW\_CLAMP = 10

Get/Set maximum packet size

UDP\_CORK = 1

Get/Set UDP CORK algorithm on datagram sockets

UDP\_ENCAP = 100

Get/Set UDP encapsulation flag for IPSec datagram sockets

UDP\_ENCAP\_ESPINUDP = 2

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

UDP\_ENCAP\_ESPINUDP\_NON\_IKE = 1

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

UDP\_ENCAP\_L2TPINUDP = 3

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

### 34.3.2 Types

```
in6_addr = packed record
end
```

Record used to describe a general IPV6 address.

```
in_addr = packed record
end
```

General inet socket address.

```
linger = packed record
  l_onoff : cint;
  l_linger : cint;
end
```

This record is used in the `setsockopt` (881) call to specify linger options.

PIn6Addr = pin6\_addr

Pointer to in6\_addr (902) type.

pin6\_addr = ^in6\_addr

Pointer to Tin6\_addr (904)

PInAddr = pin\_addr

Alias for pin\_addr (903)

PInetSockAddr = psockaddr\_in

Pointer to sockaddr\_in (903)

```
PInetSockAddr6 = psockaddr_in6
```

Pointer to sockaddr\_in6 (904) type

```
pin_addr = ^in_addr
```

Pointer to in\_addr (902) record.

```
plinger = ^linger
```

Pointer to linger (902) type.

```
psockaddr = ^sockaddr
```

Pointer to TSocketAddr (904)

```
psockaddr_in = ^sockaddr_in
```

Pointer to sockaddr\_in (903)

```
psockaddr_in6 = ^sockaddr_in6
```

Pointer to sockaddr\_in6 (904)

```
psockaddr_un = ^sockaddr_un
```

Pointer to sockaddr\_un (904) type.

```
sa_family_t = cushort
```

Address family type

```
sockaddr = packed record
end
```

sockaddr is used to store a general socket address for the Bind (907), Recv (881) and Send (881) calls.

```
sockaddr_in = packed record
end
```

sockaddr\_in is used to store a INET socket address for the Bind (907), Recv (881) and Send (881) calls.

```

sockaddr_in6 = packed record
  sin6_family : sa_family_t;
  sin6_port   : cuint16;
  sin6_flowinfo : cuint32;
  sin6_addr   : in6_addr;
  sin6_scope_id : cuint32;
end

```

Alias for `sockaddr_in6` (904)

```

sockaddr_un = packed record
  sun_family : sa_family_t;
  sun_path   : Array[0..107] of Char;
end

```

`sockaddr_un` is used to store a UNIX socket address for the `Bind` (907), `Recv` (881) and `Send` (881) calls.

```
TIn6Addr = in6_addr
```

Alias for `in6_addr` (902) type.

```
Tin6_addr = in6_addr
```

Alias for `sockaddr_in6` (904)

```
TInAddr = in_addr
```

Alias for `in_addr` (902) record type.

```
TInetSockAddr = sockaddr_in
```

Alias for `sockaddr_in` (903)

```
TInetSockAddr6 = sockaddr_in6
```

Alias for `sockaddr_in6` (904)

```
TIn_addr = in_addr
```

Alias for `in_addr` (902) record type.

```
TLinger = linger
```

Alias for `linger` (881)

```
TSockAddr = sockaddr
```

```
TSockArray = Array[1..2] of LongInt
```

Type returned by the `SocketPair` (881) call.

```
Tsocket = LongInt
```

Alias for easy kylix porting

```
TSockLen = BaseUnix.TSocklen
```

The actual type of `TSockLen` depends on the platform.

```
TSockPairArray = Array[0..1] of LongInt
```

Array of sockets, used in `SocketPair` (881) call.

```
TUnixSockAddr = packed record
    family : sa_family_t;
    path : Array[0..107] of Char;
end
```

Alias for `sockaddr_un` (904)

## 34.4 Procedures and functions

### 34.4.1 Accept

Synopsis: Accept a connection from a socket (deprecated).

```
Declaration: function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: TInetSockAddr; var SockIn: File;
    var SockOut: File) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: TInetSockAddr; var SockIn: text;
    var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: String; var SockIn: text;
    var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: String; var SockIn: File;
    var SockOut: File) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `Sock`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned. On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addr`, and sets its length in `AddrLen`. `Addr` should be pointing to enough space, and `AddrLen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

The alternate forms of the `Accept` (905) command, with the `Text` or `File` parameters are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Accept` (905) function and the `Sock2Text` (921) or `Sock2File` (921) functions. These functions return `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`Addr` points outside your address space.

**SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: `Listen` (881), `Connect` (907), `Bind` (907)

**Listing:** `./sockex/socksvr.pp`

---

**Program** `server`;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}

uses Sockets;

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer    : string[255];
  S         : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  SAddr     : TInetSockAddr;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    PError ('Server : Socket : ');
  SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 50000 in network order }
  SAddr.sin_port:=htons(50000);
  SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=0;
  if fpBind(S, @SAddr, sizeof(saddr))=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Bind : ');
  if fpListen (S, 1)=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Listen : ');
  Writeln ('Waiting for Connect from Client, run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if not Accept (S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    PError ('Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  Rewrite(Sout);
  Writeln(Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(SOut);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;
end.
```

---

### 34.4.2 Bind

Synopsis: Bind a socket to an address (deprecated).

Declaration: `function Bind(Socket: LongInt; const addr: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Bind` binds the socket `Socket` to address `Addr`. `Addr` has length `AddrLen`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

The form of the `Bind` command with the `TUnixSockAddr` (905) is equivalent to subsequently calling `Str2UnixSockAddr` (922) and the regular `Bind` function. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are returned in `SocketError` and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_EINVAL** The socket is already bound to an address,

**SYS\_EACCESS** Address is protected and you don't have permission to open it.

More errors can be found in the Unix man pages.

See also: `Socket` (881)

### 34.4.3 CloseSocket

Synopsis: Closes a socket handle.

Declaration: `function CloseSocket(Socket: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseSocket` closes a socket handle. It returns 0 if the socket was closed successfully, -1 if it failed.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `Socket` (881)

### 34.4.4 Connect

Synopsis: Open a connection to a server socket (deprecated).

```
Declaration: function Connect(Socket: LongInt; const addr: TInetSockAddr;
                           var SocketIn: text; var SocketOut: text) : Boolean
function Connect(Socket: LongInt; const addr: TInetSockAddr;
                           var SocketIn: File; var SocketOut: File) : Boolean
function Connect(Socket: LongInt; const addr: String; var SocketIn: text;
                           var SocketOut: text) : Boolean
function Connect(Socket: LongInt; const addr: String; var SocketIn: File;
                           var SocketOut: File) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Connect` opens a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Addr`. `AddrLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Addr` depends on the kind of connection you're trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The forms of the `Connect` (907) command with the `Text` or `File` arguments are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Connect` function and the `Sock2Text` (921) or `Sock2File` (921) functions. These functions return `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

The `Connect` function returns a file descriptor if the call was successful, `-1` in case of error.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `Listen` (881), `Bind` (907), `Accept` (905)

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** `Client`;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** `Sockets`;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;
```

**Var**

```
SAddr    : TInetSockAddr;
Buffer    : string [255];
S         : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
i         : integer;
```

**begin**

```
S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
if s=-1 then
  PError('Client : Socket : ');
SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
{ port 50000 in network order }
SAddr.sin_port:=htons(50000);
{ localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=HostToNet((127 shl 24) or 1);
if not Connect (S, SAddr, Sin, Sout) then
  PError('Client : Connect : ');
Reset(Sin);
ReWrite(Sout);
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln(Sout, Buffer);
Flush(Sout);
Readln(Sin, Buffer);
WriteLn(Buffer);
Close(sout);
```

---

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./sockex/pfinger.pp

---

```

program pfinger ;

uses sockets , errors ;

Var
  Addr : TInetSockAddr ;
  S : Longint ;
  Sin , Sout : Text ;
  Line : string ;

begin
  Addr.sin_family := AF_INET ;
  { port 79 in network order }
  Addr.sin_port := 79 shl 8 ;
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
  Addr.sin_addr.s_addr := ((1 shl 24) or 127) ;
  S := fpSocket (AF_INET , SOCK_STREAM , 0) ;
  If Not Connect (S , Addr , Sin , Sout) Then
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Couldn't connect to localhost' ) ;
      Writeln ( 'Socket error : ' , strerror (SocketError)) ;
      halt (1) ;
    end ;
    rewrite (sout) ;
    reset (sin) ;
    writeln (sout , paramstr (1)) ;
    flush (sout) ;
    while not eof (sin) do
      begin
        readln (Sin , line) ;
        writeln (line) ;
      end ;
    fpShutdown (s , 2) ;
    close (sin) ;
    close (sout) ;
end.

```

---

### 34.4.5 fpaccept

**Synopsis:** Accept a connection from a socket.

**Declaration:** `function fpaccept (s: cint; addrx: psockaddr; addrlen: psocklen) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `S`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned (positive number). On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addrx`, and sets its length in `Addrlen`. `Addrx` should be pointing to enough space, and `Addrlen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`Addr` points outside your address space.

**SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: `fpListen` (914), `fpConnect` (911), `fpBind` (911)

**Listing:** `./sockex/socksvr.pp`

---

```

Program server;

{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}

uses Sockets;

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer    : string[255];
  S         : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  SAddr     : TInetSockAddr;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    PError ('Server : Socket : ');
  SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 50000 in network order }
  SAddr.sin_port:=htons(50000);
  SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=0;
  if fpBind(S, @SAddr, sizeof(saddr))=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Bind : ');
  if fpListen (S,1)=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Listen : ');
  Writeln('Waiting for Connect from Client, run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if not Accept (S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    PError ('Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  ReWrite(Sout);
  Writeln(Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(SOut);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;

```

---

end.

---

### 34.4.6 fpbind

Synopsis: Bind a socket to an address.

Declaration: `function fpbind(s: cint; addrx: psockaddr; addrlen: TSocketLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpBind` binds the socket `s` to address `Addrx`. `Addrx` has length `Addrlen`. The function returns 0 if the call was succesful, -1 if not.

Errors: Errors are returned in `SocketError` and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_EINVAL**The socket is already bound to an address,

**SYS\_EACCESS**Address is protected and you don't have permission to open it.

More errors can be found in the Unix man pages.

See also: `Socket` ([881](#))

### 34.4.7 fpconnect

Synopsis: Open a connection to a server socket.

Declaration: `function fpconnect(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: TSocketLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpConnect` opens a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Name`. `NameLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Name` depends on the kind of connection you're trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The `Connect` function returns a file descriptor if the call was successfull, -1 in case of error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `fpListen` ([914](#)), `fpBind` ([911](#)), `fpAccept` ([909](#))

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** `Client`;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** `Sockets`;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
```

end;

**Var**

SAddr : TInetSockAddr;  
Buffer : **string** [255];  
S : Longint;  
**Sin**, Sout : Text;  
i : integer;

**begin**

S:=fpSocket (AF\_INET,SOCK\_STREAM,0);  
**if** s=-1 **then**  
  Perror('Client : Socket : ');  
  SAddr.sin\_family:=AF\_INET;  
  { port 50000 in network order }  
  SAddr.sin\_port:=htons(50000);  
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }  
  SAddr.sin\_addr.s\_addr:=HostToNet((127 **shl** 24) **or** 1);  
  **if not** Connect (S,SAddr,**Sin**,Sout) **then**  
    PError('Client : Connect : ');  
  Reset(**Sin**);  
  Rewrite(Sout);  
  Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';  
  **for** i:=1 **to** 10 **do**  
    Writeln(Sout, Buffer);  
  Flush(Sout);  
  Readln(**Sin**, Buffer);  
  WriteLn(Buffer);  
  Close(sout);

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./sockex/pfinger.pp

---

**program** pfinger;

**uses** sockets, errors;

**Var**

Addr : TInetSockAddr;  
S : Longint;  
**Sin**, Sout : Text;  
Line : **string**;

**begin**

Addr.sin\_family:=AF\_INET;  
  { port 79 in network order }  
  Addr.sin\_port:=79 **shl** 8;  
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }  
  Addr.sin\_addr.s\_addr:=((1 **shl** 24) **or** 127);  
  S:=fpSocket(AF\_INET,SOCK\_STREAM,0);  
  **If Not** Connect (S,Addr,**Sin**,Sout) **Then**  
    **begin**  
      Writeln ('Couldn't connect to localhost');  
      Writeln ('Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));  
      halt(1);  
    **end**;  
  rewrite (sout);  
  reset(**sin**);

---

```

writeln (sout,paramstr(1));
flush(sout);
while not eof(sin) do
  begin
    readln (Sin,line);
    writeln (line);
  end;
  fpShutdown(s,2);
  close (sin);
  close (sout);
end.

```

---

### 34.4.8 fpgetpeername

Synopsis: Return the name (address) of the connected peer.

Declaration: `function fpgetpeername(s: cint;name: psockaddr;namelen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetPeerName` returns the name of the entity connected to the specified socket S. The Socket must be connected for this call to work.

Name should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Namelen`. When the function returns successfully, Name will be filled with the name, and Name will be set to the length of Name.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**Addr points outside your address space.

**SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.

See also: `fpConnect` (911), `fpSocket` (917)

### 34.4.9 fpgetsockname

Synopsis: Return name of socket.

Declaration: `function fpgetsockname(s: cint;name: psockaddr;namelen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetSockName` returns the current name of the specified socket S. Name should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Namelen`. When the function returns successfully, Name will be filled with the name, and `Namelen` will be set to the length of Name.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**Addr points outside your address space.

See also: `fpBind` (911)

### 34.4.10 fpgetsockopt

Synopsis: Get current socket options

Declaration: `function fpgetsockopt(s: cint; level: cint; optname: cint; optval: pointer; optlen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetSockOpt` gets the connection option `optname`, for socket `S`. The socket may be obtained from different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET** From the socket itself.

**XXX** set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

The options are stored in the memory location pointed to by `optval`. `optlen` should point to the initial length of `optval`, and on return will contain the actual length of the stored data.

On success, 0 is returned. On Error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK** The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT** `OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `fpSetSockOpt` ([916](#))

### 34.4.11 fplisten

Synopsis: Listen for connections on a socket.

Declaration: `function fplisten(s: cint; backlog: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpListen` listens for up to `backlog` connections from socket `S`. The socket `S` must be of type `SOCK_STREAM` or `Sock_SEQPACKET`.

The function returns 0 if a connection was accepted, -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK** The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP** The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

See also: `fpSocket` ([917](#)), `fpBind` ([911](#)), `fpConnect` ([911](#))

### 34.4.12 fprecv

Synopsis: Receive data on socket

Declaration: `function fprecv(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `fpRecv` reads at most `len` bytes from socket `S` into address `buf`. The socket must be in a connected state. `Flags` can be one of the following:

- 1**Process out-of band data.
- 4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.
- ??**Wait for full request or report an error.

The functions returns the number of bytes actually read from the socket, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.
- SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.
- SYS\_EFAULT**The address is outside your address space.
- SYS EMSGSIZE**The message cannot be sent atomically.
- SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.
- SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `Send` ([881](#))

### 34.4.13 `fprecvfrom`

**Synopsis:** Receive data from an unconnected socket

**Declaration:** `function fprecvfrom(s: cint;buf: pointer;len: size_t;flags: cint;  
from: psockaddr;fromlen: psocklen) : ssize_t`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpRecvFrom` receives data in buffer `Buf` with maximum length `Len` from socket `S`. Receipt is controlled by options in `Flags`. The location pointed to by `from` will be filled with the address from the sender, and it's length will be stored in `fromlen`. The function returns the number of bytes received, or -1 on error. `AddrLen`.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fpSocket` ([917](#)), `frecv` ([914](#))

### 34.4.14 `fpSend`

**Synopsis:** Send data through socket

**Declaration:** `function fpSend(s: cint;msg: pointer;len: size_t;flags: cint) : ssize_t`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpSend` sends `Len` bytes starting from address `Msg` to socket `S`. `S` must be in a connected state. Options can be passed in `Flags`.

The function returns the number of bytes sent, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

`Flags` can be one of the following:

- 1**Process out-of band data.

4Bypass routing, use a direct interface.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The address is outside your address space.

**SYS\_MSGSIZE**The message cannot be sent atomically.

**SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `fpRecv` (914)

### 34.4.15 `fpsendto`

Synopsis: Send data through an unconnected socket to an address.

Declaration: `function fp sendto(s: cint;msg: pointer;len: size_t;flags: cint;  
to x: psockaddr;tolen: TSocketLen) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSendTo` sends data from buffer `Msg` with length `len` through socket `S` with options `Flags`.  
The data is sent to address `tox`, which has length `toLen`

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fpSocket` (917), `fpSend` (915), `fpRecvFrom` (915)

### 34.4.16 `fpsetsockopt`

Synopsis: Set socket options.

Declaration: `function fp setsockopt(s: cint;level: cint;optname: cint;optval: pointer;  
optlen: TSocketLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetSockOpt` sets the connection options for socket `S`. The socket may be manipulated at different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**To manipulate the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

The actual option is stored in a buffer pointed to by `optval`, with length `optlen`.

For more information on this call, refer to the unix manual page `setsockopt`

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `fpGetSockOpt` (914)

### 34.4.17 `fpshutdown`

Synopsis: Close one end of full duplex connection.

Declaration: `function fpshutdown(s: cint;how: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpShutDown` closes one end of a full duplex socket connection, described by `S`. The parameter `How` determines how the connection will be shut down, and can be one of the following:

**0**Further receives are disallowed.

**1**Further sends are disallowed.

**2**Sending nor receiving are allowed.

On succes, the function returns 0, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: `SocketError` is used to report errors, and includes the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

See also: `fpSocket` (917), `fpConnect` (911)

### 34.4.18 `fpsocket`

Synopsis: Create new socket

Declaration: `function fpsocket(domain: cint;xtype: cint;protocol: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSocket` creates a new socket in domain `Domain`, from type `xType` using protocol `Protocol`. The `Domain`, `Socket` type and `Protocol` can be specified using predefined constants (see the section on constants for available constants) If succesfull, the function returns a socket descriptor, which can be passed to a subsequent `fpBind` (911) call. If unsuccessful, the function returns -1.  
for an example, see `Accept` (905).

Errors: Errors are returned in `SocketError`, and include the follwing:

**SYS\_EPROTONOSUPPORT**The protocol type or the specified protocol is not supported within this domain.

**SYS\_EMFILE**The per-process descriptor table is full.

**SYS\_ENFILE**The system file table is full.

**SYS\_EACCESS**Permission to create a socket of the specified type and/or protocol is denied.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**Insufficient buffer space is available. The socket cannot be created until sufficient resources are freed.

See also: `SocketPair` (881)

### 34.4.19 fpsocketpair

Synopsis: Create socket pair.

Declaration: `function fpsocketpair(d: cint; xtype: cint; protocol: cint; sv: pcint)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSocketPair` creates 2 sockets in domain `D`, from type `xType` and using protocol `Protocol`. The pair is returned in `sv`, and they are indistinguishable. The function returns -1 upon error and 0 upon success.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and are the same as in `Socket` (881)

See also: `Str2UnixSockAddr` (922)

### 34.4.20 HostAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a string.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr` converts the host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr` (919), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` (919), `StrToHostAddr` (922), `StrToNetAddr` (922)

### 34.4.21 HostAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 host address to a string representation.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` (919), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` (919), `StrToHostAddr` (922), `StrToNetAddr` (922), `StrToHostAddr6` (922)

### 34.4.22 HostToNet

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a network address

Declaration: `function HostToNet(Host: in_addr) : in_addr  
function HostToNet(Host: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostToNet` converts a host address to a network address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

Errors: None.

See also: `NetToHost` (920), `NToHS` (920), `HToNS` (919), `ShortHostToNet` (920), `ShortNetToHost` (921)

### 34.4.23 htonl

Synopsis: Convert long integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htonl(host: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `htonl` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htons` ([919](#)), `ntohl` ([920](#)), `ntohs` ([920](#))

### 34.4.24 htons

Synopsis: Convert short integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htons(host: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `htons` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([919](#)), `ntohl` ([920](#)), `ntohs` ([920](#))

### 34.4.25 NetAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr` converts the network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

See also: `HostAddrToStr` ([918](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([922](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([922](#))

### 34.4.26 NetAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` ([919](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([919](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([922](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([922](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([922](#))

### 34.4.27 NetToHost

**Synopsis:** Convert a network address to a host address.

**Declaration:** `function NetToHost (Net: in_addr) : in_addr`  
`function NetToHost (Net: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NetToHost` converts a network address to a host address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `HostToNet` (918), `NToHS` (920), `HToNS` (919), `ShortHostToNet` (920), `ShortNetToHost` (921)

### 34.4.28 NToHI

**Synopsis:** Convert long integer from network ordered to host ordered

**Declaration:** `function NToHI (Net: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` (919), `htons` (919), `ntohs` (920)

### 34.4.29 NToHs

**Synopsis:** Convert short integer from network ordered to host ordered

**Declaration:** `function NToHs (Net: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` (919), `htons` (919), `ntohl` (920)

### 34.4.30 ShortHostToNet

**Synopsis:** Convert a host port number to a network port number

**Declaration:** `function ShortHostToNet (Host: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ShortHostToNet` converts a host port number to a network port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` (921), `HostToNet` (918), `NToHS` (920), `HToNS` (919)

### 34.4.31 ShortNetToHost

Synopsis: Convert a network port number to a host port number

Declaration: `function ShortNetToHost (Net: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortNetToHost` converts a network port number to a host port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` ([921](#)), `HostToNet` ([918](#)), `NToHS` ([920](#)), `HToNS` ([919](#))

### 34.4.32 Sock2File

Synopsis: Convert socket to untyped file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2File (Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2File` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `File`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: `Socket` ([881](#)), `Sock2Text` ([921](#))

### 34.4.33 Sock2Text

Synopsis: Convert socket to text file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2Text (Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: Text; var SockOut: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2Text` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `Text`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: `Socket` ([881](#)), `Sock2File` ([921](#))

### 34.4.34 socketerror

Synopsis: Contains the error code for the last socket operation.

Declaration: `function socketerror : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SocketError` contains the error code for the last socket operation. It can be examined to return the last socket error.

### 34.4.35 Str2UnixSockAddr

Synopsis: Convert path to TUnixSockAddr ([905](#))

Declaration: `procedure Str2UnixSockAddr(const addr: String; var t: TUnixSockAddr;  
var len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Str2UnixSockAddr` transforms a Unix socket address in a string to a `TUnixSockAddr` structure which can be passed to the `Bind` ([907](#)) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Socket` ([881](#)), `Bind` ([907](#))

### 34.4.36 StrToHostAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the host address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([919](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([918](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([922](#))

### 34.4.37 StrToHostAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr6(IP: String) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([919](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([918](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([922](#))

### 34.4.38 StrToNetAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a network address.

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the network address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([919](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([918](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([922](#))

### 34.4.39 StrToNetAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 network address

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr6(IP: AnsiString) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([919](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([918](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([922](#))

## Chapter 35

# Reference for unit 'strings'

### 35.1 Overview

This chapter describes the `STRINGS` unit for Free Pascal. This unit is system independent, and therefore works on all supported platforms.

### 35.2 Procedures and functions

#### 35.2.1 `stralloc`

Synopsis: Allocate memory for a new null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `function stralloc(L: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Errors: If there is not enough memory, a run-time error occurs.

See also: `StrNew` ([933](#)), `StrPCopy` ([934](#))

#### 35.2.2 `strcat`

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches `Source` to `Dest` and returns `Dest`.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCat` ([929](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program Example11;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

Var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }
  StrCat (P2,P1); { Append P2 once more }
  WriteLn ( 'P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 35.2.3 strcmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function strcmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

For an example, see `StrLComp` (930).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` (930), `StrIComp` (928), `StrLComp` (931)

### 35.2.4 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain `Source`, i.e. `StrLen(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrPCopy` (934), `StrLCopy` (930), `StrECopy` (926)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);
  StrCopy (PP,P);
  If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then
    Writeln ( 'Oh-oh problems...' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 35.2.5 strdispose

Synopsis: disposes of a null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `procedure strdispose(p: pchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Removes the string in P from the heap and releases the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([933](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrDispose function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  Writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 35.2.6 strecopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

**Declaration:** `function strcpy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

**Errors:** No length checking is performed.

**See also:** `StrLCopy` (930), `StrCopy` (925)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**Var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

PP:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);

**If** Longint(StrECopy(PP,P)) - Longint(PP) <> StrLen(P) **then**

    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')

**else**

    Writeln('PP= ',PP);

    StrDispose(PP);

**end.**

---

### 35.2.7 strend

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

**Declaration:** `function strend(p: pchar) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `StrLen` (931)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**begin**

**If** Longint(StrEnd(P)) - Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) **then**

    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')

---

```

    else
      WriteLn ( 'All is well..' );
    end.

```

---

### 35.2.8 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stricmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([930](#)), `StrComp` ([925](#)), `StrLComp` ([931](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

```

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

```

```

Var L : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Write ( 'P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ( 'NOT ');
  write ( 'equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
  dec(L);
  WriteLn (L,' characters are the same. ');
end.

```

---

### 35.2.9 stripos

Synopsis: Return the position of a substring in a string, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stripos(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `stripos` returns the position of `str2` in `str1`. It searches in a case-insensitive manner, and if it finds a match, it returns a pointer to the location of the match. If no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** No checks are done on the validity of the pointers, and the pointers are assumed to point to a properly null-terminated string. If either of these conditions are not met, a run-time error may follow.

See also: [striscan \(929\)](#), [strpos \(935\)](#)

### 35.2.10 striscan

**Synopsis:** Scan a string for a character, case-insensitive

**Declaration:** `function striscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `striscan` does the same as `strscan` ([936](#)) but compares the characters case-insensitively. It returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character `c` in the null-terminated string `p`, or `Nil` if `c` is not present in the string.

See also: `strscan` ([936](#)), `striscan` ([935](#))

### 35.2.11 strlcat

**Synopsis:** Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

**Declaration:** `function strlcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Adds `L` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns `Dest`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrCat` ([924](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = '1234567890';`

**Var** `P2 : PChar;`

**begin**

`P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);`

`P2^:=#0; { Zero length }`

`StrCat (P2,P1);`

`StrLCat (P2,P1,5);`

`Writeln ( 'P2 = ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2)`

**end.**

---

### 35.2.12 strlcomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function strlcomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `SizeInt` when `S1>S2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrComp` ([925](#)), `StrIComp` ([928](#)), `StrLIComp` ([931](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';`  
`P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';`

**Var** `L : Longint;`

**begin**

`Write ( 'P1 and P2 are ');`  
`If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ( 'NOT ');`  
`write ( 'equal. The first ');`  
`L:=1;`  
`While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);`  
`dec(L);`  
`WriteLn (L, ' characters are the same.');`

**end.**

---

### 35.2.13 strlcopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

Declaration: `function strlcopy(dest: pchar;source: pchar;maxlen: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and makes `Dest` a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrCopy` ([925](#)), `StrECopy` ([926](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc(11);
  WriteLn ( 'First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 35.2.14 strlen

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([933](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

begin
  WriteLn ( 'P          : ',p);
  WriteLn ( 'length(P) : ',StrLen(P));
end.

```

---

### 35.2.15 strlicomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

For an example, see `StrIComp` (928)

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` (930), `StrComp` (925), `StrIComp` (928)

### 35.2.16 `strlower`

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts `P` to an all-lowercase string. Returns `P`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrUpper` (936)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

`P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';`  
`P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Uppercase : ', StrUpper(P2));`

`StrLower (P1);`

`WriteLn ('Lowercase : ', P1);`

**end.**

---

### 35.2.17 `strmove`

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: pchar;source: pchar;l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns `Dest`

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLCopy` (930), `StrCopy` (925)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';

**Var** P2 : Pchar;

**begin**

  P2:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)+1);

**StrMove** (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2:=P1 }

**WriteLn** ( 'P2 = ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2);

**end.**

---

### 35.2.18 strnew

Synopsis: Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strnew(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies P to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns Nil if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: StrCopy ([925](#)), StrDispose ([926](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

**var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

  P2:=StrNew (P1);

**If** P1=P2 **then**

**writeln** ( 'This can''t be happening... ')

**else**

**writeln** ( 'P2 : ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2);

**end.**

---

### 35.2.19 strpas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: `function strpas(p: pchar) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in P to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

See also: StrPCopy ([934](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPas function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string';

**var** S : string;

**begin**

    S:=StrPas (P);

    WriteLn ('S : ',S);

**end.**

---

### 35.2.20 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a pascal string to a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(d: pchar;const s: String) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the Pascal string in S to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to D. D needs enough room to contain the string Source, i.e. Length(S)+1 bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPas ([934](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex2.pp

---

**Program** Example2;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPCopy function. }*

**Const** S = 'This is a normal string.';

**Var** P : Pchar;

---

```

begin
  p:= StrAlloc (length(S)+1);
  if StrPCopy (P,S)<>P then
    Writeln ('This is impossible !!')
  else
    writeln (P);
    StrDispose(P);
end.

```

---

### 35.2.21 strpos

Synopsis: Search for a null-terminated substring in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of S2 in S1. If S2 does not occur in S1, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([936](#)), StrRScan ([936](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';  
           S : PChar = 'is';

```

begin
  Writeln ('Position of ''is'' in P : ',sizeint(StrPos(P,S))-sizeint(P));
end.

```

---

### 35.2.22 strriscan

Synopsis: Scan a string reversely for a character, case-insensitive

Declaration: `function strriscan(p: pchar;c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `strriscan` does the same as `strrscan` ([936](#)) but compares the characters case-insensitively. It returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character `c` in the null-terminated string `p`, or Nil if `c` is not present in the string.

See also: `strrscan` ([936](#)), `striscan` ([929](#))

### 35.2.23 strscan

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

For an example, see StrScan (936).

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan (936), StrPos (935)

### 35.2.24 strscan

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan (936), StrPos (935)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first 's' : ', StrScan(P,s));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last 's' : ', StrRScan(P,s));

**end.**

---

### 35.2.25 strupper

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: `function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see StrLower (932)

Errors: None.

See also: StrLower (932)

# Chapter 36

## Reference for unit 'strutils'

### 36.1 Used units

Table 36.1: Used units by unit 'strutils'

Name	Page
SysUtils	<a href="#">937</a>

### 36.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 36.2.1 Resource strings

`SErrAmountStrings` = 'Amount of search and replace strings don''t match'

Error message used in stringsreplace function

#### 36.2.2 Constants

`AnsiResemblesProc` : `TCompareTextProc` = `@SoundexProc`

This procedural variable is standard set to `SoundexProc` ([961](#)) but can be overridden with a user-defined algorithm. This algorithm should return `True` if `AText` resembles `AOtherText`, or `False` otherwise. The standard routine compares the soundexes of the two strings and returns `True` if they are equal.

`Brackets` = ['(', ')', '[', ']', '{', '}', '']

Set of characters that contain all possible bracket characters

`DigitChars` = ['0'..'9']

Set of digit characters

`StdSwitchChars` = ['-', '/', '']

Standard characters for the `SwitchChars` argument of `GetCmdLineArg` (950).

```
StdWordDelims = [#0..' ',',','.',':','/','\',' ','"',',',''] + Brackets
```

Standard word delimiter values.

```
WordDelimiters : Set of Char = [#0..#255] - ['a'..'z','A'..'Z','1'..'9','0']
```

Standard word delimiters, used in the `SearchBuf` (960) call.

### 36.2.3 Types

```
TCompareTextProc = function(const AText: String;const AOther: String)
                    : Boolean
```

Function prototype for comparing two string in `AnsiResemblesText` (943)

```
TSoundexIntLength = 1..8
```

Range of allowed integer soundex lengths.

```
TSoundexLength = 1..MaxInt
```

Range of allowed soundex lengths.

```
TStringSeachOption = TStringSearchOption
```

There is an typo error in the original Borland `StrUtils` unit. This type just refers to the correct `TStringSearchOption` (938) and is provided for compatibility only.

```
TStringSearchOption = (soDown,soMatchCase,soWholeWord)
```

Table 36.2: Enumeration values for type `TStringSearchOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>soDown</code>	Search in down direction.
<code>soMatchCase</code>	Match case
<code>soWholeWord</code>	Search whole words only.

Possible options for `SearchBuf` (960) call.

```
TStringSearchOptions= Set of (soDown,soMatchCase,soWholeWord)
```

Set of options for `SearchBuf` (960) call.

## 36.3 Procedures and functions

### 36.3.1 AddChar

Synopsis: Add characters to the left of a string till a certain length

Declaration: `function AddChar(C: Char; const S: String; N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddChar` adds characters (C) to the left of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a right-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddCharR` ([939](#)), `PadLeft` ([955](#)), `PadRight` ([956](#)), `PadCenter` ([955](#))

### 36.3.2 AddCharR

Synopsis: Add chars at the end of a string till it reaches a certain length

Declaration: `function AddCharR(C: Char; const S: String; N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddCharR` adds characters (C) to the right of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a left-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddChar` ([939](#))

### 36.3.3 AnsiContainsStr

Synopsis: Checks whether a string contains a given substring

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsStr(const AText: String; const ASubText: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether AText contains ASubText, and returns True if this is the case, or returns False otherwise. The search is performed case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiContainsText` ([939](#)), `AnsiEndsStr` ([940](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([940](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([944](#))

### 36.3.4 AnsiContainsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string contains a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsText(const AText: String; const ASubText: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiContainsString` checks whether `AText` contains `ASubText`, and returns `True` if this is the case, or returns `False` otherwise. The search is performed case-insensitive.

**Errors:**

See also: `AnsiContainsStr` (939), `AnsiEndsText` (940), `AnsiIndexText` (941), `AnsiStartsText` (944)

### 36.3.5 `AnsiEndsStr`

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string ends with a certain substring

**Declaration:** `function AnsiEndsStr(const ASubText: String; const AText: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` (940), `AnsiStartsStr` (944), `AnsiIndexStr` (940), `AnsiContainsStr` (939)

### 36.3.6 `AnsiEndsText`

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string ends with a certain substring, ignoring case.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiEndsText(const ASubText: String; const AText: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiEndsText` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

**Errors:** None

See also: `AnsiStartsText` (944), `AnsiEndsStr` (940), `AnsiIndexText` (941), `AnsiContainsText` (939)

### 36.3.7 `AnsiIndexStr`

**Synopsis:** Searches, observing case, for a string in an array of strings.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiIndexStr(const AText: String; const AValues: Array of String) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiIndexText` (941), `AnsiMatchStr` (941), `AnsiMatchText` (942)

### 36.3.8 AnsiIndexText

Synopsis: Searches, case insensitive, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: `function AnsiIndexText(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array of String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiIndexStr` ([940](#)), `AnsiMatchStr` ([941](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([942](#))

### 36.3.9 AnsiLeftStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at the left of a string

Declaration: `function AnsiLeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: Integer)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` leftmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes. This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `LeftStr` function.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMidStr` ([942](#)), `AnsiRightStr` ([944](#)), `LeftStr` ([953](#)), `RightStr` ([958](#)), `MidStr` ([954](#)), `LeftBStr` ([953](#)), `RightBStr` ([958](#)), `MidBStr` ([954](#))

### 36.3.10 AnsiMatchStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, observing case.

Declaration: `function AnsiMatchStr(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array of String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexStr` ([940](#)) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

Errors:

### 36.3.11 AnsiMatchText

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, disregarding case.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiMatchText(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array of String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexText` (941) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

**Errors:**

### 36.3.12 AnsiMidStr

**Synopsis:** Returns a number of characters copied from a given location in a string

**Declaration:** `function AnsiMidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: Integer;  
const ACount: Integer) : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiMidStr` returns `ACount` characters from `AText`, starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` (starting from `AStart`) will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `MidStr` function.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `AnsiLeftStr` (941), `AnsiRightStr` (944), `LeftStr` (953), `RightStr` (958), `MidStr` (954), `LeftBStr` (953), `RightBStr` (958), `MidBStr` (954)

### 36.3.13 AnsiProperCase

**Synopsis:** Pretty-Print a string: make lowercase and capitalize first letters of words

**Declaration:** `function AnsiProperCase(const S: String; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet)  
: String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiProperCase` converts `S` to an all lowercase string, but capitalizes the first letter of every word in the string, and returns the resulting string. When searching for words, the characters in `WordDelimiters` are used to determine the boundaries of words. The constant `StdWordDelims` (938) can be used for this.

**Errors:**

### 36.3.14 AnsiReplaceStr

Synopsis: Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiReplaceStr(const AText: String;const AFromText: String;  
const AToText: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed observing case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiReplaceText` ([943](#)), `SearchBuf` ([960](#))

### 36.3.15 AnsiReplaceText

Synopsis: Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiReplaceText(const AText: String;const AFromText: String;  
const AToText: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed ignoring case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiReplaceStr` ([943](#)), `SearchBuf` ([960](#))

### 36.3.16 AnsiResemblesText

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings resemble each other.

Declaration: `function AnsiResemblesText(const AText: String;const AOther: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiResemblesText` will check whether `AnsiResemblesProc` ([937](#)) is set. If it is not set, `False` is returned. If it is set, `AText` and `AOtherText` are passed to it and its result is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiResemblesProc` ([937](#)), `SoundexProc` ([961](#))

### 36.3.17 AnsiReverseString

Synopsis: Reverse the letters in a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiReverseString(const AText: AnsiString) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiReverseString` returns a string with all characters of `AText` in reverse order.  
if the result of this function equals `AText`, `AText` is called an anagram.

Errors: None.

### 36.3.18 AnsiRightStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at the right of a string

Declaration: `function AnsiRightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: Integer)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` rightmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes. This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `RightStr` function.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLeftStr` (941), `AnsiMidStr` (942), `LeftStr` (953), `RightStr` (958), `MidStr` (954), `LeftBStr` (953), `RightBStr` (958), `MidBStr` (954)

### 36.3.19 AnsiStartsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, observing case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsStr(const ASubText: String; const AText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStartsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

Errors:

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` (940), `AnsiStartsStr` (944), `AnsiIndexStr` (940), `AnsiContainsStr` (939)

### 36.3.20 AnsiStartsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, ignoring case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsText(const ASubText: String; const AText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStartsText` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` (940), `AnsiStartsStr` (944), `AnsiIndexText` (941), `AnsiContainsText` (939)

### 36.3.21 BinToHex

Synopsis: Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

Declaration: `procedure BinToHex (BinValue: PChar; HexValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size  $2 * \text{BufSize}$ .

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` ([951](#))

### 36.3.22 Copy2Space

Synopsis: Returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2Space (const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2Space` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned.

This function simply calls `Copy2Symb` ([946](#)) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2Symb` ([946](#)), `Copy2SpaceDel` ([945](#))

### 36.3.23 Copy2SpaceDel

Synopsis: Deletes and returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2SpaceDel (var S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2SpaceDel` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters, including the space, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

This function simply calls `Copy2SymbDel` ([946](#)) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2SymbDel` ([946](#)), `Copy2Space` ([945](#))

### 36.3.24 Copy2Symb

Synopsis: Returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2Symb(const S: String;Symb: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2Symb` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2Space` (945), `Copy2SymbDel` (946)

### 36.3.25 Copy2SymbDel

Synopsis: Deletes and returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2SymbDel(var S: String;Symb: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2SymbDel` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters and the `Symb` character, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2SpaceDel` (945), `Copy2Symb` (946)

### 36.3.26 Dec2Numb

Synopsis: Convert a decimal number to a string representation, using given a base.

Declaration: `function Dec2Numb(N: LongInt;Len: Byte;Base: Byte) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dec2Numb` converts `N` to its representation using base `Base`. The resulting string is left-padded with zeroes till it has length `Len`. `Base` must be in the range 2-36 to be meaningful, but no checking on this is performed.

Errors: If `Base` is out of range, the resulting string will contain unreadable (non-alphanumeric) characters.

See also: `Hex2Dec` (950), `IntToBin` (951), `intToRoman` (952), `RomanToInt` (959)

### 36.3.27 DecodeSoundexInt

Synopsis: Decodes the integer representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexInt(AValue: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexInt` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexInt` (961) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SoundexInt \(961\)](#), [DecodeSoundexWord \(947\)](#), [Soundex \(960\)](#)

### 36.3.28 DecodeSoundexWord

Synopsis: Decodes the word-sized representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexWord(AValue: Word) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexWord` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexWord (962)` function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SoundexInt \(961\)](#), [DecodeSoundexInt \(946\)](#), [Soundex \(960\)](#)

### 36.3.29 DelChars

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a given character from a string.

Declaration: `function DelChars(const S: String; Chr: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelChars` returns a copy of `S` with all `Chr` characters removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: [DelSpace \(947\)](#), [DelSpace1 \(947\)](#)

### 36.3.30 DelSpace

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a space from a string.

Declaration: `function DelSpace(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace` returns a copy of `S` with all spaces (ASCII code 32) removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: [DelChars \(947\)](#), [DelSpace1 \(947\)](#)

### 36.3.31 DelSpace1

Synopsis: Reduces sequences of space characters to 1 space character.

Declaration: `function DelSpace1(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace1` returns a copy of `S` with all sequences of spaces reduced to 1 space.

Errors: None.

See also: [DelChars \(947\)](#), [DelSpace \(947\)](#)

### 36.3.32 DupeString

**Synopsis:** Creates and concatenates N copies of a string

**Declaration:** `function DupeString(const AText: String; ACount: Integer) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DupeString` returns a string consisting of `ACount` concatenations of `AText`. Thus

```
DupeString('1234567890', 3);  
  
will produce a string  
  
'123456789012345678901234567890'
```

**Errors:** None.

### 36.3.33 ExtractDelimited

**Synopsis:** Extract the N-th delimited part from a string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractDelimited(N: Integer; const S: String;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractDelimited` extracts the N-th part from the string `S`. The set of characters in `Delims` are used to mark part boundaries. When a delimiter is encountered, a new part is started and the old part is ended. Another way of stating this is that any (possibly empty) series of characters not in `Delims`, situated between 2 characters in `Delims`, it is considered as piece of a part. This means that if 2 delimiter characters appear next to each other, there is an empty part between it. If an N-th part cannot be found, an empty string is returned. However, unlike `ExtractWord` (949), an empty string is a valid return value, i.e. a part can be empty.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (938) can be used for the `Delims` argument. The pre-defined constant `Brackets` (937) would be better suited the `Delims` argument e.g. in case factors in a mathematical expression are searched.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractSubStr` (948), `ExtractWord` (949), `ExtractWordPos` (949)

### 36.3.34 ExtractSubstr

**Synopsis:** Extract a word from a string, starting at a given position in the string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractSubStr(const S: String; var Pos: Integer;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractSubStr` returns all characters from `S` starting at position `Pos` till the first character in `Delims`, or till the end of `S` is reached. The delimiter character is not included in the result. `Pos` is then updated to point to the next first non-delimiter character in `S`. If `Pos` is larger than the `Length` of `S`, an empty string is returned.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (938) can be used for the `Delims` argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractDelimited` (948), `ExtractWord` (949), `ExtractWordPos` (949)

### 36.3.35 ExtractWord

Synopsis: Extract the N-th word out of a string.

Declaration: `function ExtractWord(N: Integer; const S: String;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractWord` extracts the N-th word from the string `S`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (948), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (938) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractWordPos` (949), `ExtractSubStr` (948), `ExtractDelimited` (948), `IsWordPresent` (953), `WordCount` (964), `WordPosition` (964)

### 36.3.36 ExtractWordPos

Synopsis: Extract a word from a string, and return the position where it was located in the string.

Declaration: `function ExtractWordPos(N: Integer; const S: String;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet; var Pos: Integer)  
: String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractWordPos` extracts the N-th word from the string `S` and returns the position of this word in `Pos`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned and `Pos` is zero.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (948), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (938) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractWord` (949), `ExtractSubStr` (948), `IsWordPresent` (953), `WordCount` (964), `WordPosition` (964)

### 36.3.37 FindPart

Synopsis: Search for a substring in a string, using wildcards.

Declaration: `function FindPart(const HelpWilds: String; const InputStr: String)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindPart` searches the string `InputStr` and returns the first string that matches the wildcards specification in `HelpWilds`. If no match is found, an empty string is returned. Currently, the only valid wildcards is the "?" character.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SearchBuf` (960)

### 36.3.38 GetCmdLineArg

**Synopsis:** Returns the command-line argument following the given switch.

**Declaration:** `function GetCmdLineArg(const Switch: String; SwitchChars: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetCmdLineArg` returns the value for the `Switch` option on the command-line, if any is given. Command-line arguments are considered switches if they start with one of the characters in the `SwitchChars` set. The value is the command-line argument following the switch command-line argument.

Gnu-style (long) Options of the form `switch=value` are not supported.

The `StdSwitchChars` (938) constant can be used as value for the `SwitchChars` parameter.

**Errors:** The `GetCmdLineArg` does not check whether the value of the option does not start with a switch character. i.e.

```
myprogram -option1 -option2
```

will result in "-option2" as the result of the `GetCmdLineArg` call for `option1`.

**See also:** `StdSwitchChars` (938)

### 36.3.39 Hex2Dec

**Synopsis:** Converts a hexadecimal string to a decimal value

**Declaration:** `function Hex2Dec(const S: String) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Hex2Dec` converts the hexadecimal value in the string `S` to its decimal value. Unlike the standard `Val` or `StrToInt` functions, there need not be a \$ sign in front of the hexadecimal value to indicate that it is indeed a hexadecimal value.

**Errors:** If `S` does not contain a valid hexadecimal value, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

**See also:** `Dec2Numb` (946), `IntToBin` (951), `intToRoman` (952), `RomanToInt` (959)

### 36.3.40 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` ([945](#))

### 36.3.41 IfThen

Synopsis: Returns one of two strings, depending on a boolean expression

Declaration: `function IfThen(AValue: Boolean; const ATrue: String;  
const AFalse: String) : String; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IfThen` returns `ATrue` if `AValue` is `True`, and returns `AFalse` if `AValue` is `false`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` ([941](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([942](#))

### 36.3.42 IntToBin

Synopsis: Converts an integer to a binary string representation, inserting spaces at fixed locations.

Declaration: `function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer; Spaces: Integer)  
: String  
function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer) : String  
function intToBin(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToBin` converts `Value` to a string with its binary (base 2) representation. The resulting string contains at least `Digits` digits, with spaces inserted every `Spaces` digits. `Spaces` should be a nonzero value. If `Digits` is larger than 32, it is truncated to 32.

Errors: If `spaces` is zero, a division by zero error will occur.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([950](#)), `IntToRoman` ([952](#))

### 36.3.43 IntToRoman

Synopsis: Represent an integer with roman numerals

Declaration: `function IntToRoman(Value: LongInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToRoman` converts `Value` to a string with the Roman representation of `Value`. Number up to 1 million can be represented this way.

Errors: None.

See also: `RomanToInt` ([959](#)), `Hex2Dec` ([950](#)), `IntToBin` ([951](#))

### 36.3.44 IsEmptyStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string is empty, disregarding whitespace characters

Declaration: `function IsEmptyStr(const S: String; const EmptyChars: TSysCharSet)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEmptyStr` returns `True` if the string `S` only contains characters whitespace characters, all characters in `EmptyChars` are considered whitespace characters. If a character not present in `EmptyChars` is found in `S`, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `IsWild` ([952](#)), `FindPart` ([949](#)), `IsWordPresent` ([953](#))

### 36.3.45 IsWild

Synopsis: Check whether a string matches a wildcard search expression.

Declaration: `function IsWild(InputStr: String; Wilds: String; IgnoreCase: Boolean)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsWild` checks `InputStr` for the presence of the `Wilds` string. `Wilds` may contain "?" and "\*" wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning: "\*" matches any series of characters, possibly empty. "?" matches any single character. The function returns `True` if a string is found that matches `Wilds`, `False` otherwise.

If `IgnoreCase` is `True`, the non-wildcard characters are matched case insensitively. If it is `False`, case is observed when searching.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` ([960](#)), `FindPart` ([949](#))

### 36.3.46 IsWordPresent

Synopsis: Check for the presence of a word in a string.

Declaration: `function IsWordPresent(const W: String; const S: String;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsWordPresent` checks for the presence of the word `W` in the string `S`. Words are delimited by the characters found in `WordDelims`. The function returns `True` if a match is found, `False` otherwise. The search is performed case sensitive.

This function is equivalent to the `SearchBuf` (960) function with the `soWholeWords` option specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` (960)

### 36.3.47 LeftBStr

Synopsis: Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: Integer)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftBStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` (953), `AnsiLeftStr` (941), `RightBStr` (958), `MidBStr` (954)

### 36.3.48 LeftStr

Synopsis: Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: Integer)  
: AnsiString  
function LeftStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: Integer)  
: WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (953), `AnsiLeftStr` (941), `RightStr` (958), `MidStr` (954)

### 36.3.49 MidBStr

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

**Declaration:** `function MidBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteStart: Integer;  
const AByteCount: Integer) : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MidBStr` returns a string containing the first `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AByteStart`. If `AByteStart+AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned. If `AByteStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [LeftBStr \(953\)](#), [AnsiMidStr \(942\)](#), [RightBStr \(958\)](#), [MidStr \(954\)](#)

### 36.3.50 MidStr

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

**Declaration:** `function MidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: Integer;  
const ACount: Integer) : AnsiString  
function MidStr(const AText: WideString; const AStart: Integer;  
const ACount: Integer) : WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MidStr` returns a string containing the first `ACount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned. If `AStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

This function is equivalent to the standard `Copy` function, and is provided for completeness only.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [LeftStr \(953\)](#), [AnsiMidStr \(942\)](#), [RightStr \(958\)](#), [MidBStr \(954\)](#)

### 36.3.51 NPos

**Synopsis:** Returns the position of the N-th occurrence of a substring in a string.

**Declaration:** `function NPos(const C: String; S: String; N: Integer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NPos` checks `S` for the position of the N-th occurrence of `C`. If `C` occurs less than `N` times in `S`, or does not occur in `S` at all, 0 is returned. If `N` is less than 1, zero is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [WordPosition \(964\)](#), [FindPart \(949\)](#)

### 36.3.52 Numb2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a string representation of a number to its numerical value, given a certain base.

Declaration: `function Numb2Dec(S: String;Base: Byte) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2Dec` converts the number in string `S` to a decimal value. It assumes the number is represented using `Base` as the base. No checking is performed to see whether `S` contains a valid number using base `Base`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([950](#)), `Numb2USA` ([955](#))

### 36.3.53 Numb2USA

Synopsis: Insert thousand separators.

Declaration: `function Numb2USA(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2USA` inserts thousand separators in the string `S` at the places where they are supposed to be, i.e. every 3 digits. The string `S` should contain a valid integer number, i.e. no digital number. No checking on this is done.

Errors: None.

### 36.3.54 PadCenter

Synopsis: Pad the string to a certain length, so the string is centered.

Declaration: `function PadCenter(const S: String;Len: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadCenter` add spaces to the left and right of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the number of spaces to add is odd, then the extra space will be added at the end. If the string `S` has length equal to or largert than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([955](#)), `PadRight` ([956](#)), `AddChar` ([939](#)), `AddCharR` ([939](#))

### 36.3.55 PadLeft

Synopsis: Add spaces to the left of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadLeft(const S: String;N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadLeft` add spaces to the left of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len` . If the string `S` has length equal to or largert than `Len` , no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S` , right-justified on length `Len` .

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([955](#)), `PadCenter` ([955](#)), `AddChar` ([939](#)), `AddCharR` ([939](#))

### 36.3.56 PadRight

Synopsis: Add spaces to the right of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadRight(const S: String; N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadRight` add spaces to the left of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S`, left-justified on length `Len`.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([955](#)), `PadCenter` ([955](#)), `AddChar` ([939](#)), `AddCharR` ([939](#))

### 36.3.57 PosEx

Synopsis: Search for the occurrence of a character in a string, starting at a certain position.

Declaration: `function PosEx(const SubStr: String; const S: String; Offset: Cardinal) : Integer`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: String; const S: String) : Integer`  
`function PosEx(c: Char; const S: String; Offset: Cardinal) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosEx` returns the position of the first occurrence of the character `C` or the substring `SubStr` in the string `S`, starting the search at position `Offset` (default 1). If `C` or `SubStr` does not occur in `S` after the given `Offset`, zero is returned. The position `Offset` is also searched.

Errors: None.

See also: `NPos` ([954](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([939](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([939](#))

### 36.3.58 PosSet

Synopsis: Return the position in a string of any character out of a set of characters

Declaration: `function PosSet(const c: TSysCharSet; const s: ansistring) : Integer`  
`function PosSet(const c: String; const s: ansistring) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosSet` returns the position in `s` of the first found character which is in the set `c`. If none of the characters in `c` is found in `s`, then 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `PosEx` ([956](#)), `PosSetEx` ([956](#)), `#rtl.system.pos` ([1108](#)), `RPosEx` ([959](#))

### 36.3.59 PosSetEx

Synopsis: Return the position in a string of any character out of a set of characters, starting at a certain position

Declaration: `function PosSetEx(const c: TSysCharSet; const s: ansistring; count: Integer) : Integer`  
`function PosSetEx(const c: String; const s: ansistring; count: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosSetEx` returns the position in `s` of the first found character which is in the set `c`, and starts searching at character position `Count`. If none of the characters in `c` is found in `s`, then 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `PosEx` (956), `PosSet` (956), `#rtl.system.pos` (1108), `RPosEx` (959)

### 36.3.60 RandomFrom

Synopsis: Choose a random string from an array of strings.

Declaration: `function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of String) : String; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RandomFrom` picks at random a valid index in the array `AValues` and returns the string at that position in the array.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` (941), `AnsiMatchText` (942)

### 36.3.61 Removeleadingchars

Synopsis: Remove any leading characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure Removeleadingchars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Removeleadingchars` removes any starting characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`. It stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. This is similar in behaviour to `TrimLeft` (1309) which used whitespace as the set.

Errors: None.

See also: `rtl.sysutils.TrimLeft` (937), `RemoveTrailingChars` (958), `RemovePadChars` (957), `TrimLeftSet` (963)

### 36.3.62 RemovePadChars

Synopsis: Remove any trailing or leading characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure RemovePadChars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemovePadChars` removes any leading trailing characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`, i.e. it starts with the last character and works its way to the start of the string, and it stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. Then the same procedure is repeated starting from the beginning of the string. This is similar in behaviour to `Trim` (1309) which used whitespace as the set.

Errors: None.

See also: `rtl.sysutils.Trim` (937), `RemoveLeadingChars` (957), `RemoveTrailingChars` (958), `TrimSet` (964), `TrimLeftSet` (963), `TrimRightSet` (963)

### 36.3.63 RemoveTrailingChars

Synopsis: Remove any trailing characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure RemoveTrailingChars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharset)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveTrailingChars` removes any trailing characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`, i.e. it starts with the last character and works its way to the start of the string. It stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. This is similar in behaviour to `TrimRight` (1310) which used whitespace as the set.

Errors:

See also: `rtl.sysutils.TrimLeft` (937), `RemoveLeadingChars` (957), `TrimRightSet` (963)

### 36.3.64 ReverseString

Synopsis: Reverse characters in a string

Declaration: `function ReverseString(const AText: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReverseString` returns a string, made up of the characters in string `AText`, in reverse order.

Errors: None.

See also: `RandomFrom` (957)

### 36.3.65 RightBStr

Synopsis: Copy a given number of characters (bytes), counting from the right of a string.

Declaration: `function RightBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: Integer) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightBStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (953), `AnsiRightStr` (944), `RightStr` (958), `MidBStr` (954)

### 36.3.66 RightStr

Synopsis: Copy a given number of characters, counting from the right of a string.

Declaration: `function RightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: Integer) : AnsiString`  
`function RightStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: Integer) : WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RightStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText` .  
If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText` , only as many characters as available are returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `LeftStr` ([953](#)), `AnsiRightStr` ([944](#)), `RightBStr` ([958](#)), `MidStr` ([954](#))

### 36.3.67 RomanToInt

**Synopsis:** Convert a string with a Roman number to it's decimal value.

**Declaration:** `function RomanToInt(const S: String) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RomanToInt` returns the decimal equivalent of the Roman numerals in the string `S`. Invalid characters are dropped from `S`. A negative numeral is supported as well.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `IntToRoman` ([952](#)), `Hex2Dec` ([950](#)), `Numb2Dec` ([955](#))

### 36.3.68 RPos

**Synopsis:** Find last occurrence of substring or character in a string

**Declaration:** `function RPos(c: Char;const S: AnsiString) : Integer; Overload`  
`function RPos(const Substr: AnsiString;const Source: AnsiString)`  
`: Integer; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at the end of the string, and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

**See also:** `RPosEx` ([959](#))

### 36.3.69 RPosEx

**Synopsis:** Find last occurrence substring or character in a string, starting at a certain position

**Declaration:** `function RPosEX(C: Char;const S: AnsiString;offs: cardinal) : Integer`  
`; Overload`  
`function RPosEx(const Substr: AnsiString;const Source: AnsiString;`  
`offs: cardinal) : Integer; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at position `Offs` (counted from the start of the string), and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

**See also:** `RPos` ([959](#))

### 36.3.70 SearchBuf

Synopsis: Search a buffer for a certain string.

Declaration: `function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar; BufLen: Integer; SelStart: Integer;  
                                   SelLength: Integer; SearchString: String;  
                                   Options: TStringSearchOptions) : PChar`  
`function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar; BufLen: Integer; SelStart: Integer;  
                                   SelLength: Integer; SearchString: String) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `SearchBuf` searches the buffer `Buf` for the occurrence of `SearchString`. At most `BufLen` characters are searched, and the search is started at `SelStart+SelLength`. If a match is found, a pointer to the position of the match is returned. The parameter `Options` (938) specifies how the search is conducted. It is a set of the following options:

Table 36.3:

Option	Effect
<code>soDown</code>	Searches forward, starting at the end of the selection. Default is searching up
<code>soMatchCase</code>	Observe case when searching. Default is to ignore case.
<code>soWholeWord</code>	Match only whole words. Default also returns parts of words

The standard constant `WordDelimiters` (938) is used to mark the boundaries of words.

The `SelStart` parameter is zero based.

Errors: `BufLen` must be the real length of the string, no checking on this is performed.

See also: `FindPart` (949), `ExtractWord` (949), `ExtractWordPos` (949), `ExtractSubStr` (948), `IsWordPresent` (953)

### 36.3.71 Soundex

Synopsis: Compute the soundex of a string

Declaration: `function Soundex(const AText: String; ALength: TSoundexLength) : String`  
`function Soundex(const AText: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Soundex` computes a soundex code for `AText`. The resulting code will at most have `ALength` characters. The soundex code is computed according to the US system of soundex computing, which may result in inaccurate results in other languages.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexCompare` (960), `SoundexInt` (961), `SoundexProc` (961), `SoundexWord` (962), `SoundexSimilar` (961)

### 36.3.72 SoundexCompare

Synopsis: Compare soundex values of 2 strings.

**Declaration:**

```
function SoundexCompare(const AText: String;const AOther: String;
                        ALength: TSoundexLength) : Integer
function SoundexCompare(const AText: String;const AOther: String)
                        : Integer
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SoundexCompare` computes the soundex codes of `AText` and `AOther` and feeds these to `CompareText`. It will return -1 if the soundex code of `AText` is less than the soundex code of `AOther`, 0 if they are equal, and 1 if the code of `AOther` is larger than the code of `AText`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Soundex` (960), `SoundexInt` (961), `SoundexProc` (961), `SoundexWord` (962), `SoundexSimilar` (961)

### 36.3.73 SoundexInt

**Synopsis:** Soundex value as an integer.

**Declaration:**

```
function SoundexInt(const AText: String;ALength: TSoundexIntLength)
                    : Integer
function SoundexInt(const AText: String) : Integer
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SoundexInt` computes the `Soundex` (960) code (with length `ALength`, default 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to an integer value.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Soundex` (960), `SoundexCompare` (960), `SoundexProc` (961), `SoundexWord` (962), `SoundexSimilar` (961)

### 36.3.74 SoundexProc

**Synopsis:** Default `AnsiResemblesText` implementation.

**Declaration:**

```
function SoundexProc(const AText: String;const AOther: String) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SoundexProc` is the standard implementation for the `AnsiResemblesText` (943) procedure: By default, `AnsiResemblesProc` is set to this function. It compares the soundex codes of `AOther` and `AText` and returns `True` if they are equal, or `False` if they are not.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Soundex` (960), `SoundexCompare` (960), `SoundexInt` (961), `SoundexWord` (962), `SoundexSimilar` (961)

### 36.3.75 SoundexSimilar

**Synopsis:** Check whether 2 strings have equal soundex values

**Declaration:**

```
function SoundexSimilar(const AText: String;const AOther: String;
                        ALength: TSoundexLength) : Boolean
function SoundexSimilar(const AText: String;const AOther: String)
                        : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SoundexSimilar` returns `True` if the soundex codes (with length `ALength`) of `AText` and `AOther` are equal, and `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: [Soundex \(960\)](#), [SoundexCompare \(960\)](#), [SoundexInt \(961\)](#), [SoundexProc \(961\)](#), [SoundexWord \(962\)](#), [Soundex \(960\)](#)

### 36.3.76 SoundexWord

**Synopsis:** Calculate a word-sized soundex value

**Declaration:** `function SoundexWord(const AText: String) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SoundexInt` computes the [Soundex \(960\)](#) code (with length 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to a word-sized value.

Errors: None.

See also: [Soundex \(960\)](#), [SoundexCompare \(960\)](#), [SoundexInt \(961\)](#), [SoundexProc \(961\)](#), [SoundexSimilar \(961\)](#)

### 36.3.77 StringsReplace

**Synopsis:** Replace occurrences of a set of strings to another set of strings

**Declaration:** `function StringsReplace(const S: String; OldPattern: Array of String;  
NewPattern: Array of String; Flags: TReplaceFlags)  
: String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringsReplace` scans `S` for the occurrence of one of the strings in `OldPattern` and replaces it with the corresponding string in `NewPattern`. It takes into account `Flags`, which has the same meaning as in [StringReplace \(1288\)](#).

Corresponding strings are matched by location: the `N`-th string in `OldPattern` is replaced by the `N`-th string in `NewPattern`. Note that this means that the number of strings in both arrays must be the same.

Errors: If the number of strings in both arrays is different, then an exception is raised.

See also: [#rtl.sysutils.StringReplace \(1288\)](#), [#rtl.sysutils.TReplaceFlags \(1191\)](#)

### 36.3.78 StuffString

**Synopsis:** Replace part of a string with another string.

**Declaration:** `function StuffString(const AText: String; AStart: Cardinal;  
ALength: Cardinal; const ASubText: String) : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StuffString` returns a copy of `AText` with the segment starting at `AStart` with length `ALength`, replaced with the string `ASubText`. Basically it deletes the segment of `Atext` and inserts the new text in it's place.

**Errors:** No checking on the validity of the `AStart` and `ALength` parameters is done. Providing invalid values may result in access violation errors.

**See also:** [FindPart \(949\)](#), [DelChars \(947\)](#), [DelSpace \(947\)](#), [ExtractSubStr \(948\)](#), [DupeString \(948\)](#)

### 36.3.79 Tab2Space

**Synopsis:** Convert tab characters to a number of spaces

**Declaration:** `function Tab2Space(const S: String;Numb: Byte) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Tab2Space` returns a copy of `S` with all tab characters (ASCII character 9) converted to `Numb` spaces.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** [StuffString \(962\)](#), [FindPart \(949\)](#), [ExtractWord \(949\)](#), [DelChars \(947\)](#), [DelSpace \(947\)](#), [DelSpace1 \(947\)](#), [DupeString \(948\)](#)

### 36.3.80 TrimLeftSet

**Synopsis:** Remove any leading characters in a set from a string and returns the result

**Declaration:** `function TrimLeftSet(const S: String;const CSet: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TrimLeftSet` performs the same action as [RemoveLeadingChars \(957\)](#), but returns the resulting string.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** [rtl.sysutils.TrimLeft \(937\)](#), [RemoveLeadingChars \(957\)](#), [RemoveTrailingChars \(958\)](#), [RemovePadChars \(957\)](#), [TrimSet \(964\)](#), [TrimRightSet \(963\)](#)

### 36.3.81 TrimRightSet

**Synopsis:** Remove any trailing characters in a set from a string and returns the result

**Declaration:** `function TrimRightSet(const S: String;const CSet: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TrimLeftSet` performs the same action as [RemoveTrailingChars \(958\)](#), but returns the resulting string.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** [rtl.sysutils.TrimRight \(937\)](#), [RemoveLeadingChars \(957\)](#), [RemoveTrailingChars \(958\)](#), [RemovePadChars \(957\)](#), [TrimSet \(964\)](#), [TrimLeftSet \(963\)](#)

### 36.3.82 TrimSet

Synopsis: Remove any leading or trailing characters in a set from a string and returns the result

Declaration: `function TrimSet(const S: String; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimSet` performs the same action as `RemovePadChars` (957), but returns the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `rtl.sysutils.Trim` (937), `RemoveLeadingChars` (957), `RemoveTrailingChars` (958), `RemovePadChars` (957), `TrimRightSet` (963), `TrimLeftSet` (963)

### 36.3.83 WordCount

Synopsis: Count the number of words in a string.

Declaration: `function WordCount(const S: String; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `WordCount` returns the number of words in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`.

The pre-defined `StdWordDelims` (938) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `WordPosition` (964), `StdWordDelims` (938), `ExtractWord` (949), `ExtractWordPos` (949)

### 36.3.84 WordPosition

Synopsis: Search position of Nth word in a string.

Declaration: `function WordPosition(const N: Integer; const S: String; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `WordPosition` returns the position (in characters) of the N-th word in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`. If `N` is out of range, zero is returned.

The pre-defined `StdWordDelims` (938) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None

See also: `WordCount` (964), `StdWordDelims` (938), `ExtractWord` (949), `ExtractWordPos` (949)

### 36.3.85 XorDecode

Synopsis: Decode a string encoded with `XorEncode` (965)

Declaration: `function XorDecode(const Key: String; const Source: String) : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `XorDecode` decodes `Source` and returns the original string that was encrypted using `XorEncode` (965) with key `Key`. If a different key is used than the key used to encode the string, the result will be unreadable.

**Errors:** If the string `Source` is not a valid `XorEncode` result (e.g. contains non-numerical characters), then a `EConversionError` exception will be raised.

See also: `XorEncode` (965), `XorString` (965)

### 36.3.86 XorEncode

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key, representing the result as hex values.

**Declaration:** `function XorEncode(const Key: String;const Source: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorEncode` encodes the string `Source` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key` (repeating `Key` as often as necessary) and representing the resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2). The result is therefore twice as long as the original string, and every 2 bytes represent an ASCII code.

Feeding the resulting string with the same key `Key` to the `XorDecode` (964) function will result in the original `Source` string.

This function can be used e.g. to trivially encode a password in a configuration file.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `XorDecode` (964), `XorString` (965), `Hex2Dec` (950)

### 36.3.87 XorString

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key.

**Declaration:** `function XorString(const Key: ShortString;const Src: ShortString)  
: ShortString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorString` encodes the string `Src` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key`, repeating `Key` as often as necessary. The resulting string may contain unreadable characters and may even contain null characters. For this reason it may be a better idea to use the `XorEncode` (965) function instead, which will represent each resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2).

Feeding the result again to `XorString` with the same `Key`, will result in the original string `Src`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `XorEncode` (965), `XorDecode` (964)

## Chapter 37

# Reference for unit 'System'

### 37.1 Miscellaneous functions

Functions that do not belong in one of the other categories.

Table 37.1:

Name	Description
Assert ( <a href="#">1017</a> )	Conditionally abort program with error
Break ( <a href="#">1023</a> )	Abort current loop
Continue ( <a href="#">1031</a> )	Next cycle in current loop
Exclude ( <a href="#">1043</a> )	Exclude an element from a set
Exit ( <a href="#">1044</a> )	Exit current function or procedure
Include ( <a href="#">1062</a> )	Include an element into a set
LongJump ( <a href="#">1075</a> )	Jump to execution point
Ord ( <a href="#">1105</a> )	Return ordinal value of enumerated type
Pred ( <a href="#">1109</a> )	Return previous value of ordinal type
SetJump ( <a href="#">1126</a> )	Mark execution point for jump
SizeOf ( <a href="#">1132</a> )	Return size of variable or type
Succ ( <a href="#">1138</a> )	Return next value of ordinal type

### 37.2 Operating System functions

Functions that are connected to the operating system.

### 37.3 String handling

All things connected to string handling.

### 37.4 Mathematical routines

Functions connected to calculating and converting numbers.

Table 37.2:

Name	Description
Chdir (1024)	Change working directory
Getdir (1054)	Return current working directory
Halt (1058)	Halt program execution
Paramcount (1106)	Number of parameters with which program was called
Paramstr (1107)	Retrieve parameters with which program was called
Mkdir (1077)	Make a directory
Rmdir (1118)	Remove a directory
Runerror (1123)	Abort program execution with error condition

Table 37.3:

Name	Description
BinStr (1021)	Construct binary representation of integer
Chr (1024)	Convert ASCII code to character
Concat (1030)	Concatenate two strings
Copy (1032)	Copy part of a string
Delete (1035)	Delete part of a string
HexStr (1058)	Construct hexadecimal representation of integer
Insert (1067)	Insert one string in another
Length (1072)	Return length of string
Lowercase (1076)	Convert string to all-lowercase
OctStr (1079)	Construct octal representation of integer
Pos (1108)	Calculate position of one string in another
SetLength (1127)	Set length of a string
SetString (1128)	Set contents and length of a string
Str (1135)	Convert number to string representation
StringOfChar (1136)	Create string consisting of a number of characters
Uppcase (1148)	Convert string to all-uppercase
Val (1150)	Convert string to number

## 37.5 Memory management functions

Functions concerning memory issues.

## 37.6 File handling functions

Functions concerning input and output from and to file.

## 37.7 Overview

The system unit contains the standard supported functions of Free Pascal. It is the same for all platforms. Basically it is the same as the system unit provided with Borland or Turbo Pascal.

Functions are listed in alphabetical order. Arguments of functions or procedures that are optional are put between square brackets.

Table 37.4:

Name	Description
Abs (1013)	Calculate absolute value
Arctan (1016)	Calculate inverse tangent
Cos (1032)	Calculate cosine of angle
Dec (1033)	Decrease value of variable
Exp (1045)	Exponentiate
Frac (1052)	Return fractional part of floating point value
Hi (1059)	Return high byte/word of value
Inc (1061)	Increase value of variable
Int (1067)	Calculate integer part of floating point value
Ln (1073)	Calculate logarithm
Lo (1073)	Return low byte/word of value
Odd (1080)	Is a value odd or even ?
Pi (1107)	Return the value of pi
Power (966)	Raise float to integer power
Random (1110)	Generate random number
Randomize (1111)	Initialize random number generator
Round (1121)	Round floating point value to nearest integer number
Sin (1132)	Calculate sine of angle
Sqr (1134)	Calculate the square of a value
Sqrt (1134)	Calculate the square root of a value
Swap (1138)	Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable
Trunc (1144)	Truncate a floating point value

The pre-defined constants and variables are listed in the first section. The second section contains an overview of all functions, grouped by functionality, and the last section contains the supported functions and procedures.

## 37.8 Constants, types and variables

### 37.8.1 Constants

```
AbstractErrorProc : TAbstractErrorProc = nil
```

If set, the `AbstractErrorProc` constant is used when an abstract error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 211.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
AllFilesMask = '*'
```

`AllFilesMask` is the wildcard that can be used to return all files in a directory. On windows and dos based systems, this will be `'*.*'`, while for unix systems, this will be `'*'`.

```
AllowDirectorySeparators : Set of Char = ['\','/']
```

`AllowDirectorySeparators` is the set of characters which are considered directory separators by the RTL units. By default, this is set to the most common directory separators: forward slash and backslash, so routines will work in a cross-platform manner, no matter which character was used:

```
AllowDirectorySeparators : set of char = ['\','/'];
```

If a more strict behaviour is desired, then `AllowDirectorySeparators` can be set to the only character allowed on the current operating system, and all RTL routines that handle filenames (splitting filenames, extracting parts of the filename and so on) will use that character only.

```
AllowDriveSeparators : Set of Char = []
```

`AllowDriveSeparators` are the characters which are considered to separate the drive part from the directory part in a filename. This will be an empty set on systems that do not support drive letters. Other systems (dos, windows and OS/2) will have the colon (:) character as the only member of this set.

```
AssertErrorProc : TAssertErrorProc = @SysAssert
```

If set, the `AbstractErrorProc` constant is used when an assert error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: The assertion error message is printed, together with the location of the assertion, and A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 227.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
BackTraceStrFunc : TBackTraceStrFunc = @SysBackTraceStr
```

This handler is called to get a standard format for the backtrace routine.

```
CtrlZMarksEOF : Boolean = false
```

`CtrlZMarksEOF` indicates whether on this system, an CTRL-Z character (ordinal 26) in a file marks the end of the file. This is `False` on most systems except on DOS.

To get DOS-compatible behaviour, this constant can be set to `True`

```
DefaultStackSize = 4 * 1024 * 1024
```

Default size for a new thread's stack (32k by default).

```
DefaultTextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle = tlbsLF
```

`DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` contains the default OS setting for the `TTextLineBreakStyle` (1005) type. It is initialized by the system unit, and is used to determine the default line ending when writing to text files.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DirectorySeparator = '/'
```

`DirectorySeparator` is the character used by the current operating system to separate directory parts in a pathname. This constant is system dependent, and should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DriveSeparator = '/'
```

On systems that support driveletters, the `DriveSeparator` constant denotes the character that separates the drive indicator from the directory part in a filename path.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`Erroraddr : pointer = nil`

Address where the last error occurred.

`Errorcode : Word = 0`

Last error code.

`ErrorProc : TErrorProc = nil`

If set, the `ErrorProc` constant is used when a run-time error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: a stack dump is performed, and the program exits with the indicated error code.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

`ExceptProc : TExceptProc = nil`

This constant points to the current exception handling procedure. This routine is called when an unhandled exception occurs, i.e. an exception that is not stopped by a `except` block.

If the handler is not set, the RTL will emit a run-time error 217 when an unhandler exception occurs.

It is set by the `sysutils` ([1174](#)) unit.

`ExitProc : pointer = nil`

Exit procedure pointer.

`ExtensionSeparator = '.'`

`ExtensionSeparator` is the character which separates the filename from the file extension. On all current platforms, this is the `.` (dot) character. All RTL filename handling routines use this constant.

`E_NOINTERFACE = HRESULT ($80004002)`

Interface call result: Error: not an interface

`E_NOTIMPL = HRESULT ($80004001)`

Interface call result: Interface not implemented

`E_UNEXPECTED = HRESULT ($8000FFFF)`

Interface call result: Unexpected error

`Filemode : Byte = 2`

Default file mode for untyped files.

```
FileNameCaseSensitive : Boolean = true
```

`FileNameCaseSensitive` is `True` if case is important when using filenames on the current OS. In this case, the OS will treat files with different cased names as different files. Note that this may depend on the filesystem: Unix operating systems that access a DOS or Windows partition will have this constant set to `true`, but when writing to the DOS partition, the casing is ignored.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
float_flag_denormal = 2
```

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: ?

```
float_flag_divbyzero = 4
```

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Division by zero error

```
float_flag_inexact = 32
```

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: ?

```
float_flag_invalid = 1
```

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Invalid operation error

```
float_flag_overflow = 8
```

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Overflow error

```
float_flag_underflow = 16
```

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Underflow error

```
float_round_down = 1
```

Round down

```
float_round_nearest_even = 0
```

Round to nearest even number

```
float_round_to_zero = 3
```

Round in the direction of zero (down for positive, up for negative)

```
float_round_up = 2
```

Round up

`fmAppend = $D7B4`

File mode: File is open for writing, appending to the end.

`fmClosed = $D7B0`

File mode: File is closed.

`fmInOut = $D7B3`

File mode: File is open for reading and writing.

`fmInput = $D7B1`

File mode: File is open for reading.

`fmOutput = $D7B2`

File mode: File is open for writing.

`fpc_in_abs_long = 64`

Internal ABS function

`fpc_in_abs_real = 127`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs (real)

`fpc_in_addr_x = 42`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: addr

`fpc_in_arctan_real = 130`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: arctan (real)

`fpc_in_assert_x_y = 41`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assert

`fpc_in_assigned_x = 19`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assigned

`fpc_in_bitsizeof_x = 61`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bitsizeof

`fpc_in_break = 39`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: break

`fpc_in_chr_byte = 7`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: chr

`fpc_in_concat_x = 18`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: concat

`fpc_in_const_abs = 101`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs

`fpc_in_const_odd = 102`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

`fpc_in_const_ptr = 103`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

`fpc_in_const_sqr = 100`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

`fpc_in_const_swap_long = 105`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (long)

`fpc_in_const_swap_qword = 108`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (qword)

`fpc_in_const_swap_word = 104`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (word)

`fpc_in_continue = 40`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: continue

`fpc_in_copy_x = 49`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: copy

`fpc_in_cos_real = 125`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cos (real)

`fpc_in_cycle = 52`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cycle

fpc\_in\_dec\_x = 36

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dec

fpc\_in\_dispose\_x = 47

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dispose

fpc\_in\_exclude\_x\_y = 38

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exclude

fpc\_in\_exit = 48

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exit

fpc\_in\_exp\_real = 124

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_exp\_real

fpc\_in\_fillchar\_x = 55

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_fillchar\_x

fpc\_in\_finalize\_x = 45

FPC compiler internal procedure index: finalize

fpc\_in\_frac\_real = 122

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_frac\_real

fpc\_in\_get\_caller\_addr = 57

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_get\_caller\_addr

fpc\_in\_get\_caller\_frame = 58

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_get\_caller\_frame

fpc\_in\_get\_frame = 56

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_get\_frame

fpc\_in\_high\_x = 28

FPC compiler internal procedure index: high

fpc\_in\_hi\_long = 4

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (long)

fpc\_in\_hi\_qword = 107

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (qword)

fpc\_in\_hi\_word = 2

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (word)

fpc\_in\_include\_x\_y = 37

FPC compiler internal procedure index: include

fpc\_in\_inc\_x = 35

FPC compiler internal procedure index: inc

fpc\_in\_initialize\_x = 50

FPC compiler internal procedure index: initialize

fpc\_in\_int\_real = 123

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_int\_real

fpc\_in\_leave = 51

FPC compiler internal procedure index: leave

fpc\_in\_length\_string = 6

FPC compiler internal procedure index: length

fpc\_in\_ln\_real = 131

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ln (real)

fpc\_in\_low\_x = 27

FPC compiler internal procedure index: low

fpc\_in\_lo\_long = 3

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (long)

fpc\_in\_lo\_qword = 106

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (qword)

fpc\_in\_lo\_word = 1

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (word)

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpeqb = 200

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpeqd = 202

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpeqw = 201

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpgtb = 203

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpgtd = 205

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpgtw = 204

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_move\_x = 54

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_move\_x

fpc\_in\_new\_x = 46

FPC compiler internal procedure index: new

fpc\_in\_ofs\_x = 21

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ofs

fpc\_in\_ord\_x = 5

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ord

fpc\_in\_pack\_x\_y\_z = 59

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pack

fpc\_in\_pi\_real = 126

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_pi\_real

fpc\_in\_pred\_x = 30

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pred

fpc\_in\_prefetch\_var = 109

FPC compiler internal procedure index: prefetch

fpc\_in\_readln\_x = 17

FPC compiler internal procedure index: readln

fpc\_in\_readstr\_x = 63

Internal read string procedure

fpc\_in\_read\_x = 16

FPC compiler internal procedure index: read

fpc\_in\_reset\_typedfile = 32

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_reset\_x = 25

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_typedfile = 33

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_x = 26

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rol\_x = 67

fpc\_in\_rol\_x\_x = 68

fpc\_in\_ror\_x = 65

fpc\_in\_ror\_x\_x = 66

fpc\_in\_round\_real = 121

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_round\_real

fpc\_in\_seg\_x = 29

FPC compiler internal procedure index: seg

fpc\_in\_setlength\_x = 44

FPC compiler internal procedure index: setlength

fpc\_in\_settextbuf\_file\_x = 34

FPC compiler internal procedure index: settextbuf

fpc\_in\_sin\_real = 132

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sin (real)

fpc\_in\_sizeof\_x = 22

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sizeof

fpc\_in\_slice = 53

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_slice

fpc\_in\_sqrt\_real = 129

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqrt (real)

fpc\_in\_sqr\_real = 128

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr (real)

fpc\_in\_str\_x\_string = 20

FPC compiler internal procedure index: str

fpc\_in\_succ\_x = 31

FPC compiler internal procedure index: succ

fpc\_in\_trunc\_real = 120

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_trunc\_real

fpc\_in\_typeinfo\_x = 43

FPC compiler internal procedure index: typeinfo

fpc\_in\_typeof\_x = 23

FPC compiler internal procedure index: typeof

fpc\_in\_unpack\_x\_y\_z = 60

FPC compiler internal procedure index: unpack

`fpc_in_val_x = 24`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `val`

`fpc_in_writeln_x = 15`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `writeln`

`fpc_in_writestr_x = 62`

Internal write string procedure

`fpc_in_write_x = 14`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `write`

`growheapsize1 : PtrUInt = 256 * 1024`

Grow rate for block less than 256 Kb.

`growheapsize2 : PtrUInt = 1024 * 1024`

Grow rate for block larger than 256 Kb.

`growheapsize_small : PtrUInt = 32 * 1024`

Fixed size small blocks grow rate

`InitProc : Pointer = nil`

`InitProc` is a routine that can be called after all units were initialized. It can be set by units to execute code that can be initialized after all units were initialized.

**Remark:** When setting the value of `InitProc`, the previous value should always be saved, and called when the installed initialization routine has finished executing.

`IsMultiThread : longbool = false`

Indicates whether more than one thread is running in the application.

`LFNSupport = true`

`LFNSupport` determines whether the current OS supports long file names, i.e. filenames that are not of the form 8.3 as on ancient DOS systems. If the value of this constant is `True` then long filenames are supported. If it is false, then not.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`LineEnding = #10`

`LineEnding` is a constant which contains the current line-ending character. This character is system dependent, and is initialized by the system. It should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
maxExitCode = 255
```

`maxExitCode` is the maximum value for the `Halt` (1058) call.

```
maxint = maxsmallint
```

Maximum integer value.

```
MaxKeptOSChunks : DWord = 4
```

`MaxKeptOSChunks` tells the heap manager how many free chunks of OS-allocated memory it should keep in memory. When freeing memory, it can happen that a memory block obtained from the OS is completely free. If more than `MaxKeptOSChunks` such blocks are free, then the heap manager will return them to the OS, to reduce memory requirements.

```
maxLongint = $7fffffff
```

Maximum longint value.

```
MaxPathLen = 4096
```

This constant is system dependent.

```
MaxSIntValue = High ( ValSInt )
```

Maximum String-size value.

```
maxSmallint = 32767
```

Maximum smallint value.

```
MaxUIntValue = High ( ValUInt )
```

Maximum unsigned integer value.

```
Max_Frame_Dump : Word = 8
```

Maximum number of frames to show in error frame dump.

```
ModuleIsCpp : Boolean = false
```

`ModuleIsCpp` is always false for FPC programs, it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

```
ModuleIsLib : Boolean = false
```

`ModuleIsLib` is set by the compiler when linking a library, program or package, and determines whether the current module is a library (or package) (`True`) or program (`False`).

```
ModuleIsPackage : Boolean = false
```

`ModuleIsLib` is set by the compiler when linking a library, program or package, and determines whether the current module is a package (`True`) or a library or program (`False`).

```
PathSeparator = ':'
```

`PathSeparator` is the character used commonly on the current operating system to separate paths in a list of paths, such as the `PATH` environment variable.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
RaiseMaxFrameCount : LongInt = 16
```

Maximum number of frames to include in `TExceptObject` (1000)

```
RaiseProc : TExceptProc = nil
```

Procedure to raise an exception.

```
RT_ACCELERATOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 9 )
```

Constant identifying an accelerator resource

```
RT_ANICURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 21 )
```

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "animated cursor".

```
RT_ANIICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 22 )
```

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "animated icon".

```
RT_BITMAP = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 2 )
```

Constant identifying a bitmap resource

```
RT_CURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 1 )
```

Constant identifying a cursor resource

```
RT_DIALOG = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 5 )
```

Constant identifying a dialog resource

```
RT_FONT = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 8 )
```

Constant identifying a font resource

RT\_FONTDIR = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 7 )

Constant identifying a font directory resource

RT\_GROUP\_CURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 12 )

Constant identifying a group cursor resource

RT\_GROUP\_ICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 14 )

Constant identifying a group icon resource

RT\_HTML = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 23 )

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "HTML data".

RT\_ICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 3 )

Constant identifying an icon resource

RT\_MANIFEST = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 24 )

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "Manifest".

RT\_MENU = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 4 )

Constant identifying a menu resource

RT\_MESSAGE\_TABLE = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 11 )

Constant identifying a message data resource

RT\_RC\_DATA = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 10 )

Constant identifying a binary data resource

RT\_STRING = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 6 )

Constant identifying a string table resource

RT\_VERSION = MAKEINTRESOURCE ( 16 )

Constant identifying a version info resource

RuntimeErrorExitCodes : Array[TRuntimeError] of Byte = (0,203,204,200,201,215,207,20

This array is used by the Error (1043) routine to convert a TRuntimeError (1004) enumeration type to a process exit code.

SafeCallErrorProc : TSafeCallErrorProc = nil

`SafeCallErrorProc` is a Handler called in case of a safecall calling convention error. `Error` is the error number (passed by the Windows operating system) and `Addr` is the address where the error occurred.

```
SIGSTKSZ = 40960
```

```
sLineBreak = LineEnding
```

`sLineBreak` is an alias for `LineEnding` (980) and is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
StackError : Boolean = false
```

Indicate whether there was a stack error.

```
StdErrorHandle = 2
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard error-output file.

```
StdInputHandle = 0
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard input file.

```
StdOutputHandle = 1
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard output file.

```
S_FALSE = 1
```

Interface call result: Not OK

```
S_OK = 0
```

Interface call result: OK

```
ThreadingAlreadyUsed : Boolean = false
```

Internal constant for the threading system. Don't use.

```
UnixGetModuleByAddrHook : procedure(addr: pointer;var baseaddr: pointer;var filename
```

`UnixGetModuleByAddrHook` is used on unix systems to retrieve a module name based on an address. It is used in the `exeinfo` (318) unit to map addresses to module (programs or library) names.

```
UnusedHandle = -1
```

Value indicating an unused file handle (as reported by the OS).

```
VarAddRefProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = nil
```

Callback to increase reference count of a variant.

`varany = $101`

Variant type: Any

`vararray = $2000`

Variant type: variant Array

`varboolean = 11`

Variant type: Boolean type

`varbyref = $4000`

Variant type: By reference

`varbyte = 17`

Variant type: Byte (8 bit)

`VarClearProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to clear a variant.

`VarCopyProc : procedure(var d: tvardata;const s: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to copy a variant

`varcurrency = 6`

Variant type: Currency

`vardate = 7`

Variant type: Date

`vardecimal = 14`

Variant type: Decimal (BCD)

`vardispatch = 9`

Variant type: dispatch interface

`vardouble = 5`

Variant type: Double float

`vareempty = 0`

Variant type: Empty variant

`varerror = 10`

Variant type: Error type

`varint64 = 20`

Variant type: Integer (64-Bit)

`varinteger = 3`

Variant type: Integer (32-bit)

`varlongword = 19`

Variant type: Word (32 bit)

`varnull = 1`

Variant type: Null ([1079](#)) variant

`varolestr = 8`

Variant type: OLE string (widerstring)

`varqword = 21`

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`varrecord = 36`

Record variant type

`varshortint = 16`

Variant type: Shortint (16 bit)

`varsingle = 4`

Variant type: Single float

`varsmallint = 2`

Variant type: smallint (8 bit)

`varstrarg = $48`

Variant type: String

`varstring = $100`

Variant type: String

`VarToLStrProc : procedure (var d: AnsiString; const s: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to convert a variant to a ansistring.

`VarToWStrProc : procedure (var d: WideString; const s: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to convert a variant to a widestring.

`vartypemask = $fff`

Variant type: Mask to extract type

`varunknown = 13`

Variant type: Unknown

`varvariant = 12`

Variant type: Variant (arrays only)

`varword = 18`

Variant type: Word (16 bit)

`varword64 = varqword`

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`vmtAfterConstruction = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 5`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtAutoTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 7`

VMt layout: ?

`vmtBeforeDestruction = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 6`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtClassName = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer )`

VMt Layout: location of class name.

`vmtDefaultHandler = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 4`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtDefaultHandlerStr = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 7`

VMT Layout: ?

`vmtDestroy = vmtMethodStart`

VMT Layout: Location of destructor pointer.

`vmtDynamicTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 2`

VMT Layout: location of dynamic methods table.

`vmtFieldTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 4`

VMT Layout: Location of fields table.

`vmtFreeInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 2`

VMT Layout: location of FreeInstance method.

`vmtInitTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 6`

VMT Layout: ?

`vmtInstanceSize = 0`

VMT Layout: Location of class instance size in VMT

`vmtIntfTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 8`

VMT layout: Interface table

`vmtMethodStart = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 10`

VMT layout: start of method table.

`vmtMethodTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 3`

VMT Layout: Method table start.

`vmtMsgStrPtr = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 9`

VMT layout: message strings table.

`vmtNewInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer )`

VMT Layout: location of NewInstance method.

`vmtParent = sizeof ( ptruint ) * 2`

VMT Layout: location of pointer to parent VMT.

`vmtSafeCallException = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 3`

VMTypeLayout: ?

```
vmTypeInfo = vmParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 5
```

VMTypeLayout: Location of class type information.

```
vtAnsiString = 11
```

TVarRec type: AnsiString

```
vtBoolean = 1
```

TVarRec type: Boolean

```
vtChar = 2
```

TVarRec type: Char

```
vtClass = 8
```

TVarRec type: Class type

```
vtCurrency = 12
```

TVarRec type: Currency

```
vtExtended = 3
```

TVarRec type: Extended

```
vtInt64 = 16
```

TVarRec type: Int64 (signed 64-bit integer)

```
vtInteger = 0
```

TVarRec type: Integer

```
vtInterface = 14
```

TVarRec type: Interface

```
vtObject = 7
```

TVarRec type: Object instance

```
vtPChar = 6
```

TVarRec type: PChar

```
vtPointer = 5
```

TVarRec type: pointer

vtPWideChar = 10

TVarRec type: PWideChar

vtQWord = 17

TVarRec type: QWord (unsigned 64-bit integer)

vtString = 4

TVarRec type: String

vtVariant = 13

TVarRec type: Variant

vtWideChar = 9

TVarRec type: Widechar

vtWideString = 15

TVarRec type: WideString

## 37.8.2 Types

AnsiChar = Char

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

Cardinal = LongWord

An unsigned 32-bits integer.

DWord = LongWord

An unsigned 32-bits integer

```
EnumResLangProc = function (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                             ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
                             IDLanguage: Word; lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool
```

EnumResNameProcs used in the EnumResourceLanguages ([1040](#)) call. It is called for all languages for a resource of the specified type and name, and is passed the ModuleHandle, ResourceName, ResourceName and IDLanguage values for each language encountered for the specified resource. Additionally, the lParam parameter from the EnumResourceLanguages is passed unaltered.

```
EnumResNameProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                           ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
                           lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool
```

EnumResNameProc is used in the EnumResourceNames (1040) call. It is called for all resources of the specified type, and is passed the ModuleHandle, ResourceType, ResourceName values for each resource encountered. Additionally, the lParam parameter from the EnumResourceNames is passed unaltered.

```
EnumResTypeProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                           ResourceType: PChar; lParam: PtrInt)
                           : LongBool
```

EnumResTypeProc is used in the EnumResourceTypes (1040) call. It is called for all resources, and is passed the ModuleHandle, ResourceType values for each resource encountered. Additionally, the lParam parameter from the EnumResourceTypes is passed unaltered.

```
HGLOBAL = Cardinal
```

This is an opaque type.

```
HMODULE = Cardinal
```

This is an opaque type.

```
HRESULT = LongInt
```

32-Bit signed integer.

```
IInterface = IUnknown
```

IInterface is the basic interface from which all COM style interfaces descend.

```
Integer = SmallInt
```

The system unit defines Integer as a signed 16-bit integer. But when DELPHI or OBJFPC mode are active, then the objpas unit redefines Integer as a 32-bit integer.

```
IntegerArray = Array[0..$ffffff] of Integer
```

Generic array of integer.

```
jmp_buf = packed record
  ebx : LongInt;
  esi : LongInt;
  edi : LongInt;
  bp  : Pointer;
  sp  : Pointer;
  pc  : Pointer;
end
```

Record type to store processor information.

```
MAKEINTRESOURCE = PChar
```

Alias for the PChar (991) type.

```
PAnsiChar = PChar
```

Alias for PChar (991) type.

```
PAnsiString = ^AnsiString
```

Pointer to an ansistring type.

```
PBoolean = ^Boolean
```

Pointer to a Boolean type.

```
PByte = ^Byte
```

Pointer to byte (966) type

```
pcallldesc = ^tcallldesc
```

Pointer to TCallDesc (998) record.

```
PCardinal = ^Cardinal
```

Pointer to Cardinal (989) type

```
PChar = ^Char
```

Or the same as a pointer to an array of char. See the reference manual for more information about this type.

```
PClass = ^TClass
```

Pointer to TClass (999)

```
PCurrency = ^Currency
```

Pointer to currency type.

```
PDate = ^TDateTime
```

Pointer to a TDateTime (999) type.

```
PDateTime = ^TDateTime
```

Pointer to Tdatetime

`PDispatch = ^IDispatch`

Pointer to IDispatch (1156) interface type

`pdispdesc = ^tdispdesc`

Pointer to tdispdesc (999) record

`PDouble = ^Double`

Pointer to double-sized float value.

`PDWord = ^DWord`

Pointer to DWord (989) type

`pdynarrayindex = ^tdynarrayindex`

Pointer to tdynarrayindex (999) type.

`pdynarraytypeinfo = ^tdynarraytypeinfo`

Pointer to TDynArrayTypeInfo (999) type.

`PError = ^TError`

Pointer to an Error (1043) type.

`PEventState = pointer`

Pointer to EventState, which is an opaque type.

`PExceptObject = ^TExceptObject`

Pointer to Exception handler procedural type TExceptProc (1000)

`PExtended = ^Extended`

Pointer to extended-sized float value.

`PGuid = ^TGuid`

Pointer to TGUID (1001) type.

`PInt64 = ^Int64`

Pointer to Int64 type

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to integer (990) type

`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to IntegerArray (990) type

`PInterface = PUnknown`

Pointer to IInterface (990) interface

`pinterfaceentry = ^tinterfaceentry`

Pointer to tinterfaceentry (1002) record.

`pinterfacetable = ^tinterfacetable`

Pointer to tinterfacetable (1002) record.

`PJump_buf = ^jmp_buf`

Pointer to jmp\_buf (991) record

`PLongBool = ^LongBool`

Pointer to a LongBool type.

`PLongint = ^LongInt`

Pointer to Longint (966) type

`PLongWord = ^LongWord`

Pointer to LongWord type

`PMemoryManager = ^TMemoryManager`

Pointer to TMemoryManager (1002) record

`PMsgStrTable = ^TMsgStrTable`

Pointer to array of TMsgStrTable (1002) records.

`PointerArray = Array[0..512*1024*1024-2] of Pointer`

Generic pointer array.

`POleVariant = ^OleVariant`

Pointer to OleVariant type.

`PPAnsiChar = PPChar`

Alias for PPChar (994) type.

`PPChar = ^PChar`

Pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings.

`PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray`

Pointer to `TPCharArray` (1003) type.

`PPDispatch = ^PDispatch`

Pointer to `PDispatch` (992) pointer type

`PPPointer = ^Pointer`

Pointer to a pointer type.

`PPPointerArray = ^PointerArray`

Pointer to `PointerArray` (993) type

`PPPointer = ^PPPointer`

Pointer to a `PPPointer` (994) type.

`PPPtrInt = ^PtrInt`

Pointer to `PtrInt` (995) type.

`PPPtrUInt = ^PtrUInt`

Pointer to unsigned integer of pointer size

`PPUnknown = ^PUnknown`

Pointer to untyped pointer

`PPWideChar = ^PWideChar`

Pointer to link id="PWideChar"> type.

`PQWord = ^QWord`

Pointer to `QWord` type

`PRTLCriticalSection = ^RTLCriticalSection`

Pointer to `#rtl.system.RTLCriticalSection` (1004) type.

`PRTLEvent = pointer`

Pointer to `RTLEvent`, which is an opaque type.

```
PShortInt = ^ShortInt
```

Pointer to shortint (966) type

```
PShortString = ^ShortString
```

Pointer to a shortstring type.

```
PSingle = ^Single
```

Pointer to single-sized float value.

```
PSizeInt = ^SizeInt
```

Pointer to a SizeInt (997) type

```
PSmallInt = ^SmallInt
```

Pointer to smallint (966) type

```
pstringmessagetable = ^TStringMessageTable
```

Pointer to TStringMessageTable (1005) record.

```
PText = ^Text
```

Pointer to text file.

```
PtrInt = LongInt
```

PtInt is a signed integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. PtInt is considered harmful and should almost never be used in actual code, because pointers are normally unsigned. For example, consider the following code:

```
getmem(p, 2048);           {Assume the address of p becomes $7ffffff0.}
q:=pointer(ptInt(p)+1024); {Overflow error.}
writeln(q>p);              {Incorrect answer.}
```

PtInt might have a valid use when two pointers are subtracted from each other if it is unknown which pointer has the largest address. However, even in this case ptInt causes trouble in case the distance is larger than high(ptInt) and must be used with great care.

The introduction of the ptInt type was a mistake. Please use ptrInt (995) instead.

```
PtrUInt = DWord
```

PtrUInt is an unsigned integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. When using integers which will be cast to pointers and vice versa, use this type, never the regular Cardinal type.

```
PUCS2Char = PWideChar
```

Pointer to UCS2Char (1010) character.

PUCS4Char = ^UCS4Char

Pointer to UCS4Char (1010)

PUCS4CharArray = ^TUCS4CharArray

Pointer to array of UCS4Char (1010) characters.

PUnicodeChar = ^UnicodeChar

PUnicodeChar is a pointer to a unicode character, just like PChar is a pointer to a Char an-  
sistring character.

PUnicodeString = ^UnicodeString

PUnicodeString is a pointer to a UnicodeString string.

PUnknown = ^IUnknown

Untyped pointer

PUTF8String = ^UTF8String

Pointer to UTF8String (1010)

pvararray = ^tvararray

Pointer to TVarArray (1007) type.

pvararraybound = ^tvararraybound

Pointer to tvararraybound (1007) type.

pvararrayboundarray = ^tvararrayboundarray

Pointer to tvararrayboundarray (1008) type.

pvararraycoorarray = ^tvararraycoorarray

Pointer to tvararraycoorarray (1008) type.

pvardata = ^tvardata

Pointer to TVarData (1008) record.

PVariant = ^Variant

Pointer to Variant type.

pvariantmanager = ^tvariantmanager

Pointer to TVariantManager (1009) record.

PVarRec = ^TVarRec

Pointer to TVarRec (1009) type.

PVmt = ^TVmt

Pointer to TVMT (1010) record

PWideChar = ^WideChar

Pointer to WChar (1010).

PWideString = ^WideString

Pointer to widestring type

PWord = ^Word

Pointer to word (966) type

PWordBool = ^WordBool

Pointer to a WordBool type.

Real = Double

Alias for real type

real48 = Array[0..5] of Byte

TP compatible real type (6 bytes) definition

SizeInt = LongInt

Signed integer type which fits for sizes

SizeUInt = DWord

Unsigned Integer type which fits for sizes

TAbstractErrorProc = procedure

Abstract error handler procedural type.

TAllocateThreadVarsHandler = procedure

Threadvar allocation callback type for TThreadManager (1006).

TAnsiChar = Char

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

```
TAssertErrorProc = procedure(const msg: ShortString;
                             const fname: ShortString; lineno: LongInt;
                             erroraddr: pointer)
```

Assert error handler procedural type.

```
TBackTraceStrFunc = function(Addr: Pointer) : ShortString
```

Type for formatting of backtrace dump.

```
TBasicEventCreateHandler = function(EventAttributes: Pointer;
                                    AManualReset: Boolean;
                                    InitialState: Boolean;
                                    const Name: ansistring)
                            : PEventState
```

callback type for creating eventstate in TThreadManager (1006).

```
TBasicEventHandler = procedure(state: PEventState)
```

Generic callback type for handling eventstate in TThreadManager (1006).

```
TBasicEventWaitForHandler = function(timeout: Cardinal;
                                     state: PEventState) : LongInt
```

Wait for basic event callback type for TThreadManager (1006).

```
TBeginThreadHandler = function(sa: Pointer; stacksize: PtrUInt;
                               ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;
                               creationFlags: DWord;
                               var ThreadId: TThreadID) : TThreadID
```

Callback for thread start in TThreadManager (1006).

```
TBoundArray = Array of SizeInt
```

Dynamic array of integer.

```
tcalldesc = packed record
  calltype : Byte;
  argcount : Byte;
  namedargcount : Byte;
  argtypes : Array[0..255] of Byte;
end
```

tcalldesc is used to encode the arguments to a dispatch call to an OLE dual interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the arguments to a call.

```
TClass = Class of TObject
```

Class of TObject ([1160](#)).

```
TCriticalSectionHandler = procedure(var cs)
```

Generic callback type for critical section handling in TThreadManager ([1006](#)).

```
TCtrlBreakHandler = function(CtrlBreak: Boolean) : Boolean
```

TCtrlBreakHandler is the prototype for the CTRL-C handler. If CtrlBreak is True then Ctrl-Break was hit, otherwise CTRL-C was hit. The handlers should return True to signal that the key-combination was handled. If False is returned, then default handling will be used, which by default means an exception will be raised if the sysutils unit is used.

```
TDateTime = Double
```

Encoded Date-Time type.

```
tdispdesc = packed record
  dispid : LongInt;
  restype : Byte;
  calldesc : tcalldesc;
end
```

tcalldesc is used to encode a dispatch call to an OLE dispatch interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the dispatch call.

```
tdynarrayindex = SizeInt
```

A variable of type tdynarrayindex will always have the correct size, suitable for serving as an index in a dynamic array.

```
tdynarraytypeinfo = packed record
  kind : Byte;
  namelen : Byte;
  elesize : SizeInt;
  eletype : pdynarraytypeinfo;
  vartype : LongInt;
end
```

tdynarraytypeinfo describes the structure of a multi-dimensional dynamical array. It is used in the DynArraySetLength ([1038](#)) call.

```
TEndThreadHandler = procedure(ExitCode: DWord)
```

Callback for thread end in TThreadManager ([1006](#)).

```
TEntryInformation = record
  InitFinalTable : Pointer;
  ThreadvarTablesTable : Pointer;
  asm_exit : procedure;
  PascalMain : procedure;
  valgrind_used : Boolean;
end
```

TEntryInformation is used to initialize a Free Pascal program or library. Under normal circumstances, there should be no need to use this structure directly: it is used by the system unit and special linking units.

TError = LongInt

Error type, used in variants.

TErrorProc = procedure (ErrNo: LongInt; Address: Pointer; Frame: Pointer)

Standard error handler procedural type.

```
TExceptObject = record
  FObject : TObject;
  Addr : pointer;
  Next : PExceptObject;
  refcount : LongInt;
  Framecount : LongInt;
  Frames : PPointer;
end
```

TExceptObject is the exception description record which is found on the exception stack.

```
TExceptProc = procedure (Obj: TObject; Addr: Pointer; FrameCount: LongInt;
  Frame: PPointer)
```

Exception handler procedural type

TextFile = Text

Alias for Text file type.

```
TFPCHeapStatus = record
  MaxHeapSize : PtrUInt;
  MaxHeapUsed : PtrUInt;
  CurrHeapSize : PtrUInt;
  CurrHeapUsed : PtrUInt;
  CurrHeapFree : PtrUInt;
end
```

TFPCHeapStatus describes the state of the FPC heap manager. This is not equivalent to the THeapStatus (1001) record defined by Delphi, which contains information not meaningful for the FPC heap manager. The heap status can be retrieved by the GetFPCHeapStatus (1054) call.

TFPResourceHandle = PtrUInt

TFPResourceHandle represents a handle to a binary resource and is used in the various resource calls. Its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

TFPResourceHGLOBAL = PtrUInt

TFPResourceHGLOBAL represents a handle to the global module containing a resource. It is used in the various resource calls. It is an opaque type: its actual type and size may differ accross platforms.

TFPResourceHMODULE = PtrUInt

TFPResourceHMODULE represents a module (library, executable, other) in which a resource is located. It is used in the various resource calls. It is an opaque type: its actual type and size may differ accross platforms.

TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler = function : TThreadID

Callback type for retrieving thread ID in TThreadManager (1006).

TGuid = packed record  
end

Standard GUID representation type.

THandle = LongInt

This type should be considered opaque. It is used to describe file and other handles.

THeapStatus = record  
  TotalAddrSpace : Cardinal;  
  TotalUncommitted : Cardinal;  
  TotalCommitted : Cardinal;  
  TotalAllocated : Cardinal;  
  TotalFree : Cardinal;  
  FreeSmall : Cardinal;  
  FreeBig : Cardinal;  
  Unused : Cardinal;  
  Overhead : Cardinal;  
  HeapErrorCode : Cardinal;  
end

THeapStatus is the record describing the current heap status. It is returned by the GetHeapStatus (1054) call.

TInitThreadVarHandler = procedure(var offset: DWord;size: DWord)

Threadvar initialization callback type for TThreadManager (1006).

TInterfacedClass = Class of TInterfacedObject

TInterfacedClass is a descendent of

tinterfaceentry = record  
  IID : PGuid;  
  VTable : Pointer;  
  IOffset : PtrUInt;  
  IIDStr : PShortString;  
end

`tinterfaceentry` is used to store the list of Interfaces of a class. This list is stored as an array of `tinterfaceentry` records.

```
tinterfaceentrytype = (etStandard, etVirtualMethodResult,
                      etStaticMethodResult, etFieldValue)
```

This is an internal type for the compiler to encode calls to dispatch interfaces.

```
tinterfacetable = record
  EntryCount : PtrUInt;
  Entries : Array[0..0] of tinterfaceentry;
end
```

Record to store list of interfaces of a class.

```
TMemoryManager = record
  NeedLock : Boolean;
  Getmem : function(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
  Freemem : function(p: pointer) : PtrUInt;
  FreememSize : function(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt;
  AllocMem : function(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
  ReAllocMem : function(var p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
  MemSize : function(p: pointer) : PtrUInt;
  InitThread : procedure;
  DoneThread : procedure;
  RelocateHeap : procedure;
  GetHeapStatus : function : THeapStatus;
  GetFPCHeapStatus : function : TFPCHepStatus;
end
```

`TMemoryManager` describes the memory manager. For more information about the memory manager, see the programmer's reference.

```
TMethod = record
  Code : Pointer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

`TMethod` describes a general method pointer, and is used in Run-Time Type Information handling.

```
TMsgStrTable = record
  name : PShortString;
  method : pointer;
end
```

Record used in string message handler table.

```
TPCharArray = packed Array[0..(MaxLongintdivSizeOf(PChar))-1] of PChar
```

Array of PChar

TProcedure = procedure

Simple procedural type.

TReleaseThreadVarsHandler = procedure

Threadvar release callback type for TThreadManager (1006).

TRelocateThreadVarHandler = function(offset: DWord) : pointer

Threadvar relocation callback type for TThreadManager (1006).

TResourceHandle = Cardinal

This is an opaque type.

```
TResourceManager = record
  HINSTANCEFunc : function : TFPResourceHMODULE;
  EnumResourceTypesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;EnumFunc: EnumRe
    lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool;
  EnumResourceNamesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;ResourceType: PC
    EnumFunc: EnumResNameProc;lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool;
  EnumResourceLanguagesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;ResourceType
    ResourceName: PChar;EnumFunc: EnumResLangProc;lParam: PtrInt)
    : LongBool;
  FindResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;ResourceName: PChar;
    ResourceType: PChar) : TFPResourceHandle;
  FindResourceExFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;ResourceType: PChar
    ResourceName: PChar;Language: Word) : TFPResourceHandle;
  LoadResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;ResHandle: TFPResourc
    : TFPResourceHGLOBAL;
  SizeofResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;ResHandle: TFPResou
    : LongWord;
  LockResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : Pointer;
  UnlockResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool;
  FreeResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool;
end
```

TResourceManager is the record describing the resource manager. Depending on the kind of resources (internal, external), another resource managing handler is installed by the system. The resource manager record is used by all resource handling functions to do the actual work: for each function in the API, a handler function is available. People wishing to implement their own resource manager, must implement all handler functions in their implementation.

As soon as resources are used, the compiler will install a resource manager, depending on the platform, this may be an internal or an external resource manager.

TRTLCreateEventHandler = function : PRTLEvent

Callback type for creating a RTLEvent type in TThreadManager (1006).

TRTLCriticalSection = Opaque type

TRTLCriticalSection represents a critical section (a mutex). This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system. No assumptions should be made about its structure or contents.

TRTLEventHandler = procedure (AEvent: PRTLEvent)

Generic TRTLEvent handling type for TThreadManager (1006).

TRTLEventHandlerTimeout = procedure (AEvent: PRTLEvent; timeout: LongInt)

TRTLEvent timeout handling type for TThreadManager (1006).

TRTLEventSyncHandler = procedure (m: trtlmethod; p: TProcedure)

Callback type for event synchronization in TThreadManager (1006).

trtlmethod = procedure of object

Callback type for synchronization event.

TRuntimeError = (reNone, reOutOfMemory, reInvalidPtr, reDivByZero, reRangeError, reIntOverflow, reInvalidOp, reZeroDivide, reOverflow, reUnderflow, reInvalidCast, reAccessViolation, rePrivInstruction, reControlBreak, reStackOverflow, reVarTypeCast, reVarInvalidOp, reVarDispatch, reVarArrayCreate, reVarNotArray, reVarArrayBounds, reAssertionFailed, reExternalException, reIntfCastError, reSafeCallError, reQuit, reCodesetConversion)

TRuntimeError is used in the Error (1043) procedure to indicate what kind of error should be reported.

TSafeCallErrorProc = procedure (error: HRESULT; addr: pointer)

Prototype of a safecall error handler routine. Error is the error number (passed by the Windows operating system) and Addr is the address where the error occurred.

TSemaphoreDestroyHandler = procedure (const sem: Pointer)

TSemaphoreDestroyHandler is the function prototype to destroy an existing semaphore, as returned by (ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit). It is used by the thread manager (ThreadManager.SemaphoreDest

TSemaphorePostHandler = procedure (const sem: Pointer)

TSemaphorePostHandler is the function prototype to post an event to the semaphore. It should handle a pointer as returned by the ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit procedure. it's used by the thread manager ThreadManager.SemaphorePost.

TSemaphoreWaitHandler = procedure (const sem: Pointer)

`TSemaphoreWaitHandler` is the function prototype to wait on an event on the semaphore (which should be posted to the semaphore with `ThreadManager.SemaphorePost`). It should handle a pointer as returned by the `ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit` procedure. it's used by the thread manager `ThreadManager.SemaphoreWait`.

```
TSemaphoreInitHandler = function : Pointer
```

`TSemaphoreInitHandler` is the function prototype for initializing a semaphore. It is used by the thread manager (`ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit`) to create semaphores. The function should return a pointer, usable by the other semaphore functions of the thread manager.

```
TStringMessageTable = record
    count : PtrUInt;
    msgstrtable : Array[0..0] of TMsgStrTable;
end
```

Record used to describe the string messages handled by a class. It consists of a count, followed by an array of `TMsgStrTable` (1002) records.

```
TTextLineBreakStyle = (tlbsLF,tlbsCRLF,tlbsCR)
```

Text line break style. (end of line character)

```
TThreadFunc = function(parameter: pointer) : PtrInt
```

Thread function prototype

```
TThreadGetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) : LongInt
```

Callback type for thread priority getting in `TThreadManager` (1006).

```
TThreadHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord
```

Generic thread handler callback for `TThreadManager` (1006).

```
TThreadID = PtrUInt
```

This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system.

```
TThreadManager = record
    InitManager : function : Boolean;
    DoneManager : function : Boolean;
    BeginThread : TBeginThreadHandler;
    EndThread : TEndThreadHandler;
    SuspendThread : TThreadHandler;
    ResumeThread : TThreadHandler;
    KillThread : TThreadHandler;
    ThreadSwitch : TThreadSwitchHandler;
    WaitForThreadTerminate : TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler;
    ThreadSetPriority : TThreadSetPriorityHandler;
    ThreadGetPriority : TThreadGetPriorityHandler;
```

```

GetCurrentThreadId : TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler;
InitCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
DoneCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
EnterCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
LeaveCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
InitThreadVar : TInitThreadVarHandler;
RelocateThreadVar : TRelocateThreadVarHandler;
AllocateThreadVars : TAllocateThreadVarsHandler;
ReleaseThreadVars : TReleaseThreadVarsHandler;
BasicEventCreate : TBasicEventCreateHandler;
BasicEventDestroy : TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventResetEvent : TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventSetEvent : TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventWaitFor : TBasicEventWaitForHandler;
RTLEventCreate : TRTLCreatEventHandler;
RTLEventDestroy : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventSetEvent : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventResetEvent : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventWaitFor : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventSync : TRTLEventSyncHandler;
RTLEventWaitForTimeout : TRTLEventHandlerTimeout;
SemaphoreInit : TSemaphoreInitHandler;
SemaphoreDestroy : TSemaphoreDestroyHandler;
SemaphorePost : TSemaphorePostHandler;
SemaphoreWait : TSemaphoreWaitHandler;
end

```

`TThreadManager` is a record that contains all callbacks needed for the thread handling routines of the Free Pascal Run-Time Library. The thread manager can be set by the `SetThreadManager` (1130) procedure, and the current thread manager can be retrieved with the `GetThreadManager` (1056) procedure.

The Windows RTL will set the thread manager automatically to a system thread manager, based on the Windows threading routines. Unix operating systems provide a unit `cthreads` which implements threads based on the C library POSIX thread routines. It is not included by default, because it would make the system unit dependent on the C library.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

```

TThreadSetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID;
                                   Prio: LongInt) : Boolean

```

Callback type for thread priority setting in `TThreadManager` (1006).

```

TThreadSwitchHandler = procedure

```

Callback type for thread switch in `TThreadManager` (1006).

```

TUCS4CharArray = Array[0..$efffffff] of UCS4Char

```

Array of `UCS4Char` (1010) characters.

```

TUnicodeStringManager = record

```

```

Wide2AnsiMoveProc : procedure(source: PWideChar;var dest: ansistring;len: SizeInt)
Ansi2WideMoveProc : procedure(source: PChar;var dest: widestring;len: SizeInt);
UpperWideStringProc : function(const S: WideString) : WideString;
LowerWideStringProc : function(const S: WideString) : WideString;
CompareWideStringProc : function(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString) : PtrInt;
CompareTextWideStringProc : function(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString) : PtrInt;
CharLengthPCharProc : function(const Str: PChar) : PtrInt;
UpperAnsiStringProc : function(const s: ansistring) : ansistring;
LowerAnsiStringProc : function(const s: ansistring) : ansistring;
CompareStrAnsiStringProc : function(const S1: ansistring;const S2: ansistring) : PtrInt;
CompareTextAnsiStringProc : function(const S1: ansistring;const S2: ansistring) : PtrInt;
StrCompAnsiStringProc : function(S1: PChar;S2: PChar) : PtrInt;
StrICompAnsiStringProc : function(S1: PChar;S2: PChar) : PtrInt;
StrLCompAnsiStringProc : function(S1: PChar;S2: PChar;MaxLen: PtrUInt) : PtrInt;
StrLICompAnsiStringProc : function(S1: PChar;S2: PChar;MaxLen: PtrUInt) : PtrInt;
StrLowerAnsiStringProc : function(Str: PChar) : PChar;
StrUpperAnsiStringProc : function(Str: PChar) : PChar;
ThreadInitProc : procedure;
ThreadFiniProc : procedure;
Unicode2AnsiMoveProc : procedure(source: PUnicodeChar;var dest: ansistring;len: SizeInt);
Ansi2UnicodeMoveProc : procedure(source: PChar;var dest: unicodestring;len: SizeInt);
UpperUnicodeStringProc : function(const S: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString;
LowerUnicodeStringProc : function(const S: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString;
CompareUnicodeStringProc : function(const s1: UnicodeString;const s2: UnicodeString) : PtrInt;
CompareTextUnicodeStringProc : function(const s1: UnicodeString;const s2: UnicodeString) : PtrInt;
end

```

TUnicodeStringManager is currently the same as the TUnicodeStringManager (1007) manager record. It performs the same functions: converting unicode strings to ansistrings and vice-versa, performing uppercase to lowercase transformations and comparing strings.

```

tvararray = record
  dimcount : Word;
  flags : Word;
  elementsize : LongInt;
  lockcount : LongInt;
  data : pointer;
  bounds : tvararrayboundarray;
end

```

tvararray is a record describing a variant array. It contains some general data, followed by a number of TVarArrayBound (1007) records equal to the number of dimensions in the array (dimcount).

```

tvararraybound = record
  elementcount : LongInt;
  lowbound : LongInt;
end

```

tvararraybound is used to describe one dimension in a variant array.

tvararrayboundarray = Array[0..0] of tvararraybound

array of tvararraybound (1007) records.

```
tvararraycoorarray = Array[0..0] of LongInt
```

Array of variant array coordinates

```
tvardata = packed record
  vtype : tvartype;
end
```

TVarData is a record representation of a variant. It contains the internal structure of a variant and is handled by the various variant handling routines.

```
tvariantmanager = record
  vartoint : function(const v: variant) : LongInt;
  vartoint64 : function(const v: variant) : Int64;
  vartoword64 : function(const v: variant) : qword;
  vartobool : function(const v: variant) : Boolean;
  vartoreal : function(const v: variant) : extended;
  vartotdatetime : function(const v: variant) : TDateTime;
  vartocurr : function(const v: variant) : currency;
  vartopstr : procedure(var s; const v: variant);
  vartolstr : procedure(var s: ansistring; const v: variant);
  vartowstr : procedure(var s: widestring; const v: variant);
  vartointf : procedure(var intf: IInterface; const v: variant);
  vartodisp : procedure(var disp: IDispatch; const v: variant);
  vartodynarray : procedure(var dynarr: pointer; const v: variant; typeinfo: pointer);
  varfrombool : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: Boolean);
  varfromint : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: LongInt; const Range: LongInt);
  varfromint64 : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: Int64);
  varfromword64 : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: qword);
  varfromreal : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: extended);
  varfromdatetime : procedure(var dest: Variant; const source: TDateTime);
  varfromcurr : procedure(var dest: Variant; const source: Currency);
  varfrompstr : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: ShortString);
  varfromlstr : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: ansistring);
  varfromwstr : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: WideString);
  varfromintf : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: IInterface);
  varfromdisp : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: IDispatch);
  varfromdynarray : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: pointer; typeinfo: pointer);
  olevarfrompstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant; const source: shortstring);
  olevarfromlstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant; const source: ansistring);
  olevarfromvar : procedure(var dest: olevariant; const source: variant);
  olevarfromint : procedure(var dest: olevariant; const source: LongInt;
    const range: ShortInt);
  varop : procedure(var left: variant; const right: variant; opcode: tvarop);
  cmpop : function(const left: variant; const right: variant; const opcode: tvarop)
    : Boolean;
  varneg : procedure(var v: variant);
  varnot : procedure(var v: variant);
  varinit : procedure(var v: variant);
  varclear : procedure(var v: variant);
```

```

varaddref : procedure(var v: variant);
varcopy : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: variant);
varcast : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: variant;vartype: LongInt);
varcastole : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: variant;vartype: LongInt);
dispinvoke : procedure(dest: pvardata;const source: tvardata;calldesc: pcalldesc;
    params: pointer);
vararrayredim : procedure(var a: variant;highbound: SizeInt);
vararrayget : function(const a: variant;indexcount: SizeInt;indices: PLongint)
    : variant;
vararrayput : procedure(var a: variant;const value: variant;indexcount: SizeInt;
    indices: PLongint);
writevariant : function(var t: text;const v: variant;width: LongInt) : Pointer;
write0Variant : function(var t: text;const v: Variant) : Pointer;
end

```

TVariantManager describes the variant manager as expected by the SetVariantManager (1131) call.

```

tvarop = (opadd,opsubtract,opmultiply,opdivide,opintdivide,opmodulus,
    opshiftright,opshiftright,opand,opor,opxor,opcompare,opnegate,
    opnot,opcmpeq,opcmpne,opcmplt,opcmple,opcmpgt,opcmpge,oppower)

```

tvarop describes a variant operation. It is mainly used for the variant manager to implement the various conversions and mathematical operations on a variant.

```

TVarRec = record
end

```

TVarRec is a record generated by the compiler for each element in a array of const call. The procedure that receives the constant array receives an array of TVarRec elements, with lower bound zero and high bound equal to the number of elements in the array minus one (as returned by High(Args))

```

tvartype = Word

```

Type with size of variant type.

```

TVmt = record
    vInstanceSize : SizeInt;
    vInstanceSize2 : SizeInt;
    vParent : PVmt;
    vClassName : PShortString;
    vDynamicTable : Pointer;
    vMethodTable : Pointer;
    vFieldTable : Pointer;
    vTypeInfo : Pointer;
    vInitTable : Pointer;
    vAutoTable : Pointer;
    vIntfTable : pinterfacetable;
    vMsgStrPtr : pstringmessagetable;
    vDestroy : Pointer;
end

```

```

vNewInstance : Pointer;
vFreeInstance : Pointer;
vSafeCallException : Pointer;
vDefaultHandler : Pointer;
vAfterConstruction : Pointer;
vBeforeDestruction : Pointer;
vDefaultHandlerStr : Pointer;
end

```

TVMT is a record describing the VMT of a class. It's various fields represent the available information in the VMT, as far as it is common to all classes.

```

TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID;
                                          TimeoutMs: LongInt) : DWord

```

Callback type for thread termination in TThreadManager (1006).

```

TWideStringManager = TUnicodeStringManager

```

TWideStringManager contains the definition of the widestring manager.

```

UCS2Char = WideChar

```

UCS2 unicode character.

```

UCS4Char =

```

UCS unicode character (unsigned 32 bit word)

```

UCS4String = Array of UCS4Char

```

String of UCS4Char (1010) characters.

```

UInt64 = QWord

```

Unsigned 64-bit integer

```

UnicodeChar = WideChar

```

UnicodeChar is a single character from a UnicodeString. It equals WideChar in all respects.

```

UTF8String = ansistring

```

UTF-8 unicode (ansi) string.

```

ValSInt = LongInt

```

Integer with the same size as the return code of the Val (1150) function.

```

ValUInt = Cardinal

```

Integer with the same size as the return code of the Val (1150) function.

```

WChar = Widechar

```

Wide char (16-bit sized char)

### 37.8.3 Variables

`argc : LongInt; external name operatingsystem_parameter_argc`

`argc` contains the number of command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`argv : PPChar; external name operatingsystem_parameter_argv`

`argv` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`cmdline : PChar = nil`

Current command-line.

`DispCallByIDProc : pointer`

`VarDispProc` is called by the compiler if it needs to perform an interface call from a variant which contains a dispatch interface. For instance, the following call:

```
Var
  V : OleVariant;
begin
  (V as IWord).OpenDocument('c:\temp\mydoc.doc');
end;
```

where `IWord` is a dispatch interface is encoded by the compiler and passed to `DispCallByIDProc`. This pointer must be set by a routine that calls the OS COM handling routines.

`envp : PPChar; external name operatingsystem_parameter_envp`

`envp` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the environment variables passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`ErrOutput : Text`

`ErrOutput` is provided for Delphi compatibility.

`ExitCode : LongInt; public name operatingsystem_result`

Exit code for the program, will be communicated to the OS on exit.

`fpc_threadvar_relocate_proc : pointer; public name FPC_THREADVAR_RELOCATE`

`InOutRes : Word`

Result of last I/O operation. Read-Only.

`Input : Text`

Standard input text file.

`IsConsole` : Boolean

True for console applications, False for GUI applications.

`IsLibrary` : Boolean = false

True if the current module is a library. Otherwise module is an executable

`Output` : Text

Standard output text file.

`RandSeed` : Cardinal

Seed for Random (1110) function.

`ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails` : Boolean

`ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails` describes what happens if there is no more memory available from the operating system. if set to `True` the memory manager will return `Nil`. If set to `False` then a run-time error will occur.

`softfloat_exception_flags` : Byte

Current soft float exception flags

`softfloat_exception_mask` : Byte

Current soft float exception mask

`softfloat_rounding_mode` : Byte

`softfloat_rounding_mode` determines how the software floating-point emulation routines do the rounding. The value can be one of the following:

**`float_round_nearest_even`** Round to nearest even number

**`float_round_down`** Round down

**`float_round_up`** Round up

**`float_round_to_zero`** Round in the direction of zero (down for positive, up for negative)

`StackBottom` : Pointer

Current stack bottom.

`StackLength` : SizeUInt

Maximum stack length.

StackTop : Pointer

StackTop contains the top of the stack for the current process. It is used to check the heap on some operating systems, and is set by the system unit initialization code. Do not use or modify this value.

StdErr : Text

Standard diagnostic output text file.

StdOut : Text

Alias for Output ([1012](#)).

ThreadID : TThreadID

Current Thread ID.

widestringmanager : TUnicodeStringManager

Contains the current widestring manager. Do not use directly.

## 37.9 Procedures and functions

### 37.9.1 abs

Synopsis: Calculate absolute value

Declaration: `function abs(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function abs(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function abs(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Abs returns the absolute value of a variable. The result of the function has the same type as its argument, which can be any numerical type.

Errors: None.

See also: Round ([1121](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex1.pp

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Abs function. }*

**Var**

  r : real;  
  i : integer;

**begin**

  r:=abs(-1.0);    { r:=1.0 }  
  i:=abs(-21);     { i:=21 }

**end.**

---

### 37.9.2 AbstractError

Synopsis: Generate an abstract error.

Declaration: `procedure AbstractError`

Visibility: default

Description: `AbstractError` generates an abstract error (run-time error 211). If the `AbstractErrorProc` ([968](#)) constant is set, it will be called instead.

Errors: This routine causes a run-time error 211.

See also: `AbstractErrorProc` ([968](#))

### 37.9.3 AcquireExceptionObject

Synopsis: Obtain a reference to the current exception object

Declaration: `function AcquireExceptionObject : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AcquireExceptionObject` returns the current exception object. It raises the reference count of the exception object, so it will not be freed. Calling this method is only valid within an `except` block.

The effect of this function is countered by re-raising an exception via `raise`;

To make sure that the exception object is released when it is no longer needed, `ReleaseExceptionObject` ([1115](#)) must be called when the reference is no longer needed.

Errors: If there is no current exception, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: `ReleaseExceptionObject` ([1115](#))

### 37.9.4 AddExitProc

Synopsis: Add an exit procedure to the exit procedure chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddExitProc(Proc: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddExitProc` adds `Proc` to the exit procedure chain. At program exit, all procedures added in this way will be called in reverse order.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExitProc` ([970](#))

### 37.9.5 Addr

Synopsis: Return address of a variable

Declaration: `function Addr(X: TAnytype) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Addr` returns a pointer to its argument, which can be any type, or a function or procedure name. The returned pointer isn't typed. The same result can be obtained by the `@` operator, which can return a typed pointer (see the programmer's guide).

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `SizeOf` ([1132](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex2.pp`

---

```
Program Example2;

{ Program to demonstrate the Addr function. }

Const Zero : integer = 0;

Var p : pointer;
    i : Integer;

begin
  p:=Addr(p);      { P points to itself }
  p:=Addr(1);      { P points to 1 }
  p:=Addr(Zero);   { P points to 'Zero' }
end.
```

---

### 37.9.6 Align

**Synopsis:** Return aligned version of an address

**Declaration:** `function Align(Addr: PtrUInt;Alignment: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt`  
`function Align(Addr: Pointer;Alignment: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Align` returns `Address`, aligned to `Alignment` bytes.

**Errors:** None.

### 37.9.7 AllocMem

**Synopsis:** Allocate and clear memory.

**Declaration:** `function AllocMem(Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AllocMem` calls `getmem` `GetMem` ([1054](#)), and clears the allocated memory, i.e. the allocated memory is filled with `Size` zero bytes.

**See also:** `GetMem` ([1054](#))

### 37.9.8 AnsiToUtf8

**Synopsis:** Convert ansi string to UTF-8 string

**Declaration:** `function AnsiToUtf8(const s: ansistring) : UTF8String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiToUtf8` converts the ansistring `S` to a UTF-8 format, that is, it converts the string from whatever codepage is currently in use, to UTF-8.

The current codepage is fetched from the system, if internationalization support is enabled. It can be UTF-8, in which case the function simply returns `S`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Utf8toAnsi` ([1150](#))

### 37.9.9 Append

Synopsis: Open a file in append mode

**Declaration:** `procedure Append(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Append` opens an existing file in append mode. Any data written to `F` will be appended to the file. Only text files can be opened in append mode. After a call to `Append`, the file `F` becomes write-only. File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Append`.

**Errors:** If the file doesn't exist when appending, a run-time error will be generated. This behaviour has changed on Windows and Linux platforms, where in versions prior to 1.0.6, the file would be created in append mode.

See also: `Rewrite` ([1117](#)), `Close` ([1025](#)), `Reset` ([1116](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Append function. }*

**Var** `f : text`;

**begin**

`Assign (f, 'test.txt');`

`Rewrite (f);` *{ file is opened for write , and emptied }*

`Writeln (F, 'This is the first line of text.txt');`

`close (f);`

`Append(f);` *{ file is opened for write , but NOT emptied.  
any text written to it is appended. }*

`Writeln (f, 'This is the second line of text.txt');`

`close (f);`

**end.**

---

### 37.9.10 arctan

Synopsis: Calculate inverse tangent

**Declaration:** `function arctan(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Arctan` returns the Arctangent of `X`, which can be any Real type. The resulting angle is in radial units.

Errors: None

See also: Sin ([1132](#)), Cos ([1032](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program Example4;

{ Program to demonstrate the ArcTan function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=ArcTan(0);      { R:=0 }
  R:=ArcTan(1)/pi;   { R:=0.25 }
end.

```

---

### 37.9.11 ArrayStringToPPchar

**Synopsis:** Convert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array of AnsiString;  
reserveentries: LongInt) : PPChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array `S`. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([1136](#))

### 37.9.12 Assert

**Synopsis:** Check validity of a given condition.

**Declaration:** `procedure Assert(Expr: Boolean)  
procedure Assert(Expr: Boolean;const Msg: String)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** With assertions on, `Assert` tests if `expr` is false, and if so, aborts the application with a Runtime error 227 and an optional error message in `msg`. If `expr` is true, program execution continues normally. If assertions are not enabled at compile time, this routine does nothing, and no code is generated for the `Assert` call. Enabling and disabling assertions at compile time is done via the `\$C` or `\$ASSERTIONS` compiler switches. These are global switches. The default behavior of the assert call can be changed by setting a new handler in the `AssertErrorProc` variable. `Sysutils` overrides the default handler to raise a `EAssertionFailed` exception.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Halt` ([1058](#)), `Runerror` ([1123](#))

### 37.9.13 Assign

Synopsis: Assign a name to a file

Declaration: `procedure Assign(out f: File;const Name: String)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File;p: PChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File;c: Char)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile;const Name: String)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile;p: PChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile;c: Char)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text;const s: String)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text;p: PChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text;c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Assign` assigns a name to `F`, which can be any file type. This call doesn't open the file, it just assigns a name to a file variable, and marks the file as closed.

Errors: None.

See also: [Reset \(1116\)](#), [Rewrite \(1117\)](#), [Append \(1016\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Assign function. }*

**Var** `F : text;`

**begin**

`Assign (F, '');`

**Rewrite** `(f);`

*{ The following can be put in any file by redirecting it  
from the command line. }*

**Writeln** `(f, 'This goes to standard output !');`

`Close (f);`

`Assign (F, 'Test.txt');`

**rewrite** `(f);`

**writeln** `(f, 'This doesn't go to standard output !');`

`close (f);`

**end.**

---

### 37.9.14 Assigned

Synopsis: Check if a pointer is valid

Declaration: `function Assigned(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Assigned` returns `True` if `P` is non-nil and returns `False` if `P` is nil. The main use of `Assigned` is that Procedural variables, method variables and class-type variables also can be passed to `Assigned`.

Errors: None

See also: [New \(1078\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex96.pp

**Program** Example96;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Assigned function. }*

**Var** P : Pointer;

**begin**

**If Not Assigned**(P) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'Pointer is initially NIL' );

  P:=@P;

**If Not Assigned**(P) **then**

**Writeln**( 'Internal inconsistency' )

**else**

**Writeln**( 'All is well in FPC' )

**end.**

### 37.9.15 BasicEventCreate

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

**Declaration:** `function BasicEventCreate(EventAttributes: Pointer;  
  AManualReset: Boolean;InitialState: Boolean;  
  const Name: ansistring) : PEventState`

Visibility: default

Description: `BasicEventCreate` is obsolete, use `RTLEventCreate` ([1122](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1122](#))

### 37.9.16 basiceventdestroy

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

**Declaration:** `procedure basiceventdestroy(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventdestroy` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventDestroy` ([1122](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1122](#))

### 37.9.17 basiceventResetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

**Declaration:** `procedure basiceventResetEvent(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventResetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1122](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1122](#))

### 37.9.18 basiceventSetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure basiceventSetEvent (state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventSetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1122](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1122](#))

### 37.9.19 basiceventWaitFor

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `function basiceventWaitFor (Timeout: Cardinal; state: PEventState)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventwaitfor` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1123](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1123](#))

### 37.9.20 BeginThread

Synopsis: Start a new thread.

Declaration: `function BeginThread (sa: Pointer; stacksize: SizeUInt;  
ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
creationFlags: DWord; var ThreadId: TThreadId)  
: TThreadId  
function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc) : TThreadId  
function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer) : TThreadId  
function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadId) : TThreadId  
function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadId; const stacksize: SizeUInt)  
: TThreadId`

Visibility: default

Description: `BeginThread` starts a new thread and executes `ThreadFunction` in the new thread. If `P` is specified, then it is passed to `ThreadFunction`. If `ThreadId` is specified, it is filled with the thread ID of the newly started thread. If `StackSize` is specified, it is set as the stack size for the new thread. If none is specified, a default stack size of 32Kb is used.

The function returns the thread ID on succes, or 0 if an error occurred.

Errors: On error, a nonzero value is returned.

See also: `EndThread` ([1039](#))

### 37.9.21 BEtoN

Synopsis: Convert Big Endian-ordered integer to Native-ordered integer

Declaration:

```

function BEtoN(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt
function BEtoN(const AValue: Word) : Word
function BEtoN(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt
function BEtoN(const AValue: DWord) : DWord
function BEtoN(const AValue: Int64) : Int64
function BEtoN(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

```

Visibility: default

Description: `BEtoN` will rearrange the bytes in a Big-Endian number to the native order for the current processor. That is, for a big-endian processor, it will do nothing, and for a little-endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes.

See also: `LEtoN` ([1073](#)), `NtoBE` ([1078](#)), `NtoLE` ([1079](#))

### 37.9.22 binStr

Synopsis: Convert integer to string with binary representation.

Declaration:

```

function binStr(Val: LongInt;cnt: Byte) : shortstring
function binStr(Val: Int64;cnt: Byte) : shortstring
function binStr(Val: qword;cnt: Byte) : shortstring

```

Visibility: default

Description: `BinStr` returns a string with the binary representation of `Value`. The string has at most `cnt` characters. (i.e. only the `cnt` rightmost bits are taken into account) To have a complete representation of any longint-type value, 32 bits are needed, i.e. `cnt=32`

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` ([1135](#)), `Val` ([1150](#)), `HexStr` ([1058](#)), `OctStr` ([1079](#))

Listing: `./refex/ex82.pp`

---

```

Program example82;

{ Program to demonstrate the BinStr function }

Const Value = 45678;

Var I : longint;

begin
    For I:=8 to 20 do
        Writeln ( BinStr(Value,I):20);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.23 BlockRead

Synopsis: Read data from an untyped file into memory

**Declaration:** `procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Int64;var Result: Int64)`  
`procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: LongInt;`  
`var Result: LongInt)`  
`procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Cardinal;`  
`var Result: Cardinal)`  
`procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Word;var Result: Word)`  
`procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Word;var Result: Integer)`  
`procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Int64)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Blockread reads count or less records from file F. A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the Rewrite (1117) or Reset (1116) statement. The result is placed in Buffer, which must contain enough room for Count records. The function cannot read partial records. If Result is specified, it contains the number of records actually read. If Result isn't specified, and less than Count records were read, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the {\$I} switch.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the {\$I} switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the {\$I-} state, use IOResult to check for errors.

See also: Blockwrite (1022), Close (1025), Reset (1116), Assign (1018)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BlockRead and BlockWrite functions. }*

```

Var Fin, fout : File;
    NumRead, NumWritten : Word;
    Buf : Array[1..2048] of byte;
    Total : Longint;

begin
    Assign (Fin, Paramstr(1));
    Assign (Fout, Paramstr(2));
    Reset (Fin, 1);
    Rewrite (Fout, 1);
    Total:=0;
    Repeat
        BlockRead (Fin, buf, Sizeof(buf), NumRead);
        BlockWrite (Fout, Buf, NumRead, NumWritten);
        inc (Total, NumWritten);
    Until (NumRead=0) or (NumWritten<>NumRead);
    Write ('Copied ', Total, ' bytes from file ', paramstr(1));
    Writeln (' to file ', paramstr(2));
    close(fin);
    close(fout);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.24 BlockWrite

**Synopsis:** Write data from memory to an untyped file

**Declaration:** `procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Int64;`  
`var Result: Int64)`  
`procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: LongInt;`

```

        var Result: LongInt)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Cardinal;
        var Result: Cardinal)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Word;var Result: Word)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Word;
        var Result: Integer)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: LongInt)

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `BlockWrite` writes count records from buffer to the file F.A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the `Rewrite` (1117) or `Reset` (1116) statement. If the records couldn't be written to disk, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the `{SI}` switch.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Blockread` (1021), `Close` (1025), `Rewrite` (1117), `Assign` (1018)

### 37.9.25 Break

**Synopsis:** Exit current loop construct.

**Declaration:** `procedure Break`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Break` jumps to the statement following the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the `Break` call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is NOT evaluated.

This can be used with `For`, `var{repeat}` and `While` statements.

Note that while this is a procedure, `Break` is a reserved word and hence cannot be redefined.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Continue` (1031), `Exit` (1044)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex87.pp`

---

**Program** `Example87`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Break function . }*

**Var** `I : longint;`

```

begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I>5 Then
        Break;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
    Inc(I);

```

---

```

    If I>5 Then
      Break;
    Writeln ( i );
  Until I>=10;
  For I:=1 to 10 do
  begin
    If I>5 Then
      Break;
    Writeln ( i );
  end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.26 chdir

Synopsis: Change current working directory.

Declaration: `procedure chdir(const s: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Chdir` changes the working directory of the process to `S`.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Mkdir` ([1077](#)), `Rmdir` ([1118](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ChDir function. }*

```

begin
  {$I-}
  ChDir (ParamStr(1));
  if IOResult <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Cannot change to directory : ', paramstr (1));
end.

```

---

### 37.9.27 chr

Synopsis: Convert byte value to character value

Declaration: `function chr(b: Byte) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: `Chr` returns the character which has ASCII value `X`.

Historical note:

Originally, Pascal did not have typecasts and `chr` was a necessary function in order to do certain operations on ASCII values of characters. With the arrival of typecasting a generic approach became possible, making `chr` mostly obsolete. However, `chr` is not considered deprecated and remains in wide use today.

Errors: None.

See also: Ord ([1105](#)), Str ([1135](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex8.pp

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chr function. }*

**begin**

**Write** (chr(10),chr(13)); *{ The same effect as Writeln; }*  
**end.**

### 37.9.28 Close

Synopsis: Close a file

**Declaration:** procedure Close(var f: File)  
 procedure Close(var t: Text)

Visibility: default

**Description:** Close flushes the buffer of the file F and closes F. After a call to Close, data can no longer be read from or written to F. To reopen a file closed with Close, it isn't necessary to assign the file again. A call to Reset ([1116](#)) or Rewrite ([1117](#)) is sufficient.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the {\$I} switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the {\$I-} state, use IOResult to check for errors.

See also: Assign ([1018](#)), Reset ([1116](#)), Rewrite ([1117](#)), Flush ([1051](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex9.pp

**Program** Example9;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Close function. }*

**Var** F : text;

**begin**

Assign (f, 'Test.txt');  
**ReWrite** (F);  
**Writeln** (F, 'Some text written to Test.txt');  
 close (f); *{ Flushes contents of buffer to disk ,*  
                   *closes the file . Omitting this may*  
                   *cause data NOT to be written to disk .}*  
**end.**

### 37.9.29 CompareByte

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte

**Declaration:** function CompareByte(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** CompareByte compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a byte-per-byte basis for a total of len bytes.

The function returns one of the following values:

**less than 0** if buf1 and buf2 contain different bytes in the first len bytes, and the first such byte is smaller in buf1 than the byte at the same position in buf2.

**0** if the first len bytes in buf1 and buf2 are equal.

**greater than 0** if buf1 and buf2 contain different bytes in the first len bytes, and the first such byte is larger in buf1 than the byte at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar ([1026](#)), CompareChar0 ([1028](#)), CompareWord ([1029](#)), CompareDWord ([1028](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex99.pp

---

**Program** Example99;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareByte function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

**Var**

    Buf1,Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** byte;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

    Write('First ',Len,' positions are ');  
    **if** CompareByte(Buf1,Buf2,Len)<>0 **then**  
        Write('NOT ');  
        Writeln('equal');  
    **end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:= I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:= I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:= HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);  
    **end**.

---

### 37.9.30 CompareChar

Synopsis: ompare 2 memory buffers character per character

**Declaration:** `function CompareChar(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CompareChar` compares two memory regions `buf1`, `buf2` on a character-per-character basis for a total of `len` characters.

The `CompareChar0` variant compares `len` bytes, or until a zero character is found.

The function returns one of the following values:

-If `buf1` and `buf2` contain different characters in the first `len` positions, and the first such character is smaller in `buf1` than the character at the same position in `buf2`.

0If the first `len` characters in `buf1` and `buf2` are equal.

1If `buf1` and `buf2` contain different characters in the first `len` positions, and the first such character is larger in `buf1` than the character at the same position in `buf2`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `CompareByte` ([1025](#)), `CompareChar0` ([1028](#)), `CompareWord` ([1029](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1028](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex100.pp`

---

**Program** `Example100`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareChar function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 100;`  
`HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;`

**Var**

`Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..ArraySize] of char;`  
`I : longint;`

**Procedure** `CheckPos(Len : Longint);`

**Begin**

`Write('First ', Len, ' characters are ');`  
`if CompareChar(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 then`  
`Write('NOT ');`  
`Writeln('equal');`  
`end;`

**Procedure** `CheckNullPos(Len : Longint);`

**Begin**

`Write('First ', Len, ' non-null characters are ');`  
`if CompareChar0(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 then`  
`Write('NOT ');`  
`Writeln('equal');`  
`end;`

**begin**

`For I:=1 to ArraySize do`  
`begin`  
`Buf1[I]:=chr(I);`  
`If I<=HalfArraySize Then`  
`Buf2[I]:=chr(I)`

---

```

    else
        Buf2[i] := chr(HalfArraySize - 1);
    end;
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + 1);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
    For i := 1 to 4 do
        begin
            buf1[Random(ArraySize) + 1] := Chr(0);
            buf2[Random(ArraySize) + 1] := Chr(0);
        end;
    Randomize;
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize + 1);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.31 CompareChar0

Synopsis: Compare two buffers character by character till a null-character is reached.

Declaration: `function CompareChar0(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareChar0 compares 2 buffers buf1 and buf2 for a maximum length of len or till a null character is reached in either buffer. The result depends on the contents of the buffers:

- < 0 If buf1 contains a character less than the corresponding character in buf2.
- 0 If both buffers are equal
- > 0 If buf1 contains a character greater than the corresponding character in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareByte ([1025](#)), CompareChar ([1026](#)), CompareDWord ([1028](#)), CompareWord ([1029](#))

### 37.9.32 ComparedWord

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers DWord per DWord

Declaration: `function ComparedWord(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: ComparedWord compares two memory regions buf1, buf2 on a DWord-per-DWord basis for a total of len DWords. (A DWord is 4 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is smaller in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.
- 0 if the first len DWords in buf1 and buf2 are equal.
- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is larger in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar ([1026](#)), CompareByte ([1025](#)), CompareWord ([1029](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareDWord function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize **Div** 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Dword;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**( 'First ', Len, ' DWords are ' );  
    **if** CompareDWord( Buf1, Buf2, Len ) <> 0 **then**  
        **Write**( 'NOT ' );  
    **Writeln**( 'equal' );  
**end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[ I ]:= I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[ I ]:= I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[ I ]:= HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos( HalfArraySize **div** 2 );  
        CheckPos( HalfArraySize );  
        CheckPos( HalfArraySize+1 );  
        CheckPos( HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize **Div** 2 );  
    **end**.

---

### 37.9.33 CompareWord

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers word per word

Declaration: function CompareWord(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: CompareWord compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a Word-per-Word basis for a total of len Words. (A Word is 2 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different Words in the first len Words, and the first such Word is smaller in buf1 than the Word at the same position in buf2.

**0**if the first `len` Words in `buf1` and `buf2` are equal.

**1**if `buf1` and `buf2` contain different Words in the first `len` Words, and the first such Word is larger in `buf1` than the Word at the same position in `buf2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `CompareChar` ([1026](#)), `CompareByte` ([1025](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1028](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex102.pp`

---

**Program** `Example102`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize` = 100;  
`HalfArraySize` = `ArraySize Div 2`;

**Var**

`Buf1, Buf2` : **Array**[1..`ArraySize`] **of** `Word`;  
`I` : `longint`;

**Procedure** `CheckPos`(`Len` : `Longint`);

**Begin**

`Write`( 'First ', `Len`, ' words are ' );  
**if** `CompareWord`(`Buf1`, `Buf2`, `Len`) <> 0 **then**  
    `Write`( 'NOT ' );  
    `Writeln`( 'equal ' );  
**end**;

**begin**

**For** `I` := 1 **to** `ArraySize` **do**  
    **begin**  
        `Buf1`[`i`] := `I`;  
        **if** `I` <= `HalfArraySize` **Then**  
            `Buf2`[`I`] := `I`  
        **else**  
            `Buf2`[`i`] := `HalfArraySize` - `I`;  
        **end**;  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize Div 2`);  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize`);  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize` + 1);  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize` + `HalfArraySize Div 2`);  
    **end** .

---

### 37.9.34 Concat

Synopsis: Append one string to another.

Declaration: `function Concat`(`const S1`: `String`; `const S2`: `String`; `const S3`: `String`;  
                                  `const Sn`: `String`) : `String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Concat` concatenates the strings `S1`, `S2` etc. to one long string. The resulting string is truncated at a length of 255 bytes. The same operation can be performed with the `+` operation.

Errors: None.

See also: Copy ([1032](#)), Delete ([1035](#)), Insert ([1067](#)), Pos ([1108](#)), Length ([1072](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Concat function. }
Var
  S : String;

begin
  S:=Concat('This can be done',' Easier ','with the + operator !');
end.
```

---

### 37.9.35 Continue

Synopsis: Continue with next loop cycle.

Declaration: `procedure Continue`

Visibility: default

Description: `Continue` jumps to the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the `Continue` call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is then checked again.

This can be used with `For`, `repeat` and `While` statements.

Note that while this is a procedure, `Continue` is a reserved word and hence cannot be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: Break ([1023](#)), Exit ([1044](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Continue function. }

Var I : longint;

begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I<5 Then
        Continue;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
    Inc(I);
    If I<5 Then
      Continue;
    Writeln (i);
```

```

Until I >= 10;
For I := 1 to 10 do
  begin
    If I < 5 Then
      Continue;
    WriteLn (i);
  end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.36 Copy

Synopsis: Copy part of a string.

Declaration: `function Copy(S: AStringType; Index: Integer; Count: Integer) : String`  
`function Copy(A: DynArrayType; Index: Integer; Count: Integer) : DynArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy` returns a string which is a copy of the `Count` characters in `S`, starting at position `Index`. If `Count` is larger than the length of the string `S`, the result is truncated. If `Index` is larger than the length of the string `S`, then an empty string is returned. `Index` is 1-based.

For dynamical arrays, `Copy` returns a new dynamical array of the same type as the original one, and copies `Count` elements from the old array, starting at position `Index`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Delete \(1035\)](#), [Insert \(1067\)](#), [Pos \(1108\)](#)

Listing: `./refex/ex11.pp`

Program `Example11`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Copy function. }*

**Var** `S, T : String`;

**begin**

`T := '1234567' ;`

`S := Copy (T, 1, 2);`    *{ S := '12' }*

`S := Copy (T, 4, 2);`    *{ S := '45' }*

`S := Copy (T, 4, 8);`    *{ S := '4567' }*

**end.**

---

### 37.9.37 cos

Synopsis: Calculate cosine of angle

Declaration: `function cos(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cos` returns the cosine of `X`, where `X` is an angle, in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $2\pi$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: Arctan ([1016](#)), Sin ([1132](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex12.pp

---

```
Program Example12;

{ Program to demonstrate the Cos function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=Cos(Pi);    { R:=-1 }
  R:=Cos(Pi/2);  { R:=0  }
  R:=Cos(0);     { R:=1  }
end.
```

---

### 37.9.38 Cseg

Synopsis: Return code segment

Declaration: `function Cseg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cseg` returns the Code segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `Dseg` ([1037](#)), `Seg` ([1126](#)), `Ofs` ([1080](#)), `Ptr` ([1110](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex13.pp

---

```
Program Example13;

{ Program to demonstrate the CSeg function. }

var W : word;

begin
  W:=CSeg; {W:=0, provided for compatibility,
           FPC is 32 bit.}
end.
```

---

### 37.9.39 Dec

Synopsis: Decrease value of variable

Declaration: `procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal; Decrement: TOrdinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dec` decreases the value of `X` with `Decrement`. If `Decrement` isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

Errors: A range check can occur, or an underflow error, if an attempt is made to decrease X below its minimum value.

See also: Inc ([1061](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dec function. }*

**Var**

I : Integer;  
L : Longint;  
W : Word;  
B : Byte;  
Si : ShortInt;

**begin**

I:=1;  
L:=2;  
W:=3;  
B:=4;  
Si:=5;  
**Dec** (I); { I:=0 }  
**Dec** (L,2); { L:=0 }  
**Dec** (W,2); { W:=1 }  
**Dec** (B,-2); { B:=6 }  
**Dec** (Si,0); { Si:=5 }  
**end.**

---

### 37.9.40 DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove

Synopsis: Standard widestring manager callback

Declaration: `procedure DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove(source: PChar; var dest: unicodestring;  
len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove` is the standard callback used for the widestring manager when an ansistring must be converted to a unicodestring. It simply copies over all characters from the ansistring to the unicodestring, no conversion whatsoever is performed.

Errors:

### 37.9.41 DefaultAnsi2WideMove

Synopsis: Standard implementation of Ansi to Widestring conversion routine

Declaration: `procedure DefaultAnsi2WideMove(source: PChar; var dest: widestring;  
len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultAnsi2WideMove` simply copies each character of the null-terminated ansi-string `Source` to the corresponding `WideChar` in `Dest`. At most `Len` characters will be copied.

Errors: None.

See also: `DefaultWide2AnsiMove` ([1035](#))

### 37.9.42 `DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove`

Synopsis: Standard widestring manager callback

Declaration: `procedure DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove(source: PUnicodeChar;  
var dest: ansistring; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove` is the standard callback used for the widestring manager when a unicode string must be converted to an ansistring. It replaces all words with value < 256 with their value as ASCII code.

Errors: None.

See also: `WidestringManager` ([1013](#))

### 37.9.43 `DefaultWide2AnsiMove`

Synopsis: Standard implementation of Widestring to Ansi conversion routine

Declaration: `procedure DefaultWide2AnsiMove(source: PWideChar; var dest: ansistring;  
len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultWide2AnsiMove` simply copies each character from `Source` having an ordinal value of less than 255 to the corresponding character in `Dest`. Characters having an ordinal value larger than 255 will be replaced by question marks. At most `Len` characters will be copied.

Errors: None.

See also: `DefaultAnsi2WideMove` ([1034](#))

### 37.9.44 `Delete`

Synopsis: Delete part of a string.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(var s: shortstring; index: SizeInt; count: SizeInt)  
procedure Delete(var S: AnsiString; Index: SizeInt; Size: SizeInt)  
procedure Delete(var S: UnicodeString; Index: SizeInt; Size: SizeInt)  
procedure Delete(var S: WideString; Index: SizeInt; Size: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` removes `Count` characters from string `S`, starting at position `Index`. All characters after the deleted characters are shifted `Count` positions to the left, and the length of the string is adjusted.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy` ([1032](#)), `Pos` ([1108](#)), `Insert` ([1067](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Delete function. }*

```

      Var
    S : String;

begin
  S:= 'This is not easy !';
  Delete (S,9,4); { S:= 'This is easy !' }
end.
```

---

### 37.9.45 Dispose

Synopsis: Free dynamically allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure Dispose(P: Pointer)`  
`procedure Dispose(P: TypedPointer; Des: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: The first form `Dispose` releases the memory allocated with a call to `New` (1078). The pointer `P` must be typed. The released memory is returned to the heap.

The second form of `Dispose` accepts as a first parameter a pointer to an object type, and as a second parameter the name of a destructor of this object. The destructor will be called, and the memory allocated for the object will be freed.

Errors: An runtime error will occur if the pointer doesn't point to a location in the heap.

See also: `New` (1078), `Getmem` (1054), `Freemem` (1052)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dispose and New functions. }*

**Type** SS = String[20];

```

    AnObj = Object
      I : integer;
      Constructor Init;
      Destructor Done;
    end;
```

**Var**

```

  P : ^SS;
  T : ^AnObj;
```

**Constructor** Anobj.Init;

**begin**

```

  WriteLn ('Initializing an instance of AnObj !');
end;
```

**Destructor** AnObj.Done;

```

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Destroying an instance of AnObj !' );
end;

begin
  New (P);
  P^:= 'Hello , World !';
  Dispose (P);
  { P is undefined from here on !}
  New(T, Init);
  T^.i:=0;
  Dispose (T, Done);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.46 DoneCriticalSection

Synopsis: Clean up a critical section.

Declaration: `procedure DoneCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneCriticalSection` cleans up the critical section CS. After a call to `DoneCriticalSection`, the critical section can no longer be used with `EnterCriticalSection` (1039) or `LeaveCriticalSection` (1072), unless it is again initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1066)

See also: `InitCriticalSection` (1066), `EnterCriticalSection` (1039), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1072)

### 37.9.47 DoneThread

Synopsis: End the current thread

Declaration: `procedure DoneThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneThread` should be used to end the current thread. It performs the necessary housekeeping before actually ending the thread. Using the operating system calls to end the thread may result in data corruption or memory leaks.

See also: `BeginThread` (1020)

### 37.9.48 Dseg

Synopsis: Return data segment

Declaration: `function Dseg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dseg` returns the data segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `Cseg` (1033), `Seg` (1126), `Ofs` (1080), `Ptr` (1110)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex17.pp

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DSeg function. }*

**Var**

W : Word;

**begin**

W:=**DSeg**; *{W:=0, This function is provided for compatibility,  
FPC is a 32 bit compiler.}*

**end.**

### 37.9.49 DumpExceptionBackTrace

**Synopsis:** Create backtrace

**Declaration:** `procedure DumpExceptionBackTrace(var f: text)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DumpExceptionBackTrace` writes a backtrace of the current exception to the file `f`. If no exception is currently being raised, nothing is written. As much frames as available are written. If debug info is available, then file names and line numbers will be written as well.

**Errors:** No check is done to see whether `f` is opened for writing.

**See also:** `dump_stack` ([1038](#))

### 37.9.50 Dump\_Stack

**Synopsis:** Dump stack to the given text file.

**Declaration:** `procedure Dump_Stack(var f: text;bp: pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Dump_Stack` prints a stack dump to the file `f`, with base frame pointer `bp`

**Errors:** The file `f` must be opened for writing or an error will occur.

**See also:** `get_caller_addr` ([1057](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1057](#)), `get_frame` ([1058](#))

### 37.9.51 DynArraySetLength

**Synopsis:** Set the length of a dynamic array

**Declaration:** `procedure DynArraySetLength(var a: Pointer;typeInfo: Pointer;  
dimCnt: SizeInt;lengthVec: PSizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DynArraySetLength` sets the length of the dynamical array `a` to the first `dimCnt` lengths specified in the array `lengthVec`. The dynamical array type is described in `typeInfo` which points to a record of type `TDynArrayTypeInfo` ([999](#))

It should never be necessary to call this function directly, the standard `SetLength` ([1127](#)) function should be used instead.

Errors: If an invalid pointer is specified, an error may occur.

See also: [SetLength \(1127\)](#), [tdynarraytypeinfo \(999\)](#)

### 37.9.52 EndThread

Synopsis: End the current thread.

Declaration: `procedure EndThread(ExitCode: DWord)`  
`procedure EndThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndThread` ends the current thread. If `ExitCode` is supplied, it is returned as the exit code for the thread to a function waiting for the thread to terminate ([WaitForThreadTerminate \(1152\)](#)). If it is omitted, zero is used.

This function does not return.

See also: [WaitForThreadTerminate \(1152\)](#), [BeginThread \(1020\)](#)

### 37.9.53 EnterCriticalSection

Synopsis: Enter a critical section

Declaration: `procedure EnterCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnterCriticalSection` will suspend the current thread if another thread has currently entered the critical section. When the other thread has left the critical section (through `LeaveCriticalSection (1072)`), the current thread resumes execution. The result is that only 1 thread is executing code which is protected by a `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection` pair.

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection (1066)` prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection`.

A call to `EnterCriticalSection` must always be matched by a call to `LeaveCriticalSection (1072)`. To avoid problems, it is best to include the code to be execute in a `try...finally` block, as follows:

```
EnterCriticalSection(Section);
  Try
    // Code to be protected goes here.
  Finally
    LeaveCriticalSection(Section);
  end;
```

For performance reasons it is best to limit the code between the entering and leaving of a critical section as short as possible.

See also: [InitCriticalSection \(1066\)](#), [DoneCriticalSection \(1037\)](#), [LeaveCriticalSection \(1072\)](#)

### 37.9.54 EnumResourceLanguages

Synopsis: Enumerate available languages for a resource of given type and name

Declaration: `function EnumResourceLanguages (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;  
EnumFunc: EnumResLangProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceLanguages` enumerates the available languages for a resource of given `ResourceName` and type `ResourceType` in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each language available, it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource `ResourceType`, the name of the resource `ResourceName`, the language ID, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified resource type and module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceTypes` (1040), `EnumResourceNames` (1040), `EnumResourceLanguages` (1040)

### 37.9.55 EnumResourceNames

Synopsis: Enumerate available resource names for a specified resource type

Declaration: `function EnumResourceNames (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResourceType: PChar; EnumFunc: EnumResNameProc;  
lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceNames` enumerates the names of all resources of type `ResourceType` in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each resource available it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource `ResourceType`, the name of the resource, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified resource type and module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceTypes` (1040), `EnumResourceLanguages` (1040)

### 37.9.56 EnumResourceTypes

Synopsis: Enumerate available resource types

Declaration: `function EnumResourceTypes (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
EnumFunc: EnumResTypeProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceTypes` enumerates the types of all resources in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each resource available it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceNames` (1040), `EnumResourceLanguages` (1040)

### 37.9.57 EOF

Synopsis: Check for end of file

Declaration: `function EOF(var f: File) : Boolean`  
`function EOF(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Eof` returns `True` if the file-pointer has reached the end of the file, or if the file is empty. In all other cases `Eof` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed.

Note that calling this function may cause your program to wait: to determine whether you are at EOF, it is necessary to read data. If the file descriptor is not a real file (for instance for standard input or sockets), then this call may seem to hang the program while it is waiting for data to appear or for the file descriptor to be closed.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eoln` (1041), `Assign` (1018), `Reset` (1116), `Rewrite` (1117)

Listing: `./refex/ex18.pp`

Program `Example18`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Eof function. }*

**Var** `T1,T2 : text;`  
`C : Char;`

**begin**  
*{ Set file to read from. Empty means from standard input. }*  
`assign (t1,paramstr(1));`  
`reset (t1);`  
*{ Set file to write to. Empty means to standard output. }*  
`assign (t2,paramstr(2));`  
`rewrite (t2);`  
**While not eof**(t1) **do**  
  **begin**  
    `read (t1,C);`  
    `write (t2,C);`  
  **end;**  
  `Close (t1);`  
  `Close (t2);`  
**end.**

### 37.9.58 EOLn

Synopsis: Check for end of line

Declaration: `function EOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function EOLn : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Eof` returns `True` if the file pointer has reached the end of a line, which is demarcated by a line-feed character (ASCII value 10), or if the end of the file is reached. In all other cases `Eof` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed. It can only be used on files of type `Text`.

Errors: None.

See also: Eof ([1041](#)), Assign ([1018](#)), Reset ([1116](#)), Rewrite ([1117](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex19.pp

---

**Program** Example19;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Eoln function. }

begin
  { This program waits for keyboard input. }
  { It will print True when an empty line is put in,
    and false when you type a non-empty line.
    It will only stop when you press enter.}
  While not Eoln do
    Writeln (eoln);
end.
```

---

### 37.9.59 Erase

Synopsis: Delete a file from disk

Declaration: `procedure Erase(var f: File)`  
`procedure Erase(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: Erase removes an unopened file from disk. The file should be assigned with Assign, but not opened with Reset or Rewrite

Errors: Depending on the state of the {\$I} switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the {\$I-} state, use IOResult to check for errors.

See also: Assign ([1018](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex20.pp

---

**Program** Example20;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Erase function. }

Var F : Text;

begin
  { Create a file with a line of text in it }
  Assign (F, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (F);
  Writeln (F, 'Try and find this when I''m finished !');
  close (f);
  { Now remove the file }
  Erase (f);
end.
```

---

### 37.9.60 Error

Synopsis: Generate run-time error

Declaration: `procedure Error(RunTimeError: TRuntimeError)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` generates a run-time error with an exit code corresponding to `RunTimeError`. This function is implemented for Delphi compatibility, and is not used by the Free Pascal Run-Time Library.

See also: `RunError` ([1123](#)), `Halt` ([1058](#))

### 37.9.61 Exclude

Synopsis: Exclude element from a set if it is present.

Declaration: `procedure Exclude(var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exclude` removes `E` from the set `S` if it is included in the set. `E` should be of the same type as the base type of the set `S`.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```
S:=S-[E];
Exclude(S,E);
```

Errors: If the type of the element `E` is not equal to the base type of the set `S`, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: `Include` ([1062](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex111.pp`

---

```

program Example111;

{ Program to demonstrate the Include/Exclude functions }

Type
  TEnumA = (aOne,aTwo,aThree);
  TEnumAs = Set of TEnumA;

Var
  SA : TEnumAs;

Procedure PrintSet(S : TEnumAs);

var
  B : Boolean;

procedure DoEI(A : TEnumA; Desc : String);

begin
  If A in S then
    begin
      If B then
        Write(' ');
    
```

```

        B:=True;
        Write( Desc );
    end;
end;

begin
    Write( ' [ ' );
    B:=False;
    DoEl(aOne, 'aOne');
    DoEl(aTwo, 'aTwo');
    DoEl(aThree, 'aThree');
    Writeln( ' ] ')
end;

begin
    SA:=[];
    Include(SA,aOne);
    PrintSet(SA);
    Include(SA,aThree);
    PrintSet(SA);
    Exclude(SA,aOne);
    PrintSet(SA);
    Exclude(SA,aTwo);
    PrintSet(SA);
    Exclude(SA,aThree);
    PrintSet(SA);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.62 Exit

Synopsis: Exit current subroutine.

Declaration: `procedure Exit(const X: TAnyType)`  
`procedure Exit`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exit` exits the current subroutine, and returns control to the calling routine. If invoked in the main program routine, exit stops the program. The optional argument `X` allows to specify a return value, in the case `Exit` is invoked in a function. The function result will then be equal to `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` ([1058](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** `Example21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Exit function. }*

**Procedure** `DoAnExit (Yes : Boolean);`

*{ This procedure demonstrates the normal Exit }*

```

begin
    Writeln ( 'Hello from DoAnExit ! ');
    If Yes then

```

---

```

    begin
    Writeln ( 'Bailing out early. ');
        exit;
    end;
    Writeln ( 'Continuing to the end. ');
end;

Function Positive (Which : Integer) : Boolean;

{ This function demonstrates the extra FPC feature of Exit :
  You can specify a return value for the function }

begin
    if Which>0 then
        exit (True)
    else
        exit (False);
end;

begin
    { This call will go to the end }
    DoAnExit (False);
    { This call will bail out early }
    DoAnExit (True);
    if Positive (-1) then
        Writeln ( 'The compiler is nuts, -1 is not positive. ')
    else
        Writeln ( 'The compiler is not so bad, -1 seems to be negative. ');
end.

```

---

### 37.9.63 exp

Synopsis: Exponentiate

Declaration: `function exp(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Exp returns the exponent of X, i.e. the number e to the power X.

Errors: None.

See also: Ln ([1073](#)), Power ([966](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Exp function. }

begin
    Writeln (Exp(1):8:2); { Should print 2.72 }
end.

```

---

### 37.9.64 FilePos

Synopsis: Get position in file

Declaration: `function FilePos(var f: File) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Filepos` returns the current record position of the file-pointer in file `F`. It cannot be invoked with a file of type `Text`. A compiler error will be generated if this is attempted.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Filesize` ([1046](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex23.pp`

**Program** `Example23;`

---

```

{ Program to demonstrate the FilePos function. }

Var F : File of Longint;
    L,FP : longint;

begin
  { Fill a file with data :
    Each position contains the position ! }
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For L:=0 to 100 do
    begin
      FP:=FilePos(F);
      Write (F,FP);
    end;
  Close (F);
  Reset (F);
  { If all goes well, nothing is displayed here. }
  While not (Eof(F)) do
    begin
      FP:=FilePos (F);
      Read (F,L);
      if L<>FP then
        WriteLn ( 'Something wrong: Got ',L, ' on pos ',FP);
    end;
  Close (F);
  Erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.65 FileSize

Synopsis: Size of file

Declaration: `function FileSize(var f: File) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Filesize` returns the total number of records in file `F`. It cannot be invoked with a file of type `Text`. (under linux and unix, this also means that it cannot be invoked on pipes). If `F` is empty, 0 is returned.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Filepos` ([1046](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** `Example24;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the FileSize function. }

Var F : File Of byte;
    L : File Of Longint;

begin
  Assign (F,paramstr(1));
  Reset (F);
  Writeln ('File size in bytes : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (F);
  Assign (L,paramstr (1));
  Reset (L);
  Writeln ('File size in Longints : ',FileSize(L));
  Close (f);
end.
```

---

### 37.9.66 FillByte

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillByte(var x;count: SizeInt;value: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillByte` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` bytes with value equal to `Value`. This is useful for quickly zeroing out a memory location. When the size of the memory location to be filled out is a multiple of 2 bytes, it is better to use `Fillword` ([1049](#)), and if it is a multiple of 4 bytes it is better to use `FillDWord` ([1048](#)), these routines are optimized for their respective sizes.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillchar` ([1048](#)), `FillDWord` ([1048](#)), `Fillword` ([1049](#)), `Move` ([1077](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex103.pp`

---

**Program** `Example103;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the FillByte function. }

Var S : String[10];
    I : Byte;

begin
  For i:=10 downto 0 do
    begin
      { Fill S with i bytes }
      FillChar (S,SizeOf(S),32);
      { Set Length }
      SetLength(S,i);
    end;
  end;
```

```

    Writeln (s, '*');
end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.67 FillChar

Synopsis: Fill memory region with certain character

Declaration: `procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Boolean)`  
`procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fillchar` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` bytes or characters with value equal to `Value`.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillword` ([1049](#)), `Move` ([1077](#)), `FillByte` ([1047](#)), `FillDWord` ([1048](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex25.pp`

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillChar function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
    I : Byte;
begin
  For i:=10 downto 0 do
    begin
      { Fill S with i spaces }
      FillChar (S, SizeOf(S), ' ');
      { Set Length }
      SetLength(S, I);
      Writeln (s, '*');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.68 FillDWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillDWord(var x; count: SizeInt; value: DWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fillword` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` `DWords` with value equal to `Value`. A `DWord` is 4 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `FillByte` ([1047](#)), `Fillchar` ([1048](#)), `Fillword` ([1049](#)), `Move` ([1077](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex104.pp`

---

```

Program Example104;

{ Program to demonstrate the FillDWord function. }

      Const
      ArraySize = 1000;

Var
  S : Array [1..ArraySize] of DWord;
  I : longint;

begin
  FillDWord(S, ArraySize, 0);
  For I:=1 to ArraySize do
    If S[I]<>0 then
      WriteLn( 'Position ', i, ' not zeroed out' );
end.

```

---

### 37.9.69 FillQWord

Synopsis: Fill memory range with QWord (64-bit) values

Declaration: `procedure FillQWord(var x; count: SizeInt; value: QWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillQWord` fills the memory location of `x` with `Count` times `value`. The size of the filled memory location is therefor `8*count` bytes.

Errors: No checks are made to see if `X` actually has a minimum size of `(Count*8)` bytes. Therefor, other variables can be overwritten or the memory may be out of the accessible memory for the program. In the latter case a run-error or exception may be triggered.

See also: `FillChar` ([1048](#)), `FillWord` ([1049](#))

### 37.9.70 FillWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillWord(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fillword` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` words with value equal to `Value`. A word is 2 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillchar` ([1048](#)), `Move` ([1077](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex76.pp`

---

```

Program Example76;

{ Program to demonstrate the FillWord function. }

Var W : Array [1..100] of Word;

```

```

begin
  { Quick initialization of array W }
    FillWord (W,100,0);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.71 FindResource

Synopsis: Locate a resource and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:**

```

function FindResource (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                      ResourceName: PChar; ResourceType: PChar)
                      : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResource (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                      ResourceName: AnsiString; ResourceType: AnsiString)
                      : TFPResourceHandle

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindResource searches for a resource with name ResourceName and of type ResourceType in the executable or library identified by ModuleHandle. It returns a TResourceHandle which can be used to load the resource with LoadResource (1074).

Errors: None. In case the resource was not found, 0 is returned.

See also: FreeResource (1053), LoadResource (1074), SizeofResource (1133), LockResource (1074), UnlockResource (1148), FreeResource (1053)

### 37.9.72 FindResourceEx

Synopsis: Find a resource based on type, name, language

**Declaration:**

```

function FindResourceEx (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                        ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
                        Language: Word) : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResourceEx (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
                        ResourceType: AnsiString;
                        ResourceName: AnsiString; Language: Word)
                        : TFPResourceHandle

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindResourceEx looks in module ModuleHandle for a resource of type ResourceType and name ResourceName with language ID Language. Both ResourceName and ResourceName can be specified as a null-terminated array of characters, or as an AnsiString.

If the requested language/sublanguage is not found, then the search is conducted

1. with only primary language.
2. with the neutral language (LANG\_NEUTRAL)
3. with the english language

If none of these has returned a match, then the first available language is returned.

If a match is found, a handle to the resource is returned. If none is found, an empty handle (nil or 0) is returned.

Errors: None.

### 37.9.73 float\_raise

Synopsis: Raise floating point exception

Declaration: `procedure float_raise(i: ShortInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `float_raise` raises the floating point exceptions specified by `softfloat_exception_flags` (1012).

See also: `softfloat_exception_flags` (1012), `softfloat_exception_mask` (1012)

### 37.9.74 Flush

Synopsis: Write file buffers to disk

Declaration: `procedure Flush(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` empties the internal buffer of an opened file `F` and writes the contents to disk. The file is `\textit{not}` closed as a result of this call.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Close` (1025)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex26.pp`

**Program** `Example26;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Flush function. }*

**Var** `F : Text;`

**begin**

*{ Assign F to standard output }*

`Assign (F, '');`

**Rewrite** `(F);`

**Writeln** `(F, 'This line is written first , but appears later !');`

*{ At this point the text is in the internal pascal buffer ,  
and not yet written to standard output }*

**Writeln** `( 'This line appears first , but is written later !');`

*{ A writeln to 'output' always causes a flush – so this text is  
written to screen }*

**Flush** `(f);`

*{ At this point , the text written to F is written to screen. }*

**Write** `(F, 'Finishing ');`

`Close (f); { Closing a file always causes a flush first }`

**Writeln** `( 'off.');`

**end.**

### 37.9.75 FlushThread

Synopsis: Flush all standard files

Declaration: `procedure FlushThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `FlushThread` flushes any buffers from standard file descriptors such as standard input/output/error. It should normally not be called by user code, but is executed when a thread exits.

See also: `EndThread` ([1039](#))

### 37.9.76 `frac`

Synopsis: Return fractional part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function frac(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frac` returns the non-integer part of X.

Errors: None.

See also: `Round` ([1121](#)), `Int` ([1067](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Frac function. }*

**Var** `R : Real;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** (`Frac (123.456):0:3`); *{ Prints 0.456 }*

**WriteLn** (`Frac (-123.456):0:3`); *{ Prints -0.456 }*

**end.**

---

### 37.9.77 `Freemem`

Synopsis: Release allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure Freemem(p: pointer;Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function Freemem(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Freemem` releases the memory occupied by the pointer P, of size Count (in bytes), and returns it to the heap. P should point to the memory allocated to a dynamic variable.

Errors: An error will occur when P doesn't point to the heap.

See also: `Getmem` ([1054](#)), `New` ([1078](#)), `Dispose` ([1036](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `Example28;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FreeMem and GetMem functions. }*

**Var** `P : Pointer;`

`MM : Longint;`

---

```

begin
  { Get memory for P }
  GetMem (P,80);
      FillChar (P^,80,' ');
  FreeMem (P,80);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.78 Freememory

Synopsis: Alias for FreeMem ([1052](#))

Declaration: `procedure Freememory(p: pointer;Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function Freememory(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FreeMemory is an alias for FreeMem ([1052](#)).

See also: FreeMem ([1052](#))

### 37.9.79 FreeResource

Synopsis: Free a loaded resource

Declaration: `function FreeResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: FreeResource unloads the resource identified by ResData from memory. The resource must have been loaded by LoadResource ([1074](#)). It returns True if the operation was succesful, False otherwise.

Errors: On error, False is returned.

See also: FindResource ([1050](#)), LoadResource ([1074](#)), SizeofResource ([1133](#)), LockResource ([1074](#)), UnlockResource ([1148](#)), FreeResource ([1053](#))

### 37.9.80 GetCurrentThreadId

Synopsis: Return the id of the currently running thread.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentThreadId : TThreadId`

Visibility: default

Description: GetCurrentThreadId returns the ID of the currently running thread. It can be used in calls such as KillThread ([1071](#)) or ThreadSetPriority ([1143](#))

Errors: None.

See also: KillThread ([1071](#)), ThreadSetPriority ([1143](#))

### 37.9.81 getdir

Synopsis: Return the current directory

Declaration: `procedure getdir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: shortstring)`  
`procedure getdir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: ansistring)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Getdir` returns in `dir` the current directory on the drive `drivenr`, where {`drivenr`} is 1 for the first floppy drive, 3 for the first hard disk etc. A value of 0 returns the directory on the current disk. On linux and unix systems, `drivenr` is ignored, as there is only one directory tree.

Errors: An error is returned under dos, if the drive requested isn't ready.

See also: `Chdir` ([1024](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `Example29;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDir function. }*

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`GetDir (0,S);`

`Writeln ('Current directory is : ',S);`

**end.**

---

### 37.9.82 GetFPCHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return FPC heap manager status information

Declaration: `function GetFPCHeapStatus : TFPCHeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: Return FPC heap manager status information

Errors:

### 37.9.83 GetHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return the memory manager heap status.

Declaration: `function GetHeapStatus : THeapStatus`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.84 GetMem

Synopsis: Allocate new memory on the heap

Declaration: `procedure Getmem(out p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function GetMem(size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Getmem` reserves `Size` bytes memory on the heap, and returns a pointer to this memory in `p`. If no more memory is available, `nil` is returned.

For an example, see `Freemem` ([1052](#)).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Freemem` ([1052](#)), `Dispose` ([1036](#)), `New` ([1078](#))

### 37.9.85 `GetMemory`

**Synopsis:** Alias for `GetMem` ([1054](#))

**Declaration:** `procedure Getmemory(out p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function GetMemory(size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Getmemory` is an alias for `GetMem` ([1054](#)).

See also: `GetMem` ([1054](#))

### 37.9.86 `GetMemoryManager`

**Synopsis:** Return current memory manager

**Declaration:** `procedure GetMemoryManager(var MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `GetMemoryManager` stores the current Memory Manager record in `MemMgr`.

For an example, see the programmer's guide.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SetMemoryManager` ([1128](#)), `IsMemoryManagerSet` ([1071](#))

### 37.9.87 `GetProcessID`

**Synopsis:** Get the current process ID

**Declaration:** `function GetProcessID : SizeUInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `GetProcessID` returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GetThreadID` ([1056](#))

### 37.9.88 GetResourceManager

Synopsis: Return the currently active resource manager

Declaration: `procedure GetResourceManager (var Manager: TResourceManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetResourceManager` returns the currently active resource manager record in `Manager`. There is always an active resource manager record.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceManager` ([1003](#)), `SetResourceManager` ([1128](#))

### 37.9.89 GetThreadID

Synopsis: Get the current Thread ID.

Declaration: `function GetThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadID` returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

See also: `GetProcessID` ([1055](#))

### 37.9.90 GetThreadManager

Synopsis: Return the current thread manager

Declaration: `function GetThreadManager (var TM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadManager` returns the currently used thread manager in `TM`.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

See also: `SetThreadManager` ([1130](#)), `TThreadManager` ([1006](#))

### 37.9.91 GetUnicodeStringManager

Synopsis: Return a copy of the currently active unicodetring manager.

Declaration: `procedure GetUnicodeStringManager (var Manager: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetUnicodeStringManager` returns a copy of the currently active unicode string manager in `Old`

UnicodeStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `UnicodeStringManager` record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom unicodestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `SetUnicodeStringManager` ([1130](#)), `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1007](#))

### 37.9.92 GetVariantManager

Synopsis: Return the current variant manager.

Declaration: `procedure GetVariantManager(var VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVariantManager` returns the current variant manager in `varmgr`.

See also: `IsVariantManagerSet` (966), `SetVariantManager` (1131)

### 37.9.93 GetWideStringManager

Synopsis: Return a copy of the currently active widestring manager.

Declaration: `procedure GetWideStringManager(var Manager: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetWideStringManager` returns a copy of the currently active heap manager in `Old`

WideStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a WideString manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom widestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `SetWideStringManager` (1131), `TWideStringManager` (1010)

### 37.9.94 get\_caller\_addr

Synopsis: Return the address of the caller.

Declaration: `function get_caller_addr(framebp: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to address ( the return address) of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_frame` (1058), `get_caller_frame` (1057), `Dump_Stack` (1038)

### 37.9.95 get\_caller\_frame

Synopsis: Return the frame pointer of the caller

Declaration: `function get_caller_frame(framebp: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to the frame of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_caller_addr` (1057), `get_frame` (1058), `Dump_Stack` (1038)

### 37.9.96 get\_frame

Synopsis: Return the current frame

Declaration: `function get_frame : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_frame` returns a pointer to the current stack frame.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1057](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1057](#))

### 37.9.97 halt

Synopsis: Stop program execution.

Declaration: `procedure halt(errnum: Byte)`  
`procedure halt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Halt` stops program execution and returns control to the calling program. The optional argument `Errnum` specifies an exit value. If omitted, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exit` ([1044](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex30.pp`

**Program** `Example30;`

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Halt function. }

begin
  Writeln ('Before Halt. ');
  Halt (1); { Stop with exit code 1 }
  Writeln ('After Halt doesn't get executed. ');
end.
```

---

### 37.9.98 hexStr

Synopsis: Convert integer value to string with hexadecimal representation.

Declaration: `function hexStr(Val: LongInt;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function hexStr(Val: Int64;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function hexStr(Val: qword;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function hexStr(Val: Pointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexStr` returns a string with the hexadecimal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` charaters. (i.e. only the `cnt` rightmost nibbles are taken into account) To have a complete representation of a `Longint`-type value, 8 nibbles are needed, i.e. `cnt=8`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` ([1135](#)), `Val` ([1150](#)), `BinStr` ([1021](#))

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex81.pp

---

**Program** example81;

*{ Program to demonstrate the HexStr function }*

**Const** Value = 45678;

**Var** I : longint;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**

**Writeln** (HexStr(Value,I));

**end.**

---

### 37.9.99 hi

Synopsis: Return high byte/word of value.

**Declaration:** function hi(b: Byte) : Byte  
                   function hi(i: Integer) : Byte  
                   function hi(w: Word) : Byte  
                   function hi(l: LongInt) : Word  
                   function hi(l: DWord) : Word  
                   function hi(i: Int64) : DWord  
                   function hi(q: QWord) : DWord

Visibility: default

**Description:** Hi returns the high byte or word from X, depending on the size of X. If the size of X is 4, then the high word is returned. If the size is 2 then the high byte is returned. Hi cannot be invoked on types of size 1, such as byte or char.

Errors: None

See also: Lo ([1073](#))

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex31.pp

---

**Program** Example31;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Hi function. }*

**var**

    L : Longint;

    W : Word;

**begin**

    L:=1 **Shl** 16;        *{ = \$10000 }*

    W:=1 **Shl** 8;        *{ = \$100 }*

**Writeln** (Hi(L)); *{ Prints 1 }*

**Writeln** (Hi(W)); *{ Prints 1 }*

**end.**

---

**37.9.100 High**

Synopsis: Return highest index of open array or enumerated

Declaration: `function High(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: The return value of `High` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `High` returns the highest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `High` returns the highest possible value of it's index.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `High` returns the highest index of the array, as if the array has a zero-based index.
- 4.If the argument is a set type then it returns the highest value of the underlying ordinal type.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument (This can lead to some nasty surprises!).

Errors: None.

See also: `Low` ([1075](#)), `Ord` ([1105](#)), `Pred` ([1109](#)), `Succ` ([1138](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex80.pp`

**Program** `example80;`

*{ Example to demonstrate the High and Low functions. }*

**Type** `TEnum = ( North , East , South , West );`  
`TRange = 14..55;`  
`TArray = Array [2..10] of Longint;`

**Function** `Average (Row : Array of Longint) : Real;`

**Var** `I : longint;`  
`Temp : Real;`

**begin**  
`Temp := Row[0];`  
`For I := 1 to High(Row) do`  
`Temp := Temp + Row[i];`  
`Average := Temp / ( High(Row)+1);`  
**end;**

**Var** `A : TEnum;`  
`B : TRange;`  
`C : TArray;`  
`I : longint;`

**begin**  
`Writeln ( 'TEnum goes from : ', Ord(Low(TEnum)), ' to ', Ord(high(TEnum)), '. ' );`  
`Writeln ( 'A goes from : ', Ord(Low(A)), ' to ', Ord(high(A)), '. ' );`  
`Writeln ( 'TRange goes from : ', Ord(Low(TRange)), ' to ', Ord(high(TRange)), '. ' );`  
`Writeln ( 'B goes from : ', Ord(Low(B)), ' to ', Ord(high(B)), '. ' );`

```

WriteLn ( 'TArray index goes from : ', Ord(Low(TArray)), ' to ', Ord(high(TArray)), '. ');
WriteLn ( 'C index goes from : ', Low(C), ' to ', high(C), '. ');
For I:=Low(C) to High(C) do
    C[I]:=I;
    WriteLn ( 'Average : ', Average(c));
Write ( 'Type of return value is always same as type of argument:');
WriteLn(high(high(word)));
end.

```

---

### 37.9.101 HINSTANCE

Synopsis: Windows compatibility type for use in resources

Declaration: `function HINSTANCE : TFPResourceHMODULE`

Visibility: default

Description: This is an opaque type.

### 37.9.102 Inc

Synopsis: Increase value of integer variable

Declaration: `procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal; Increment: TOrdinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Inc` increases the value of `X` with `Increment`. If `Increment` isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

Errors: If range checking is on, then A range check can occur, or an overflow error, when an attempt is made to increase `X` over its maximum value.

See also: `Dec` ([1033](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** `Example32;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Inc function. }*

**Const**

```

C : Cardinal  = 1;
L : Longint   = 1;
I : Integer   = 1;
W : Word      = 1;
B : Byte      = 1;
SI : ShortInt = 1;
CH : Char     = 'A';

```

**begin**

```

Inc (C);      { C:=2 }
Inc (L,5);    { L:=6 }
Inc (I, -3);  { I:=-2 }
Inc (W,3);    { W:=4 }
Inc (B,100); { B:=101 }

```

```

    Inc (SI, -3); { Si:=-2 }
    Inc (CH, 1); { ch:='B' }
end.

```

---

### 37.9.103 Include

Synopsis: Include element in set if it was not yet present.

Declaration: `procedure Include (var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Include` includes `E` in the set `S` if it is not yet part of the set. `E` should be of the same type as the base type of the set `S`.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```

S:=S+[E];
Include (S, E);

```

For an example, see `Exclude` ([1043](#))

Errors: If the type of the element `E` is not equal to the base type of the set `S`, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: `Exclude` ([1043](#))

### 37.9.104 IndexByte

Synopsis: Search for a byte in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexByte (const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Byte) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexByte` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the byte `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexChar` ([1063](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1064](#)), `IndexWord` ([1065](#)), `CompareByte` ([1025](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex105.pp`

---

**Program** `Example105;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the IndexByte function. }
```

**Const**

```

    ArraySize = 256;
    MaxValue = 256;

```

**Var**

```

    Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Byte;
    I, J : longint;
    K : Byte;

```

```

begin
  Randomize;
  For I:=1 To ArraySize do
    Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      K:=Random(MaxValue);
      J:=IndexByte(Buffer, ArraySize, K);
      if J=-1 then
        Writeln('Value ', K, ' was not found in buffer.')
      else
        Writeln('Found ', K, ' at position ', J, ' in buffer');
      end;
    end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.105 IndexChar

Synopsis: Search for a character in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexChar(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the character `b` and returns its position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based. The `IndexChar0` variant stops looking if a null character is found, and returns -1 in that case.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` (1062), `IndexDWord` (1064), `IndexWord` (1065), `CompareChar` (1026)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex108.pp`

---

**Program** Example108;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexChar function. }*

**Const**

ArraySize = 1000;  
MaxValue = 26;

**Var**

Buffer : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Char;  
I, J : longint;  
K : Char;

**begin**

Randomize;  
For I:=1 To ArraySize do  
  Buffer[I]:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));  
For I:=1 to 10 do  
  begin  
    K:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));  
    J:=IndexChar(Buffer, ArraySize, K);  
    if J=-1 then  
      Writeln('Value ', K, ' was not found in buffer.')  
    else  
      Writeln('Found ', K, ' at position ', J, ' in buffer');  
  end;

```
    end;
end.
```

---

### 37.9.106 IndexChar0

Synopsis: Return index of a character in null-terminated array of char.

Declaration: `function IndexChar0(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar0` returns the index of the character `b` in the null-terminated array `Buf`. At most `len` characters will be searched, or the null character if it is encountered first. If the character is not found, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1062](#)), `IndexChar` ([1063](#)), `IndexWord` ([1065](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1064](#)), `CompareChar0` ([1028](#))

### 37.9.107 IndexDWord

Synopsis: Search for a DWord value in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexDWord(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: DWord) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the DWord `DW` and returns it's position if it found one. If `DW` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1062](#)), `IndexChar` ([1063](#)), `IndexWord` ([1065](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1028](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex106.pp`

---

**Program** `Example106`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexDWord function. }*

**Const**

```
    ArraySize = 1000;
    MaxValue = 1000;
```

**Var**

```
    Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of DWord;
    I,J : longint;
    K : DWord;
```

**begin**

```
    Randomize;
    For I:=1 To ArraySize do
        Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
    For I:=1 to 10 do
        begin
            K:=Random(MaxValue);
            J:=IndexDWord(Buffer,ArraySize,K);
            if J=-1 then
```

---

```

        Writeln('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
    else
        Writeln('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.108 IndexQWord

Synopsis: Return the position of a QWord in a memory range

Declaration: `function IndexQWord(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: QWord) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexQWord` checks the first `len` qwords starting at `Buf`, and returns the position (zero-based) of `b`. If `b` does not appear in the first `len` qwords, then -1 is returned.

Note that the search is done on QWord boundaries, but that the address of `buf` need not be on a QWord boundary.

Errors: No check is done to see whether the indicated memory range is valid. If it is not, a run-error or exception may be triggered.

See also: `IndexDWord` ([1064](#))

### 37.9.109 Indexword

Synopsis: Search for a WORD value in a memory range.

Declaration: `function Indexword(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: Word) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the Word `W` and returns it's position if it found one. If `W` is not found then -1 is returned.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1062](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1064](#)), `IndexChar` ([1063](#)), `CompareWord` ([1029](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex107.pp`

---

**Program** `Example107`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 1000;`  
    `MaxValue = 1000;`

**Var**

`Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Word;`  
    `I,J : longint;`  
    `K : Word;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`  
    **For** `I:=1 To ArraySize do`

---

```

    Buffer[ I ]:=Random( MaxValue );
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      K:=Random( MaxValue );
      J:=IndexWord( Buffer , ArraySize ,K);
      if J=-1 then
        Writeln( 'Value ',K, ' was not found in buffer.' )
      else
        Writeln( 'Found ',K, ' at position ',J, ' in buffer' );
      end;
    end;
  end.

```

---

### 37.9.110 InitCriticalSection

Synopsis: Initialize a critical section

Declaration: `procedure InitCriticalSection( var cs: TRTLCriticalSection )`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitCriticalSection` initializes a critical section CS for use. Before using a critical section with `EnterCriticalSection` ([1039](#)) or `LeaveCriticalSection` ([1072](#)) the critical section should be initialized with `InitCriticalSection`.

When a critical section is no longer used, it should be disposed of with `DoneCriticalSection` ([1037](#))

See also: `DoneCriticalSection` ([1037](#)), `EnterCriticalSection` ([1039](#)), `LeaveCriticalSection` ([1072](#))

### 37.9.111 InitThread

Synopsis: Initialize a thread

Declaration: `procedure InitThread( stklen: SizeUInt )`

Visibility: default

Description: Do not use, this is used internally by the thread manager.

### 37.9.112 InitThreadVars

Synopsis: Initialize threadvars

Declaration: `procedure InitThreadVars( RelocProc: Pointer )`

Visibility: default

Description: This routine should be called when threading is started. It is called by the compiler and should never be called manually, only from a thread manager.

Errors: None.

See also: `TThreadManager` ([1006](#)), `TThreadManager.InitThreadVar` ([1006](#))

### 37.9.113 Insert

Synopsis: Insert one string in another.

Declaration:

```

procedure Insert(const source: shortstring;var s: shortstring;
                 index: SizeInt)
procedure Insert(source: Char;var s: shortstring;index: SizeInt)
procedure Insert(const Source: AnsiString;var S: AnsiString;
                 Index: SizeInt)
procedure Insert(const Source: UnicodeString;var S: UnicodeString;
                 Index: SizeInt)
procedure Insert(const Source: WideString;var S: WideString;
                 Index: SizeInt)

```

Visibility: default

Description: Insert inserts string Source in string S, at position Index, shifting all characters after Index to the right. The resulting string is truncated at 255 characters, if needed. (i.e. for shortstrings)

Errors: None.

See also: Delete ([1035](#)), Copy ([1032](#)), Pos ([1108](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex33.pp

**Program** Example33;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Insert function. }*

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

  S:= 'Free Pascal is difficult to use !';

**Insert** ( 'NOT ',S,**pos**('difficult',S));

**writeln** (s);

**end.**

### 37.9.114 int

Synopsis: Calculate integer part of floating point value.

Declaration: function int(d: ValReal) : ValReal

Visibility: default

Description: Int returns the integer part of any Real X, as a Real.

Errors: None.

See also: Frac ([1052](#)), Round ([1121](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex34.pp

**Program** Example34;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Int function. }*

**begin**

---

```

Writeln (Int(123.456):0:1); { Prints 123.0 }
Writeln (Int(-123.456):0:1); { Prints -123.0 }
end.

```

---

### 37.9.115 InterlockedCompareExchange

Synopsis: Conditional exchange

**Declaration:**

```

function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: LongInt;
                                     NewValue: LongInt;Comperand: LongInt)
                                     : LongInt
function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: Pointer;
                                     NewValue: Pointer;Comperand: Pointer)
                                     : Pointer
function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: Cardinal;
                                     NewValue: Cardinal;
                                     Comperand: Cardinal) : Cardinal

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InterlockedCompareExchange` does an compare-and-exchange operation on the specified values in a thread-safe way. The function compares `Target` and `Comperand` and exchanges `Target` with `NewValue` if `Target` and `Comperand` are equal. It returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

Errors: None.

See also: `InterLockedDecrement` ([1068](#)), `InterLockedIncrement` ([1069](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1068](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1069](#))

### 37.9.116 InterLockedDecrement

Synopsis: Thread-safe decrement

**Declaration:**

```

function InterLockedDecrement(var Target: LongInt) : LongInt
function InterLockedDecrement(var Target: Pointer) : Pointer
function InterLockedDecrement(var Target: Cardinal) : Cardinal

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InterLockedDecrement` decrements `Target` with 1 and returns the result. This is done in a thread-safe way. (i.e. only one processor is accessing the variable at a time).

Errors: None.

See also: `InterLockedIncrement` ([1069](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1068](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1069](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1068](#))

### 37.9.117 InterLockedExchange

Synopsis: Exchange 2 integers in a thread-safe way

**Declaration:** `function InterLockedExchange (var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt)  
: LongInt  
function InterLockedExchange (var Target: Pointer; Source: Pointer)  
: Pointer  
function InterLockedExchange (var Target: Cardinal; Source: Cardinal)  
: Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterLockedExchange` stores `Source` in `Target` and returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` (1068), `InterLockedIncrement` (1069), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` (1069), `InterlockedCompareExchange` (1068)

### 37.9.118 InterLockedExchangeAdd

**Synopsis:** Thread-safe add and exchange of 2 values

**Declaration:** `function InterLockedExchangeAdd (var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt)  
: LongInt  
function InterLockedExchangeAdd (var Target: Pointer; Source: Pointer)  
: Pointer  
function InterLockedExchangeAdd (var Target: Cardinal; Source: Cardinal)  
: Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterlockedDecrement` adds to `Target` the value of `Source` in a thread-safe way, and returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` (1068), `InterLockedIncrement` (1069), `InterLockedExchange` (1068), `InterlockedCompareExchange` (1068)

### 37.9.119 InterLockedIncrement

**Synopsis:** Thread-safe increment

**Declaration:** `function InterLockedIncrement (var Target: LongInt) : LongInt  
function InterLockedIncrement (var Target: Pointer) : Pointer  
function InterLockedIncrement (var Target: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterLockedIncrement` increments `Target` with 1 and returns the result. This is done in a thread-safe way (i.e. only one processor is accessing the variable at a time).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` (1068), `InterLockedExchange` (1068), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` (1069), `InterlockedCompareExchange` (1068)

**37.9.120 IOResult**

Synopsis: Return result of last file IO operation

Declaration: `function IOResult : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: IOResult contains the result of any input/output call, when the `{\Si-}` compiler directive is active, disabling IO checking. When the flag is read, it is reset to zero. If IOResult is zero, the operation completed successfully. If non-zero, an error occurred. The following errors can occur:

dos errors :

- 2**File not found.
- 3**Path not found.
- 4**Too many open files.
- 5**Access denied.
- 6**Invalid file handle.
- 12**Invalid file-access mode.
- 15**Invalid disk number.
- 16**Cannot remove current directory.
- 17**Cannot rename across volumes.

I/O errors :

- 100**Error when reading from disk.
- 101**Error when writing to disk.
- 102**File not assigned.
- 103**File not open.
- 104**File not opened for input.
- 105**File not opened for output.
- 106**Invalid number.

Fatal errors :

- 150**Disk is write protected.
- 151**Unknown device.
- 152**Drive not ready.
- 153**Unknown command.
- 154**CRC check failed.
- 155**Invalid drive specified..
- 156**Seek error on disk.
- 157**Invalid media type.
- 158**Sector not found.
- 159**Printer out of paper.
- 160**Error when writing to device.
- 161**Error when reading from device.
- 162**Hardware failure.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** ./refex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

```

        { Program to demonstrate the IOResult function. }

Var F : text;

begin
    Assign ( f , paramstr(1));
    { $i- }
    Reset ( f );
    { $i+ }
    If IOResult <> 0 then
        writeln ( 'File ', paramstr(1), ' doesn't exist' )
    else
        writeln ( 'File ', paramstr(1), ' exists' );
end.

```

---

### 37.9.121 IsMemoryManagerSet

Synopsis: Is the memory manager set

Declaration: `function IsMemoryManagerSet : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsMemoryManagerSet` will return `True` if the memory manager has been set to another value than the system heap manager, it will return `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetMemoryManager` ([1128](#)), `GetMemoryManager` ([1055](#))

### 37.9.122 Is\_IntResource

Synopsis: Check whether a resource is an internal resource

Declaration: `function Is_IntResource(aStr: PChar) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Is_IntResource` returns `True` if the resource type is internal (system predefined) resource or false if it is a user-defined resource type.

Errors: None.

### 37.9.123 KillThread

Synopsis: Kill a running thread

Declaration: `function KillThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KillThread` causes a running thread to be aborted. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `WaitForThreadTerminate` (1152), `EndThread` (1039), `SuspendThread` (1138)

### 37.9.124 LeaveCriticalSection

**Synopsis:** Leave a critical section

**Declaration:** `procedure LeaveCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LeaveCriticalSection` signals that the current thread is exiting the critical section CS it has entered with `EnterCriticalSection` (1039).

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1066) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection`.

See also: `InitCriticalSection` (1066), `DoneCriticalSection` (1037), `EnterCriticalSection` (1039)

### 37.9.125 Length

**Synopsis:** Calculate length of a string.

**Declaration:** `function Length(S: AStringType) : Integer`  
`function Length(A: DynArrayType) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Length` returns the length of the string S, which is limited to 255 for shortstrings. If the string S is empty, 0 is returned.

*Note:* The length of the string S is stored in `S[0]` for shortstrings only. The `Length` function should always be used on anisstrings and widestrings.

For dynamical arrays, the function returns the number of elements in the array.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Pos` (1108)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** `Example36`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Length function. }*

**Var** `S : String;`  
`I : Integer;`

**begin**  
`S := '';`  
**for** `i := 1 to 10 do`  
**begin**  
`S := S + '*';`  
`Writeln (Length(S):2, ' : ', S);`

---

```

    end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.126 LEtoN

**Synopsis:** Convert Little Endian-ordered integer to Native-ordered integer

**Declaration:**

```

function LEtoN(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt
function LEtoN(const AValue: Word) : Word
function LEtoN(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt
function LEtoN(const AValue: DWord) : DWord
function LEtoN(const AValue: Int64) : Int64
function LEtoN(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** LEtoN will rearrange the bytes in a Little-Endian number to the native order for the current processor. That is, for a little-endian processor, it will do nothing, and for a big-endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes.

See also: BEtoN ([1021](#)), NtoBE ([1078](#)), NtoLE ([1079](#))

### 37.9.127 Ln

**Synopsis:** Calculate logarithm

**Declaration:**

```

function ln(d: ValReal) : ValReal

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Ln returns the natural logarithm of the Real parameter X. X must be positive.

**Errors:** An run-time error will occur when X is negative.

See also: Exp ([1045](#)), Power ([966](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Ln function. }

```

```

begin
  Writeln (Ln(1));      { Prints 0 }
  Writeln (Ln(Exp(1))); { Prints 1 }
end.

```

---

### 37.9.128 lo

**Synopsis:** Return low byte/word of value.

**Declaration:**

```

function lo(B: Byte) : Byte
function lo(i: Integer) : Byte
function lo(w: Word) : Byte
function lo(l: LongInt) : Word

```

```
function lo(l: DWord) : Word
function lo(i: Int64) : DWord
function lo(q: QWord) : DWord
```

Visibility: default

Description: `Lo` returns the low byte of its argument if this is of type `Integer` or `Word`. It returns the low word of its argument if this is of type `Longint` or `Cardinal`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ord` (1105), `Chr` (1024), `Hi` (1059)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Lo function. }*

**Var** L : Longint;  
      W : Word;

**begin**  
  L:=(1 Shl 16) + (1 Shl 4); { \$10010 }  
  Writeln (Lo(L)); { Prints 16 }  
  W:=(1 Shl 8) + (1 Shl 4); { \$110 }  
  Writeln (Lo(W)); { Prints 16 }  
**end.**

---

### 37.9.129 LoadResource

Synopsis: Load a resource for use

Declaration: `function LoadResource (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
                                      ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle) : TFPResourceHGLOBAL`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadResource` loads a resource identified by `ResHandle` from a module identified by `ModuleHandle` into memory. It returns a handle to the resource.

Loaded resources must be unloaded again using the `FreeResource` (1053) function.

Errors: On error, 0 is returned.

See also: `FindResource` (1050), `FreeResource` (1053), `SizeofResource` (1133), `LockResource` (1074), `UnlockResource` (1148), `FreeResource` (1053)

### 37.9.130 LockResource

Synopsis: Lock a resource

Declaration: `function LockResource (ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LockResource` locks a resource previously loaded by `LoadResource` into memory. This means that any attempt to modify the resource will fail while it is locked. The function returns a pointer to the resource location in memory.

The resource can be freed again using the `UnlockResource` (1148) function.

**Errors:** if the function fails, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** `FindResource` (1050), `FreeResource` (1053), `SizeofResource` (1133), `LoadResource` (1074), `UnlockResource` (1148), `FreeResource` (1053)

### 37.9.131 `longjmp`

**Synopsis:** Jump to address.

**Declaration:** `procedure longjmp (var S: jmp_buf; value: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LongJump` jumps to the address in the `envjmp_buf`, and restores the registers that were stored in it at the corresponding `SetJump` (1126) call. In effect, program flow will continue at the `SetJump` call, which will return `value` instead of 0. If a value equal to zero is passed, it will be converted to 1 before passing it on. The call will not return, so it must be used with extreme care. This can be used for error recovery, for instance when a segmentation fault occurred.

For an example, see `SetJump` (1126)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetJump` (1126)

### 37.9.132 `Low`

**Synopsis:** Return lowest index of open array or enumerated

**Declaration:** `function Low (Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The return value of `Low` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `Low` returns the lowest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `Low` returns the lowest possible value of it's index.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `Low` returns the lowest element of the array, which is always zero.
- 4.If the argument is a set type then it returns the lowest value of the underlying ordinal type.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument.

for an example, see `High` (1060).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `High` (1060), `Ord` (1105), `Pred` (1109), `Succ` (1138)

**37.9.133 lowerCase**

Synopsis: Return lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function lowerCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring; Overload`  
`function lowerCase(c: Char) : Char; Overload`  
`function lowercase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lowercase` returns the lowercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to lowercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ucase` ([1148](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex73.pp`

---

```

program Example73;

  { Program to demonstrate the Lowercase function. }

  var c:char;

  begin
    for c:= 'A' to 'Z' do
      write(lowercase(c));
      WriteLn;
      WriteLn(Lowercase( 'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ' ));
  end.
```

---

**37.9.134 MakeLangID**

Synopsis: Create a language ID

Declaration: `function MakeLangID(primary: Word;sub: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MakeLangID` creates a language ID from the `primary` and `sub` language IDs.

**37.9.135 MemSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of a memory block.

Declaration: `function MemSize(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `MemSize` returns the size of a memory block on the heap.

Errors: Passing an invalid pointer may lead to run-time errors (access violations).

See also: `GetMem` ([1054](#)), `FreeMem` ([1052](#))

**37.9.136 mkdir**

Synopsis: Create a new directory.

Declaration: `procedure mkdir(const s: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Mkdir` creates a new directory `S`.

For an example, see `Rmdir` ([1118](#)).

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Chdir` ([1024](#)), `Rmdir` ([1118](#))

**37.9.137 Move**

Synopsis: Move data from one location in memory to another

Declaration: `procedure Move(const source; var dest; count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Move` moves `Count` bytes from `Source` to `Dest`.

Errors: If either `Dest` or `Source` is outside the accessible memory for the process, then a run-time error will be generated.

See also: `Fillword` ([1049](#)), `Fillchar` ([1048](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex42.pp`

---

**Program** `Example42;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Move function. }*

**Var** `S1,S2 : String [30];`

**begin**

`S1:= 'Hello World !';`

`S2:= 'Bye, bye !';`

`Move (S1,S2,Sizeof(S1));`

`WriteLn (S2);`

**end.**

---

**37.9.138 MoveChar0**

Synopsis: Move data till first zero character

Declaration: `procedure MoveChar0(const buf1; var buf2; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveChar0` moves `Count` bytes from `buf1` to `buf2`, and stops moving if a zero character is found.

Errors: No checking is done to see if `Count` stays within the memory allocated to the process.

See also: [Move \(1077\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex109.pp

**Program** Example109;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MoveChar0 function. }*

**Var**

Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..80] **of** char;  
I : longint;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**For** I:=**low**(buf1) **to** **high**(buf1) **do**

Buf1[I]:=chr(Random(16)+Ord('A'));

**Writeln**('Original buffer');

**writeln**(Buf1);

Buf1[Random(80)+1]:=#0;

MoveChar0(Buf1, Buf2, 80);

**Writeln**('Randomly zero-terminated Buffer');

**Writeln**(Buf2);

**end.**

### 37.9.139 New

**Synopsis:** Dynamically allocate memory for variable

**Declaration:** procedure New(var P: Pointer)  
procedure New(var P: Pointer; Cons: TProcedure)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** New allocates a new instance of the type pointed to by P, and puts the address in P. If P is an object, then it is possible to specify the name of the constructor with which the instance will be created.

For an example, see [Dispose \(1036\)](#).

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, Nil will be returned.

See also: [Dispose \(1036\)](#), [Freemem \(1052\)](#), [Getmem \(1054\)](#)

### 37.9.140 NtoBE

**Synopsis:** Convert Native-ordered integer to a Big Endian-ordered integer

**Declaration:** function NtoBE(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt  
function NtoBE(const AValue: Word) : Word  
function NtoBE(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt  
function NtoBE(const AValue: DWord) : DWord  
function NtoBE(const AValue: Int64) : Int64  
function NtoBE(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** NtoBE will rearrange the bytes in a natively-ordered number to the Big-Endian order. That is, for a Little-Endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes and for a big-endian processor, it will do nothing.

See also: BEtoN ([1021](#)), LEtoN ([1073](#)), NtoLE ([1079](#))

### 37.9.141 NtoLE

Synopsis: Convert Native-ordered integer to a Little Endian-ordered integer

Declaration: `function NtoLE(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `NTOLE` will rearrange the bytes in a natively-ordered number to the little-Endian order. That is, for a Big-Endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes and for a Little-Endian processor, it will do nothing.

See also: BEtoN ([1021](#)), LEtoN ([1073](#)), NtoBE ([1078](#))

### 37.9.142 Null

Synopsis: Null variant

Declaration: `function Null : Variant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.143 OctStr

Synopsis: Convert integer to a string with octal representation.

Declaration: `function OctStr(Val: LongInt;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: Int64;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: qword;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `OctStr` returns a string with the octal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` characters.

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` ([1135](#)), `Val` ([1150](#)), `BinStr` ([1021](#)), `HexStr` ([1058](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex112.pp`

---

**Program** `example112;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the OctStr function }*

**Const** `Value = 45678;`

**Var** `I : longint;`

**begin**

---

```

For I:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln ( OctStr(Value,I));
For I:=1 to 16 do
  Writeln ( OctStr(I,3));
end.

```

---

### 37.9.144 odd

Synopsis: Is a value odd or even ?

Declaration: `function odd(l: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function odd(l: LongWord) : Boolean`  
`function odd(l: Int64) : Boolean`  
`function odd(l: QWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Odd returns True if X is odd, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Abs ([1013](#)), Ord ([1105](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex43.pp

---

```

Program Example43;

{ Program to demonstrate the Odd function. }

begin
  If Odd(1) Then
    Writeln ( 'Everything OK with 1 !' );
  If Not Odd(2) Then
    Writeln ( 'Everything OK with 2 !' );
end.

```

---

### 37.9.145 Ofs

Synopsis: Return offset of a variable.

Declaration: `function Ofs(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Ofs returns the offset of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always the complete address of the variable, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: DSeg ([1037](#)), CSeg ([1033](#)), Seg ([1126](#)), Ptr ([1110](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex44.pp

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ofs function. }*

**Var** W : Pointer;

**begin**  
W:= Pointer(**Ofs**(W)); *{ W contains its own offset. }*  
**end.**

---

### 37.9.146 operator \*(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: function operator \*(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.147 operator \*\*(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: function operator \*\*(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.148 operator +(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: function operator +(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.149 operator -(variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator -(variant): variant(const op: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.150 operator -(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator -(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.151 operator /(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator /(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.152 operator :=(ansistring): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(ansistring): olevariant(const source: ansistring)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.153 operator :=(ansistring): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(ansistring): variant(const source: ansistring)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.154 operator :=(Boolean): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Boolean): olevariant(const source: Boolean)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.155 operator :=(Boolean): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Boolean): variant(const source: Boolean) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.156 operator :=(Byte): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Byte): olevariant(const source: Byte) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.157 operator :=(Byte): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Byte): variant(const source: Byte) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.158 operator :=(Char): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Char): olevariant(const source: Char) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.159 operator :=(Char): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Char): variant(const source: Char) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.160 operator :=(currency): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(currency): olevariant(const source: currency)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.161 operator :=(currency): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(currency): variant(const source: currency)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.162 operator :=(double): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(double): olevariant(const source: double)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.163 operator :=(double): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(double): variant(const source: double) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.164 operator :=(DWord): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(DWord): olevariant(const source: DWord)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.165 operator :=(DWord): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(DWord): variant(const source: DWord) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.166 operator :=(Int64): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Int64): olevariant(const source: Int64)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.167 operator :=(Int64): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Int64): variant(const source: Int64) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.168 operator :=(longbool): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(longbool): olevariant(const source: longbool)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.169 operator :=(longbool): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(longbool): variant(const source: longbool)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.170 operator :=(LongInt): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(LongInt): olevariant(const source: LongInt)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.171 operator :=(LongInt): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(LongInt): variant(const source: LongInt) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.172 operator :=(olevariant): ansistring

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): ansistring(const source: olevariant)  
: ansistring`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.173 operator :=(olevariant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): Boolean(const source: olevariant)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.174 operator :=(olevariant): Byte

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): Byte(const source: olevariant) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.175 operator :=(olevariant): Char

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): Char(const source: olevariant) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.176 operator :=(olevariant): currency

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): currency(const source: olevariant)  
: currency`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.177 operator :=(olevariant): double

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): double(const source: olevariant)  
: double`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.178 operator :=(olevariant): DWord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): DWord(const source: olevariant)  
: DWord`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.179 operator :=(olevariant): Int64

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): Int64(const source: olevariant)  
: Int64`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.180 operator :=(olevariant): longbool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): longbool(const source: olevariant)  
: longbool`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.181 operator :=(olevariant): LongInt

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): LongInt(const source: olevariant)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.182 operator :=(olevariant): qword

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): qword(const source: olevariant)  
: qword`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.183 operator :=(olevariant): Real

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): Real(const source: olevariant) : Real`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.184 operator :=(olevariant): ShortInt

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): ShortInt(const source: olevariant)  
: ShortInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.185 operator :=(olevariant): shortstring

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): shortstring(const source: olevariant)  
: shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.186 operator :=(olevariant): SmallInt

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): SmallInt(const source: olevariant)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.187 operator :=(olevariant): TDateTime

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): TDateTime(const source: olevariant)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.188 operator :=(olevariant): TError

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): TError(const source: olevariant)  
: TError`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.189 operator :=(olevariant): UnicodeString

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): UnicodeString  
(const source: olevariant)  
: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.190 operator :=(olevariant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): variant(const source: olevariant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.191 operator :=(olevariant): widechar

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): widechar(const source: olevariant)  
: widechar`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.192 operator :=(olevariant): widestring

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): widestring(const source: olevariant)  
: widestring`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.193 operator :=(olevariant): Word

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): Word(const source: olevariant) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.194 operator :=(olevariant): wordbool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(olevariant): wordbool(const source: olevariant)  
: wordbool`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.195 operator :=(qword): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(qword): olevariant(const source: qword)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.196 operator :=(qword): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(qword): variant(const source: qword) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.197 operator :=(Real): olevariant

Declaration: `function operator :=(Real): olevariant(const source: Real) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.198 operator :=(Real): variant

Declaration: `function operator :=(Real): variant(const source: Real) : variant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.199 operator :=(real48): double

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(real48): double(b: real48) : double`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.200 operator :=(ShortInt): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(ShortInt): olevariant(const source: ShortInt)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.201 operator :=(ShortInt): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(ShortInt): variant(const source: ShortInt)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.202 operator :=(shortstring): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(shortstring): olevariant(const source: shortstring)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.203 operator :=(shortstring): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(shortstring): variant(const source: shortstring)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.204 operator :=(SmallInt): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(SmallInt): olevariant(const source: SmallInt)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.205 operator :=(SmallInt): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(SmallInt): variant(const source: SmallInt)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.206 operator :=(TDateTime): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(TDateTime): olevariant(const source: TDateTime)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.207 operator :=(TDateTime): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(TDateTime): variant(const source: TDateTime)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.208 operator :=(TError): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(TError): olevariant(const source: TError)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.209 operator :=(TError): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(TError): variant(const source: TError) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.210 operator :=(UCS4String): variant

Declaration: `function operator :=(UCS4String): variant(const source: UCS4String)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.211 operator :=(UnicodeString): olevariant

Declaration: `function operator :=(UnicodeString): olevariant  
(const source: UnicodeString)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.212 operator :=(UnicodeString): variant

Declaration: `function operator :=(UnicodeString): variant  
(const source: UnicodeString)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.213 operator :=(UTF8String): variant

Declaration: `function operator :=(UTF8String): variant(const source: UTF8String)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.214 operator :=(variant): ansistring

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): ansistring(const source: variant)  
: ansistring`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.215 operator :=(variant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): Boolean(const source: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.216 operator :=(variant): Byte

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): Byte(const source: variant) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.217 operator :=(variant): Char

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): Char(const source: variant) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.218 operator :=(variant): currency

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): currency(const source: variant)  
: currency`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.219 operator :=(variant): double

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): double(const source: variant) : double`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.220 operator :=(variant): DWord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): DWord(const source: variant) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.221 operator :=(variant): Int64

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): Int64(const source: variant) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.222 operator :=(variant): longbool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): longbool(const source: variant)  
: longbool`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.223 operator :=(variant): LongInt

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): LongInt(const source: variant) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.224 operator :=(variant): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): olevariant(const source: variant)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.225 operator :=(variant): qword

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): qword(const source: variant) : qword`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.226 operator :=(variant): Real

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): Real(const source: variant) : Real`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.227 operator :=(variant): ShortInt

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): ShortInt(const source: variant)  
: ShortInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.228 operator :=(variant): shortstring

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): shortstring(const source: variant)  
: shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.229 operator :=(variant): SmallInt

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): SmallInt(const source: variant)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.230 operator :=(variant): TDateTime

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): TDateTime(const source: variant)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.231 operator :=(variant): TError

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): TError(const source: variant) : TError`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.232 operator :=(variant): unicodestring

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): unicodestring(const source: variant)  
: unicodestring`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.233 operator :=(variant): UTF8String

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): UTF8String(const source: variant)  
: UTF8String`

Visibility: default

### 37.9.234 operator :=(variant): widechar

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): widechar(const source: variant)  
: widechar`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.235 operator :=(variant): widestring

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): widestring(const source: variant)  
: widestring`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.236 operator :=(variant): Word

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): Word(const source: variant) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.237 operator :=(variant): wordbool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(variant): wordbool(const source: variant)  
: wordbool`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.238 operator :=(widechar): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(widechar): olevariant(const source: widechar)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.239 operator :=(widechar): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(widechar): variant(const source: widechar)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.240 operator :=(widestring): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(widestring): olevariant(const source: widestring)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.241 operator :=(widestring): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(widestring): variant(const source: widestring)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.242 operator :=(Word): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Word): olevariant(const source: Word) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.243 operator :=(Word): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(Word): variant(const source: Word) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.244 operator :=(wordbool): olevariant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(wordbool): olevariant(const source: wordbool)  
: olevariant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.245 operator :=(wordbool): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator :=(wordbool): variant(const source: wordbool)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.246 operator <(variant, variant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator <(variant, variant): Boolean(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.247 operator <=(variant, variant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator <=(variant, variant): Boolean(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.248 operator =(variant, variant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator =(variant, variant): Boolean(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.249 operator >(variant, variant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator >(variant, variant): Boolean(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.250 operator >=(variant, variant): Boolean

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator >=(variant, variant): Boolean(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.251 operator and(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator and(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.252 operator div(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator div(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.253 operator mod(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator mod(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.254 operator not(variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator not(variant): variant(const op: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.255 operator or(variant, variant): variant

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator or(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

**37.9.256 operator shl(variant, variant): variant**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator shl(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

**37.9.257 operator shr(variant, variant): variant**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator shr(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

**37.9.258 operator xor(variant, variant): variant**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function operator xor(variant, variant): variant(const op1: variant;  
const op2: variant)  
: variant`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

**37.9.259 Ord**

Synopsis: Return ordinal value of an ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Ord(X: TOrdinal) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ord` returns the Ordinal value of a ordinal-type variable `X`.

Historical note:

Originally, Pascal did not have typecasts and `ord` was a necessary function in order to do certain operations on non-integer ordinal types. With the arrival of typecasting a generic approach became possible, making `ord` mostly obsolete. However `ord` is not considered deprecated and remains in wide use today.

Errors: None.

See also: Chr ([1024](#)), Succ ([1138](#)), Pred ([1109](#)), High ([1060](#)), Low ([1075](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex45.pp

---

**Program** Example45;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ord, Pred, Succ functions. }*

**Type**

TEnum = (Zero, One, Two, Three, Four);

**Var**

X : Longint;

Y : TEnum;

**begin**

X:=125;

WriteLn (Ord(X)); { Prints 125 }

X:=Pred(X);

WriteLn (Ord(X)); { prints 124 }

Y:= One;

WriteLn (Ord(y)); { Prints 1 }

Y:=Succ(Y);

WriteLn (Ord(Y)); { Prints 2 }

**end.**

---

### 37.9.260 Pack

Synopsis: Create packed array from normal array

**Declaration:** procedure Pack(const A: UnpackedArrayType; StartIndex: TIndexType;  
out Z: PackedArrayType)

Visibility: default

**Description:** Pack will copy the elements of an unpacked array (A) to a packed array (Z). It will start the copy at the index denoted by StartIndex. The type of the index variable StartIndex must match the type of the index of A. The elements are always transferred to the beginning of the packed array Z. (i.e. it starts at Low(Z)).

Obviously, the type of the elements of the arrays A and Z must match.

See also: unpack ([1148](#))

### 37.9.261 Paramcount

Synopsis: Return number of command-line parameters passed to the program.

**Declaration:** function Paramcount : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** Paramcount returns the number of command-line arguments. If no arguments were given to the running program, 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: Paramstr ([1107](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex46.pp

**Program** Example46;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the ParamCount and ParamStr functions. }
Var
  I : Longint;

begin
  Writeln (paramstr(0), ' : Got ', ParamCount, ' command-line parameters: ');
  For i:=1 to ParamCount do
    Writeln (ParamStr (i));
end.
```

---

### 37.9.262 ParamStr

**Synopsis:** Return value of a command-line argument.

**Declaration:** function ParamStr(l: LongInt) : String

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Paramstr returns the L-th command-line argument. L must be between 0 and Paramcount, these values included. The zeroth argument is the path and file name with which the program was started.

The command-line parameters will be truncated to a length of 255, even though the operating system may support bigger command-lines. The Objpas unit (used in objfpc or delphi mode) defines versions of Paramstr which return the full-length command-line arguments, using ansistrings.

In the interest of portability, the ParamStr function tries to behave the same on all operating systems: like the original ParamStr function in Turbo Pascal. This means even on Unix, paramstr(0) returns the full path to the program executable. A notable exception is Mac OS X, where the return value depends on how the application was started. It may be that just the name of the application is returned (in case of a command-line launch)

In general, it's a bad idea to rely on the location of the binary. Often, this goes against best OS practices. Configuration data should (or can) not be stored next to the binary, but on designated locations. What locations these are, is very much operating system dependent. Therefore, ParamStr(0) should be used with care.

For an example, see Paramcount ([1106](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Paramcount ([1106](#))

### 37.9.263 pi

**Synopsis:** Return the value of PI.

**Declaration:** function pi : ValReal

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Pi returns the value of Pi (3.1415926535897932385).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Cos ([1032](#)), Sin ([1132](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex47.pp

**Program** Example47;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Pi function. }

begin
  Writeln (Pi);           {3.1415926}
  Writeln (Sin(Pi));
end.
```

### 37.9.264 Pos

**Synopsis:** Search for substring in a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function Pos(const substr: shortstring;const s: shortstring) : SizeInt
function Pos(C: Char;const s: shortstring) : SizeInt
function Pos(const Substr: ShortString;const Source: AnsiString)
    : SizeInt
function pos(const substr: shortstring;c: Char) : SizeInt
function Pos(const Substr: AnsiString;const Source: AnsiString)
    : SizeInt
function Pos(c: Char;const s: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const Substr: UnicodeString;const Source: UnicodeString)
    : SizeInt
function Pos(c: Char;const s: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: UnicodeChar;const s: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: AnsiString;const s: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: UnicodeString;const s: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: ShortString;const s: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const Substr: WideString;const Source: WideString)
    : SizeInt
function Pos(c: Char;const s: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: WideChar;const s: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: WideChar;const s: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: AnsiString;const s: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: WideString;const s: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: ShortString;const s: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: Char;const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(s: ShortString;const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(a: AnsiString;const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(w: WideString;const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(w: UnicodeString;const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(v: Variant;const c: Char) : SizeInt
function Pos(v: Variant;const s: ShortString) : SizeInt
function Pos(v: Variant;const a: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(v: Variant;const w: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(v: Variant;const w: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(v1: Variant;const v2: Variant) : SizeInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Pos returns the index of Substr in S, if S contains Substr. In case Substr isn't found, 0 is returned. The search is case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: Length ([1072](#)), Copy ([1032](#)), Delete ([1035](#)), Insert ([1067](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pos function. }*

**Var**

S : String;

**begin**

S:= 'The first space in this sentence is at position : ';

WriteIn (S,pos(' ',S));

S:= 'The last letter of the alphabet doesn't appear in this sentence ';

If (Pos ('Z',S)=0) and (Pos ('z',S)=0) then

WriteIn (S);

**end.**

---

### 37.9.265 Pred

Synopsis: Return previous element for an ordinal type.

Declaration: function Pred(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal

Visibility: default

Description: Pred returns the element that precedes the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the first value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on ({ \$R+ }), then a run-time error will be generated.

for an example, see Ord ([1105](#))

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: Ord ([1105](#)), Pred ([1109](#)), High ([1060](#)), Low ([1075](#))

### 37.9.266 prefetch

Synopsis: Prefetch a memory location

Declaration: procedure prefetch(const mem)

Visibility: default

Description: Prefetch can be used to optimize the CPU behaviour by already loading a memory location. It is mainly used as a hint for those processors that support it.

Errors: None.

**37.9.267 ptr**

Synopsis: Combine segment and offset to pointer

Declaration: `function ptr(sel: LongInt; off: LongInt) : farpointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ptr` returns a pointer, pointing to the address specified by segment `Sel` and offset `Off`.

**Remark:**

1. In the 32-bit flat-memory model supported by Free Pascal, this function is obsolete.
2. The returned address is simply the offset.

Errors: None.

See also: `Addr` ([1014](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** `Example59`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Ptr (compability) function.
}
```

```
type pString = ^String;
```

```
Var P : pString;
    S : String;
```

```
begin
  S:= 'Hello , World !';
  P:= pString( Ptr( Seg(S), Longint( OfS(S) ) ) );
  {P now points to S !}
  Writeln (P^);
end.
```

---

**37.9.268 RaiseList**

Synopsis: List of currently raised exceptions.

Declaration: `function RaiseList : PExceptObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `RaiseList` returns a pointer to the list of currently raised exceptions (i.e. a pointer to the first exception block).

Errors:

**37.9.269 Random**

Synopsis: Generate random number

Declaration: `function Random(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Random(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Random : extended`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Random` returns a random number larger or equal to 0 and strictly less than `L`. If the argument `L` is omitted, a Real number between 0 and 1 is returned. (0 included, 1 excluded)

Errors: None.

See also: `Randomize` ([1111](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Random and Randomize functions. }*

**Var** `I, Count, guess` : Longint;  
       `R` : Real;

**begin**

`Randomize`; *{ This way we generate a new sequence every time  
                   the program is run }*

`Count:=0`;

**For** `i:=1 to 1000 do`

**If** `Random>0.5 then inc`(`Count`);

`WriteLn` ( 'Generated ', `Count`, ' numbers > 0.5 ' );

`WriteLn` ( 'out of 1000 generated numbers.' );

`count:=0`;

**For** `i:=1 to 5 do`

**begin**

`write` ( 'Guess a number between 1 and 5 : ' );

`readLn`(`Guess`);

**If** `Guess=Random(5)+1 then inc`(`count`);

**end**;

`WriteLn` ( 'You guessed ', `Count`, ' out of 5 correct.' );

**end.**

---

### 37.9.270 Randomize

Synopsis: Initialize random number generator

**Declaration:** `procedure Randomize`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Randomize` initializes the random number generator of Free Pascal, by giving a value to `Randseed`, calculated with the system clock.

For an example, see `Random` ([1110](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Random` ([1110](#))

### 37.9.271 Read

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable

**Declaration:** `procedure Read`(`var F`: Text; `Args`: Arguments)  
       `procedure Read`(`Args`: Arguments)

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Read` reads one or more values from a file `F`, and stores the result in `V1`, `V2`, etc.; If no file `F` is specified, then standard input is read. If `F` is of type `Text`, then the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of type `Char`, `Integer`, `Real`, `String`. If `F` is a typed file, then each of the variables must be of the type specified in the declaration of `F`. Untyped files are not allowed as an argument.

In earlier versions of FPC, it was also allowed to read `Pchar` null-terminated strings, but this has been removed, since there is no buffer checking possible.

**Errors:** If no data is available, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{ $I }` compiler switch.

See also: `ReadLn` (1113), `Blockread` (1021), `Write` (1154), `Blockwrite` (1022)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex50.pp`

**Program** `Example50`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Read(Ln) function. }*

```

Var S : String;
      C : Char;
      F : File of char;

begin
  Assign (F, 'ex50.pp');
  Reset (F);
  C:= 'A';
  Writeln ( 'The characters before the first space in ex50.pp are : ');
  While not Eof(f) and (C<>' ') do
    Begin
      Read (F,C);
      Write (C);
    end;
  Writeln;
  Close (F);
  Writeln ( 'Type some words. An empty line ends the program. ');
  repeat
    ReadLn (S);
  until S='';
end.
```

### 37.9.272 ReadBarrier

Synopsis: Memory Read Barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadBarrier`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read barrier in the CPU: all memory reads before the instruction will be finished before this instruction, before memory reads after the instruction occur.

See also: `ReadDependencyBarrier` (1113), `ReadWriteBarrier` (1114), `WriteBarrier` (1154)

**37.9.273 ReadDependencyBarrier**

Synopsis: Memory Read Dependency Barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadDependencyBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDependencyBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read barrier in the CPU: all memory reads (loads) depending on previous loads are separate from the ones following the instruction.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1112](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1114](#)), `WriteBarrier` ([1154](#))

**37.9.274 ReadLn**

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable and goto next line

Declaration: `procedure ReadLn (var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure ReadLn (Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads one or more values from a file `F`, and stores the result in `V1`, `V2`, etc. After that it goes to the next line in the file. The end of the line is marked by the `LineEnding` character sequence (which is platform dependent). The end-of-line marker is not considered part of the line and is ignored.

If no file `F` is specified, then standard input is read. The variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of type `Char`, `Integer`, `Real`, `String` or `PChar`.

For an example, see `Read` ([1111](#)).

Errors: If no data is available, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{SI}` compiler switch.

See also: `Read` ([1111](#)), `Blockread` ([1021](#)), `Write` ([1154](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1022](#))

**37.9.275 ReadStr**

Synopsis: Read variables from a string

Declaration: `procedure ReadStr (const S: String; Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadStr` behaves like `Read` ([1111](#)), except that it reads its input from the string variable `S` instead of a file. Semantically, the `ReadStr` call is equivalent to writing the string to a file using the `Write` call, and then reading them into the various arguments `Arg` using the `Read` call from the same file:

```
var
  F : Text;
begin
  Rewrite(F);
  Write(F, S);
  Close(F);
  Reset(F);
  Read(F, Args);
  Close(F);
end;
```

Obviously, the `ReadStr` call does not use a temporary file.

`ReadStr` is defined in the ISO Extended Pascal standard. More information on the allowed arguments and the behaviour of the arguments can be found in the description of `Read` (1111).

See also: `Read` (1111), `WriteStr` (1155), `Write` (1154)

### 37.9.276 ReadWriteBarrier

Synopsis: Memory read/write barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadWriteBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWriteBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read/write barrier in the CPU: both read (Loads) and write (stores) operations before and after the barrier are separate.

See also: `ReadBarrier` (1112), `ReadDependencyBarrier` (1113), `WriteBarrier` (1154)

### 37.9.277 Real2Double

Synopsis: Convert Turbo Pascal style real to double.

Declaration: `function Real2Double(r: real48) : double`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Real2Double` function converts a Turbo Pascal style real (6 bytes long) to a native Free Pascal double type. It can be used e.g. to read old binary TP files with FPC and convert them to Free Pascal binary files.

Note that the assignment operator has been overloaded so a `Real48` type can be assigned directly to a double or extended.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./refex/ex110.pp`

---

```

program Example110;

{ Program to demonstrate the Real2Double function. }

Var
  i : integer;
  R : Real48;
  D : Double;
  E : Extended;
  F : File of Real48;

begin
  Assign(F, 'reals.dat');
  Reset(f);
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Read(F,R);
      D:=Real2Double(R);
      Writeln('Real ',i,' : ',D);
      D:=R;
    
```

---

```

    Writeln('Real (direct to double) ',i,' : ',D);
    E:=R;
    Writeln('Real (direct to Extended) ',i,' : ',E);
    end;
  Close(f);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.278 ReAllocMem

Synopsis: Re-allocate memory on the heap

Declaration: `function ReAllocMem(var p: pointer;Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMem` resizes the memory pointed to by `P` so it has size `Size`. The value of `P` may change during this operation. The contents of the memory pointed to by `P` (if any) will be copied to the new location, but may be truncated if the newly allocated memory block is smaller in size. If a larger block is allocated, only the used memory is initialized, extra memory will not be zeroed out.

Note that `P` may be `nil`, in that case the behaviour of `ReAllocMem` is equivalent to `Getmem`.

See also: `GetMem` ([1054](#)), `FreeMem` ([1052](#))

### 37.9.279 ReAllocMemory

Synopsis: Alias for `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#))

Declaration: `function ReAllocMemory(var p: pointer;Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMemory` is an alias for `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#))

### 37.9.280 ReleaseExceptionObject

Synopsis: Decrease the reference count of the current exception object.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseExceptionObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReleaseExceptionObject` decreases the reference count of the current exception object. This should be called whenever a reference to the exception object was obtained via the `AcquireExceptionObject` ([1014](#)) call.

Calling this method is only valid within an `except` block.

Errors: If there is no current exception object, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: `AcquireExceptionObject` ([1014](#))

**37.9.281 Rename**

Synopsis: Rename file on disk

Declaration: `procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: String)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; p: PChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; c: Char)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: String)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; p: PChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rename` changes the name of the assigned file `F` to `S`. `F` must be assigned, but not opened.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Erase` ([1042](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** `Example77;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Rename function. }
Var F : Text;

begin
  Assign (F, paramstr(1));
  Rename (F, paramstr(2));
end.
```

---

**37.9.282 Reset**

Synopsis: Open file for reading

Declaration: `procedure Reset(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Reset(var f: File)`  
`procedure Reset(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Reset(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Reset` opens a file `F` for reading. `F` can be any file type. If `F` is a text file, or refers to standard I/O (e.g. `”) then it is opened read-only, otherwise it is opened using the mode specified in filemode. If F is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter L. A default value of 128 is used. File sharing is not taken into account when calling Reset.`

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Rewrite` ([1117](#)), `Assign` ([1018](#)), `Close` ([1025](#)), `Append` ([1016](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex51.pp`

---

```

Program Example51;

{ Program to demonstrate the Reset function. }

Function FileExists (Name : String) : boolean;

Var F : File;

begin
  { $i- }
  Assign (F,Name);
  Reset (F);
  { $!+ }
  FileExists := (IoResult=0) and (Name<>' ');
  Close (f);
end;

begin
  If FileExists (Paramstr(1)) then
    Writeln ( 'File found' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'File NOT found' );
end.

```

---

### 37.9.283 ResumeThread

**Synopsis:** Resume a suspended thread.

**Declaration:** `function ResumeThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ResumeThread` causes a suspended thread (using `SuspendThread` (1138)) to resume its execution. The thread is identified with its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

**See also:** `SuspendThread` (1138), `KillThread` (1071)

### 37.9.284 Rewrite

**Synopsis:** Open file for writing

**Declaration:** `procedure Rewrite(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: File)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var t: Text)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Rewrite` opens a file `F` for writing. `F` can be any file type. If `F` is an untyped or typed file, then it is opened for reading and writing. If `F` is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter `L`. Default a value of 128 is used. if `Rewrite` finds a file with the same name as `F`, this file is truncated to length 0. If it doesn't find such a file, a new file is created. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, Free Pascal opens the file with mode `fmoutput`. If it should be opened in `fminout`

mode, an extra call to `Reset` (1116) is needed. File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Rewrite`.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Reset` (1116), `Assign` (1018), `Close` (1025), `Flush` (1051), `Append` (1016)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** `Example52`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Rewrite function. }*

**Var** `F : File`;  
     `I : longint`;

**begin**

`Assign (F, 'Test.tmp');`  
     *{ Create the file. Recordsize is 4 }*  
     `Rewrite (F, Sizeof(I));`  
     **For** `I:=1 to 10 do`  
         `BlockWrite (F,I,1);`  
     `close (f);`  
     *{ F contains now a binary representation of*  
         *10 longints going from 1 to 10 }*

**end.**

---

### 37.9.285 `rmdir`

**Synopsis:** Remove directory when empty.

**Declaration:** `procedure rmdir(const s: String)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Rmdir` removes the directory `S`.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Chdir` (1024), `Mkdir` (1077)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** `Example53`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Mkdir and Rmdir functions. }*

**Const** `D : String[8] = 'TEST.DIR';`

**Var** `S : String`;

**begin**

`Writeln ('Making directory ',D);`  
     `Mkdir (D);`  
     `Writeln ('Changing directory to ',D);`  
     `ChDir (D);`

---

```

GetDir (0,S);
WriteIn ( 'Current Directory is : ',S);
WRiteIn ( 'Going back ');
           ChDir ( '.. ');
WriteIn ( 'Removing directory ',D);
RmDir (D);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.286 RolByte

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a byte value to the left

Declaration: `function RolByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`  
`function RolByte(const AValue: Byte;Dist: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `RolByte` rotates the bits of the byte `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` ([1120](#)), `RolWord` ([1120](#)), `RolDWord` ([1119](#)), `RolQWord` ([1119](#))

### 37.9.287 RolDWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a DWord (cardinal) value to the left

Declaration: `function RolDWord(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function RolDWord(const AValue: DWord;Dist: Byte) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RolDWord` rotates the bits of the DWord (cardinal) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1119](#)), `RolWord` ([1120](#)), `RorDWord` ([1120](#)), `RolQWord` ([1119](#))

### 37.9.288 RolQWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a QWord (64-bit) value to the left

Declaration: `function RolQWord(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`  
`function RolQWord(const AValue: QWord;Dist: Byte) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorQWord` rotates the bits of the QWord (64-bit) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1119](#)), `RolWord` ([1120](#)), `RolDWord` ([1119](#)), `RorQWord` ([1120](#))

### 37.9.289 RolWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a word value to the left

Declaration: `function RolWord(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function RolWord(const AValue: Word;Dist: Byte) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `RolWord` rotates the bits of the word `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1119](#)), `RorWord` ([1121](#)), `RolDWord` ([1119](#)), `RolQWord` ([1119](#))

### 37.9.290 RorByte

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a byte value to the right

Declaration: `function RorByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`  
`function RorByte(const AValue: Byte;Dist: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorByte` rotates the bits of the byte `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1119](#)), `RorWord` ([1121](#)), `RorDWord` ([1120](#)), `RorQWord` ([1120](#))

### 37.9.291 RorDWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a DWord (cardinal) value to the right

Declaration: `function RorDWord(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function RorDWord(const AValue: DWord;Dist: Byte) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorDWord` rotates the bits of the DWord (cardinal) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` ([1120](#)), `RolDWord` ([1119](#)), `RorWord` ([1121](#)), `RorQWord` ([1120](#))

### 37.9.292 RorQWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a QWord (64-bit) value to the right

Declaration: `function RorQWord(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`  
`function RorQWord(const AValue: QWord;Dist: Byte) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorQWord` rotates the bits of the QWord (64-bit) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: [RorByte \(1120\)](#), [RorWord \(1121\)](#), [RorDWord \(1120\)](#), [RolQWord \(1119\)](#)

### 37.9.293 RorWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a word value to the right

Declaration: `function RorWord(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function RorWord(const AValue: Word; Dist: Byte) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorWord` rotates the bits of the word `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: [RorByte \(1120\)](#), [RolWord \(1120\)](#), [RorDWord \(1120\)](#), [RorQWord \(1120\)](#)

### 37.9.294 round

Synopsis: Round floating point value to nearest integer number.

Declaration: `function round(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Round` rounds `X` to the closest integer, which may be bigger or smaller than `X`.

In the case of .5, the algorithm uses "banker's rounding": .5 values are always rounded towards the even number.

Errors: None.

See also: [Frac \(1052\)](#), [Int \(1067\)](#), [Trunc \(1144\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Round function. }*

**begin**

```

Writeln (Round(1234.56)); { Prints 1235 }
Writeln (Round(-1234.56)); { Prints -1235 }
Writeln (Round(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
Writeln (Round(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
Writeln (Round(2.5)); { Prints 2 (down) }
Writeln (Round(3.5)); { Prints 4 (up) }

```

**end.**

---

**37.9.295 RTLEventCreate**

Synopsis: Create a new RTL event

Declaration: `function RTLEventCreate : PRTLEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventCreate` creates and initializes a new RTL event. RTL events are used to notify other threads that a certain condition is met, and to notify other threads of condition changes (conditional variables).

The function returns an initialized RTL event, which must be disposed of with `RTLEventdestroy` ([1122](#))

`RTLEvent` is used mainly for the `synchronize` method.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventReSetEvent` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1123](#))

**37.9.296 RTLeventdestroy**

Synopsis: Destroy a RTL Event

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventdestroy(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventdestroy` destroys the RTL event `State`. After a call to `RTLeventdestroy`, the `State` RTL event may no longer be used.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1122](#))

**37.9.297 RTLeventResetEvent**

Synopsis: Reset an event

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventResetEvent(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventResetEvent` resets the event: this should be used to undo the signaled state of an event. Resetting an event that is not set (or was already reset) has no effect.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1123](#))

**37.9.298 RTLeventSetEvent**

Synopsis: Notify threads of the event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventSetEvent(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventSetEvent` notifies other threads which are listening, that the event has occurred.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1122](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1123](#))

**37.9.299 RTLeventsync**

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventsync(m: trtlmethod;p: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventsync` is obsolete, don't use it.

**37.9.300 RTLeventWaitFor**

Synopsis: Wait for an event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventWaitFor(state: PRTLEvent)`  
`procedure RTLeventWaitFor(state: PRTLEvent;timeout: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventWaitFor` suspends the thread till the event occurs. The event will occur when another thread calls `RTLEventSetEvent` (1122) on `State`.

By default, the thread will be suspended indefinitely. However, if `TimeOut` is specified, then the thread will resume after timeout milliseconds have elapsed.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` (1122), `RTLEventDestroy` (1122), `RTLEventSetEvent` (1122), `RTLeventWaitFor` (1123)

**37.9.301 RunError**

Synopsis: Generate a run-time error.

Declaration: `procedure RunError(w: Word)`  
`procedure RunError`

Visibility: default

Description: `Runerror` stops the execution of the program, and generates a run-time error `ErrorCode`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exit` (1044), `Halt` (1058)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** `Example55;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the RunError function. }

begin
  { The program will stop and emit a run-error 106 }
  RunError (106);
end.
```

---

**37.9.302 Seek**

Synopsis: Set file position

Declaration: `procedure Seek (var f: File; Pos: Int64)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the file-pointer for file `F` to record `Nr. Count`. The first record in a file has `Count=0`. `F` can be any file type, except `Text`. If `F` is an untyped file, with no record size specified in `Reset` (1116) or `Rewrite` (1117), 128 is assumed.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eof` (1041), `SeekEof` (1124), `SeekEoln` (1125)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex56.pp`

**Program** `Example56`;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Seek function. }

Var
  F : File;
  I, J : longint;

begin
  { Create a file and fill it with data }
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite(F); { Create file }
  Close(f);
  FileMode:=2;
  ReSet (F, Sizeof(i)); { Opened read/write }
  For I:=0 to 10 do
    BlockWrite (F, I, 1);
  { Go Back to the beginning of the file }
  Seek(F, 0);
  For I:=0 to 10 do
    begin
      BlockRead (F, J, 1);
      If J<>I then
        Writeln ('Error: expected ', i, ', got ', j);
      end;
    Close (f);
  end.
```

---

**37.9.303 SeekEOF**

Synopsis: Set file position to end of file

Declaration: `function SeekEOF (var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekEof` returns `True` if the file-pointer is at the end of the file. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-file marker is reached.

If the end-of-file marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned.

If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

**Remark:** The `SeekEOF` function can only be used on real textfiles: when assigning the file to other kinds of (virtual) text files, the function may fail, although it will perform a number of tests to guard against wrong usage.

**Errors:** A run-time error is generated if the file `F` isn't opened.

See also: `Eof` ([1041](#)), `SeekEoln` ([1125](#)), `Seek` ([1124](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `Example57`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEof function. }
Var C : Char;

begin
  { this will print all characters from standard input except
    Whitespace characters. }
  While Not SeekEof do
    begin
      Read (C);
      Write (C);
    end;
end.
```

---

### 37.9.304 SeekEOLn

**Synopsis:** Set file position to end of line

**Declaration:** `function SeekEOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOLn : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SeekEoln` returns `True` if the file-pointer is at the end of the current line. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-line marker is reached. If the end-of-line marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned. The end-of-line marker is defined as `#10`, the `LineFeed` character. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

**Errors:** A run-time error is generated if the file `F` isn't opened.

See also: `Eof` ([1041](#)), `SeekEof` ([1124](#)), `Seek` ([1124](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `Example58`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEoln function. }
Var
  C : Char;

begin
  { This will read the first line of standard output and print
    all characters except whitespace. }
```

---

```

While not SeekEoln do
  Begin
    Read (c);
    Write (c);
  end;
end.

```

---

### 37.9.305 Seg

Synopsis: Return segment

Declaration: `function Seg(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seg` returns the segment of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always 0, since Free Pascal uses a flat 32/64 bit memory model. In such a memory model segments have no meaning.

Errors: None.

See also: `DSeg` ([1037](#)), `CSeg` ([1033](#)), `Ofs` ([1080](#)), `Ptr` ([1110](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60`;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Seg function. }
Var
  W : Word;

begin
  W:=Seg(W); { W contains its own Segment}
end.

```

---

### 37.9.306 Setjmp

Synopsis: Save current execution point.

Declaration: `function Setjmp(var S: jmp_buf) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJmp` fills `env` with the necessary data for a jump back to the point where it was called. It returns zero if called in this way. If the function returns nonzero, then it means that a call to `LongJump` ([1075](#)) with `env` as an argument was made somewhere in the program.

Errors: None.

See also: `LongJump` ([1075](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex79.pp`

---

```

program example79;

{ Program to demonstrate the setjmp, longjmp functions }

procedure dojmp(var env : jmp_buf; value : longint);

begin
    value:=2;
        Writeln ( 'Going to jump ! ');
    { This will return to the setjmp call,
      and return value instead of 0 }
    longjmp(env,value);
end;

var env : jmp_buf;

begin
    if setjmp(env)=0 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Passed first time.' );
            dojmp(env,2);
        end
    else
        writeln ( 'Passed second time.' );
    end.

```

---

### 37.9.307 SetLength

Synopsis: Set length of a string.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetLength(var S: AStringType; Len: Integer)`  
`procedure SetLength(var A: DynArrayType; Len: Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetLength` sets the length of the string `S` to `Len`. `S` can be an `ansistring`, a short string or a `widestring`. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255. For `AnsiStrings` it can have any value. For `AnsiString` strings, `SetLength` {em must} be used to set the length of the string.

In the case of a dynamical array `A`, `setlength` sets the number of elements. The elements are numbered from index 0, so the count runs from 0 to `Len-1`. If Zero is specified, the array is cleared.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Length` ([1072](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex85.pp`

---

```

Program Example85;

{ Program to demonstrate the SetLength function. }

Var S : String;

begin
    FillChar(S[1],100,#32);
    Setlength(S,100);

```

```

    Writeln ( '''',S, '''');
end.

```

---

### 37.9.308 SetMemoryManager

Synopsis: Set a memory manager

Declaration: `procedure SetMemoryManager(const MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMemoryManager` sets the current memory manager record to `MemMgr`.

For an example, see the programmer's guide.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMemoryManager` ([1055](#)), `IsMemoryManagerSet` ([1071](#))

### 37.9.309 SetResourceManager

Synopsis: Set the resource manager

Declaration: `procedure SetResourceManager(const New: TResourceManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetResourceManager` sets the active resource manager to `Manager`. After a call to `SetResourceManager`, the functions in the `Manager` record will be used to handle resources.

Note that it is not supported to change resource managers on-the-fly: any resources or information about resources obtained should be discarded prior to a call to `SetResourceManager`. Typically, `SetResourceManager` should be called once, at program startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceManager` ([1003](#)), `GetResourceManager` ([1056](#))

### 37.9.310 SetString

Synopsis: Set length of a string and copy buffer.

Declaration: `procedure SetString(out S: AnsiString;Buf: PChar;Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: Shortstring;Buf: PChar;Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: UnicodeString;Buf: PUnicodeChar;Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: UnicodeString;Buf: PChar;Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: WideString;Buf: PWideChar;Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: WideString;Buf: PChar;Len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetString` sets the length of the string `S` to `Len` and if `Buf` is non-nil, copies `Len` characters from `Buf` into `S`. `S` can be an ansistring, a short string or a widestring. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLength` ([1127](#))

**37.9.311 SetTextBuf**

Synopsis: Set size of text file internal buffer

Declaration: `procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf)`  
`procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf; Size: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextBuf` assigns an I/O buffer to a text file. The new buffer is located at `Buf` and is `Size` bytes long. If `Size` is omitted, then `SizeOf (Buf)` is assumed. The standard buffer of any text file is 128 bytes long. For heavy I/O operations this may prove too slow. The `SetTextBuf` procedure allows to set a bigger buffer for the I/O of the application, thus reducing the number of system calls, and thus reducing the load on the system resources. The maximum size of the newly assigned buffer is 65355 bytes.

**Remark:**

- Never assign a new buffer to an opened file. A new buffer can be assigned immediately after a call to `Rewrite` (1117), `Reset` (1116) or `Append`, but not after the file was read from/written to. This may cause loss of data. If a new buffer must be assigned after read/write operations have been performed, the file should be flushed first. This will ensure that the current buffer is emptied.
- Take care that the assigned buffer is always valid. If a local variable is assigned as a buffer, then after the program exits the local program block, the buffer will no longer be valid, and stack problems may occur.

Errors: No checking on `Size` is done.

See also: `Assign` (1018), `Reset` (1116), `Rewrite` (1117), `Append` (1016)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example61`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetTextBuf function. }*

**Var**

`Fin, Fout : Text;`  
`Ch : Char;`  
`Bufin, Bufout : Array[1..10000] of byte;`

**begin**

`Assign (Fin, paramstr(1));`  
`Reset (Fin);`  
`Assign (Fout, paramstr(2));`  
`Rewrite (Fout);`  
*{ This is harmless before IO has begun }*  
*{ Try this program again on a big file ,*  
*after commenting out the following 2*  
*lines and recompiling it. }*  
`SetTextBuf (Fin, Bufin);`  
`SetTextBuf (Fout, Bufout);`  
`While not eof(Fin) do`  
`begin`  
`Read (Fin, ch);`  
`write (Fout, ch);`  
`end;`  
`Close (Fin);`

---

```

    Close ( Fout );
end .

```

---

### 37.9.312 SetTextLineEnding

Synopsis: Set the end-of-line character for the given text file.

Declaration: `procedure SetTextLineEnding(var f: Text; Ending: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextLineEnding` sets the end-of-line character for the text file `F` to `Ending`. By default, this is the string indicated by `DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` ([969](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` ([969](#)), `TTextLineBreakStyle` ([1005](#))

### 37.9.313 SetThreadManager

Synopsis: Set the thread manager, optionally return the current thread manager.

Declaration: `function SetThreadManager(const NewTM: TThreadManager;  
   var OldTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`  
`function SetThreadManager(const NewTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetThreadManager` sets the thread manager to `NewTM`. If `OldTM` is given, `SetThreadManager` uses it to return the previously used thread manager.

The function returns `True` if the threadmanager was set succesfully, `False` if an error occurred.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

Errors: If an error occurred cleaning up the previous manager, or an error occurred initializing the new manager, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetThreadManager` ([1056](#)), `TThreadManager` ([1006](#))

### 37.9.314 SetUnicodeStringManager

Synopsis: Set the unicodestring manager

Declaration: `procedure SetUnicodeStringManager(const New: TUnicodeStringManager)`  
`procedure SetUnicodeStringManager(const New: TUnicodeStringManager;  
   var Old: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetUnicodeStringManager` sets the current unicodestring manager to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active widestring manager in `Old`.

UnicodeStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a Unicode-String manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom unicodestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

Errors:

See also: `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1007](#))

### 37.9.315 SetVariantManager

Synopsis: Set the current variant manager.

Declaration: `procedure SetVariantManager(const VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVariantManager` sets the variant manager to `varmgr`.

See also: `IsVariantManagerSet` ([966](#)), `GetVariantManager` ([1057](#))

### 37.9.316 SetWideStringManager

Synopsis: Set the widestring manager

Declaration: `procedure SetWideStringManager(const New: TUnicodeStringManager)`  
`procedure SetWideStringManager(const New: TUnicodeStringManager;`  
`var Old: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWideStringManager` sets the current widestring manager to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active widestring manager in `Old`.

WideStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `WideString` manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom widestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

Errors:

See also: `TWideStringManager` ([1010](#))

### 37.9.317 ShortCompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 shortstrings

Declaration: `function ShortCompareText(const S1: shortstring; const S2: shortstring)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortCompareText` compares two shortstrings, `S1` and `S2`, and returns the following result:

<0 if `S1 < S2`.

0 if `S1 = S2`.

>0 if `S1 > S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.CompareText` ([1217](#))

### 37.9.318 sin

Synopsis: Calculate sine of angle

Declaration: `function sin(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sin` returns the sine of its argument `X`, where `X` is an angle in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $2^63$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Cos` ([1032](#)), `Pi` ([1107](#)), `Exp` ([1045](#)), `Ln` ([1073](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** `Example62;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Sin function. }*

```
begin
  WriteLn (Sin(Pi):0:1); { Prints 0.0 }
  WriteLn (Sin(Pi/2):0:1); { Prints 1.0 }
end.
```

---

### 37.9.319 SizeOf

Synopsis: Return size of a variable or type.

Declaration: `function SizeOf(X: TAnyType) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SizeOf` returns the size, in bytes, of any variable or type-identifier.

**Remark:** This isn't really a RTL function. Its result is calculated at compile-time, and hard-coded in the executable.

Errors: None.

See also: `Addr` ([1014](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex63.pp`

---

**Program** `Example63;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SizeOf function. }*

```
Var
  I : Longint;
  S : String [10];
```

---

```

begin
  Writeln (SizeOf(I)); { Prints 4 }
  Writeln (SizeOf(S)); { Prints 11 }
end.

```

---

### 37.9.320 SizeofResource

Synopsis: Return the size of a particular resource

Declaration: `function SizeofResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SizeOfResource` returns the size of the resource identified by `ResHandle` in module identified by `ModuleHandle`. `ResHandle` should be obtained from a call to `LoadResource` ([1074](#))

Errors: In case of an error, 0 is returned.

See also: `FindResource` ([1050](#)), `FreeResource` ([1053](#)), `LoadResource` ([1074](#)), `LockResource` ([1074](#)), `UnlockResource` ([1148](#)), `FreeResource` ([1053](#))

### 37.9.321 Space

Synopsis: Return a string of spaces

Declaration: `function Space(b: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Space` returns a shortstring with length `B`, consisting of spaces.

See also: `StringOfChar` ([1136](#))

### 37.9.322 Sptr

Synopsis: Return current stack pointer

Declaration: `function Sptr : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sptr` returns the current stack pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `SSeg` ([1135](#))

---

**Listing:** `./refex/ex64.pp`

---

```

program Example64;

{ Program to demonstrate the sptr function. }

var p: ptruint;

begin
  p:=ofs(sptr); { P Contains now the current stack position. }
end.

```

---

**37.9.323 sqr**

Synopsis: Calculate the square of a value.

Declaration: `function sqr(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function sqr(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function sqr(l: QWord) : QWord`  
`function sqr(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqr` returns the square of its argument `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sqrt` ([1134](#)), `Ln` ([1073](#)), `Exp` ([1045](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex65.pp`

---

**Program** `Example65;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sqr function. }
Var i : Integer;

begin
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (Sqr(i):3);
end.
```

---

**37.9.324 sqrt**

Synopsis: Calculate the square root of a value

Declaration: `function sqrt(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqrt` returns the square root of its argument `X`, which must be positive.

Errors: If `X` is negative, then a run-time error is generated.

See also: `Sqr` ([1134](#)), `Ln` ([1073](#)), `Exp` ([1045](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex66.pp`

---

**Program** `Example66;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sqrt function. }

begin
  Writeln (Sqrt(4):0:3); { Prints 2.000 }
  Writeln (Sqrt(2):0:3); { Prints 1.414 }
end.
```

---

**37.9.325 Sseg**

Synopsis: Return stack segment register value.

Declaration: `function Sseg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SSeg` returns the Stack Segment. This function is only supported for compatibility reasons, as `Sptr` returns the correct contents of the stackpointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sptr` ([1133](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** `Example67;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SSeg function. }
Var W : Longint;

begin
    W:=SSeg;
end.
```

---

**37.9.326 Str**

Synopsis: Convert a numerical value to a string.

Declaration: `procedure Str(var X: TNumericType; var S: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Str` returns a string which represents the value of X. X can be any numerical type. The actual declaration of `Str` is not according to pascal syntax, and should be

```
procedure Str(var X: TNumericType[:NumPlaces[:Decimals]]; var S: String)
```

Where the optional `NumPlaces` and `Decimals` specifiers control the formatting of the string: `NumPlaces` gives the total width of the string, and `Decimals` the number of decimals after the decimal separator char.

Errors: None.

See also: `Val` ([1150](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex68.pp`

---

**Program** `Example68;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Str function. }
Var S : String;

Function IntToStr (I : Longint) : String;

Var S : String;
```

---

```

begin
  Str (I,S);
  IntToStr:=S;
end;

      begin
        S:= '*' +IntToStr(-233)+ '*';
        Writeln (S);
      end.

```

---

### 37.9.327 StringOfChar

Synopsis: Return a string consisting of 1 character repeated N times.

Declaration: `function StringOfChar(c: Char;l: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringOfChar` creates a new `String` of length `l` and fills it with the character `c`.

It is equivalent to the following calls:

```

SetLength(StringOfChar,l);
FillChar(Pointer(StringOfChar)^,Length(StringOfChar),c);

```

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLength` ([1127](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex97.pp`

---

**Program** `Example97`;

`{ $H+ }`

`{ Program to demonstrate the StringOfChar function. }`

**Var** `S : String`;

**begin**

`S:= StringOfChar(' ',40)+ 'Aligned at column 41.'`;

`Writeln(s)`;

**end.**

---

### 37.9.328 StringToPPChar

Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString;ReserveEntries: Integer)`  
`: PPChar`

`function StringToPPChar(S: PChar;ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of `pchars` that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function is only available on certain platforms.

Errors: None.

See also: `ArrayStringToPPchar` ([1017](#))

### 37.9.329 StringToUnicodeChar

**Synopsis:** Convert an ansistring to a null-terminated array of unicode characters.

**Declaration:** `function StringToUnicodeChar(const Src: AnsiString; Dest: PUnicodeChar; DestSize: SizeInt) : PUnicodeChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringToUnicodeChar` converts the ansistring `S` to a unicodestring and places the result in `Dest`. The size of the memory location pointed to by `Dest` must be given in `DestSize`. If the result string is longer than the available size, the result string will be truncated.

The function always returns `Dest`.

Errors: No check is performed to see whether `Dest` points to a valid memory location.

See also: `UnicodeCharToString` ([1146](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1146](#))

### 37.9.330 StringToWideChar

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an array of widechars.

**Declaration:** `function StringToWideChar(const Src: AnsiString; Dest: PWideChar; DestSize: SizeInt) : PWideChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringToWideChar` converts an ansistring `Src` to a null-terminated array of `WideChars`. The destination for this array is pointed to by `Dest`, and contains room for at least `DestSize` widechars.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Dest`.

See also: `WideCharToString` ([1153](#)), `WideCharToStrVar` ([1153](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1153](#)), `WideCharLenToString` ([1152](#))

### 37.9.331 strlen

**Synopsis:** Length of a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** `function strlen(p: PChar) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Returns the length of the null-terminated string `P`.

Errors: None.

**37.9.332 strpas**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: `function strpas(p: PChar) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `P` to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

**37.9.333 Succ**

Synopsis: Return next element of ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Succ(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Succ` returns the element that succeeds the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the last value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`{ $R+ }`), then a run-time error will be generated.

for an example, see `Ord` ([1105](#)).

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` ([1105](#)), `Pred` ([1109](#)), `High` ([1060](#)), `Low` ([1075](#))

**37.9.334 SuspendThread**

Synopsis: Suspend a running thread.

Declaration: `function SuspendThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SuspendThread` suspends a running thread. The thread is identified with its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if succesful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `ResumeThread` ([1117](#)), `KillThread` ([1071](#))

**37.9.335 Swap**

Synopsis: Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable

Declaration: `function swap(X: Word) : Word`  
`function Swap(X: Integer) : Integer`  
`function swap(X: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Swap(X: Cardinal) : Cardinal`  
`function Swap(X: QWord) : QWord`  
`function swap(X: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Swap swaps the high and low order bytes of X if X is of type Word or Integer, or swaps the high and low order words of X if X is of type Longint or Cardinal. The return type is the type of X

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Lo ([1073](#)), Hi ([1059](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex69.pp

---

**Program** Example69;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Swap function. }
Var W : Word;
    L : Longint;

begin
    W:=$1234;
    W:=Swap(W);
    if W<>$3412 then
        writeln ( 'Error when swapping word !' );
    L:=$12345678;
    L:=Swap(L);
    if L<>$56781234 then
        writeln ( 'Error when swapping Longint !' );
end.
```

---

### 37.9.336 SwapEndian

**Synopsis:** Swap endianness of the argument

**Declaration:** function SwapEndian(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: Word) : Word  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: DWord) : DWord  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: Int64) : Int64  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SwapEndian will swap the endianness of the bytes in its argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** hi ([1059](#)), lo ([1073](#)), swap ([1138](#)), BEToN ([1021](#)), NToBE ([1078](#)), NToLE ([1079](#)), LEToN ([1073](#))

### 37.9.337 SysAllocMem

**Synopsis:** System memory manager: Allocate memory

**Declaration:** function SysAllocMem(size: PtrUInt) : Pointer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SysFreeMem is the system memory manager implementation for AllocMem ([1015](#))

**See also:** AllocMem ([1015](#))

### 37.9.338 SysAssert

Synopsis: Standard Assert failure implementation

Declaration: `procedure SysAssert (const Msg: ShortString; const FName: ShortString;  
LineNo: LongInt; ErrorAddr: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysAssert` is the standard implementation of the assertion failed code. It is the default value of the `AssertErrorProc` constant. It will print the assert message `Msg` together with the filename `FName` and linenumber `LineNo` to standard error output (`StdErr`) and will halt the program with exit code 227. The error address `ErrorAddr` is ignored.

See also: `AssertErrorProc` ([969](#))

### 37.9.339 SysBackTraceStr

Synopsis: Format an address suitable for inclusion in a backtrace

Declaration: `function SysBackTraceStr (Addr: Pointer) : ShortString`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysBackTraceStr` will create a string representation of the address `Addr`, suitable for inclusion in a stack backtrace.

Errors: None.

### 37.9.340 SysFreemem

Synopsis: System memory manager free routine.

Declaration: `function SysFreemem (p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeem` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` ([1052](#))

See also: `FreeMem` ([1052](#))

### 37.9.341 SysFreememSize

Synopsis: System memory manager free routine.

Declaration: `function SysFreememSize (p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeemSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` ([1052](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1076](#))

### 37.9.342 SysGetFPCHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return the status of the FPC heapmanager

Declaration: `function SysGetFPCHeapStatus : TFPCHeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetFPCHeapStatus` returns the status of the default FPC heapmanager. It is set as the default value of the corresponding `GetFPCHeapStatus` (1054) function.

Errors: None. The result of this function is bogus information if the current heapmanager is not the standard FPC heapmanager.

See also: `GetFPCHeapStatus` (1054)

### 37.9.343 SysGetHeapStatus

Synopsis: System implementation of `GetHeapStatus` (1054)

Declaration: `function SysGetHeapStatus : THeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetHeapStatus` is the system implementation of the `GetHeapStatus` (1054) call.

See also: `GetHeapStatus` (1054)

### 37.9.344 SysGetmem

Synopsis: System memory manager memory allocator.

Declaration: `function SysGetmem(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetmem` is the system memory manager implementation for `GetMem` (1054)

See also: `GetMem` (1054), `GetMemory` (1055)

### 37.9.345 SysInitExceptions

Synopsis: Initialize exceptions.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitExceptions`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitExceptions` initializes the exception system. This procedure should never be called directly, it is taken care of by the RTL.

### 37.9.346 SysInitFPU

Synopsis: Initialize the FPU

Declaration: `procedure SysInitFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitFPU` initializes (resets) the floating point unit, if one is available. It is called for instance when a new thread is started.

See also: `BeginThread` ([1020](#))

### 37.9.347 SysInitStdIO

Synopsis: Initialize standard input and output.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitStdIO`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitStdIO` initializes the standard input and output files: `Output` ([1012](#)), `Input` ([1012](#)) and `StdErr` ([1013](#)). This routine is called by the initialization code of the system unit, there should be no need to call it directly.

### 37.9.348 SysMemSize

Synopsis: System memory manager: free size.

Declaration: `function SysMemSize(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeMemSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `MemSize` ([1076](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1076](#))

### 37.9.349 SysReAllocMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: Reallocate memory

Declaration: `function SysReAllocMem(var p: pointer; size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysReallocMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#))

### 37.9.350 SysResetFPU

Synopsis: Reset the floating point unit.

Declaration: `procedure SysResetFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysResetFPU` resets the floating point unit. There should normally be no need to call this unit; the compiler itself takes care of this.

### 37.9.351 SysSetCtrlBreakHandler

Synopsis: System CTRL-C handler

Declaration: `function SysSetCtrlBreakHandler (Handler: TCtrlBreakHandler)  
: TCtrlBreakHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysSetCtrlBreakHandler` sets the CTRL-C handler to the `Handler` callback, and returns the previous value of the handler.

See also: `TCtrlBreakHandler` ([999](#))

### 37.9.352 SysTryResizeMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: attempt to resize memory.

Declaration: `function SysTryResizeMem (var p: pointer; size: PtrUInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysTryResizeMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#)), `SysReAllocMem` ([1142](#))

See also: `SysReAllocMem` ([1142](#)), `ReAllocMem` ([1115](#))

### 37.9.353 ThreadGetPriority

Synopsis: Return the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadGetPriority (threadHandle: TThreadID) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadGetPriority` returns the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. The returned priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: `ThreadSetPriority` ([1143](#))

### 37.9.354 ThreadSetPriority

Synopsis: Set the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadSetPriority (threadHandle: TThreadID; Prio: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSetPriority` sets the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. Priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: `ThreadGetPriority` ([1143](#))

**37.9.355 ThreadSwitch**

Synopsis: Signal possibility of thread switch

Declaration: `procedure ThreadSwitch`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSwitch` signals the operating system that the thread should be suspended and that another thread should be executed.

This call is a hint only, and may be ignored.

See also: `SuspendThread` ([1138](#)), `ResumeThread` ([1117](#)), `KillThread` ([1071](#))

**37.9.356 trunc**

Synopsis: Truncate a floating point value.

Declaration: `function trunc(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trunc` returns the integer part of X, which is always smaller than (or equal to) X in absolute value.

Errors: None.

See also: `Frac` ([1052](#)), `Int` ([1067](#)), `Round` ([1121](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Trunc function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Trunc(123.456)); { Prints 123 }
  Writeln (Trunc(-123.456)); { Prints -123 }
  Writeln (Trunc(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
  Writeln (Trunc(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
end.
```

---

**37.9.357 Truncate**

Synopsis: Truncate the file at position

Declaration: `procedure Truncate(var F: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` truncates the (opened) file F at the current file position.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Append` ([1016](#)), `Filepos` ([1046](#)), `Seek` ([1124](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex71.pp`

---

```

Program Example71;

{ Program to demonstrate the Truncate function. }

Var F : File of longint;
      I,L : Longint;

begin
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For I:=1 to 10 Do
    Write (F,I);
  Writeln ( 'Filesize before Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
  Reset (F);
  Repeat
    Read (F,I);
  Until i=5;
  Truncate (F);
  Writeln ( 'Filesize after Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 37.9.358 UCS4StringToUnicodeString

Synopsis: Convert a UCS-4 encoded string to a unicode string

Declaration: `function UCS4StringToUnicodeString(const s: UCS4String) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UCS4StringToUnicodeString` converts the UCS-4 encoded string *S* to a unicode string and returns the resulting string.

This function requires the widestring manager.

Errors:

See also: `UnicodeStringToUCS4String` ([1147](#))

### 37.9.359 UCS4StringToWideString

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function UCS4StringToWideString(const s: UCS4String) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

### 37.9.360 Unassigned

Synopsis: Unassigned variant.

Declaration: `function Unassigned : Variant`

Visibility: default

**37.9.361 UnicodeCharLenToString**

Synopsis: Convert a memory buffer with unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `function UnicodeCharLenToString(S: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the unicode characters in buffer `S` with at most `len` bytes length, to an ansistring and returns the result.

This function requires the use of a widestring manager.

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` or length `len` are valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` (1137), `UnicodeCharToString` (1146)

**37.9.362 UnicodeCharLenToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a memory buffer with unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure UnicodeCharLenToStrVar(Src: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the unicode characters in buffer `S` with at most `len` bytes length, to an ansistring and returns the result in `Dest`

This function does the same as `UnicodeCharLenToString` (1146).

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` or length `len` are valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` (1137), `UnicodeCharToString` (1146), `UnicodeCharLenToString` (1146), `UnicodeCharToStrVar` (1147)

**37.9.363 UnicodeCharToString**

Synopsis: Convert unicode character to string

Declaration: `function UnicodeCharToString(S: PUnicodeChar) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharToString` converts a null-word-terminated array of unicode characters in `S` to an `AnsiString` value. It simply calls `UnicodeCharLenToString` (1146) with the length of the string `S`.

This function requires the use of a widestring manager.

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` is valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` (1137), `UnicodeCharLenToString` (1146), `WidestringManager` (1013)

### 37.9.364 UnicodeCharToStrVar

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated memory buffer with unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure UnicodeCharToStrVar(S: PUnicodeChar; out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the unicode characters in buffer `S` up to the first null word, to an ansistring and returns the result in `Dest`

This function does the same as `UnicodeCharToString` (1146).

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` is valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` (1137), `UnicodeCharToString` (1146), `UnicodeCharLenToString` (1146), `UnicodeCharToString` (1146)

### 37.9.365 UnicodeStringToUCS4String

Synopsis: Convert a unicode string to a UCS-4 string.

Declaration: `function UnicodeStringToUCS4String(const s: UnicodeString) : UCS4String`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeStringToUCS4String` converts a unicode string `S` to a UCS-4 encoded string, and returns the resulting string.

This function requires the widestring manager.

See also: `UCS4StringToUnicodeString` (1145)

### 37.9.366 UnicodeToUtf8

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; Source: PUnicodeChar;  
MaxBytes: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; MaxDestBytes: SizeUInt;  
Source: PUnicodeChar; SourceChars: SizeUInt)  
: SizeUInt`  
`function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; Source: PWideChar; MaxBytes: SizeInt)  
: SizeInt`  
`function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; MaxDestBytes: SizeUInt;  
Source: PWideChar; SourceChars: SizeUInt)  
: SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

**37.9.367 UniqueString**

Synopsis: Make sure reference count of string is 1

Declaration: `procedure UniqueString(var S: AnsiString)`  
`procedure UniqueString(var S: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure UniqueString(var S: WideString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UniqueString` ensures that the ansistring `S` has reference count 1. It makes a copy of `S` if this is necessary, and returns the copy in `S`

Errors: None.

**37.9.368 UnlockResource**

Synopsis: Unlock a previously locked resource

Declaration: `function UnlockResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnlockResource` unlocks a previously locked resource. Note that this function does not exist on windows, it's only needed on other platforms.

Errors: The function returns `False` if it failed.

See also: `FindResource` ([1050](#)), `FreeResource` ([1053](#)), `SizeofResource` ([1133](#)), `LoadResource` ([1074](#)), `lockResource` ([1074](#)), `FreeResource` ([1053](#))

**37.9.369 UnPack**

Synopsis: Create unpacked array from packed array

Declaration: `procedure UnPack(const Z: PackedArrayType; out A: UnpackedArrayType;`  
`StartIndex: TIndexType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnPack` will copy the elements of a packed array (`Z`) to an unpacked array (`A`). All elements in `Z` are copied to `A`, starting at index `StartIndex` in `A`. The type of the index variable `StartIndex` must match the type of the index of `A`.

Obviously, the type of the elements of the arrays `A` and `Z` must match.

See also: `Pack` ([1106](#))

**37.9.370 upCase**

Synopsis: Convert a string to all uppercase.

Declaration: `function upCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring`  
`function upCase(c: Char) : Char`  
`function upcase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring`  
`function UpCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`function UpCase(c: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar`  
`function UpCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Uppcase` returns the uppercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to uppercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `Lowercase` ([1076](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program Example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the upcase function. }

var c:char;

begin
  for c:= 'a' to 'z' do
    write(upcase(c));
  Writeln;
  { This doesn't work in TP, but it does in Free Pascal }
  Writeln(upcase( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ));
end.
```

---

### 37.9.371 UTF8Decode

**Synopsis:** Convert a widestring to a UTF-8 encoded unicode string

**Declaration:** `function UTF8Decode(const s: UTF8String) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UTF8Decode` converts the widestring `S` to a UTF-8 encoded unicode string and returns the resulting string. It calls the low-level `Utf8ToUnicode` ([1150](#)) function to do the actual work.

For this function to work, a widestring manager must be installed.

See also: `UTF8Encode` ([1149](#)), `Utf8ToAnsi` ([1150](#)), `SetWideStringManager` ([1131](#)), `Utf8ToUnicode` ([1150](#))

### 37.9.372 UTF8Encode

**Synopsis:** Convert a UTF-8 encoded unicode string to a widestring

**Declaration:** `function UTF8Encode(const s: Ansistring) : UTF8String`  
`function UTF8Encode(const s: UnicodeString) : UTF8String`  
`function UTF8Encode(const s: WideString) : UTF8String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UTF8Encode` converts the UTF-8 encoded unicode string `S` to a widestring and returns the resulting string. It calls the low-level `UnicodeToUtf8` ([1147](#)) function to do the actual work.

For this function to work, a widestring manager must be installed.

See also: `UTF8Decode` ([1149](#)), `Utf8ToAnsi` ([1150](#)), `UnicodeToUtf8` ([1147](#)), `SetWideStringManager` ([1131](#))

**37.9.373 Utf8ToAnsi**

Synopsis: Convert a UTF-8 encoded unicode string to an ansistring

Declaration: `function Utf8ToAnsi(const s: UTF8String) : ansistring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utf8ToAnsi` converts an utf8-encode unicode string to an ansistring. It converts the string to a widestring and then converts the widestring to an ansistring.

For this function to work, a widestring manager must be installed.

Errors:

See also: `UTF8Encode` (1149), `UTF8Decode` (1149), `SetWideStringManager` (1131)

**37.9.374 Utf8ToUnicode**

Synopsis: Convert a buffer with UTF-8 characters to widestring characters

Declaration: `function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PUnicodeChar; Source: PChar;  
MaxChars: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PUnicodeChar; MaxDestChars: SizeUInt;  
Source: PChar; SourceBytes: SizeUInt) : SizeUInt  
function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PWideChar; Source: PChar; MaxChars: SizeInt)  
: SizeInt  
function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PWideChar; MaxDestChars: SizeUInt;  
Source: PChar; SourceBytes: SizeUInt) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utf8ToUnicode` converts the buffer in `Source` with a length of `SourceBytes` or for a maximum length of `MaxChars` (or `MaxDestChars`) widestring characters to the buffer pointed to by `Dest`.

The function returns the number of copied widestring characters.

For this function to work, a widestring manager must be installed.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `UTF8Encode` (1149), `UTF8Decode` (1149), `Utf8ToAnsi` (1150), `SetWideStringManager` (1131)

**37.9.375 Val**

Synopsis: Calculate numerical/enumerated value of a string.

Declaration: `procedure Val(const S: String; var V; var Code: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Val` converts the value represented in the string `S` to a numerical value or an enumerated value, and stores this value in the variable `V`, which can be of type `Longint`, `Real` and `Byte` or any enumerated type. If the conversion isn't successful, then the parameter `Code` contains the index of the character in `S` which prevented the conversion. The string `S` is allowed to contain spaces in the beginning.

The string `S` can contain a number in decimal, hexadecimal, binary or octal format, as described in the language reference. For enumerated values, the string must be the name of the enumerated value. The name is searched case insensitively.

The conversion to enumerated exists only as of version 2.3.1 (or later) of the compiler.



**37.9.378 VarArrayRedim**

Synopsis: Redimension a variant array

Declaration: `procedure VarArrayRedim(var A: Variant; HighBound: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayRedim` re-sizes the first dimension of the variant array `A`, giving it a new high bound `HighBound`. Obviously, `A` must be a variant array for this function to work.

Errors:

**37.9.379 VarCast**

Synopsis: Cast a variant to a certain type

Declaration: `procedure VarCast(var dest: variant; const source: variant;  
vartype: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCast` converts the variant in `Source` to the type indicated in `VarType` and returns the result in `dest`. The `VarType` must be one of the pre-defined `VarNNN` constants.

Errors: If the conversion is not possible because the value cannot be correctly casted, then a run-time error or an exception may occur.

**37.9.380 WaitForThreadTerminate**

Synopsis: Wait for a thread to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitForThreadTerminate(threadHandle: TThreadID;  
TimeoutMs: LongInt) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitForThreadTerminate` waits for a thread to finish its execution. The thread is identified by it's handle or ID `threadHandle`. If the thread does not exit within `TimeoutMs` milliseconds, the function will return with an error value.

The function returns the exit code of the thread.

See also: `EndThread` ([1039](#)), `KillThread` ([1071](#))

**37.9.381 WideCharLenToString**

Synopsis: Convert a length-limited array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `function WideCharLenToString(S: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharLenToString` converts at most `Len` widecharacters from the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an ansistring, and returns the ansistring.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `S`. Passing an invalid pointer may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` ([1137](#)), `WideCharToString` ([1153](#)), `WideCharToStrVar` ([1153](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1153](#))

**37.9.382 WideCharLenToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a length-limited array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure WideCharLenToStrVar(Src: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharLenToString` converts at most `Len` widecharacters from the null-terminated widechar array `Src` to an ansistring, and returns the ansistring in `Dest`.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Src`. Passing an invalid pointer may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` (1137), `WideCharToString` (1153), `WideCharToStrVar` (1153), `WideCharLenToString` (1152)

**37.9.383 WideCharToString**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `function WideCharToString(S: PWideChar) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharToString` converts the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an ansistring, and returns the ansistring.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Src`. Passing an invalid pointer, or an improperly terminated array may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` (1137), `WideCharToStrVar` (1153), `WideCharLenToStrVar` (1153), `WideCharLenToString` (1152)

**37.9.384 WideCharToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure WideCharToStrVar(S: PWideChar; out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharToString` converts the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an ansistring, and returns the ansistring in `Dest`.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `S`. Passing an invalid pointer, or an improperly terminated array may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` (1137), `WideCharToString` (1153), `WideCharToStrVar` (1153), `WideCharLenToString` (1152)

**37.9.385 WideStringToUCS4String**

Synopsis: Convert a widestring to a UCS-4 encoded string.

Declaration: `function WideStringToUCS4String(const s: WideString) : UCS4String`

Visibility: default

Description: Convert a widestring to a UCS-4 encoded string.

Errors:

**37.9.386 Write**

Synopsis: Write variable to a text file

Declaration: `procedure Write(Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Write` writes the contents of the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. to the file `F`. `F` can be a typed file, or a `Text` file. If `F` is a typed file, then the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of the same type as the type in the declaration of `F`. Untyped files are not allowed. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If `F` is of type `Text`, then the necessary conversions are done such that the output of the variables is in human-readable format. This conversion is done for all numerical types. Strings are printed exactly as they are in memory, as well as `PChar` types. The format of the numerical conversions can be influenced through the following modifiers: `OutputVariable : NumChars [: Decimals ]` This will print the value of `OutputVariable` with a minimum of `NumChars` characters, from which `Decimals` are reserved for the decimals. If the number cannot be represented with `NumChars` characters, `NumChars` will be increased, until the representation fits. If the representation requires less than `NumChars` characters then the output is filled up with spaces, to the left of the generated string, thus resulting in a right-aligned representation. If no formatting is specified, then the number is written using its natural length, with nothing in front of it if it's positive, and a minus sign if it's negative. Real numbers are, by default, written in scientific notation.

Errors: If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{SI}` switch.

See also: `WriteLn` ([1154](#)), `Read` ([1111](#)), `ReadLn` ([1113](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1022](#))

**37.9.387 WriteBarrier**

Synopsis: Memory write barrier

Declaration: `procedure WriteBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a write barrier in the CPU: write (store) operations before and after the barrier are separate.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1112](#)), `ReadDependencyBarrier` ([1113](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1114](#))

**37.9.388 WriteLn**

Synopsis: Write variable to a text file and append newline

Declaration: `procedure Writeln(Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteLn` does the same as `Write` ([1154](#)) for text files, and emits a Carriage Return - LineFeed character pair after that. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If no variables are specified, a Carriage Return - LineFeed character pair is emitted, resulting in a new line in the file `F`.

**Remark:** Under linux and unix, the Carriage Return character is omitted, as customary in Unix environments.

Errors: If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{SI}` switch.

See also: Write (1154), Read (1111), Readln (1113), Blockwrite (1022)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex75.pp

---

**Program** Example75;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Write(ln) function. }*

**Var**

F : **File of** Longint;

L : Longint;

**begin**

Write ( 'This is on the first line ! '); *{ No CR/LF pair! }*

Writeln ( 'And this too... ');

Writeln ( 'But this is already on the second line... ');

Assign (f, 'test.tmp');

Rewrite (f);

**For** L:=1 **to** 10 **do**

**write** (F,L); *{ No writeln allowed here ! }*

Close (f);

**end.**

---

### 37.9.389 WriteStr

Synopsis: Write variables to a string

Declaration: procedure WriteStr(out S: String; Args: Arguments)

Visibility: default

Description: WriteStr behaves like Write (1154), except that it stores its output in the string variable S instead of a file. Semantically, the WriteStr call is equivalent to writing the arguments to a file using the Write call, and then reading them into S using the Read call from the same file:

```
var
```

```
  F : Text;
```

```
begin
```

```
  Rewrite(F);
```

```
  Write(F, Args);
```

```
  Close(F);
```

```
  Reset(F);
```

```
  Read(F, S);
```

```
  Close(F);
```

```
end;
```

Obviously, the WriteStr call does not use a temporary file.

WriteStr is defined in the ISO Extended Pascal standard. More information on the allowed arguments and the possible formatting can be found in the description of Write (1154).

See also: Write (1154), ReadStr (1113), Read (1111)

## 37.10 IDispatch

### 37.10.1 Description

IDispatch is the pascal definition of the Windows Dispatch interface definition.

### 37.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1156</a>	GetIDsOfNames	Return IDs of named procedures
<a href="#">1156</a>	GetTypeInfo	Return type information about properties
<a href="#">1156</a>	GetTypeInfoCount	Return number of properties.
<a href="#">1156</a>	Invoke	Invoke a dispatch method

### 37.10.3 IDispatch.GetTypeInfoCount

Synopsis: Return number of properties.

Declaration: `function GetTypeInfoCount(out count: LongInt) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

### 37.10.4 IDispatch.GetTypeInfo

Synopsis: Return type information about properties

Declaration: `function GetTypeInfo(Index: LongInt; LocaleID: LongInt; out TypeInfo) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

### 37.10.5 IDispatch.GetIDsOfNames

Synopsis: Return IDs of named procedures

Declaration: `function GetIDsOfNames(const iid: TGuid; names: Pointer; NameCount: LongInt; LocaleID: LongInt; DispIDs: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the ID of a procedure.

### 37.10.6 IDispatch.Invoke

Synopsis: Invoke a dispatch method

Declaration: `function Invoke(DispID: LongInt; const iid: TGuid; LocaleID: LongInt; Flags: Word; var params; VarResult: pointer; ExcepInfo: pointer; ArgErr: pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

## 37.11 IInvokable

### 37.11.1 Description

`IInvokable` is a descendent of `IInterface` (990), compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state, so Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) is generated for it.

## 37.12 IUnknown

### 37.12.1 Description

`IUnknown` is defined by windows. It's the basic interface which all COM objects must implement. The definition does not contain any code.

### 37.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1157</a>	<code>\_AddRef</code>	Increase reference count of the interface
<a href="#">1157</a>	<code>\_Release</code>	Decrease reference count of the interface
<a href="#">1157</a>	<code>QueryInterface</code>	Return pointer to VMT table of interface

### 37.12.3 IUnknown.QueryInterface

Synopsis: Return pointer to VMT table of interface

Declaration: `function QueryInterface(const iid: TGuid;out obj) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

### 37.12.4 IUnknown.\_AddRef

Synopsis: Increase reference count of the interface

Declaration: `function _AddRef : LongInt`

Visibility: default

See also: `IUnknown._Release` ([1157](#))

### 37.12.5 IUnknown.\_Release

Synopsis: Decrease reference count of the interface

Declaration: `function _Release : LongInt`

Visibility: default

See also: `IUnknown._AddRef` ([1157](#))

## 37.13 TAggregatedObject

### 37.13.1 Description

TAggregatedObject implements an object whose lifetime is governed by an external object (or interface). It does not implement the IUnknown interface by itself, but delegates all methods to the controller object, as exposed in the Controller (1158) property. In effect, the reference count of the aggregated object is the same as that of its controller, and additionally, all interfaces of the controller are exposed by the aggregated object.

Note that the aggregated object maintains a non-counted reference to the controller.

Aggregated objects should be used when using delegation to implement reference counted objects: the delegated interfaces can be implemented safely by TAggregatedObject descendents.

### 37.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1158</a>	Create	Create a new instance of TAggregatedObject

### 37.13.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">1158</a>	Controller	r	Controlling instance

### 37.13.4 TAggregatedObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TAggregatedObject

Declaration: constructor Create(const aController: IUnknown)

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TAggregatedObject on the heap, and stores a reference to aController, so it can be exposed in the Controller (1158) property.

Errors: If not enough memory is present on the heap, an exception will be raised. If the aController is Nil, exceptions will occur when any of the TAggregatedObject methods (actually, the IUnknown methods) are used.

See also: TAggregatedObject.Controller ([1158](#))

### 37.13.5 TAggregatedObject.Controller

Synopsis: Controlling instance

Declaration: Property Controller : IUnknown

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Controller exposes the controlling object, with all interfaces it has.

The value of the controller is set when the TAggregatedObject instance is created.

See also: TAggregatedObject.Create ([1158](#))

## 37.14 TContainedObject

### 37.14.1 Description

TContainedObject is the base class for contained objects, i.e. objects that do not implement a reference counting mechanism themselves, but are owned by some other object which handles the reference counting mechanism. It implements the IUnknown interface and, more specifically, the QueryInterface method of IUnknown.

## 37.15 TInterfacedObject

### 37.15.1 Description

TInterfacedObject is a descendent of TObject (1160) which implements the IUnknown (1157) interface. It can be used as a base class for all classes which need reference counting.

### 37.15.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1159</a>	AfterConstruction	Handle reference count properly.
<a href="#">1159</a>	BeforeDestruction	Check reference count.
<a href="#">1160</a>	NewInstance	Create a new instance

### 37.15.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">1160</a>	RefCount	r	Return the current reference count

### 37.15.4 TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Handle reference count properly.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: AfterConstruction overrides the basic method in TObject and adds some additional reference count handling.

Errors: None.

See also: TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction ([1159](#))

### 37.15.5 TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Check reference count.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: AfterConstruction overrides the basic method in TObject and adds a reference count check: if the reference count is not zero, an error occurs.

Errors: A runtime-error 204 will be generated if the reference count is nonzero when the object is destroyed.

See also: `TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction` ([1159](#))

### 37.15.6 `TInterfacedObject.NewInstance`

Synopsis: Create a new instance

Declaration: `function NewInstance : TObject; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewInstance` initializes a new instance of `TInterfacedObject` ([1159](#))

Errors: None.

### 37.15.7 `TInterfacedObject.RefCount`

Synopsis: Return the current reference count

Declaration: `Property RefCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RefCount` returns the current reference count. This reference count cannot be manipulated, except through the methods of `IUnknown` ([1157](#)). When it reaches zero, the class instance is destroyed.

See also: `IUnknown` ([1157](#))

## 37.16 `TObject`

### 37.16.1 Description

`TObject` is the parent root class for all classes in Object Pascal. If a class has no parent class explicitly declared, it is dependent on `TObject`. `TObject` introduces class methods that deal with the class' type information, and contains all necessary methods to create an instance at runtime, and to dispatch messages to the correct method (both string and integer messages).

**37.16.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1167</a>	AfterConstruction	Method called after the constructor was called.
<a href="#">1167</a>	BeforeDestruction	Method called before the destructor is called.
<a href="#">1164</a>	ClassInfo	Return a pointer to the type information for this class.
<a href="#">1164</a>	ClassName	Return the current class name.
<a href="#">1164</a>	ClassNameIs	Check whether the class name equals the given name.
<a href="#">1165</a>	ClassParent	Return the parent class.
<a href="#">1164</a>	ClassType	Return a "class of" pointer for the current class
<a href="#">1163</a>	CleanupInstance	Finalize the class instance.
<a href="#">1161</a>	Create	TObject Constructor
<a href="#">1163</a>	DefaultHandler	Default handler for integer message handlers.
<a href="#">1167</a>	DefaultHandlerStr	Default handler for string messages.
<a href="#">1161</a>	Destroy	TObject destructor.
<a href="#">1166</a>	Dispatch	Dispatch an integer message
<a href="#">1166</a>	DispatchStr	Dispatch a string message.
<a href="#">1167</a>	FieldAddress	Return the address of a field.
<a href="#">1163</a>	Free	Check for Nil and call destructor.
<a href="#">1162</a>	FreeInstance	Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.
<a href="#">1168</a>	GetInterface	Return a reference to an interface
<a href="#">1168</a>	GetInterfaceByStr	Return an interface based on its GUID
<a href="#">1168</a>	GetInterfaceEntry	Return the interface table entry by GUID
<a href="#">1169</a>	GetInterfaceEntryByStr	Return the interface table entry by string
<a href="#">1169</a>	GetInterfaceTable	Return a pointer to the table of implemented interfaces for a class
<a href="#">1165</a>	InheritsFrom	Check whether class is an ancestor.
<a href="#">1163</a>	InitInstance	Initialize a new class instance.
<a href="#">1165</a>	InstanceSize	Return the size of an instance.
<a href="#">1166</a>	MethodAddress	Return the address of a method
<a href="#">1166</a>	MethodName	Return the name of a method.
<a href="#">1162</a>	newinstance	Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance
<a href="#">1162</a>	SafeCallException	Handle exception object
<a href="#">1165</a>	StringMessageTable	Return a pointer to the string message table.

**37.16.3 TObject.Create**

Synopsis: TObject Constructor

Declaration: constructor Create

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TObject. Currently it does nothing. It is also not virtual, so there is in principle no need to call it directly.

See also: TObject.Destroy ([1161](#))

**37.16.4 TObject.Destroy**

Synopsis: TObject destructor.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Virtual

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Destroy` is the destructor of `TObject`. It will clean up the memory assigned to the instance. Descendent classes should override `destroy` if they want to do additional clean-up. No other destructor should be implemented.

It is bad programming practice to call `Destroy` directly. It is better to call the `Free` (1163) method, because that one will check first if `Self` is different from `Nil`.

To clean up an instance and reset the refence to the instance, it is best to use the `FreeAndNil` (1262) function.

See also: `TObject.Create` (1161), `TObject.Free` (1163)

### 37.16.5 TObject.newinstance

**Synopsis:** Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance

**Declaration:** `function newInstance : TObject; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `NewInstance` allocates memory on the heap for a new instance of the current class. If the memory was allocated, the class will be initialized by a call to `InitInstance` (1163). The function returns the newly initialized instance.

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, a `Nil` pointer may be returned, or an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObject.Create` (1161), `TObject.InitInstance` (1163), `TObject.InstanceSize` (1165), `TObject.FreeInstance` (1162)

### 37.16.6 TObject.FreeInstance

**Synopsis:** Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeInstance; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `FreeInstance` cleans up an instance of the current class, and releases the heap memory occupied by the class instance.

See also: `TObject.Destroy` (1161), `TObject.InitInstance` (1163), `TObject.NewInstance` (1162)

### 37.16.7 TObject.SafeCallException

**Synopsis:** Handle exception object

**Declaration:** `function SafeCallException(exceptobject: TObject;exceptaddr: pointer)  
: LongInt; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SafeCallException` should be overridden to handle exceptions in a method marked with the `savecall` directive. The implementation in `TObject` simply returns zero.

### 37.16.8 TObject.DefaultHandler

Synopsis: Default handler for integer message handlers.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandler(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DefaultHandler` is the default handler for messages. If a message has an unknown message ID (i.e. does not appear in the table with integer message handlers), then it will be passed to `DefaultHandler` by the `Dispatch` (1166) method.

Errors:

See also: `TObject.Dispatch` (1166), `TObject.DefaultHandlerStr` (1167)

### 37.16.9 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Check for Nil and call destructor.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: public

Description: `Free` will check the `Self` pointer and calls `Destroy` (1161) if it is different from Nil. This is a safer method than calling `Destroy` directly. If a reference to the object must be reset as well (a recommended technique), then the function `FreeAndNil` (1262) should be called.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Destroy` (1161), `#rtl.sysutils.freeandnil` (1262)

### 37.16.10 TObject.InitInstance

Synopsis: Initialize a new class instance.

Declaration: `function InitInstance(instance: pointer) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `InitInstance` initializes the memory pointer to by `Instance`. This means that the VMT is initialized, and the interface pointers are set up correctly. The function returns the newly initialized instance.

See also: `TObject.NewInstance` (1162), `TObject.Create` (1161)

### 37.16.11 TObject.CleanupInstance

Synopsis: Finalize the class instance.

Declaration: `procedure CleanupInstance`

Visibility: public

Description: `CleanUpInstance` finalizes the instance, i.e. takes care of all reference counted objects, by decreasing their reference count by 1, and freeing them if their count reaches zero.

Normally, `CleanupInstance` should never be called, it is called automatically when the object is freed with it's constructor.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Destroy` (1161), `TObject.Free` (1163), `TObject.InitInstance` (1163)

### 37.16.12 TObject.ClassType

Synopsis: Return a "class of" pointer for the current class

Declaration: `function ClassType : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassType` returns a `TClass` (999) class type reference for the current class.

See also: `TClass` (999), `TObject.ClassInfo` (1164), `TObject.ClassName` (1164)

### 37.16.13 TObject.ClassInfo

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the type information for this class.

Declaration: `function ClassInfo : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassInfo` returns a pointer to the type information for this class. This pointer can be used in the various type information routines.

### 37.16.14 TObject.ClassName

Synopsis: Return the current class name.

Declaration: `function ClassName : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassName` returns the class name for the current class, in all-uppercase letters. To check for the class name, use the `ClassNameIs` (1164) class method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.ClassInfo` (1164), `TObject.ClassType` (1164), `TObject.ClassNameIs` (1164)

### 37.16.15 TObject.ClassNameIs

Synopsis: Check whether the class name equals the given name.

Declaration: `function ClassNameIs(const name: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassNameIs` checks whether `Name` equals the class name. It takes of case sensitivity, i.e. it converts both names to uppercase before comparing.

See also: `TObject.ClassInfo` (1164), `TObject.ClassType` (1164), `TObject.ClassName` (1164)

**37.16.16 TObject.ClassParent**

Synopsis: Return the parent class.

Declaration: `function ClassParent : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassParent` returns the class of the parent class of the current class. This is always different from `Nil`, except for `TObject`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.ClassInfo` ([1164](#)), `TObject.ClassType` ([1164](#)), `TObject.ClassName` ([1164](#))

**37.16.17 TObject.InstanceSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of an instance.

Declaration: `function InstanceSize : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstanceSize` returns the number of bytes an instance takes in memory. This is Just the memory occupied by the class structure, and does not take into account any additional memory that might be allocated by the constructor of the class.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.InitInstance` ([1163](#)), `TObject.ClassName` ([1164](#)), `TObject.ClassInfo` ([1164](#)), `TObject.ClassType` ([1164](#))

**37.16.18 TObject.InheritsFrom**

Synopsis: Chck wether class is an ancestor.

Declaration: `function InheritsFrom(aclass: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `InheritsFrom` returns `True` if `AClass` is an ancestor class from the current class, and returns `false` if it is not.

Errors:

See also: `TObject.ClassName` ([1164](#)), `TObject.ClassInfo` ([1164](#)), `TObject.ClassType` ([1164](#)), `TClass` ([999](#))

**37.16.19 TObject.StringMessageTable**

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the string message table.

Declaration: `function StringMessageTable : pstringmessagetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `StringMessageTable` returns a pointer to the string message table, which can be used to look up methods for dispatching a string message. It is used by the `DispatchStr` ([1166](#)) method.

Errors: If there are no string message handlers, `nil` is returned.

See also: `TObject.DispatchStr` ([1166](#)), `TObject.Dispatch` ([1166](#))

**37.16.20 TObject.Dispatch**

Synopsis: Dispatch an integer message

Declaration: `procedure Dispatch(var message)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Dispatch` looks in the message handler table for a handler that handles `message`. The message is identified by the first dword (cardinal) in the message structure.

If no matching message handler is found, the message is passed to the `DefaultHandler` (1163) method, which can be overridden by descendent classes to add custom handling of messages.

See also: `TObject.DispatchStr` (1166), `TObject.DefaultHandler` (1163)

**37.16.21 TObject.DispatchStr**

Synopsis: Dispatch a string message.

Declaration: `procedure DispatchStr(var message)`

Visibility: public

Description: `DispatchStr` extracts the message identifier from `Message` and checks the message handler table to see if a handler for the message is found, and calls the handler, passing along the message.

If no handler is found, the default `DefaultHandlerStr` (1167) is called.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.DefaultHandlerStr` (1167), `TObject.Dispatch` (1166), `TObject.DefaultHandler` (1163)

**37.16.22 TObject.MethodAddress**

Synopsis: Return the address of a method

Declaration: `function MethodAddress(const name: shortstring) : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodAddress` returns the address of a method, searching the method by its name. The `Name` parameter specifies which method should be taken. The search is conducted in a case-insensitive manner.

Errors: If no matching method is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObject.MethodName` (1166), `TObject.FieldAddress` (1167)

**37.16.23 TObject.MethodName**

Synopsis: Return the name of a method.

Declaration: `function MethodName(address: pointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodName` searches the VMT for a method with the specified address and returns the name of the method.

Errors: If no method with the matching address is found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `TObject.MethodAddress` (1166), `TObject.FieldAddress` (1167)

### 37.16.24 TObject.FieldAddress

Synopsis: Return the address of a field.

Declaration: `function FieldAddress(const name: shortstring) : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FieldAddress` returns the address of the field with name `name`. The address is the address of the field in the current class instance.

Errors: If no field with the specified name is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObject.MethodAddress` ([1166](#)), `TObject.MethodName` ([1166](#))

### 37.16.25 TObject.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Method called after the constructor was called.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `AfterConstruction` is a method called after the constructor was called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed after the constructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.BeforeDestruction` ([1167](#)), `TObject.Create` ([1161](#))

### 37.16.26 TObject.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Method called before the destructor is called.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is a method called before the destructor is called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed before the destructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.AfterConstruction` ([1167](#)), `TObject.Destroy` ([1161](#)), `TObject.Free` ([1163](#))

### 37.16.27 TObject.DefaultHandlerStr

Synopsis: Default handler for string messages.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandlerStr(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `DefaultHandlerStr` is called for string messages which have no handler associated with them in the string message handler table. The implementation of `DefaultHandlerStr` in `TObject` does nothing and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific message handling behaviour.

See also: `TObject.DispatchStr` (1166), `TObject.Dispatch` (1166), `TObject.DefaultHandler` (1163)

### 37.16.28 TObject.GetInterface

**Synopsis:** Return a reference to an interface

**Declaration:** `function GetInterface(const iid: TGuid;out obj) : Boolean`  
`function GetInterface(const iidstr: shortstring;out obj) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetInterface` scans the interface tables and returns a reference to the interface `iid`. The reference is stored in `Obj` which should be an interface reference. It returns `True` if the interface was found, `False` if not.

The reference count of the interface is increased by this call.

**Errors:** If no interface was found, `False` is returned.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1168)

### 37.16.29 TObject.GetInterfaceByStr

**Synopsis:** Return an interface based on its GUID

**Declaration:** `function GetInterfaceByStr(const iidstr: shortstring;out obj) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetInterfaceByStr` returns in `obj` a pointer to the interface identified by `iidstr`. The function returns `True` if the interface is indeed implemented by the class, or `False` otherwise.

The `iidstr` is the unique GUID by which the interface was declared.

**Errors:** The function returns false if the requested interface is not implemented.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` (1168), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr` (1169)

### 37.16.30 TObject.GetInterfaceEntry

**Synopsis:** Return the interface table entry by GUID

**Declaration:** `function GetInterfaceEntry(const iid: TGuid) : pinterfaceentry`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetInterfaceEntry` returns the internal interface table entry for the interface identified by `iid` (the GUID used in the declaration of the interface). If the interface is not implemented by the class, the function returns `Nil`.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1168), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr` (1169)

### 37.16.31 TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr

Synopsis: Return the interface table entry by string

Declaration: `function GetInterfaceEntryByStr(const iidstr: shortstring)  
: pinterfaceentry`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceEntryByStr` returns the internal interface table entry for the interface identified by `iidstr` (A string representation of the GUID used in the declaration of the interface). If the interface is not implemented by the class, the function returns `Nil`.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` ([1168](#)), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` ([1168](#))

### 37.16.32 TObject.GetInterfaceTable

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the table of implemented interfaces for a class

Declaration: `function GetInterfaceTable : pinterfacetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceTable` returns a pointer to the internal table of implemented interfaces for a class. The result will always point to a valid address, if the class implements no interfaces the `EntryCount` field of the interface table will be zero.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` ([1168](#)), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` ([1168](#))

Table 37.5:

Name	Description
Addr (1014)	Return address of variable
Assigned (1018)	Check if a pointer is valid
CompareByte (1025)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareChar (1026)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareDWord (1028)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareWord (1029)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CSeg (1033)	Return code segment
Dispose (1036)	Free dynamically allocated memory
DSeg (1037)	Return data segment
FillByte (1047)	Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern
FillChar (1048)	Fill memory region with certain character
FillDWord (1048)	Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern
FillQWord (1049)	Fill memory region with 64-bit pattern
FillWord (1049)	Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern
Freemem (1052)	Release allocated memory
Getmem (1054)	Allocate new memory
GetMemoryManager (1055)	Return current memory manager
High (1060)	Return highest index of open array or enumerated
IndexByte (1062)	Find byte-sized value in a memory range
IndexChar (1063)	Find char-sized value in a memory range
IndexDWord (1064)	Find DWord-sized (32-bit) value in a memory range
IndexQWord (1065)	Find QWord-sized value in a memory range
IndexWord (1065)	Find word-sized value in a memory range
IsMemoryManagerSet (1071)	Is the memory manager set
Low (1075)	Return lowest index of open array or enumerated
Move (1077)	Move data from one location in memory to another
MoveChar0 (1077)	Move data till first zero character
New (1078)	Dynamically allocate memory for variable
Ofs (1080)	Return offset of variable
Ptr (1110)	Combine segment and offset to pointer
ReAllocMem (1115)	Resize a memory block on the heap
Seg (1126)	Return segment
SetMemoryManager (1128)	Set a memory manager
Sptr (1133)	Return current stack pointer
SSeg (1135)	Return stack segment register value

Table 37.6:

Name	Description
Append (1016)	Open a file in append mode
Assign (1018)	Assign a name to a file
Blockread (1021)	Read data from a file into memory
Blockwrite (1022)	Write data from memory to a file
Close (1025)	Close a file
Eof (1041)	Check for end of file
Eoln (1041)	Check for end of line
Erase (1042)	Delete file from disk
Filepos (1046)	Position in file
Filesize (1046)	Size of file
Flush (1051)	Write file buffers to disk
IOresult (1070)	Return result of last file IO operation
Read (1111)	Read from file into variable
Readln (1113)	Read from file into variable and goto next line
Rename (1116)	Rename file on disk
Reset (1116)	Open file for reading
Rewrite (1117)	Open file for writing
Seek (1124)	Set file position
SeekEof (1124)	Set file position to end of file
SeekEoln (1125)	Set file position to end of line
SetTextBuf (1129)	Set size of file buffer
Truncate (1144)	Truncate the file at position
Write (1154)	Write variable to file
WriteLn (1154)	Write variable to file and append newline

Table 37.7: Enumeration values for type `tinterfaceentrytype`

Value	Explanation
<code>etFieldValue</code>	Field value
<code>etStandard</code>	Standard entry
<code>etStaticMethodResult</code>	Static method
<code>etVirtualMethodResult</code>	Virtual method

Table 37.8: Enumeration values for type TRuntimeError

Value	Explanation
reAccessViolation	Access Violation
reAssertionFailed	Assertion failed error
reCodesetConversion	Code set conversion error
reControlBreak	User pressed CTRL-C
reDivByZero	Division by zero error
reExternalException	An external exception occurred
reIntfCastError	Interface typecast error
reIntOverflow	Integer overflow error
reInvalidCast	Invalid (class) typecast error
reInvalidOp	Invalid operation error
reInvalidPtr	Invalid pointer error
reNone	No error
reOutOfMemory	Out of memory error
reOverflow	Overflow error
rePrivInstruction	Privileged instruction error
reQuit	Quit signal error
reRangeError	Range check error
reSafeCallError	Safecall (IDispInterface) error
reStackOverflow	Stack overflow error
reUnderflow	Underflow error
reVarArrayBounds	Variant array bounds error
reVarArrayCreate	Variant array creation error
reVarDispatch	Variant Dispatch error.
reVarInvalidOp	Invalid variant operation error
reVarNotArray	Variant is not an array error.
reVarTypeCast	Invalid typecase from variant
reZeroDivide	Division by zero error

Table 37.9: Enumeration values for type TTextLineBreakStyle

Value	Explanation
tlbsCR	Carriage-return (#13, Mac-OS style)
tlbsCRLF	Carriage-return, line-feed (#13#30, Windows style)
tlbsLF	Line-feed only (#10, unix style)

Table 37.10: Enumeration values for type tvarop

Value	Explanation
opadd	Variant operation: Addition.
opand	Variant operation: Binary AND operation
opcmpeq	Variant operation: Compare equal.
opcmpge	Variant operation: Compare larger than or equal
opcmpgt	Variant operation: Compare larger than
opcmple	Variant operation: Compare less than or equal to
opcmplt	Variant operation: Compare less than.
opcmpne	Variant operation: Compare not equal
opcompare	Variant operation: Compare
opdivide	Variant operation: division
opintdivide	Variant operation: integer divide
opmodulus	Variant operation: Modulus
opmultiply	Variant operation: multiplication
opnegate	Variant operation: negation.
opnot	Variant operation: Binary NOT operation.
opor	Variant operation: Binary OR operation
oppower	Variant operation: Power
opshiftleft	Variant operation: Shift left
opshiftright	Variant operation: Shift right
opsubtract	Variant operation: Substraction
opxor	Variant operation: binary XOR operation.

## Chapter 38

# Reference for unit 'sysutils'

### 38.1 Localization support

Localization support depends on various constants and structures being initialized correctly. On Windows and OS/2 this is done automatically: a widestring manager is installed by default which helps taking care of the current locale when performing various operations on strings. The various internationalization settings (date/time format, currency, language etc) are also initialized correctly on these platforms.

On unixes, the widestring support is in a separate unit: `cwstring`, which loads the various needed functions from the C library. It should be added manually to the uses clause of your program. No initialization settings are applied by this unit, these must be initialized separately for the moment.

### 38.2 Miscellaneous conversion routines

Functions for various conversions.

Table 38.1:

Name	Description
<code>BCDToInt</code> ( <a href="#">1212</a> )	Convert BCD number to integer
<code>CompareMem</code> ( <a href="#">1215</a> )	Compare two memory regions
<code>FloatToStrF</code> ( <a href="#">1249</a> )	Convert float to formatted string
<code>FloatToStr</code> ( <a href="#">1248</a> )	Convert float to string
<code>FloatToText</code> ( <a href="#">1251</a> )	Convert float to string
<code>FormatFloat</code> ( <a href="#">1261</a> )	Format a floating point value
<code>GetDirs</code> ( <a href="#">1264</a> )	Split string in list of directories
<code>IntToHex</code> ( <a href="#">1270</a> )	return hexadecimal representation of integer
<code>IntToStr</code> ( <a href="#">1271</a> )	return decumal representation of integer
<code>StrToIntDef</code> ( <a href="#">1302</a> )	Convert string to integer with default value
<code>StrToInt</code> ( <a href="#">1301</a> )	Convert string to integer
<code>StrToFloat</code> ( <a href="#">1299</a> )	Convert string to float
<code>TextToFloat</code> ( <a href="#">1306</a> )	Convert null-terminated string to float

### 38.3 Date/time routines

Functions for date and time handling.

Table 38.2:

Name	Description
<code>DateTimeToFileDate</code> (1220)	Convert <code>DateTime</code> type to file date
<code>DateTimeToStr</code> (1221)	Construct string representation of <code>DateTime</code>
<code>DateTimeToString</code> (1221)	Construct string representation of <code>DateTime</code>
<code>DateTimeToSystemTime</code> (1222)	Convert <code>DateTime</code> to system time
<code>DateTimeToTimeStamp</code> (1223)	Convert <code>DateTime</code> to timestamp
<code>DateToStr</code> (1223)	Construct string representation of date
<code>Date</code> (1220)	Get current date
<code>DayOfWeek</code> (1224)	Get day of week
<code>DecodeDate</code> (1224)	Decode <code>DateTime</code> to year month and day
<code>DecodeTime</code> (1225)	Decode <code>DateTime</code> to hours, minutes and seconds
<code>EncodeDate</code> (1229)	Encode year, day and month to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>EncodeTime</code> (1229)	Encode hours, minutes and seconds to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>FormatDateTime</code> (1260)	Return string representation of <code>DateTime</code>
<code>IncMonth</code> (1269)	Add 1 to month
<code>IsLeapYear</code> (1272)	Determine if year is leap year
<code>MSecsToTimeStamp</code> (1275)	Convert nr of milliseconds to timestamp
<code>Now</code> (1276)	Get current date and time
<code>StrToDateTime</code> (1298)	Convert string to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>StrToDate</code> (1297)	Convert string to date
<code>StrToTime</code> (1303)	Convert string to time
<code>SystemTimeToDateTime</code> (1305)	Convert system time to datetime
<code>TimeStampToDateTime</code> (1307)	Convert time stamp to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>TimeStampToMSecs</code> (1308)	Convert <code>TimeStamp</code> to number of milliseconds
<code>TimeToStr</code> (1308)	return string representation of <code>Time</code>
<code>Time</code> (1307)	Get current tyme

### 38.4 FileName handling routines

Functions for file manipulation.

### 38.5 File input/output routines

Functions for reading/writing to file.

### 38.6 PChar related functions

Most `PChar` functions are the same as their counterparts in the `STRINGS` unit. The following functions are the same :

1. `StrCat` (1284) : Concatenates two `PChar` strings.

Table 38.3:

Name	Description
AddDisk (1197)	Add sisk to list of disk drives
ChangeFileExt (1214)	Change extension of file name
CreateDir (1218)	Create a directory
DeleteFile (1225)	Delete a file
DiskFree (1226)	Free space on disk
DiskSize (1227)	Total size of disk
ExpandFileName (1232)	Create full file name
ExpandUNCFileName (1233)	Create full UNC file name
ExtractFileDir (1233)	Extract drive and directory part of filename
ExtractFileDrive (1234)	Extract drive part of filename
ExtractFileExt (1234)	Extract extension part of filename
ExtractFileName (1235)	Extract name part of filename
ExtractFilePath (1235)	Extrct path part of filename
ExtractRelativePath (1235)	Construct relative path between two files
FileAge (1236)	Return file age
FileDateToDateTime (1238)	Convert file date to system date
FileExists (1239)	Determine whether a file exists on disk
FileGetAttr (1239)	Get attributes of file
FileGetDate (1240)	Get date of last file modification
FileSearch (1243)	Search for file in path
FileSetAttr (1244)	Get file attributes
FileSetDate (1244)	Get file dates
FindFirst (1246)	Start finding a file
FindNext (1247)	Find next file
GetCurrentDir (1263)	Return current working directory
RemoveDir (1278)	Remove a directory from disk
RenameFile (1278)	Rename a file on disk
SetCurrentDir (1281)	Set current working directory
SetDirSeparators (1281)	Set directory separator characters
FindClose (1245)	Stop searching a file
DoDirSeparators (1228)	Replace directory separator characters

2. StrComp (1284) : Compares two PChar strings.
3. StrCopy (1285) : Copies a PChar string.
4. StrECopy (1286) : Copies a PChar string and returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
5. StrEnd (1286) : Returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
6. StrIComp (1287) : Case insensitive compare of 2 PChar strings.
7. StrLCat (1289) : Appends at most L characters from one PChar to another PChar.
8. StrLComp (1289) : Case sensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
9. StrLCopy (1290) : Copies at most L characters from one PChar to another.
10. StrLen (1291) : Returns the length (exclusive terminating null byte) of a PChar string.
11. StrLIComp (1292) : Case insensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
12. StrLower (1292) : Converts a PChar to all lowercase letters.

Table 38.4:

Name	Description
FileCreate (1237)	Create a file and return handle
FileOpen (1241)	Open file end return handle
FileRead (1242)	Read from file
FileSeek (1243)	Set file position
FileTruncate (1245)	Truncate file length
FileWrite (1245)	Write to file
FileClose (1237)	Close file handle

13. StrMove (1293) : Moves one PChar to another.
14. StrNew (1293) : Makes a copy of a PChar on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy.
15. StrPos (1295) : Returns the position of one PChar string in another?
16. StrRScan (1295) : returns a pointer to the last occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
17. StrScan (1296) : returns a pointer to the first occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
18. StrUpper (1304) : Converts a PChar to all uppercase letters.

The subsequent functions are different from their counterparts in STRINGS, although the same examples can be used.

## 38.7 Date and time formatting characters

Various date and time formatting routines accept a format string. to format the date and or time. The following characters can be used to control the date and time formatting:

**c** shortdateformat + ' ' + shorttimeformat

**d** day of month

**dd** day of month (leading zero)

**ddd** day of week (abbreviation)

**dddd** day of week (full)

**dddddd** shortdateformat

**ddddddd** longdateformat

**m** month

**mm** month (leading zero)

**mmm** month (abbreviation)

**mmmm** month (full)

**y** year (2 digits)

**yy** year (two digits)

**yyyy** year (with century)  
**h** hour  
**hh** hour (leading zero)  
**n** minute  
**nn** minute (leading zero)  
**s** second  
**ss** second (leading zero)  
**t** shorttimeformat  
**tt** longtimeformat  
**am/pm** use 12 hour clock and display am and pm accordingly  
**a/p** use 12 hour clock and display a and p accordingly  
**/** insert date separator  
**:** insert time separator  
**"xx"** literal text  
**'xx'** literal text  
**z** milliseconds

## 38.8 Formatting strings

Functions for formatting strings.

Table 38.5:

Name	Description
AdjustLineBreaks ( <a href="#">1197</a> )	Convert line breaks to line breaks for system
FormatBuf ( <a href="#">1259</a> )	Format a buffer
Format ( <a href="#">1254</a> )	Format arguments in string
FmtStr ( <a href="#">1253</a> )	Format buffer
QuotedStr ( <a href="#">1277</a> )	Quote a string
StrFmt ( <a href="#">1287</a> )	Format arguments in a string
StrLFmt ( <a href="#">1291</a> )	Format maximum L characters in a string
TrimLeft ( <a href="#">1309</a> )	Remove whitespace at the left of a string
TrimRight ( <a href="#">1310</a> )	Remove whitespace at the right of a string
Trim ( <a href="#">1309</a> )	Remove whitespace at both ends of a string

## 38.9 String functions

Functions for handling strings.

Table 38.6:

Name	Description
<a href="#">AnsiCompareStr (1198)</a>	Compare two strings
<a href="#">AnsiCompareText (1199)</a>	Compare two strings, case insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiExtractQuotedStr (1200)</a>	Removes quotes from string
<a href="#">AnsiLastChar (1201)</a>	Get last character of string
<a href="#">AnsiLowerCase (1202)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">AnsiQuotedStr (1203)</a>	Quotes a string
<a href="#">AnsiStrComp (1204)</a>	Compare strings case-sensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrIComp (1204)</a>	Compare strings case-insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLComp (1206)</a>	Compare L characters of strings case sensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLIComp (1207)</a>	Compare L characters of strings case insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLastChar (1205)</a>	Get last character of string
<a href="#">AnsiStrLower (1208)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">AnsiStrUpper (1209)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase
<a href="#">AnsiUpperCase (1210)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase
<a href="#">AppendStr (1211)</a>	Append 2 strings
<a href="#">AssignStr (1212)</a>	Assign value of strings on heap
<a href="#">CompareStr (1216)</a>	Compare two strings case sensitive
<a href="#">CompareText (1217)</a>	Compare two strings case insensitive
<a href="#">DisposeStr (1228)</a>	Remove string from heap
<a href="#">IsValidIdent (1273)</a>	Is string a valid pascal identifier
<a href="#">LastDelimiter (1274)</a>	Last occurrence of character in a string
<a href="#">LeftStr (1274)</a>	Get first N characters of a string
<a href="#">LoadStr (1275)</a>	Load string from resources
<a href="#">LowerCase (1275)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">NewStr (1276)</a>	Allocate new string on heap
<a href="#">RightStr (1279)</a>	Get last N characters of a string
<a href="#">StrAlloc (1282)</a>	Allocate memory for string
<a href="#">StrBufSize (1283)</a>	Reserve memory for a string
<a href="#">StrDispose (1285)</a>	Remove string from heap
<a href="#">StrPas (1294)</a>	Convert PChar to pascal string
<a href="#">StrPCopy (1294)</a>	Copy pascal string
<a href="#">StrPLCopy (1295)</a>	Copy N bytes of pascal string
<a href="#">UpperCase (1315)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase

## 38.10 Used units

## 38.11 Overview

This documentation describes the `sysutils` unit. The `sysutils` unit was started by Gertjan Schouten, and completed by Michael Van Canneyt. It aims to be compatible to the Delphi `sysutils` unit, but in contrast with the latter, it is designed to work on multiple platforms. It is implemented on all supported platforms.

Table 38.7: Used units by unit 'sysutils'

Name	Page
errors	<a href="#">1174</a>
sysconst	<a href="#">1174</a>
Unix	<a href="#">1174</a>
Unixtype	<a href="#">1174</a>

## 38.12 Constants, types and variables

### 38.12.1 Constants

`ConfigExtension` : `String` = `' .cfg'`

`ConfigExtension` is the default extension used by the `GetAppConfigFile` ([1263](#)) call. It can be set to any valid extension for the current OS.

`DateDelta` = 693594

Days between 1/1/0001 and 12/31/1899

`DriveDelim` = `DriveSeparator`

`DriveDelim` refers to the system unit's `DriveSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`EmptyStr` : `String` = `''`

Empty String Constant

`EmptyWideStr` : `WideString` = `''`

Empty wide string.

`faAnyFile` = `$00000003f`

Use this attribute in the `FindFirst` ([1246](#)) call to find all matching files.

`faArchive` = `$000000020`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file has the archive bit set. Used in `TSearchRec` ([1191](#)) and `FindFirst` ([1246](#))

`faDirectory` = `$000000010`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a directory. Used in `TSearchRec` ([1191](#)) and `FindFirst` ([1246](#))

`faHidden` = `$000000002`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in `TSearchRec` ([1191](#)) and `FindFirst` ([1246](#))

`faReadOnly = $00000001`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in `TSearchRec` (1191) and `FindFirst` (1246)

`faSymLink = $00000040`

`faSymLink` means the file (as returned e.g. by `FindFirst` (1246)/`FindNext` (1247)), is a symlink. It's ignored under Windows.

`faSysFile = $00000004`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a system file. Used in `TSearchRec` (1191) and `FindFirst` (1246)

`faVolumeId = $00000008`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file contains the volume ID. Used in `TSearchRec` (1191) and `FindFirst` (1246)

`feInvalidHandle : THandle = THandle ( - 1 )`

`feInvalidHandle` is the return value of `FileOpen` (1241) in case of an error.

`filerecnamelength = 255`

`filerecnamelength` describes the length of the `FileRec` (1187) filename field.

`fmOpenRead = $0000`

`fmOpenRead` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call to open a file in read-only mode.

`fmOpenReadWrite = $0002`

`fmOpenReadWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call to open a file in read-write mode.

`fmOpenWrite = $0001`

`fmOpenWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call to open a file in write-only mode.

`fmShareCompat = $0000`

`fmOpenShareCompat` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1181), `fmOpenRead` (1181) or `fmOpenWrite` (1181), to open a file in a sharing modus that is equivalent to sharing implemented in MS-DOS.

`fmShareDenyNone = $0040`

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1181), `fmOpenRead` (1181) or `fmOpenWrite` (1181), to open a file so other processes can read/write the file as well.

`fmShareDenyRead = $0030`

`fmOpenShareRead` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1181), `fmOpenRead` (1181) or `fmOpenWrite` (1181), to open a file so other processes cannot read from it.

This constant only works on Windows, because other operating systems do not support this constants.

```
fmShareDenyWrite = $0020
```

`fmOpenShareWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1181), `fmOpenRead` (1181) or `fmOpenWrite` (1181), to open a file so other processes cannot write to it, they can only read.

```
fmShareExclusive = $0010
```

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1241) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1181), `fmOpenRead` (1181) or `fmOpenWrite` (1181), to open a file exclusively.

```
fsFromBeginning = 0
```

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1243) call that a seek operation should be started at the start of the file.

```
fsFromCurrent = 1
```

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1243) call that a seek operation should be started at the current position in the file.

```
fsFromEnd = 2
```

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1243) call that a seek operation should be started at the last position in the file.

```
GUID_NULL : TGuid = '{00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000}'
```

**NULL GUID constant**

```
HexDisplayPrefix : String = '$'
```

`HexDisplayPrefix` is used by the formatting routines to indicate that the number which follows the prefix is in Hexadecimal notation.

```
HoursPerDay = 24
```

**Number of hours in a day.**

```
JulianEpoch = TDateTime ( - 2415018.5 )
```

**Starting point of the Julian calendar**

```
LeadBytes : Set of Char = []
```

`LeadBytes` contains the set of bytes that serve as lead byte in a MBCS string.

MaxCurrency : Currency = 922337203685477.0000

Maximum currency value

MaxDateTime : TDateTime = 2958465.99999

Maximum TDateTime value.

MAX\_PATH = MaxPathLen

MAX\_PATH is the maximum number of characters that a filename (including path) can contain on the current operating system.

MinCurrency : Currency = -922337203685477.0000

Minimum Currency value

MinDateTime : TDateTime = -693593.0

Minimum TDateTime value.

MinsPerDay = HoursPerDay \* MinsPerHour

Number of minutes per day.

MinsPerHour = 60

Number of minutes per hour.

MonthDays : Array[Boolean] of TDayTable = ( ( 31,28,31,30,31,30,31,31,30,31,30,31 )

Array with number of days in the months for leap and non-leap years.

MSecsPerDay = SecsPerDay \* MSecsPerSec

Number of milliseconds per day

MSecsPerSec = 1000

Number of milliseconds per second

NullStr : PString = @EmptyStr

Pointer to an empty string

PathDelim = DirectorySeparator

PathDelim refers to the system unit's DirectorySeparator constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

PathSep = PathSeparator

PathSep refers to the system unit's PathSeparator constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

pfBCB4Produced = \$08000000

Not used in Free Pascal.

pfDelphi4Produced = \$0C000000

Not used in Free Pascal.

pfDesignOnly = \$00000002

Package is a design-time only package

pfExeModule = \$00000000

Package is an executable

pfIgnoreDupUnits = \$00000008

Ignore duplicate units in package

pfLibraryModule = \$80000000

Package is a library

pfModuleTypeMask = \$C0000000

Mask for module type flags

pfNeverBuild = \$00000001

Never-build flag was specified when compiling package

pfPackageModule = \$40000000

Package is a real package (not exe)

pfProducerMask = \$0C000000

Mask for producer flags

pfProducerUndefined = \$04000000

Not used in Free Pascal.

pfRunOnly = \$00000004

Package is a run-time only package

pfV3Produced = \$00000000

Not used in Free Pascal.

`RTL_SIGBUS = 4`

Bus error signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGDEFAULT = -1`

Default signal handler (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGFPE = 1`

Floating Point Error signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGILL = 3`

Illegal instruction signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGINT = 0`

INTERRUPT signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGLAST = RTL_SIGQUIT`

Last signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGQUIT = 5`

QUIT signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGSEGV = 2`

Segmentation fault signal number (Unix only)

`SecsPerDay = MinsPerDay * SecsPerMin`

Number of seconds per day

`SecsPerMin = 60`

Number of seconds per minute

`SwitchChars = ['-']`

The characters in this set will be used by the `FindCmdLineSwitch` ([1246](#)) function to determine whether a command-line argument is a switch (an option) or a value. If the first character of an argument is in `SwitchChars`, it will be considered an option or switch.

`SysConfigDir : String = ''`

`SysConfigDir` is the default system configuration directory. It is set at application startup by the `sysutils` initialization routines.

This directory may be returned by the `GetAppConfigDir` ([1262](#)) call on some systems.

`TextRecBufSize = 256`

Buffer size of text file record.

`TextRecNameLength = 256`

Length of text file record filename field

`ufImplicitUnit = $10`

Unit was implicitly imported into package (did not appear in package contains list)

`ufMainUnit = $01`

Unit is the main unit of the package

`ufOrgWeakUnit = $08`

Unit is the original weak packaged unit

`ufPackageUnit = $02`

Unit is a packaged unit (appeared in package contains list)

`ufWeakPackageUnit = ufPackageUnit or ufWeakUnit`

Weak (original or not) packaged unit

`ufWeakUnit = $04`

Unit is a weak packaged unit

`UnixDateDelta = Trunc ( UnixEpoch )`

Number of days between 1.1.1900 and 1.1.1970

`UnixEpoch = JulianEpoch + TDateTime ( 2440587.5 )`

Starting point of the unix calendar (1/1/1970)

### 38.12.2 Types

`EHeapException = EHeapMemoryError`

`EHeapMemoryError` is raised when an error occurs in the heap management routines.

ExceptClass = Class of Exception

ExceptClass is a [Exception \(1324\)](#) class reference.

```
FileRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  RecSize : SizeInt;
  _private : Array[1..3*SizeOf(SizeInt)+5*SizeOf(pointer)] of Byte;
  UserData : Array[1..32] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..filerecnamelength] of Char;
end
```

FileRec describes a untyped file. This record is made available so it can be used to implement drivers for other than the normal file system file records.

```
Int64Rec = packed record
end
```

Int64Rec can be used to extract the parts of a Int64: the high and low cardinal, or a zero-based array of 4 words, or a zero based array of 8 bytes. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

```
LongRec = packed record
end
```

LongRec can be used to extract the parts of an long Integer: the high and low word, or the 4 separate bytes as a zero-based array of bytes. Note that the meaning of High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

```
PByteArray = ^TByteArray
```

Generic pointer to TByteArray ([1188](#)). Use to access memory regions as a byte array.

```
PDayTable = ^TDayTable
```

Pointer to TDayTable type.

```
PString = ^String
```

Pointer to a ansistring

```
PSysCharSet = ^TSysCharSet
```

Pointer to TSysCharSet ([1192](#)) type.

```
PWordarray = ^TWordArray
```

Generic pointer to TWordArray ([1192](#)). Use to access memory regions as a word array.

TByteArray = Array[0..32767] of Byte

TByteArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PByteArray (1187) type.

TCreateGUIDFunc = function(out GUID: TGUID) : Integer

TCreateGUIDFunc is the prototype for a GUID creation handler. On return, the GUID argument should contain a new (unique) GUID. The return value of the function should be zero for success, nonzero for failure.

TDayTable = Array[1..12] of Word

Array of day names.

TextBuf = Array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of Char

TextBuf is the type for the default buffer in TextRec (1188)

```
TextRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  bufsize : SizeInt;
  _private : SizeInt;
  bufpos : SizeInt;
  bufend : SizeInt;
  bufptr : ^TextBuf;
  openfunc : pointer;
  inoutfunc : pointer;
  flushfunc : pointer;
  closefunc : pointer;
  UserData : Array[1..32] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of Char;
  LineEnd : TLineEndStr;
  buffer : TextBuf;
end
```

TextRec describes a text file. This record is made available so it can be used to implement drivers for other than the normal file system file records.

To implement a driver, an Assign procedure must be implemented, which fills in the various fields of the record. Most notably, the callback functions must be filled in appropriately. After this, the normal file operations will handle all necessary calls to the various callbacks.

TFilename = String

TFileName is used in the TSearchRec (1191) definition.

TFileRec = FileRec

Alias for FileRec (1187) for Delphi compatibility.

Table 38.8: Enumeration values for type TFloatFormat

Value	Explanation
ffCurrency	Monetary format.
ffExponent	Scientific format.
ffFixed	Fixed point format.
ffGeneral	General number format.
ffNumber	Fixed point format with thousand separator

```
TFloatFormat = (ffGeneral, ffExponent, ffFixed, ffNumber, ffCurrency)
```

TFloatFormat is used to determine how a float value should be formatted in the FloatToText (1251) function.

```
TFloatRec = record
  Exponent : Integer;
  Negative : Boolean;
  Digits : Array[0..18] of Char;
end
```

TFloatRec is used to describe a floating point value by the FloatToDecimal (1248) function.

```
TFloatValue = (fvExtended, fvCurrency, fvSingle, fvReal, fvDouble, fvComp)
```

Table 38.9: Enumeration values for type TFloatValue

Value	Explanation
fvComp	Comp value
fvCurrency	Currency value
fvDouble	Double value
fvExtended	Extended value
fvReal	Real value
fvSingle	Single value

TFloatValue determines which kind of value should be returned in the (untyped) buffer used by the TextToFloat (1306) function.

```
TFormatSettings = record
  CurrencyFormat : Byte;
  NegCurrFormat : Byte;
  ThousandSeparator : Char;
  DecimalSeparator : Char;
  CurrencyDecimals : Byte;
  DateSeparator : Char;
  TimeSeparator : Char;
  ListSeparator : Char;
  CurrencyString : String;
  ShortDateFormat : String;
```

```

LongDateFormat : String;
TimeAMString : String;
TimePMString : String;
ShortTimeFormat : String;
LongTimeFormat : String;
ShortMonthNames : TMonthNameArray;
LongMonthNames : TMonthNameArray;
ShortDayNames : TWeekNameArray;
LongDayNames : TWeekNameArray;
TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow : Word;
end

```

TFormatSettings is a record that contains a copy of all variables which determine formatting in the various string formatting routines. It is used to pass local copies of these values to the various formatting routines in a thread-safe way.

```
TGetAppNameEvent = function : String
```

This callback type is used by the OnGetApplicationName (1194) to return an alternative application name.

```
TGetTempDirEvent = function(Global: Boolean) : String
```

Function prototype for OnGetTempDir (1194) handler.

```
TGetTempFileEvent = function(const Dir: String;const Prefix: String)
                        : String
```

Function prototype for OnGetTempFile (1195) handler.

```
TGetVendorNameEvent = function : String
```

TGetVendorNameEvent is the function prototype for the OnGetVendorName (1195) callback, used by the VendorName (1315) function.

```
THandle = System.THandle
```

THandle refers to the definition of THandle in the system unit, and is provided for backward compatibility only.

```
TIntegerSet = Set of
```

TIntegerSet is a generic integer subrange set definition whose size fits in a single integer.

```
TLineEndStr =
```

TLineEndStr is used in the TextRec (1188) record to indicate the end-of-line sequence for a text file.

```
TMbcsByteType = (mbSingleByte,mbLeadByte,mbTrailByte)
```

Table 38.10: Enumeration values for type TMbcsByteType

Value	Explanation
mbLeadByte	Uses lead-byte
mbSingleByte	Single bytes
mbTrailByte	Uses trailing byte

Type of multi-byte character set.

TMonthNameArray = Array[1..12] of String

TMonthNameArray is used in the month long and short name arrays.

TProcedure = procedure

TProcedure is a general definition of a procedural callback.

TReplaceFlags= Set of (rfReplaceAll, rfIgnoreCase)

TReplaceFlags determines the behaviour of the StringReplace (1288) function.

```
TSearchRec = record
    Time : LongInt;
    Size : Int64;
    Attr : LongInt;
    Name : TFilename;
    ExcludeAttr : LongInt;
    FindHandle : Pointer;
    Mode : TMode;
    PathOnly : AnsiString;
end
```

TSearchRec is a search handle description record. It is initialized by a call to FindFirst (1246) and can be used to do subsequent calls to FindNext (1247). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to FindClose (1245).

**Remark:** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. (PathOnly for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

TSignalState = (ssNotHooked, ssHooked, ssOverridden)

Table 38.11: Enumeration values for type TSignalState

Value	Explanation
ssHooked	A signal handler is set by the RTL code for the signal.
ssNotHooked	No signal handler is set for the signal.
ssOverridden	A signal handler was set for the signal by third-party code.

TSignalState indicates the state of a signal handler in a unix system for a particular signal.

```
TSysCharSet = Set of Char
```

Generic set of characters type.

```
TSysLocale = record
  DefaultLCID : Integer;
  PriLangID : Integer;
  SubLangID : Integer;
end
```

TSysLocale describes the current locale. If Fareast or MBCS is True, then the current locale uses a Multi-Byte Character Set. If MiddleEast or RightToLeft is True then words and sentences are read from right to left.

```
TTerminateProc = function : Boolean
```

TTerminateProc is the procedural type which should be used when adding exit procedures.

```
TTextRec = TextRec
```

Alias for TextRec (1188) for Delphi compatibility.

```
TTimeStamp = record
  Time : Integer;
  Date : Integer;
end
```

TTimeStamp contains a timestamp, with the date and time parts specified as separate TDateTime values.

```
TWeekNameArray = Array[1..7] of String
```

TWeekNameArray is used in the day long and short name arrays.

```
TWordArray = Array[0..16383] of Word
```

TWordArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PWordArray (1187) type.

```
WordRec = packed record
  Lo : Byte;
  Hi : Byte;
end
```

LongRec can be used to extract the parts of a word: the high and low byte. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

### 38.12.3 Variables

`CurrencyDecimals` : Byte

`CurrencyDecimals` is the number of decimals to be used when formatting a currency. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`CurrencyFormat` : Byte

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for positive currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`CurrencyString` : String

`CurrencyString` is the currency symbol for the current locale. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`DateSeparator` : Char

`DateSeparator` is the character used by various date/time conversion routines as the character that separates the day from the month and the month from the year in a date notation. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`DecimalSeparator` : Char

`DecimalSeparator` is used to display the decimal symbol in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`DefaultFormatSettings` : `TFormatSettings` = (`CurrencyFormat`:1;`NegCurrFormat`:5;`Thousand`

`DefaultFormatSettings` contains the default settings for all type of formatting constants. If no thread-specific values are specified when a formatting function is called, this record is used as a default.

All other formatting constants refer to the fields of this variable using absolute addressing.

`FalseBoolStrs` : Array of String

`FalseBoolStrs` contains the strings that will result in a `False` return value by `StrToBool` ([1296](#)).

`ListSeparator` : Char

`ListSeparator` is the character used in lists of values. It is locale dependent.

`LongDateFormat` : String

`LongDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a long format. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`LongDayNames` : `TWeekNameArray`

`LongDayNames` is an array with the full names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`LongMonthNames` : `TMonthNameArray`

`LongMonthNames` is an array with the full names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`LongTimeFormat` : `String`

`LongTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in full notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`NegCurrFormat` : `Byte`

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for negative currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`OnCreateGUID` : `TCreateGUIDFunc` = nil

`OnCreateGUID` can be set to point to a custom routine that creates GUID values. If set, the `CreateGUID` (1218) function will use it to obtain a GUID value. If it is not set, a default implementation using random values will be used to create the unique value. The function should return a valid GUID in the GUID parameter, and should return zero in case of success.

`OnGetApplicationName` : `TGetAppNameEvent`

By default, the configuration file routines `GetAppConfigDir` (1262) and `GetAppConfigFile` (1263) use a default application name to construct a directory or filename. This callback can be used to provide an alternative application name.

Since the result of this callback will be used to construct a filename, care should be taken that the returned name does not contain directory separator characters or characters that cannot appear in a filename.

`OnGetTempDir` : `TGetTempDirEvent`

`OnGetTempDir` can be used to provide custom behaviour for the `GetTempDir` (1267) function. Note that the returned name should have a trailing directory delimiter character.

`OnGetTempFile` : `TGetTempFileEvent`

`OnGetTempDir` can be used to provide custom behaviour for the `GetTempFileName` (1267) function. Note that the values for `Prefix` and `Dir` should be observed.

`OnGetVendorName` : `TGetVendorNameEvent`

`OnGetVendorName` is the callback used by the `VendorName` (1315) function. It should be set to a handler that returns the vendor of the application.

`OnShowException` : `procedure(Msg: ShortString)`

`OnShowException` is the callback that `ShowException` (1281) uses to display a message in a GUI application. For GUI applications, this variable should always be set. Note that no memory may be available when this callback is called, so the callback should already have all resources it needs, when the callback is set.

`ShortDateFormat` : `String`

`ShortDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a short format. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`ShortDayNames` : `TWeekNameArray`

`ShortDayNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`ShortMonthNames` : `TMonthNameArray`

`ShortMonthNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`ShortTimeFormat` : `String`

`ShortTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in a short notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`SysLocale` : `TSysLocale`

`SysLocale` is initialized by the initialization code of the `SysUtils` unit. For an explanation of the fields, see `TSysLocale` (1192)

`ThousandSeparator` : `Char`

`ThousandSeparator` is used to separate groups of thousands in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`TimeAMString` : `String`

`TimeAMString` is used to display the AM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`TimePMString` : `String`

`TimePMString` is used to display the PM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`TimeSeparator` : `Char`

`TimeSeparator` is used by the time formatting routines to separate the hours from the minutes and the minutes from the seconds. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`TrueBoolStrs` : `Array of String`

`TrueBoolStrs` contains the strings that will result in a `True` return value by `StrToBool` ([1296](#)).

`TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow` : `Word`

Window to determine what century 2 digit years are in.

## 38.13 Procedures and functions

### 38.13.1 AbandonSignalHandler

Synopsis: Abandon the signal handler

Declaration: `procedure AbandonSignalHandler(RtlSigNum: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AbandonSignalHandler` tells the system routines that they should not re-install the signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum` under any circumstances. Normally, signal handlers are re-set when they are called. If `AbandonSignalHandler` has been called for a signal that is handled by the system code, the signal will not be re-set again.

### 38.13.2 Abort

Synopsis: Abort program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Abort`

Visibility: default

Description: `Abort` raises an `EAbort` ([1319](#)) exception.

See also: `Abort` ([1196](#))

### 38.13.3 AddDisk

Synopsis: Add a disk to the list of known disks (Unix only)

Declaration: `function AddDisk(const path: String) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: On Unix-like platforms both the `DiskFree` ([1226](#)) and `DiskSize` ([1227](#)) functions need a file on the specified drive, since is required for the `statfs` system call.

These filenames are set in `drivestr[0..26]`, and the first 4 have been preset to :

**Disk 0** ' . ' default drive - hence current directory is used.

**Disk 1** ' /fd0/ . ' floppy drive 1.

**Disk 2** ' /fd1/ . ' floppy drive 2.

**Disk 3** ' / ' C: equivalent of DOS is the root partition.

Drives 4..26 can be set by your own applications with the `AddDisk` call.

The `AddDisk` call adds `Path` to the names of drive files, and returns the number of the disk that corresponds to this drive. If you add more than 21 drives, the count is wrapped to 4.

Errors: None.

See also: `DiskFree` ([1226](#)), `DiskSize` ([1227](#))

### 38.13.4 AddTerminateProc

Synopsis: Add a procedure to the exit chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddTerminateProc(TermProc: TTerminateProc)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddTerminateProc` adds `TermProc` to the list of exit procedures. When the program exits, the list of exit procedures is run over, and all procedures are called one by one, in the reverse order that they were added to the exit chain.

Errors: If no memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TTerminateProc` ([1192](#)), `CallTerminateProcs` ([1214](#))

### 38.13.5 AdjustLineBreaks

Synopsis: Convert possible line-endings to the currently valid line ending.

Declaration: `function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: String) : String`  
`function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: String; Style: TTextLineBreakStyle)`  
`: String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AdjustLineBreaks` will change all occurrences of `#13` and `#10` characters with the correct line-ending characters for the current platform. This is `#13#10` on Windows and Dos. On Unix-like platforms, this is `#10` and for Mac OS X it is `#13`.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareStr \(1198\)](#), [AnsiCompareText \(1199\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ This program demonstrates the AdjustLineBreaks function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const**

S = 'This is a string '#13'with embedded'#10'linefeed and'+  
#13'CR characters';

**Begin**

WriteLn ( AdjustLineBreaks(S));

**End.**

---

### 38.13.6 AnsiCompareFileName

Synopsis: Compare 2 filenames.

**Declaration:** function AnsiCompareFileName(const S1: String;const S2: String)  
: SizeInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiCompareFileName compares 2 filenames S1 and S2, and returns

< 0 if S1 < S2.

= 0 if S1 = S2.

> 0 if S1 > S2.

The function actually checks FileNameCaseSensitive and returns the result of AnsiCompareStr (1198) or AnsiCompareText (1199) depending on whether FileNameCaseSensitive is True or False

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareStr \(1198\)](#), [AnsiCompareText \(1199\)](#), [AnsiLowerCaseFileName \(1202\)](#)

### 38.13.7 AnsiCompareStr

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings, case sensitive, ignoring accents characters.

**Declaration:** function AnsiCompareStr(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Integer

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiCompareStr compares two strings and returns the following result:

< 0 if S1 < S2.

0 if S1 = S2.

> 0 if S1 > S2.

The comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareText` (1199), the comparison is case sensitive.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` (1197), `AnsiCompareText` (1199)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex49.pp

**Program** Example49;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=**AnsiCompareStr**(S1,S2);

**Write** ( '',S1,' is ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than '

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to '

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**WriteLn** ( '',S2,' ');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

### 38.13.8 AnsiCompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings, case insensitive, ignoring accents characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiCompareText(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiCompareText` compares two strings and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

the comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareStr` (1198), the comparison is case insensitive.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` (1197), `AnsiCompareText` (1199)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex50.pp

**Program** Example49;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareText function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=**AnsiCompareText**(S1,S2);

**Write** ( '',S1,' " is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( '',S2,' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

### 38.13.9 AnsiDequotedStr

Synopsis:

**Declaration:** `function AnsiDequotedStr(const S: String;AQuote: Char) : String`

  Visibility: default

**Description:**

  Errors:

### 38.13.10 AnsiExtractQuotedStr

Synopsis: Removes the first quoted string from a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiExtractQuotedStr(var Src: PChar; Quote: Char) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` returns the first quoted string in `Src`, and deletes the result from `Src`. The resulting string has with `Quote` characters removed from the beginning and end of the string (if they are present), and double `Quote` characters replaced by a single `Quote` characters. As such, it reverses the action of `AnsiQuotedStr` (1203).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiQuotedStr` (1203)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** Example51;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiQuotedStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S := 'He said "Hello" and walked on';

S := AnsiQuotedStr(Pchar(S), '"');

**WriteLn** (S);

**WriteLn** (AnsiExtractQuotedStr(Pchar(S), '" '));

**End.**

---

### 38.13.11 AnsiLastChar

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLastChar(const S: String) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function returns a pointer to the last character of S.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets. If none is installed, this function is the same as `@S[Length[S]]`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiStrLastChar` (1205)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLastChar function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

L : Longint;

**Begin**

---

```

S:= 'This is an ansistring.';
Writeln ( 'Last character of S is : ',AnsiLastChar(S));
L:= Longint( AnsiLastChar(S)) - Longint(@S[1])+1;
Writeln ( 'Length of S is : ',L);
End.

```

---

### 38.13.12 AnsiLowerCase

Synopsis: Return a lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiLowerCase(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLowerCase` converts the string `S` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1210](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1208](#)), `AnsiStrUpper` ([1209](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**

    Writeln (S, ' -> ',AnsiLowerCase(S))

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

    Testit('Some mixed STring');

    Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

---

### 38.13.13 AnsiLowerCaseFileName

Synopsis: Convert filename to lowercase.

Declaration: `function AnsiLowerCaseFileName(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` simply returns the result of

`AnsiLowerCase(S);`

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` ([1202](#)), `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1198](#)), `AnsiUpperCaseFileName` ([1210](#))

**38.13.14 AnsiPos**

Synopsis: Return Position of one anstring in another.

Declaration: `function AnsiPos(const substr: String;const s: String) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiPos` does the same as the standard `Pos` function.

See also: `AnsiStrPos` ([1208](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1209](#)), `AnsiStrRScan` ([1209](#))

**38.13.15 AnsiQuotedStr**

Synopsis: Return a quoted version of a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiQuotedStr(const S: String;Quote: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiQuotedString` quotes the string `S` and returns the result. This means that it puts the `Quote` character at both the beginning and end of the string and replaces any occurrence of `Quote` in `S` with 2 `Quote` characters. The action of `AnsiQuotedString` can be reversed by `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1200](#)).

For an example, see `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1200](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1200](#))

**38.13.16 AnsiSameStr**

Synopsis: Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case sensitive)

Declaration: `function AnsiSameStr(const s1: String;const s2: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareStr` ([1198](#)) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` ([1198](#)), `SameText` ([1280](#)), `AnsiSameText` ([1203](#))

**38.13.17 AnsiSameText**

Synopsis: Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

Declaration: `function AnsiSameText(const s1: String;const s2: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareText` ([1199](#)) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

Errors:

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1199](#)), `SameText` ([1280](#)), `AnsiSameStr` ([1203](#))

**38.13.18 AnsiStrComp**

Synopsis: Compare two null-terminated strings. Case sensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

`<0` if `S1 < S2`.

`0` if `S1 = S2`.

`>0` if `S1 > S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1199](#)), `AnsiCompareStr` ([1198](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** Example54;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1, S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=AnsiStrComp(S1,S2);

**Write** ( ' ', S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( ' ', S2, ' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ' );

**End.**

---

**38.13.19 AnsiStrlComp**

Synopsis: Compare two null-terminated strings. Case insensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrIComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrIComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

```
<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.
```

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1199](#)), `AnsiCompareStr` ([1198](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** Example55;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrIComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=AnsiStrIComp(S1,S2);

**Write** ( ' ',S1,' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**WriteLn** ( ' ',S2,' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ' );

**End.**

---

### 38.13.20 AnsiStrLastChar

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrLastChar(Str: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

Description: Return a pointer to the last character of the null-terminated string.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets. If none is installed, this function is the same as `@S[Length[S]]`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (1199), `AnsiCompareStr` (1198)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex56.pp

---

**Program** Example56;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=AnsiStrLComp(S1,S2,L);

**Write** ( 'First ',L, ' characters of "',S1,'" are ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than '

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to '

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**WriteIn** ( 'those of "',S2,'"');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string',255);

  Testit('One string','One String',4);

  Testit('One string','1 string',0);

  Testit('One string','One string.',9);

**End.**

---

### 38.13.21 AnsiStrLComp

Synopsis: Compare a limited number of characters of 2 strings

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrLComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar;MaxLen: cardinal) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiStrLComp` functions the same as `AnsiStrComp` (1204), but compares at most `MaxLen` characters. If the first `MaxLen` characters in both strings are the same, then zero is returned.

Note that this function processes embedded null characters, treating them as a normal character.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrComp` (1204), `AnsiStrIComp` (1204), `AnsiStrLComp` (1207)

**38.13.22 AnsiStrLIComp**

**Synopsis:** Compares a given number of characters of a string, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrLIComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar;MaxLen: cardinal) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrLIComp` compares the first `Maxlen` characters of 2 `PChar` strings, `S1` and `S2`, and returns the following result:

`<0` if `S1<S2`.

`0` if `S1=S2`.

`>0` if `S1>S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1199](#)), `AnsiCompareStr` ([1198](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLIComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=AnsiStrLIComp(S1,S2,L);

**Write** ( 'First ',L,' characters of "',S1,'" are ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than '

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to '

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**Writeln** ( 'those of "',S2,'"');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string',255);

  Testit('ONE STRING','one String',4);

  Testit('One string','1 STRING',0);

  Testit('One STRING','one string.',9);

**End.**

---

**38.13.23 AnsiStrLower**

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to all-lowercase characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrLower(Str: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrLower` converts the `PChar` `Str` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting `pchar`.

Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiLowerCase` (1202). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` (1209), `AnsiLowerCase` (1202)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLower function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : PChar);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' -> ', AnsiStrLower(S))

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

  Testit('Some mixed STring');

  Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

---

**38.13.24 AnsiStrPos**

**Synopsis:** Return position of one null-terminated substring in another

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrPos(str: PChar; substr: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrPos` returns a pointer to the first occurrence of `SubStr` in `Str`. If `SubStr` does not occur in `Str` then `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if either `Str` or `SubStr` point to invalid memory.

See also: `AnsiPos` (1203), `AnsiStrScan` (1209), `AnsiStrRScan` (1209)

**38.13.25 AnsiStrRScan**

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrRScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrPos` returns a pointer to the *last* occurrence of the character `Chr` in `Str`. If `Chr` does not occur in `Str` then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: An access violation may occur if `Str` points to invalid memory.

See also: `AnsiPos` ([1203](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1209](#)), `AnsiStrPos` ([1208](#))

**38.13.26 AnsiStrScan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrPos` returns a pointer to the *first* occurrence of the character `Chr` in `Str`. If `Chr` does not occur in `Str` then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: An access violation may occur if `Str` points to invalid memory.

See also: `AnsiPos` ([1203](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1209](#)), `AnsiStrPos` ([1208](#))

**38.13.27 AnsiStrUpper**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to all-uppercase characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrUpper(Str: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrUpper` converts the `PCharStr` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiUpperCase` ([1210](#)). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1210](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1208](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1202](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60;`

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrUpper function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `Testit (S : Pchar);`

---

```

begin
  WriteLn (S, ' -> ', AnsiStrUpper(S))
end;

Begin
  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');
  Testit('Some mixed STring');
  Testit('a lowercase string');
End.

```

---

### 38.13.28 AnsiUpperCase

Synopsis: Return an uppercase version of a string, taking into account special characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiUpperCase(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiUpperCase` converts the string `S` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` ([1209](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1208](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1202](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60`;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiUpperCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String)`;

```

begin
  WriteLn (S, ' -> ', AnsiUpperCase(S))
end;

```

```

Begin
  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');
  Testit('Some mixed STring');
  Testit('a lowercase string');
End.

```

---

### 38.13.29 AnsiUpperCaseFileName

Synopsis: Convert filename to uppercase.

Declaration: `function AnsiUpperCaseFileName(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiUpperCaseFileName` simply returns the result of

```
AnsiUpperCase(S);
```

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1210](#)), `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1198](#)), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` ([1202](#))

### 38.13.30 AppendStr

**Synopsis:** Append one ansistring to another.

**Declaration:** `procedure AppendStr(var Dest: String; const S: String)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AppendStr` appends `S` to `Dest`.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only, since it is completely equivalent to `Dest := Dest + S`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AssignStr` ([1212](#)), `NewStr` ([1276](#)), `DisposeStr` ([1228](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ This program demonstrates the AppendStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S := 'This is an ';

**AppendStr**(S, 'AnsiString');

**WriteLn** ('S = "', S, '"');

**End.**

---

### 38.13.31 ApplicationName

**Synopsis:** Return a default application name

**Declaration:** `function ApplicationName : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ApplicationName` returns the name of the current application. Standard this is equal to the result of `ParamStr(0)`, but it can be customized by setting the `OnGetApplicationName` ([1194](#)) callback.

Note that the returned value is only the name portion. It does not contain any path or file extension.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GetAppConfigDir` ([1262](#)), `OnGetApplicationName` ([1194](#)), `GetAppConfigFile` ([1263](#)), `ConfigExtension` ([1180](#))

**38.13.32 AssignStr**

Synopsis: Assigns an anstring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `procedure AssignStr(var P: PString; const S: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStr` allocates `S` to `P`. The old value of `P` is disposed of.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` ([1276](#)), `AppendStr` ([1211](#)), `DisposeStr` ([1228](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex63.pp`

---

**Program** Example63;

*{ This program demonstrates the AssignStr function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** P : PString;

**Begin**

P:=**NewStr**('A first AnsiString');  
**WriteLn** ('Before: P = "', P^, '"');  
**AssignStr**(P, 'A Second anstring');  
**WriteLn** ('After : P = "', P^, '"');  
**DisposeStr**(P);

**End.**

---

**38.13.33 BCDToInt**

Synopsis: Convert a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Declaration: `function BCDToInt(Value: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `BCDToInt` converts a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrToInt` ([1301](#)), `IntToStr` ([1271](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex64.pp`

---

**Program** Example64;

*{ This program demonstrates the BCDToInt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit ( L : longint);  
**begin**

---

```

    WriteLn (L, ' -> ',BCDToInt(L));
end;

Begin
    Testit(10);
    Testit(100);
    Testit(1000);
End.

```

---

### 38.13.34 Beep

Synopsis: Sound the system bell.

Declaration: `procedure Beep`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Beep` sounds the system bell, if one is available.

Errors: This routine may not be implemented on all platforms.

### 38.13.35 BoolToStr

Synopsis: Convert a boolean value to a string.

Declaration: `function BoolToStr(B: Boolean;UseBoolStrs: Boolean) : String`  
`function BoolToStr(B: Boolean;const TrueS: String;const FalseS: String)`  
`: String`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `BoolToStr` converts the boolean `B` to one of the strings `' TRUE '` or `' FALSE '`

Errors: None.

See also: `StrToBool` ([1296](#))

### 38.13.36 ByteToCharIndex

Synopsis: Convert a character index in Bytes to an Index in characters

Declaration: `function ByteToCharIndex(const S: String;Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ByteToCharIndex` returns the index (in characters) of the `Index`-th byte in `S`.

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `CharToByteLen` ([1215](#)), `ByteToCharLen` ([1214](#))

**38.13.37 ByteToCharLen**

Synopsis: Convert a length in bytes to a length in characters.

Declaration: `function ByteToCharLen(const S: String;MaxLen: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteToCharLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `CharToByteLen` ([1215](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1213](#))

**38.13.38 ByteType**

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in an ansistring for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: `function ByteType(const S: String;Index: Integer) : TMbcsByteType`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteType` returns the type of byte in the ansistring `S` at (1-based) position `Index`.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: `TMbcsByteType` ([1191](#)), `StrByteType` ([1283](#))

**38.13.39 CallTerminateProcs**

Synopsis: Call the exit chain procedures.

Declaration: `function CallTerminateProcs : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallTerminateProcs` is run on program exit. It executes all terminate procedures that were added to the exit chain with `AddTerminateProc` ([1197](#)), and does this in reverse order.

Errors: If one of the exit procedure raises an exception, it is *not* caught, and the remaining exit procedures will not be executed.

See also: `TTerminateProc` ([1192](#)), `AddTerminateProc` ([1197](#))

**38.13.40 ChangeFileExt**

Synopsis: Change the extension of a filename.

Declaration: `function ChangeFileExt(const FileName: String;const Extension: String)  
: String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeFileExt` changes the file extension in `FileName` to `Extension`. The extension `Extension` includes the starting `.` (dot). The previous extension of `FileName` are all characters after the last `.`, the `.` character included.

If `FileName` doesn't have an extension, `Extension` is just appended.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` ([1235](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1235](#)), `ExpandFileName` ([1232](#))

### 38.13.41 CharToByteLen

Synopsis: Convert a length in characters to a length in bytes.

Declaration: `function CharToByteLen(const S: String;MaxLen: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CharToByteLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `ByteToCharLen` ([1214](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1213](#))

### 38.13.42 CompareMem

Synopsis: Compare two memory areas.

Declaration: `function CompareMem(P1: Pointer;P2: Pointer;Length: cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMem` compares, byte by byte, 2 memory areas pointed to by `P1` and `P2`, for a length of `L` bytes.

It returns the following values:

<0 if at some position the byte at `P1` is less than the byte at the same position at `P2`.

0 if all `L` bytes are the same.

>0 if at some position the byte at `P1` is greater than the byte at the same position at `P2`.

Errors:

### 38.13.43 CompareMemRange

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory locations

Declaration: `function CompareMemRange(P1: Pointer;P2: Pointer;Length: cardinal)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMemRange` compares the 2 memory locations pointed to by `P1` and `P2` byte per byte. It stops comparing after `Length` bytes have been compared, or when it has encountered 2 different bytes. The result is then

>0 if a byte in range `P1` was found that is bigger than the corresponding byte in range `P2`.

0 if all bytes in range `P1` are the same as the corresponding bytes in range `P2`.

<0 if a byte in range `P1` was found that is less than the corresponding byte in range `P2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SameText` ([1280](#))



**38.13.45 CompareText**

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings case insensitive.

Declaration: `function CompareText (const S1: String; const S2: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareText compares two strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

```
<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.
```

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1199\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1198\)](#), [CompareStr \(1216\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CompareText function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

```
begin
  R:=CompareText(S1,S2);
  Write ( '',S1,' is ');
  If R<0 then
    write ( 'less than ')
  else If R=0 then
    Write ( 'equal to ')
  else
    Write ( 'larger than ');
  WriteLn ( '',S2,' ');
end;

Begin
  Testit('One string','One smaller string');
  Testit('One string','one string');
  Testit('One string','One string');
  Testit('One string','One tall string');
End.
```

---

**38.13.46 ComposeDateTime**

Synopsis: Add a date and time

Declaration: `function ComposeDateTime (Date: TDateTime; Time: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ComposeDateTime` correctly adds `Date` and `Time`, also for dates before 1899-12-31. For dates after this date, it is just the mathematical addition.

Errors: None.

See also: `EncodeDateTime` ([1174](#))

### 38.13.47 CreateDir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function CreateDir(const NewDir: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateDir` creates a new directory with name `NewDir`. If the directory doesn't contain an absolute path, then the directory is created below the current working directory.

The function returns `True` if the directory was successfully created, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of an error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `RemoveDir` ([1278](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CreateDir and RemoveDir functions }
{ Run this program twice in the same directory }
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

```
  If Not DirectoryExists('NewDir') then
    If Not CreateDir('NewDir') Then
      Writeln('Failed to create directory !')
    else
      Writeln('Created "NewDir" directory')
  Else
    If Not RemoveDir('NewDir') Then
      Writeln('Failed to remove directory !')
    else
      Writeln('Removed "NewDir" directory');
```

**End.**

---

### 38.13.48 CreateGUID

Synopsis: Create a new GUID

Declaration: `function CreateGUID(out GUID: TGUID) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CreateGUID` can be called to create a new GUID (Globally Unique Identifier) value. The function returns the new GUID value in `GUID` and returns zero in case the GUID was created successfully. If no GUID was created, a nonzero error code is returned.

The default mechanism for creating a new GUID is system dependent. If operating system support is available, it is used. If none is available, a default implementation using random numbers is used.

The `OnCreateGUID` callback can be set to hook a custom mechanism behind the `CreateGUID` function. This can be used to let the GUID be created by an external GUID creation library.

**Errors:** On error, a nonzero return value is returned.

**See also:** `GUIDCase` ([1268](#)), `IsEqualGUID` ([1272](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1288](#)), `TryStringToGUID` ([1312](#)), `GUIDToString` ([1268](#))

### 38.13.49 CurrentYear

**Synopsis:** Return the current year

**Declaration:** `function CurrentYear : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CurrentYear` returns the current year as a 4-digit number.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Date` ([1220](#)), `Time` ([1307](#)), `Now` ([1276](#))

### 38.13.50 CurrToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a currency value to a string.

**Declaration:** `function CurrToStr(Value: Currency) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CurrToStr` will convert a currency value to a string with a maximum of 15 digits, and precision 2. Calling `CurrToStr` is equivalent to calling `FloatToStrF` ([1249](#)):

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffNumber, 15, 2);
```

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FloatToStrF` ([1249](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1297](#))

### 38.13.51 CurrToStrF

**Synopsis:** Format a currency to a string

```
function CurrToStrF(Value: Currency; Format: TFloatFormat;
                    Digits: Integer) : String
function CurrToStrF(Value: Currency; Format: TFloatFormat;
                    Digits: Integer;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CurrToStrF` formats the currency `Value` according to the value in `Format`, using the number of digits specified in `Digits`, and a precision of 19. This function simply calls `FloatToStrF` ([1249](#)).

**See also:** `FloatToStrF` ([1249](#))

### 38.13.52 Date

Synopsis: Return the current date.

Declaration: `function Date : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Date` returns the current date in `TDateTime` format.

Errors: None.

See also: `Time` ([1307](#)), `Now` ([1276](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1;`

*{ This program demonstrates the Date function }*

**uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `YY,MM,DD : Word;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Date : ',Date );`

`DeCodeDate ( Date,YY,MM,DD);`

`WriteLn ( format ( 'Date is (DD/MM/YY): %d/%d/%d ',[dd,mm,yy ]));`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.53 DateTimeToFileDate

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` value to a file age (integer)

Declaration: `function DateTimeToFileDate(DateTime: TDateTime) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToFileDate` function converts a date/time indication in `TDateTime` format to a file-date function, such as returned for instance by the `FileAge` ([1236](#)) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Time` ([1307](#)), `Date` ([1220](#)), `FileDateToDateTime` ([1238](#)), `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1222](#)), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1223](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToFileDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( 'FileTime of now would be: ',DateTimeToFileDate (Now));`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.54 DateTimeToStr

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a string using a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToStr` returns a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `LongDateTimeFormat`. It corresponds to a call to `FormatDateTime('c', DateTime)` (see [formatchars \(1177\)](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FormatDateTime` ([1260](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('Today is : ', DateTimeToStr(Now));`

`WriteLn ('Today is : ', FormatDateTime('c', Now));`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.55 DateTimeToString

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a string with a given format.

**Declaration:** `procedure DateTimeToString(out Result: String; const FormatStr: String;  
const DateTime: TDateTime)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToString` returns in `Result` a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `FormatStr`. for a list of characters that can be used in the `FormatStr` formatting string, see [formatchars \(1177\)](#).

**Errors:** In case a wrong formatting character is found, an `EConvertError` is raised.

**See also:** `FormatDateTime` ([1260](#)), [formatchars \(1177\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToString function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `today (Fmt : string);`

**Var** `S : AnsiString;`

---

```

begin
  DateTimeToString (S,Fmt,Date);
  Writeln (S);
end;

Procedure Now (Fmt : string);

Var S : AnsiString;

begin
  DateTimeToString (S,Fmt,Time);
  Writeln (S);
end;

Begin
  Today ('"Today is "dddd dd mmm y');
  Today ('"Today is "d mmm yy');
  Today ('"Today is "d/mmm/yy');
  Now (' 'The time is 'am/pmh:n:s');
  Now (' 'The time is 'hh:nn:ssam/pm');
  Now (' 'The time is 'tt');
End.

```

---

### 38.13.56 DateTimeToSystemTime

Synopsis: Converts a TDateTime value to a systmtime structure.

Declaration: `procedure DateTimeToSystemTime(DateTime: TDateTime;  
out SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToSystemTime` converts a date/time pair in `DateTime`, with `TDateTime` format to a system time `SystemTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToFileDate` ([1220](#)), `SystemTimeToDateTime` ([1305](#)), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1223](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToSystemTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**

DateTimeToSystemTime(Now,ST);

With St do

begin

Writeln ('Today is ',year,'/',month,'/',Day);

Writeln ('The time is ',Hour,':',minute,':',Second,'.',',MilliSecond);

end;

**End.**

---

**38.13.57 DateTimeToTimeStamp**

Synopsis: Converts a `TDateTime` value to a `TimeStamp` structure.

Declaration: `function DateTimeToTimeStamp(DateTime: TDateTime) : TTimeStamp`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToSystemTime` converts a date/time pair in `DateTime`, with `TDateTime` format to a `TTimeStamp` format.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToFileDate` ([1220](#)), `SystemTimeToDateTime` ([1305](#)), `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1222](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** TS : TTimeStamp;

**Begin**

TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (Now);

**With** TS **do**

**begin**

WriteLn ('Now is ',time,' millisecond past midnight');

WriteLn ('Today is ',Date,' days past 1/1/0001');

**end**;

**End.**

---

**38.13.58 DateToStr**

Synopsis: Converts a `TDateTime` value to a date string with a predefined format.

Declaration: `function DateToStr(Date: TDateTime) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateToStr` converts `Date` to a string representation. It uses `ShortDateFormat` as it's formatting string. It is hence completely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('dddd', Date)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TimeToStr` ([1308](#)), `DateTimeToStr` ([1221](#)), `FormatDateTime` ([1260](#)), `StrToDate` ([1297](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

WriteLn (Format ('Today is: %s',[DateToStr (Date)]));

**End.**

---

**38.13.59 DayOfWeek**

Synopsis: Returns the day of the week.

Declaration: `function DayOfWeek (DateTime: TDateTime) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfWeek` returns the day of the week from `DateTime`. Sunday is counted as day 1, Saturday is counted as day 7. The result of `DayOfWeek` can serve as an index to the `LongDayNames` constant array, to retrieve the name of the day.

Errors: None.

See also: `Date` ([1220](#)), `DateToStr` ([1223](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Today 's day is ',LongDayNames[DayOfWeek ( Date )]);`  
**End.**

---

**38.13.60 DecodeDate**

Synopsis: Decode a `TDateTime` to a year,month,day triplet

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDate (Date: TDateTime;out Year: Word;out Month: Word;  
out Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDate` decodes the Year, Month and Day stored in `Date`, and returns them in the Year, Month and Day variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1229](#)), `DecodeTime` ([1225](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `Example9;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `YY,MM,DD : Word;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDate ( Date ,YY,MM,DD);`  
`WriteLn ( Format ( 'Today is %d/%d/%d' ,[dd,mm,yy ]));`  
**End.**

---

### 38.13.61 DecodeDateFully

Synopsis: Decode a date with additional date of the week.

Declaration: `function DecodeDateFully(const DateTime: TDateTime; out Year: Word;  
out Month: Word; out Day: Word; out DOW: Word)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDateFully`, like `DecodeDate` (1224), decodes `DateTime` in its parts and returns these in `Year`, `Month`, `Day` but in addition returns the day of the week in `DOW`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EncodeDate` (1229), `TryEncodeDate` (1311), `DecodeDate` (1224)

### 38.13.62 DecodeTime

Synopsis: Decode a `TDateTime` to a hour,minute,second,millisecond quartet

Declaration: `procedure DecodeTime(Time: TDateTime; out Hour: Word; out Minute: Word;  
out Second: Word; out MilliSecond: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDate` decodes the hours, minutes, second and milliseconds stored in `Time`, and returns them in the `Hour`, `Minute` and `Second` and `MilliSecond` variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `EncodeTime` (1229), `DecodeDate` (1224)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** HH,MM,SS,MS: Word;

**Begin**

`DecodeTime( Time, HH, MM, SS, MS );`

`WriteLn ( format( 'The time is %d:%d:%d.%d' , [ hh, mm, ss, ms ] ) );`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.63 DeleteFile

Synopsis: Delete a file from the filesystem.

Declaration: `function DeleteFile(const FileName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeleteFile` deletes file `FileName` from disk. The function returns `True` if the file was successfully removed, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `FileCreate` ([1237](#)), `FileExists` ([1239](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `Example31`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DeleteFile function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var**

`Line` : **String**;  
  `F, I` : **Longint**;

**Begin**

`F := FileCreate('test.txt');`  
  `Line := 'Some string line.'#10;`  
  **For** `I := 1 to 10 do`  
    `FileWrite (F, Line[I], Length(Line));`  
  `FileClose(F);`  
  `DeleteFile('test.txt');`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.64 DirectoryExists

Synopsis: Check whether a directory exists in the file system.

Declaration: `function DirectoryExists(const Directory: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `DirectoryExists` checks whether `Directory` exists in the filesystem and is actually a directory. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1239](#))

### 38.13.65 DiskFree

Synopsis: Return the amount of free disk space

Declaration: `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `DiskFree` returns the free space (in bytes) on disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

**0**for the current drive.

**1**for the first floppy drive.

**2**for the second floppy drive.

**3**for the first hard-disk partition.

**4-26**for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark:** Under Linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the filesystem is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` and `DiskSize` (1227) functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (1197).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskSize` (1227), `AddDisk` (1197)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ This program demonstrates the DiskFree function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```
Write ( 'Size of current disk      : ', DiskSize(0));
WriteIn ( ' (= ', DiskSize(0) div 1024, 'k) ');
Write ( 'Free space of current disk : ', Diskfree(0));
WriteIn ( ' (= ', Diskfree(0) div 1024, 'k) ');
End.
```

---

### 38.13.66 DiskSize

Synopsis: Return the total amount of disk space.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the size (in bytes) of disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0** for the current drive.
- 1** for the first floppy drive.
- 2** for the second floppy drive.
- 3** for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26** for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark:** Under Linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the filesystem is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` (1226) and `DiskSize` functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (1197)

For an example, see `DiskFree` (1226).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskFree` (1226), `AddDisk` (1197)

### 38.13.67 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose an anstring from the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(S: PString); Overload`  
`procedure DisposeStr(S: PShortString); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes the dynamically allocated string `S` from the heap, and releases the occupied memory.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

For an example, see `DisposeStr` (1228).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (1276), `AppendStr` (1211), `AssignStr` (1212)

### 38.13.68 DoDirSeparators

Synopsis: Convert known directory separators to the current directory separator.

Declaration: `procedure DoDirSeparators(var FileName: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: This function replaces all known directory separators in `FileName` to the directory separator character for the current system. The list of known separators is specified in the `DirSeparators` (1174) constant.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** `Example32`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DoDirSeparators function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit (F : String)`;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Before : ', F );

`DoDirSeparators` ( F );

**WriteLn** ( 'After : ', F );

**end**;

**Begin**

`Testit` ( `GetCurrentDir` );

`Testit` ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32' );

`Testit` ( '/usr/lib/fpc' );

`Testit` ( '\usr\lib\fpc' );

**End.**

---

### 38.13.69 EncodeDate

Synopsis: Encode a Year,Month,Day to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function EncodeDate(Year: Word;Month: Word;Day: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeDate` encodes the Year, Month and Day variables to a date in TDateTime format. It does the opposite of the `DecodeDate` (1224) procedure.

The parameters must lie withing valid ranges (boundaries included):

**Year** must be between 1 and 9999.

**Month** must be within the range 1-12.

**Days** must be between 1 and 31.

Errors: In case one of the parameters is out of it's valid range, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

See also: `EncodeTime` (1229), `DecodeDate` (1224)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Var** YY,MM,DD : Word ;

**Begin**

**DecodeDate** ( Date ,YY,MM,DD) ;

**WriteLn** ( 'Today is : ',**FormatDateTime** ( 'dd mmmm yyyy ',**EnCodeDate**(YY,Mm,Dd))) ;

**End.**

---

### 38.13.70 EncodeTime

Synopsis: Encode a Hour,Min,Sec,millisecond to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function EncodeTime(Hour: Word;Minute: Word;Second: Word; MilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeTime` encodes the Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond variables to a TDateTime format result. It does the opposite of the `DecodeTime` (1225) procedure.

The parameters must have a valid range (boundaries included):

**Hour** must be between 0 and 23.

**Minute,second** must both be between 0 and 59.

**Millisecond** must be between 0 and 999.

Errors: In case one of the parameters is out of it's valid range, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

See also: `EncodeDate` (1229), `DecodeTime` (1225)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex12.pp

**Program** Example12;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** Hh,MM,SS,MS : Word;

**Begin**

**DeCodeTime** ( **Time**, Hh,MM,SS,MS );

**WriteIn** ( 'Present Time is : ', **FormatDateTime** ( 'hh:mm:ss ', **EnCodeTime** ( Hh,MM,SS,MS ) ) );

**End.**

### 38.13.71 ExceptAddr

Synopsis: Current exception address.

Declaration: `function ExceptAddr : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptAddr` returns the address from the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

See also: `ExceptObject` ([1231](#)), `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1231](#)), `ShowException` ([1281](#))

### 38.13.72 ExceptFrameCount

Synopsis: Number of frames included in an exception backtrace

Declaration: `function ExceptFrameCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptFrameCount` returns the number of frames that are included in an exception stack frame backtrace. The function returns 0 if there is currently no exception being handled. (i.e. it only makes sense to call this function in an `finally..end` or `except..end` block.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExceptFrames` ([1230](#)), `ExceptAddr` ([1230](#)), `ExceptObject` ([1231](#)), `ExceptProc` ([1174](#))

### 38.13.73 ExceptFrames

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ExceptFrames : PPointer`

Visibility: default

Description:

Errors:

See also: `ExceptFrameCount` ([1230](#)), `ExceptAddr` ([1230](#)), `ExceptObject` ([1231](#)), `ExceptProc` ([1174](#))

**38.13.74 ExceptionErrorMessage**

Synopsis: Return a message describing the exception.

Declaration: `function ExceptionErrorMessage(ExceptObject: TObject;  
 ExceptAddr: Pointer; Buffer: PChar;  
 Size: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptionErrorMessage` creates a string that describes the exception object `ExceptObject` at address `ExceptAddr`. It can be used to display exception messages. The string will be stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer`, and will at most have `Size` characters.

The routine checks whether `ExceptObject` is a `Exception` (1324) object or not, and adapts the output accordingly.

See also: `ExceptObject` (1231), `ExceptAddr` (1230), `ShowException` (1281)

**38.13.75 ExceptObject**

Synopsis: Current Exception object.

Declaration: `function ExceptObject : TObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptObject` returns the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

Errors: If there is no exception, the function returns `Nil`

See also: `ExceptAddr` (1230), `ExceptionErrorMessage` (1231), `ShowException` (1281)

**38.13.76 ExcludeTrailingBackslash**

Synopsis: Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: `function ExcludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1231) instead.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1269), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1231), `PathDelim` (1183), `IsPathDelimiter` (1273)

**38.13.77 ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter**

Synopsis: Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: `function ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` removes the trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1183)) from `Path` if it is present, and returns the result.

See also: `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` (1231), `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1269), `PathDelim` (1183), `IsPathDelimiter` (1273)

### 38.13.78 ExecuteProcess

Synopsis: Execute another process (program).

Declaration: `function ExecuteProcess(const Path: AnsiString;  
const ComLine: AnsiString) : Integer  
function ExecuteProcess(const Path: AnsiString;  
const ComLine: Array of AnsiString) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExecuteProcess` will execute the program in `Path`, passing it the arguments in `ComLine`. `ExecuteProcess` will then wait for the program to finish, and will return the exit code of the executed program. In case `ComLine` is a single string, it will be split out in an array of strings, taking into account common whitespace and quote rules.

Errors: In case the program could not be executed or an other error occurs, an `EOSError` (1322) exception will be raised.

See also: `EOSError` (1322)

### 38.13.79 ExeSearch

Synopsis: Search for an executable

Declaration: `function ExeSearch(const Name: String; const DirList: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExeSearch` searches for an executable `Name` in the list of directories `DirList` (a list of directories, separator by `PathSeparator` (981)). If the current OS also searches implicitly in the current working directory, the current directory is searched in the first place.

If the executable is found, then the full path of the executable is returned. If it is not found, an empty string is returned.

No check is performed whether the found file is actually executable.

See also: `FileSearch` (1243)

### 38.13.80 ExpandFileName

Synopsis: Expand a relative filename to an absolute filename.

Declaration: `function ExpandFileName(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExpandFileName` expands the filename to an absolute filename. It changes all directory separator characters to the one appropriate for the system first.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

Listing: `./sysutex/ex33.pp`

---

```

Program Example33;

{ This program demonstrates the ExpandFileName function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure Testit (F : String);

begin
    WriteLn (F, ' expands to : ', ExpandFileName(F));
end;

Begin
    Testit('ex33.pp');
    Testit(ParamStr(0));
    Testit('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386');
    Testit('\\pp\\bin\\win32\\ppc386');
    Testit('.');
End.

```

---

### 38.13.81 ExpandUNCFileName

Synopsis: Expand a relative filename to an absolute UNC filename.

Declaration: `function ExpandUNCFileName(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExpandUNCFileName` runs `ExpandFileName` (1232) on `FileName` and then attempts to replace the driveletter by the name of a shared disk.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

### 38.13.82 ExtractFileDir

Synopsis: Extract the drive and directory part of a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDir(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDir` returns only the directory part of `FileName`, including a driveletter. The directory name has NO ending directory separator, in difference with `ExtractFilePath` (1235).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex34.pp

---

**Program** Example34;

```
{ This program demonstrates the ExtractFileName function }
{$H+}
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Procedure Testit(F : String);
```

```
begin
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'FileName      : ',F);
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'Has Name     : ',ExtractFileName(F));
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'Has Path    : ',ExtractFilePath(F));
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'Has Extension : ',ExtractFileExt(F));
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'Has Directory : ',ExtractFileDir(F));
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'Has Drive    : ',ExtractFileDrive(F));
```

```
end;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Testit (Paramstr(0));
```

```
  Testit ( '/usr/local/bin/mysqld' );
```

```
  Testit ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386.exe' );
```

```
  Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386.exe' );
```

```
End.
```

---

### 38.13.83 ExtractFileDrive

Synopsis: Extract the drive part from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDrive` extracts the drive letter from a filename. Note that some operating systems do not support drive letters.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1233).

Errors:

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

### 38.13.84 ExtractFileExt

Synopsis: Return the extension from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileExt` returns the extension (including the .(dot) character) of `FileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1233).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

### 38.13.85 ExtractFileName

Synopsis: Extract the filename part from a full path filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileName(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileName` returns the filename part from `FileName`. The filename consists of all characters after the last directory separator character ('/' or '\') or drive letter.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` (1235) and `ExtractFileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1233).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

### 38.13.86 ExtractFilePath

Synopsis: Extract the path from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFilePath` returns the path part (including driveletter) from `FileName`. The path consists of all characters before the last directory separator character ('/' or '\'), including the directory separator itself. In case there is only a drive letter, that will be returned.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` and `ExtractFileName` (1235).

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1233).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234), `ExtractRelativePath` (1235)

### 38.13.87 ExtractRelativepath

Synopsis: Extract a relative path from a filename, given a base directory.

Declaration: `function ExtractRelativepath(const BaseName: String;  
const DestName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractRelativePath` constructs a relative path to go from `BaseName` to `DestName`. If `DestName` is on another drive (Not on Unix-like platforms) then the whole `Destname` is returned.  
*Note:* This function does not exist in the Delphi unit.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1235), `ExtractFilePath` (1235), `ExtractFileDir` (1233), `ExtractFileDrive` (1234), `ExtractFileExt` (1234)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractRelativePath function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (FromDir, ToDir : **String**);

**begin**

**Write** ( 'From " ', FromDir, '" to " ', ToDir, '" via " ');

**WriteLn** ( ExtractRelativePath (FromDir, ToDir), '"');

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit ( '/pp/src/compiler', '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386' );

    Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386', '/pp/src/compiler' );

    Testit ( 'e:/pp/bin/win32/ppc386', 'd:/pp/src/compiler' );

    Testit ( 'e:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386', 'd:\pp\src\compiler' );

**End.**

---

### 38.13.88 ExtractShortPathName

Synopsis: Returns a 8.3 path name

**Declaration:** function ExtractShortPathName(const FileName: String) : String

Visibility: default

**Description:** ExtractShortPathName returns a 8.3 compliant filename that represents the same file as FileName. On platforms other than windows, this is FileName itself.

See also: ExtractFilePath ([1235](#)), ExtractFileName ([1235](#))

### 38.13.89 FileAge

Synopsis: Return the timestamp of a file.

**Declaration:** function FileAge(const FileName: String) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** FileAge returns the last modification time of file FileName. The FileDate format can be transformed to TDateTime format with the FileDateToDateTime ([1238](#)) function.

**Errors:** In case of errors, -1 is returned.

See also: FileDateToDateTime ([1238](#)), FileExists ([1239](#)), FileGetAttr ([1239](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileAge function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

---

```

Var S : TDateTime;
      fa : Longint;
Begin
  fa := FileAge( 'ex36.pp' );
  If Fa <> -1 then
    begin
      S := FileDateToDateTime( fa );
      Writeln ( 'I''m from ', DateTimeToStr(S) )
    end;
End.

```

---

### 38.13.90 FileClose

**Synopsis:** Close a file handle.

**Declaration:** `procedure FileClose(Handle: THandle)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileClose` closes the file handle `Handle`. After this call, attempting to read or write from the handle will result in an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` ([1237](#))

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FileCreate` ([1237](#)), `FileWrite` ([1245](#)), `FileOpen` ([1241](#)), `FileRead` ([1242](#)), `FileTruncate` ([1245](#)), `FileSeek` ([1243](#))

### 38.13.91 FileCreate

**Synopsis:** Create a new file and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:** `function FileCreate(const FileName: String) : THandle`  
`function FileCreate(const FileName: String; Mode: Integer) : THandle`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileCreate` creates a new file with name `FileName` on the disk and returns a file handle which can be used to read or write from the file with the `FileRead` ([1242](#)) and `FileWrite` ([1245](#)) functions.

If a file with name `FileName` already existed on the disk, it is overwritten.

The optional `Mode` parameter only has an effect under unix, where it can be used to set the mode (read, write, execute, sticky bit, setgid and setuid flags) of the created file to the specified custom value. On other platfors, the `Mode` parameter is ignored.

**Errors:** If an error occurs (e.g. disk full or non-existent path), the function returns `-1`.

**See also:** `FileClose` ([1237](#)), `FileWrite` ([1245](#)), `FileOpen` ([1241](#)), `FileRead` ([1242](#)), `FileTruncate` ([1245](#)), `FileSeek` ([1243](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** `Example37;`

*{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

---

```

Var I,J,F : Longint;

Begin
  F:= FileCreate ( 'test.dat' );
  If F=-1 then
    Halt (1);
  For I:=0 to 100 do
    FileWrite(F,I,SizeOf(i));
  FileClose(f);
  F:= FileOpen ( 'test.dat',fmOpenRead);
  For I:=0 to 100 do
    begin
      FileRead ( F,J,SizeOf(J));
      If J<>I then
        WriteLn ( 'Mismatch at file position ',I)
      end;
    FileSeek (F,0,fsFromBeginning);
    Randomize;
    Repeat
      FileSeek (F,Random(100)*4,fsFromBeginning);
      FileRead ( F,J,SizeOf(J));
      WriteLn ( 'Random read : ',J);
    Until J>80;
    FileClose(F);
    F:= FileOpen( 'test.dat',fmOpenWrite);
    I:=50*SizeOf(Longint);
    If FileTruncate(F,I) then
      WriteLn( 'Successfully truncated file to ',I,' bytes. ');
    FileClose(F);
End.

```

---

### 38.13.92 FileDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a FileDate value to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function FileDateToDateTime(Filedate: LongInt) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FileDateToDateTime converts the date/time encoded in filedate to a TDateTime encoded form. It can be used to convert date/time values returned by the FileAge ([1236](#)) or FindFirst ([1246](#))/FindNext ([1247](#)) functions to TDateTime form.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** DateTimeToFileDate ([1220](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileDateToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var**

    ThisAge : Longint;

---

```

Begin
  Write ( 'ex13.pp created on : ');
  ThisAge := FileAge ( 'ex13.pp' );
  WriteLn ( DateTimeToStr ( FileDateTime ( ThisAge ) ));
End.

```

---

### 38.13.93 FileExists

Synopsis: Check whether a file exists in the filesystem.

Declaration: `function FileExists(const FileName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileExists` returns `True` if a file with name `FileName` exists on the disk, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `FileAge` ([1236](#)), `FileGetAttr` ([1239](#)), `FileSetAttr` ([1244](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex38.pp`

---

```

Program Example38;

{ This program demonstrates the FileExists function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  If FileExists ( ParamStr (0)) Then
    WriteLn ( 'All is well, I seem to exist.' );
End.

```

---

### 38.13.94 FileGetAttr

Synopsis: Return attributes of a file.

Declaration: `function FileGetAttr(const FileName: String) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileGetAttr` returns the attribute settings of file `FileName`. The attribute is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**faReadOnly** The file is read-only.

**faHidden** The file is hidden. (On unix, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile** The file is a system file (On unix, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId** Volume Label. Not possible under unix.

**faDirectory** File is a directory.

**faArchive** file is an archive. Not possible on Unix

Errors: In case of error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileSetAttr` ([1244](#)), `FileAge` ([1236](#)), `FileGetDate` ([1240](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetAttr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (**Name** : **String**);

**Var** F : Longint;

**Begin**

  F := FileGetAttr (Name);

**If** F <> -1 **then**

**begin**

      WriteLn ( 'Testing : ', Name);

**If** (F and faReadOnly) <> 0 **then**

        WriteLn ( 'File is ReadOnly');

**If** (F and faHidden) <> 0 **then**

        WriteLn ( 'File is hidden');

**If** (F and faSysFile) <> 0 **then**

        WriteLn ( 'File is a system file');

**If** (F and faVolumeID) <> 0 **then**

        WriteLn ( 'File is a disk label');

**If** (F and faArchive) <> 0 **then**

        WriteLn ( 'File is artchive file');

**If** (F and faDirectory) <> 0 **then**

        WriteLn ( 'File is a directory');

**end**

**else**

    WriteLn ( 'Error reading attributes of ', Name);

**end**;

**begin**

    testit ( 'ex40.pp');

    testit ( ParamStr(0));

    testit ( '.');

    testit ( '/');

**End.**

---

### 38.13.95 FileGetDate

**Synopsis:** Return the file time of an opened file.

**Declaration:** function FileGetDate(Handle: THandle) : LongInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FileGetdate returns the filetype of the opened file with filehandle Handle. It is the same as FileAge (1236), with this difference that FileAge only needs the file name, while FilegetDate needs an open file handle.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** FileAge (1236)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** F,D : Longint;

**Begin**

  F:= FileCreate ( 'test.dat' );

  D:= **FileGetDate** (F);

**WriteLn** ( 'File created on ', **DateTimeToStr** ( **FileDateToDateTime** (D)));

**FileClose** (F);

**DeleteFile** ( 'test.dat' );

**End.**

---

### 38.13.96 FileIsReadOnly

Synopsis: Check whether a file is read-only.

Declaration: `function FileIsReadOnly(const FileName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileIsReadOnly` checks whether `FileName` exists in the filesystem and is a read-only file. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1239](#))

### 38.13.97 FileOpen

Synopsis: Open an existing file and return a filehandle

Declaration: `function FileOpen(const FileName: String; Mode: Integer) : THandle`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileOpen` opens a file with name `FileName` with mode `Mode`. `Mode` can be one of the following constants:

**fmOpenReadOnly** Open file in read-only mode

**fmOpenWriteOpen** Open file in write-only mode

**fmOpenReadWriteOpen** Open file in read/write mode.

Under Windows and Unix, the above mode can be or-ed with one of the following sharing/locking flags:

**fmShareCompatOpen** file in DOS share-compatibility mode

**fmShareExclusiveLock** file for exclusive use

**fmShareDenyWriteLock** file so other processes can only read.

**fmShareDenyReadLock** file so other processes cannot read.

**fmShareDenyNone** Do not lock file.

If the file has been successfully opened, it can be read from or written to (depending on the `Mode` parameter) with the `FileRead` (1242) and `FileWrite` functions.

**Remark:** Remark that you cannot open a file if it doesn't exist yet, i.e. it will not be created for you. If you want to create a new file, or overwrite an old one, use the `FileCreate` (1237) function.

There are some limitations to the sharing modes.

1. Sharing modes are only available on Unix and Windows platforms.
2. Unix only support sharing modes as of 2.4.0.
3. `fmShareDenyRead` only works under Windows at this time, and will always result in an error on Unix platforms because its file locking APIs do not support this concept.
4. File locking is advisory on Unix platforms. This means that the locks are only checked when a file is opened using a file locking mode. In other cases, existing locks are simply ignored. In particular, this means that `fmShareDenyNone` has no effect under Unix, because this can only be implemented as "use no locking" on those platforms. As a result, opening a file using this mode will always succeed under Unix as far as the locking is concerned, even if the file has already been opened using `fmShareExclusive`.
5. Under Solaris, closing a single file handle associated with a file will result in all locks on that file (even via other handles) being destroyed due to the behaviour of the underlying API (fcntl). Because of the same reason, on Solaris you cannot use `fmShareDenyWrite` in combination with `fmOpenWrite`, nor `fmShareExclusive` in combination with `fmOpenRead` although both work with `fmOpenReadWrite`.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1237)

**Errors:** On Error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fmOpenRead` (1181), `fmOpenWrite` (1181), `fmOpenReadWrite` (1181), `fmShareDenyWrite` (1182), `fmShareExclusive` (1182), `fmShareDenyRead` (1182), `fmShareDenyNone` (1181), `fmShareCompat` (1181), `FileClose` (1237), `FileWrite` (1245), `FileCreate` (1237), `FileRead` (1242), `FileTruncate` (1245), `FileSeek` (1243)

### 38.13.98 FileRead

**Synopsis:** Read data from a filehandle in a buffer.

**Declaration:** `function FileRead(Handle: THandle; var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileRead` reads `Count` bytes from file-handle `Handle` and stores them into `Buffer`. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes long. No checking on this is performed, so be careful not to overwrite any memory. `Handle` must be the result of a `FileOpen` (1241) call.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 on error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1237)

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` (1237), `FileWrite` (1245), `FileCreate` (1237), `FileOpen` (1241), `FileTruncate` (1245), `FileSeek` (1243)

**38.13.99 FileSearch**

Synopsis: Search for a file in a path.

Declaration: `function FileSearch(const Name: String;const DirList: String;  
ImplicitCurrentDir: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSearch` looks for the file `Name` in `DirList`, where `dirlist` is a list of directories, separated by semicolons or colons. It returns the full filename of the first match found.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ExpandFileName` ([1232](#)), `FindFirst` ([1246](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSearch function. }*

**Uses** `Sysutils`;

**Const**

```
{ $ifdef unix }
  FN = 'find';
  P = './bin:/usr/bin';
{ $else }
  FN = 'find.exe';
  P = 'c:\dos;c:\windows;c:\windows\system;c:\windows\system32';
{ $endif }
```

**begin**

```
  Writeln ('find is in : ',FileSearch (FN,P));
end.
```

---

**38.13.100 FileSeek**

Synopsis: Set the current file position on a file handle.

Declaration: `function FileSeek(Handle: THandle;FOffset: LongInt;Origin: LongInt)  
: LongInt`  
`function FileSeek(Handle: THandle;FOffset: Int64;Origin: LongInt)  
: Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSeek` sets the file pointer on position `Offset`, starting from `Origin`. `Origin` can be one of the following values:

**fsFromBeginning** `Offset` is relative to the first byte of the file. This position is zero-based. i.e. the first byte is at offset 0.

**fsFromCurrent** `Offset` is relative to the current position.

**fsFromEnd** `Offset` is relative to the end of the file. This means that `Offset` can only be zero or negative in this case.

If successful, the function returns the new file position, relative to the beginning of the file.

**Remark:** The abovementioned constants do not exist in Delphi.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [FileClose \(1237\)](#), [FileWrite \(1245\)](#), [FileCreate \(1237\)](#), [FileOpen \(1241\)](#), [FileRead \(1242\)](#), [FileTruncate \(1245\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileSetAttr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**If** FileSetAttr ( 'ex40.pp', faReadOnly **or** faHidden ) = 0 **then**  
         WriteLn ( 'Successfully made file hidden and read-only.' )

**else**

        WriteLn ( 'Couldn't make file hidden and read-only.' );

**End.**

---

### 38.13.101 FileSetAttr

Synopsis: Set the attributes of a file.

**Declaration:** function FileSetAttr(const Filename: String; Attr: LongInt) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** FileSetAttr sets the attributes of FileName to Attr. If the function was successful, 0 is returned, -1 otherwise. Attr can be set to an OR-ed combination of the pre-defined faXXX constants.

This function is not implemented on Unixes.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned (always on Unixes).

See also: [FileGetAttr \(1239\)](#), [FileGetDate \(1240\)](#), [FileSetDate \(1244\)](#)

### 38.13.102 FileSetDate

Synopsis: Set the date of a file.

**Declaration:** function FileSetDate(Handle: THandle; Age: LongInt) : LongInt

function FileSetDate(const FileName: String; Age: LongInt) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** FileSetDate sets the file date of the open file with handle Handle or to Age, where Age is a DOS date-and-time stamp value.

Alternatively, the filename may be specified with the FileName argument. This variant of the call is mandatory on unices, since there is no OS support for setting a file timestamp based on a handle. (the handle may not be a real file at all).

The function returns zero if successful.

Errors: On Unix, the handle variant always returns -1, since this is impossible to implement. On Windows and DOS, a negative error code is returned.

**38.13.103 FileTruncate**

Synopsis: Truncate an open file to a given size.

Declaration: `function FileTruncate(Handle: THandle; Size: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileTruncate` truncates the file with handle `Handle` to `Size` bytes. The file must have been opened for writing prior to this call. The function returns `True` is successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FileCreate` ([1237](#)).

Errors: On error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `FileClose` ([1237](#)), `FileWrite` ([1245](#)), `FileCreate` ([1237](#)), `FileOpen` ([1241](#)), `FileRead` ([1242](#)), `FileSeek` ([1243](#))

**38.13.104 FileWrite**

Synopsis: Write data from a buffer to a given filehandle.

Declaration: `function FileWrite(Handle: THandle; const Buffer; Count: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileWrite` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the file with handle `Handle`. Prior to this call, the file must have been opened for writing. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes large, or a memory access error may occur.

The function returns the number of bytes written, or -1 in case of an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` ([1237](#)).

Errors: In case of error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` ([1237](#)), `FileCreate` ([1237](#)), `FileOpen` ([1241](#)), `FileRead` ([1242](#)), `FileTruncate` ([1245](#)), `FileSeek` ([1243](#))

**38.13.105 FindClose**

Synopsis: Close a find handle

Declaration: `procedure FindClose(var F: TSearchRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindClose` ends a series of `FindFirst` ([1246](#))/`FindNext` ([1247](#)) calls, and frees any memory used by these calls. It is *absolutely* necessary to do this call, or huge memory losses may occur.

For an example, see `FindFirst` ([1246](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `FindFirst` ([1246](#)), `FindNext` ([1247](#))

### 38.13.106 FindCmdLineSwitch

**Synopsis:** Check whether a certain switch is present on the command-line.

**Declaration:**

```
function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: String;
                           const Chars: TSysCharSet; IgnoreCase: Boolean)
                           : Boolean
function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: String; IgnoreCase: Boolean)
                           : Boolean
function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: String) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindCmdLineSwitch` will check all command-line arguments for the presence of the option `Switch`. It will return `True` if it was found, `False` otherwise. Characters that appear in `Chars` (default is `SwitchChars` (1185)) are assumed to indicate an option (switch). If the parameter `IgnoreCase` is `True`, case will be ignored when looking for the switch. Default is to search case sensitive.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SwitchChars` (1185)

### 38.13.107 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start a file search and return a findhandle

**Declaration:**

```
function FindFirst(const Path: String; Attr: LongInt;
                  out Rslt: TSearchRec) : LongInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindFirst` looks for files that match the name (possibly with wildcards) in `Path` and extra attributes `Attr`. It then fills up the `Rslt` record with data gathered about the file. It returns 0 if a file matching the specified criteria is found, a nonzero value (-1 on Unix-like platforms) otherwise.

`Attr` is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**faReadOnly**The file is read-only.

**faHidden**The file is hidden. (On unix, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile**The file is a system file (On unix, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId**Drive volume Label. Not possible under unix.

**faDirectory**File is a directory.

**faArchive**file is an archive. Not possible on Unix

It is a common misconception that `Attr` specifies a set of attributes which must be matched in order for a file to be included in the list. This is not so: The value of `Attr` specifies *additional* attributes, this means that the returned files are either normal files or have an attribute which is present in `Attr`.

Specifically: specifying `faDirectory` as a value for `Attr` does not mean that only directories will be returned. Normal files *and* directories will be returned.

The `Rslt` record can be fed to subsequent calls to `FindNext`, in order to find other files matching the specifications.

**Remark:** A `FindFirst` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` (1245) call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

**Errors:** On error the function returns -1 on Unix-like platforms, a nonzero error code on Windows.

See also: FindClose ([1245](#)), FindNext ([1247](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindFirst function }*

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Var** Info : TSearchRec;  
Count : Longint;

**Begin**

Count:=0;

**If FindFirst** ( '\*',faAnyFile **and** faDirectory ,Info)=0 **then**

**begin**

**Repeat**

**Inc**(Count);

**With** Info **do**

**begin**

**If** ( Attr **and** faDirectory) = faDirectory **then**

**Write**('Dir : ');

**WriteLn** (Name:40,Size:15);

**end**;

**Until FindNext**(info)<>0;

**end**;

**FindClose**(Info);

**WriteLn** ( 'Finished search. Found ',Count, ' matches');

**End.**

---

### 38.13.108 FindNext

**Synopsis:** Find the next entry in a findhandle.

**Declaration:** function FindNext(var Rslt: TSearchRec) : LongInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FindNext finds a next occurrence of a search sequence initiated by FindFirst. If another record matching the criteria in Rslt is found, 0 is returned, a nonzero constant is returned otherwise.

**Remark:** The last FindNext call must *always* be followed by a FindClose call with the same Rslt record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

For an example, see FindFirst ([1246](#))

**Errors:** On error (no more file is found), a nonzero constant is returned.

See also: FindFirst ([1246](#)), FindClose ([1245](#))

### 38.13.109 FloattoCurr

**Synopsis:** Convert a float to a Currency value.

**Declaration:** function FloattoCurr(const Value: Extended) : Currency

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToCurr` converts the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` (1183) and `MaxCurrency` (1183)). If not, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

**Errors:** If `Value` is out of range, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

**See also:** `EConvertError` (1319), `TryFloatToCurr` (1311), `MinCurrency` (1183), `MaxCurrency` (1183)

### 38.13.110 FloatToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a float to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function FloatToDateTime(const Value: Extended) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToDateTime` converts the `Value` floating point value to a `TDateTime` value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of dates (determined by `MinDateTime` (1183) and `MaxDateTime` (1183)). If not, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

**Errors:** If `Value` is out of range, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

**See also:** `EConvertError` (1319), `MinDateTime` (1183), `MaxDateTime` (1183)

### 38.13.111 FloatToDecimal

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a `TFloatRec` value.

**Declaration:** `procedure FloatToDecimal(out Result: TFloatRec; const Value: Value  
Value: TFloatValue; Precision: Integer;  
Decimals: Integer)  
procedure FloatToDecimal(out Result: TFloatRec; Value: Extended;  
Precision: Integer; Decimals: Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToDecimal` converts the float `Value` to a float description in the `Result.TFloatRec` (1189) format. It will store `Precision` digits in the `Digits` field, of which at most `Decimal` decimals.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TFloatRec` (1189)

### 38.13.112 FloatToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a fixed format.

**Declaration:** `function FloatToStr(Value: Double) : String  
function FloatToStr(Value: Double; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)  
: String  
function FloatToStr(Value: Single) : String  
function FloatToStr(Value: Single; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)  
: String  
function FloatToStr(Value: Currency) : String`

```

function FloatToStr(Value: Currency;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String
function FloatToStr(Value: Comp) : String
function FloatToStr(Value: Comp;const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                    : String
function FloatToStr(Value: Int64) : String
function FloatToStr(Value: Int64;const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                    : String

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToStr` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation. It will choose the shortest possible notation of the two following formats:

**Fixed format** will represent the string in fixed notation,

**Decimal format** will represent the string in scientific notation.

More information on these formats can be found in `FloatToStrF` (1249). `FloatToStr` is completely equivalent to the following call:

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffGeneral, 15, 0);
```

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` (1249), `FormatFloat` (1261), `StrToFloat` (1299)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr** (Value));

**WriteLn** (-Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr** (-Value));

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit (0.0);

    Testit (1.1);

    Testit (1.1e-3);

    Testit (1.1e-20);

    Testit (1.1e-200);

    Testit (1.1e+3);

    Testit (1.1e+20);

    Testit (1.1e+200);

**End.**

---

### 38.13.113 FloatToStrF

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a given format.

**Declaration:**

```

function FloatToStrF(Value: Double;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Double;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Single;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Single;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Comp;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Comp;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Currency;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Currency;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Int64;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer) : String
function FloatToStrF(Value: Int64;format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FloatToStrF converts the floating point number value to a string representation, according to the settings of the parameters Format, Precision and Digits.

The meaning of the Precision and Digits parameter depends on the Format parameter. The format is controlled mainly by the Format parameter. It can have one of the following values:

**ffcurrency**Money format. Value is converted to a string using the global variables CurrencyString, CurrencyFormat and NegCurrencyFormat. The Digits parameter specifies the number of digits following the decimal point and should be in the range -1 to 18. If Digits equals -1, CurrencyDecimals is assumed. The Precision parameter is ignored.

**ffExponent**Scientific format. Value is converted to a string using scientific notation: 1 digit before the decimal point, possibly preceded by a minus sign if Value is negative. The number of digits after the decimal point is controlled by Precision and must lie in the range 0 to 15.

**ffFixed**Fixed point format. Value is converted to a string using fixed point notation. The result is composed of all digits of the integer part of Value, preceded by a minus sign if Value is negative. Following the integer part is DecimalSeparator and then the fractional part of Value, rounded off to Digits numbers. If the number is too large then the result will be in scientific notation.

**ffGeneral**General number format. The argument is converted to a string using ffExponent or ffFixed format, depending on which one gives the shortest string. There will be no trailing zeroes. If Value is less than 0.00001 or if the number of decimals left of the decimal point is larger than Precision then scientific notation is used, and Digits is the minimum number of digits in the exponent. Otherwise Digits is ignored.

**ffnumber**Is the same as ffFixed, except that thousand separators are inserted in the result string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [FloatToStr \(1248\)](#), [FloatToText \(1251\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex68.pp

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** Fmt : **Array** [TFloatFormat] **of** **string**[10] =  
     ('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**Var** I, J : longint;  
     FF : TFloatFormat;

**begin**  
     **For** I:=5 **to** 15 **do**  
         **For** J:=1 **to** 4 **do**  
             **For** FF:=ffgeneral **to** ffcurrency **do**  
                 **begin**  
                     **Write** (Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');  
                     **Writeln** (FloatToStrF(Value, FF, I, J));  
                     **Write** (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');  
                     **Writeln** (FloatToStrF(-Value, FF, I, J));  
                 **end**;  
     **end**;

**Begin**  
     Testit (1.1);  
     Testit (1.1E1);  
     Testit (1.1E-1);  
     Testit (1.1E5);  
     Testit (1.1E-5);  
     Testit (1.1E10);  
     Testit (1.1E-10);  
     Testit (1.1E15);  
     Testit (1.1E-15);  
     Testit (1.1E100);  
     Testit (1.1E-100);  
**End.**

### 38.13.114 FloatToText

**Synopsis:** Return a string representation of a float, with a given format.

**Declaration:** function FloatToText(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;  
     Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : LongInt  
     function FloatToText(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;  
     Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;  
     const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : LongInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FloatToText converts the floating point variable Value to a string representation and stores it in Buffer. The conversion is governed by format, Precision and Digits. more information

on these parameters can be found in `FloatToStrF` (1249). `Buffer` should point to enough space to hold the result. No checking on this is performed.

The result is the number of characters that was copied in `Buffer`.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1248), `FloatToStrF` (1249)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex69.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** Fmt : **Array** [TFloatFormat] **of** **string**[10] =  
     ('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**Var** I, J : longint;  
     FF : TFloatFormat;  
     S : ShortString;

**begin**

**For** I:=5 **to** 15 **do**

**For** J:=1 **to** 4 **do**

**For** FF:=ffgeneral **to** ffcurrency **do**

**begin**

**Write** (Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');

                    SetLength(S, **FloatToText** (@S[1], Value, FF, I, J));

**Writeln** (S);

**Write** (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');

                    SetLength(S, **FloatToText** (@S[1], -Value, FF, I, J));

**Writeln** (S);

**end**;

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit (1.1);

    Testit (1.1E1);

    Testit (1.1E-1);

    Testit (1.1E5);

    Testit (1.1E-5);

    Testit (1.1E10);

    Testit (1.1E-10);

    Testit (1.1E15);

    Testit (1.1E-15);

    Testit (1.1E100);

    Testit (1.1E-100);

**End.**

---

### 38.13.115 FloatToTextFmt

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a string using a given mask.

**Declaration:** `function FloatToTextFmt (Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar;  
   FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Integer  
 function FloatToTextFmt (Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar)  
   : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FloatToTextFmt` returns a textual representation of `Value` in the memory location pointed to by `Buffer`. it uses the formatting specification in `Format` to do this. The return value is the number of characters that were written in the buffer.

For a list of valid formatting characters, see `FormatFloat` ([1261](#))

**Errors:** No length checking is performed on the buffer. The buffer should point to enough memory to hold the complete string. If this is not the case, an access violation may occur.

See also: `FormatFloat` ([1261](#))

### 38.13.116 `FmtStr`

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments.

**Declaration:** `procedure FmtStr (var Res: String; const Fmt: String;  
   const args: Array of const)  
 procedure FmtStr (var Res: String; const Fmt: String;  
   const args: Array of const;  
   const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FmtStr` calls `Format` ([1254](#)) with `Fmt` and `Args` as arguments, and stores the result in `Res`. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see `Format` ([1254](#)).

**Errors:** In case of error, a `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `Format` ([1254](#)), `FormatBuf` ([1259](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FmtStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `S : AnsiString`;

**Begin**

`S := ''`;

`FmtStr` (`S`, 'For some nice examples of fomattig see %s.', [ 'Format' ] );

`WriteLn` (`S`);

**End.**

---

### 38.13.117 ForceDirectories

Synopsis: Create a chain of directories

Declaration: `function ForceDirectories(const Dir: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ForceDirectories` tries to create any missing directories in `Dir` till the whole path in `Dir` exists. It returns `True` if `Dir` already existed or was created successfully. If it failed to create any of the parts, `False` is returned.

### 38.13.118 Format

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments.

Declaration: `function Format(const Fmt: String; const Args: Array of const) : String`  
`function Format(const Fmt: String; const Args: Array of const;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Format` replaces all placeholders in `Fmt` with the arguments passed in `Args` and returns the resulting string. A placeholder looks as follows:

`'%' [[Index] ':' ] ['-' ] [Width] ['.' Precision] ArgType`

elements between single quotes must be typed as shown without the quotes, and elements between square brackets `[ ]` are optional. The meaning of the different elements is shown below:

`'%'` starts the placeholder. If you want to insert a literal `%` character, then you must insert two of them: `%%`.

**Index** `'` takes the `Index`-th element in the argument array as the element to insert. If `index` is omitted, then the zeroth argument is taken.

**'-** tells `Format` to left-align the inserted text. The default behaviour is to right-align inserted text. This can only take effect if the `Width` element is also specified.

**Width** the inserted string must have at least have `Width` characters. If not, the inserted string will be padded with spaces. By default, the string is left-padded, resulting in a right-aligned string. This behaviour can be changed by the `' - '` character.

**'.' Precision** Indicates the precision to be used when converting the argument. The exact meaning of this parameter depends on `ArgType`.

The `Index`, `Width` and `Precision` parameters can be replaced by `*`, in which case their value will be read from the next element in the `Args` array. This value must be an integer, or an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

The argument type is determined from `ArgType`. It can have one of the following values (case insensitive):

**D** Decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**E** Scientific format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a Floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using scientific notation, using `FloatToStrF` (1249), where the optional precision is used to specify the total number of decimals. (default a value of 15 is used). The exponent is formatted using maximally 3 digits.

In short, the `E` specifier formats its argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffexponent, Precision, 3)
```

**F**Fixed point format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string, using fixed notation (see `FloatToStrF` (1249)). `Precision` indicates the number of digits following the decimal point.

In short, the `F` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffFixed, ffixed, 9999, Precision)
```

**G**General number format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using fixed point notation or scientific notation, depending on which gives the shortest result. `Precision` is used to determine the number of digits after the decimal point.

In short, the `G` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffGeneral, Precision, 3)
```

**M**Currency format. the next argument in the `var{Args}` array must be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using currency notation. This means that fixed-point notation is used, but that the currency symbol is appended. If precision is specified, then then it overrides the `CurrencyDecimals` global variable used in the `FloatToStrF` (1249)

In short, the `M` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffCurrency, 9999, Precision)
```

**N**Number format. This is the same as fixed point format, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

**P**Pointer format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a pointer (typed or untyped). The pointer value is converted to a string of length 8, representing the hexadecimal value of the pointer.

**S**String format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a string. The argument is simply copied to the result string. If `Precision` is specified, then only `Precision` characters are copied to the result string.

**U**Unsigned decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an unsigned integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**X**hexadecimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be an integer. The argument is converted to a hexadecimal string with just enough characters to contain the value of the integer. If `Precision` is specified then the resulting hexadecimal representation will have at least `Precision` characters in it (with a maximum value of 32).

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConversionError` exception is raised. Possible errors are:

- 1.Errors in the format specifiers.
- 2.The next argument is not of the type needed by a specifier.
- 3.The number of arguments is not sufficient for all format specifiers.

See also: `FormatBuf` (1259)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex71.pp`

**Program** `example71 ;`

```
{ $mode objfpc }
```

```
{ This program demonstrates the Format function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Var P : Pointer;  
    fmt,S : string;
```

```
Procedure TestInteger;
```

```
begin  
  Try  
    Fmt:='[%d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%%]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    fmt:='[%.4d]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:-10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4d]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%-*.d]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
  except  
    On E : Exception do  
      begin  
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);  
      end;  
    end;  
    writeln ('Press enter');  
    readln;  
  end;
```

```
Procedure TestHexadecimal;
```

```
begin  
  try  
    Fmt:='[%x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%10.4x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:-10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4x]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
    Fmt:='[%-*.x]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);  
  except  
    On E : Exception do  
      begin  
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);  
      end;  
    end;  
    writeln ('Press enter');  
    readln;  
  end;
```

```
Procedure TestPointer;
```

```
begin
```

## CHAPTER 38. REFERENCE FOR UNIT 'SYSUTILS'

```

        end;
    end;
    writeln ('Press enter');
    readln;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestNegativeExponential;

```

begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '%e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%-*.*e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5, -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
    writeln ('Press enter');
    readln;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestSmallExponential;

```

begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '%e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%-*.*e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
    writeln ('Press enter');
    readln;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestSmallNegExponential;

```

begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '%e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    end;

```

```

    Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:= Format ( Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:= Format ( Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:= Format ( Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:= Format ( Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:= Format ( Fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:= Format ( fmt,[ -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:= Format ( fmt,[4,5, -0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ( 'Press enter ');
readln;
end;

begin
  TestInteger;
  TestHexadecimal;
  TestPointer;
  TestExponential;
  TestNegativeExponential;
  TestSmallExponential;
  TestSmallNegExponential;
  teststring;
end.

```

---

### 38.13.119 FormatBuf

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments and store the result in a buffer.

Declaration: `function FormatBuf(var Buffer;BufLen: Cardinal;const Fmt;
 fmtLen: Cardinal;const Args: Array of const)
 : Cardinal`

`function FormatBuf(var Buffer;BufLen: Cardinal;const Fmt;
 fmtLen: Cardinal;const Args: Array of const;
 const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatBuf` calls `Format` ([1254](#)) and stores the result in `Buf`.

See also: `Format` ([1254](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex72.pp`

---

**Program** Example72;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatBuf function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var**

S : ShortString;

**Const**

---

```
Fmt : ShortString = 'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.';
```

**Begin**

```
S:= '';
SetLength(S, FormatBuf (S[1], 255, Fmt[1], Length(Fmt), [ 'Format' ]));
WriteLn (S);
```

**End.****38.13.120 FormatCurr**

Synopsis: Format a currency

Declaration: `function FormatCurr(const Format: String; Value: Currency) : String`  
`function FormatCurr(const Format: String; Value: Currency;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatCurr` formats the currency `Value` according to the formatting rule in `Format`, and returns the resulting string.

For an explanation of the formatting characters, see `FormatFloat` (1261).

See also: `FormatFloat` (1261), `FloatToText` (1251)

**38.13.121 FormatDateTime**

Synopsis: Return a string representation of a `TDateTime` value with a given format.

Declaration: `function FormatDateTime(FormatStr: String; DateTime: TDateTime) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatDateTime` formats the date and time encoded in `DateTime` according to the formatting given in `FormatStr`. The complete list of formatting characters can be found in `formatchars` (1177).

Errors: On error (such as an invalid character in the formatting string), and `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `DateTimeToStr` (1221), `DateToStr` (1223), `TimeToStr` (1308), `StrToDateTime` (1298)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatDateTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `ThisMoment` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

```
ThisMoment:=Now;
WriteLn ( 'Now : ', FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn ', ThisMoment ));
WriteLn ( 'Now : ', FormatDateTime( 'DD MM YYYY', ThisMoment ));
WriteLn ( 'Now : ', FormatDateTime( 'c ', ThisMoment ));
```

**End.**

**38.13.122 FormatFloat**

**Synopsis:** Format a float according to a certain mask.

**Declaration:** `function FormatFloat(const Format: String; Value: Extended) : String`  
`function FormatFloat(const Format: String; Value: Extended;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FormatFloat` formats the floating-point value given by `Value` using the format specifications in `Format`. The format specifier can give format specifications for positive, negative or zero values (separated by a semicolon).

If the format specifier is empty or the value needs more than 18 digits to be correctly represented, the result is formatted with a call to `FloatToStrF` (1249) with the `ffGeneral` format option.

The following format specifiers are supported:

**0** is a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the 0. If not, the 0 is left as-is.

**#** is also a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the #. If not, it is removed. by a space.

**.** determines the location of the decimal point. Only the first '.' character is taken into account. If the value contains digits after the decimal point, then it is replaced by the value of the `DecimalSeparator` character.

**,** determines the use of the thousand separator character in the output string. If the format string contains one or more ',' characters, then thousand separators will be used. The `ThousandSeparator` character is used.

**E** determines the use of scientific notation. If 'E+' or 'E-' (or their lowercase counterparts) are present then scientific notation is used. The number of digits in the output string is determined by the number of 0 characters after the 'E+'.

**;** This character separates sections for positive, negative, and zero numbers in the format string.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, an exception is raised.

**See also:** `FloatToStr` (1248)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex89.pp`

**Program** `Example89`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatFloat function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Const**

```
NrFormat=9;
FormatStrings : Array[1..NrFormat] of string = (
    '',
    '0',
    '0.00',
    '#.##',
    '###0.00',
    '###0.00;(#,##0.00)',
    '###0.00;;Zero',
    '0.000E+00',
    '#####E-0');
```

---

```

NrValue = 5;
FormatValues : Array[1..NrValue] of Double =
    (1234,-1234,0.5,0,-0.5);

Width  = 12;
FWidth = 20;

Var
    I,J : Integer;
    S : String;

begin
    Write( 'Format':FWidth);
    For I:=1 to NrValue do
        Write(FormatValues[I]:Width:2);
    WriteLn;
    For I:=1 to NrFormat do
        begin
            Write(FormatStrings[I]:FWidth);
            For J:=1 to NrValue do
                begin
                    S:=FormatFloat(FormatStrings[I],FormatValues[J]);
                    Write(S:Width);
                end;
            WriteLn;
        end;
    End.

```

---

### 38.13.123 FreeAndNil

Synopsis: Free object if needed, and set object reference to Nil

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndNil(var obj)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeAndNil` will free the object in `Obj` and will set the reference in `Obj` to `Nil`. The reference is set to `Nil` first, so if an exception occurs in the destructor of the object, the reference will be `Nil` anyway.

Errors: Exceptions that occur during the destruction of `Obj` are not caught.

### 38.13.124 GetAppConfigDir

Synopsis: Return the appropriate directory for the application's configuration files.

Declaration: `function GetAppConfigDir(Global: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetAppConfigDir` returns the name of a directory in which the application should store its configuration files on the current OS. If the parameter `Global` is `True` then the directory returned is a global directory, i.e. valid for all users on the system. If the parameter `Global` is false, then the directory is specific for the user who is executing the program. On systems that do not support multi-user environments, these two directories may be the same.

The directory which is returned is the name of the directory where the application is supposed to store files. This does not mean that the directory exists, or that the user can write in this directory

(especially if `Global=True`). It just returns the name of the appropriate location. Also note that the returned name does not contain a ending path delimiter.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine this location, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1211) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1194) callback.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetAppConfigFile` (1263), `ApplicationName` (1211), `OnGetApplicationName` (1194), `CreateDir` (1218), `SysConfigDir` (1186)

### 38.13.125 `GetAppConfigFile`

Synopsis: Return an appropriate name for an application configuration file.

Declaration: `function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean) : String`  
`function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean;SubDir: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetAppConfigFile` returns the name of a file in which the application can store its configuration parameters. The `Global` parameter determines whether it is a global configuration file (value `True`) or a personal configuration file (value `False`). The parameter `SubDir`, in case it is set to `True`, will insert the name of a directory before the filename. This can be used in case the application needs to store other data than configuration data in an application-specific directory. Default behaviour is to set this to `False`. The default file extension of the returned file is: `.cfg`

No assumptions should be made about the existence or writeability of this file, or the directory where the file should reside.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine the location of configuration files, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1211) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1194) callback.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetAppConfigDir` (1262), `OnGetApplicationName` (1194), `ApplicationName` (1211), `CreateDir` (1218), `ConfigExtension` (1180), `SysConfigDir` (1186)

### 38.13.126 `GetCurrentDir`

Synopsis: Return the current working directory of the application.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentDir : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCurrentDir` returns the current working directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCurrentDir` (1281), `DiskFree` (1226), `DiskSize` (1227)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

*{ This program demonstrates the GetCurrentDir function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Current Directory is : ',GetCurrentDir);  
**End.**

---

### 38.13.127 GetDirs

Synopsis: Return a list of directory names from a path.

**Declaration:** function GetDirs(var DirName: String;var Dirs: Array of pchar) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetDirs splits DirName in a null-byte separated list of directory names, Dirs is an array of PChars, pointing to these directory names. The function returns the number of directories found, or -1 if none were found. DirName must contain only OSDirSeparator as Directory separator chars.

Errors: None.

See also: ExtractRelativePath ([1235](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex45.pp

---

**Program** Example45;

*{ This program demonstrates the GetDirs function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** Dirs : **Array**[0..127] **of** pchar;  
    I,Count : longint;  
    Dir,NewDir : **String**;

**Begin**

    Dir:=GetCurrentDir;  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Dir : ',Dir);  
    NewDir:='';  
    count:=GetDirs(Dir, Dirs);  
    **For** I:=0 **to** Count-1 **do**  
        **begin**  
            NewDir:=NewDir+' / '+StrPas(Dirs[I]);  
            **WriteLn** (NewDir);  
        **end**;  
**End.**

---

### 38.13.128 GetEnvironmentString

Synopsis: Return an environment variable by index.

**Declaration:** `function GetEnvironmentString(Index: Integer) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetEnvironmentString` returns the `Index`-th environment variable. The index is 1 based, and is bounded from above by the result of `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1265).

For an example, `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1265).

**Remark:** Note that on Windows, environment strings can start with an equal sign (=). This is a trick used to pass the current working directory to a newly created proces. In this case, extracting the variable name as the characters before the first equal sign will result in an empty name.

**Errors:** If there is no environment, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentVariable` (1265), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1265)

### 38.13.129 GetEnvironmentVariable

**Synopsis:** Return the value of an environment variable.

**Declaration:** `function GetEnvironmentVariable(const EnvVar: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetEnvironmentVariable` returns the value of the `EnvVar` environment variable. If the specified variable does not exist or `EnvVar` is empty, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` (1264), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1265)

### 38.13.130 GetEnvironmentVariableCount

**Synopsis:** Return the number of variables in the environment.

**Declaration:** `function GetEnvironmentVariableCount : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` returns the number of variables in the environment. The number is 1 based, but the result may be zero if there are no environment variables.

**Errors:** If there is no environment, -1 may be returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` (1264), `GetEnvironmentVariable` (1265)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex92.pp`

---

```
{ $h+ }
program example92;

{ This program demonstrates the
  GetEnvironmentVariableCount function }

uses sysutils;

Var
  I : Integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to GetEnvironmentVariableCount do
    Writeln(i:3, ' : ', GetEnvironmentString(i));
end.
```

---

### 38.13.131 GetFileHandle

Synopsis: Extract OS handle from an untyped file or text file.

Declaration: `function GetFileHandle(var f: File) : LongInt`  
`function GetFileHandle(var f: Text) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFileHandle` returns the operating system handle for the file descriptor `F`. It can be used in various file operations which are not directly supported by the pascal language.

### 38.13.132 GetLastOSError

Synopsis: Return the last code from the OS.

Declaration: `function GetLastOSError : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLastOSError` returns the error code from the last operating system call. It does not reset this code. In general, it should be called when an operating system call reported an error condition. In that case, `GetLastOSError` gives extended information about the error.

No assumptions should be made about the resetting of the error code by subsequent OS calls. This may be platform dependent.

See also: `RaiseLastOSError` ([1278](#))

### 38.13.133 GetLocalTime

Synopsis: Get the local time.

Declaration: `procedure GetLocalTime(var SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTime` returns the system time in a `TSystemTime` ([1174](#)) format.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` ([1276](#)), `Date` ([1220](#)), `Time` ([1307](#)), `TSystemTime` ([1174](#))

### 38.13.134 GetModuleName

Synopsis: Return the name of the current module

Declaration: `function GetModuleName(Module: HMODULE) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModuleName` returns the name of the current module. On windows, this is the name of the executable when executed in an executable, or the name of the library when executed in a library.

On all other platforms, the result is always empty, since they provide no such functionality.

### 38.13.135 GetTempDir

**Synopsis:** Return name of system's temporary directory

```
Declaration: function GetTempDir(Global: Boolean) : String
             function GetTempDir : String
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetTempDir` returns the temporary directory of the system. If `Global` is `True` (the default value) it returns the system temporary directory, if it is `False` then a directory private to the user is returned. The returned name will end with a directory delimiter character.

These directories may be the same. No guarantee is made that this directory exists or is writeable by the user.

The `OnGetTempDir` (1194) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

**Errors:** On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: [OnGetTempDir \(1194\)](#), [GetTempFileName \(1267\)](#)

### 38.13.136 GetTempFileName

**Synopsis:** Return the name of a temporary file.

```
Declaration: function GetTempFileName(const Dir: String;const Prefix: String)
                : String
function GetTempFileName : String
function GetTempFileName(Dir: PChar;Prefix: PChar;uUnique: DWORD;
                TempFileName: PChar) : DWORD
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetTempFileName` returns the name of a temporary file in directory `Dir`. The name of the file starts with `Prefix`.

If `Dir` is empty, the value returned by `GetTempDir` is used, and if `Prefix` is empty, `'TMP'` is used.

The `OnGetTempFile` (1195) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

**Errors:** On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: [GetTempDir \(1267\)](#), [OnGetTempFile \(1195\)](#)

### 38.13.137 GetUserDir

**Synopsis:** Returns the current user's home directory.

**Declaration:** `function GetUserDir : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetUserDir` returns the home directory of the current user. On Unix-like systems (that includes Mac OS X), this is the value of the `HOME` environment variable. On Windows, this is the `PROFILE` special folder. On all other platforms, the application installation directory is returned.

If non-empty, it contains a trailing path delimiter.

See also: `GetAppConfigDir` ([1262](#))

### 38.13.138 GuidCase

**Synopsis:** Return the index of a GUID in an array of GUID values

**Declaration:** `function GuidCase(const GUID: TGUID; const List: Array of TGUID)  
: Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GuidCase` returns the index of `GUID` in the array `List`, where 0 denotes the first element in the list. If `GUID` is not present in the list, -1 is returned.

See also: `IsEqualGUID` ([1272](#))

### 38.13.139 GUIDToString

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TGUID` to a string representation.

**Declaration:** `function GUIDToString(const GUID: TGUID) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GUIDToString` converts the GUID identifier in `GUID` to a string representation in the form

```
{XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX}
```

Where each X is a hexadecimal digit.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Supports` ([1304](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1001](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1288](#)), `IsEqualGuid` ([1272](#))

### 38.13.140 HookSignal

**Synopsis:** Hook a specified signal

**Declaration:** `procedure HookSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HookSignal` installs the RTL default signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum`. It does not check whether the signal is already handled, and should therefore only be called if `InquireSignal` returns `ssNotHooked`.

**38.13.141 IncAMonth**

Synopsis: Increase a date with a certain amount of months

Declaration: `procedure IncAMonth(var Year: Word; var Month: Word; var Day: Word;  
NumberOfMonths: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncAMonth` increases the date as specified by `Year`, `Month`, `Day` with `NumberOfMonths`. It takes care of the number of days in a month when calculating the result.

This function does the same as `IncMonth` (1269), but operates on an already decoded date.

See also: `IncMonth` (1269)

**38.13.142 IncludeTrailingBackslash**

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: `function IncludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1269) instead.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1269), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1231), `PathDelim` (1183), `IsPathDelimiter` (1273)

**38.13.143 IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter**

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: `function IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` adds a trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1183)) to `Path` if none is present yet, and returns the result.

If `Path` is empty, a path delimiter is returned, for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` (1269), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1231), `PathDelim` (1183), `IsPathDelimiter` (1273)

**38.13.144 IncMonth**

Synopsis: Increases the month in a `TDateTime` value with a given amount.

Declaration: `function IncMonth(const DateTime: TDateTime; NumberOfMonths: Integer)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncMonth` increases the month number in `DateTime` with `NumberOfMonths`. It wraps the result as to get a month between 1 and 12, and updates the year accordingly. `NumberOfMonths` can be negative, and can be larger than 12 (in absolute value).

Errors: None.

See also: [Date \(1220\)](#), [Time \(1307\)](#), [Now \(1276\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMonth function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ThisDay : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

  ThisDay := Date;
  Writeln ( 'ThisDay : ', DateToStr ( ThisDay ));
  Writeln ( '6 months ago : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -6)));
  Writeln ( '6 months from now : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 6)));
  Writeln ( '12 months ago : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -12)));
  Writeln ( '12 months from now : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 12)));
  Writeln ( '18 months ago : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -18)));
  Writeln ( '18 months from now : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 18)));
End.
```

---

### 38.13.145 InquireSignal

**Synopsis:** Check whether a signal handler is set (unix only)

**Declaration:** function InquireSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer) : TSignalState

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** RtlSigNum will check whether the signal RtlSigNum is being handled, and by whom. It returns a TSignalState result to report the state of the signal, which can be one of the following values:

**ssNotHooked**No signal handler is set for the signal.

**ssHooked**A signal handler is set by the RTL code for the signal.

**ssOverridden**A signal handler was set for the signal by third-party code.

This routine works by resetting the signal handlers, so it is risky to call.

### 38.13.146 IntToHex

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a hexadecimal string.

**Declaration:** function IntToHex(Value: Integer; Digits: Integer) : String  
 function IntToHex(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : String  
 function IntToHex(Value: QWord; Digits: Integer) : String

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IntToHex converts Value to a hexadecimal string representation. The result will contain at least Digits characters. If Digits is less than the needed number of characters, the string will NOT be truncated. If Digits is larger than the needed number of characters, the result is padded with zeroes.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [IntToStr \(1271\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex73.pp

---

**Program** Example73;

*{ This program demonstrates the IntToHex function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I : longint;

**Begin**

**For** I:=0 to 31 **do**

**begin**

**WriteLn** (IntToHex(1 shl I,8));

**WriteLn** (IntToHex(15 shl I,8))

**end**;

**End.**

---

### 38.13.147 IntToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a decimal string.

**Declaration:** function IntToStr(Value: Integer) : String  
  function IntToStr(Value: Int64) : String  
  function IntToStr(Value: QWord) : String

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IntToStr converts Value to its string representation. The resulting string has only as much characters as needed to represent the value. If the value is negative a minus sign is prepended to the string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [IntToHex \(1270\)](#), [StrToInt \(1301\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

*{ This program demonstrates the IntToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I : longint;

**Begin**

**For** I:=0 to 31 **do**

**begin**

**WriteLn** (IntToStr(1 shl I));

**WriteLn** (IntToStr(15 shl I));

**end**;

**End.**

---

**38.13.148 IsDelimiter**

Synopsis: Check whether a given string is a delimiter character.

Declaration: `function IsDelimiter(const Delimiters: String; const S: String;  
Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsDelimiter` checks whether the `Index`-th character in the string `S` is a delimiter character as passed in `Delimiters`. If `Index` is out of range, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LastDelimiter` ([1274](#))

**38.13.149 IsEqualGUID**

Synopsis: Check whether two `TGUID` variables are equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqualGUID(const guid1: TGUID; const guid2: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEqualGUID` checks whether `guid1` and `guid2` are equal, and returns `True` if this is the case, or `False` otherwise.

Errors:

See also: `Supports` ([1304](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1001](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1288](#)), `GuidToString` ([1268](#))

**38.13.150 IsLeapYear**

Synopsis: Determine whether a year is a leap year.

Declaration: `function IsLeapYear(Year: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLeapYear` returns `True` if `Year` is a leap year, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `IncMonth` ([1269](#)), `Date` ([1220](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsLeapYear function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `YY,MM,dd : Word`;

**Procedure** `TestYear (Y : Word)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn (Y, ' is leap year : ', IsLeapYear(Y));`

**end**;

---

```

Begin
  DeCodeDate( Date , YY,mm,dd );
  TestYear(yy);
  TestYear(2000);
  TestYear(1900);
  TestYear(1600);
  TestYear(1992);
  TestYear(1995);
End.

```

---

### 38.13.151 IsPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Is the character at the given position a pathdelimiter ?

Declaration: `function IsPathDelimiter(const Path: String; Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPathDelimiter` returns `True` if the character at position `Index` equals `PathDelim` (1183), i.e. if it is a path delimiter character for the current platform.

Errors: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1269) `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1231) `PathDelim` (1183)

### 38.13.152 IsValidIdent

Synopsis: Check whether a string is a valid identifier name.

Declaration: `function IsValidIdent(const Ident: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsValidIdent` returns `True` if `Ident` can be used as a component name. It returns `False` otherwise. `Ident` must consist of a letter or underscore, followed by a combination of letters, numbers or underscores to be a valid identifier.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program** Example75;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidIdent function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

```

begin
  Write ( '', S, ' is ' );
  If not IsValidIdent(S) then
    Write( 'NOT ');
  WriteLn ( 'a valid identifier');
end;

```

```

Begin
  Testit ( '_MyObj' );

```

---

```

Testit ( 'My__Obj1' );
Testit ( 'My_1_Obj' );
Testit ( '1MyObject' );
Testit ( 'My@Object' );
Testit ( 'M123' );
End.

```

---

### 38.13.153 LastDelimiter

Synopsis: Return the last occurrence of a set of delimiters in a string.

Declaration: `function LastDelimiter(const Delimiters: String; const S: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `LastDelimiter` returns the *last* occurrence of any character in the set `Delimiters` in the string `S`.

Errors:

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex88.pp`

---

**Program** `example88;`

*{ This program demonstrates the LastDelimiter function }*

**uses** `SysUtils;`

**begin**

`WriteLn( LastDelimiter( '\.: ', 'c:\filename.ext' ));`  
**end.**

---

### 38.13.154 LeftStr

Synopsis: Return a number of characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftStr(const S: String; Count: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftStr` returns the `Count` leftmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy( S, 1, Count )`.

Errors: None.

See also: `RightStr` ([1279](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1309](#)), `TrimRight` ([1310](#)), `Trim` ([1309](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex76.pp`

---

**Program** `Example76;`

*{ This program demonstrates the LeftStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( LeftStr( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ', 20 ));`

```

WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',15));
WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',1));
WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',200));
End.

```

---

### 38.13.155 LoadStr

Synopsis: Load a string from the resource tables.

Declaration: `function LoadStr(Ident: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is not yet implemented. resources are not yet supported.

Errors:

### 38.13.156 LowerCase

Synopsis: Return a lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function LowerCase(const s: String) : String; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const V: variant) : String; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `LowerCase` returns the lowercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the lowercase function of the system unit, and is provided for compatiibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` ([1202](#)), `UpperCase` ([1315](#)), `AnsiUpperCase` ([1210](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** `Example77;`

*{ This program demonstrates the LowerCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( LowerCase( 'THIS WILL COME out all LoWeRcAsE !' ));`  
**End.**

---

### 38.13.157 MSecsToTimeStamp

Synopsis: Convert a number of milliseconds to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function MSecsToTimeStamp(MSecs: Comp) : TTimeStamp`

Visibility: default

Description: `MSecsTiTimeStamp` converts the given number of milliseconds to a `TTimeStamp` date/time notation.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

Errors: None.

See also: [TimeStampToMSecs \(1308\)](#), [DateTimeToTimeStamp \(1223\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex17.pp

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ This program demonstrates the MSecsToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** MS : Comp;  
       TS : TTimeStamp;  
       DT : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp(Now);
WriteLn ( 'Now in days since 1/1/0001      : ',TS.Date );
WriteLn ( 'Now in millisecs since midnight : ',TS.Time );
MS:=TimeStampToMSecs(TS);
WriteLn ( 'Now in millisecs since 1/1/0001 : ',MS);
MS:=MS-1000*3600*2;
TS:=MSecsToTimeStamp(MS);
DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
WriteLn ( 'Now minus 1 day : ',DateTimeToStr(DT));

```

**End.**

---

### 38.13.158 NewStr

Synopsis: Allocate a new ansistring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: String) : PString; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewStr` assigns a new dynamic string on the heap, copies `S` into it, and returns a pointer to the newly assigned string.

This function is obsolete, and shouldn't be used any more. The `AnsiString` mechanism also allocates ansistrings on the heap, and should be preferred over this mechanism.

For an example, see [AssignStr \(1212\)](#).

Errors: If not enough memory is present, an `EOutOfMemory` exception will be raised.

See also: [AssignStr \(1212\)](#), [DisposeStr \(1228\)](#)

### 38.13.159 Now

Synopsis: Returns the current date and time.

Declaration: `function Now : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Now` returns the current date and time. It is equivalent to `Date+Time`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Date \(1220\)](#), [Time \(1307\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex18.pp

---

```
Program Example18;

{ This program demonstrates the Now function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ( 'Now : ', DateTimeToStr(Now));
End.
```

---

### 38.13.160 OutOfMemoryError

**Synopsis:** Raise an EOutOfMemory exception

**Declaration:** `procedure OutOfMemoryError`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** OutOfMemoryError raises an EOutOfMemory ([1322](#)) exception, with an exception object that has been allocated on the heap at program startup. The program should never create an EOutOfMemory ([1322](#)) exception, but always call this routine.

See also: EOutOfMemory ([1322](#))

### 38.13.161 QuotedStr

**Synopsis:** Return a quotes version of a string.

**Declaration:** `function QuotedStr(const S: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** QuotedStr returns the string S, quoted with single quotes. This means that S is enclosed in single quotes, and every single quote in S is doubled. It is equivalent to a call to AnsiQuotedStr(S, '"').

**Errors:** None.

See also: AnsiQuotedStr ([1203](#)), AnsiExtractQuotedStr ([1200](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex78.pp

---

```
Program Example78;

{ This program demonstrates the QuotedStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:= 'He said ''Hello'' and walked on';
  WriteLn (S);
```

---

---

```

Writeln ( ' becomes' );
Writeln ( QuotedStr(S));
End.

```

---

### 38.13.162 RaiseLastError

**Synopsis:** Raise an exception with the last Operating System error code.

**Declaration:** `procedure RaiseLastError`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RaiseLastError` raises an `EOSError` ([1322](#)) exception with the error code returned by `GetLastError`. If the Error code is nonzero, then the corresponding error message will be returned. If the error code is zero, a standard message will be returned.

**Errors:** This procedure may not be implemented on all platforms. If it is not, then a normal Exception ([1324](#)) will be raised.

**See also:** `EOSError` ([1322](#)), `GetLastError` ([1266](#)), Exception ([1324](#))

### 38.13.163 RemoveDir

**Synopsis:** Remove a directory from the filesystem.

**Declaration:** `function RemoveDir(const Dir: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RemoveDir` removes directory `Dir` from the disk. If the directory is not absolute, it is appended to the current working directory.

For an example, see `CreateDir` ([1218](#)).

**Errors:** In case of error (e.g. the directory isn't empty) the function returns `False`. If successful, `True` is returned.

### 38.13.164 RenameFile

**Synopsis:** Rename a file.

**Declaration:** `function RenameFile(const OldName: String;const NewName: String)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RenameFile` renames a file from `OldName` to `NewName`. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. *Remark:* you cannot rename across disks or partitions.

**Errors:** On Error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `DeleteFile` ([1225](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex44.pp`

---

```

Program Example44;

{ This program demonstrates the RenameFile function }

Uses sysutils;

Var F : Longint;
    S : String;

Begin
  S:= 'Some short file.';
  F:= FileCreate ( 'test.dap' );
  FileWrite (F,S[1],Length(S));
  FileClose(F);
  If RenameFile ( 'test.dap', 'test.dat' ) then
    Writeln ( 'Successfully renamed files.' );
End.

```

---

### 38.13.165 ReplaceDate

Synopsis: Replace the date part of a date/time stamp

Declaration: `procedure ReplaceDate (var DateTime: TDateTime; const NewDate: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReplaceDate` replaces the date part of `DateTime` with `NewDate`. The time part is left unchanged.

See also: `ReplaceTime` ([1279](#))

### 38.13.166 ReplaceTime

Synopsis: Replace the time part

Declaration: `procedure ReplaceTime (var dateTime: TDateTime; NewTime: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReplaceTime` replaces the time part in `dateTime` with `NewTime`. The date part remains untouched.

Errors:

### 38.13.167 RightStr

Synopsis: Return a number of characters from a string, starting at the end.

Declaration: `function RightStr (const S: String; Count: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightStr` returns the `Count` rightmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy (S, Length (S) + 1 - Count, Count)`. If `Count` is larger than the actual length of `S` only the real length will be used.

Errors: None.

See also: [LeftStr \(1274\)](#), [Trim \(1309\)](#), [TrimLeft \(1309\)](#), [TrimRight \(1310\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex79.pp

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the RightStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```
WriteLn ( RightStr( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',20));
WriteLn ( RightStr( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',15));
WriteLn ( RightStr( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',1));
WriteLn ( RightStr( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',200));
End.
```

### 38.13.168 SafeLoadLibrary

Synopsis: Load a library safely

**Declaration:** function SafeLoadLibrary(const FileName: AnsiString;ErrorMode: DWord)  
: HMODULE

Visibility: default

**Description:** SafeLoadLibrary saves and restores some registers before and after issuing a call to LoadLibrary.

Errors: None.

### 38.13.169 SameFileName

Synopsis: Are two filenames referring to the same file ?

**Declaration:** function SameFileName(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameFileName returns True if calling AnsiCompareFileName ([1198](#)) with arguments S1 and S2 returns 0, and returns False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareFileName \(1198\)](#)

### 38.13.170 SameText

Synopsis: Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

**Declaration:** function SameText(const s1: String;const s2: String) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameText calls CompareText ([1217](#)) with S1 and S2 as parameters and returns True if the result of that call is zero, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [CompareText \(1217\)](#), [AnsiSameText \(1203\)](#), [AnsiSameStr \(1203\)](#)

**38.13.171 SetCurrentDir**

Synopsis: Set the current directory of the application.

Declaration: `function SetCurrentDir(const NewDir: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCurrentDir` sets the current working directory of your program to `NewDir`. It returns `True` if the function was successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetCurrentDir` ([1263](#))

**38.13.172 SetDirSeparators**

Synopsis: Set the directory separators to the known directory separators.

Declaration: `function SetDirSeparators(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirSeparators` returns `FileName` with all possible `DirSeparators` replaced by `OSDirSeparator`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExpandFileName` ([1232](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1235](#)), `ExtractFileDir` ([1233](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47`;

*{ This program demonstrates the SetDirSeparators function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( SetDirSeparators ( '/pp\bin/win32\ppc386' ) );`

**End.**

---

**38.13.173 ShowException**

Synopsis: Show the current exception to the user.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(ExceptObject: TObject; ExceptAddr: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShowException` shows a message stating that a `ExceptObject` was raised at address `ExceptAddr`. It uses `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1231](#)) to create the message, and is aware of the fact whether the application is a console application or a GUI application. For a console application, the message is written to standard error output. For a GUI application, `OnShowException` ([1195](#)) is executed.

Errors: If, for a GUI application, `OnShowException` ([1195](#)) is not set, no message will be displayed to the user.

The exception message can be at most 255 characters long: It is possible that no memory can be allocated on the heap, so `ansistrings` are not available, so a `shortstring` is used to display the message.

See also: `ExceptObject` ([1231](#)), `ExceptAddr` ([1230](#)), `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1231](#))

**38.13.174 Sleep**

**Synopsis:** Suspend execution of a program for a certain time.

**Declaration:** `procedure Sleep(milliseconds: Cardinal)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Sleep` suspends the execution of the program for the specified number of milliseconds (`milliseconds`). After the specified period has expired, program execution resumes.

**Remark:** The indicated time is not exact, i.e. it is a minimum time. No guarantees are made as to the exact duration of the suspension.

**38.13.175 SScanf**

**Synopsis:** Scan a string for substrings and return the substrings

**Declaration:** `function SScanf(const s: String; const fmt: String;  
const Pointers: Array of Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SScanf` scans the string `S` for the elements specified in `Fmt`, and returns the elements in the pointers in `Pointers`. The `Fmt` can contain placeholders of the form `%X` where `X` can be one of the following characters:

**d**Placeholder for a decimal number.

**f**Placeholder for a floating point number (an extended)

**s**Placeholder for a string of arbitrary length.

**c**Placeholder for a single character

The `Pointers` array contains a list of pointers, each pointer should point to a memory location of a type that corresponds to the type of placeholder in that position:

**d**A pointer to an integer.

**f**A pointer to an extended.

**s**A pointer to an ansistring.

**c**A pointer to a single character.

**Errors:** No error checking is performed on the type of the memory location.

See also: `Format` ([1254](#))

**38.13.176 StrAlloc**

**Synopsis:** Allocate a null-terminated string on the heap.

**Declaration:** `function StrAlloc(Size: cardinal) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `StrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory. Therefore this function is NOT compatible with the `StrAlloc` ([924](#)) function of the `Strings` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` ([1283](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: [StrBufSize \(1283\)](#), [StrDispose \(1285\)](#), [#rtl.strings.StrAlloc \(924\)](#)

### 38.13.177 StrBufSize

Synopsis: Return the size of a null-terminated string allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `function StrBufSize(Str: PChar) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrBufSize` returns the memory allocated for `Str`. This function ONLY gives the correct result if `Str` was allocated using [StrAlloc \(1282\)](#).

Errors: If no more memory is available, a runtime error occurs.

See also: [StrAlloc \(1282\)](#), [StrDispose \(1285\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StrBufSize function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Const** `S = 'Some nice string';`

**Var** `P : Pchar;`

**Begin**

`P := StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);`

`StrPCopy(P,S);`

`Write (P, ' has length ', length(S));`

`Writeln ( ' and buffer size ', StrBufSize(P));`

`StrDispose(P);`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.178 StrByteType

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in a null-terminated string for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: `function StrByteType(Str: PChar; Index: Cardinal) : TMbcsByteType`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrByteType` returns the type of byte in the null-terminated string `Str` at (0-based) position `Index`.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: [TMbcsByteType \(1191\)](#), [ByteType \(1214\)](#)

**38.13.179 strcat**

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat (dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches `Source` to `Dest` and returns `Dest`.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCat` ([1289](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';`

**Var** `P2 : PChar;`

**begin**

`P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);`

`StrMove (P2,P1, StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }`

`StrCat (P2,P1); { Append P2 once more }`

`WriteLn ( 'P2 : ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

**38.13.180 StrCharLength**

Synopsis: Return the length of a null-terminated string in characters.

Declaration: `function StrCharLength(const Str: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrCharLength` returns the length of the null-terminated string `Str` (a widestring) in characters (not in bytes). It uses the widestring manager to do this.

**38.13.181 strcmp**

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function strcmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`. The result is

- A negative `Longint` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `Longint` when `S1>S2`.

For an example, see `StrLComp` ([1289](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1289](#)), `StrIComp` ([1287](#)), `StrLComp` ([1292](#))

### 38.13.182 `strcpy`

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain `Source`, i.e. `StrLen(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1294](#)), `StrLCopy` ([1290](#)), `StrECopy` ([1286](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.'`;

**var** `PP : PChar`;

**begin**

`PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen (P)+1);`

`StrCopy (PP,P);`

**If** `StrComp (PP,P)<>0` **then**

`Writeln ( 'Oh-oh problems ... ' )`

**else**

`Writeln ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);`

`StrDispose(PP);`

**end.**

---

### 38.13.183 `StrDispose`

Synopsis: Dispose of a null-terminated string on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure StrDispose(Str: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrDispose` frees any memory allocated for `Str`. This function will only function correctly if `Str` has been allocated using `StrAlloc` ([1282](#)) from the `SysUtils` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` ([1283](#)).

Errors: If an invalid pointer is passed, or a pointer not allocated with `StrAlloc`, an error may occur.

See also: `StrBufSize` ([1283](#)), `StrAlloc` ([1282](#)), `StrDispose` ([1285](#))

**38.13.184 strecopy**

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

Declaration: `function strecopy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCopy` ([1290](#)), `StrCopy` ([1285](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**Var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P)+1);

**If** Longint( StrECopy(PP,P)) – Longint(PP) <> StrLen(P) **then**

**Writeln**( 'Something is wrong here !')

**else**

**Writeln** ( 'PP= ',PP);

**StrDispose**(PP);

**end.**

---

**38.13.185 strend**

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strend(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLen` ([1291](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

---

```

begin
  If Longint(StrEnd(P)) - Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) then
    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    Writeln('All is well..');
end.

```

---

### 38.13.186 StrFmt

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, store the result in a buffer.

Declaration: `function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar;Fmt: PChar;const args: Array of const) : PChar`  
`function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar;Fmt: PChar;const Args: Array of const;const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrFmt` will format `fmt` with `Args`, as the `Format` (1254) function does, and it will store the result in `Buffer`. The function returns `Buffer`. `Buffer` should point to enough space to contain the whole result.

Errors: for a list of errors, see `Format` (1254).

See also: `StrLFmt` (1291), `FmtStr` (1253), `Format` (1254), `FormatBuf` (1259)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex80.pp`

---

**Program** `Example80`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `S` : `AnsiString`;

**Begin**

`SetLength(S,80);`

`Writeln ( StrFmt (@S[1], 'For some nice examples of fomating see %s.', ['Format']));`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.187 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stricmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `Longint` when `S1 < S2`.
- 0 when `S1 = S2`.
- A positive `Longint` when `S1 > S2`.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1289](#)), StrComp ([1284](#)), StrLComp ([1292](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';  
           P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'P1 and P2 are ');  
  **If** StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 **then write** ( 'NOT ');  
  **write** ( 'equal. The first ');  
  L:=1;  
  **While** StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 **do inc** (L);  
  **dec**(L);  
  **WriteLn** (L, ' characters are the same.');

**end.**

---

### 38.13.188 StringReplace

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one substring with another in a string.

**Declaration:** function StringReplace(const S: String;const OldPattern: String;  
                                   const NewPattern: String;Flags: TReplaceFlags)  
                                   : String

Visibility: default

**Description:** StringReplace searches the string S for occurrences of the string OldPattern and, if it is found, replaces it with NewPattern. It returns the resulting string. The behaviour of StringReplace can be runed with Flags, which is of type TReplaceFlags ([1191](#)). Standard behaviour is to replace only the first occurrence of OldPattern, and to search case sensitively.

Errors: None.

See also: TReplaceFlags ([1191](#))

### 38.13.189 StringToGUID

Synopsis: Convert a string to a native TGUID type.

**Declaration:** function StringToGUID(const S: String) : TGUID

Visibility: default

**Description:** StringToGUID converts the string S to a valid GUID. The string S should be of the form

{XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX}

Where each X is a hexadecimal digit. The dashes and braces are required.

Errors: In case S contains an invalid GUID representation, a EConvertError (1319) exception is raised.

See also: Supports (1304), #rtl.system.TGUID (1001), GUIDToString (1268), IsEqualGuid (1272)

### 38.13.190 strlcat

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

Declaration: `function strlcat(dest: pchar;source: pchar;l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Adds MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns Dest.

Errors: None.

See also: StrCat (1284)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = '1234567890';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

  P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)\*2+1);

  P2^:=#0; *{ Zero length }*

  StrCat (P2,P1);

  StrLCat (P2,P1,5);

  Writeln ( 'P2 = ',P2);

  StrDispose(P2)

**end.**

---

### 38.13.191 strlcomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function strlcomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrComp ([1284](#)), StrIComp ([1287](#)), StrLIComp ([1292](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';  
           P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'P1 and P2 are ');  
  **If** StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 **then write** ( 'NOT ');  
  **write** ( 'equal. The first ');  
  L:=1;  
  **While** StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 **do inc** (L);  
  **dec**(L);  
  **WriteLn** (L, ' characters are the same.');

**end.**

---

### 38.13.192 strlcopy

**Synopsis:** Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

**Declaration:** function strlcopy(dest: pchar;source: pchar;maxlen: SizeInt) : pchar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and makes Dest a null terminated string.

**Errors:** No length checking is performed.

See also: StrCopy ([1285](#)), StrECopy ([1286](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

**var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

  PP:=StrAlloc(11);  
  **WriteLn** ( 'First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));  
  **StrDispose**(PP);

**end.**

---

**38.13.193 strlen**

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrNew` ([1293](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';`

**begin**

`Writeln ( 'P              : ',p);`

`Writeln ( 'length(P) : ',StrLen(P));`

**end.**

---

**38.13.194 StrLFmt**

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, but with limited length.

Declaration: `function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar;Maxlen: Cardinal;Fmt: PChar;  
                          const args: Array of const) : Pchar  
function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar;Maxlen: Cardinal;Fmt: PChar;  
                          const args: Array of const;  
                          const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrLFmt` will format `fmt` with `Args`, as the `Format` ([1254](#)) function does, and it will store maximally `Maxlen` characters of the result in `Buffer`. The function returns `Buffer`. `Buffer` should point to enough space to contain `MaxLen` characters.

Errors: for a list of errors, see `Format` ([1254](#)).

See also: `StrFmt` ([1287](#)), `FmtStr` ([1253](#)), `Format` ([1254](#)), `FormatBuf` ([1259](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex81.pp`

---

**Program** `Example80;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

```
SetLength(S,80);
WriteLn (StrLFmt (@S[1],80,'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.',['Format']));
End.
```

---

**38.13.195 strlicomp**

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrIComp ([1287](#))

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1289](#)), StrComp ([1284](#)), StrIComp ([1287](#))

**38.13.196 strlower**

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-lowercase string. Returns P.

Errors: None.

See also: StrUpper ([1304](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

```
P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';
P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';
```

**begin**

```
WriteLn ( 'Uppercase : ',StrUpper(P2));
StrLower (P1);
WriteLn ( 'Lowercase : ',P1);
end.
```

---

**38.13.197 strmove**

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: pchar;source: pchar;l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns `Dest`

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLCopy` ([1290](#)), `StrCopy` ([1285](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** `Example10;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';`

**Var** `P2 : Pchar;`

**begin**

`P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)+1);`

`StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2:=P1 }`

`WriteLn ( 'P2 = ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

**38.13.198 strnew**

Synopsis: Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strnew(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `P` to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns `Nil` if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: `StrCopy` ([1285](#)), `StrDispose` ([1285](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';`

---

```

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  If P1=P2 then
    writeln ( 'This can''t be happening ... ')
  else
    writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 38.13.199 StrNextChar

Synopsis: Returns a pointer to the location of the next empty character in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function StrNextChar(const Str: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrNextChar` returns a pointer to the null-character that terminates the string `Str`

Errors: if `Str` is not properly terminated, an access violation may occur.

### 38.13.200 StrPas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to an ansistring.

Declaration: `function StrPas(Str: PChar) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `Str` to an `Ansistring`, and returns this string. This string is NOT truncated at 255 characters as is the

Errors: None.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1294](#)), `StrPLCopy` ([1295](#))

### 38.13.201 StrPCopy

Synopsis: Copy an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrPCopy(Dest: PChar;Source: String) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrPCopy` Converts the `Ansistring` in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain the string `Source`, i.e. `Length(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `Source`.

See also: `StrPLCopy` ([1295](#)), `StrPas` ([1294](#))

### 38.13.202 StrPLCopy

Synopsis: Copy a limited number of characters from an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrPLCopy(Dest: PChar;Source: String;MaxLen: SizeUInt) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrPLCopy` Converts maximally `MaxLen` characters of the Ansistring in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain the characters.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `L` characters of `Source`.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1294](#))

### 38.13.203 strpos

Synopsis: Find position of one null-terminated substring in another.

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of `S2` in `S1`. If `S2` does not occur in `S1`, returns `Nil`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrScan` ([1296](#)), `StrRScan` ([1295](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';`

`S : PChar = 'is';`

**begin**

`Writeln ('Position of ''is'' in P : ',sizeint(StrPos(P,S))-sizeint(P));`

`end.`

---

### 38.13.204 strscan

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar;c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character `C` in the null-terminated string `P`. If `C` does not occur, returns `Nil`.

For an example, see `StrScan` ([1296](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrScan` ([1296](#)), `StrPos` ([1295](#))

**38.13.205 strscan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan ([1295](#)), StrPos ([1295](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first ''s'' : ', **StrScan**(P,s));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last ''s'' : ', **StrRScan**(P,s));

**end.**

---

**38.13.206 StrToBool**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a boolean value

Declaration: `function StrToBool(const S: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: StrToBool will convert the string S to a boolean value. The string S can contain one of 'True', 'False' (case is ignored) or a numerical value. If it contains a numerical value, 0 is converted to False, all other values result in True. If the string S contains no valid boolean, then an EConvertError ([1319](#)) exception is raised.

Errors: On error, an EConvertError ([1319](#)) exception is raised.

See also: BoolToStr ([1213](#))

**38.13.207 StrToBoolDef**

Synopsis: Convert string to boolean value, returning default in case of error

Declaration: `function StrToBoolDef(const S: String; Default: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: StrToBoolDef tries to convert the string S to a boolean value, and returns the boolean value in case of success. In case S does not contain a valid boolean string, Default is returned.

See also: StrToBool ([1296](#)), TryStrToBool ([1312](#))

**38.13.208 StrToCurr**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a currency value

Declaration: `function StrToCurr(const S: String) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToCurr` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

Errors: On error, an `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

See also: `CurrToStr` (1219), `StrToCurrDef` (1297)

**38.13.209 StrToCurrDef**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a currency value, using a default value

Declaration: `function StrToCurrDef(const S: String; Default: Currency) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToCurrDef` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, the fallback `Default` value is returned.

Errors: On error, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `CurrToStr` (1219), `StrToCurr` (1297)

**38.13.210 StrToDate**

Synopsis: Convert a date string to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function StrToDate(const S: String) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToDate` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `StrToTime` (1303), `DateToStr` (1223), `TimeToStr` (1308)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `TestStr (S : String);`

```

begin
  WriteLn (S, ' : ', DateToStr(StrToDate(S)));
end;

Begin

  WriteLn ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat);
  TestStr( DateTimeToStr( Date ));
  TestStr( '05'+DateSeparator+'05'+DateSeparator+'1999' );
  TestStr( '5'+DateSeparator+'5' );
  TestStr( '5' );
End.

```

---

### 38.13.211 StrToDateDef

Synopsis: Convert string to date, returning a default value

Declaration: `function StrToDateDef(const S: String; const Defvalue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToDateDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `TDateTime` date value, and returns `DefValue` if `S` does not contain a valid date indication.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1297](#)), `TryStrToDate` ([1312](#)), `StrToTimeDef` ([1304](#))

### 38.13.212 StrToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a date/time string to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function StrToDateTime(const S: String) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToDateTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value. The date and time parts must be separated by a space.

For the date part, the same restrictions apply as for the `StrToDate` ([1297](#)) function: The Date must consist of 1 to three numbers, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the 3 numbers (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1297](#)), `StrToTime` ([1303](#)), `DateTimeToStr` ([1221](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex20.pp

---

```

Program Example20;

{ This program demonstrates the StrToDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestStr (S : String);

begin
  WriteLn (S, ' : ', DateTimeToStr(StrToDateTime(S)));
end;

Begin

  WriteLn ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat);
  TestStr(DateTimeToStr(Now));
  TestStr('05-05-1999 15:50');
  TestStr('5-5 13:30');
  TestStr('5 1:30PM');
End.

```

---

### 38.13.213 StrToDateTimeDef

Synopsis: Convert string to date/time, returning a default value

**Declaration:** `function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: String; const Defvalue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** StrToDateTimeDef tries to convert the string S to a valid TDateTime date and time value, and returns DefValue if S does not contain a valid date-time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToTimeDef ([1304](#)), StrToDateDef ([1298](#)), TryStrToDateTime ([1313](#)), StrToDateTime ([1298](#))

### 38.13.214 StrToFloat

Synopsis: Convert a string to a floating-point value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToFloat(const S: String) : Extended`  
`function StrToFloat(const S: String;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended`

Visibility: default

**Description:** StrToFloat converts the string S to a floating point value. S should contain a valid string representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation). The thousandseparator character may however not be used.

Up to and including version 2.2.2 of the compiler, if the string contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character can either be a '.' or the value of the DecimalSeparator variable.

As of version 2.3.1, the string may contain only the DecimalSeparator character. The dot ('.') can no longer be used instead of the DecimalSeparator.

Errors: If the string *S* doesn't contain a valid floating point string, then an exception will be raised.

See also: [TextToFloat \(1306\)](#), [FloatToStr \(1248\)](#), [FormatFloat \(1261\)](#), [StrToInt \(1301\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex90.pp

---

**Program** Example90;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of string =
    ('1,1', '-0,2', '1,2E-4', '0', '1E4');
```

**Procedure** Testit;

**Var**

```
I : Integer;
E : Extended;
```

**begin**

```
WriteLn('Using DecimalSeparator : ',DecimalSeparator);
For I:=1 to NrValues do
    begin
        WriteLn('Converting : ',TestStr[I]);
        Try
            E:=StrToFloat(TestStr[I]);
            WriteLn('Converted value : ',E);
        except
            On E : Exception do
                WriteLn('Exception when converting : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
    end;
```

**Begin**

```
DecimalSeparator:=',';
Testit;
DecimalSeparator:= '.';
Testit;
```

**End.**

---

### 38.13.215 StrToFloatDef

Synopsis: Convert a string to a float, with a default value.

**Declaration:** function StrToFloatDef(const S: String;const Default: Extended)  
: Extended  
function StrToFloatDef(const S: String;const Default: Extended;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToFloatDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

**Errors:** None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

### 38.13.216 StrToInt

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an integer value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToInt(const s: String) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToInt` will convert the string `Sto` an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then an `EConvertError` is raised.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1271](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1302](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex82.pp`

---

**Program** Example82;

*{\$mode objfpc}*

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**Writeln** ( `StrToInt('1234')` );

**Writeln** ( `StrToInt('-1234')` );

**Writeln** ( `StrToInt('0')` );

**Try**

**Writeln** ( `StrToInt('12345678901234567890')` );

**except**

**On** `E` : `EConvertError` **do**

**Writeln** ( 'Invalid number encountered' );

**end;**

**End.**

---

### 38.13.217 StrToInt64

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an `Int64` value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToInt64(const s: String) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToInt64` converts the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the `$` character) are supported.

Errors: On error, a `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

See also: `TryStrToInt64` (1314), `StrToInt64Def` (1302), `StrToInt` (1301), `TryStrToInt` (1314), `StrToIntDef` (1302)

### 38.13.218 StrToInt64Def

Synopsis: Convert a string to an `Int64` value, with a default value

Declaration: `function StrToInt64Def(const S: String;Default: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StrToInt64Def` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

Errors: None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `StrToInt64` (1301), `TryStrToInt64` (1314), `StrToInt` (1301), `TryStrToInt` (1314), `StrToIntDef` (1302)

### 38.13.219 StrToIntDef

Synopsis: Convert a string to an integer value, with a default value.

Declaration: `function StrToIntDef(const S: String;Default: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StrToIntDef` will convert a string to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then `Default` is returned.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

Errors: None.

See also: `IntToStr` (1271), `StrToInt` (1301)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex83.pp`

---

**Program** `Example82;`

`{ $mode objfpc }`

`{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`Writeln ( StrToIntDef( '1234', 0 ));`

`Writeln ( StrToIntDef( '-1234', 0 ));`

`Writeln ( StrToIntDef( '0', 0 ));`

**Try**

`Writeln ( StrToIntDef( '12345678901234567890', 0 ));`

**except**

`On E : EConvertError do`

`Writeln ( 'Invalid number encountered' );`

**end;**

**End.**

---

**38.13.220 StrToQWord**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a QWord.

Declaration: `function StrToQWord(const s: String) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToQWord` converts the string `S` to a valid QWord (unsigned 64-bit) value, and returns the result.

Errors: If the string `S` does not contain a valid QWord value, a `EConvertError` (1319) exception is raised.

See also: `TryStrToQWord` (1314), `StrToQWordDef` (1303), `StrToInt64` (1301), `StrToInt` (1301)

**38.13.221 StrToQWordDef**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a QWord, returning a default value in case of failure.

Declaration: `function StrToQWordDef(const S: String; Default: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToQWordDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid QWord (unsigned 64-bit) value, and returns the result. If the conversion fails, the function returns the value passed in `Def`.

See also: `StrToQWord` (1303), `TryStrToQWord` (1314), `StrToInt64Def` (1302), `StrToIntDef` (1302)

**38.13.222 StrToTime**

Synopsis: Convert a time string to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function StrToTime(const S: String) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToTime` converts the string `S` to a TDateTime time value. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `StrToDate` (1297), `StrDateTime` (1298), `TimeToStr` (1308)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** `Example21`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `TestStr (S : String)`;

**begin**  
     `WriteLn (S, ' : ', TimeToStr(StrToTime(S)))`;  
**end**;

**Begin**  
     `teststr (TimeToStr(Time))`;

```
teststr ( '12:00' );
teststr ( '15:30' );
teststr ( '3:30PM' );
End.
```

---

### 38.13.223 StrToTimeDef

Synopsis: Convert string to time, returning a default value

Declaration: `function StrToTimeDef(const S: String;const Defvalue: TDateTime)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: StrToTimeDef tries to convert the string S to a valid TDateTime time value, and returns DefValue if S does not contain a valid time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToTime ([1303](#)), TryStrToTime ([1314](#)), StrToDateDef ([1298](#))

### 38.13.224 strupper

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: `function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see StrLower ([1292](#))

Errors: None.

See also: StrLower ([1292](#))

### 38.13.225 Supports

Synopsis: Check whether a class or given interface supports an interface

Declaration: `function Supports(const Instance: IInterface;const IID: TGUID;out Intf)  
: Boolean; Overload  
function Supports(const Instance: TObject;const IID: TGUID;out Intf)  
: Boolean; Overload  
function Supports(const Instance: TObject;const IID: Shortstring;  
out Intf) : Boolean; Overload  
function Supports(const Instance: IInterface;const IID: TGUID) : Boolean  
; Overload  
function Supports(const Instance: TObject;const IID: TGUID) : Boolean  
; Overload  
function Supports(const Instance: TObject;const IID: Shortstring)  
: Boolean; Overload  
function Supports(const AClass: TClass;const IID: TGUID) : Boolean  
; Overload  
function Supports(const AClass: TClass;const IID: Shortstring) : Boolean  
; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Supports checks whether Instance supports the interface identified by IID. It returns True if it is supported, False. Optionally, a pointer to the interface is returned to Intf.

Errors: None.

See also: StringToGUID ([1288](#))

### 38.13.226 SysErrorMessage

Synopsis: Format a system error message.

Declaration: `function SysErrorMessage(ErrorCode: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: SysErrorMessage returns a string that describes the operating system error code ErrorCode.

Errors: This routine may not be implemented on all platforms.

See also: EOSError ([1322](#))

### 38.13.227 SystemTimeToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a system time to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function SystemTimeToDateTime(const SystemTime: TSystemTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: SystemTimeToDateTime converts a TSystemTime record to a TDateTime style date/time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: DateTimeToSystemTime ([1222](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the SystemTimeToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**

  DateTimeToSystemTime(**Now**, ST);

**With** St **do**

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Today is       ', year, '/', month, '/', Day);

**WriteLn** ( 'The time is   ', Hour, ':', minute, ':', Second, '.', MilliSecond);

**end**;

**WriteLn** ( 'Converted : ', **DateTimeToStr**(SystemTimeToDateTime(ST)));

**End.**

---

**38.13.228 TextToFloat**

Synopsis: Convert a buffer to a float value.

Declaration: `function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar;out Value: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar;out Value: Extended;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`  
`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar;out Value;ValueType: TFloatValue)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar;out Value;ValueType: TFloatValue;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextToFloat` converts the string in `Buffer` to a floating point value. `Buffer` should contain a valid stroing representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation). If the buffer contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character can either be a '.' or the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

The function returns `True` if the conversion was successful.

Errors: If there is an invalid character in the buffer, then the function returns `False`

See also: `StrToFloat` ([1299](#)), `FloatToStr` ([1248](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1261](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex91.pp`

**Program** `Example91`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the TextToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils`;

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of pchar =
    ('1,1 ', '-0,2 ', '1,2E-4 ', '0 ', '1E4 ');
```

**Procedure** `Testit`;

**Var**

```
I : Integer;
E : Extended;
```

**begin**

```
WriteLn('Using DecimalSeparator : ',DecimalSeparator);
For I:=1 to NrValues do
    begin
        WriteLn('Converting : ',TestStr[I]);
        If TextToFloat(TestStr[I],E) then
            WriteLn('Converted value : ',E)
        else
            WriteLn('Unable to convert value. ');
        end;
    end;
```

**end**;

**Begin**

```
DecimalSeparator:= ',';
```

---

```

    Testit;
    DecimalSeparator:= '.';
    Testit;
End.

```

---

### 38.13.229 Time

Synopsis: Returns the current time.

Declaration: `function Time : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Time` returns the current time in `TDateTime` format. The date part of the `TDateTimeValue` is set to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` ([1276](#)), `Date` ([1220](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23;`

*{ This program demonstrates the Time function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('The time is : ',TimeToStr(Time));`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.230 TimeStampToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a `TimeStamp` value to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function TimeStampToDateTime(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeStampToDateTime` converts `TimeStamp` to a `TDateTime` format variable. It is the inverse operation of `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1223](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1223](#)), `TimeStampToMSecs` ([1308](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** `Example24;`

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeStampToDateTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `TS : TTimeStamp;`

`DT : TDateTime;`

---

---

```

Begin
  TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (Now);
  With TS do
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Now is ',time, ' millisecond past midnight');
      Writeln ( 'Today is ',Date, ' days past 1/1/0001');
    end;
  DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
  Writeln ( 'Together this is : ',DateTimeToStr(DT));
End.

```

---

### 38.13.231 TimeStampToMSecs

**Synopsis:** Converts a timestamp to a number of milliseconds.

**Declaration:** `function TimeStampToMSecs(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : comp`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeStampToMSecs` converts `TimeStamp` to the number of seconds since 1/1/0001.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

For an example, see `MSecsToTimeStamp` ([1275](#)).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `MSecsToTimeStamp` ([1275](#)), `TimeStampToDateTime` ([1307](#))

### 38.13.232 TimeToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` time to a string using a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeToStr` converts the time in `Time` to a string. It uses the `ShortTimeFormat` variable to see what formatting needs to be applied. It is therefor entirely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('t', Time)` call.

**Errors:** None.

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**Writeln** ( 'The current time is : ',**TimeToStr**(Time));  
**End.**

---

**38.13.233 Trim**

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the ends of a string.

Declaration: `function Trim(const S: String) : String`  
`function Trim(const S: widestring) : widestring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces) at the beginning and end of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TrimLeft` ([1309](#)), `TrimRight` ([1310](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex84.pp

---

**Program** Example84;

*{ This program demonstrates the Trim function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
 {\$H+}

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
   **WriteLn** ( ' ', Trim(S), ' ' );  
**end**;

**Begin**  
   Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
   Testit (#10#13'haha ' );  
   Testit ( ' ' );  
**End.**

---

**38.13.234 TrimLeft**

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the beginning of a string.

Declaration: `function TrimLeft(const S: String) : String`  
`function TrimLeft(const S: widestring) : widestring`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimLeft` strips blank characters (spaces) at the beginning of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped. If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` ([1309](#)), `TrimRight` ([1310](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex85.pp

---

```

Program Example85;

{ This program demonstrates the TrimLeft function }

Uses sysutils;
{$H+}

Procedure Testit (S : String);

begin
    WriteLn ( ' ', TrimLeft(S), ' ');
end;

Begin
    Testit ( '  ha ha what gets lost ? ');
    Testit (#10#13'haha ');
    Testit ( ' ');
End.

```

---

### 38.13.235 TrimRight

**Synopsis:** Trim whitespace from the end of a string.

**Declaration:** `function TrimRight(const S: String) : String`  
`function TrimRight(const S: widestring) : widestring`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Trim strips blank characters (spaces) at the end of S and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped. If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: Trim ([1309](#)), TrimLeft ([1309](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex86.pp

---

```

Program Example86;

{ This program demonstrates the TrimRight function }

Uses sysutils;
{$H+}

Procedure Testit (S : String);

begin
    WriteLn ( ' ', TrimRight(S), ' ');
end;

Begin
    Testit ( '  ha ha what gets lost ? ');
    Testit (#10#13'haha ');
    Testit ( ' ');
End.

```

---

**38.13.236 TryEncodeDate**

Synopsis: Try to encode a date, and indicate success.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDate(Year: Word;Month: Word;Day: Word;  
out Date: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeDate` will check the validity of the `Year`, `Month` and `Day` arguments, and if they are all valid, then they will be encoded as a `TDateTime` value and returned in `D`. The function will return `True` in this case. If an invalid argument is passed, then `False` will be returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, `False` is returned.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1229](#)), `DecodeDateFully` ([1225](#)), `DecodeDate` ([1224](#)), `TryEncodeTime` ([1311](#))

**38.13.237 TryEncodeTime**

Synopsis: Try to encode a time, and indicate success.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeTime(Hour: Word;Min: Word;Sec: Word;MSec: Word;  
out Time: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeTime` will check the validity of the `Hour`, `Min`, `Sec` and `MSec` arguments, and will encode them in a `TDateTime` value which is returned in `T`. If the arguments are valid, then `True` is returned, otherwise `False` is returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, `False` is returned.

See also: `EncodeTime` ([1229](#)), `DecodeTime` ([1225](#)), `TryEncodeDate` ([1311](#))

**38.13.238 TryFloatToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a float value to a currency value and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryFloatToCurr(const Value: Extended;var AResult: Currency)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryFloatToCurr` tries convert the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. If successful, the function returns `True` and the resulting currency value is returned in `AResult`. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` ([1183](#)) and `MaxCurrency` ([1183](#))). If not, `False` is returned.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, `False` is returned.

See also: `FloatToCurr` ([1247](#)), `MinCurrency` ([1183](#)), `MaxCurrency` ([1183](#))

**38.13.239 TryStringToGUID**

Synopsis: Try to transform a string to a GUID

Declaration: `function TryStringToGUID(const S: String;out Guid: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStringToGUID` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TGUID` value, returned in `GUID`. It returns `True` if the conversion succeeds, and `False` if the string `S` does not contain a valid GUID notation. The string `S` must be 38 characters long, must start with { and end on }, and contain a valid GUID string (hex number grouped using 8-4-4-4-12 digits).

Errors: In case `S` does not contain a valid GUID number, `False` is returned.

See also: `StringToGUID` ([1288](#))

**38.13.240 TryStrToBool**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a boolean value

Declaration: `function TryStrToBool(const S: String;out Value: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToBool` tries to convert the string `S` to a boolean value, and returns this value in `Value`. In this case, the function returns `True`. If `S` does not contain a valid boolean string, the function returns `False`, and the contents of `Value` is indetermined.

Valid boolean string constants are in the `FalseBoolStrs` ([1193](#)) (for `False` values) and `TrueBoolStrs` ([1196](#)) (for `True` values) variables.

See also: `StrToBool` ([1296](#)), `StrToBoolDef` ([1296](#))

**38.13.241 TryStrToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a currency

Declaration: `function TryStrToCurr(const S: String;out Value: Currency) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToCurr` converts the string `S` to a currency value and returns the value in `Value`. The function returns `True` if it was successful, `False` if not. This is contrary to `StrToCurr` ([1297](#)), which raises an exception when the conversion fails.

The function takes into account locale information.

See also: `StrToCurr` ([1297](#)), `TextToFloat` ([1306](#))

**38.13.242 TryStrToDate**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with a date indication to a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function TryStrToDate(const S: String;out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** TryStrToDate tries to convert the string *S* to a TDateTime date value, and stores the date in *Value*. The *Date* must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the *DateSeparator* character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the ShortDateFormat variable.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid date indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: [StrToDate \(1297\)](#), [StrToTime \(1303\)](#), [TryStrToTime \(1314\)](#), [TryStrToDateTime \(1313\)](#), [DateToStr \(1223\)](#), [TimeToStr \(1308\)](#)

### 38.13.243 TryStrToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string with date/time indication to a TDateTime value

```
Declaration: function TryStrToDateTime(const S: String;out Value: TDateTime)
                                         : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryStrToDateTime` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value, and stores the result in `Value`. The date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month (This is *not* supported in Delphi). The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid date and time indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: TryStrToDate ([1312](#)), TryStrToTime ([1314](#)), StrToDateTime ([1298](#)), StrToTime ([1303](#)), DateToStr ([1223](#)), TimeToStr ([1308](#))

### 38.13.244 TryStrToFloat

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a float.

```

Declaration: function TryStrToFloat(const S: String;out Value: Single) : Boolean
                function TryStrToFloat(const S: String;out Value: Single;
                                        const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
                function TryStrToFloat(const S: String;out Value: Double) : Boolean
                function TryStrToFloat(const S: String;out Value: Double;
                                        const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryStrToFloat` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and stores the result in `Value`. It returns `True` if the operation was succesful, and `False` if it failed. This operation takes into account the system settings for floating point representations.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned.

See also: [StrToFloat \(1299\)](#)

**38.13.245 TryStrToInt**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to an integer, and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryStrToInt(const s: String; out i: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToInt` tries to convert the string `S` to an integer, and returns `True` if this was successful. In that case the converted integer is returned in `I`. If the conversion failed, (an invalid string, or the value is out of range) then `False` is returned.

Errors: None. On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToInt` ([1301](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1314](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1302](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1301](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1302](#))

**38.13.246 TryStrToInt64**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to an int64 value, and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryStrToInt64(const s: String; out i: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToInt64` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value in `I` if successful. If the conversion was successful, the function result is `True`, or `False` otherwise. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the `$` character) are supported.

Errors: None. On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToInt64` ([1301](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1302](#)), `StrToInt` ([1301](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1314](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1302](#))

**38.13.247 TryStrToQWord**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a QWord value, and report on success

Declaration: `function TryStrToQWord(const s: String; out Q: QWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToQWord` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `QWord` (unsigned 64-bit) value, and stores the result in `I`. If the conversion fails, the function returns `False`, else it returns `True`.

See also: `StrToQWord` ([1303](#)), `StrToQWordDef` ([1303](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1314](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1314](#))

**38.13.248 TryStrToTime**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with a time indication to a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function TryStrToTime(const S: String; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToTime` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` time value, and stores the result in `Value`. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid time indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: [TryStrToDate \(1312\)](#), [TryStrToDateTime \(1313\)](#), [StrToDate \(1297\)](#), [StrToTime \(1303\)](#), [DateToStr \(1223\)](#), [TimeToStr \(1308\)](#)

### 38.13.249 UnhookSignal

Synopsis: UnHook a specified signal

Declaration: `procedure UnhookSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer; OnlyIfHooked: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnhookSignal` de-installs the RTL default signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum`. If `OnlyIfHooked` is `True` then `UnhookSignal` will first check if the signal was hooked by the RTL routines, and has not been overridden since.

### 38.13.250 UpperCase

Synopsis: Return an uppercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function UpperCase(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `UpperCase` returns the uppercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the `UpCase` function of the system unit, and is provided for compatiibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiLowerCase \(1202\)](#), [LowerCase \(1275\)](#), [AnsiUpperCase \(1210\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex87.pp`

---

**Program** `Example87;`

`{ This program demonstrates the UpperCase function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (UpperCase('this will come OUT ALL uPpErCaSe !'));`

**End.**

---

### 38.13.251 VendorName

Synopsis: Returns the application vendor name.

Declaration: `function VendorName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `VendorName` returns the application vendor name. This function does not do anything by itself, but uses the `OnGetVendorName (1195)` callback to get the application vendor name.

Errors: If `OnGetVendorName (1195)` is not set, an empty string is returned.

See also: [OnGetVendorName \(1195\)](#), [TGetVendorNameEvent \(1190\)](#)

**38.13.252 WideCompareStr**

Synopsis: Compare two widestrings (case sensitive)

Declaration: `function WideCompareStr(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

< 0 if `S1<S2`.

0 if `S1=S2`.

> 0 if `S1>S2`.

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `WideCompareText` (1316), the comparison is case sensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareText` (1316), `WideSameStr` (1318), `WideSameText` (1318)

**38.13.253 WideCompareText**

Synopsis: Compare two widestrings (ignoring case).

Declaration: `function WideCompareText(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

< 0 if `S1<S2`.

0 if `S1=S2`.

> 0 if `S1>S2`.

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `WideCompareStr` (1316), the comparison is case insensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareStr` (1316), `WideSameStr` (1318), `WideSameText` (1318)

**38.13.254 WideFmtStr**

Synopsis: Widestring format

Declaration: `procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString;const Fmt: WideString;  
const args: Array of const)  
procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString;const Fmt: WideString;  
const args: Array of const;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFmtStr` formats `Args` according to the format string in `Fmt` and returns the resulting string in `Res`.

See also: `WideFormat` (1317), `WideFormatBuf` (1317), `Format` (1254)

**38.13.255 WideFormat**

Synopsis: Format a wide string.

Declaration: 

```
function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString;const Args: Array of const)
                    : WideString
function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString;const Args: Array of const;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFormat` does the same as `Format` (1254) but accepts as a formatting string a `Widestring`. The resulting string is also a `Widestring`.

For more information about the used formatting characters, see the `Format` (1254) string.

See also: `Format` (1254)

**38.13.256 WideFormatBuf**

Synopsis: Format widestring in a buffer.

Declaration: 

```
function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer;BufLen: Cardinal;const Fmt;
                       fmtLen: Cardinal;const Args: Array of const)
                       : Cardinal
function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer;BufLen: Cardinal;const Fmt;
                       fmtLen: Cardinal;const Args: Array of const;
                       const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Cardinal
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFormatBuf` calls simply `WideFormat` (1317) with `Fmt` (with length `FmtLen` bytes) and stores maximum `BufLen` bytes in the buffer `buf`. It returns the number of copied bytes.

See also: `WideFmtStr` (1316), `WideFormat` (1317), `Format` (1254), `FormatBuf` (1259)

**38.13.257 WideLowerCase**

Synopsis: Change a widestring to all-lowercase.

Declaration: 

```
function WideLowerCase(const s: WideString) : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideLowerCase` converts the string `S` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On Unix-like platforms, a widestring manager must be installed for this function to work correctly.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideUpperCase` (1318)

**38.13.258 WideStringStr**

Synopsis: Check whether two widestrings are the same (case sensitive)

Declaration: `function WideStringStr(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideSameStr` returns `True` if `WideCompareStr` (1316) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when `S1` and `S2` are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameText` (1318), `WideCompareStr` (1316), `WideCompareText` (1316), `AnsiSameStr` (1203)

**38.13.259 WideStringText**

Synopsis: Check whether two widestrings are the same (ignoring case)

Declaration: `function WideStringText(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideSameText` returns `True` if `WideCompareText` (1316) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when `S1` and `S2` are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameStr` (1318), `WideCompareStr` (1316), `WideCompareText` (1316), `AnsiSameText` (1203)

**38.13.260 WideUpperCase**

Synopsis: Change a widestring to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function WideUpperCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideUpperCase` converts the string `S` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On Unix-like platforms, a widestring manager must be installed for this function to work correctly.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideLowerCase` (1317)

**38.13.261 WrapText**

Synopsis: Word-wrap a text.

Declaration: `function WrapText(const Line: String;const BreakStr: String;  
const BreakChars: TSysCharSet;MaxCol: Integer) : String  
function WrapText(const Line: String;MaxCol: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `WrapText` does a wordwrap at column `MaxCol` of the string in `Line`. It breaks the string only at characters which are in `BreakChars` (default whitespace and hyphen) and inserts then the string `BreakStr` (default the lineending character for the current OS).

See also: `StringReplace` (1288)

## 38.14 EAbort

### 38.14.1 Description

`EAbort` is raised by the `Abort` ([1196](#)) procedure. It is not displayed in GUI applications, and serves only to immediately abort the current procedure, and return control to the main program loop.

## 38.15 EAbstractError

### 38.15.1 Description

`EAbstractError` is raised when an abstract error occurs, i.e. when an unimplemented abstract method is called.

## 38.16 EAccessViolation

### 38.16.1 Description

`EAccessViolation` is raised when the OS reports an Access Violation, i.e. when invalid memory is accessed.

## 38.17 EAssertionFailed

### 38.17.1 Description

`EAssertionFailed` is raised when an application that is compiled with assertions, encounters an invalid assertion.

## 38.18 EBusError

### 38.18.1 Description

`EBusError` is raised in case of a bus error.

## 38.19 EControlC

### 38.19.1 Description

`EControlC` is raised when the user has pressed CTRL-C in a console application.

## 38.20 EConvertError

### 38.20.1 Description

`EConvertError` is raised by the various conversion routines in the `SysUtils` unit. The message will contain more specific error information.

## 38.21 EDivByZero

### 38.21.1 Description

EDivByZero is used when the operating system or CPU signals a division by zero error.

## 38.22 EExternal

### 38.22.1 Description

EExternal is the base exception for all external exceptions, as reported by the CPU or operating system, as opposed to internal exceptions, which are raised by the program itself. The SysUtils unit converts all operating system errors to descendents of EExternal.

## 38.23 EExternalException

### 38.23.1 Description

EExternalException is raised when an external routine raises an exception.

## 38.24 EFormatError

### 38.24.1 Description

EFormatError is raised in case of an error in one of the various Format ([1254](#)) functions.

## 38.25 EHeapMemoryError

### 38.25.1 Description

EHeapMemoryError is raised when an error occurs in heap (dynamically allocated) memory.

### 38.25.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1320</a>	FreeInstance	Free the exception instance

### 38.25.3 EHeapMemoryError.FreeInstance

Synopsis: Free the exception instance

Declaration: `procedure FreeInstance; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeInstance` checks whether the exception instance may be freed prior to calling the inherited `FreeInstance`. The exception is only freed in case of normal program shutdown, if a heap error occurred, the exception instance is not freed.

## 38.26 EInOutError

### 38.26.1 Description

`EInOutError` is raised when a IO routine of Free Pascal returns an error. The error is converted to an `EInOutError` only if the input/output checking feature of FPC is turned on. The error code of the input/output operation is returned in `ErrorCode` (??).

## 38.27 EIntError

### 38.27.1 Description

`EIntError` is used when the operating system or CPU signals an integer operation error, e.g., an overflow.

## 38.28 EIntfCastError

### 38.28.1 Description

`EIntfCastError` is raised when an invalid interface cast is encountered.

## 38.29 EIntOverflow

### 38.29.1 Description

`EIntOverflow` is used when the operating system or CPU signals a integer overflow error.

## 38.30 EInvalidCast

### 38.30.1 Description

`EInvalidCast` is raised when an invalid typecast error (using the `as` operator) is encountered.

## 38.31 EInvalidContainer

### 38.31.1 Description

`EInvalidContainer` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 38.32 EInvalidInsert

### 38.32.1 Description

`EInvalidInsert` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

### 38.33 EInvalidOp

#### 38.33.1 Description

EInvalidOp is raised when an invalid operation is encountered.

### 38.34 EInvalidPointer

#### 38.34.1 Description

EInvalidPointer is raised when an invalid heap pointer is used.

### 38.35 EMathError

#### 38.35.1 Description

EMathError is used when the operating system or CPU signals a floating point overflow error.

### 38.36 ENoThreadSupport

#### 38.36.1 Description

ENoThreadSupport is raised when some thread routines are invoked, and thread support was not enabled when the program was compiled.

### 38.37 ENoWideStringSupport

#### 38.37.1 Description

ENoWideStringSupport is the exception raised when a run-time 233 occurs, i.e. when widestring routines are called and the application does not contain widestring support.

### 38.38 EOSError

#### 38.38.1 Description

EOSError is raised when some Operating System call fails. The ErrorCode (??) property contains the operating system error code.

### 38.39 EOutOfMemory

#### 38.39.1 Description

EOutOfMemory occurs when memory can no longer be allocated on the heap. An instance of EOutOfMemory is allocated on the heap at program startup, so it is available when needed.

## **38.40 EOverflow**

### **38.40.1 Description**

`EOverflow` occurs when a float operation overflows. (i.e. result is too big to represent).

## **38.41 EPackageError**

### **38.41.1 Description**

`EPackageError` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## **38.42 EPrivilege**

### **38.42.1 Description**

`EPrivilege` is raised when the OS reports that an invalid instruction was executed.

## **38.43 EPropReadOnly**

### **38.43.1 Description**

`EPropReadOnly` is raised when an attempt is made to write to a read-only property.

## **38.44 EPropWriteOnly**

### **38.44.1 Description**

`EPropWriteOnly` is raised when an attempt is made to read from a write-only property.

## **38.45 ERangeError**

### **38.45.1 Description**

`ERangeError` is raised by the Free Pascal runtime library if range checking is on, and a range check error occurs.

## **38.46 ESafecallException**

### **38.46.1 Description**

`ESafecallException` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 38.47 EStackOverflow

### 38.47.1 Description

EStackOverflow occurs when the stack has grown too big (e.g. by infinite recursion).

## 38.48 EUnderflow

### 38.48.1 Description

EOverflow occurs when a float operation underflows (i.e. result is too small to represent).

## 38.49 EVariantError

### 38.49.1 Description

EVariantError is raised by the internal variant routines.

### 38.49.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1324</a>	CreateCode	Create an instance of EVariantError with a particular error code.

### 38.49.3 EVariantError.CreateCode

Synopsis: Create an instance of EVariantError with a particular error code.

Declaration: constructor CreateCode (Code: LongInt)

Visibility: default

Description: CreateCode calls the inherited constructor, and sets the ErrCode (??) property to Code.

See also: EVariantError.ErrCode (??)

## 38.50 Exception

### 38.50.1 Description

Exception is the base class for all exception handling routines in the RTL and FCL. While it is possible to raise an exception with any class descending from TObject, it is recommended to use Exception as the basis of exception class objects: the Exception class introduces properties to associate a message and a help context with the exception being raised. What is more, the SysUtils unit sets the necessary hooks to catch and display unhandled exceptions: in such cases, the message displayed to the end user, will be the message stored in the exception class.

**38.50.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1325</a>	Create	Constructs a new exception object with a given message.
<a href="#">1325</a>	CreateFmt	Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.
<a href="#">1326</a>	CreateFmtHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message
<a href="#">1326</a>	CreateHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.
<a href="#">1325</a>	CreateRes	Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.
<a href="#">1326</a>	CreateResFmt	Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.
<a href="#">1327</a>	CreateResFmtHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource
<a href="#">1326</a>	CreateResHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource

**38.50.3 Property overview**

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">1327</a>	HelpContext	rw	Help context associated with the exception.
<a href="#">1327</a>	Message	rw	Message associated with the exception.

**38.50.4 Exception.Create**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object with a given message.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const msg: String)`

Visibility: public

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.CreateFmt` ([1325](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1327](#))

**38.50.5 Exception.CreateFmt**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmt(const msg: String; const args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` ([1325](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1327](#)), `Format` ([1254](#))

**38.50.6 Exception.CreateRes**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateRes(ResString: PString)`

Visibility: public

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1325\)](#), [Exception.CreateFmt \(1325\)](#), [Exception.CreateResFmt \(1326\)](#), [Exception.Message \(1327\)](#)

### 38.50.7 Exception.CreateResFmt

**Synopsis:** Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.

**Declaration:** `constructor CreateResFmt (ResString: PString; const Args: Array of const)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `CreateResFmt` does the same as `CreateFmt (1325)`, but fetches the message from the resource string `ResString`.

**Errors:** Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1325\)](#), [Exception.CreateFmt \(1325\)](#), [Exception.CreateRes \(1325\)](#), [Exception.Message \(1327\)](#)

### 38.50.8 Exception.CreateHelp

**Synopsis:** Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.

**Declaration:** `constructor CreateHelp (const Msg: String; AHelpContext: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `CreateHelp` does the same as the `Create (1325)` constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext (1327)` property.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1325\)](#)

### 38.50.9 Exception.CreateFmtHelp

**Synopsis:** Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message

**Declaration:** `constructor CreateFmtHelp (const Msg: String; const Args: Array of const; AHelpContext: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `CreateFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateFmt (1325)` constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext (1327)` property.

See also: [Exception.CreateFmt \(1325\)](#)

### 38.50.10 Exception.CreateResHelp

**Synopsis:** Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource

**Declaration:** `constructor CreateResHelp (ResString: PString; AHelpContext: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `CreateResHelp` does the same as the `CreateRes (1325)` constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext (1327)` property.

See also: [Exception.CreateRes \(1325\)](#)

### 38.50.11 Exception.CreateResFmtHelp

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource

Declaration: constructor `CreateResFmtHelp(ResString: PString;  
const Args: Array of const;  
AHelpContext: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateResFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateResFmt` (1326) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1327) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateResFmt` (1326)

### 38.50.12 Exception.HelpContext

Synopsis: Help context associated with the exception.

Declaration: Property `HelpContext` : LongInt

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HelpContext` is the help context associated with the exception, and can be used to provide context-sensitive help when the exception error message is displayed. It should be set in the exception constructor.

See also: `Exception.CreateHelp` (1326), `Exception.Message` (1327)

### 38.50.13 Exception.Message

Synopsis: Message associated with the exception.

Declaration: Property `Message` : String

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Message` provides additional information about the exception. It is shown to the user in e.g. the `ShowException` (1281) routine, and should be set in the constructor when the exception is raised.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1325), `Exception.HelpContext` (1327)

## 38.51 EZeroDivide

### 38.51.1 Description

`EZeroDivide` occurs when a float division by zero occurs.

## 38.52 IReadWriteSync

### 38.52.1 Description

`IReadWriteSync` is an interface for synchronizing read/write operations. Writers are always guaranteed to have exclusive access: readers may or may not have simultaneous access, depending on the implementation.

### 38.52.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1328</a>	<code>BeginRead</code>	Start a read operation.
<a href="#">1328</a>	<code>BeginWrite</code>	Start a write operation.
<a href="#">1328</a>	<code>EndRead</code>	End a read operation
<a href="#">1329</a>	<code>EndWrite</code>	End a write operation.

### 38.52.3 IReadWriteSync.BeginRead

Synopsis: Start a read operation.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRead`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `BeginRead` indicates that a read operation is about to be started. If a write operation is in progress, then the call will block until the write operation finished. Depending on the implementation the call may also block if another read operation is in progress.

After `BeginRead`, any write operation started with `BeginWrite` ([1328](#)) will block until `EndRead` ([1328](#)) is called.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1328](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` ([1328](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1329](#))

### 38.52.4 IReadWriteSync.EndRead

Synopsis: End a read operation

Declaration: `procedure EndRead`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `EndRead` signals the end of a read operation. If there was any blocked write operation, that will be unblocked by a call to `EndRead`.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1328](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` ([1328](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1329](#))

### 38.52.5 IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite

Synopsis: Start a write operation.

Declaration: `function BeginWrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

**Description:** `BeginWrite` signals the begin of a write operation. This call will block if any other read or write operation is currently in progress. It will resume only after all other read or write operations have finished.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1328](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1329](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1328](#))

### 38.52.6 IReadWriteSync.EndWrite

**Synopsis:** End a write operation.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndWrite`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `EndWrite` signals the end of a write operation. After the call to `EndWrite` any other read or write operations can start.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1328](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1329](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1328](#))

## 38.53 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer

### 38.53.1 Description

`TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` is a default implementation of the `IReadWriteSync` ([1328](#)) interface. It uses a single mutex to protect access to the read/write resource, resulting in a single thread having access to the resource.

### 38.53.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1330</a>	<code>Beginread</code>	Request read access to the resource
<a href="#">1330</a>	<code>Beginwrite</code>	Request write access to the resource.
<a href="#">1329</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</code> class
<a href="#">1330</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the <code>TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</code> instance
<a href="#">1331</a>	<code>Endread</code>	Release read access to the resource
<a href="#">1330</a>	<code>Endwrite</code>	Release write access to the resource

### 38.53.3 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of the `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` class

**Declaration:** `constructor Create; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer`. It initializes a `TRTLCriticalSection`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `#rtl.system.TRITLCriticalSection` ([1004](#))

### 38.53.4 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create destroys the instance of TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer. It frees the TRTLCriticalSection it initialized, and calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.system.TRTLCriticalSection` ([1004](#))

### 38.53.5 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginwrite

Synopsis: Request write access to the resource.

Declaration: `function Beginwrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Beginwrite is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite. It simply enters the critical section, and returns True.

Errors: None.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` ([1328](#)), `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.EndWrite` ([1330](#))

### 38.53.6 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endwrite

Synopsis: Release write access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Endwrite`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Beginwrite is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.EndWrite. It simply leaves the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1329](#)), `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.BeginWrite` ([1330](#))

### 38.53.7 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginread

Synopsis: Request read access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Beginread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: BeginRead is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.BeginRead. It simply attempts to enter the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1328](#)), `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.EndRead` ([1331](#))

### 38.53.8 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endread

Synopsis: Release read access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Endread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndRead` is the implementation of `IReadWriteSync.EndRead`. It simply leaves the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1328](#)), `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.BeginRead` ([1330](#))

## Chapter 39

# Reference for unit 'typinfo'

### 39.1 Auxiliary functions

Other typinfo related functions.

Table 39.1:

Name	Description
<a href="#">GetEnumName (1341)</a>	Get an enumerated type element name
<a href="#">GetEnumValue (1342)</a>	Get ordinal number of an enumerated type, based on the name.
<a href="#">GetEnumNameCount (1341)</a>	Get number of elements in an enumerated type.
<a href="#">GetTypeData (1355)</a>	Skip type name and return a pointer to the type data
<a href="#">SetToString (1364)</a>	Convert a set to its string representation
<a href="#">StringToSet (1366)</a>	Convert a string representation of a set to a set

### 39.2 Getting or setting property values

Functions to set or set a property's value.

### 39.3 Examining published property information

Functions for retrieving or examining property information

### 39.4 Used units

### 39.5 Overview

The `TypeInfo` unit contains many routines which can be used for the querying of the Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) which is generated by the compiler for classes that are compiled under the `{ $M+ }` switch. This information can be used to retrieve or set property values for published properties for totally unknown classes. In particular, it can be used to stream classes. The `TPersistent`

Table 39.2:

Name	Description
<a href="#">GetEnumProp (1342)</a>	Return the value of an enumerated type property
<a href="#">GetFloatProp (1343)</a>	Return the value of a float property
<a href="#">GetInt64Prop (1344)</a>	Return the value of an Int64 property
<a href="#">GetMethodProp (1345)</a>	Return the value of a procedural type property
<a href="#">GetObjectProp (1347)</a>	Return the value of an object property
<a href="#">GetOrdProp (1349)</a>	Return the value of an ordinal type property
<a href="#">GetPropValue (1352)</a>	Return the value of a property as a variant
<a href="#">GetSetProp (1352)</a>	Return the value of a set property
<a href="#">GetStrProp (1354)</a>	Return the value of a string property
<a href="#">GetWideStrProp (1356)</a>	Return the value of a widestring property
<a href="#">GetVariantProp (1355)</a>	Return the value of a variant property
<a href="#">SetEnumProp (1359)</a>	Set the value of an enumerated type property
<a href="#">SetFloatProp (1360)</a>	Set the value of a float property
<a href="#">SetInt64Prop (1360)</a>	Set the value of an Int64 property
<a href="#">SetMethodProp (1361)</a>	Set the value of a procedural type property
<a href="#">SetObjectProp (1361)</a>	Set the value of an object property
<a href="#">SetOrdProp (1362)</a>	Set the value of an ordinal type property
<a href="#">SetPropValue (1362)</a>	Set the value of a property through a variant
<a href="#">SetSetProp (1363)</a>	Set the value of a set property
<a href="#">SetStrProp (1363)</a>	Set the value of a string property
<a href="#">SetWideStrProp (1365)</a>	Set the value of a widestring property
<a href="#">SetVariantProp (1365)</a>	Set the value of a variant property

class in the **Classes** unit is compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state and serves as the base class for all classes that need to be streamed.

The unit should be compatible to the Delphi 5 unit with the same name. The only calls that are still missing are the Variant calls, since Free Pascal does not support the variant type yet.

The examples in this chapter use a `rttiobj` auxiliary unit, which contains an object that has a published property for all supported types. It also contains some auxiliary routines and definitions. This unit is included in the documentation sources, in the directory `typinfex`.

## 39.6 Constants, types and variables

### 39.6.1 Constants

```
BooleanIdents : Array[Boolean] of String = ('False', 'True' )
```

Names for boolean values

```
DotSep : String = '.'
```

Name separator character

```
OnGetPropValue : TGetPropValue = nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the [GetPropValue \(1352\)](#) function.

Table 39.3:

Name	Description
FindPropInfo (1339)	Getting property type information, With error checking.
GetPropInfo (1350)	Getting property type information, No error checking.
GetPropInfos (1350)	Find property information of a certain kind
GetObjectPropClass (1348)	Return the declared class of an object property
GetPropList (1351)	Get a list of all published properties
IsPublishedProp (1356)	Is a property published
IsStoredProp (1357)	Is a property stored
PropIsType (1358)	Is a property of a certain kind
PropType (1359)	Return the type of a property

Table 39.4: Used units by unit 'typinfo'

Name	Page
sysutils	1174

OnGetVariantprop : TGetVariantProp = nil

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of variant properties. If set, it is called by the GetVariantProp (1355) function.

OnSetPropValue : TSetPropValue = nil

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the SetPropValue (1362) function.

OnSetVariantprop : TSetVariantProp = nil

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of variant properties. If set, it is called by the GetVariantProp (1355) function.

ptConst = 3

Constant used in acces method

ptField = 0

Property acces directly from field

ptStatic = 1

Property acces via static method

ptVirtual = 2

Property acces via virtual method

`tkAny = [Low ( TTypeKind ) ..High ( TTypeKind ) ]`

Any property type

`tkMethods = [tkMethod]`

Only method properties. (event handlers)

`tkProperties = tkAny - tkMethods - [tkUnknown]`

Real properties. (not methods)

`tkString = tkSSString`

Alias for the `tsSSString` enumeration value

### 39.6.2 Types

`PPropInfo = ^TPropInfo`

Pointer to `TPropInfo` (1338) record

`PPropList = ^TPropList`

Pointer to `TPropList` (1338)

`PTypeInfo = ^PTypeInfo`

Pointer to `PTypeInfo` (1335) pointer

`PTypeData = ^TTypeData`

Pointer to `TTypeData` (1338) record.

`PTypeInfo = ^TTypeInfo`

Pointer to `TTypeInfo` (1338) record

`ShortStringBase =`

`ShortStringBase` is the base definition of a short string.

`TFloatType = (ftSingle, ftDouble, ftExtended, ftComp, ftCurr)`

The size of a float type.

`TGetPropValue = function (Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant`

The callback function must return the property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance`. If `PreferStrings` is true, it should favour converting the property to a string value. The function needs to return the variant with the property value.

Table 39.5: Enumeration values for type TFloatType

Value	Explanation
ftComp	Comp-type float
ftCurr	Currency-type float
ftDouble	Double-sized float
ftExtended	Extended-size float
ftSingle	Single-sized float

```
TGetVariantProp = function (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
    : Variant
```

The callback function must return the variant property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance`.

```
TIntfFlag = (ifHasGuid, ifDispInterface, ifDispatch, ifHasStrGUID)
```

Table 39.6: Enumeration values for type TIntfFlag

Value	Explanation
ifDispatch	Interface is a dispatch interface
ifDispInterface	Interface is a dual dispatch interface
ifHasGuid	Interface has GUID identifier
ifHasStrGUID	Interface has a string GUID identifier

Type of interface.

```
TIntfFlags= Set of (ifDispatch, ifDispInterface, ifHasGuid, ifHasStrGUID)
```

Set of TIntfFlag ([1336](#)).

```
TIntfFlagsBase= Set of (ifDispatch, ifDispInterface, ifHasGuid,
    ifHasStrGUID)
```

Set of TIntfFlag ([1336](#)).

```
TMethodKind = (mkProcedure, mkFunction, mkConstructor, mkDestructor,
    mkClassProcedure, mkClassFunction)
```

Method type description

```
TOrdType = (otSByte, otUByte, otSWord, otUWord, otSLong, otULong)
```

If the property is and ordinal type, then `TOrdType` determines the size and sign of the ordinal type:

```
TParamFlag = (pfVar, pfConst, pfArray, pfAddress, pfReference, pfOut)
```

`TParamFlag` describes a parameter.

Table 39.7: Enumeration values for type TMethodKind

Value	Explanation
mkClassFunction	Class function
mkClassProcedure	Class procedure
mkConstructor	Class constructor
mkDestructor	Class Desctructor
mkFunction	Function method
mkProcedure	Procedure method.

Table 39.8: Enumeration values for type TOrdType

Value	Explanation
otSByte	Signed byte
otSLong	Signed longint
otSWord	Signed word
otUByte	Unsigned byte
otULong	Unsigned longing (Cardinal)
otUWord	Unsigned word

TParamFlags= Set of (pfAddress,pfArray,pfConst,pfOut,pfReference,pfVar)

The kind of parameter for a method

TProcInfoProc = procedure(PropInfo: PPropInfo) of object

Property info callback method

```
TPropData = packed record
  PropCount : Word;
  PropList : record
    _alignmentdummy : ptrint;
  end;
end
end
```

The TPropData record is not used, but is provided for completeness and compatibility with Delphi.

```
TPropInfo = packed record
  PropType : PTypeInfo;
  GetProc : Pointer;
  SetProc : Pointer;
  StoredProc : Pointer;
  Index : Integer;
  Default : LongInt;
  NameIndex : SmallInt;
  PropProcs : Byte;
  Name : ShortString;
end
```

Table 39.9: Enumeration values for type TParamFlag

Value	Explanation
pfAddress	Parameter is passed by address
pfArray	Parameter is an array parameter
pfConst	Parameter is a const parameter (i.e. cannot be modified)
pfOut	Parameter is a string parameter
pfReference	Parameter is passed by reference
pfVar	Parameter is a var parameter (passed by reference)

The TPropInfo record describes one published property of a class. The property information of a class are stored as an array of TPropInfo records.

The Name field is stored not with 255 characters, but with just as many characters as required to store the name.

```
TPropList = Array[0..65535] of PPropInfo
```

Array of property information pointers

```
TSetPropValue = procedure (Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                           const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the property with name PropName of instance Instance to Value.

```
TSetVariantProp = procedure (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                             const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the variant property with name PropName of instance to Value.

```
TTypeInfoData = packed record
end
```

If the typeinfo kind is tkClass, then the property information follows the UnitName string, as an array of TPropInfo (1338) records.

```
TTypeInfo = record
  Kind : TTypeKind;
  Name : ShortString;
end
```

The TypeInfo function returns a pointer to a TTypeInfo record.

Note that the Name field is stored with as much bytes as needed to store the name, it is not padded to 255 characters. The type data immediately follows the TTypeInfo record as a TTypeInfoData (1338) record.

```
TTypeKind = (tkUnknown, tkInteger, tkChar, tkEnumeration, tkFloat, tkSet,
             tkMethod, tkSString, tkLString, tkAString, tkWString, tkVariant,
             tkArray, tkRecord, tkInterface, tkClass, tkObject, tkWChar,
             tkBool, tkInt64, tkQWord, tkDynArray, tkInterfaceRaw, tkProcVar,
             tkUString, tkUChar)
```

Table 39.10: Enumeration values for type TTypeKind

Value	Explanation
tkArray	Array property.
tkAString	Ansistring property.
tkBool	Boolean property.
tkChar	Char property.
tkClass	Class property.
tkDynArray	Dynamical array property.
tkEnumeration	Enumeration type property.
tkFloat	Float property.
tkInt64	Int64 property.
tkInteger	Integer property.
tkInterface	Interface property.
tkInterfaceRaw	Raw interface property.
tkLString	Longstring property.
tkMethod	Method property.
tkObject	Object property.
tkProcVar	Procedural variable
tkQWord	QWord property.
tkRecord	Record property.
tkSet	Set property.
tkSString	Shortstring property.
tkUChar	Unicode character
tkUnknown	Unknown property type.
tkUString	Unicode string
tkVariant	Variant property.
tkWChar	Widechar property.
tkWString	Widestring property.

Type of a property.

```
TTypeKinds= Set of (tkArray,tkAString,tkBool,tkChar,tkClass,tkDynArray,
tkEnumeration,tkFloat,tkInt64,tkInteger,tkInterface,
tkInterfaceRaw,tkLString,tkMethod,tkObject,
tkProcVar,tkQWord,tkRecord,tkSet,tkSString,tkUChar,
tkUnknown,tkUString,tkVariant,tkWChar,tkWString)
```

Set of TTypeKind ([1339](#)) enumeration.

## 39.7 Procedures and functions

### 39.7.1 FindPropInfo

Synopsis: Return property information by property name.

```
Declaration: function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String)
: PPropInfo
function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;
AKind: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass;const PropName: String) : PPropInfo
```

```
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass; const PropName: String;
                     AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindPropInfo` examines the published property information of a class and returns a pointer to the property information for property `PropName`. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass** a class pointer.

**Instance** an instance of the class to be investigated.

If the property does not exist, a `EPropertyError` exception will be raised. The `GetPropInfo` (1350) function has the same function as the `FindPropInfo` function, but returns `Nil` if the property does not exist.

**Errors:** Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetPropInfo` (1350), `GetPropList` (1351), `GetPropInfos` (1350)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `example13`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FindPropInfo function }
```

```
{ $mode objfpc }
```

**uses**

```
    rttiobj , typinfo , sysutils ;
```

**Var**

```
    O : TMyTestObject ;
```

```
    PT : PTypeData ;
```

```
    PI : PPropInfo ;
```

```
    I , J : Longint ;
```

```
    PP : PPropList ;
```

```
    prl : PPropInfo ;
```

**begin**

```
    O := TMyTestObject.Create ;
```

```
    PI := FindPropInfo(O, 'BooleanField') ;
```

```
    WriteLn('FindPropInfo(Instance, BooleanField) : ', PI^.Name) ;
```

```
    PI := FindPropInfo(O.ClassType, 'ByteField') ;
```

```
    WriteLn('FindPropInfo(Class, ByteField) : ', PI^.Name) ;
```

```
    Write('FindPropInfo(Class, NonExistingProp) : ');
```

```
    Try
```

```
        PI := FindPropInfo(O, 'NonExistingProp') ;
```

```
    except
```

```
        On E: Exception do
```

```
            WriteLn('Caught exception "', E.ClassName, '" with message : ', E.Message) ;
```

```
        end ;
```

```
    O.Free ;
```

```
end.
```

---

### 39.7.2 GetEnumName

Synopsis: Return name of enumeration constant.

Declaration: `function GetEnumName (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumName` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the name of the enumeration constant for the element with ordinal value equal to `Value`.

If `Value` is out of range, the first element of the enumeration type is returned. The result is lower-cased, but this may change in the future.

This can be used in combination with `GetOrdProp` to stream a property of an enumerated type.

Errors: No check is done to determine whether `TypeInfo` really points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetOrdProp` ([1349](#)), `GetEnumValue` ([1342](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex9.pp`

---

```

program example9;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumName, GetEnumValue functions }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  TI : PTypeInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  TI := GetPropInfo(O, 'MyEnumField')^.PropType;
  WriteLn ( 'GetEnumName          : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  WriteLn ( 'GetEnumValue(mefirst) : ', GetEnumName(TI, GetEnumValue(TI, 'mefirst')));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.3 GetEnumNameCount

Synopsis: Return number of names in an enumerated type

Declaration: `function GetEnumNameCount (enum1: PTypeInfo) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumNameCount` returns the number of values (names) in the enumerated type, described by `enum1`

Errors: No checking is done to see whether `Enum1` is really type information of an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumValue` ([1342](#)), `GetEnumName` ([1341](#))

### 39.7.4 GetEnumProp

Synopsis: Return the value of an enumeration type property.

Declaration: `function GetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : String`  
`function GetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo)`  
`: String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumProp` returns the value of an property of an enumerated type and returns the name of the enumerated value for the object `Instance`. The property whose value must be returned can be specified by its property info in `PropInfo` or by its name in `PropName`

Errors: No check is done to determine whether `PropInfo` really points to the property information for an enumerated type. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetEnumProp` (1359), `GetOrdProp` (1349), `GetStrProp` (1354), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345), `GetSetProp` (1352), `GetObjectProp` (1347), `GetEnumProp` (1342)

Listing: `./typinfex/ex2.pp`

---

```

program example2;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  TI : PTypeInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'MyEnumField');
  TI := PI^.PropType;
  Writeln('Enum property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  Writeln('Get (name)                : ', GetEnumProp(O, 'MyEnumField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)            : ', GetEnumProp(O, PI));
  SetEnumProp(O, 'MyEnumField', 'meFirst');
  Writeln('Set (name, meFirst)       : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  SetEnumProp(O, PI, 'meSecond');
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, meSecond) : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.5 GetEnumValue

Synopsis: Get ordinal value for enumerated type by name

Declaration: `function GetEnumValue(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Name: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetEnumValue` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the ordinal value for the element in the enumerated type that has identifier `Name`. The identifier is searched in a case-insensitive manner.

This can be used to set the value of enumerated properties from a stream.

For an example, see `GetEnumName` (1341).

**Errors:** If `Name` is not found in the list of enumerated values, then -1 is returned. No check is done whether `TypeInfo` points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1341), `SetOrdProp` (1362)

### 39.7.6 GetFloatProp

**Synopsis:** Return value of floating point property

**Declaration:** `function GetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Extended`  
`function GetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)`  
`: Extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetFloatProp` returns the value of the float property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`. All float types are converted to extended.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid float property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetFloatProp` (1360), `GetOrdProp` (1349), `GetStrProp` (1354), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345), `GetSetProp` (1352), `GetObjectProp` (1347), `GetEnumProp` (1342)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex4.pp`

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the GetFloatProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Real property : ');
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'RealField');
  Writeln('Value           : ', O.RealField);
  Writeln('Get (name)         : ', GetFloatProp(O, 'RealField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)      : ', GetFloatProp(O, PI));
  SetFloatProp(O, 'RealField', system.Pi);
  Writeln('Set (name, pi)      : ', O.RealField);
  SetFloatProp(O, PI, exp(1));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, e)   : ', O.RealField);
  Writeln('Extended property : ');

```

---

```

PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'ExtendedField');
Writeln('Value           : ',O.ExtendedField);
Writeln('Get (name)       : ',GetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField'));
Writeln('Get (propinfo)    : ',GetFloatProp(O, PI));
SetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField',system.Pi);
Writeln('Set (name,pi)     : ',O.ExtendedField);
SetFloatProp(O, PI,exp(1));
Writeln('Set (propinfo,e) : ',O.ExtendedField);
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.7 GetInt64Prop

Synopsis: return value of an Int64 property

**Declaration:** function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64  
function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : Int64

Visibility: default

**Description:** Publishing of Int64 properties is not yet supported by Free Pascal. This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only at the moment.

GetInt64Prop returns the value of the property of type Int64 that is described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid Int64 property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception

See also: SetInt64Prop (1360), GetOrdProp (1349), GetStrProp (1354), GetFloatProp (1343), GetMethodProp (1345), GetSetProp (1352), GetObjectProp (1347), GetEnumProp (1342)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex15.pp

---

```

program example15;

{ This program demonstrates the GetInt64Prop function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Int64 property : ');
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'Int64Field');
  Writeln('Value           : ',O.Int64Field);
  Writeln('Get (name)       : ',GetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)    : ',GetInt64Prop(O, PI));
  SetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field',12345);
  Writeln('Set (name,12345)   : ',O.Int64Field);
  SetInt64Prop(O, PI,54321);
  Writeln('Set (propinfo,54321) : ',O.Int64Field);

```

O. Free ;  
end.

### 39.7.8 GetInterfaceProp

### Synopsis: Return interface-typed property

```
Declaration: function GetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String)
            : IInterface
function GetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo)
            : IInterface
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetInterfaceProp` returns the interface which the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [SetInterfaceProp \(1361\)](#), [GetOrdProp \(1349\)](#), [GetStrProp \(1354\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1343\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1344\)](#), [GetSetProp \(1352\)](#), [GetObjectProp \(1347\)](#), [GetEnumProp \(1342\)](#)

### 39.7.9 GetMethodProp

### Synopsis: Return value of a method property

```
Declaration: function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TMethod
            function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String)
                                : TMethod
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetMethodProp returns the method the property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for object Instance. The return type TMethod is defined in the SysUtils unit as:

```
TMethod = packed record
    Code, Data: Pointer;
end;
```

Data points to the instance of the class with the method Code.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [SetMethodProp \(1361\)](#), [GetOrdProp \(1349\)](#), [GetStrProp \(1354\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1343\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1344\)](#), [GetSetProp \(1352\)](#), [GetObjectProp \(1347\)](#), [GetEnumProp \(1342\)](#)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the GetMethodProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo , sysutils;

Type
  TNotifyObject = Class(TObject)
    Procedure Notification1 (Sender : TObject);
    Procedure Notification2 (Sender : TObject);
  end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification1 (Sender : TObject);

begin
  Write ( 'Received notification 1 of object with class: ' );
  WriteLn ( Sender.ClassName );
end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification2 (Sender : TObject);

begin
  Write ( 'Received notification 2 of object with class: ' );
  WriteLn ( Sender.ClassName );
end;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO : TNotifyObject;
  M : TMethod;

Procedure PrintMethod ( Const M : TMethod );

begin
  If ( M.Data=Pointer(NO) ) Then
    If ( M.Code=Pointer ( @TNotifyObject.Notification1 ) ) then
      WriteLn ( ' Notification1 ' )
    else If ( M.Code=Pointer ( @TNotifyObject.Notification2 ) ) then
      WriteLn ( ' Notification2 ' )
    else
      begin
        Write ( 'Unknown method adress ( data: ' );
        Write ( hexStr ( Longint ( M.data ) , 8 ) );
        WriteLn ( ' , code: ' , hexstr ( Longint ( M.Code ) , 8 ) , ' ' );
      end;
    end;
end;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  NO:=TNotifyObject.Create;
  O.NotifyEvent:=@NO.Notification1;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'NotifyEvent');
  WriteLn ( 'Method property : ' );
  Write ( 'Notifying
    : ');

```

```

O. Notify;
Write( 'Get (name)           : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, 'NotifyEvent');
PrintMethod(M);
Write( 'Notifying           : ');
O. Notify;
Write( 'Get (propinfo)       : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
M:=TMethod(@NO. Notification2);
SetMethodProp(O, 'NotifyEvent',M);
Write( 'Set (name, Notification2) : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write( 'Notifying           : ');
O. Notify;
Write( 'Set (propinfo, Notification1) : ');
M:=TMethod(@NO. Notification1);
SetMethodProp(O, PI,M);
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write( 'Notifying           : ');
O. Notify;
O. Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.10 GetObjectProp

Synopsis: Return value of an object-type property.

Declaration: `function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : TObject`

```

function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;
                      MinClass: TClass) : TObject
function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TObject
function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      MinClass: TClass) : TObject

```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetObjectProp` returns the object which the property described by `PropInfo` with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

If `MinClass` is specified, then if the object is not descendent of class `MinClass`, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` (1361), `GetOrdProp` (1349), `GetStrProp` (1354), `GetFloatProp` (1343), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetSetProp` (1352), `GetObjectProp` (1347), `GetEnumProp` (1342)

Listing: `./typinfex/ex5.pp`

---

**program** example5;

---

```

{ This program demonstrates the GetObjectProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO1, NO2 : TNamedObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  NO1 := TNamedObject.Create;
  NO1.ObjectName := 'First named object';
  NO2 := TNamedObject.Create;
  NO2.ObjectName := 'Second named object';
  O.ObjField := NO1;
  Writeln('Object property : ');
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'ObjField');
  Write('Property class      : ');
  Writeln(GetObjectPropClass(O, 'ObjField').ClassName);
  Write('Value                : ');
  Writeln((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  Write('Get (name)              : ');
  Writeln((GetObjectProp(O, 'ObjField') as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  Write('Get (propinfo)          : ');
  Writeln((GetObjectProp(O, PI, TObj) as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  SetObjectProp(O, 'ObjField', NO2);
  Write('Set (name, NO2)         : ');
  Writeln((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  SetObjectProp(O, PI, NO1);
  Write('Set (propinfo, NO1)    : ');
  Writeln((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.11 GetObjectPropClass

Synopsis: Return class of property.

Declaration: `function GetObjectPropClass(Instance: TObj; const PropName: String) : TClass`  
`function GetObjectPropClass(AClass: TClass; const PropName: String) : TClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetObjectPropClass` returns the declared class of the property with name `PropName`. This may not be the actual class of the property value.

For an example, see `GetObjectProp` ([1347](#)).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` ([1361](#)), `GetOrdProp` ([1349](#)), `GetStrProp` ([1354](#)), `GetFloatProp` ([1343](#)), `GetInt64Prop` ([1344](#))

### 39.7.12 GetOrdProp

Synopsis: Get the value of an ordinal property

Declaration: `function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetOrdProp` returns the value of the ordinal property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for the object `Instance`. The value is returned as a longint, which should be typecasted to the needed type.

Ordinal properties that can be retrieved include:

**Integers and subranges of integers** The value of the integer will be returned.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types** The ordinal value of the enumerated type will be returned.

**Sets** If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. If a bit is set in the return value, then the corresponding element of the base ordinal class of the set type must be included in the set.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetOrdProp` (1362), `GetStrProp` (1354), `GetFloatProp` (1343), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345), `GetSetProp` (1352), `GetObjectProp` (1347), `GetEnumProp` (1342)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex1.pp`

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetOrdProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Boolean property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                  : ', O.BooleanField);
  Writeln('Ord(Value)                   : ', Ord(O.BooleanField));
  Writeln('Get (name)                   : ', GetOrdProp(O, 'BooleanField'));
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'BooleanField');
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)               : ', GetOrdProp(O, PI));
  SetOrdProp(O, 'BooleanField', Ord(False));
  Writeln('Set (name, false)            : ', O.BooleanField);
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, Ord(True));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, true)         : ', O.BooleanField);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.13 GetPropInfo

Synopsis: Return property type information, by property name.

Declaration:

```

function GetPropInfo (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const PropName: String)
    : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const PropName: String;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)
    : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (AClass: TClass; const PropName: String) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (AClass: TClass; const PropName: String;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo

```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPropInfo` returns a pointer to the `TPropInfo` record for a the `PropName` property of a class. The class to examine can be specified in one of three ways:

**Instance** An instance of the class.

**AClass** A class pointer to the class.

**TypeInfo** A pointer to the type information of the class.

In each of these three ways, if `AKinds` is specified, if the property has `TypeKind` which is not included in `AKinds`, `Nil` will be returned.

For an example, see most of the other functions.

Errors: If the property `PropName` does not exist, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `GetPropInfos` ([1350](#)), `GetPropList` ([1351](#))

### 39.7.14 GetPropInfos

Synopsis: Return a list of published properties.

Declaration:

```

procedure GetPropInfos (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; PropList: PPropList)

```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPropInfos` stores pointers to the property information of all published properties of a class with class info `TypeInfo` in the list pointed to by `PropList`. The `PropList` pointer must point to a memory location that contains enough space to hold all properties of the class and its parent classes.

Errors: No checks are done to see whether `PropList` points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

See also: `GetPropInfo` ([1350](#)), `GetPropList` ([1351](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex12.pp`

**Program** `example12;`

*{ This program demonstrates the GetPropInfos function }*

---

```

uses
    rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject ;
    PT : PTypeData ;
    PI : PTypeInfo ;
    I , J : Longint ;
    PP : PPropList ;
    prl : PPropInfo ;

begin
    O := TMyTestObject.Create ;
    PI := O.ClassInfo ;
    PT := GetTypeData(PI) ;
    WriteLn('Property Count : ', PT^.PropCount) ;
    GetMem(PP, PT^.PropCount * SizeOf(Pointer)) ;
    GetPropInfos(PI, PP) ;
    For I := 0 to PT^.PropCount - 1 do
        begin
            With PP^[I]^ do
                begin
                    Write('Property ', I + 1 : 3, ': ', name : 30) ;
                    writeln('  Type: ', TypeNames[typinfo.PropType(O, Name)]) ;
                end ;
            end ;
        FreeMem(PP) ;
    O.Free ;
end .

```

---

### 39.7.15 GetPropList

**Synopsis:** Return a list of a certain type of published properties.

**Declaration:**

```

function GetPropList (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; TypeKinds: TTypeKinds;
                      PropList: PPropList; Sorted: Boolean) : LongInt
function GetPropList (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; out PropList: PPropList)
                      : SizeInt
function GetPropList (AClass: TClass; out PropList: PPropList) : Integer
function GetPropList (Instance: TObject; out PropList: PPropList)
                      : Integer

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetPropList stores pointers to property information of the class with class info TypeInfo for properties of kind TypeKinds in the list pointed to by PropList. PropList must contain enough space to hold all properties.

The function returns the number of pointers that matched the criteria and were stored in PropList.

**Errors:** No checks are done to see whether PropList points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

**See also:** GetPropInfos ([1350](#)), GetPropInfo ([1350](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program example13;

{ This program demonstrates the GetPropList function }

uses
    rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject;
    PT : PTypeData;
    PI : PTypeInfo;
    I, J : Longint;
    PP : PPropList;
    prl : PPropInfo;

begin
    O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
    PI:=O.ClassInfo;
    PT:=GetTypeData(PI);
    WriteLn('Total property Count : ', PT^.PropCount);
    GetMem (PP, PT^.PropCount*SizeOf(Pointer));
    J:=GetPropList(PI, OrdinalTypes, PP);
    WriteLn('Ordinal property Count : ', J);
    For I:=0 to J-1 do
        begin
            With PP^[I]^ do
                begin
                    Write('Property ', i+1:3, ': ', name:30);
                    writeLn('  Type: ', TypeName[typinfo.PropType(O, Name)]);
                end;
            end;
        FreeMem(PP);
        O.Free;
    end.

```

---

### 39.7.16 GetPropValue

Synopsis: Get property value as a string.

Declaration: `function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : Variant`  
`function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String; PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, GetPropValue is not yet implemented. The declaration is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

Errors:

### 39.7.17 GetSetProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a set property.

**Declaration:** `function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : String`  
`function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;`  
`Brackets: Boolean) : String`  
`function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject;const PropInfo: PPropInfo;`  
`Brackets: Boolean) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetSetProp` returns the contents of a set property as a string. The property to be returned can be specified by its name in `PropName` or by its property information in `PropInfo`.

The returned set is a string representation of the elements in the set as returned by `SetToString` (1364). The `Brackets` option can be used to enclose the string representation in square brackets.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetSetProp` (1363), `GetStrProp` (1354), `GetFloatProp` (1343), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program example7;

{ This program demonstrates the GetSetProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

Function SetAsString (ASet : TMyEnums) : String;

Var
  i : TmyEnum;

begin
  result := '';
  For i := mefirst to methird do
    If i in ASet then
      begin
        If (Result <> '') then
          Result := Result + ', ';
        Result := Result + MyEnumNames[i];
      end;
end;

Var
  S : TMyEnums;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  O.SetField := [mefirst, meSecond, meThird];
  WriteLn('Set property      : ');
  WriteLn('Value                : ', SetAsString(O.SetField));

```

---

```

Writeln ( 'Ord (Value)                : ', Longint (O. SetField));
Writeln ( 'Get (name)                 : ', GetSetProp (O, 'SetField'));
PI := GetPropInfo (O, 'SetField');
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)             : ', GetSetProp (O, PI, false));
S := [meFirst, meThird];
SetOrdProp (O, 'SetField', Integer (S));
Write ( 'Set (name, [mefirst, methird]) : ');
Writeln (SetAsString (O. SetField));
S := [meSecond];
SetOrdProp (O, PI, Integer (S));
Write ( 'Set (propinfo, [meSecond])    : ');
Writeln (SetAsString (O. SetField));
O. Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.18 GetStrProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a string property.

Declaration: `function GetStrProp (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Ansistring`  
`function GetStrProp (Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetStrProp` returns the value of the string property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid string property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetStrProp` (1363), `SetWideStrProp` (1365), `GetOrdProp` (1349), `GetFloatProp` (1343), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex3.pp`

---

```

program example3;

{ This program demonstrates the GetStrProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI := GetPropInfo (O, 'AnsiStringField');
  Writeln ('String property : ');
  Writeln ('Value                : ', O. AnsiStringField);
  Writeln ('Get (name)             : ', GetStrProp (O, 'AnsiStringField'));
  Writeln ('Get (propinfo)          : ', GetStrProp (O, PI));
  SetStrProp (O, 'AnsiStringField', 'First');
  Writeln ('Set (name, ''First'')      : ', O. AnsiStringField);

```



### 39.7.22 GetWideStrProp

Synopsis: Read a widestring property

```

Declaration: function GetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                : WideString
function GetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)
                : WideString

```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetWideStrProp` returns the value of the widestring property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid widestring property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1354), `SetWideStrProp` (1365), `GetOrdProp` (1349), `GetFloatProp` (1343), `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345)

### 39.7.23 IsPublishedProp

Synopsis: Check whether a published property exists.

```

Declaration: function IsPublishedProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)
                : Boolean
function IsPublishedProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: String)
                : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPublishedProp` returns true if a class has a published property with name `PropName`. The class can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass** A class pointer to the class.

**Instance** An instance of the class.

Errors: No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsStoredProp` (1357), `PropIsType` (1358)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex10.pp

---

```

program example10;

{ This program demonstrates the IsPublishedProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin

```



---

```

WriteLn (IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerMethod'));
Write ( 'IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerVirtualMethod) : ');
WriteLn (IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerVirtualMethod'));
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.25 PropIsType

**Synopsis:** Check the type of a published property.

**Declaration:**

```

function PropIsType(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                    TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean
function PropIsType(AClass: TClass; const PropName: String;
                    TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** PropIsType returns True if the property with name PropName has type TypeKind. It returns False otherwise. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure Instance or AClass are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: IsPublishedProp ([1356](#)), IsStoredProp ([1357](#)), PropType ([1359](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex16.pp

---

```

program example16;

{ This program demonstrates the PropIsType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteLn ( 'Property tests      : ');
  Write ( 'PropIsType(O, BooleanField, tkBool)      : ');
  WriteLn (PropIsType(O, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write ( 'PropIsType(Class, BooleanField, tkBool) : ');
  WriteLn (PropIsType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write ( 'PropIsType(O, ByteField, tkString)      : ');
  WriteLn (PropIsType(O, 'ByteField', tkString));
  Write ( 'PropIsType(Class, ByteField, tkString)  : ');
  WriteLn (PropIsType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField', tkString));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.26 PropType

Synopsis: Return the type of a property

Declaration: `function PropType(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : TTypeKind`  
`function PropType(AClass: TClass;const PropName: String) : TTypeKind`

Visibility: default

Description: `PropType` returns the type of the property `PropName` for a class. The class to be examined can be specified in one of 2 ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

Errors: No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` ([1356](#)), `IsStoredProp` ([1357](#)), `PropIsType` ([1358](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex17.pp`

---

```

program example17;

{ This program demonstrates the PropType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj ,typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O:= TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln ('Property tests      : ');
  Write ('PropType(O, BooleanField)      : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write ('PropType(Class, BooleanField) : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write ('PropType(O, ByteField)         : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O, 'ByteField')]);
  Write ('PropType(Class, ByteField)      : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField')]);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.27 SetEnumProp

Synopsis: Set value of an enumerated-type property

Declaration: `procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;`  
`const Value: String)`  
`procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject;const PropInfo: PPropInfo;`  
`const Value: String)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetEnumProp` sets the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` to `Value`. `Value` must be a string with the name of the enumerate value, i.e. it can be used as an argument to `GetEnumValue` (1342).

For an example, see `GetEnumProp` (1342).

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `PropInfo` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetEnumProp` (1342), `SetStrProp` (1363), `SetFloatProp` (1360), `SetInt64Prop` (1360), `SetMethodProp` (1361)

### 39.7.28 SetFloatProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of a float property.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                      Value: Extended)
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      Value: Extended)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetFloatProp` assigns `Value` to the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetFloatProp` (1343).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid float property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetFloatProp` (1343), `SetOrdProp` (1362), `SetStrProp` (1363), `SetInt64Prop` (1360), `SetMethodProp` (1361)

### 39.7.29 SetInt64Prop

**Synopsis:** Set value of a Int64 property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      const Value: Int64)
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                      const Value: Int64)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetInt64Prop` assigns `Value` to the property of type `Int64` that is described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetInt64Prop` (1344).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid `Int64` property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetInt64Prop` (1344), `GetMethodProp` (1345), `SetOrdProp` (1362), `SetStrProp` (1363), `SetFloatProp` (1360)

### 39.7.30 SetInterfaceProp

Synopsis: Set interface-valued property

Declaration: `procedure SetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
   const Value: IInterface)  
           procedure SetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
   const Value: IInterface)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetInterfaceProp` assigns `Value` to the the object property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid interface property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetInterfaceProp` (1345), `SetObjectProp` (1361), `SetOrdProp` (1362), `SetStrProp` (1363), `SetFloatProp` (1360), `SetInt64Prop` (1360), `SetMethodProp` (1361)

### 39.7.31 SetMethodProp

Synopsis: Set the value of a method property

Declaration: `procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
   const Value: TMethod)  
           procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
   const Value: TMethod)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMethodProp` assigns `Value` to the method the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

The type `TMethod` of the `Value` parameter is defined in the `SysUtils` unit as:

```
TMethod = packed record
  Code, Data: Pointer;
end;
```

`Data` should point to the instance of the class with the method `Code`.

For an example, see `GetMethodProp` (1345).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetMethodProp` (1345), `SetOrdProp` (1362), `SetStrProp` (1363), `SetFloatProp` (1360), `SetInt64Prop` (1360)

### 39.7.32 SetObjectProp

Synopsis: Set the value of an object-type property.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
Value: TObject)  
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
Value: TObject)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetObjectProp assigns Value to the the object property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

For an example, see GetObjectProp (1347).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid object property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetObjectProp (1347), SetOrdProp (1362), SetStrProp (1363), SetFloatProp (1360), SetInt64Prop (1360), SetMethodProp (1361)

### 39.7.33 SetOrdProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of an ordinal property

**Declaration:** `procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Int64)  
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
Value: Int64)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetOrdProp assigns Value to the the ordinal property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

Ordinal properties that can be set include:

**Integers and subranges of integers** The actual value of the integer must be passed.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types** The ordinal value of the enumerated type must be passed.

**Subrange types** of integers or enumerated types. Here the ordinal value must be passed.

**Sets** If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. For each possible value; the corresponding bit of Value must be set.

For an example, see GetOrdProp (1349).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid ordinal property of Instance. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetOrdProp (1349), SetStrProp (1363), SetFloatProp (1360), SetInt64Prop (1360), SetMethodProp (1361)

### 39.7.34 SetPropValue

**Synopsis:** Set property value as variant

**Declaration:** `procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
const Value: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented; it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

Errors:

### 39.7.35 SetSetProp

Synopsis: Set value of set-typed property.

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                    const Value: String)
procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    const Value: String)
```

Visibility: default

Description: SetSetProp sets the property specified by PropInfo or PropName for object Instance to Value. Value is a string which contains a comma-separated list of values, each value being a string-representation of the enumerated value that should be included in the set. The value should be accepted by the StringToSet (1366) function.

The value can be formed using the SetToString (1364) function.

For an example, see GetSetProp (1352).

Errors: No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid ordinal property of Instance. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetSetProp (1352), SetOrdProp (1362), SetStrProp (1363), SetFloatProp (1360), SetInt64Prop (1360), SetMethodProp (1361), SetToString (1364), StringToSet (1366)

### 39.7.36 SetStrProp

Synopsis: Set value of a string property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                    const Value: AnsiString)
procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    const Value: AnsiString)
```

Visibility: default

Description: SetStrProp assigns Value to the string property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for object Instance.

For an example, see GetStrProp (1354)

Errors: No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid string property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetStrProp (1354), SetWideStrProp (1365), SetOrdProp (1362), SetFloatProp (1360), SetInt64Prop (1360), SetMethodProp (1361)

### 39.7.37 SetToString

Synopsis: Convert set to a string description

```

Declaration: function SetToString (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Integer;
                                Brackets: Boolean) : String
function SetToString (PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Integer;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : String
function SetToString (PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Integer) : String

```

Visibility: default

Description: SetToString takes an integer representation of a set (as received e.g. by GetOrdProp) and turns it into a string representing the elements in the set, based on the type information found in the PropInfo property information. By default, the string representation is not surrounded by square brackets. Setting the Brackets parameter to True will surround the string representation with brackets.

The function returns the string representation of the set.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether PropInfo points to valid property information.

See also: GetEnumName (1341), GetEnumValue (1342), StringToSet (1366)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex18.pp

---

```

program example18;

{ This program demonstrates the SetToString function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  I : longint;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  O.SetField := [ mefirst, meSecond, meThird ];
  I := GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Set property to string : ');
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, False));
  O.SetField := [ mefirst, meSecond ];
  I := GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, True));
  I := StringToSet(PI, 'mefirst');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I := GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, False));
  I := StringToSet(PI, '[messecond, methird]');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I := GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, True));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 39.7.38 SetUnicodeStrProp

Synopsis: Set UnicodeString-valued property

Declaration: `procedure SetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
const Value: UnicodeString)  
procedure SetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetUnicodeStrProp` sets the `UnicodeString` property from `Instance` to `Value`, where the property is identified by the `PropInfo` pointer or the `PropertyName`.

Errors: If no property of the indicated name exists, or it is not of type `unicodestring`, an exception will occur.

See also: `SetStrProp` ([1363](#)), `GetUnicodeStrProp` ([1355](#))

### 39.7.39 SetVariantProp

Synopsis: Set value of a variant property

Declaration: `procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
const Value: Variant)  
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing `Variant` support, this function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

Errors:

### 39.7.40 SetWideStrProp

Synopsis: Set a widestring property

Declaration: `procedure SetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
const Value: WideString)  
procedure SetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: WideString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWideStrProp` assigns `Value` to the widestring property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid widestring property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetWideStrProp` ([1356](#)), `SetStrProp` ([1363](#)), `SetOrdProp` ([1362](#)), `SetFloatProp` ([1360](#)), `SetInt64Prop` ([1360](#)), `SetMethodProp` ([1361](#))

### 39.7.41 StringToSet

Synopsis: Convert string description to a set.

Declaration: `function StringToSet (PropInfo: PPropInfo; const Value: String) : Integer`  
`function StringToSet (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Value: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToSet` converts the string representation of a set in `Value` to a integer representation of the set, using the property information found in `PropInfo`. This property information should point to the property information of a set property. The function returns the integer representation of the set. (i.e, the set value, typecast to an integer)

The string representation can be surrounded with square brackets, and must consist of the names of the elements of the base type of the set. The base type of the set should be an enumerated type. The elements should be separated by commas, and may be surrounded by spaces. each of the names will be fed to the `GetEnumValue` (1342) function.

For an example, see `SetToString` (1364).

Errors: No checking is done to see whether `PropInfo` points to valid property information. If a wrong name is given for an enumerated value, then an `EPropertyError` will be raised.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1341), `GetEnumValue` (1342), `SetToString` (1364)

## 39.8 EPropertyConvertError

### 39.8.1 Description

`EPropertyConvertError` is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of the `typinfo` unit, but is declared for Delphi compatibility.

## 39.9 EPropertyError

### 39.9.1 Description

Exception raised in case of an error in one of the functions.

# Chapter 40

## Reference for unit 'Unix'

### 40.1 Used units

Table 40.1: Used units by unit 'Unix'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">76</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">1404</a>

### 40.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 40.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`fs_ext = $137d`

File system type (StatFS ([1401](#))): (ext) Extended

`fs_ext2 = $ef53`

File system type (StatFS ([1401](#))): (ext2) Second extended

`fs_iso = $9660`

File system type (StatFS ([1401](#))): ISO 9660

`fs_minix = $137f`

File system type (StatFS ([1401](#))): Minix

`fs_minix_30 = $138f`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): Minix 3.0

`fs_minix_V2 = $2468`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): Minix V2

`fs_msdos = $4d44`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): MSDOS (FAT)

`fs_nfs = $6969`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): NFS

`fs_old_ext2 = $ef51`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): (ext2) Old second extended

`fs_proc = $9fa0`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): PROC fs

`fs_xia = $012FD16D`

File system type (StatFS (1401)): XIA

`IOctl_TCGETS = $5401`

IOCTL call number: get Terminal Control settings

`LOCK_EX = 2`

FpFLock (1391) Exclusive lock

`LOCK_NB = 4`

FpFLock (1391) Non-blocking operation

`LOCK_SH = 1`

FpFLock (1391) Shared lock

`LOCK_UN = 8`

FpFLock (1391) unlock

`MAP_FAILED = baseunix.MAP_FAILED`

Error return value for mmap: mmap operation failed.

`MAP_FIXED = baseunix.MAP_FIXED`

FpMMap (1367) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_PRIVATE = baseunix.MAP\_PRIVATE

FpMMap (1367) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = baseunix.MAP\_SHARED

FpMMap (1367) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = baseunix.MAP\_TYPE

FpMMap (1367) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

MS\_ASYNC = 1

Asynchronous operation flag for msync call

MS\_INVALIDATE = 2

Invalidate other mappings of file flag for msync call

MS\_SYNC = 4

Synchronous operation flag for msync call

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

Open\_Accmode = 3

Bitmask to determine access mode in open flags.

Open\_Append = 2 shl 9

File open mode: Append to file

Open\_Creat = 1 shl 6

File open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

Open\_Direct = 4 shl 12

File open mode: Minimize caching effects

Open\_Directory = 2 shl 15

File open mode: File must be directory.

Open\_Excl = 2 shl 6

File open mode: Open exclusively

`Open_LargeFile = 1 shl 15`

File open mode: Open for 64-bit I/O

`Open_NDelay = Open_NonBlock`

File open mode: Alias for `Open_NonBlock` ([1370](#))

`Open_NoCtty = 4 shl 6`

File open mode: No TTY control.

`Open_NoFollow = 4 shl 15`

File open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`Open_NonBlock = 4 shl 9`

File open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`Open_RdOnly = 0`

File open mode: Read only

`Open_RdWr = 2`

File open mode: Read/Write

`Open_Sync = 1 shl 12`

File open mode: Write to disc at once

`Open_Trunc = 1 shl 9`

File open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`Open_WrOnly = 1`

File open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX = UnixType.PATH_MAX`

Maximum pathname length.

`PRIO_PGRP = UnixType.PRIO_PGRP`

`fpGetPriority` ([1367](#)) option: Get process group priority.

`PRIO_PROCESS = UnixType.PRIO_PROCESS`

`fpGetPriority` (1367) option: Get process priority.

`PRIO_USER = UnixType.PRIO_USER`

`fpGetPriority` (1367) option: Get user priority.

`PROT_EXEC = baseunix.PROT_EXEC`

`FpMMap` (1367) memory access: page can be executed

`PROT_NONE = baseunix.PROT_NONE`

`FpMMap` (1367) memory access: page can not be accessed

`PROT_READ = baseunix.PROT_READ`

`FpMMap` (1367) memory access: page can be read

`PROT_WRITE = baseunix.PROT_WRITE`

`FpMMap` (1367) memory access: page can be written

`P_IN = 1`

Input file descriptor of pipe pair.

`P_OUT = 2`

Output file descriptor of pipe pair.

`SIG_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG_MAXSIG`

Maximum system signal number.

`STAT_IFBLK = $6000`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat` (110) record) mode: Block device

`STAT_IFCHR = $2000`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat` (110) record) mode: Character device

`STAT_IFDIR = $4000`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat` (110) record) mode: Directory

`STAT_IFIFO = $1000`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat` (110) record) mode: FIFO

`STAT_IFLNK = $a000`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Link

STAT\_IFMT = \$f000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: File type bit mask

STAT\_IFREG = \$8000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Regular file

STAT\_IFSOCK = \$c000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Socket

STAT\_IRGRP = STAT\_IROTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Group read permission

STAT\_IROTH = \$4

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Other read permission

STAT\_IRUSR = STAT\_IROTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Owner read permission

STAT\_IRWXG = STAT\_IRWXO shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Group permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXO = \$7

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Other permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXU = STAT\_IRWXO shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Owner permission bits mask

STAT\_ISGID = \$0400

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: GID bit set

STAT\_ISUID = \$0800

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: UID bit set

STAT\_ISVTX = \$0200

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Sticky bit set

STAT\_IWGRP = STAT\_IWOTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Group write permission

STAT\_IWOTH = \$2

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Other write permission

STAT\_IWUSR = STAT\_IWOTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Owner write permission

STAT\_IXGRP = STAT\_IXOTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Others execute permission

STAT\_IXOTH = \$1

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Others execute permission

STAT\_IXUSR = STAT\_IXOTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (110) record) mode: Others execute permission

SYS\_NMLN = UnixType.SYS\_NMLN

Max system name length.

Wait\_Any = -1

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (166): Wait on any process

Wait\_Clone = \$80000000

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (166): Wait on clone processes only.

Wait\_MyPGRP = 0

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (166): Wait processes from current process group

Wait\_NoHang = 1

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (166): Do not wait

Wait\_UnTraced = 2

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (166): Also report stopped but untraced processes

### 40.2.2 Types

`cbool = UnixType.cbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` ([1406](#))

`cdouble = UnixType.cdouble`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = UnixType.cfloat`

Floating-point real format

`cint = UnixType.cint`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = UnixType.cint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = UnixType.cint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = UnixType.cint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = UnixType.cint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = UnixType.clock_t`

Clock ticks type

`clong = UnixType.clong`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`clonglong = UnixType.clonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

`coff_t = UnixType.TOff`

character offset type.

```
cschar = UnixType.cschar
```

**Signed character type**

```
cshort = UnixType.cshort
```

**C type: short signed integer (half sized)**

```
csigned = UnixType.csigned
```

csigned is an alias for cint ([1374](#)).

```
csint = UnixType.csint
```

**Signed integer**

```
csize_t = UnixType.size_t
```

**Character size type.**

```
cslong = UnixType.cslong
```

The size is CPU dependent.

```
cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong
```

cslonglong is an alias for clonglong ([1374](#)).

```
csshort = UnixType.csshort
```

**Short signed integer type**

```
cuchar = UnixType.cuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.cuchar ([1407](#))

```
cuint = UnixType.cuint
```

**C type: unsigned integer (natural size)**

```
cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16
```

**C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.**

```
cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32
```

**C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.**

```
cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64
```

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8
```

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
culong = UnixType.culong
```

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

```
culonglong = UnixType.culonglong
```

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

```
cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned
```

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` ([1408](#))

```
cushort = UnixType.cushort
```

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

```
dev_t = UnixType.dev_t
```

Device descriptor type.

```
gid_t = UnixType.gid_t
```

Group ID type.

```
ino_t = UnixType.ino_t
```

Inode type.

```
mode_t = UnixType.mode_t
```

Inode mode type.

```
nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t
```

Number of links type.

```
off_t = UnixType.off_t
```

Offset type.

```
pbool = UnixType.pbool
```

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` ([1374](#))

```
pcchar = UnixType.pcchar
```

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcchar` (1409)

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (99) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (99) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to `cInt` (1374) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

`pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32`

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

`pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64`

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

`pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8`

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

`pClock = UnixType.pClock`

Pointer to `TClock` (1381) type.

`pclong = UnixType.pclong`

Pointer to `cLong` (1374) type.

`pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong`

Pointer to `longlong` type.

`pcschar = UnixType.pcschar`

Pointer to character type `cschar` (1375).

`pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to `cShort` (1375) type.

`pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned`

Pointer to signed integer type `csigned` (1375).

```
pcsint = UnixType.pcsint
```

Pointer to signed integer type `csint` (1375)

```
pcsize_t = UnixType.psize_t
```

Pointer to character size type `pcsize_t`.

```
pcslong = UnixType.pcslong
```

Pointer of the signed long `clong` (1375)

```
pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type `clonglong` (1375)

```
pcsshort = UnixType.pcsshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type `csshort` (1375)

```
pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar
```

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcuchar` (1410)

```
pcuint = UnixType.pcuint
```

Pointer to `cUInt` (1375) type.

```
pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = UnixType.pculong
```

Pointer to `cuLong` (1376) type.

```
pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

`pcunsigned = UnixType.pcunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.pcunsigned` ([1411](#))

`pcushort = UnixType.pcushort`

Pointer to `cuShort` ([1376](#)) type.

`pDev = UnixType.pDev`

Pointer to `TDev` ([1381](#)) type.

`pGid = UnixType.pGid`

Pointer to `TGid` ([1381](#)) type.

`pid_t = UnixType.pid_t`

Process ID type.

`pIno = UnixType.pIno`

Pointer to `TIno` ([1381](#)) type.

`pMode = UnixType.pMode`

Pointer to `TMode` ([1381](#)) type.

`pnLink = UnixType.pnLink`

Pointer to `TnLink` ([1382](#)) type.

`pOff = UnixType.pOff`

Pointer to `TOff` ([1382](#)) type.

`pPid = UnixType.pPid`

Pointer to `TPid` ([1382](#)) type.

`pSize = UnixType.pSize`

Pointer to `TSize` ([1382](#)) type.

`pSize_t = UnixType.pSize_t`

Pointer to type `Size_t`.

`pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen`

Pointer to TSocketLen (1382) type.

```
psSize = UnixType.psSize
```

Pointer to TsSize (1382) type

```
pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t
```

Thread conditional variable type.

```
pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t
```

Thread mutex type.

```
pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t
```

Posix thread type.

```
pTime = UnixType.pTime
```

Pointer to TTime (1382) type.

```
ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec
```

Pointer to timespec (1381) type.

```
ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval
```

Pointer to timeval (1381) type.

```
ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (1381) type.

```
pUId = UnixType.pUId
```

Pointer to TUid (1382) type.

```
size_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t
```

Small size type.

```
TClock = UnixType.TClock
```

Table 40.2: Enumeration values for type TFSearchOption

Value	Explanation
CurrentDirectoryFirst	Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.
CurrentDirectoryLast	Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path
NoCurrentDirectory	Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

Alias for clock\_t (1374) type.

TDev = UnixType.TDev

Alias for dev\_t (1376) type.

TFSearchOption = (NoCurrentDirectory, CurrentDirectoryFirst,  
CurrentDirectoryLast)

Describes the search strategy used by FSearch (1393)

TGid = UnixType.TGid

Alias for gid\_t (1376) type.

timespec = UnixType.timespec

Short time specification type.

timeval = UnixType.timeval

Time specification type.

time\_t = UnixType.time\_t

Time span type

TIno = UnixType.TIno

Alias for ino\_t (1376) type.

TIOctlRequest = UnixType.TIOctlRequest

Alias for the TIOctlRequest (1416) type in unixtypes

TMode = UnixType.TMode

Alias for mode\_t (1376) type.

TnLink = UnixType.TnLink

Alias for `nlink_t` (1376) type.

```
TOff = UnixType.TOff
```

Alias for `off_t` (1376) type.

```
TPid = UnixType.TPid
```

Alias for `pid_t` (1379) type.

```
Tpipe = baseunix.tfildes
```

Array describing a pipe pair of file descriptors.

```
TSize = UnixType.TSize
```

Alias for `size_t` (1380) type

```
TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen
```

Alias for `socklen_t` (1380) type.

```
TsSize = UnixType.TsSize
```

Alias for `ssize_t` (1380) type

```
tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs
```

Record describing a file system in the `baseunix.fpstatfs` (1367) call.

```
TTime = UnixType.TTime
```

Alias for `TTime` (1382) type.

```
Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec
```

Alias for `TimeSpec` (1381) type.

```
TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal
```

Alias for `timeval` (1381) type.

```
TUId = UnixType.TUId
```

Alias for `uid_t` (1382) type.

```
uid_t = UnixType.uid_t
```

User ID type

### 40.2.3 Variables

`tzdaylight` : Boolean

Indicates whether daylight savings time is active.

`tzname` : Array[boolean] of pchar

Timezone name.

## 40.3 Procedures and functions

### 40.3.1 AssignPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

**Declaration:** `function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: cint;var pipe_out: cint) : cint`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: text;var pipe_out: text) : cint`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: File;var pipe_out: File) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AssignPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to `Pipe_out`, can be read from `Pipe_in`.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual `Readln(Pipe_in, ...)` and `Writeln(Pipe_out, ...)` procedures.

The function returns `True` if everything went succesfully, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case the function fails and returns `False`, extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` (1397), `#rtl.baseunix.FpMkFifo` (137)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex36.pp`

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
       s : **String**;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Assigning Pipes.' );

**If** assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno );

**Writeln** ( 'Writing to pipe, and flushing.' );

**Writeln** ( pipo, 'This is a textstring' ); close(pipo);

---

```

Writeln ( 'Reading from pipe.' );
While not eof(pipi) do
begin
  Readln ( pipi,s);
  Writeln ( 'Read from pipe : ',s);
end;
close ( pipi);
writeln ( 'Closed pipes.' );
writeln
end.

```

---

### 40.3.2 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign stream for in and output to a program

Declaration: `function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text;var Streamout: text;`  
`const Prog: ansiString;`  
`const args: Array of ansistring) : cint`  
`function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text;var Streamout: text;`  
`var streamerr: text;const Prog: ansiString;`  
`const args: Array of ansistring) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStream` creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output, (and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of `Prog`. `Prog` is the path of a program (including path). The options for the program can be specified in `Args`.

What is written to `StreamOut`, will go to the standard input of `Prog`. Whatever is written by `Prog` to it's standard output can be read from `StreamIn`. Whatever is written by `Prog` to it's standard error read from `StreamErr`, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual `Readln(StreamIn,...)` and `Writeln (StreamOut,...)` procedures.

**Remark:** You should *not* use `Reset` or `Rewrite` on a file opened with `POpen`. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([129](#)) function.

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the `fork` and `exec` programs

See also: `AssignPipe` ([1383](#)), `POpen` ([1397](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** `Example38`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix`;

**Var** `Si, So : Text`;

---

```

S : String;
i : longint;

begin
  if not (paramstr(1)='-son') then
    begin
      Writeln ('Calling son');
      Assignstream (Si,So,'./ex38',[ '-son']);
      if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
        begin
          writeln ('AssignStream failed !');
          halt(1);
        end;
      Writeln ('Speaking to son');
      For i:=1 to 10 do
        begin
          writeln (so,'Hello son !');
          if ioresult <> 0 then writeln ('Can''t speak to son...');
        end;
      For i:=1 to 3 do writeln (so,'Hello chap !');
      close (so);
      while not eof(si) do
        begin
          readln (si,s);
          writeln ('Father: Son said : ',S);
        end;
      Writeln ('Stopped conversation');
      Close (Si);
      Writeln ('Put down phone');
    end
  Else
    begin
      Writeln ('This is the son ');
      While not eof (input) do
        begin
          readln (s);
          if pos ('Hello son !',S) <> 0 then
            Writeln ('Hello Dad !')
          else
            writeln ('Who are you ?');
          end;
        close (output);
      end
    end
end.

```

---

### 40.3.3 FpExecL

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `function FpExecL(const PathName: AnsiString;  
const S: Array of AnsiString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecL` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The current process' environment is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecL` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eLOOP**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fplexecve` (123), `FpExecv` (1388), `FpExecvp` (1389), `FpExecle` (1386), `FpExeclp` (1387), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (126)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex77.pp

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FPExecL function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
 FPExecL ( '/bin/ls', ['-l'] );

**end.**

---

### 40.3.4 FPExecLE

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list, environment)

**Declaration:** `function FPExecLE(const PathName: AnsiString;  
                               const S: Array of AnsiString; MyEnv: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FPExecLE` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The environment in `MyEnv` is passed to the program. On success, `FPExecLE` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpexecve (123), FpExecv (1388), FpExecvp (1389), FpExecl (1385), FpExeclp (1387), #rtl.baseunix.FpFork (126)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execl function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
 Execl ( '/bin/ls -l', envp );

**end.**

---

### 40.3.5 FpExecLP

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list, environment; search path)

**Declaration:** function FpExecLP(const PathName: AnsiString;  
                               const S: Array of AnsiString) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecLP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. S is an array of command options. The executable in PathName is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, FpExecLP does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (129) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpexecve (123), FpExecv (1388), FpExecvp (1389), FpExecl (1385), #rtl.baseunix.FpFork (126)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExeclp function. }*

**Uses** Unix , strings ;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
 FpExeclp ( 'ls' , [ '-l' ] );

**end.**

---

### 40.3.6 FpExecLPE

**Synopsis:** Execute a program in the path, and pass it an environment

**Declaration:** function FpExecLPE(const PathName: AnsiString;  
                                   const S: Array of AnsiString;env: ppchar) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecLPE does the same as FpExecLP ([1387](#)), but additionally it specifies the environment for the new process in env, a pointer to a null-terminated array of null-terminated strings.

**Errors:** On success, this function does not return.

**See also:** FpExecLP ([1387](#)), FpExecLE ([1386](#))

### 40.3.7 FpExecV

**Synopsis:** Execute process

**Declaration:** function FpExecV(const PathName: AnsiString;args: ppchar) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecV replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, FpExecV does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([129](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` ([123](#)), `FpExecvp` ([1389](#)), `FpExecle` ([1386](#)), `FpExecl` ([1385](#)), `FpExeclp` ([1387](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` ([126](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function . }*

**Uses** `Unix` , `strings` ;

**Const** `Arg0` : `PChar` = `' /bin/l s '` ;  
           `Arg1` : `Pchar` = `' -l '` ;

**Var** `PP` : `PPchar` ;

**begin**

`GetMem` (`PP`, `3 * SizeOf (Pchar)`) ;  
   `PP[0]` := `Arg0` ;  
   `PP[1]` := `Arg1` ;  
   `PP[3]` := `Nil` ;  
   *{ Execute ' /bin/l s -l ', with current environment }*  
   `fpExecv` (`' /bin/l s '`, `pp`) ;

**end.**

---

### 40.3.8 FpExecVP

**Synopsis:** Execute process, search path

**Declaration:** `function FpExecVP(const PathName: AnsiString; args: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FpExecVP` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. The executable in `path` is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execvp` does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([129](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccess** File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm** The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big** Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec** The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem** Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` ([123](#)), `FpExecv` ([1388](#)), `FpExecle` ([1386](#)), `FpExecl` ([1385](#)), `FpExeclp` ([1387](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` ([126](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

**Program** Example79 ;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }
```

**Uses** Unix , strings ;

```
Const Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';
        Arg1 : Pchar = '—l';
```

```
Var PP : PPchar;
```

```

begin
  GetMem (PP,3*SizeOf(Pchar));
  PP[0]:=Arg0;
  PP[1]:=Arg1;
  PP[2]:=Nil;
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  fpExecvp ('ls',pp);
end.

```

### 40.3.9 FpExecVPE

**Synopsis:** Execute process, search path using environment

```
Declaration: function FpExecVPE(const PathName: AnsiString;args: ppchar;env: ppchar)
                : cint
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpExecVP` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. The executable in `path` is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. The environment in `Env` is passed to the program. On success, `execvp` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve \(123\)](#), [FpExecv \(1388\)](#), [FpExecle \(1386\)](#), [FpExecl \(1385\)](#), [FpExeclp \(1387\)](#), [#rtl.baseunix.FpFork \(126\)](#)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

**Program** Example79;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

**GetMem** (PP, 3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));  
 PP[0] := Arg0;  
 PP[1] := Arg1;  
 PP[2] := **Nil**;  
*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
 fpExecvp ('ls', pp);

**end.**

### 40.3.10 fpFlock

**Synopsis:** Lock a file (advisory lock)

**Declaration:** function fpFlock(var T: text; mode: cint) : cint  
                   function fpFlock(var F: File; mode: cint) : cint  
                   function fpFlock(fd: cint; mode: cint) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpFlock implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file F. F can be of type Text or File, or it can be a linux filedescriptor (a longint) Mode can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH**sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX**sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN**unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB**This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns zero if successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([129](#)) function:

See also: #rtl.baseunix.FpFcntl ([124](#)), FSync ([1395](#))

### 40.3.11 fpfStatFS

**Synopsis:** Retrieve filesystem information.

**Declaration:** function fpfStatFS(Fd: cint; Info: PStatFS) : cint

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the filesystem on which the open file descriptor `fd` resides. `Info` is of type `tstatfs`. The function returns 0 if the call was succesfull, or an error code if the call failed.

**Errors:** On error, a non-zero error code is returned

See also: `fpStatFS` ([1392](#)), `fpfStat` ([1367](#))

### 40.3.12 `fpfsync`

**Synopsis:** Flush cached data to disk

**Declaration:** `function fpfsync(fd: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpfsync` forces the system to write all paged (in-memory) changes to file descriptor `fd` to disk. If the call was succesful, 0 is returned.

**Errors:** On error, a nonzero error-code is returned.

### 40.3.13 `fpgettimeofday`

**Synopsis:** Return kernel time of day in GMT

**Declaration:** `function fpgettimeofday(tp: timeval;tzp: timezone) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpGetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `timeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

**Errors:** None.

### 40.3.14 `fpStatFS`

**Synopsis:** Retrieve filesystem information.

**Declaration:** `function fpStatFS(Path: pchar;Info: PStatFS) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the filesystem on which the file or path `Path` resides. `Info` is of type `tstatfs`. The function returns 0 if the call was succesfull, or an error code if the call failed.

**Errors:** On error, a non-zero error code is returned

See also: `fpFStatFS` ([1391](#)), `fpStat` ([1367](#))

### 40.3.15 fpSystem

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function fpSystem(const Command: String) : cint`  
`function fpSystem(const Command: AnsiString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Shell` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the `FpFork` (126) or `FpExecve` (123) calls.

Errors: Errors are reported in `fpErrNo` (76)

See also: `POpen` (1397), `Shell` (1399), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (126), `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` (123)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex80.pp`

---

```
program example56;

uses Unix;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:=fpSystem( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  Writeln ( 'Command exited with status : ',S);
end.
```

---

### 40.3.16 FSearch

Synopsis: Search for file in search path.

Declaration: `function FSearch(const path: AnsiString;dirlist: AnsiString;`  
`CurrentDirStrategy: TFSearchOption) : AnsiString`  
`function FSearch(const path: AnsiString;dirlist: AnsiString)`  
`: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches in `DirList`, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named `Path`. It then returns a path to the found file.

The `CurrentDirStrategy` determines how the current directory is treated when searching:

**NoCurrentDirectory** Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryFirstSearch** the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryLastSearch** the current directory last, after all directories in the search path

It is mainly provided to mimic DOS search path behaviour. Default behaviour is to search the current directory first.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: `#rtl.unixutil.FNMatch` ([1421](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix` , `Unix` , `Strings` ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'ls is in : ', FSearch ( 'ls' , **strpas** ( fpGetenv ( 'PATH' ) ) ) );

**end.**

---

### 40.3.17 fStatFS

**Synopsis:** Retrieve filesystem information from a file descriptor.

**Declaration:** `function fStatFS(Fd: cint; var Info: tstatfs) : cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the filesystem on which the file with file descriptor `fd` resides. `Info` is of type `TStatFS` ([1417](#)).

The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero value is returned if the call failed.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([129](#)) function:

**sys\_enotdir** A component of `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_einval** Invalid character in `Path`.

**sys\_enoent** `Path` does not exist.

**sys\_eaccess** Search permission is denied for component in `Path`.

**sys\_eloop** A circular symbolic link was encountered in `Path`.

**sys\_eio** An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: `StatFS` ([1401](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.FpLStat` ([136](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex91.pp`

---

**program** `Example30`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSStat function. }*

**uses** `BaseUnix` , `Unix` , `UnixType` ;

**var** `s` : **string** ;

`fd` : `cint` ;

`info` : `tstatfs` ;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Info about current partition : ' );

`s` := ' . ' ;

**while** `s` <> 'q' **do**

**begin**

`Fd` := `fpOpen` ( `S` , `O_RDONLY` ) ;

---

```

if (fd >= 0) then
  begin
    if fpfstatfs (fd, @info) <> 0 then
      begin
        writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
        halt (1);
      end;
    FpClose(fd);
    writeln;
    writeln('Result of fsstat on file ', s, '.');
    {$if defined(Linux) or defined(sunos)}
      // SysV like.
      writeln('fstype : ', info.fstype);
    {$else}
      // BSD like, incl Mac OS X.
      writeln('fstype : ', info.ftype);
    {$endif}

    writeln('bsize : ', info.bsize);
    writeln('bfree : ', info.bfree);
    writeln('bavail : ', info.bavail);
    writeln('files : ', info.files);
    writeln('ffree : ', info.ffree);
    {$ifdef FreeBSD}
      writeln('fsid : ', info.fsid[0]);
    {$else}
      writeln('fsid : ', info.fsid[0]);
    writeln('Namelen : ', info.namelen);
    {$endif}
    write('Type name of file to do fsstat. (q quits) : ');
    readln(s)

  end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 40.3.18 fsync

Synopsis: Synchronize file's kernel data with disk.

Declaration: `function fsync(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fsync` synchronizes the kernel data for file `fd` (the cache) with the disk. The call will not return till all file data was written to disk.

If the call was succesfull, 0 is returned. On failure, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([129](#)) function:

See also: `FpFLock` ([1391](#))

### 40.3.19 GetDomainName

Synopsis: Return current domain name

Declaration: `function GetDomainName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetHostName` ([1396](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function. }*

**Uses** `Unix;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Domain name of this machine is : ',GetDomainName);`  
**end.**

---

### 40.3.20 GetHostName

Synopsis: Return host name

Declaration: `function GetHostName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDomainName` ([1395](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex40.pp`

---

**Program** `Example40;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function. }*

**Uses** `unix;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Name of this machine is : ',GetHostName);`  
**end.**

---

### 40.3.21 GetLocalTimezone

Synopsis: Return local timezone information

Declaration: `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cint;var leap_correct: cint;  
                                  var leap_hit: cint)  
  procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cint)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetLocalTimeZone` returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the `TZSeconds` variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` ([1397](#)), `ReadTimezoneFile` ([1398](#))

### 40.3.22 GetTimezoneFile

**Synopsis:** Return name of timezone information file

**Declaration:** `function GetTimezoneFile : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetTimezoneFile` returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If `/etc/timezone` exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If `/usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If `/etc/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

**Errors:** If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ReadTimezoneFile` ([1398](#))

### 40.3.23 PClose

**Synopsis:** Close file opened with `POpen` ([1397](#))

**Declaration:** `function PClose(var F: File) : cint`  
`function PClose(var F: text) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PClose` closes a file opened with `POpen` ([1397](#)). It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

For an example, see `POpen` ([1397](#))

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([129](#)) function.

See also: `POpen` ([1397](#))

### 40.3.24 POpen

**Synopsis:** Pipe file to standard input/output of program

**Declaration:** `function POpen(var F: text;const Prog: Ansistring;rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: File;const Prog: Ansistring;rw: Char) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `POpen` runs the command specified in `Prog`, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe `F`. The parameter `rw` indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then `F` can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from `stdin`. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from `F`. `F` should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`. A file opened with `POpen` can be closed with `Close`, but also with `PClose` (1397). The result is the same, but `PClose` returns the exit status of the command `Prog`.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function. Errors are essentially those of the `Execve`, `Dup` and `AssignPipe` commands.

See also: `AssignPipe` (1383), `PClose` (1397)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex37.pp`

**Program** `Example37`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function. }*

**uses** `BaseUnix, Unix`;

**var** `f` : `text`;  
       `i` : `longint`;

**begin**

```

writeln ('Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments');
writeln ('and input back to stdout');
assign (f, 'test21a');
rewrite (f);
writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
writeln (f, 'echo this is the child speaking.... ');
writeln (f, 'echo got arguments \*"${*}"\*');
writeln (f, 'cat');
writeln (f, 'exit 2');
writeln (f);
close (f);
fpchmod ('test21a', &755);
popen (f, './test21a arg1 arg2', 'W');
if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
    writeln ('error from POpen : errno : ', fpgeterrno);
for i := 1 to 10 do
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout. ');
Flush(f);
Writeln ('The script exited with status : ', PClose (f));
writeln;
writeln ('Press <return> to remove shell script. ');
readln;
assign (f, 'test21a');
erase (f)
end.
```

### 40.3.25 ReadTimezoneFile

**Synopsis:** Read the timezone file and initialize time routines

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn: String)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadTimeZoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the linux unit call this routine at unit startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTimeZoneFile` (1397), `GetLocalTimezone` (1396)

### 40.3.26 SeekDir

Synopsis: Seek to position in directory

**Declaration:** `procedure SeekDir(p: pDir; loc: clong)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `loc`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (142).

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (129) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` (120), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` (147), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (142), `TellDir` (1402)

### 40.3.27 SelectText

Synopsis: Wait for event on text file.

**Declaration:** `function SelectText(var T: Text; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function SelectText(var T: Text; TimeOut: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SelectText` executes the `FpSelect` (149) call on a file of type `Text`. You can specify a timeout in `TimeOut`. The `SelectText` call determines itself whether it should check for read or write, depending on how the file was opened : With `Reset` it is checked for reading, with `Rewrite` and `Append` it is checked for writing.

Errors: See `#rtl.baseunix.FpSelect` (149). `SYS_EBADF` can also mean that the file wasn't opened.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpSelect` (149)

### 40.3.28 Shell

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

**Declaration:** `function Shell(const Command: String) : cint`  
`function Shell(const Command: AnsiString) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Shell` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the `FpFork` (126) or `FpExecve` (123) calls.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([129](#)) function:

See also: POpen ([1397](#)), FpSystem ([1393](#)), #rtl.baseunix.FpFork ([126](#)), #rtl.baseunix.fpexecve ([123](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex56.pp

---

```

program example56;

uses Unix;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:= Shell ( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  WriteLn ( 'Command exited with status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 40.3.29 SigRaise

Synopsis: Raise a signal (send to current process)

Declaration: `procedure SigRaise(sig: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: SigRaise sends a Sig signal to the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: #rtl.baseunix.FpKill ([133](#)), #rtl.baseunix.FpGetPid ([131](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex65.pp

---

```

Program example64;

{ Program to demonstrate the SigRaise function. }

uses Unix, BaseUnix;

Var
  oa, na : PSigActionrec;

Procedure DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl;

begin
  writeln ( 'Receiving signal: ', sig );
end;

begin
  new(na);
  new(oa);
  na^.sa_handler:= SigActionHandler (@DoSig);
  fillchar (na^.Sa_Mask, sizeof(na^.Sa_Mask), #0);
  na^.Sa_Flags:=0;
  { $ifdef Linux }

```

---

```

    // this member is linux only, and afaik even there arcane
    na^.Sa_Restorer:=Nil;
  {$endif}
  if fpSigAction(SigUshr1,na,oa)<>0 then
    begin
      writeln('Error: ',fpgeterrno);
      halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln('Sending USR1 (',sigusr1,') signal to self. ');
  SigRaise(sigusr1);
end.

```

---

### 40.3.30 StatFS

Synopsis: Retrieve filesystem information from a path.

Declaration: `function StatFS(Path: pchar;var Info: tstatfs) : cint`  
`function StatFS(Path: ansistring;var Info: tstatfs) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: StatFS returns in Info information about the filesystem on which the file Path resides. Info is of type TStatFS (1417).

The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero value is returned if the call failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (129) function:

**sys\_enotdir**A component of Path is not a directory.  
**sys\_einval**Invalid character in Path.  
**sys\_enoent**Path does not exist.  
**sys\_eaccess**Search permission is denied for component inPath.  
**sys\_eloop**A circular symbolic link was encountered in Path.  
**sys\_eio**An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: #rtl.baseunix.FpStat (158), #rtl.baseunix.FpLStat (136)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex91.pp

---

```

program Example30;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSStat function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix, UnixType;

var s : string;
    fd : cint;
    info : tstatfs;

begin
  writeln('Info about current partition : ');
  s:= '.';
  while s<>'q' do
    begin
      Fd:=fpOpen(S,O_RDONLY);
      if (fd>=0) then

```

---

```

begin
  if fpstatfs (fd,@info)<>0 then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
    FpClose(fd);
    writeln;
    writeln ('Result of fsstat on file ''',s, '''.');
    {$if defined(Linux) or defined(sunos)}
      // SysV like.
      writeln ('fstype   : ',info.fstype);
    {$else}
      // BSD like , incl Mac OS X.
      writeln ('fstype   : ',info.ftype);
    {$endif}

    writeln ('bsize    : ',info.bsize);
    writeln ('bfree     : ',info.bfree);
    writeln ('bavail    : ',info.bavail);
    writeln ('files     : ',info.files);
    writeln ('ffree     : ',info.ffree);
    {$ifdef FreeBSD}
      writeln ('fsid      : ',info.fsid[0]);
    {$else}
      writeln ('fsid      : ',info.fsid[0]);
    writeln ('Namelen   : ',info.namelen);
    {$endif}
    write ('Type name of file to do fsstat. (q quits) : ');
    readln (s)

  end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 40.3.31 TellDir

Synopsis: Return current location in a directory

Declaration: function TellDir(p: pDir) : TOff

Visibility: default

Description: TellDir returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by p. It returns -1 on failure.

For an example, see #rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir ([142](#)).

Errors:

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir ([120](#)), #rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir ([147](#)), #rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir ([142](#)), SeekDir ([1399](#))

### 40.3.32 WaitProcess

Synopsis: Wait for process to terminate.

Declaration: function WaitProcess(Pid: cint) : cint

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WaitProcess` waits for process `PID` to exit. `WaitProcess` is equivalent to the `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (166) call:

```
FpWaitPid(PID, @result, 0)
```

Handles of Signal interrupts (`errno=EINTR`), and returns the Exitcode of Process `PID` (`>=0`) or - Status if it was terminated

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (166), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (167), `WIFSTOPPED` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALLED` (168), `W_EXITCODE` (1403), `W_STOPCODE` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (167)

### 40.3.33 WIFSTOPPED

**Synopsis:** Check whether the process is currently stopped.

**Declaration:** `function WIFSTOPPED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WIFSTOPPED` checks `Status` and returns `true` if the process is currently stopped. This is only possible if `WUNTRACED` was specified in the options of `FpWaitPID` (166).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (166), `WaitProcess` (1402), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (167), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALLED` (168), `W_EXITCODE` (1403), `W_STOPCODE` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (167)

### 40.3.34 W\_EXITCODE

**Synopsis:** Construct an exit status based on an return code and signal.

**Declaration:** `function W_EXITCODE(ReturnCode: Integer; Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `W_EXITCODE` combines `ReturnCode` and `Signal` to a status code fit for `WaitPid`.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (166), `WaitProcess` (1402), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (167), `WIFSTOPPED` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALLED` (168), `W_EXITCODE` (1403), `W_STOPCODE` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (167)

### 40.3.35 W\_STOPCODE

**Synopsis:** Construct an exit status based on a signal.

**Declaration:** `function W_STOPCODE(Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `W_STOPCODE` constructs an exit status based on `Signal`, which will cause `WIFSIGNALLED` (168) to return `True`

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (166), `WaitProcess` (1402), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (168), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (167), `WIFSTOPPED` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALLED` (168), `W_EXITCODE` (1403), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (167)

# Chapter 41

## Reference for unit 'unixtype'

### 41.1 Overview

The `unixtype` unit contains the definitions of basic unix types. It was initially implemented by Marco van de Voort.

When porting to a new unix platform, this unit should be adapted to the sizes and conventions of the platform to which the compiler is ported.

### 41.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 41.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = 131072`

Max number of command-line arguments.

`NAME_MAX = 255`

Max length (in bytes) of filename

`PATH_MAX = 4095`

Max length (in bytes) of pathname

`Prio_PGrp = 1`

`rtl.unix.fpGetPriority` ([1404](#)) option: Get process group priority.

`Prio_Process = 0`

`#rtl.unix.fpGetPriority` ([1367](#)) option: Get process priority.

`Prio_User = 2`

`#rtl.unix.fpGetPriority` ([1367](#)) option: Get user priority.

`SIG_MAXSIG = 128`

Maximum signal number.

`SYS_NMLN = 65`

Max system namelength

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP = 3`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_DEFAULT = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP = 2`

Mutex options: double lock returns an error code.

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_FAST_NP = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP`

Mutex options: Fast mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP = 1`

Mutex options: recursive mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP = 0`

Mutex options: ?

## 41.2.2 Types

`cbool = longbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = cint8`

C type: 8-bit signed integer

`cdouble = double`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = single`

Floating-point real format

`cint = cint32`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = SmallInt`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = LongInt`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = Int64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = ShortInt`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = culong`

Clock ticks type

`clong = LongInt`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`clongdouble = extended`

Usually translates to an extended, but is CPU dependent.

`clonglong = cint64`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

`cschar = cint8`

Signed character type

`cshort = cint16`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`csigned = cint`

`csigned` is an alias for `cint` (1406).

`csint = cint32`

**Signed integer**

`cslong = LongInt`

The size is CPU dependent.

`cslonglong = cint64`

`cslonglong` is an alias for `clonglong` (1406).

`csshort = cint16`

**Short signed integer type**

`cuchar = cuint8`

**C type: 8-bit unsigned integer**

`cuint = cuint32`

**C type: unsigned integer (natural size)**

`cuint16 = Word`

**C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.**

`cuint32 = LongWord`

**C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.**

`cuint64 = qword`

**C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.**

`cuint8 = Byte`

**C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.**

`culong = cardinal`

**C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)**

```
culonglong = cuint64
```

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

```
cunsigned = cuint
```

Alias for #rtl.unixtype.cuint ([1407](#))

```
cushort = cuint16
```

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

```
dev_t = cuint64
```

Device descriptor type.

```
gid_t = cuint32
```

Group ID type.

```
ino64_t = cuint64
```

ino64\_t is an inode type capable of containing 64-bit inodes.

```
ino_t = clong
```

Inode type.

```
ipc_pid_t = cushort
```

Process ID

```
kDev_t = cushort
```

Kernel device type

```
mbstate_t = record
  __count : cint;
  __value : mbstate_value_t;
end
```

This type should never be used directly.

```
mbstate_value_t = record
end
```

This type should never be used directly. It is part of the mbstate\_t ([1408](#)) type.

```
mode_t = cuint32
```

Inode mode type.

```
nlink_t = cuint32
```

Number of links type.

```
off64_t = cint64
```

64-bit offset type.

```
off_t = cint
```

Offset type.

```
pcbool = ^cbool
```

Pointer to boolean type cbool ([1405](#))

```
pcchar = ^cchar
```

Pointer to #rtl.UnixType.cchar ([1406](#))

```
pcdouble = ^cdouble
```

Pointer to cdouble ([1406](#)) type.

```
pcfloat = ^cfloat
```

Pointer to cfloat ([1406](#)) type.

```
pcint = ^cint
```

Pointer to cInt ([1406](#)) type.

```
pcint16 = ^cint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

```
pcint32 = ^cint32
```

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

```
pcint64 = ^cint64
```

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

```
pcint8 = ^cint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

```
pClock = ^clock_t
```

Pointer to TClock (1415) type.

```
pclong = ^clong
```

Pointer to cLong (1406) type.

```
pclongdouble = ^clongdouble
```

Pointer to the long double type clongdouble (1406)

```
pclonglong = ^clonglong
```

Pointer to longlong type.

```
pcschar = ^cschar
```

Pointer to character type cschar (1406).

```
pcshort = ^cshort
```

Pointer to cShort (1407) type.

```
pcsigned = ^csigned
```

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (1407).

```
pcsint = ^csint
```

Pointer to signed integer type csint (1407)

```
pcslong = ^cslong
```

Pointer of the signed long cslong (1407)

```
pcslonglong = ^cslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong (1407)

```
pcsshort = ^csshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort (1407)

```
pcuchar = ^cuchar
```

Pointer to #rtl.UnixType.cuchar (1407)

```
pcuint = ^cuint
```

Pointer to cUInt (1407) type.

```
pcuint16 = ^cuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = ^cuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = ^cuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = ^cuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = ^culong
```

Pointer to cuLong (1407) type.

```
pculonglong = ^culonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

```
pcunsigned = ^cunsigned
```

Pointer to #rtl.unixtype.cunsigned (1408)

```
pcushort = ^cushort
```

Pointer to cuShort (1408) type.

```
pDev = ^dev_t
```

Pointer to TDev (1415) type.

```
pGid = ^gid_t
```

Pointer to TGid (1415) type.

```
pid_t = cint
```

Process ID type.

```
pIno = ^ino_t
```

Pointer to TIno (1416) type.

```
pIno64 = ^ino64_t
```

Pointer to ino64\_t (1408)

```
pkDev = ^kDev_t
```

Pointer to TkDev (1416) type.

```
pmbstate_t = ^mbstate_t
```

Pointer to mbstate\_t (1404) type

```
pMode = ^mode_t
```

Pointer to TMode (1416) type.

```
pnLink = ^nlink_t
```

Pointer to TnLink (1416) type.

```
pOff = ^off_t
```

Pointer to TOff (1416) type.

```
pOff64 = ^off64_t
```

Pointer to off64\_t type

```
pPid = ^pid_t
```

Pointer to TPid (1416) type.

```
pSize = ^size_t
```

Pointer to TSize (1416) type.

```
psize_t = pSize
```

Pointer to size\_t (1404) type.

```
pSockLen = ^socklen_t
```

Pointer to TSockLen (1416) type.

```
pSSize = ^ssize_t
```

Pointer to TsSize (1416) type

```
PStatFS = ^TStatfs
```

Pointer to TStatFS (1417) type.

```
pthread_attr_t = record
  __detachstate : cint;
  __schedpolicy : cint;
  __schedparam : sched_param;
  __inheritsched : cint;
```

```

__scope : cint;
__guardsize : size_t;
__stackaddr_set : cint;
__stackaddr : pointer;
__stacksize : size_t;
end

```

`pthread_attr_t` describes the thread attributes. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime. Use the appropriate functions to set the thread attributes.

```

pthread_condattr_t = record
  __dummy : cint;
end

```

`pthread_condattr_t` describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```

pthread_cond_t = record
  __c_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
  __c_waiting : pointer;
  __padding : Array[0..48-1-sizeof(_pthread_fastlock)-sizeof(pointer)-sizeof(clonglong)];
  __align : clonglong;
end

```

`pthread_cond_t` describes a thread conditional variable. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```

pthread_key_t = cint

```

Thread local storage key (opaque)

```

pthread_mutexattr_t = record
  __mutexkind : cint;
end

```

`pthread_mutexattr_t` describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```

pthread_mutex_t = record
  __m_reserved : cint;
  __m_count : cint;
  __m_owner : pointer;
  __m_kind : cint;
  __m_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
end

```

`_pthread_mutex_t` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_rwlockattr_t = record
  __lockkind : cint;
  __pshared : cint;
end
```

`pthread_rwlockattr_t` describes the attributes of a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_rwlock_t = record
  __rw_readers : cint;
  __rw_writer : pointer;
  __rw_read_waiting : pointer;
  __rw_write_waiting : pointer;
  __rw_kind : cint;
  __rw_pshared : cint;
end
```

`pthread_rwlock_t` describes a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_t = culong
```

Thread description record

```
pTime = ^time_t
```

Pointer to TTime (1417) type.

```
ptimespec = ^timespec
```

Pointer to timespec (1415) record.

```
ptimeval = ^timeval
```

Pointer to timeval (1415) record.

```
ptime_t = ^time_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (1416) type.

```
pUId = ^uid_t
```

Pointer to TUid (1417) type.

```
pwchar_t = ^wchar_t
```

Pointer to wchar\_t (1404) type.

```
sched_param = record
  __sched_priority : cint;
end
```

Scheduling parameter description record.

```
sem_t = record
  __sem_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
  __sem_value : cint;
  __sem_waiting : pointer;
end
```

`sem_t` describes a thread semaphore. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
size_t = cuint32
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = cuint32
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = cint32
```

Small size type.

```
TClock = clock_t
```

Alias for `clock_t` (1406) type.

```
TDev = dev_t
```

Alias for `dev_t` (1408) type.

```
TGid = gid_t
```

Alias for `gid_t` (1408) type.

```
timespec = packed record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_nsec : clong;
end
```

Record specifying time interval.

```
timeval = packed record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_usec : clong;
end
```

Time specification type.

`time_t = clong`

Time span type

`TIno = ino_t`

Alias for `ino_t` (1408) type.

`TIno64 = ino64_t`

Alias for `ino64_t` (1408)

`TIOCtlRequest = cint`

Opaque type used in `FpIOCtl` (133)

`TkDev = kDev_t`

Alias for `kDev_t` (1408) type.

`TMode = mode_t`

Alias for `mode_t` (1409) type.

`TnLink = nlink_t`

Alias for `nlink_t` (1409) type.

`TOff = off_t`

Alias for `off_t` (1409) type.

`TOff64 = off64_t`

Alias for `off64_t` type.

`TPid = pid_t`

Alias for `pid_t` (1411) type.

`TSize = size_t`

Alias for `size_t` (1415) type

`TSockLen = socklen_t`

Alias for `socklen_t` (1415) type.

`TSSize = ssize_t`

Alias for `ssize_t` (1415) type

```

TStatfs = packed record
  fstype : cint;
  bsize : cint;
  blocks : culong;
  bfree : culong;
  bavail : culong;
  files : culong;
  ffree : culong;
  fsid : Array[0..1] of cint;
  namelen : cint;
  frsize : cint;
  spare : Array[0..4] of cint;
end

```

Record describing a file system in the `baseunix.fpstatfs` (1404) call.

```
TTime = time_t
```

Alias for `TTime` (1417) type.

```
TTimeSpec = timespec
```

Alias for `TimeSpec` (1415) type.

```
TTimeVal = timeval
```

Alias for `TimeVal` (1415) record.

```
TUId = uid_t
```

Alias for `uid_t` (1417) type.

```
uid_t = cuint32
```

User ID type

```
wchar_t = cint32
```

Wide character type.

```
wint_t = cint32
```

Wide character size type.

```

_pthread_fastlock = record
  __status : clong;
  __spinlock : cint;
end

```

`_pthread_fastlock` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

# Chapter 42

## Reference for unit 'unixutil'

### 42.1 Overview

The UnixUtil unit contains some of the routines that were present in the old Linux unit, but which do not really belong in the unix ([1367](#)) or baseunix ([76](#)) units.

Most of the functions described here have cross-platform counterparts in the SysUtils ([1174](#)) unit. It is therefore recommended to use that unit.

### 42.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 42.2.1 Types

`ComStr =`

Command-line string type.

`DirStr =`

Filename directory part string type.

`ExtStr =`

Filename extension part string type.

`NameStr =`

Filename name part string type.

`PathStr =`

Filename full path string type.

#### 42.2.2 Variables

`Tzseconds : LongInt`

Seconds west of GMT

## 42.3 Procedures and functions

### 42.3.1 ArrayStringToPPchar

Synopsis: Convert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array of AnsiString;  
reserveentries: LongInt) : ppchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array `S`. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([1424](#))

### 42.3.2 Basename

Synopsis: Return basename of a file

Declaration: `function Basename(const path: PathStr;const suf: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the filename part of `Path`, stripping off `Suf` if it exists. The filename part is the whole name if `Path` contains no slash, or the part of `Path` after the last slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `DirName` ([1420](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the BaseName function. }*

**Uses** `Dos, Unix, UnixUtil;`

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`S:=FExpand(Paramstr(0));`

`Writeln ('This program is called : ',Basename(S,' '));`

**end.**

---

### 42.3.3 Dirname

Synopsis: Extract directory part from filename

Declaration: `function Dirname(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the directory part of `Path`. The directory is the part of `Path` before the last slash, or empty if there is no slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `BaseName` ([1419](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the DirName function. }*

**Uses** `Dos, Unix, UnixUtil;`

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`S:=FExpand(Paramstr(0));`

`WriteLn ('This program is in directory : ', Dirname(S));`

**end.**

---

### 42.3.4 EpochToLocal

Synopsis: Convert epoch time to local time

Declaration: `procedure EpochToLocal(epoch: LongInt; var year: Word; var month: Word; var day: Word; var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone ) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timzone settings of your system.

Errors: None

See also: `LocalToEpoch` ([1423](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix, UnixUtil;`

**Var** `Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : Word;`

---

```

begin
  EpochToLocal ( FTime, Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds );
  Writeln ( 'Current date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4 );
  Writeln ( 'Current time : ', Hour:2, ':', minute:2, ':', seconds:2 );
end.

```

---

### 42.3.5 FNMatch

Synopsis: Check whether filename matches wildcard specification

Declaration: `function FNMatch(const Pattern: String; const Name: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FNMatch` returns `True` if the filename in `Name` matches the wildcard pattern in `Pattern`, `False` otherwise.

`Pattern` can contain the wildcards `*` (match zero or more arbitrary characters) or `?` (match a single character).

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FSearch` ([1393](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** Example69;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FNMatch function. }*

**Uses** unixutil;

**Procedure** TestMatch(Pattern, Name : String);

```

begin
  Write ( ' ', Name, ' " ');
  If FNMatch ( Pattern, Name) then
    Write ( ' matches ')
  else
    Write ( ' does not match ');
  Writeln( ' ', Pattern, ' ". ');
end;

begin
  TestMatch( '*', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '.*', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '*a*', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '?ile*', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '??', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '.?', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '?a*', 'FileName' );
  TestMatch( '??*me?', 'FileName' );
end.

```

---

### 42.3.6 FSplit

Synopsis: Split filename into path, name and extension

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(const Path: PathStr; var Dir: DirStr; var Name: NameStr;  
var Ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A `Path`, a `Name` and an extension (in `ext`). The extension is taken to be all letters after the last dot (.).

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FSearch` ([1393](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** `Example67;`

`uses UnixUtil;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }`

`var`

`Path, Name, Ext : string;`

`begin`

`FSplit(ParamStr(1), Path, Name, Ext);`

`WriteLn('Split ', ParamStr(1), ' in:');`

`WriteLn('Path : ', Path);`

`WriteLn('Name : ', Name);`

`WriteLn('Extension : ', Ext);`

`end.`

---

### 42.3.7 GetFS

Synopsis: Return file selector

Declaration: `function GetFS(var T: Text) : LongInt`  
`function GetFS(var F: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFS` returns the file selector that the kernel provided for your file. In principle you don't need this file selector. Only for some calls it is needed, such as the `#rtl.baseunix.fpSelect` ([149](#)) call or so.

Errors: In case the file was not opened, then -1 is returned.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpSelect` ([149](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the SelectText function. }`

`Uses Unix;`

---

```

Var tv : TimeVal;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
  { Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
  SelectText ( Input, nil );
  { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
  readln;
  Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
  tv.tv_sec:=2;
  tv.tv_sec:=0;
  if SelectText ( Input, @tv) > 0 then
    Writeln ( 'Thank you !' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'Too late !' );
end.

```

---

### 42.3.8 GregorianToJulian

Synopsis: Converts a gregorian date to a julian date

Declaration: `function GregorianToJulian(Year: LongInt; Month: LongInt; Day: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GregorianToJulian` takes a gregorian date and converts it to a Julian day.

Errors: None.

See also: `JulianToGregorian` ([1423](#))

### 42.3.9 JulianToGregorian

Synopsis: Converts a julian date to a gregorian date

Declaration: `procedure JulianToGregorian(JulianDN: LongInt; var Year: Word;  
var Month: Word; var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `JulianToGregorian` takes a julian day and converts it to a gregorian date. (Start of the Julian Date count is from 0 at 12 noon 1 JAN -4712 (4713 BC),)

Errors: None.

See also: `GregorianToJulian` ([1423](#))

### 42.3.10 LocalToEpoch

Synopsis: Convert local time to epoch (unix) time

Declaration: `function LocalToEpoch(year: Word; month: Word; day: Word; hour: Word;  
minute: Word; second: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970 ).

Errors: None

See also: EpochToLocal ([1420](#))

**Listing:** ./unutilex/ex4.pp

**Program Example4:**

```
{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function. }
```

**Uses** UnixUtil;

```
Var year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;
```

**begin**

```

Write ( 'Year      : ' ); readIn (Year);
Write ( 'Month     : ' ); readIn (Month);
Write ( 'Day        : ' ); readIn (Day);
Write ( 'Hour       : ' ); readIn (Hour);
Write ( 'Minute     : ' ); readIn (Minute);
Write ( 'Seconds    : ' ); readIn (Second);
Write ( 'This is   : ' );
Write ( LocalToEpoch (year, month, day, hour, minute, second) );
WriteIn ( ' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980 ' );

```

### 42.3.11 StringToPPChar

### Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

```
Declaration: function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : ppchar
            function StringToPPChar(var S: String; ReserveEntries: Integer) : ppchar
            function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString; ReserveEntries: Integer)
                                : ppchar
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of `pchars` that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various `Exec` calls.

Errors: None.

See also: [ArrayStringToPPchar \(1419\)](#), [#rtl.baseunix.FpExecve \(123\)](#)

**Listing:** ./unutilx/ex70.pp

**Program** Example70;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function. }
```

---

**Uses** UnixUtil;

**Var** S : **String**;  
    P : PPChar;  
    I : longint;

**begin**  
    *// remark whitespace at end.*  
    S:= 'This is a string with words. ';  
    P:=StringToPPChar(S,0);  
    I:=0;  
    **While** P[I]<>Nil **do**  
        **begin**  
            **Writeln**( 'Word ',i, ' : ',P[ i ] );  
            **Inc**( I );  
        **end**;  
    **FreeMem**(P, i\***SizeOf**(Pchar));  
**end**.

---

## Chapter 43

# Reference for unit 'video'

### 43.1 Examples utility unit

The examples in this section make use of the unit `vidutil`, which contains the `TextOut` function. This function writes a text to the screen at a given location. It looks as follows:

### 43.2 Writing a custom video driver

Writing a custom video driver is not difficult, and generally means implementing a couple of functions, which should be registered with the `SetVideoDriver` (1444) function. The various functions that can be implemented are located in the `TVideoDriver` (1433) record:

```
TVideoDriver = Record
  InitDriver      : Procedure;
  DoneDriver      : Procedure;
  UpdateScreen    : Procedure (Force : Boolean);
  ClearScreen     : Procedure;
  SetVideoMode    : Function (Const Mode : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  GetVideoModeCount : Function : Word;
  GetVideoModeData : Function (Index : Word; Var Data : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  SetCursorPos    : procedure (NewCursorX, NewCursorY: Word);
  GetCursorType   : function : Word;
  SetCursorType   : procedure (NewType: Word);
  GetCapabilities : Function : Word;
end;
```

Not all of these functions must be implemented. In fact, the only absolutely necessary function to write a functioning driver is the `UpdateScreen` function. The general calls in the `Video` unit will check which functionality is implemented by the driver.

The functionality of these calls is the same as the functionality of the calls in the `video` unit, so the expected behaviour can be found in the previous section. Some of the calls, however, need some additional remarks.

**InitDriver** Called by `InitVideo`, this function should initialize any data structures needed for the functionality of the driver, maybe do some screen initializations. The function is guaranteed to be called only once; It can only be called again after a call to `DoneVideo`. The variables

`ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` should be initialized correctly after a call to this function, as the `InitVideo` call will initialize the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays based on their values.

**DoneDriver** This should clean up any structures that have been initialized in the `InitDriver` function. It should possibly also restore the screen as it was before the driver was initialized. The `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays will be disposed of by the general `DoneVideo` call.

**UpdateScreen** This is the only required function of the driver. It should update the screen based on the `VideoBuf` array's contents. It can optimize this process by comparing the values with values in the `OldVideoBuf` array. After updating the screen, the `UpdateScreen` procedure should update the `OldVideoBuf` by itself. If the `Force` parameter is `True`, the whole screen should be updated, not just the changed values.

**ClearScreen** If there is a faster way to clear the screen than to write spaces in all character cells, then it can be implemented here. If the driver does not implement this function, then the general routines will write spaces in all video cells, and will call `UpdateScreen (True)`.

**SetVideoMode** Should set the desired video mode, if available. It should return `True` if the mode was set, `False` if not.

**GetVideoModeCount** Should return the number of supported video modes. If no modes are supported, this function should not be implemented; the general routines will return 1. (for the current mode)

**GetVideoModeData** Should return the data for the `Index`-th mode; `Index` is zero based. The function should return `true` if the data was returned correctly, `false` if `Index` contains an invalid index. If this is not implemented, then the general routine will return the current video mode when `Index` equals 0.

**GetCapabilities** If this function is not implemented, zero (i.e. no capabilities) will be returned by the general function.

The following unit shows how to override a video driver, with a driver that writes debug information to a file. The unit can be used in any of the demonstration programs, by simply including it in the `uses` clause. Setting `DetailedVideoLogging` to `True` will create a more detailed log (but will also slow down functioning)

### 43.3 Overview

The `Video` unit implements a screen access layer which is system independent. It can be used to write on the screen in a system-independent way, which should be optimal on all platforms for which the unit is implemented.

The working of the `Video` is simple: After calling `InitVideo` (1441), the array `VideoBuf` contains a representation of the video screen of size `ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight`, going from left to right and top to bottom when walking the array elements: `VideoBuf[0]` contains the character and color code of the top-left character on the screen. `VideoBuf[ScreenWidth]` contains the data for the character in the first column of the second row on the screen, and so on.

To write to the 'screen', the text to be written should be written to the `VideoBuf` array. Calling `UpdateScreen` (1445) will then cp the text to the screen in the most optimal way. (an example can be found further on).

The color attribute is a combination of the foreground and background color, plus the blink bit. The bits describe the various color combinations:

**bits 0-3** The foreground color. Can be set using all color constants.

**bits 4-6** The background color. Can be set using a subset of the color constants.

**bit 7** The blinking bit. If this bit is set, the character will appear blinking.

Each possible color has a constant associated with it, see the constants section for a list of constants.

The foreground and background color can be combined to a color attribute with the following code:

```
Attr:=ForeGroundColor + (BackGroundColor shl 4);
```

The color attribute can be logically or-ed with the blink attribute to produce a blinking character:

```
Attr:=Attr or blink;
```

But not all drivers may support this.

The contents of the `VideoBuf` array may be modified: This is 'writing' to the screen. As soon as everything that needs to be written in the array is in the `VideoBuf` array, calling `UpdateScreen` will copy the contents of the array screen to the screen, in a manner that is as efficient as possible.

The updating of the screen can be prohibited to optimize performance; To this end, the `LockScreenUpdate` (1442) function can be used: This will increment an internal counter. As long as the counter differs from zero, calling `UpdateScreen` (1445) will not do anything. The counter can be lowered with `UnlockScreenUpdate` (1444). When it reaches zero, the next call to `UpdateScreen` (1445) will actually update the screen. This is useful when having nested procedures that do a lot of screen writing.

The video unit also presents an interface for custom screen drivers, thus it is possible to override the default screen driver with a custom screen driver, see the `SetVideoDriver` (1444) call. The current video driver can be retrieved using the `GetVideoDriver` (1439) call.

**Remark:** The video unit should *not* be used together with the CRT unit. Doing so will result in very strange behaviour, possibly program crashes.

## 43.4 Constants, types and variables

### 43.4.1 Constants

`Black = 0`

Black color attribute

`Blink = 128`

Blink attribute

`Blue = 1`

Blue color attribute

`Brown = 6`

Brown color attribute

`cpBlink = $0002`

**Video driver supports blink attribute**

`cpChangeCursor = $0020`

**Video driver supports changing cursor shape.**

`cpChangeFont = $0008`

**Video driver supports changing screen font.**

`cpChangeMode = $0010`

**Video driver supports changing mode**

`cpColor = $0004`

**Video driver supports color**

`cpUnderLine = $0001`

**Video driver supports underline attribute**

`crBlock = 2`

**Block cursor**

`crHalfBlock = 3`

**Half block cursor**

`crHidden = 0`

**Hide cursor**

`crUnderLine = 1`

**Underline cursor**

`Cyan = 3`

**Cyan color attribute**

`DarkGray = 8`

**Dark gray color attribute**

`errOk = 0`

**No error**

```
ErrorCode : LongInt = ErrOK
```

Error code returned by the last operation.

```
ErrorHandler : TErrorHandler = @DefaultErrorHandler
```

The `ErrorHandler` variable can be set to a custom-error handling function. It is set by default to the `DefaultErrorHandler` (1436) function.

```
ErrorInfo : Pointer = nil
```

Pointer to extended error information.

```
errVioBase = 1000
```

Base value for video errors

```
errVioInit = errVioBase + 1
```

Video driver initialization error.

```
errVioNoSuchMode = errVioBase + 3
```

Invalid video mode

```
errVioNotSupported = errVioBase + 2
```

Unsupported video function

```
FVMaxWidth = 132
```

Maximum screen buffer width.

```
Green = 2
```

Green color attribute

```
iso_codepages = [iso01, iso02, iso03, iso04, iso05, iso06, iso07, iso08, iso09, iso10, iso13, i
```

`iso_codepages` is a set containing all code pages that use an ISO encoding.

```
LightBlue = 9
```

Light Blue color attribute

```
LightCyan = 11
```

Light cyan color attribute

```
LightGray = 7
```

Light gray color attribute

```
LightGreen = 10
```

Light green color attribute

```
LightMagenta = 13
```

Light magenta color attribute

```
LightRed = 12
```

Light red color attribute

```
LowAscii = true
```

On some systems, the low 32 values of the DOS code page are necessary for the ASCII control codes and cannot be displayed by programs. If LowAscii is true, you can use the low 32 ASCII values. If it is false, you must avoid using them.

LowAscii can be implemented either through a constant, variable or property. You should under no circumstances assume that you can write to LowAscii, or take its address.

```
Magenta = 5
```

Magenta color attribute

```
NoExtendedFrame = false
```

The VT100 character set only has line drawing characters consisting of a single line. If this value is true, the line drawing characters with two lines will be automatically converted to single lines.

NoExtendedFrame can be implemented either through a constant, variable or property. You should under no circumstances assume that you can write to NoExtendedFrame, or take its address.

```
Red = 4
```

Red color attribute

```
ScreenHeight : Word = 0
```

Current screen height

```
ScreenWidth : Word = 0
```

Current screen Width

```
vga_codepages = [cp437, cp850, cp852, cp866]
```

vga\_codepages is a set containing all code pages that can be considered a normal vga font (as in use on early VGA cards) Note that KOI8-R has line drawing characters in wrong place.

`vioOK = 0`

No errors occurred

`White = 15`

White color attribute

`Yellow = 14`

Yellow color attribute

### 43.4.2 Types

`PVideoBuf = ^TVideoBuf`

Pointer type to `TVideoBuf` ([1432](#))

`PVideoCell = ^TVideoCell`

Pointer type to `TVideoCell` ([1433](#))

`PVideoMode = ^TVideoMode`

Pointer to `TVideoMode` ([1434](#)) record.

`Tencoding = (cp437, cp850, cp852, cp866, koi8r, iso01, iso02, iso03, iso04, iso05, iso06, iso07, iso08, iso09, iso10, iso13, iso14, iso15)`

This type is available under Unix-like operating systems only.

`TErrorHandler = function(Code: LongInt; Info: Pointer)  
: TErrorHandlerReturnValue`

The `TErrorHandler` function is used to register an own error handling function. It should be used when installing a custom error handling function, and must return one of the above values.

`Code` should contain the error code for the error condition, and the `Info` parameter may contain any data type specific to the error code passed to the function.

`TErrorHandlerReturnValue = (errRetry, errAbort, errContinue)`

Type used to report and respond to error conditions

`TVideoBuf = Array[0..32759] of TVideoCell`

The `TVideoBuf` type represents the screen.

`TVideoCell = Word`

Table 43.1: Enumeration values for type Tencoding

Value	Explanation
cp437	Codepage 437
cp850	Codepage 850
cp852	Codepage 852
cp866	Codepage 866
iso01	ISO 8859-1
iso02	ISO 8859-2
iso03	ISO 8859-3
iso04	ISO 8859-4
iso05	ISO 8859-5
iso06	ISO 8859-6
iso07	ISO 8859-7
iso08	ISO 8859-8
iso09	ISO 8859-9
iso10	ISO 8859-10
iso13	ISO 8859-13
iso14	ISO 8859-14
iso15	ISO 8859-15
koi8r	KOI8-R codepage

Table 43.2: Enumeration values for type TErrorHandlerReturnValue

Value	Explanation
errAbort	abort and return error code
errContinue	abort without returning an errorcode.
errRetry	retry the operation

TVideoCell describes one character on the screen. One of the bytes contains the color attribute with which the character is drawn on the screen, and the other byte contains the ASCII code of the character to be drawn. The exact position of the different bytes in the record is operating system specific. On most little-endian systems, the high byte represents the color attribute, while the low-byte represents the ASCII code of the character to be drawn.

```

TVideoDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  UpdateScreen : procedure(Force: Boolean);
  ClearScreen : procedure;
  SetVideoMode : function(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  GetVideoModeCount : function : Word;
  GetVideoModeData : function(Index: Word;var Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  SetCursorPos : procedure(NewCursorX: Word;NewCursorY: Word);
  GetCursorType : function : Word;
  SetCursorType : procedure(NewType: Word);
  GetCapabilities : function : Word;
end

```

`TVideoDriver` record can be used to install a custom video driver, with the `SetVideoDriver` (1444) call.

An explanation of all fields can be found there.

```
TVideoMode = record
  Col : Word;
  Row : Word;
  Color : Boolean;
end
```

The `TVideoMode` record describes a videomode. Its fields are self-explaining: `Col`, `Row` describe the number of columns and rows on the screen for this mode. `Color` is `True` if this mode supports colors, or `False` if not.

```
TVideoModeSelector = function(const VideoMode: TVideoMode;
                               Params: LongInt) : Boolean
```

Video mode selection callback prototype.

### 43.4.3 Variables

```
CursorLines : Byte
```

`CursorLines` is a bitmask which determines which cursor lines are visible and which are not. Each set bit corresponds to a cursorline being shown.

This variable is not supported on all platforms, so it should be used sparingly.

```
CursorX : Word
```

Current horizontal position in the screen where items will be written.

```
CursorY : Word
```

Current vertical position in the screen where items will be written.

```
external_codepage : Tencoding
```

This variable is for internal use only and should not be used.

```
internal_codepage : Tencoding
```

This variable is for internal use only and should not be used.

```
OldVideoBuf : PVideoBuf
```

The `OldVideoBuf` contains the state of the video screen after the last screen update. The `UpdateScreen` (1445) function uses this array to decide which characters on screen should be updated, and which not.

Note that the `OldVideoBuf` array may be ignored by some drivers, so it should not be used. The Array is in the interface section of the video unit mainly so drivers that need it can make use of it.

`ScreenColor : Boolean`

`ScreenColor` indicates whether the current screen supports colors.

`VideoBuf : PVideoBuf`

`VideoBuf` forms the heart of the `Video` unit: This variable represents the physical screen. Writing to this array and calling `UpdateScreen` (1445) will write the actual characters to the screen.

`VideoBufSize : LongInt`

Current size of the video buffer pointed to by `VideoBuf` (1435)

## 43.5 Procedures and functions

### 43.5.1 ClearScreen

Synopsis: Clear the video screen.

Declaration: `procedure ClearScreen`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClearScreen` clears the entire screen, and calls `UpdateScreen` (1445) after that. This is done by writing spaces to all character cells of the video buffer in the default color (lightgray on black, color attribute `\$07`).

Errors: None.

See also: `InitVideo` (1441), `UpdateScreen` (1445)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex3.pp`

---

```

program testvideo ;

uses video , keyboard , vidutil ;

Var
    i : longint ;
    k : TKeyEvent ;

begin
    InitVideo ;
    InitKeyboard ;
    For i:=1 to 10 do
        TextOut(i,i, 'Press any key to clear screen');
        UpdateScreen(false);
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        ClearScreen;
        TextOut(1,1, 'Cleared screen. Press any key to end');
        UpdateScreen(true);
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        DoneKeyBoard;
        DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 43.5.2 DefaultErrorHandler

Synopsis: Default error handling routine.

Declaration: `function DefaultErrorHandler (AErrorCode: LongInt; AErrorInfo: Pointer)  
: TErrorHandlerReturnValue`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultErrorHandler` is the default error handler used by the video driver. It simply sets the error code `AErrorCode` and `AErrorInfo` in the global variables `ErrorCode` and `ErrorInfo` and returns `errContinue`.

Errors: None.

### 43.5.3 DoneVideo

Synopsis: Disable video driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneVideo` disables the Video driver if the video driver is active. If the videodriver was already disabled or not yet initialized, it does nothing. Disabling the driver means it will clean up any allocated resources, possibly restore the screen in the state it was before `InitVideo` was called. Particularly, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays are no longer valid after a call to `DoneVideo`.

The `DoneVideo` should always be called if `InitVideo` was called. Failing to do so may leave the screen in an unusable state after the program exits.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: Normally none. If the driver reports an error, this is done through the `ErrorCode` variable.

See also: `InitVideo` ([1441](#))

### 43.5.4 GetCapabilities

Synopsis: Get current driver capabilities.

Declaration: `function GetCapabilities : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCapabilities` returns the capabilities of the current driver. It is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**cpUnderLine** Video driver supports underline attribute

**cpBlink** Video driver supports blink attribute

**cpColor** Video driver supports color

**cpChangeFont** Video driver supports changing screen font.

**cpChangeMode** Video driver supports changing mode

**cpChangeCursor** Video driver supports changing cursor shape.

Note that the video driver should not yet be initialized to use this function. It is a property of the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetCursorType \(1437\)](#), [GetVideoDriver \(1439\)](#)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCapabilities function. }*

**Uses** video;

**Var**

W: Word;

**Procedure** TestCap(Cap: Word; Msg : **String**);

**begin**

**Write**(Msg, ' : ');

**If** (W **and** Cap=Cap) **then**

**WriteLn**( 'Yes')

**else**

**WriteLn**( 'No');

**end**;

**begin**

W:= GetCapabilities;

**WriteLn**( 'Video driver supports following functionality');

    TestCap(cpUnderLine, 'Underlined characters');

    TestCap(cpBlink, 'Blinking characters');

    TestCap(cpColor, 'Color characters');

    TestCap(cpChangeFont, 'Changing font');

    TestCap(cpChangeMode, 'Changing video mode');

    TestCap(cpChangeCursor, 'Changing cursor shape');

**end**.

---

### 43.5.5 GetCursorType

Synopsis: Get screen cursor type

Declaration: `function GetCursorType : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCursorType` returns the current cursor type. It is one of the following values:

**crHidden**Hide cursor

**crUnderLine**Underline cursor

**crBlock**Block cursor

**crHalfBlock**Half block cursor

Note that not all drivers support all types of cursors.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetCursorType \(1443\)](#), [GetCapabilities \(1436\)](#)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex5.pp

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCursorType function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Const**

CursorTypes : **Array**[crHidden..crHalfBlock] **of string** =  
('Hidden', 'UnderLine', 'Block', 'HalfBlock');

**begin**

InitVideo;  
InitKeyboard;  
TextOut(1,1, 'Cursor type: '+CursorTypes[GetCursorType]);  
TextOut(1,2, 'Press any key to exit.');

UpdateScreen(False);  
GetKeyEvent;  
DoneKeyboard;  
DoneVideo;

**end.**

### 43.5.6 GetLockScreenCount

Synopsis: Get the screen lock update count.

Declaration: function GetLockScreenCount : Integer

Visibility: default

Description: GetLockScreenCount returns the current lock level. When the lock level is zero, a call to UpdateScreen (1445) will actually update the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: LockScreenUpdate (1442), UnlockScreenUpdate (1444), UpdateScreen (1445)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex6.pp

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetLockScreenCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

I : Longint;  
S : **String**;

**begin**

InitVideo;  
InitKeyboard;  
TextOut(1,1, 'Press key till new text appears.');

UpdateScreen(False);

**Randomize**;  
**For** I:=0 **to** Random(10)+1 **do**  
LockScreenUpdate;

---

```

I:=0;
While GetLockScreenCount<>0 do
begin
  Inc(I);
  Str(I,S);
  UnlockScreenUpdate;
  GetKeyEvent;
  TextOut(1,1,'UnLockScreenUpdate had to be called '+S+' times');
  UpdateScreen(False);
end;
TextOut(1,2,'Press any key to end. ');
UpdateScreen(False);
GetKeyEvent;
DoneKeyboard;
DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 43.5.7 GetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Get a copy of the current video driver.

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoDriver(var Driver: TVideoDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoDriver` returns the currently active video driver record in `Driver`. It can be used to clone the current video driver, or to override certain parts of it using the `SetVideoDriver` (1444) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVideoDriver` (1444)

### 43.5.8 GetVideoMode

Synopsis: Return current video mode

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoMode(var Mode: TVideoMode)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoMode` returns the settings of the currently active video mode. The `row`, `col` fields indicate the dimensions of the current video mode, and `Color` is true if the current video supports colors.

See also: `SetVideoMode` (1444), `GetVideoModeData` (1441)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoMode function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

  M : TVideoMode;  
  S : **String**;

---

```

begin
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyboard;
  GetVideoMode(M);
  if M.Color then
    TextOut(1,1,'Current mode has color')
  else
    TextOut(1,1,'Current mode does not have color');
  Str(M.Row,S);
  TextOut(1,2,'Number of rows    : '+S);
  Str(M.Col,S);
  TextOut(1,3,'Number of columns : '+S);
  Textout(1,4,'Press any key to exit. ');
  UpdateScreen(False);
  GetKeyEvent;
  DoneKeyboard;
  DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 43.5.9 GetVideoModeCount

Synopsis: Get the number of video modes supported by the driver.

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeCount : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeCount` returns the number of video modes that the current driver supports. If the driver does not support switching of modes, then 1 is returned.

This function can be used in conjunction with the `GetVideoModeData` ([1441](#)) function to retrieve data for the supported video modes.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetVideoModeData` ([1441](#)), `GetVideoMode` ([1439](#))

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoModeCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Procedure** DumpMode (M : TVideoMode; Index : Integer);

**Var**

S : String;

**begin**

Str(Index:2,S);

inc(Index);

TextOut(1,Index,'Data for mode '+S+' : ');

if M.Color then

TextOut(19,Index,' color,')

else

---

```

    TextOut(19,Index,'No color,');
    Str(M.Row:3,S);
    TextOut(28,Index,S+' rows');
    Str(M.Col:3,S);
    TextOut(36,index,S+' columns');
end;

Var
    i,Count : Integer;
    m : TVideoMode;

begin
    InitVideo;
    InitKeyboard;
    Count:=GetVideoModeCount;
    For I:=1 to Count do
        begin
            GetVideoModeData(I-1,M);
            DumpMode(M,I-1);
        end;
    TextOut(1,Count+1,'Press any key to exit');
    UpdateScreen(False);
    GetKeyEvent;
    DoneKeyboard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 43.5.10 GetVideoModeData

Synopsis: Get the specifications for a video mode

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeData(Index: Word;var Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeData` returns the characteristics of the `Index`-th video mode in `Data`. `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `GetVideoModeCount-1`. If the current driver does not support setting of modes (`GetVideoModeCount=1`) and `Index` is zero, the current mode is returned.

The function returns `True` if the mode data was retrieved succesfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `GetVideoModeCount` ([1440](#)).

Errors: In case `Index` has a wrong value, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` ([1440](#)), `SetVideoMode` ([1444](#)), `GetVideoMode` ([1439](#))

### 43.5.11 InitVideo

Synopsis: Initialize video driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitVideo` Initializes the video subsystem. If the video system was already initialized, it does nothing. After the driver has been initialized, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` pointers are

initialized, based on the `ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` variables. When this is done, the screen is cleared.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: if the driver fails to initialize, the `ErrorCode` variable is set.

See also: `DoneVideo` (1436)

### 43.5.12 LockScreenUpdate

Synopsis: Prevent further screen updates.

Declaration: `procedure LockScreenUpdate`

Visibility: default

Description: `LockScreenUpdate` increments the screen update lock count with one. As long as the screen update lock count is not zero, `UpdateScreen` (1445) will not actually update the screen.

This function can be used to optimize screen updating: If a lot of writing on the screen needs to be done (by possibly unknown functions), calling `LockScreenUpdate` before the drawing, and `UnlockScreenUpdate` (1444) after the drawing, followed by a `UpdateScreen` (1445) call, all writing will be shown on screen at once.

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (1438).

Errors: None.

See also: `UpdateScreen` (1445), `UnlockScreenUpdate` (1444), `GetLockScreenCount` (1438)

### 43.5.13 SetCursorPos

Synopsis: Set write cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorPos (NewCursorX: Word; NewCursorY: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCursorPos` positions the cursor on the given position: Column `NewCursorX` and row `NewCursorY`. The origin of the screen is the upper left corner, and has coordinates `(0, 0)`.

The current position is stored in the `CursorX` and `CursorY` variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorType` (1443)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex2.pp`

---

```
program example2;
```

```
uses video , keyboard ;
```

```
Var
```

```
  P,PP,D : Integer ;
  K: TKeyEvent;
```

```
Procedure PutSquare (P : INteger ; C : Char);
```

```
begin
```

---

```

    VideoBuf^[P]:=Ord(C)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
end;

begin
    InitVideo;
    InitKeyBoard;
    P:=0;
    PP:=-1;
    Repeat
        If PP<>-1 then
            PutSquare(PP, ' ');
        PutSquare(P, '#');
        SetCursorPos(P Mod ScreenWidth,P div ScreenWidth);
        UpdateScreen(False);
        PP:=P;
        Repeat
            D:=0;
            K:=TranslateKeyEvent(GetKeyEvent);
            Case GetKeyEventCode(K) of
                kbdLeft : If (P Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
                    D:=-1;
                kbdUp : If P>=ScreenWidth then
                    D:=-ScreenWidth;
                kbdRight : If ((P+2) Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
                    D:=1;
                kbdDown : if (P<(VideoBufSize div 2)-(ScreenWidth*2)) then
                    D:=ScreenWidth;
            end;
            Until (D<>0) or (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
            P:=P+D;
        until GetKeyEventChar(K)='q';
        DoneKeyBoard;
        DoneVideo;
    end.

```

---

#### 43.5.14 SetCursorType

Synopsis: Set cursor type

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorType(NewType: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCursorType` sets the cursor to the type specified in `NewType`.

**crHidden** Hide cursor

**crUnderLine** Underline cursor

**crBlock** Block cursor

**crHalfBlock** Half block cursor

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorPos` ([1442](#))

### 43.5.15 SetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Install a new video driver.

Declaration: `function SetVideoDriver(const Driver: TVideoDriver) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoDriver` sets the videodriver to be used to `Driver`. If the current videodriver is initialized (after a call to `InitVideo`) then it does nothing and returns `False`.

A new driver can only be installed if the previous driver was not yet activated (i.e. before a call to `InitVideo` (1441)) or after it was deactivated (i.e after a call to `DoneVideo`).

For more information about installing a videodriver, see `viddriver` (1426).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom video driver.

Errors: If the current driver is initialized, then `False` is returned.

See also: `viddriver` (1426)

### 43.5.16 SetVideoMode

Synopsis: Set current video mode.

Declaration: `function SetVideoMode(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoMode` sets the video mode to the mode specified in `Mode`:

If the call was succesful, then the screen will have `Col` columns and `Row` rows, and will be displaying in color if `Color` is `True`.

The function returns `True` if the mode was set succesfully, `False` otherwise.

Note that the video mode may not always be set. E.g. a console on Linux or a telnet session cannot always set the mode. It is important to check the error value returned by this function if it was not succesful.

The mode can be set when the video driver has not yet been initialized (i.e. before `InitVideo` (1441) was called) In that case, the video mode will be stored, and after the driver was initialized, an attempt will be made to set the requested mode. Changing the video driver before the call to `InitVideo` will clear the stored video mode.

To know which modes are valid, use the `GetVideoModeCount` (1440) and `GetVideoModeData` (1441) functions. To retrieve the current video mode, use the `GetVideoMode` (1439) procedure.

Errors: If the specified mode cannot be set, then `errVioNoSuchMode` may be set in `ErrorCode`

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` (1440), `GetVideoModeData` (1441), `GetVideoMode` (1439)

### 43.5.17 UnlockScreenUpdate

Synopsis: Unlock screen update.

Declaration: `procedure UnlockScreenUpdate`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UnlockScreenUpdate` decrements the screen update lock count with one if it is larger than zero. When the lock count reaches zero, the `UpdateScreen` (1445) will actually update the screen. No screen update will be performed as long as the screen update lock count is nonzero. This mechanism can be used to increase screen performance in case a lot of writing is done.

It is important to make sure that each call to `LockScreenUpdate` (1442) is matched by exactly one call to `UnlockScreenUpdate`

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (1438).

Errors: None.

See also: `LockScreenUpdate` (1442), `GetLockScreenCount` (1438), `UpdateScreen` (1445)

### 43.5.18 UpdateScreen

**Synopsis:** Update physical screen with internal screen image.

**Declaration:** `procedure UpdateScreen(Force: Boolean)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UpdateScreen` synchronizes the actual screen with the contents of the `VideoBuf` internal buffer.

The parameter `Force` specifies whether the whole screen has to be redrawn (`Force=True`) or only parts that have changed since the last update of the screen.

The `Video` unit keeps an internal copy of the screen as it last wrote it to the screen (in the `OldVideoBuf` array). The current contents of `VideoBuf` are examined to see what locations on the screen need to be updated. On slow terminals (e.g. a linux telnet session) this mechanism can speed up the screen redraw considerably.

On platforms where mouse cursor visibility is not guaranteed to be preserved during screen updates this routine has to restore the mouse cursor after the update (usually by calling `HideMouse` from unit `Mouse` before the real update and `ShowMouse` afterwards).

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearScreen` (1435)

## Chapter 44

# Reference for unit 'wincrt'

### 44.1 Overview

The `wincrt` unit provides some auxiliary routines for use with the `graph` (375) unit, namely keyboard support. It has no connection with the `crt` (173) unit, nor with the Turbo-Pascal for Windows `WinCrt` unit. As such, it should not be used by end users. Refer to the `crt` (173) unit instead.

### 44.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 44.2.1 Variables

`directvideo` : Boolean

On windows, this variable is ignored.

`lastmode` : Word

Is supposed to contain the last used video mode, but is actually unused.

### 44.3 Procedures and functions

#### 44.3.1 `delay`

Synopsis: Pause program execution

Declaration: `procedure delay(ms: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delay` stops program execution for the indicated number `ms` of milliseconds.

See also: `sound` (1447), `nosound` (1447)

#### 44.3.2 `keypressed`

Synopsis: Check if a key was pressed.

Declaration: `function keypressed : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `KeyPressed` returns `True` if the user pressed a key, or `False` if not. It does not wait for the user to press a key.

See also: `readkey` ([1447](#))

### 44.3.3 nosound

Synopsis: Stop the speaker

Declaration: `procedure nosound`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `NoSound` does nothing, windows does not support this.

See also: `sound` ([1447](#))

### 44.3.4 readkey

Synopsis: Read a key from the keyboard

Declaration: `function readkey : Char`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ReadKey` reads a key from the keyboard, and returns the ASCII value of the key, or the scancode of the key in case it is a special key.

The function waits until a key is pressed.

See also: `KeyPressed` ([1446](#))

### 44.3.5 sound

Synopsis: Sound PC speaker

Declaration: `procedure sound(hz: Word)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Sound` sounds the PC speaker. It emits a tone with frequency `Hz` for 500 milliseconds. (the time argument is required by the windows API)

See also: `nosound` ([1447](#))

### 44.3.6 textmode

Synopsis: Set indicated text mode

Declaration: `procedure textmode(mode: Integer)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `TextMode` does nothing.

# Chapter 45

## Reference for unit 'x86'

### 45.1 Used units

Table 45.1: Used units by unit 'x86'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">76</a>

### 45.2 Overview

The x86 unit contains some of the routines that were present in the 1.0.X Linux unit, and which were Intel (PC) architecture specific.

These calls have been preserved for compatibility, but should be considered deprecated: they are not portable and may not even work on future linux versions.

### 45.3 Procedures and functions

#### 45.3.1 fplOperm

Synopsis: Set permission on IO ports

Declaration: `function fplOperm(From: Cardinal; Num: Cardinal; Value: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FplOperm` sets permissions on `Num` ports starting with port `From` to `Value`. The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value otherwise.

Note:

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first `0x03ff` ports can be set.
- When doing a `FpFork` ([126](#)), the permissions are reset. When doing a `FpExecVE` ([123](#)) they are kept.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `FpGetErrno` ([129](#))

### 45.3.2 fpIoPL

Synopsis: Set I/O privilege level

Declaration: `function fpIoPL(Level: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpIoPL` sets the I/O privilege level. It is intended for completeness only, one should normally not use it.

### 45.3.3 ReadPort

Synopsis: Read data from a PC port

Declaration: `procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Byte)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadPort` reads one Byte, Word or Longint from port `Port` into `Value`.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1448) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1448), `ReadPortB` (1449), `ReadPortW` (1450), `ReadPortL` (1450), `WritePort` (1450), `WritePortB` (1451), `WritePortL` (1451), `WritePortW` (1451)

### 45.3.4 ReadPortB

Synopsis: Read bytes from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortB(Port: LongInt) : Byte`  
`procedure ReadPortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortB` reads `Count` bytes from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` bytes.

The functional form of `ReadPortB` reads 1 byte from port `B` and returns the byte that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1448) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1448), `ReadPort` (1449), `ReadPortW` (1450), `ReadPortL` (1450), `WritePort` (1450), `WritePortB` (1451), `WritePortL` (1451), `WritePortW` (1451)

### 45.3.5 ReadPortL

Synopsis: Read longints from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortL(Port: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`procedure ReadPortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortL` reads `Count` longints from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` Longints.

The functional form of `ReadPortL` reads 1 longint from port `B` and returns the longint that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1448) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1448), `ReadPort` (1449), `ReadPortW` (1450), `ReadPortB` (1449), `WritePort` (1450), `WritePortB` (1451), `WritePortL` (1451), `WritePortW` (1451)

### 45.3.6 ReadPortW

Synopsis: Read Words from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortW(Port: LongInt) : Word`  
`procedure ReadPortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortW` reads `Count` words from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` words.

The functional form of `ReadPortW` reads 1 word from port `B` and returns the word that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1448) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1448), `ReadPort` (1449), `ReadPortB` (1449), `ReadPortL` (1450), `WritePort` (1450), `WritePortB` (1451), `WritePortL` (1451), `WritePortW` (1451)

### 45.3.7 WritePort

Synopsis: Write data to PC port

Declaration: `procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WritePort` writes `Value` – 1 byte, `Word` or `longint` – to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (1448) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(1448\)](#), [WritePortB \(1451\)](#), [WritePortL \(1451\)](#), [WritePortW \(1451\)](#), [ReadPortB \(1449\)](#), [ReadPortL \(1450\)](#), [ReadPortW \(1450\)](#)

### 45.3.8 WritePortB

**Synopsis:** Write byte to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(1448\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(1448\)](#), [WritePort \(1450\)](#), [WritePortL \(1451\)](#), [WritePortW \(1451\)](#), [ReadPortB \(1449\)](#), [ReadPortL \(1450\)](#), [ReadPortW \(1450\)](#)

### 45.3.9 WritePortL

**Synopsis:** Write longint to PC port.

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(1448\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(1448\)](#), [WritePort \(1450\)](#), [WritePortB \(1451\)](#), [WritePortW \(1451\)](#), [ReadPortB \(1449\)](#), [ReadPortL \(1450\)](#), [ReadPortW \(1450\)](#)

### 45.3.10 WritePortW

**Synopsis:** Write Word to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`  
`procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (1448) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** `FpIOPerm` (1448), `WritePort` (1450), `WritePortL` (1451), `WritePortB` (1451), `ReadPortB` (1449), `ReadPortL` (1450), `ReadPortW` (1450)